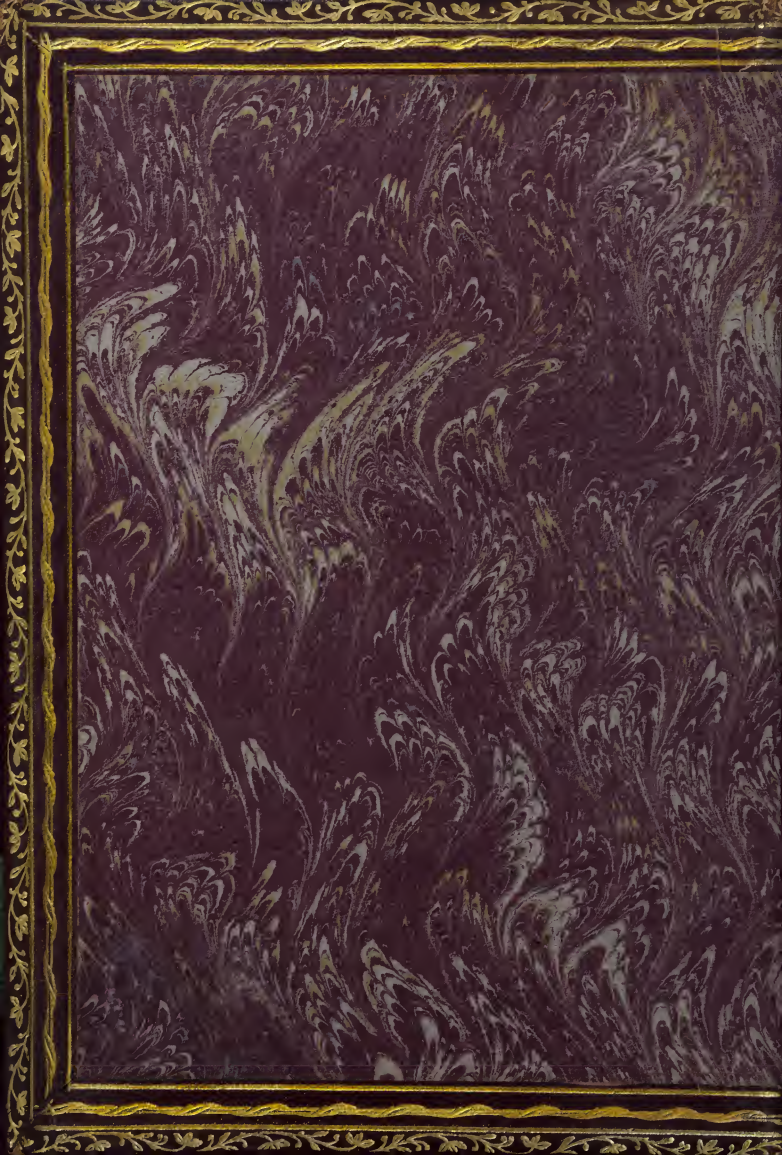










A RARE AND IMPORTANT WORK

892 **MARTYR** (Peter) and **EDEN** (Richard) The History of Travayle in the West and East Indies, and other countreys lying eyther way, towards the fruitfull and ryche Moluccaes, As Moscovia, Persia, Arabia, Syria, Aegypte, Ethiopia, Guinea, China in Cathayo, and Giapan; With a discourse of the Northwest passage, . . . Gathered in parte, and done into Englyshe by Richard Eden, Newly set in order, augmented, and finished by Richard Willes, FIRST EDITION, *printed throughout in black letter, with numerous woodcut initials and ornaments*, small 4to, bound by Bedford in polished calf, richly gilt panelled back, gilt borders on sides, gilt edges, a fine copy, Imprinted at London by Richarde Jugge, 1577

S.T.C. 649. Church 119. Sabin 1562.

This important work is not a reprint of the edition of 1555, though, like that, the larger portion is taken up with Peter Martyr's *Decades of the New World* and Oviedo's *History of the West Indies*. It contains a number of important additions not to be found in the earlier edition, and appeared after the death of Eden, which took place in 1576. The additions include the first account of Frobisher's Voyage to discover the North-West Passage, accounts of voyages to China, Japan, Persia and India, the voyages of Varthema, other voyages of the Spaniards round the World, an account of Cortes' Conquest of Mexico, and an abridgement of Peter Martyr's *Decades* 5-8.

893 **MAUNDRELL** (H.) A Journey from Aleppo to Jerusalem at Easter, A.D. 1687, FIRST EDITION, with a vignette title-page and engraved folding views, 8vo, contemporary calf, gilt, Oxf.d, 1703 £3/17/6

- Catalogue n° 124 de Frank Hamman.  
129, Stebbins Lane - Birmingham 4

6

387

CONFIDENTIAL

72 [MARTYR (PETER)] The HISTORY of TRAUAYLE in the WEST and EAST INDIES, and other countreys lying eyther way, towarde the fruitfull and ryche Moluccaes. As Moscouia, Persia, Arabia, Syria, Aegypte, Ethiopia, Guinea, China in Cathayo and Giapan. With a DISCOURSE of the NORTHWEST PASSAGE. Gathered in parte, and done into Englyshe by RICHARD EDEN, newly set in order, augmented, and finished by RICARDE WILLES. Printed in Black Letter, with woodcut of polar stars on p. 436, small 4to, new red morocco extra, broad gilt borders on sides (*some slight stains at beginning and end, otherwise A FINE AND LARGE COPY measuring 7 $\frac{1}{4}$  by 5 inches*), RARE, £125. Richarde Jugge, 1577

Short Title Catalogue, No. 649.

The work is divided into four parts representing the four corners of the world into which explorers had travelled. The first part contains four decades by Peter Martyr dealing with the voyages of COLUMBUS, ALFONSIUS, PINZONI and others to AMERICA and the WEST INDIES, DARIEN, MEXICO and PERU etc.

The second part deals with FROBISHER'S voyage to the MOLUCCAS, CHINA and JAPAN; the third, with NORTHERN EUROPE and ASIA; and the fourth with GUINEA and AFRICA. There is a chapter describing COLUMBUS'S difficulty in finding a patron for his voyage to the New World.

Eden was the first Englishman who undertook to present in a collective form the astonishing results of that spirit of maritime enterprise which had been everywhere awakened by the discovery of America; nor was he a mere compiler: we are indebted to him for several voyages of great curiosity and value. He is not exempt from error, but in point of learning, accuracy, and integrity is certainly superior to Hakluyt . . . —*Rich's Bibl. Amer. Nova.*

- 2 ANGLERIUS (Petrus Martyr). The History of Travayle in the West and East Indies. . . . With a discourse of the Northwest passage . . . done into Englyshe by Richarde Eden. Stout small 4to. Seventeenth century paneled calf binding, richly gilt paneled back. With autograph ownership entry of ALEXANDER PITFIELD, dated 1712. London: R. Jugge, 1577. \$550

This book which is often catalogued under the name of its original compiler, RICHARD EDEN, is the FIRST ENGLISH COLLECTION OF VOYAGES and one of the most important works in English geographical literature. It was first published in 1555, but the 1577 edition is almost a different book, so much new material has been added which is not to be found in the first edition. Of course, the greater part still consists of Peter Martyr's *Decades I-III* and Oviedo's *History of the West Indies*. The additions are Martyr's *Fourth Decade*, the very important *Instructions* by Richard Willes for Frobisher's forthcoming voyage for the discovery of the Northwest Passage, several Jesuit reports from China and Japan, and accounts of Persia sent by English merchants of the 1560's, Varthema's *Voyages* translated by Eden in 1576, just before his death, and Willes' abridgement of Peter Martyr's *Decades V-VIII*, which tell of Cortés' conquest of Mexico.

AN EXTREMELY FINE COPY in its almost untouched original binding. ALEXANDER PITFIELD who owned this volume in 1712 is curiously omitted in the DNB. He is, however, not unknown to us. In 1688 he translated Perrault's *Memoirs for a Natural History of Animals*.—STC 649. Sabin 1562. Church 119. J. C. Brown Library I, 266. Taylor, *Tudor Geography*, 38ff.



E

141

.A55

1577

JESUITANA

OCIC 51466124 RSR 3/10/04

77  
H. W. Smith.

THE  
*History of Trauayle*  
in the  
VVest and East Indies, and other  
countreys lying eyther way,  
towards the fruitfull and ryche  
*Moluccaes.*

As  
*Moscovia, Persia, Arabia, Syria, Ægypte,*  
*Ethiopia, Guinea, China in Cathayo, and*  
*Giapan: VVith a discourse of*  
the Northwest pas-  
sage.

In the hande of our Lorde be all the corners of  
the earth. *Isal. 94.*

Gathered in parte, and done into Englyshe by  
*Richarde Eden.*

**N**ewly set in order, augmented, and finished  
by *Richarde VVilles,*

¶ *Imprinted at London*  
by *Richarde Iugge.*  
1577.

*Cum Privilegio.*

1811

James M. Smith

of the

State of New York

do hereby certify

that

the following is a true and correct

copy of the

original

filed in

the office of the

Secretary of State

on this 10th day of January 1811

at Albany

James M. Smith

Secretary of State

1811

1811



# *To the ryght noble and excellent*

Lady, the Lady Brigit, Countesse of Bedforde, my singuler good Lady and Mystresse.



L studies haue theyr speciall tymes (Ryght noble Lady) all good partes, and singuler qualities of the mynde are holden vp, and maynteyned with honour. The seely chylde learneth in his tender age how to speake, to reade, to write: youg laddes bestowe theyr tyme in the study of other liberall sciences: as yeeres come on, and wyt encreaseth, so finally, the whole course of learning is runne ouer. Agayne, the arte of Grammer is wont erst to be learned, and than Logike afterwarde: naturall Philosophie goeth not before eloquence in our schooles: Geometry is first read, & than Geography. So that the studies of good letters haue their times in respecte of mans age, they haue theyr tymes in the order of learning: yea they haue a tyme, that maketh vs all to bestowe therein our tyme, and to studie eche facultie in due tyme, I meane that speciall tyme they floryshe in. I may not denye but that learning hath at all tymes ben well accompted of, in most countreys the skyll of dyuers languages well thought of, & learned men to haue ben alwayes rewarded, what is than that speciall tyme wherein all studies doe floryshe? Learning may bee ryght well compared vnto the floutes & frutes

## The Epistle.

of the earth, and the speciall tyme of learning,  
vnto theyr singuler seasons. In May, floures: in  
Iune, Cheries: at Haruest, corne: in September,  
Grapes: so fareth it in the study of good letters.  
There was a tyme whā the arte of grammer was  
so muche esteemed, that Gramariens proceeded  
masters thereof as woorshypfully, as other pro-  
fessours now doe in any other facultie. Than was  
it honourable to be a Poet: honourable I say, for  
that the Poet Laureate enioyed the honour of a  
Palatine, that tyme is paste. There was a tyme  
whan Logike & Astrology onely so weeried the  
heades of young schollers, yea and busied olde  
age also, that true Philosophie in deede was al-  
most forgotten, eloquence defaced, the langua-  
ges exiled, that tyme is past. Not long since hap-  
py was he that had any skil in the greke tongue,  
he was thought a great scholler that could make  
a grecke verse. Nowe a dayes, who studieth not  
rather the Hebrue language? VVhere haue you  
almost any grecke aucthour printed? Geography  
laye hydden many hundred yeeres in darkenesse  
and obliuion, without regarde and price: of late  
who taketh not vppon him to discourse of the  
whole worlde, and eche prouince thereof parti-  
cularly, euen by hearesay, although in the first  
principles of that arte, he bee altogeather igno-  
rant and vnskylfull? This tyme is now. So long  
as Poetry was esteemed, the arte of grammer  
accompted of, Logike muche made of, Astro-  
logy well thought of: Diuine Poets, good Gra-  
mariens, perfecte Logiciens, excellent Astro-  
nomers no where wanted.

## The Epistle.

*A Virgile can you uener want where one Mecenas is.* Honour & promotion bestowed vppon the maynteyners of controuerfies in religion, hath brought gray heares from endlesse Sophistry, from Scotus formalites, from Buridan and Burley, from Holcot, from Bricot, from Vademecum, from Dormisecure, and taught yonger yeeres rather to passe through Aristotle and his interpreters, than euer to dwell therein : caused them to studie the scriptures, to reade ouer the fathers, to conferre the counseyles, to learne the greeke and Hebrue languages, to searche the Chalday Paraphraсте, to peruse the olde Doctours, to translate the newe wryters, to heape vp common places, to discourse of sectes, to wryte cunningly, to preach eloquently : and made them to be, for braulyng Sophisters, graue Philosophers, for formal Dunces, plaine doctors, for rude questionaries, diuine Orators, for vnskillful schoolemen, eloquent and graue diuines.

It is nowe almost one hundred & fiftie yeeres agoe, that Don Henrico, sonne of Iohn the fyrst of that name Kyng in Portugale, and Nepheu vnto our Kyng Henry the fourth, made his vyage after the conquest of Septa to the Canaries, and encouraged the Portugales to searche the coastes of Africa, and to seeke the landes thereabout not spoken of to fore. His grande Nepheu Iohn the seconde, so furthered this enterpryse, that the Portugale shyppes halled the Cape of good hope, discouered Æthiopia, and layled where antiquitie denyed passage, beyond all Africa into the Indian seas. He sent also expert and

## The Epistle.

cunning traueylers into Ægypt, and the redde sea coastes to espye what way the Portugales might looke for beyond the Cape of good hope to Calecut in India: the which viage in his sonne Emanuell his tyme, was prosperously taken in hand by Vasquez Gama, the nienth day of Iuly, in the yeere of our Lorde. 1497. & happely ended in Iuly againe, two yeeres after, to his great credit and preferment, to the immortal fame & honour of his Prince and countrey. Here began the studie of Geographie, that euer since Ptolomeus raigne laye troden vnder foote, & buried in dust and ashes, to spring vp agayne, and by the relations of skilful traueylers in Europe, Affrike, & Asie: through the discouery of the far Indies, the Moluccaes, & new founde landes, of late so to be wondred at, as no other facultie more. I dare be bold to say, that generally all Christians, Iewes, Turkes, Moores, Infidels, & Barbares be this day in loue with Geographie. The wylde and rogishe Tartares myght for famine perishe in the winter, if they in the sommer skylfully followed not the sunne. The heathen Giapans diuided the worlde into three partes : Afrike was described by a Moore. The Iewes report the estates of all countreyes to the Turkes. The Turkishe Basshaes gouerne the sweetest prouinces in Europe, Afrike, and Asia, no men greater traueylers than Christians, VVho but Geographers doe teach vs what partes of the earth be cold, warme, or temperate? Of whom doe we learne howe to diuylde the world into partes, the partes into prouinces, the prouinces into shyres? of Geographers, vnto whom



## The Epistle

whom haue wee to make recourse for Mappes, Globes, tables, and Cardes, wherein the dyuers countreys of the worlde are set downe: vnto Geographers, Set Geographic asyde, you shal neyther be able to get intelligences of the situation and strength of any citie, nor of the limites and boundes of any countrey, nor of the rule and gouernement of any kingdome, nor be able wel to trauayle out of your owne doores. wil you see what wise and experte traueylers, skilful in geometry and Astronomy, (for that is to bee a Geographer in deede) be able to doe? Looke you on the King of Portugales title: the two partes, of the three therein, were atchiued by Vasques Gamma, and other traueylers aduentures. Consider the fruites, the drugges, the pearle, the treasure, the millions of golde and siluer, the Spanyardes haue brought out of the VVest Indies since the first viage of Columbus: The great commodities our nation reapeth by the traueyle of our countreymen into Barbary, Guiny, and Moscouia, wil be a sufficient testimony vnto all vs Englishmen, what it is to be a skilful traueyler, what to bee a paineful Geographer, and learned, Desire of rule breedeth victories, victories come by cōquestes, conquestes are furthered by traueyle, traueyle can not bee maynteyned without great wealth, wealth maketh all traueyle pleasant. The North-westerne vyage, be it neuer so full of difficulties, will become as plausible as any other iourney, if our passengers may returne with plentie of siluer, silkes, and pearle. Let Columbus, Americus, Cortesius, be wel set foorth againe, and bounte-

Kyng of  
Portugale  
& Algarbs,  
Lorde of  
Guinea, of  
the cōquest,  
nauigation,  
and trafike  
into Ethio-  
pia, Arabia,  
Persia, & In-  
dia,

## The Epistle.

ly rewarded, you shal heare of other newe found landes yet altogeather vnknown. Let Gama be set in place, and Gama will tell you the situation, the maners, the force and wealth of forreyne nations, for Gama his endeour was, not onely by his friend Coelius to descrye the countrey wherfoeuer he came, but also to learne him selfe the riches, strength, and conditions of the people. Honour maynteyneth arte : and the skill in Geography, as all other sciences, hath but a tyme of preferment, the whiche than chiefly myght bee looked for, whan it is most esteemed. This in the noble mynde of Cadamust bred that earnest desire, after Don Henrico his example, to traueyle, to pen his owne aduentures into the Southeast and East partes, to make the nauigation of Gama and his companions known vnto the worlde. The occasions, the good successe, the great commodities wherof, Barros a counsellor of the Portugale Kyng, paynted out long agoe in manye bookes, O sorius of late, historically hath written the same in fewe. This made Marcus Paulus Venetus a courtier in Tartary, Hayton the Armenian to become a Frenchman, Lewes Vartomanne a traueyler in Ethiopia, Brocardus an inhabitant of Iury, & eche one of them to leaue his painful iorney with posteritie in wrytyng. This enflamed the Spanyardes to take vppon them the discovery of the VVest and Southwestern landes, done and written by Columbus, Pinzonus, Alfonsus, Cortesius, and Americus, of whom that region America hath name. VVhose long letters and tedious reportes of thinges there brought to passe

## The Epistle

pasſe in the conqueſt of that halfe worlde, the ſtraunge beaſtes, the ſundry ſortes of fruites, the ioyes and riches the whiche that countrey yeeldeth, the manners and faſhions of the people, their cities, and princely palaces, theyr nobilitie, their maner of gouernement, their warres, theyr ſeruile eſtate vnder the kynges of Spayne, their conuerſion vnto the Chriſtian fayth, P. Martyr a learned and graue man, borne at Angleria in the duchy of Milane, then Preſident of the Spaniſh kinges counſell for the weſt Indies, gathered into one volume, and leauing a ſide all ſuperfluous narrations, made thereof, as it were, one brieſe and continuall hiftorie. This volume deuided he into eyght Decades, after the Greeke worde, ſo calling the ſundry parcels thereof, for that eche one conteyneth in it ten particuler bookes or chapters. R. Eden our countreyman dyd into Engliſh, whan K. Philippe was in Englande, the three firſt Decades, and the fourth alſo, though vnder a wrong title, according to the Dutche Printers edition, wherein the fiſte, ſixte, ſeuenth, and eight Decades were leſte out. He tranſlated moreouer Gonzales Ferdinandus Ouiedus breuiary of the weſt Indies, & geathered togeather out of many myghty and huge workes, ſome other pretypamſlettes concernyng the Spanyardes and Portugalles voiages into the late diſcouered lands, adding thereto certeine diſcourſes of the north partes. Theſe his aforeſayde doings, as fewe mennes workes at the firſt come exactly abrode, this paynefull tranſlatour mynded, if not to amende, at the leaſt to augment,

The Epistle.

by puttyng thereunto in English Lewes Vartomannus Nauigation into Ægypte, Arabia, Siria, Persia, and India, with our Merchantes Moscouian and Persian trauelles: but death preuented his purpose, not suffryng him to accomplish his desire.

Christian charitie therefore vnto the party departed, caused me to helpe his workes forward: Nature moued me to take some paynes in placing orderly, that whiche he had confusely gyuen out, the better to direct, and the more to profit the reader: My profession enforced me to cut of some superfluous translations, and to fill vp the rest of his doinges with P. Martyrs other writinges, and finally to furnishe his want with my owne store. Hoping and perswading with my selfe, that if God likewise call me from these worldly Nauigations, and earthly descriptions, before my other trauell in this facultye, taken long since in hande, be ended: some other professor of Cosmography wil so rewarde me after my death, as presently of this dead man I doe deserue. Other credite seeke I none therefore, I loke for no prayse, I hope not for honor, I gape for no gayne by this kind of studie. I knowe this day no place, no preferment, no publike chayre, no ordinarie lecture, no commune stipende, no special reward due vnto the studentes in Geography: no not at this time, when this faculty was neuer more set by: no not in this realme, where yt neuer more florished. The honorable name of a Christian, and the infallible fruites thereof, euer inclined me, euen from my tender yeeres,



## The Epistle.

yeeres, for the smal portion of learning that god hath lent me, to do good, if I could, vnto many: and specially to make those my friendes and wel doers knowen vnto the worlde, by whose beneuolence & fauour I doe liue, and am mainteined. In the smal number whereof, for amongst many wel willers I finde but few well doers, your Honor (right noble Lady) my Lorde & you, his noble children and yours, since my first returne from beyond the seas, must I confesse to haue stoode me chiefly in steede: & humbly acknowledge, the first yeerely pension I euer was assured of in England, to haue ben by your Ladiship bestowed on me. VWherefore as I will most willingly yeelde vnto many other of your Honors gētleme to come of great houses, to haue welthier friendes, larger possessions & reuenues than I, to be more actiue, more comely, more wyse, politike, learned, & to haue seene more: so in hūble duty, loyal seruice, sincere affection & good wil to your Honor, I may, I can, I wyl contende with any of them all, euen to the vttermust force and power of my hart, head, body, life, blood, mynd, & soule. In testimony wherof, and full assurance of my seruice vnto you for euer, these last doings of R. Eden newly encreased, my first labours in our language, his history & mine of trauel in the west & East Indies, altogeather in one volume, duetifully do I present vnto your Honour, with al humility praying & most earnestly requesting your good Ladiship, that you will vouchsafe it, & by leysure, in this journey, the whiche my

## The Epistle.

Lorde and you haue determined into the west  
countrey, to let your page reade them ouer to  
your Honours recreation, as one of the princi-  
pall causes wherefore at this tyme they were set  
foorth. If varietie of matter, occurrents out of  
forraigne countreyes, newes of newe founde  
landes, the sundry sortes of gouernement, the  
different manners & fashions of diuers nations,  
the wonderfull workes of nature, the sightes of  
straunge trees, fruites, foule, and beastes, the in-  
finite treasure of Pearle, Golde, Silucr, & ioyes  
may recreate and delight a mynde trauelled in  
weighty matters, & weered with great affayres:  
credit me, good Madam, in listning vnto this  
worke, shall you haue recreation, you shall finde  
delight in reading ouer these relations, wherein  
so newe, so straunge, so diuers, so many recreati-  
ons and delightes of the mynd are expressed.  
Your Honours good lykyng thereof, wyll be to  
me no small contentation for this worke payne-  
fully doone, a good occasion spedyly to finish  
the rest of my owne labours concerning this fa-  
culty, a great encouragement and comfort to be-  
stow my whole time hereafter only in that study,  
wherewith all my former knowledge in Philoso-  
phy and Geography may ende. The whiche,  
conueniently now, I am in good hope to per-  
fourme, with my Lorde and your Ladyshyps  
good leaue, and continuance of my duety and  
effectuall desire to doe your Honours the better  
seruice.

*At London the 4. day of Iuly. 1577.*

*Your Honors seruauant humbly at commaundement.*

*Richard VVilles.*

\* R. VVilles Preface vnto the Reader, wherein is  
set downe a generall summe as it were of the  
whole worke,



This greate and large volume consisteth  
principally of foure partes, agreeable vnto  
those foure corners of the worlde, whereun-  
to the skilfull seamen and merchauntes ad-  
uenturers of late yeeres haue chiefly tra-  
uelled, and yet specially are wont to resorte.  
The first part conteyneth foure Decades, The first part,  
the first Decade  
written by P. Martir, a learned & graue counsellor of Charles  
the Emperour fift of that name, concernyng the Spanyarde  
boyages Southwestwarde, & theyr famous exploites doone in  
these newly discovered partes of the worlde, the whiche vsually  
wee now call the west Indies. Hereunto haue we added Gonza-  
lus Eerdinandus Oniedus byeeft hystorie touching the same ma-  
ter, so that the first part of our volume hath fve particular bookes.  
In the first whereof cap 1. 2. 3. 4 and 5. P. Martir describeth Co-  
lumbus first and second nauigations and discoveries of certayne  
Ilandes made by hym specially and his brother. In the 6. chapter  
or booke thereof (for both names we finde) is set forth Colum-  
bus third boiage, and the discovery of Peru, in the maigne west  
Indish lande. In the seuenth, his troubles both in the west Indies,  
and recourne into Spaigne with his brother, being both priso-  
ners. The 8. is of P. Alfonsus boyages that same way. In the 9.  
are declared the traualles of Vincent and Peter Pinzoni, and other  
Spaniards likewise thither from Palos. The 10. is a conclusion  
of the whole Decade, with particuler mention of some special no-  
uelties, & Colūbus fourth boiage beganne. So that in the first De-  
cade you haue historically set downe the discouerye of the west  
Indies, taken in hande about the yeere of our Lorde. 1492. by Co-  
lumbus and his companions, vntill the yeere 1510. as P. Martir  
witnesseth fol. 8. 43. 47. and 51. This worthy traualer and skil-  
full seaman died at Validolid in Spaigne. An. dom. 1506. as  
Lopez reporteth cap. 25. in his generall hystorie de las Indias.

The second Decade conteyneth Peru matters, entituled by P. The second  
Decade.  
Martir, Creditus Cortimens, that is, a continent or maigne laude, as

## The p[re]face.

in deede it is of it selfe with the rest of *America*, in lyke manner as *Europe*, *Affryk*, & *Asia*, be one continent or maighe lande vniued together. In the fyrst and seconde chapters of this *Decade*, shall you reade the voyages of *Fogeda* and *Nicuesa*, to *Dariena*. In the thyrde, *Colmenaris* trauayles, *Nicuesa* his death, and the *Indyshe* kyng *Comogrus* benciuolence: In the fourth, *Vasquez Nunnez* doynges in *Vraba* gulfe. His conquest of rebellious *Barbarian* kyngs in the fyfte. In the syxt *Quicedus* & *Colmenaris* ambassage out of *Dariena* to *Hispaniola*, and the religion of king *Commendator* in *Cuba*. The seueneth booke conteineth *Petrus Arias* iozney to *Paria* in *Peru*. The .8. the dissention betwixt the *Spaniards* and *Portugales* for theyr boundes, and makynge of fyue *Bishops* in these newely founde partes of the worlde. In the .9. are shewed the ryuers of *Darien*, and philosophically the causes of so great waters there. That countrey is described in the .10. and the extreme hunger, abydden by the companions of *Nicuesa*, set forth.

In the fyrst, second, and thyrde chapters of the thyrde *Decade*, is conteyned an abridgement of *Vasquez Nunnez* relations, concerning his voyage to the south sea, for it lyeth south from *Dariens*, vsually termed nowe a dayes *Mar del Zur*, and may also be called the wyde east *Indyshe* Ocean. The discovery thereof made by *Nunnez*, the kyng subdued by hym, especially kyng *Comogrus* christenynge by the name of *Charles*, and the wyngynge of kyng *Humanama* or *Tubanama* and his countrey. In the fourth chapter shal you fynd *Columbus* fourth vyage, began *An.do. 1502.* to the mayne west *Indyshe* lande, with the description of some part therof, lying betwixt our *Atlantike* or westerne Ocean, and the aforesayde *Mar del Zur*, as *Vraba*, and *Beragua*. In respect of the history and course of yeeres, this booke myght haue been placed before the seconde *Decade*, but it shoulde seeme that these reportes came no sooner to *P. Martyr* his handes, wherefore he began this fourth booke ryght well thus. I was determined. &c. The fyfth booke conteyneth *P. Arias* iozney mentioned dec. 2 lib. 7. to the north syde of *Peru*, wherein *Carthagena* and *S. Martha*, two famous hauens, do stande, with a description of the countrey and people thereof. In the syxt you haue a disputation touchynge the *Leuant* streame or easterne surge of the sea, the discovery

of



## To the Reader.

of *Baccalaos* done by *Cabot*. *P. Arias* arrivall in *Darien*, the building of *S. Maria antiqua* there, with other fortresses, finally the commodities and unwholesomnesse of *Darien*. In the .7. 8. & 9. bookes, shal you have a description of *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, and other Ilandes thereabout, done by *Andreas Moralis*. And in the .10. shal you reade of the Ilande *Dives* in *Mar del Zur*, of the kyng therof subdued by *Andreas Moralis*, of *Pearles* & the finding thereof, of *Petrus Arias* Captaynes doinges agaynst the *Caniballes*, of the *Barbares* sowlyng, & the manner of the geathering of gold in *Dariena*.

The fourth Decade, for so was it named in the Spaniards edition of *P. Martyr* his woorkes set forth at *Alcala* in *Spayne* *An. do. 1530.* though the *Basile* and *Cullen* printers have entituled it, *De insulis nuper inuentis*, that is, of Ilandes lately found out, to wylt, after *Columbus* voyages: this booke I say was by *P. Martell* culled out of the *Indian* registers, conteynyng speciall notes that seemed unto hym most meete to be published: as the discovery of certayne Ilandes and creekes, namely *Iucatan* (done by *Fernandes* of *Corduba* & his companions) *Cozumella*, the Ilands of *Sacrifice*, the Ilandes of women, the prouince *Coluacan* and *Palmaria* &c. by *Iohn Grijalua* & his felowes: the *Iucaians* captiuitie and discovery of *Florida* made by those Spaniards which *Diegus Velasquen* sent out of *Cuba*, and *Ferd. Cortesius* fyrst navigation, wherein he conquered *Potanchana* in newe *Spayne*, the death of *Valdinia*, & execution of *Vascus Nunnez*, king *Muteezua* his presentes to *Charles* the Emperour, his bookes, letters, and superstitions, finally the ruine of *Hispaniola*, and utter decaye thereof, if heede shoulde not be taken in tyme.

Last of al *Gonzalus Ferdinandus Ouedus* historie containeth in .18. severall chapters (eche one whereof hath his proper title) a brieve declaration of the west *Indys* navigation, of the metals the which are found in those lately discovered lands, of the maners of the people, rites, customes, and ceremonies, of the beastes, foules, byrdes, wormes, fyshes, seas, riuers, springes, trees, plantes, hearbes, & diuers other thinges that are engendred there both on the land & in the water. To this haue we adred certaine speciall reports of new *Spaine* or *Mexico*, of *Peru*, of *Rio de la Plata*, & the countrey lying therunto, of the lands *Laborador* & *Baccalaos*, with the discovering of *Florida*. And thus muche for the fyrst part of this volume.

The fourth  
Decade.



## To the Reader.

The seconde  
part.

The seconde part of this worke appeareth what it is, by the title thereof set downe. Fol 230. to w<sup>yt</sup>, a discourse to proue that there is a passage to the *Moluccaes* by the north-west, the whiche presently *M. Cap. Furbiſher* attempteth, with certayne reportes of the prouince *China* in *Cathayo*, where he hath to strike in his voyage, and th<sup>y</sup>rol<sup>y</sup> of *Giapan*, and other *Ilandes* by the way. The whiche seconde part, wherein matter concernyng the north-west is handled, is so muche the th<sup>y</sup>pter, by how much the f<sup>y</sup>st part seemed ouerlong: besydes that the particularities of this corner of the worlde are not yet so th<sup>y</sup>oughly knowen, but that other w<sup>y</sup>ters shal doubtlesse in moze ample maner employe the<sup>y</sup>r labour therein after the returne of our northwestern<sup>e</sup> tra<sup>y</sup>uaplers. The whiche I w<sup>y</sup>she to be most happie and prosperous, as they most valiantly & painefully, to the renowne of our Eng<sup>y</sup>lyshe nation, do shewe to haue taken it in hande.

The thyrde  
part.

In the th<sup>y</sup>rd part shal you fynd a discription of the northea<sup>s</sup>terne frosty seas and kingdomes lying that way: as *Moscouia*, *Schondia*, or *Denmarke*, *Groenlande*, *Ilande*, *Laponia*, *Norway*, *Suecia*, or *Sweithlande*, *Botbnia*, and *Gothlande*: out of *Zeiglerus*, *Paulus Iouius*, *Haiton*, and *Sebastian free lord* or *Baron of Herbestein*, with the countreys as well north and northea<sup>s</sup>t beyond *Moscouia*, namely *PetZora*, *Iubra*, and other prouinces of the *Tartars*: as also the voyages made th<sup>y</sup>rough *Moscouia* by the merchauntes of *London* into *Persia*, conteinyng many speciall th<sup>y</sup>nges woorth the knowledge, both of the countrey it self, the commodities thereof, the manners of the people, and the p<sup>r</sup>iuiledges graunted vnto our merchauntes by the *Sophie* or *Shaugh* the *Persian* kyng.

The fourth  
part.

Finally in the fourth part are set downe our merchauntes voyages into *Guinea*, and the other parcelles of *Affrike* lying towardes the Southeast, *Lewes Vertomannus* nauigations into *Egypte*, *Ethiopia*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, *Persia*, and east *India*, euen to the fruitefull *Moluccaes*, with the prices of drugges and other wares brought from thence. Thereto for a conclusion, haue we added partly out of *Maximilian Transiluanus* letter w<sup>y</sup>pten vnto the *Cardinall of Saltzburge*, and partly out of *P. Martyrs* other woorkes, that famous nauigation made round about the whole worlde: the contention betwixte the *Portugales* and *Spanyarden* for the *Moluccaes*, & the decydyng thereof by  
Pope

## To the Reader.

**P**ope Alexander the fyrst: and last of all the abridgement of .P. Martyrs soure last Decades, wherein especially that noble and gloriouse conquest of Mexico is wrytten. Generally this much of the soure partes of this large volume. The lesser parcelles and speciall matter conteyned in eche part, you haue so exactly rehearsed in the table of the Decades. Fol. 173. and in the residue of the whole woork befoze eche chapter so evidently set downe, that any particular table thereof at al the reader greatly needeth not, if so be that he be able to remember in what region of the worlde, East, West, North, or South, that be, the which he looketh for.

Nowe concerning R. Edens owne doynges, sincerely to say what I thinke, and curteously to peeble hym that due prayse the whiche woorthly these his labours deserue, yet not to flatter hym neither, where any faulte hath ben committed: as hyghly he was to be commended for Englyshyng so straunge, so wonderfull, so profitable histories as these are, nothyng inferior to the bookes of auncient wryters, far exceeding the multitude of foolyshe commentaries and triviolous translations, to to licentiousely used in our tyme: So may the gentle reader forbear his oversyght, in so great a woork, where some Spanysh prouerbe, harsh latine phrase, or vncleane speache may seeme hardly Englyshed, or any rashe note to shame the texte. I woulde excuse hym for translatyng the dayes by the latine names, as Fol. 12. *Non. April. thus. At the Ides of Apryll. item, 3. Idus Octobris. thus. The thyrde daye of the Ides of October. item. Fol. 17. tertio Kalend. Maj. thus. The thyrde daye befoze the Kalendes of Maye: meanyng in deede, the fyfth daye of Apryll, the .13. day of October, the 29. of Apryll: but therein it shoulde seeme that he folowed his owne humour, for he obserueth the same phrase of translatyng throughout .P. Martyrs whole woork. Many of his Englyshe woordes cannot be excused in my opinion for smellyng to much of the Latine, as *Dominators. Fol. 5. Ponderouse. Fol. 23. Ditionaries. Fol. 25. Portentouse. Fol. 28. Antiques. Fol. 31. despicable. Fol. 387. Solicitate. Fol. 76. obsequious. Fol. 90. homicide. Fol. 390. imbibed. Fol. 395. Destructiue. Fol. 276.**

*Prodigious.*

To the Reader.

Prodigious. Fol. 279. With other such lyke: in the Steele of Lords,  
weygatie, subiectes, wonderfull, auncient, lowe, carefull, duetti-  
full, manslaughter, drunken, noysome, monstrous .&c. the which  
faulces he confesseth in other his owne verses, wytyng thus of  
hym selfe.

*I haue not for euery worde asked counsayle  
of eloquent Eliot, or Sir Thomas Moore:  
Take it therefore as I haue intended,  
the faulces with fauour may soone be a mended.*

*Certayne Preambles here folowe, gathered by R. Eden, for the better understanding of the whole worke.*





discoueryng of the Indies.  
Of the fyrst discoueryng of the  
west Indies.

**A** Certayne Carauel saylyng in the West Ocean, about the coastes of Spayne, had a forcybly and continuall wynde from the East, wherby it was dyuened to a land vnknownen, and not described in any map or carde of the sea, and was dyuened syl along by the coaste of the same for the space of many dayes, vntyll it came to a haueyn, where in a shor tyme the most part of the maryners, beyng long before very weake and feeble by reason of hunger and trauayll, dyed: So that onely the Pilot, with thre or foure other, remayned alpyue. And not only they that dyed, dyd not inioye the Indies whiche they fyrst discouered to theyr mysfortune, but the resydue also that lyued had in maner as litle fructiō of the same: not leauyng, or at the least not openly publyshyng any memoire thereof, neyther of the place, or what it was called, or in what yeere it was founde: Albeit, the fault was not theyrs, but rather the malice of other, or the enuie of that which we call fortune. I do not therfore marueyle, that the auncient histories asseyme, that great thynges proceede and increase of small and obscure begynnynge, syth we haue seene the same verfyed in this fynding of the Indies, being so notable and newe a thyng. We neede not be curious to seeke the name of the Pilot, syth death made a shor te ende of his doynges. Some wyl, that he came from *Andaluzia*, and traded to the Ilandes of *Cana-ria*, and the Iland of *Madera*, when this large and mortal nauigation chaunced vnto hym. Other say that he was a *Byscayne*, and traded into *Englande* and *Fraunce*. Other also, that he was a *Portugale*, & that either he went or came from *Mina* or *India*: which agreeth well with the name of these newe landes, as I haue sayd before. Agayne, some there be that say that he brought the Carauel to *Portugale*, or to the Iland of *Madera*, or to some other of the Ilandes called *De los Azores*. Yet do none of them asseyme any thyng, although they al asseyme that the Pilot dyed in the house of *Christopher Colon*, with whom remayned all suche wytynges and annotations as he had made of his voyage in the said Carauell, as well of such thynges as he obserued both by land and sea, as also of the eleuation of the pole in those landes whiche he had discouered.

in harde begyn-  
nyng.

The Pilot that  
fyrst founde the  
Indies.

Mina.

## VVhat man Colon was.

VVhat maner of man Christopher Colon (others  
wyse called Columbus) was, and how he came  
fyrst to the knowledge of the Indies.

**C**hristopher Colon was bozne in *Cugurco*, or (as some say) in *Nerui*, a byllage in the territorie of *Genua* in *Italie*. He descended as some thynke, of the house of the *Pelestreles* of *Placentia* in *Lumbardie*. He begaune of a chyld to be a maryner: of whose arte they haue great exercise on the ryuer of *Genua*. He traded many yeeres into *Suria*, and other partes of the East. After this, he became a maister in makynge cardes for the sea, whereby he had great bantage. He came to *Portugale* to know the reason & description of the south coastes of *Affrica*, and the nauigations of the *Portugales*, thereby to make his cardes more perfecte to be solde. He maryed in *Portugale*, as some say: or as many say, in the *Ilande* of *Madera*, where he dwelt at suche tyme as the sayd *Caraueli* arryued there, whose *Pilot* sojourned in his house, and dyed also there, bequeathyng to Colon his carde of the description of suche newe landes as he had found, whereby Colon had the fyrst knowledge of the Indies. Some haue thought y<sup>e</sup> Colon was wel learned in y<sup>e</sup> Latine tongue and the science of *Cosmographie*: and that he was thereby fyrst moued to seeke the lands of *Antipodes*, and the ryche *Ilande* of *Cipango*, wherof *Marchus Paulus* wyrteth. Also that he had redde what *Plato* in his dialoges of *Timeus* and *Cricias*, wyrteth of the great *Ilande* of *Atlantide*, and of a great land in the west Ocean undiscovered, beyng bygger then *Asia* and *Affrica*. Furthermore that he had knowledge what *Aristotell* and *Theophrastus* saye in theyr bookes of mariayles, where they wypte that certayne merchauntes of *Carthage*, saylyng from the streyghtes of *Gibraltar* toward the West and South, founde after many dayes a great *Ilande* not inhabited, yet replenysed with all thynges requisite, and hauing many nauigable ryuers. In dedde Colon was not greatly learned: yet of good vnderstanding. And when he had knowledge of the sayde newe landes by the information of the dead *Pilot*, made relation thereof to certeyne learned men, with whom he conferred as touchyng y<sup>e</sup> like thynges mentioned of olde autours. He communicated this secrets

and

Colon was not  
much learned.

Colon conferred  
with learned men.

and conferred chiefly with a fryer, named Iohn Perez of *Marchena*, that dwelt in the monastery of *Rabida*. So that I verely beleue, that in maner all that he declared, and many thynges moze that he least vnspoken, were wrytten by the sayde Spanyshe Pilot that dyed in his house. For I am perswaded, that if Colon by science attained to the knowledg of the Indies, he would long before haue communicat this secrete to his owne countrey men the *Genueses*, that trauayle all the worlde for gaynes, and not haue come into Spayne for this purpose. But doubtlesse he neuer thought of any such thyng, before he chaunced to be acquainted with the sayde Pilot, who founde those landes by fortune, accordyng to the saying of *Plinie*, *Quod ars docere non potuit, casus inuenit*. That is, That arte coulde not teache, chaunce founde. Albeit, the moze Christian opinion is, to thynke that God of his singuler prouidence and infinite goodnesse, at the length with eyes of compassion as it were lookyng downe from heauen vppon the sonnes of Adam, so long kept vnder *Sarchans* captiuitie, intended euen then (for causes to hym onely knowen) to rayse those wyndes of mercy whereby that *Carauell* (herein most lyke vnto the shyppe of *Noe*, whereby the remnant of the whole worlde was saued, as by this *Carauel* this newe worlde receyued the fyrst hope of theyr saluation) was dyuen to these landes. But we wyl now declare what great thynges folowed of this small begynnynge, and howe Colon folowed this matter, reuealed vnto hym not without Gods prouidence.

VVhat labour and trauayle Colon tooke in attemptyng his fyrst voyage to the Indies.

**A**fter the death of the Pilot & maryners of the Spanyshe *Carauell* that discovered y<sup>e</sup> Indies, *Christopher Colon* purposed to seeke the same. But in howe muche moze he desired this, the lesse was his power to accomplysh his desire. For, besyde that of hym selfe he was not able to surmythe one shyppe, he lacked also the fauoure of a kyng, vnder whose protection he myght so enioye the ryches he hoped to fynde, that none other myght take the same from hym, or defeate him therof.

## The attempt of Colon.

And seying the kyng of Portugale occupied in the conquest of Africa, and the Navigations of the East, whiche were then fyrst attempted, the kyng of Castyle lykewyse no lesse busied in the warres of *Granada*, he sent to his brother *Bartholomewe Colon* (who was also priuie to this secrete) to praciise with the kyng of England (*Henry the seuenth*) beyng very ryche and without warres, promysing to byng hym great ryches in shopt tyme, if he woulde shewe hym fauour, and furnyshe hym with shypps to discouer the newe Indies, whereof he had certayne knowledge. But nether here beyng able to byng his sute to passe, he caused the matter to be moued to the kyng of Portugale *Don Alonso*, the fyfth of that name: at whose handes he founde neither fauour nor mony, forasmuch as the *Licenciat Calzadilla* the bishop of *Viseo*, and one maister *Rodrigo*, men of credite in the science of Cosmographie, withstoode hym, and contended that there neither was nor coude any golde or other ryches be founde in the west, as *Colon* affirmed. By reason whereof he was very sad and pensiue: but yet was not discouraged, or despaired of the hope of his good aduenture, which he afterwarde founde. This doone, he tooke shyppyng at *Lisburne*, and came to *Palos of Moguer*, where he communed with *Martin Alonso Pinzon*, an expert Pilot, who offered hym selfe vnto hym. After this, disclosyng the whole secretes of his mynd to *Iohn Perez* of *Marchena* (a fryer of the order of saint Frances in *Rabida*, & well learned in Cosmographie) and declaryng vnto hym howe by folowynge the course of the Sunne by a temperate voyage, ryche and great landes myght be founde: the fryer greatly commended his interpyse, and gaue him counsaile to breake the matter to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, *Don Ewrique* of *Guzman*, a great lord, and very ryche: and also to *Don Luis* of *Cerda*, the Duke of *Medina Celi*, who at that time had great prouision of shypps wel furnyshe in his hauen of *Santa Maria*. But whereas both these Dukes tooke the matter for a dreame, and as a thyng deuised of an Italian decepuer, who (as they thought) had before with lyke pretence deuided the kynges of Englande and Portugale, the fryer gaue hym courage to go to the courte of the Catholyke princes *Don Ferdinando*, and lady *Isabell* princes of Castyle, affirmyng that they woulde be ioyful of suche newes: And for his better furtherance herein, wrote letters

King Henry  
the seuenth.

Barnarde  
knewe not all  
thynges.



etters by hym to fryer *Ferdinando of Talauera* the queenes confessor. *Christophers Colon* therefore, repayed to the courte of the Catholyke princes, in the yeere .1486. and deliuered vnto theyr handes the petition of his request, as concernyng the discoueryng of the new Indies. But they beyng more careful, and applyng al theyr mynde howe they myght dypue the Doores out of the kyngdome of *Granada*, whiche greate enterpryse they had alredy taken in hande, dyd lyttle or nothyng esteeme the matter. But *Colon* not thus discouraged, founde the meanes to declare his sute to suche as had sometymes priuate communication with the kyng. Yet because he was a straunger, and went but in simple apparell, nor otherwyle credited then by the letter of a gray frier, they beleueed hym not, neyther gaue eare to his woordes, whereby he was greatly tormented in his imagination. Onely *Alonso of Quintanilia*, the kynges chiefe auditour, gaue hym meate and dypnke at his owne charges, and hearde gladly such thynges as he declared of the landes not then founde: despyng hym in the meane tyme to be content with that pooze enterteynment, and not to despayre of his enterpryse: puttynge hym also in good comforte that he shoulde, at one tyme or other, come to the speache of the Catholyke princes. And thus shortly after, by the meanes of *Alonso of Quintanilia*, *Colon* was brought to the ptesence and audience of the Cardinall *Don Pero Gonzales of Mendoza*, archbishop of *Toledo*, a man of great reuenuies and authoritie with the kyng and queene, who brought hym before them, after that he well perceiued and examined his intent. And by this meanes was his sute hearde of the Catholyke princes, who also reddie the booke of his memorials whiche he presented vnto them. And although at the fyrst they tooke it for bayne and false that he promysed, neuerthelesse they put hym in good hope that he shoulde be well dispatched when they had synyshe the warres of *Granada* whiche they had nowe in hande. With which answer, *Colon* began to reupue his spirites, with hope to be better esteemed, and more fauorably to be hearde among the gentelmen & noble men of the courte, who before tooke hym onely for a craftie felowe and decepuer: and was nothyng dismayde or discouraged when soeuer he debated the matter with them, although many iudged hym phantastically, as is the maner of ignorant men, to cal all

The conquest  
of *Granada*.

The archbishop  
of *Toledo*.

## The attempt of Colon

Suche as attempt any thyng beyonde theyr reache, and the compasse of theyr knowledge, thynkynge the worlde to be no bygger then the eagles wherein they are brought by and lyue. But to returne to Colon. So hotte and vrgente was the siege of Granada, that they presently graunted hym his demaunde to seeke the newe landes, and to bying from thence golde, syluer, pearles, precious stones, spices, and suche other ryche thynges. They gaue hym also the tenth part of all the reuenues and customes due vnto the kyng, of all such landes as he shoulde discouer, not doyng preiudice in any thyng to the kyng of Portugale. The particulars of this agreement were made in the towne called *Sancta Fe*; and the priuiledge of the rewarde in Granada the .xxx. daye of Apryll, the same yeere that the citie was woonne. And whereas the sayde Catholyke princes had not mony presently to dispatch Colon, Luis of .S. Angel, the kynges secretary of accounts, lent them syxe *Quentes* of *Maraz*, whiche in a grosse summe make .xvi. thousande ducades.

In the scutcheon of armes geuen to Columbus by Don Ferdinando and queene Isabella, these verses were written.

*Por Castella, y por Leon. Nuevo mundo ballo Colon.*

*For Castile and for Leon.*

*A newe worlde founde was by Colon.*

## VVhy they were called Indies.

**S**ome thynke that the people of the newe worlde were called Indians, bycause they are of the colour of the east Indians. And although (as it semmeth to me) they dyffer much in colour and fashions, yet is it true, that of India they were called Indians. India is properly called that great prouince of Asia, in the whiche great Alexander kepte his warres, and was so named of the ryuer *Indus*; and is diuided into many kyngdomes consynnyng with the same. From this great India (called the East India) came great companyes of men, as wytteth *Herodotus*, and inhabited that part of Ethiopia that lyeth betweene the sea *Bermeia* (otherwysse called the red sea, or y<sup>e</sup> gulfe of Arabia) and the ryuer of *Nilus*; all whiche regions that great Chyistian prince *Prestre Iohn* doth nowe possesse. The said Indians preuayled so muche, that they utterly chaunged the customes and name

The colour of the East Indians.

name of that lande, and called it India: by reason whereof, *Ethiopia* also hath of long tyme ben called India. And hereupon came it that *Aristotle*, *Seneca*, and certayne other olde authours sayd, that India was not farre from Spayne. After this also, of later dayes our west India was so called, of the sayde India of *Prester Iohn* where the *Portugales* had theyr trade: For the Pilot of the *Carauell* that was fyrst dyuen by forcible wynde to an unknowen lande in the west Ocean, called the same India, because the *Portugales* so called such landes as they had lately discovered eastward. *Christophor Colon* also, after the sayd Pilot, called the west landes by the same name: Albeit some that take *Colonus* for an expert Cosinographer, thynke that he so named them of the East India, as to be the furthest and unknowen ende thereof, reachyng into the West, vnder the other hemispherie or halfe globe of the earth beneath vs: affirming that when he fyrste attempted to discover the Indies, he went chiefly to seeke the ryche Ilande of *Cipango*, whiche falleth on the part of great *China* or *Cathay*, as wyrteth *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, and other: And that he shoulde sooner come thither by folowyng the course of the Sunne Westward, then agaynst the same.

### Of the colour of the Indians.

**O**ne of the marueylous thynges y God bfeith in the composition of man, is colour: whiche doublesse can not be considered without great admiration, in holdyng one to be whyte, and an other blacke, beyng colours bitterly contrary: some lyke wyse to be yelow, whiche is betweene blacke and white: and other of other colours, as it were of diuers liueries. And as these colours are to be marueyled at, euen so is it to be considered, howe they dyffer one from an other, as it were by degrees, forasmuch as some men are whyte after dyuers sortes of whitnes, yelow after diuers maners of yelow, & blacke after dyuers sortes of blackenes: & how from white they go to yelow by discolouring to browne & red, and to blacke by ashe colour, & murry, somewhat lighter then blacke, & tawny like vnto the west Indians, which are altogether in general either purple or tawny,

The colour of the west Indians.

## The colour of the Indians,

lyke vnto sodde Quines, or of the colour of Chestnuttes or O-  
 lyues, which colour is to them naturall: and not by theyr goyng  
 naked, as many haue thought: albeit theyr nakednesse haue some-  
 what helped thereto. Therefore in lyke maner, and with suche  
 diuersitie as men are commonly whyte in Europe, and blacke in  
 Affrike, euen with lyke varietie are they tawney in these  
 Indies, with diuers degrees diuersly inclynng more or lesse to  
 blacke or whyte. No lesse marueyle is it to consider, that men are  
 white in Sinitle, and blacke at the cape of Buena Speranza, and of  
 the snut colour at the ryuer of Plata, being all in equall degrees  
 from the Equinoctiall lyne. Lykewys, that the men of Affrike  
 and Asia, that lyue vnder the burne line (called *Zona Torrida*) are  
 blacke: and not they that lyue beneath, or on this syde the same  
 lyne, as in Mexico, Iucatan, Quauhtema, Lian, Nicaragua, Pana-  
 ma, Santo Domingo, Paria, Cape Saint Augustine, Lima, Quito,  
 and other landes of Peru, which touche in the same Equinoctiall.  
 For in all the tracte of these coastes, certayne blacke men were  
 founde only in Quarequa, when Vascus Nunnez of Balboa disco-  
 uered the sea of Sur. By reason whereof it may seeme, that such  
 varietie of colours proceedeth of man, and not of the earth: which  
 may wel be, although we be al bozne of Adam & Eue, & know not  
 the cause why God hath so ordeyned it, otherwise then to consider  
 that his diuine maiestie hath done this, as infinite other, to declare  
 his omnipotencie and wisdom, in such diuersities of colours, as  
 appeare not only in the nature of man, but the like also in beasts,  
 byrdes, and floures, where diuers and contrary colours are seene  
 in one litle feather, or the leaues growyng out of one litle stalke.  
 An other thing is also greatly to be noted, as touching these In-  
 dians: and this is, that their heare is not curld, as is the Moores  
 and Ethiopians that inhabite the same clime: neyther are they  
 balde, excepte very lildome, and that but litle. All whiche thynges  
 may gyue further occasions to Philosophers to searche the se-  
 cretes of nature, and complexions of men, with the nouelties of  
 the newe worlde.

Gods wyse-  
 dome & power  
 is seene in his  
 wykes.



# 3 A most auncient testimonie of the

VVest Indies, by the writing of the diuine  
Philosopher Plato.



Plato in his famous and diuine Dialogue, named *Timæus*, where he entreateth of the vniuersall nature and frame of the whole worlde, taketh for his principle the moste auncient hystorie of an Ilande, in tyme of great antiquitie, named *Athlantides*, making also mention of the kyng, people, and inhabitantes of the same: and that they kept warre agaynst the *Atheniens*, and were ouercome of them. Plato also there inducing the sayde hystorie to be rehearsed by one named *Critia*, who affirmed that he had often hearde it of his Uncle, who was in the tyme of *Solon*, one of the seuen sages of the Grekes. This *Critia* declared, that when *Solon* went into Egypt to a certayne citie named *Saim*, situate vpon the riuer of *Nilus*, where the diuision and recurring of the riuer, maketh the Ilande *Delta*, he there spake with certayne learned priestes, very skilful in knowledge of antiquities of many worlde past. Insomuch that they made mention of manye thinges that were before the flood of *Noe*, or *Deucalion*, and also before the vniuersal conflagration or burning of the worlde in the tyme of *Pheton*, forasmuche as the warres betweene the people of the sayde Ilande of *Athlantides* and the *Atheniens*, was long before the general flood, and the conflagration aforesayde. Plato induceth the priest, speaking to *Solon* in maner as foloweth.

Thinges most marueylous and true (*O Solon*) remaine in auncient wrytynges and memoire of our predecessours, and olde ages long before our tymes. But aboue all thynges, one exceedeth al admiration for the greatnesse and singularitie thereof, whiche is this: It is in our recordes of moste antiquities, that in times past your citie of *Athens* hath oftentimes kepte warres agaynst an innumerable multitude of nations whiche came from the sea *Athlantike*, in maner into al *Europe* and *Asia*: whereas now we appeareth no suche nation, forasmuche as the sayde sea is now al ouer nauigable: And yet at that tyme had,



in the mouth, and as it were in the entrie (where you place the Columnes of Hercules) an Ilande which was sayd to be much greater then all *Africa* and *Asia*, and that from thence was passage to many other Ilandes neare thereabout, and from the sayde Ilandes to the continent of syrie lande, which was right ouer agaynst it neare vnto the sea: Yet, that within the mouth, there was a litle gulf with a porte: the deepe sea without, was the true sea, and the lande without was the true continent. This Ilande was named *Atlantides*, and in it was a kyng of marueylous great power and myght, who had the dominion of the sayde Ilande, and many other, and also a great part of the continent lande whereof we haue spoken, and muche more toward our partes also, forasmuche as they were dominatours of the chiefe part of the worlde, conteynyng *Africa*, *Egypt*, and *Europe*, euen vnto the sea *Tirrhenum*. The power therefore of them being then so great, they came to inuade both your countrey and ours, and all other that are within the Columnes of Hercules. Then (O Solon) the vertue of your citie shewed it selfe famous in magnanimitie and feates of armes, with the assemblance of the other Grecians, in resysting thei great power, vntill you had driuen them out of our lands, and restored vs to our libertie. But shortly after that this enterpryse was atchiued, befel a marueylous great earthquake, and exundation or overflowing of the sea, which continued for the space of one day and nyght: In the which the earth opened it selfe, and inglutted all those valiant and warlike men, and the sayde Ilande *Atlantides* sunke into the bottome of the sea, which was the occasion that neuer from that tyme forward, any shipp coulde sayle that way, by reason of the great mudde and slime which remayned of the drowned Ilande.

This is the summe of those thynges which olde *Critias* sayde he had vnderstoode of Solon. And certaynely these wordes of Plato of the said Iland, haue caused great contention among many great Philosophers, which haue written commentaries vpon the sayde Dialogue of *Timeus* composed by Plato: Insomuche that the same in those dayes being utterly vnknowen, many haue taken this narration of Solon, for an allegorical fable, and haue interpreted the same in diuers senses and meanynges. But it  
may

may now we well appeare the true meanyng hereof to be this: that *Plato* intendyng to wypte of the vniuersall frame of the worlde, the whiche he knewe to be made an habitation for the diuine best man, and also beholdyng therein the great ornament and beautie of the heauen and starres, whereby man myght knowe his God and creatour, it myght seeme to hym a thyng to farre from reason, that only two partes thereof shoulde be inhabited, and the other part desolate and depriued of men: and that the Sunne and starres might seeme to shewe theyr lyght only halfe theyr course without profite, shynyng only vpon the sea and desolate places, destitute of man and other liuing creatures. And therefore *Plato* had in great admiration the hystorie of the sayde Egyptian priest, makyng mention of an other part of the worlde belyde *Asia*, *Europa*, and *Africa*, and thought it woorthy to be rehearsed in the beginning of his diuine Dialogue aforesayde. We ought therefore certainly to thinke our selues most bounde vnto God, that in these our tymes it hath pleased hym to reueale and discouer this secreete in the fyndyng of this newe worlde, whereby we are certaynely assured, that vnder our Pole starre, and vnder the Equinoctial line, are most goodlye and ample regions, as well and commodiously inhabited, as are other partes of the worlde best knowne vnto vs.

The testimonie of the Poet *Seneca* in his Tragedie  
*De Medea*, where by the spirite of  
 Poetical furie, he sayth,

*Venient annis*  
*Secula seris, quibus Oceanus*  
*Vincula rerum laxet, et ingens*  
*Pateat tellus, Typhisque novos*  
*Detegat Orbes,*  
*Nec sit terris, vltima Thyle.*

Whiche may be thus Englished,

In late yeeres newe worlde shalbe founde,  
 And newe landes shal then appeare on the grounde.

## The Epistle of Peter Martyr.

When Typhis Nauigation newe worlde shal fynde out,  
Then shal not Thyle for last be left out.

For then shal the Ocean dissolue his large bandes,  
And shewe soorth newe worlde, regions, and landes.

 *To the moste noble prince and catholike kyng, Charles, Perer Martyr of Angleria wisheth perpetual felicitie.*



The diuine prouidence, from the time that he fyrst created the worlde, hath reserued vnto this day the knowledge of the great and large Ocean sea: In the whiche tyme he hath opened the same, chiefly vnto you (moste mightie Prince) by the good fourtune and happie successe of your grandfather by your mother syde. The same prouidence (I knowe not by what deskenie) hath brought me out of my natieue countrey of Milane, and out of the citie of Rome (where I continued almost. x. yeeres) into Spaine, that I myght particularlye collecte these marueilous and newe thinges, which shoulde otherwise perhappes haue lien drowned in the whirlepoole of obliuion, forasimuche as the Spanyardes (men worthy great commendation) had only care to the generall inuentions of these thinges. Notwithstanding, I do not chalenge vnto me only, the thanks of the trauaile bestowed herein, whereas the chiefe rewarde thereof is due to Alcanius, vicount Cardinal, who perceauyng that I was wylling to departe out of the citie to be present at the warres of *Granatum*, dissuaded me from my purpose: But seeing that I was fully resolued to departe, exhorted & required me to write vnto him suche newes as were famous in Spaine, & worthy to be noted. I toke therefore my iourney into Spayne, chiefly for the desyre I had to see the expedition whiche was prepared agaynst the enimies of the sayth, forasimuche as in Italye, by reason of the dissention among the Princes, I coulde fynde nothyng wherewith I myght feede my wytte, beyng a younge man desyrours of knowledge and experience

of

Thyle is  
Klande.

The largenesse  
of the Ocean  
vknownen  
to this day.

Cardinal Al-  
canius.

The warres at  
*Granatum* ag-  
gaynst the  
Moors.

of thynges. I was therefore presente at the warres, from whence I writte to Cardinal Ascanius, and by sundry epistles certified hym of such thinges as I thought most woorthye to be put in memorie. But when I perceiued that his fortune was turned from a naturall mother to a stepdame, I ceased from wytyng. Yet after I sawe, that by thourthrowe of the enimies of our fayth, Spayne was purged of the Moores, as of an euil weede plucked by by the rootes, lest I shoulde bestowe my slippery yeares in unprofitable idlenesse, I was mynded to retorne to Italie. But the singuler benignitie of both the Catholyke kyng and queene now departed, and theyr large promises towarde me vpon my retorne from my legacie of Babylon, deteyned me from my purpose. Yet doth it not repent me that I drew backe my foote, aswel for that I see in no other place of the world at this tyme the lyke woorthy thinges to be done: as also that in maner throughout all Italie, by reason of the discorde of Christian Princes, I perceiued all thynges to runne headlong into ruine, the countreys to be destroyed and made fatte with humane blood, the cities sacked, virgins and matrones with theyr goods and possessions caried away as captiues, and miserable innocentes without offence to be slayne bnarmed within theyr owne houses. Of the whiche calamities, I dyd not onely heare the lamentable outcryes, but dyd also feelee the same: For euē the blood of myne owne kinsfolkes and frendes, was not free from that crueltie. As I was therefore musyng with my selfe of these thynges, the Cardinal of Arragone, after that he had seene the two fyrst bookes of my Decades wyrtten to Ascanius, required me in the name of kyng Frederike his vncke, to put forth the other eyght epistle bookes. In the meane tyme also, whyle I was boyde of al care as touching the matters of the Ocean, the Apostolicall messengers of the byshop of Rome, Leo the tenth (by whose hollosme counsaile and auctoritie we trust the calamities of Italy shalbe fynished) rayled me as it were from sleepe, & encouraged me to proceede as I had begun. To his holynesse I wyrtte two Decades, compyled in short bookes, after the maner of epistles, and added them to the fyrst, which was printed without mine aduise, as shal further appeare by the preface folowyng. But nowe I retorne to you (most

Italy disguised  
ted with  
warres.

The sequelles  
of warre.

Kyng Frederike.



## The Epistle of Peter Martyr.

Spaine subdu-  
ed from the  
Moors.  
The kyngdome  
of Naples.

The temperat-  
nesse of the E-  
quinoctiall un-  
knownen to the  
olde wyters.

Continent of  
spynne lande as  
hygge as thre  
Europes.

Riches are the  
instruments of  
conquestes.

noble Prince) from whom I haue somewhat digressed. Ther-  
fore wheras your grandfather by your mothers side, haue subdu-  
ed al Spaine vnder your dominion, except only one corner of the  
same, and haue also left you the kingdome of Naples, with the  
fruteful Islands of our seas, it is surely a great thing and worthy  
to be noted in our cronacles. But not offendyng the reuerence  
due to our predecessours, whatsoeuer from the begynnyng of the  
worlde hath been doone or wyrtten to this day, to my iudgement  
seemeth but lyttle, yf we consyder what newe landes and coun-  
treys, what newe seas, what sundry nations and tounges, what  
golde mynes, what treasures of perles they haue leste vnto your  
hyghnesse, besyde other reuennues. The whiche, what they are,  
and howe greate, these thre Decades shall declare. Come ther-  
fore most noble Prince elected of God, and enioye that hyghe  
estate of thinges not yet vnderstode to men. We offer vnto you  
the *Equinoctiall* lyne hitherto vnknowen, and burnt by the fur-  
oris heate of the sonne, and inhabitable after the opinion of the  
olde wyters, a fewe excepted: but nowe founde to be most re-  
plenished with people, faire, fruiteful, and most fortunate, with a  
thoulande Islands crowned with golde and bewtifull pearles,  
besydes that greate portion of earth supposed to be parte of the  
firme lande, excedyng in quantitie thre Europes. Come ther-  
fore and embrace this newe worlde, and suffer vs no longer to con-  
sume in delyre of your presence. From hence, from hence I say  
(most noble young Prince) shal instrumentes be prepared for  
you, wherby al the worlde shalbe vnder your obeyesance. And  
thus I byd your maiestie farewell: to whose taste if I  
shal perceaue the frutes of this my tyllage to be  
delectable, I wyll heareafter do my endeouore  
that you may receaue the same more abun-  
dauntly. From Madrid, the day be-  
fore the Calendes of October,  
In the yere of Christ  
M.D.XII.



# The fyrst Booke of the Decades of the

Ocean, written by Peter Martyr of Angleria Milenoes, counsaylour to the king of Spayne,

and Protonotarie Apostolicall to

Ascanius Sphorcia, Vicount

Cardinal. &c.



The reuerende and thankfull antiquitie was accustomed to esteeme those men as gods, by whose industrie and magnanimitie such landes and regions were discouered, as were vnknownen to theyr predecessours. But vnto vs, haupng only one God, whom we honour in triplicitie of person, this re- steth, that albeit we do not worshop that kinde of men with diuine honour, yet do we reuerence them, and woorthily marueyle at theyr noble actes and enterpryses. Vnto kynges and princes we geue due obeyssaunce, by whose gouernance and furtherance they haue ben aided to perfourme their attempts: we commend both, and for theyr iust desertes woorthily extol them. Therefore, as concerning the Ilandes of the west Ocean, lately discouered, and of the auctours of the same (whiche thyng you desyre by your letters to knowe) I wyl begyn at the fyrst aucthour thereof, lest I be iniurious to any man. Take it therefore as foloweth.

The rewards  
of vertus.

The Ilandes  
of the West  
Ocean.

Christophorus Colonus (otherwyse called Columbus) a gentle- man of Italie, borne in the citie of Genua, perswaded Ifernando and Elizabeth, catholike prynces, that he doubted not to fynde certayne Ilandes of India, nere vnto our Ocean sea, if they woulde furnyshe hym with shyppes and other thynges apparte- nyng: affyrmyng that therby not onely the Christian religion myght be enlarged, but Spayne also enryched by the great plei- tie of golde, pearles, precious stones, and spices, whiche myght be founde there. At the length three shyppes were appoynted hynt at the kinges charges: of the whiche one was a great caracte with deckes, and the other two were light marchaunte shyppes without deckes, whiche the Spaniardes call Cara- selas. Thus he departed from the costes of Spayne about the

Christophorus  
Colonus.

India.

calendes

## The fyrst Decade.

The fyrst voyage of Colonus

The Ilandes of Canarie. Gades, or Calsmals.

A league, what it conteyneth by sea. The fortunate Ilandes.

Capo Verde.

The .vii. Ilandes of Canarie. Betanchor a frenche man subdued the Ilandes of Canarie. &c.

Alphonfus Lugo.

calendes of September, in the yee of Chryste. 1492. and set forwarde on his viage, being accompanied with CC. xx. Spaniards. The fortunate Ilandes (as manye thynke them to be, whiche the Spaniards call *Canarie*, found but of late dayes) are distaunte from the Ilandes of *Gades* a thousande and two hundredeth myles, accordyng to theyr accomptes, for they say they are distant three hundred leagues: whereas suche as are expert sea men, affirme that euery league conteineth foure miles, after theyr supputations. These Ilandes were called fortunate, for the temperate ayre whiche is in them. For neyther the coldeste of wynter is sharpe vnto them, nor the heate of sommer intolerable. Yet some men are of opinion, that those were in olde tyme called the fortunate Ilandes, whiche the Portugales call *Capo Verde*. Colonus therfore sayled fyrst to the Ilandes of *Canarie*, to the intente there to refrethe his shippes with freshe water and fuell, befoze he committed hym selfe to this so laborous a viage. And because I haue heare made mention of the Ilandes of *Canarie*, it shal not be muche from my purpose, to declare howe of vnknownen they became knownen, and of sauage and wilde, better manured: For by the long course of many yeeres, they were forgotten, and remayned as vnknownen.

These seuen Ilandes (therefore) called the *Canaries*, were founde by chaunce by a frenche man, called *Betanchor*, by the permission of queene Katharine, protectrix of king John her sonne, while he was yet in his nonage, about the yee of Chryste. M. CCCC. A. This *Betanchor* inuaded two of these Ilandes called *Lancelotus* and *Fortisventura*, which he inhabited & broughe to better culture. He being dead, his sonne and heire solde bothe the sayde Ilandes to certayne Spaniards.

After this, *Farnandus Peraria* and his wyfe, inuaded *Ferreia* and *Gomera*. The other three were subdued in our time. *Grancanaria*, by *Petrus de Vera*, citizen of the noble citie of *Xericium*, and *Micheael* of *Moxica*. *Palma* and *Tenerifen*, by *Alphonfus Lugo*, at the kings charges. *Gomera* and *Ferreia* were easily subdued: But the matter went harde with *Alphonfus Lugo*. For that naked and wyld nation, fyghtyng only with stones and clubbes, droue his armie to flight at the first assaulte, and slue about foure hundred of his men: But at the length he overcame them. And thus all the

the Ilandes of *Canarie* were added to the dominion of *Spainye*. From these Ilandes *Colonus* directyng his voyage toward the west, following the falling of the sunne, but declining somewhat toward the left hande, sayled on forwarde. xxxiii. dayes continually, hauyng only the fruition of the heauen and the water. Then the *Spanyarde*s whiche were accompanied with hym, began first to murmur secretly among them selues, and shortly after with wordes of reproche spake euil of *Colonus* theyr gouernour, and consulted with them selues, eyther to rydde hym out of the way, or els to cast hym into the sea : ragyng that they were deceyued of a stranger, an outlandyshe man, a *Ligurian*, a *Genues*, and brought into such dangerous places, that they might neuer retorne agayne. And after. xxxiii. dayes were past, they furiously cryed out against him, and threatened him that he shoulde passe no further. But he euer with gentle wordes and large promises, appeased their furie, and prolonged day after day, some tyme desyryng them to beare with hym yet a whyle, and some tyme putting them in remembrance that yf they shoulde attempt any thing against him, or otherwyle disobey hym, it would be reputed for treason. Thus after a fewe dayes, with cheareful hartes they espied the lande long looked for. In this first nauigation, he discovered. vi. ilandes, wherof two were exceeding great: Of whiche, the one he called *Hispaniola*, and the other *Iohanna*. But at that tyme he knew not perfectly that *Iohanna* (otherwyle called *Cuba*) was an ilande. As they coasted along by the shore of certayne of these ilandes, they hearde Nyghtyngales syng in the thicke wooddes in the moneth of Nouember. They founde also great ryuers of freshe water, and naturall hauens, of capacite to harbour great nauies of shippes. Sayling by the coastes of *Iohanna*, from the north poynt to the west, he rode litle lesse then eight hundred miles (for they cal it a hundred and fourescore leagues) supposing that it had ben the continent or fyrmelande, because he coulde neither fynde the landes ende, nor any token of the ende, as farre as he could iudge with his eye : wherfore he determined to turne backe agayne, beyng partly thereto enforced by the roughnesse of the sea, for the sea bankes of the ilande of *Iohanna*, by sundrye wyndynges and turnynges, bende them selues so muche toward the north, that the north northeast winde

*Colonus men  
rebel agaynst  
hym.*

*Faire wordes  
and promises.*

*Hispaniola.  
Iohanna.*

*Nyghtingales  
syng in No-  
uember.*

## The fyrst Decade.

roughly tossed the shypps by reason of the winter. Turning therfore the stemmes of his shyppes toward the East, he affirmed that he had found the lande of *Ophir*, whither *Solomons* shippes sayled for golde. But the discription of the *Colinographers* well considered, it seemeth that both these, and the other landes adioynnyng, are the islands of *Antilia*. This lande he called *Hispaniola*, on whose north syde as he approached neare to the lande, the keele or bottome of the biggest vessell ranne vpon a blynde rocke couered with water, and cloue in sunder: but the playnenesse of the rocke was a helpe to them that they were not drowned. Hakyng haste therfore with the other two shypps to helpe them, they brought awaye al the men without hurte. Here comming fyrst a land, they sawe certayne men of the Lande, who perceiuyng an vnknownen nation comming toward them, flocked together, and ranne al into the thicke woods, as it had ben hares coursed with grehoundes. Our men pursuing them, tooke onely one woman, whom they brought to the ships: where fylling her with meate and wyne, and appareling her, they let her depart to her compayne. Shortly after a greate multitude of them came runnyng to the shore to behold this newe nation, whom they thought to haue descended from heauen. They cast them selues by heapes into the sea, & came swimming to the shippes, brynging gold with them, whiche they chaunged with our men for earthen pottes, drynking glasses, poyntes, pinnes, hawkes bels, looking glasses, & such other trifles. Thus growing to further familiaritie, our men were honozably entertained of the king of that part of the land, whose name was *Guaccanarillus*: for it hath many kyngs, as when *Eneas* arriued in *Italy*, he found *Latium* diuided into many kingdomes and prouinces, as *Latium*, *Mezentium*, *Turnum*, and *Tarchontem*, which were separated with narrow boundes, as shal more largely appeare hereafter. At the euen tide about the falling of the sonne, when our men went to prayer, and kneeled on their knees after the maner of y<sup>e</sup> Christians, they dyd the lyke also. And after what maner so euer they sawe them pray to the crosse, they folowed them in al poyntes as wel as they coulde. They shewed much humanitie towards our men, and helped them with theyr lyghters or gual boates (which they cal *Canoas*) to vnlade their broken shippes,

The Lande of  
*Ophir*.

The Landes  
of *Antilia*.

A shypwracke.

The people of  
the Lande.

Naked people.

Expert swim-  
mers.

Sold for earth  
and glasse.

Many kynges

Religious and  
humane people

Canoas.



Mypppe, and that with suche celeritie and cherefulnesse, that no frende for frende, or kynseman for kynseman, in such case moued with pittie, coulde do moze. Theyr boates are made only of one tree, made holowe with a certaine sharpe stone (for they haue no yron) and are very long and narrowe. Many affirme that they haue seene some of them with fortye oyes. The wilde and myscheuious people called *Canibales*, or *Caribes*, whiche were accustomed to eate mans fleshe (& called of the olde writers, *Anthropophagi*) molest them exceedyngly, inuading their countrey, takyng them captiue, kyllyng & eatyng them. As our men sayled to the ilandes of these meke and humane people, they left the ilands of the *Canibales*, in maner in the middelt of theyr biage toward the south. They complayned that theyr ilands were no lesse vexed with the IncurSIONS of these manhuntynge *Canibales* when they goe forth a rouyng to seeke theyr pray, then are other tame beastes, of Lions and Tigers. Such chyldren as they take, they geld to make them fat, as we do cocke chickens and young hogges, and eate them when they are wel fedde: of suche as they eate, they fyrst eate the intralles and extreme partes, as handes, feete, armes, necke, and head. The other most fleshye partes, they poulder for stowe, as we do pestels of porke, and gammondes of bakon: yet do they absteyne from eatyng of women, and counte it byle. Therfore suche young women as they take, they kepe for increafe, as we do hennes to leye eggges: the olde women, they make theyr drudges. They of the ilandes (which we may nowe cal ours) bothe the men and y women, when they perceiue the *Canibales* commyng, haue none other thynge but onely to flee: for although they vse very sharpe arrowes made of reedes, yet are they of small force to repressse y furie of the *Canibales*: for euen they them selues confesse, that ten of the *Canibales* are able to ouercome a hundred of them if they encountre with them. Theyr meate is a certayne roote, which they cal *Ages*, muche lyke a nauetwe roote in fourme and greatnesse, but of sweete tast, much lyke a greene chestnutte. They haue also an other kynde of rootes, which they call *Iucca*, *Jucca*. whereof they make bread in kyke maner. They vse *Ages* more often roasted or sodden, then to make bread thereof. But they neuer eate *Iucca*, except it be first sliced and pressed (for it is full of lycoure) and then baked or sodden. But this is to be

*Monorpla.*  
They haue  
no iron.

*Canibales, or*  
*Caribes.*  
*Anthropo-*  
*phagi.*

The crueltie of  
the *Canibales*.

*Ages.*  
Rootes in the  
steele of meate.  
*Iucca.*  
Bread of rootes



## The fyrst Decade.

An hearbe of  
strange nature.

Maizium.

Golde in esti-  
mation.

Golde in the  
sandes of ri-  
uers.

Serpentes  
without ve-  
nime.  
Turtle doues.  
Duckes.  
Popiniapes.  
Plini.

These Ilandes  
are part of  
India.  
The Indians  
are Antipodes  
to the Spas  
mpardes.

Aristotle.  
Seneca.

marueyled at, that the iuice of this roote is a popson as strong as *Aconitum*, so that if it be drunke, it causeth present death, and yet the bread made of the masse thereof, is of good taste and hol- some, as they all haue proued. They make also another kynde of bread of a certayne pulle, called *Panicum*, muche like vnto wheate, whereof is great plentie in the Dukedome of Millane, Spayne, and *Cranatum*. But that of this Countrey is longer by a spanne, somewhat sharpe towarde the ende, and as bygge as a mans arme in y<sup>e</sup> bzawne: the graynes wherof are set in a mar- ueylous order, & are in fourme somewhat lyke a Pease. Whyle they be soure and vnripe, they are whyte, but when they are ripe, they be very blacke, when they are broken, they be whiter then snowe: this kynde of grayne they call *Maizium*. Golde is of some estimation among them: for some of them hang certayne small peeces thereof at theyr eares and nesethrylles. A litle be- yonde this place, our men went a lande for freshe water, where they chaunced vpon a riuer, whose lande was myxed with muche golde. They founde there no kindes of foure footed beastes, ex- cept thre kindes of litle conies. These ilandes also nouryshe serpentes, but suche as are without hurt. Likewise wilde geese, turtle doues, and duckes, muche greater then ours, and as white as swannes, with heades of purple colour. Also *Popiniapes*, of the whiche some are greene, some yelow, & some lyke them of *India*, with yelow rynges about theyr neckes, as *Plinie* descri- beth them. Of these they brought fourtie with them, of moste spuely and dilectable colours, hauyng theyr feathers enterming- led with greene, yelow, and purple, whiche varietie delyghteth the sense not a litle. Thus muche thought I good to speake of *Popyniapes* (ryght noble prynces) specially to this intent, that albeit the opinion of *Christophorus Colonus* (who affyrmeth these ilandes to be part of *India*) doth not in all poyntes agree with the iudgement of auncient wyrters as touchyng the bygnesse of the Sphere and compasse of the Globe, as concernyng the na- uigable portion of the same being vnder vs, yet the *Popiniapes* and many other thynges brought from thence, doo declare that these Ilandes sauour somewhat of *India*, eyther beyng neare vn- to it, or els of the same nature: forasmuche as *Aristole* also, about the ende of his booke *de Celo & Mundo*, and likewise *Seneca*,  
with

with diuers other authours not ignorant in Cosmographie, do affirme that *India* is no long tracte by sea, distant from *Spain* by the west Ocean, for the soyle of these ilandes byngeth forth *Maltys*, *Aloes*, and sundry other sweete gummes and spyes, as doth *India*, Cotton also of the *Gossampine* tree, as in *India* in the countrey of the people called *Seres*.

The languages of all the nations of these ilandes, may well be wyrtten with our Latine letters. For they cal heauen *Turei*. A house *Boa*. Golde *Cauni*. A good man, *Taino*. Nothing, *Mayani*. Al other words of theyr language, they pronounce as plainly as we do the Latine tongue. In these ilandes they founde no trees knowen vnto them, but *Pine* apple trees, and *Date* trees, and those of marueylous heyght, and exceeding harde, by reason of the great moistnesse and fatnesse of the grounde, with continual and temperate heate of the sunne, whiche endureth so al the whole yere. They playnely affirme the ilande of *Hispaniola* to be the moste fruitefull lande that the heauen compasseth about, as shall more largely appeare hereafter in the particular description of the same, which we entende to set forth when we shalbe better instructed. Thus making a league of frendshyp with the king, and leauing with hym .xxviii. men to searche the ilande, he departed to *Spain*, taking with hym tenne of the inhabitants to learne the *Spanishe* tongue, to the intent to vse them afterward for interpreters. *Colonus* therfore at his returne was honourably receiued of the kyng and queene, who caused hym to lye in theyr presence, whiche is a token of great loue and honour among the *Spaniards*. He was also made Admiral of the Ocean, and his brother gouernour of the ilande.

Toward the second voyage he was furnished with .xvii. ships, wherof thre were great carackes of a thousande tunne. xii. were of that sort which the *Spaniards* cal *Carauelas*, without deckes, and two other of the same sorte somewhat bygger, and more apt to beare deckes, by reason of the greatnesse of theyr mastes. He had also a thousande and two hundred armed footemen well appointed: among which were many artificers, as smythes, Carpenters, myners, and suche other, certayne horzmen also, well armed: Lykewylse mares, sheepe, heyghesters, and suche other of both kindes for encrease: Lykewylse al kinde of pulse, or grayne,

*India* not farre from *Spain*.  
*Maltys*.  
*Aloe*.  
*Gossampine* cotton or bomba.  
*Seres*.

The language of these *Indians*.

Trees & fruites vnknewe to vs

Fat and moist grounde.  
Heate continual & temperate.  
The fruitefulnessse of *Hispaniola*.

The seconde voyage of *Colonus*.

## The first Decade.

Come & feedes  
to sowe.

Tooles and  
artyllerie.

Water drop-  
ping from a  
tree contin-  
allpe.

and corne, as wheate, barley, rye, beanes, and pease, and suche other, as wel for foode as to sowe: besyde vines, plantes, and feedes, of suche trees, fruites, and hearbes, as those countreyes lacke, and (not to be forgotten) sundry kyndes of artyllerie and iron tooles, as bowes, arrowes, crof bowes, bylles, hargabusses, brode swoordes, large targettes, pykes, mattockes, shouelles, hammers, nayles, sawes, axes, and suche other. Thus beyng furnished accordyngly, they set for ward from the Ilandes of *Gades* (nowe called *Cales*) the seuenth day before the Calendes of October, in the yeere of Christ. 1493. and arriued at the ilandes of *Canarie* at the Calendes of October: Of these ilandes, the last is called *Ferrea*, in whiche there is no other water that may be drunke, but only that is geathered of the deawe, which continually distylleth from one only tree, growyng on the hyghest bancke of the ilande, and falleth into a rounde trenche made with mans hande: we were enfourmed of these thynges within fewe dayes after his departure. What shall succede, we wyl certifie you hereafter. Thus fare ye well, from the courte, at the Ides of *November*. 1493.

### The seconde booke of the first Decade, to *Ascanius Sphorcia*, Vicount Cardinal. &c.



Du repeate (ryght honourable pryncer) that you are desyrous to knowe what newes we haue in *Spayne* from the newe worlde, and that those things haue greatly delpted you, whiche I wrote vnto your hyghnesse of the fyrst Nauigation: You shal nowe therefore receiue what hath succeeded. *Methymna Campi*, is a famous towne in high *Spayne*, in respect from you, and is in that parte of *Spayne* whiche is called *Castella Vetus*, beyng distant from *Gades* about. xl. myles. Here the courte remayned, when about the. ix. of the Calendes of Apryll, in this yeere of ninetie and soure, there were postes sent to the king and queene, certifying them that there were twelue shippes come from the newe ilandes, and arriued at *Gades*: but the gouernour

*Methymna  
Campi.  
Castella Vetus.*

*Gades.*

of the shippes sent woorde to the kyng and queene, that he had none other matter to certifie them of by the postes, but only that the Admirall with fise shippes, and fourescore and ten men, remayned styll in *Hispaniola* to searche the secretes of the ilande, and that as touchyng other matters, he hym selfe would shortly make relation in theyr presence by woorde of mouth: therefore the day before the Ides of Apryl, he came to the Courte hym selfe. What I learned of hym, and other saythfull and credible men, whiche came with hym from the Admirall, I wil rehearse vnto you, in suche order as they declared the same to me, when I demaunded them: take it therefore as foloweth. The third day of the Ides of October, departyng from *Ferre*, the laste of the ilandes of *Canarie*, and from the coastes of Spayne, with a *Flotte* of seuentene shippes, they sayled .xxi. dayes before they came to any ilande, inclining of purpose more towarde the left hand then at the fyrst voyage, folowing the north northeast winde, and arriued fyrst at the ilandes of the *Canibales* or *Caribes*, of whiche ilandes of the *Canibales*. only the same was knowen to our men. Among these, they chaunced fyrst vpon one, so beset with trees, that they coulde not see so muche as an elle space of bare earth or stonie ground, this they called *Dominica*, because they found it on the Sunday. They taried here no time, because they saw it to be desart. In the space of these .xxi. dayes, they thynke that they sayled eyght hundred & xx. leagues, the north northeast wynde was so ful with them, and so freshly folowed the sterne of theyr shippes. After they had sayled a lytle further, they espied diuers ilandes replenyshed with sundry kindes of trees, from the whiche came fragrant sauours of spyes and sweete Gummes: here they sawe neyther man nor beast, except certayne *Lysartes* of huge bygnesse, as they reported which went aland to viewe the countrey. This iland they called *Galana* or *Galanta*: from the cape or poynt of this ilande, espying a mountayne a farre of, they sayled thither. About .xxx. myles from this mountayne, they sawe a ryuer descendyng, which seemed to be a token of some great and large flood. This is the fyrst lande whiche they founde inhabited from the ilandes of *Canarie*, and is an ilande of the *Canibales*, as they learned by the interpretours whiche they tooke with them from *Hispaniola* vnto Spayne at theyr fyrst voyage. Searching the ilande, they

The Ilande  
of Ferrea.

Ilandes of the  
Canibales.

The Ilande of  
Dominica.

Lysartes.

The Ilande of  
Galanta.

The Iland of  
Guadalupea.



Villages of. xx.  
or. xxx houses.

The building  
of theyr houses.

Gossampine  
cotton.

Bombase.  
Hangong  
beddes.

Images.

Fine cookerie.

Arrowheades  
of bones.

they found innumerable villages of. xx. houses, or. xxx. at the most, set rounde about in order, makyng the streete in compasse lyke a market place. And forasmuche as I haue made mention of theyr houses, it shall not be greatly from my purpose to describe in what manner they are buylded: They are made rounde lyke belles or rounde pavillions. Theyr frame is rayled of exceedyng high trees, set close togeather, and fast rampaired in the ground, so standing aslope, and bending inwarde, that the toppes of the trees ioine togeather, and beare one agaynst another, hauyng also within the house certaine strong and short proppes or postes whiche susteyne the trees from fallyng. They couer them with the leaues of date trees, and other trees strongly compact and hardened, wherwith they make them close from winde and weather. At the shorte postes or proppes within the house, they tye ropes of the cotton of gossampine trees, or other ropes made of certayne long & rough rootes, much lyke vnto the shrubbe called *Spartum*, wherof in old tyme they bled to make bandes for vynes, and gables and ropes for shypes. These they tye ouerthwarte the house from poste to poste, on these they lay as it were certaine matresses made of the cotton of gossampine trees, whiche growe plentifully in theselandes. This cotton the Spanyards cal *Algodon*, and the Italians *Bombasine*: and thus they sleepe in hangyng beddes. At the entrance of one of theyr houses, they sawe two images of wood lyke vnto serpentes, whiche they thought had beene suche idols as they honour: but they learned afterwarde that they were set there onely for comelynesse, for they knowe none other god then the sunne and moone, although they make certaine images of gossampine cotton to y<sup>e</sup> similitude of suche phantasies as they say appeare to them in the nyght. Our men found in theyr houses, al kinde of earthen vessels, not muche vnlyke vnto ours. They founde also in theyr kytchens, mans fleshe, duckes fleshe, & goose fleshe, al in one pot, and other on the fyres redy to be layde to the fyre. Entyng into their inner lodgynges, they founde faggottes of the bones of mens armes and legges, whiche they reserue to make heades for theyr arrows, because they lacke iron, the other bones they cast away when they haue eaten the fleshe. They founde lykwylse the head of a young man fastened to a poste, and yet bleedyng. They haue

In some byllages, one great hall or pallace, about the whiche they common houses are placed : to this they resort, as often as they come together to playe . When they perceiued the coming of our men, they fledde. In theyr houses they founde also aboute thirtie chyldren captiues, whiche were reserved to be eaten, but our men tooke them away to vse them for interpreters. Searching more diligently the inner parts of the island, they founde seuen other ryuers, bygger then this whiche we spake of before, runnyng through the ilande, with fruitefull and pleasaunt bankes, delectable to beholde . This ilande they called *Guadalupea*, for the similitude that it hath to the mount *Guadalupus* in *Spainne*, where the image of the virgin *Marie* is religiously honoured, but the inhabitauntes call it *Carucueria*, or *Queraquiera* : It is the cheefe habitation of the *Canibales*. They brought from this island. vii. *Popyniayes*, bigger then *Phefants*, muche dyfferyng from other in colour, hauyng theyr backs, brestes, and bellies of purple colour, and theyr wynges of other variable colours : in al these ilands is no lesse plentie of *Popyniayes*, then with vs of *sparrowes* or *starelynges*. As we bring by capons and hennes to franke and make them fat, so doo they these bigger kindes of *Popyniayes* for the same purpose. After that they had thus searched the ilande, and driuen these *Canibales* to flight (whiche ran away at theyr fyrst appoche, as soone as they had espyed them) they called their company together, and as soone as they had broken þ. *Canibales* boates or lighters (whiche they cal *Canoas*) they loosed theyr ankers the day before the Ides of *November*, and departed from *Guadalupea*. *Colonus* the Admiral, for the desyre he had to see his companions, whiche at his fyrst voyage he left the yeere before in *Hispaniola* to search the countrey, let passe many ilandes both on his ryght hande, & left hande, and sapled directly thither. By the way there appeared from the north a great iland, which the captiues that were taken in *Hispaniola*, called *Madanino*, or *Matinino*, affirming it to be inhabited only with women, to whō the *Canibales* haue access at certayne tymes of the yeere, as in olde tyme the *Thracians* had to the *Amazones* in the ilande of *Lesbos* : the men chyldren they sende to theyr fathers, but the women they keepe with them selues.

The mount  
*Guadalupus*.

*Carucueria*.

*Popyniayes*  
bigger then  
*Phefantes*.

The *Canibales*  
driue to flight.

*Matinino* an  
Ilande of wo-  
men.

## The fyrst Decade.

selues. They haue great and strong causes of defence in the ground, to the whiche they flee for safeguard if any men resort vnto them at any other tyme then is appoynted, and there defende them selues with bowes and arrowes, agaynst the violence of suche as attempte to inuade them. They coulde not at this tyme approche to this ilande, by reason of the North northeast wynde, which blew so vehemently from the same, whereas they nowe folowed the East southeaste. After they departed from Madanino, and sayled by the space of .xl. myles, they passed not farre from an other ilande which the captiues sayde to be verie populous, and replenished with al thynges necessarie for the life of man. This they called *Mons Serratus*, because it was full of mountaynes. The captiues further declared, that the *Canibales* are wont at some time to goe from theyr owne coastes aboue a thousande myles to hunt for men. The day folowing, they sawe an other ilande, the whiche because it was rounde, they called *Sancta Maria Rotunda*. The next day, they founde an other, whiche they called *S. Martini*, whiche they let passe also, because they had no leasure to carye. Lykewyse the thirde daye they espied an other, whose *Diametral* syde, extendyng from the East to the west, they iudged to be a hundred & fiftie myle. They affirme all these ilandes to be maruelous fayre and fruitefull: This last, they called *Sancta Maria Antiqua*. Saylyng forward, and leapyng many other ilandes, after they had sayled about fourtie myles, they chaunced vpon an other, much bigger then any of the rest, which thynhabitans call *Ay Ay*, but they named it *Insula crucis*: Here they cast anker to fetch freshe water. The Admiral also commaunded .xxx. men to goe a lande out of his owne shipp, and to search the ilande: Here they founde foure dogges on the shore. The Inhabitants are *Canibales*, and maruelous experte in shooting, as wel women as men, and vse to infect their arrowes with popson. When they had taried there two dayes, they sawe a farre of a *Canoa*, in the whiche were eight men, and as many women, haupyng with them bowes and arrowes. They fiercely assailed our men without all feare, and hurt some of them with theyr venomous arrowes. Among these there was a certayne woman, to whom the other gaue reuerence, and obeyed as though she were theyr queene. Her sonne wayted vppon her, beyng a young man, strongly made,

The Ilandes  
of Mons Serratus.  
Hunting for  
men.

*Sancta Maria  
Rotunda.*

*Sanctus Martinus.*

*Sancta Maria  
Antiqua.*

*Insula crucis,*  
an Ilande of  
the *Canibales*.

The *Canibales*  
are expert Archers.

Arrowes infected with  
venime.



made, of terrible and frownyng countenance, and a Lions face. Our men, leaste they shoulde take the more hurte by beyng wounded a farre of, thought it beste to ioyne with them. Therefore with al speede, setting forward with their oyes the brigandine in whiche they were sette alande, they ouerturned their Canoes with a great violence, whiche being ouerwhelmed, they notwithstanding, as wel the women as the men, swimming, caste theyr dartes at our men thicke and threefolde. At the length, gathering them selues togeather vpon a rocke couered with the water, they fought manfully vntyll they were ouercome and taken, one beyng slayne, and the queenes sonne sore wounded. When they were brought into the Admirals shippe, they dyd no more put of their fiercenes and cruel countenaunces, then do the Lions of *Lybia* when they perceiue them selues to be bounde in chaynes. There is no man able to beholde them, but he shall feele his bowels grate with a certayne horrour, nature hath endued them with so terrible menacing and cruell aspect. This coniecture I make of mee selfe, & other which oftentimes went with me to see them at *Methymna Campi*: but nowe to retorne to the voyage. Proceeding thus further and further, more then fyue hundred myles, fyrste towarde the west south west, then towarde the south west, and at the length towarde the west north west, they entred into a mayne large sea, hauyng in it innumerable ilandes, marueylously dyfferyng one from another, for some of them were very fruitefull, and full of hearbes and trees, other some, very drye, barren, and rough, with high rockye mountaynes of stone, whercof some were of bygyht blew, or asurine colour, and other glysteryng whyte: wherefore they supposed them, by good reason, to be the mynes of mettalles and precious stones: but the roughnesse of the sea, and multitude of ilandes standyng so thicke togeather, hyndered them so, that they coulde cast no anker, lest the bigger vesselles shoulde runne vpon the rockes: therefore they deferred the searchyng of these ilandes vntyll another tyme: they were so manye, and stood so thicke, that they coulde not number them, yet the smaller vesselles whiche drew no great deapth, entred among them, and numbred fourtie and syxe ilandes, but the bygger vesselles kept aloofe in the mayne sea, for feare of the rockes.

in conflict with  
the Canibales.

The fiercenes  
& terrible counte-  
enance of the  
Canibales.

*Methymna*  
*Campi.*

Innumerable  
Ilandes.

The mynes of  
mettals & pre-  
cious stones.

They



## The fyrst Decade.

The sea called  
Archipelagus.

Insula. S. Io:  
hannes or Insu:  
gena.

Death for death

The mountaynes are col:  
der then the  
playnes.

From Domi:  
nica to Hispani:  
ola five hun:  
dred leagues.

The Spaniards left in the  
Ilande are  
slayne.  
Kyping Guacca:  
narillus re:  
belled.

They call the sea where this multiende of ilandes are situate, *Archipelagus*. From this tracte proceeding forward, in the midde way there lyeth an ilande whiche thynhabitantcs call *Burichina*, or *Buchena*: but they named it *Insula. S. Iohannis*. Dyuers of them whom we had deliuered from the *Canibales*, sayde that they were borne in this ilande, affirming it to be verye populous and frutesfull, hauing also many faire wooddes and hauens. Ther is deadly hatred and continual battayle betwene them and the *Canibales*. They haue no boates to passe from their owne coastes to the *Canibales*: but if it be their chaunce to ouercome them when they make incursion into theyr countrey to seeke their praye (as it sometyme happeneth, the fortune of warre being vncertayne) they serue them with like cause, requiting death for death. For one of them mangeleth an other in piieces, and rosteth them, and eate them euen before their eyes. They tarped not in this ilande: Yet in the west angle therof, a fewe of them went a lande for freshe water, and founde a great and high house after the maner of their buylding, hauing .xii. other of their vulgare cotages placed about the same, but were all leste desolate, whether it were that they resorted to the mountaynes by reason of the heate which was that tyme of the yeere, and to returne to the playne when the ayre waxeth coulde, or els for feare of the *Canibales* whiche make incursion into the ilande at certayne seasons. In al this ilande is only one kyng. The south syde hereof extendeth about two hundred myles. Shortly after, they came to the ilande of *Hispaniola*, being distant from the firste ilande of the *Canibales*, fyue hundred leagues. Here they founde al thinges out of order, and theyr felowes slayne whiche they leste here at their fyrst voyage. In the begynnynge of *Hispaniola* (hauing in it many regions and kyngdomes as we haue sayde) is the region of *Xamana*, whose kyng is named *Guaccanarillus*. This *Guaccanarillus* toynded frendship with our men at the fyrst voyage, and made a league with them: but in the absense of the Admirall, he rebelled, and was the cause of our mens destruction, although he dissimuled the same, and pretended frendship at the Admirales returne. As our men sayled on yet a litle further, they espied a long *Canoa* with many oars, in whiche was the brother of *Guaccanarillus*, with only one man wayting on hym.

He

He brought with him two images of golde, whiche he gaue the Admirall in the name of his brother, and tolde a tale in his language as concernyng the death of our men, as they proued afterwarde, but at this tyme had no regarde to his communication for lacke of interpretours, whiche were eyther all dead, or escaped and stolne away when they dwele neare the landes. But of the ten, seuen dyed by chaunge of ayre and dyet. The inhabitantes of these landes haue ben euer so vsed to lyue at libertie, in play and pastyme, that they can hardly away with the yoke of seruitude, which they attempte to shake of by all meanes they may. And surely yf they had receiued our religion, I woulde thynke they lyfe moste happie of all men, yf they myght therewith enioye theyr auncient libertie. A fewe thinges contente them, hauyng no delyte in suche superfluities, for the whiche in other places men take infinite paynes, and commit manye vnlawfull actes, and yet are neuer satisfied, whereas manye haue to much, and none yenough. But among these symple soules, a fewe clothes serue the naked: weightes and measures are not needeful to suche as can not skyl of craft and deceyte, and haue not the vse of pestiferous money, the seede of innumerable mischeueues: so that yf we shall not be ashamed to confesse the trueth, they seeme to liue in that golden worlde of the whiche olde wyters speake so much, wherein men lyued symple and innocentlye without enforcement of lawes, without quarrelling, iudges, and libelles, content only to satisfie nature, without further vexation for knowledge of thynges to come. Yet these naked people also are tormented with ambition, for y desire they haue to enlarge their dominions: by reason wherof they kepe war and destroy one another, from the whiche plague I suppose the golden worlde was not free. For euen then also, *Cede, non cedam*, that is, geue place, and I will not geue place, had entred among men. But nowe to returne to the matter from which we haue digressed. The admirall desyrous to know further of y death of his men, sent for *Guaccanerillus* to come to him to his ship, dissimulyng that he knewe any thyng of the matter. After that he came aboard shyp, saluting the Admirall and his company, geuing also certayne golde to the captaynes and officers, turned hym to the women captiues, whiche not long befoze our men had deliuered from

Two images  
of golde.

Libertie and  
idlenesse.

A happie kinde  
of lyfe.

Superfluitie.

Manye haue to  
much, and none  
yenough.

The golden  
worlde.

Naked men  
troubled with  
ambition.

Geue place;

The Admirall  
sendeth for  
the kyng.

No horses in  
the Flandes.

A time for all  
thynges.

A desperate  
adventure of  
a woman.

Clodia of  
Rome.

Guaccanarillus  
is sought.  
Melchior.

from the *Canibales*, and earnestly beholding one of them whom our men called Katherine, he spake gently vnto her. And thus when he had seene and marueyled at the horses, and such other thyngs as were in the shyppe, vnknown to them, and had with a good grace and meryly asked leaue of the Admirall, he departed. Yet some there were whiche counsayled the Admirall to keepe hym styll, that yf they myght by any meanes prooue that he was consentyng to the death of our men, he myght be punished accordyngly. But the Admirall consyderyng that it was yet no time to incense the inhabitantes mindes to wyath, dismissed him. The next day folowyng, the kynges brother resortyng to the shyppes, eyther in his owne name or in his brothers, seduced the women. For on the next nyght about mydnyght, this Katherine, aswell to recouer her owne libertie, as also her fellows, being suborned thereto either by the king or his brothers promises, attempted a muche more difficult and daungerous adventure then dyd *Clodia* of Rome, whiche beyng in hostage with other maydes to the king *Porcena*, deceiued her keepers, and rode ouer y<sup>e</sup> riuer *Tiber*, with the other virgins which were pledged with her. For whereas they swamme ouer the riuer on horsebacke, this Katherine with seuen other women, trustyng only to the strength of their owne armes, swam aboue thre long miles, and that also at suche time as the sea was somewhat rough: for euen so farre of from the shore lay the shyppes at rode, as nygh as they coulde coniecture. But our men folowing them with the shipboates, by the same light seene on the shore, whereby the women were ledde, tooke thre of them, supposing that Katherine with the other foure, went to *Guaccanarillus*: for in the spyng of the morning, certaine messengers being sent vnto him by the Admirall, had intelligence that he was fledde with al his familie and stuffe, and the women also, whiche thyng ministred further suspicion that he was consentyng to the death of our men. Wherefore the Admirall sent forth an armie of thre hundred men, ouer the which he appoynted one *Melchior* to be captaine, wyllyng him to make diligent search to fynd out *Guaccanarillus*. *Melchior* therefore with the smallest vesselles entryng into the countrey by the riuers, and scouryng the shores, chaunced into certaine crooked goulles, defended with fve litle & steepe hilles,

suppo

supposing that it had byn the mouth of some great ryuer. He  
 sounde heare also a very commodious and safe haven, and there-  
 fore named it *Portus Regalis*. They say that the enterance of this  
 is so crooked and bending, that after the shypys are once within  
 the same, whether they turne them to the left hand, or to the right,  
 they can not perceue where they came in, vntyl they returne to  
 the mouth of the ryuer, although it be there so brode that three of  
 the byggest vessels may sayle togeather on a froont. The sharpe  
 and high hylles on the one syde and on the other, so brake the  
 wynde, that they were vncertaine how to rule theyr sayles. In the  
 myddle gulf of the ryuer, there is a promontorie or point of the  
 land with a pleasant groue, full of *Poppingiayes* and other byrdes,  
 which byrde therein sing very sweetly: They perceued also  
 that two ryuers of no smal largenesse fell into the haven. Whyle  
 they thus searched the lande betwene both, *Melchior* espied a  
 high house a farre off, where supposing that *Guaccanarillus* had  
 lye byd, he made towarde it: and as he was goyng, there met  
 hym a man with a frowning countenance, and a grimme looke,  
 with a hundred men folowynge hym, armed with bowes and ar-  
 rowes, and long and sharpe staues lyke iauelynnes, made  
 harde at the endes with fyre, who appoaching towarde our  
 men, spake out aloud with a terrible voyce, saying that they were  
*Taini* (that is) noble men, and not *Canibales*: but when our men  
 had geuen them signes of peace, they left both theyr weapons  
 and fiercenesse. Thus geuyng ech of them certayne haukes bels,  
 they tooke it for so great a rewarde, that they desyred to enter  
 bondes of neare frendshyp with vs, and feared not immediatly to  
 submit them selues vnder our power, and resorted to our shypys  
 with their presentes. They that measured the house (beyng made  
 in round fourme) found it to be from syde to syde, xxxii. great pa-  
 ces, compassed about with xxx. other bulgare houses, hauyng in  
 them many beames crosse ouer, & couered with reedes of sundry  
 colours, wryethed & as it were weaued with marueilous art. Whe  
 our men asked some of them where they might find *Guaccanaril-  
 lus*? They answered, that that region was none of his, but theyr  
 kynges, beyng there present: Yet they sayde they supposed that  
*Guaccanarillus* was gone from the playne to the mountaynes.

*Poppingiayes*  
and byrdes.

*Taini*.

*Haukes belles*

*A large house*.

*Reedes of sun-  
dy colours*.

*Makyng*



## The first decade.

**Cacicus.**

Makynge theretofore a brotherly league with this *Cacicus* (that is to say a kynge) they returned to the Admirall, to make relation what they had seene and hearde: whereupon he sent forth diuers other Centurians with theyr hundredes, to searche the countrey yet further: among whiche were *Hoiedus* and *Gornulannus*, noble young gentlemen, and of great courage. And as they went towarde the mountaynes to seeke *Guacanerillus*, diuiding the mountaynes betweene them, one of them founde on the one syde thereof, foure ryuers fallynge from the same mountaynes, and the other founde thre on the other syde. In the sandes of all these riuers is founde great plentie of golde, whiche the inhabitants of the same ilande whiche were with vs, geathered in

**Golde in riuers  
falling from  
mountaynes.**

**The manner of  
gathering golde.  
Graynes of  
golde.**

this manner: makynge holes in the sande with theyr handes a Cubite deepe, and takynge vp sande with theyr left handes from the bottome of the same, they pycked out graynes of golde with theyr ryght handes without any moze art or cunnyng, and so deliuered it to our men, who affirme that many of them thus geathered, were as bygge as tares or fytches. And I mee selfe sawe a masse of rude golde (that is to say, suche as was neuer moulten) lyke vnto suche stones as are founde in the bottomes

**A masse of rude  
golde weyghing  
ix. ounces.**

of ryuers, weyghynge niene ounces, whiche *Hoieda* hym selfe founde. Beyng contented with these signes, they returned to the Admirall to certifie hym hereof. For the Admirall had commaunded vnder payne of punishment, that they shoulde meddle no further then theyr commission: whiche was only, to searche the places with theyr signes. For the same went that there was a certayne kynge of the mountaynes from whence those ryuers

**Caunaboa,  
kyng of the  
house of golde.**

had theyr fall, whom they cal *Cacicus Caunaboa*, that is, the lord of the house of golde, for they cal a house *Boa*, golde, *Cauni*, and a kynge or lord *Cacicus*, as we haue sayde before. They affirme that there can no where be founde better fyshe, nor of moze pleasant taste, or moze holosome then in these riuers: also the waters

**Holosome wa-  
ter, and plen-  
tie of fyshe.**

of the same to be moste holosome to drynke. *Melchior* him selfe tolde me, that in the moneth of December, the dayes & nyghtes be of equal length among the *Canibales*: but the sphere or circles of the heauen agreeeth not thereunto, albeit that in the same moneth, some byrdes make theyr nestes, and some haue alredeye hatched theyr egges by reason of the heate, beyng rather conti-

**The day and  
nyght of equall  
length in De-  
cember.**

**Byrdes breede  
in December.**

niall

nuall then extreme. He tolde me also when I questioned with  
 him as concerning y<sup>e</sup> eleuation of the pole frō the horizontal line, The eleuation  
of the pole.  
The starres are  
called guardens  
of the pole.  
 that al the starres called *Plastrum* or *Charles wayne*, are by b<sup>r</sup>der the North pole to the *Canibales*. And surely there returned  
 none from thence at this bioage, to whom there is moze credit to  
 be geuen, then to this man. But if he had byn skilfull in Astro-  
 nomie, he shoulde haue sayde that the day was almoſte equall  
 with the night: For in no place towarde the ſtay of the ſonne  
 (called *Solſticiū*) can the night be equall with the day. And as  
 for them, they neuer came vnder the *Equinoctial*, forasmuch as The Equinoes-  
trial line.  
 they had euer the North pole theyr guyde, and euer eleuate in  
 ſight aboue the *Horizontal*. Thus haue I b<sup>r</sup>iefely w<sup>r</sup>itten vnto  
 your honour, as nuiche as I thought ſufficient at this tyme,  
 and ſhall ſhortly hereafter (by Gods fauoure) w<sup>r</sup>yte vnto you  
 moze largely of ſuch matters as ſhalbe dayly better knowne. For  
 the Admiral hym ſelfe (whom I vſe ſanperly as my very frende)  
 hath promiſed me by his letters, that he wyl geue me knowledge  
 of al ſuch thinges as ſhall chaunce. He hath nowe choſen a ſtrong  
 place where he may build a citie, neare vnto a cōmodious haven,  
 and hath alredy buylded many houſes, and a chapel, in the which A chappell and  
priettes.  
 (as in a newe worlde heretofore voyde of all religion) God is  
 dayly ſerued with .iiii. priettes, accordyng to the maner of our  
 churches. When the tyme nowe approched that he promiſed  
 to ſende to the king and queene, and hauyng prosperous winde  
 for that purpoſe, ſent backe the .xii. Carauelles, wherof we made  
 mention before: which was no ſmal hynderance and greefe vnto  
 hym, eſpecially conſyderyng the death of his men whom he leſte  
 in the ilande at the fyrſt voyage, wherby we are yet ignorant of  
 many places and other ſecretes, wherof we myght otherwyſe  
 haue had further knowledge: but as tyme ſhall reueale them a-  
 gayne, ſo wyl I aduertyle you of the ſame. And that you may  
 the better knowe by conference had with the *Apothecaries* and  
 marchaunt ſtrangers *Sirophenicians*, what this Regions beare, & Marchantes  
Siropheni-  
cians.  
 how hot theyr ground is, I haue ſent you all kyndes of graines,  
 with the barke and inner partes of that tree whiche they ſuppoſe  
 to be the *Cinamome* tree. And yf it be your pleaſure to taſte ey- The Cinas-  
mome tree.  
 ther of the graynes, or of the ſmal ſeedes, the whiche you ſhoulde  
 perceauē to haue fallen from theſe graynes, or of the wood it

## The fyrst Decade.

selfe, touch them fyrst softly, moouyng them to your lyppes, for although they be not hurtfull, yet for theyr excesse of heate, they are sharpe, and bitye the tongue yf they remayne any while thereon: but yf the tongue be blystered by castyng of them, the same is taken away by drynkyng of water. Of the coyne also whereof they make theyr bread, this byngger shall deliuer some grapnes to your lordshyp, both whyte and blacke, and therewith also a trunke of the tree of *Aloes*, the whiche yf you cut in peeces, you shall feele a sweete sauour to proceede from the same. Thus fare you hartly well, from the Court of *Methynna Campi*, the thyrde day befoze the Calendes of May, Anno Dom. 1494.

*Filloaloes, or  
lignum Aloes.*

The thyrde booke of the first Decade, to  
*Lodouike* Cardinall of *Aragonie*, and  
Neuicwe to the kyng.



**Y**ou desyre that foolyshe *Pheton* shoulde agayne rule the chariots of the Sunne, and contende to drawe sweete licours out of the harde flynt, wheras you require me to describe vnto you the newe world, found in the west by the good fortune and gouernaunce of the Catholique princes *Ferdinandus* and *Elizabeth*, your Uncle and Aunte, shewyng me also the letters of kyng *Frederike* your Uncle, witten to me in that behalfe: But syth you haue layde this burden on my backe, in whose power it is to commaunde me to take bypon me moze then I am well able, ye both shall receiue this precious stone rudely closed in lead after my manner of workemanshupp. Therefore, when you shal perceiue the learmed sort frendly, the malicious enuiously, and the backbiters furiously, to bende theyr staunderous darteres agaynst our fayre *Nymphes* of the Ocean, you shall freely protest in howe short tyme, and in the myddest of what troubles and calamities you haue enforced me to wypte of the same. Thus fare you wel, from *Granata* the nienth day befoze the Calendes of May.

*Hispaniola.*

We haue declared in the booke herebefoze, how the Admirall passed by the coastes of the *Canibales*, to the ilande of *Hispaniola* with

with his whole nauie : But now we entende further to shewe what he founde as concernyng the nature of this ilande, after that he had better searched the secretes of the same : Lykewyse of the ilande of *Cuba* neare vnto it, whiche he supposed to be the fyne lande. *Hispaniola* therefore (whiche he affirmeth to be *Ophir*, whereof we reade in the thyrde booke of the kyniges) is of latitude fyue south degrees, haupng the north pole eleuate on the north syde .xxviii. degrees, and on the south syde (as they say) .xxii. degrees, it reacheth in length from East to West, seuen hundred and fourescore myles, it is distant from the ilandes of *Gades* (called *Cales*) .xliv. degrees, and more, as some say: the fourme of the ilande resembleth the leasse of a *Chesnutte* tree. Upon a hygh hyll on the North syde of the ilande, he buylded a citie, because this place was most apt for that purpose, by reason of a myne of stones whiche was neare vnto the same, seruyng well both to buylde with, and also to make *Lyme*: at the bottome of this hyll, is there a great playne of threescore myles in length, and in breadth somewhere .xii. somewhere .xx. myles where it is broadest, & sixe myles where it is narrowest: throughe this playne runne diuers fayre ryuers of wholsome waters, but the greatest of them, whiche is nauigable, falleth into the haven of the citie for the space of halfe a furlong: howe fertile and fruitful this valley is, you shal vnderstande by these thynges whiche folowe. On the hoze of this ryuer, they haue lymitted and enclosed certayne ground, to make gardenz and orchardes, in the whiche al kynde of bygger hearbes, as radishe, letuse, colewortz, bozage, & suche other, were rypp within .xvi. dayes after the seede is sowed, lykewyse *Belones*, *Gourdes*, *Cucumers*, and suche other, within the space of .xxvi. dayes, these garden hearbes they haue freshe & greene al the whole yeere. Also the rootes of the canes or reedes of the licour whereof *suger* is made, growe a cubite hygh within the space of .xv. dayes, but the licour is not yet hardened. The lyke they affirme of plantes or shroudes of young vines, and that they haue the seconde yeere geathered rypp and sweete grapes of the same: but by reason of to much rankenelle they beare but fewe clusters. Furthermoze, a man of the countrey sowed a lytle *Wheate* about the Calendes of *Febuarge*, and brought with hym to the citie an handfull

*Ophir*, whither *Solomons* shipp sailed for *Goide*.

*Isabella*.

A token of marvellous fruitfulness.

Hearbes greene al the whole yeere.

Suger reedes, Plantes and vines.

Corn & grapes ripe twyle a yeere.



## The fyrst Decade.

of the ryppes eares of the same the thyrde day before the calendes of Aprill, which was that yeeere the bigile of the Resurrection of our Lord. Also, al kyndes of pulse, as beanes, peason, fytches, tares, & such other, are ryppes twyse in the yeeere, as al they whiche come from thence affirme with one voyce, yet the grounde is not vniuersally apte to beare wheate. In the meane tyme whyle these thinges were doing, the Admirall sent out a compaignye of .xxx. men to searche the Region of *Cipanga*, otherwylse called *Cibana*. This Region is full of mountaynes and rockes: and in the myddle backe of the whole ilande is great plentie of golde. When they that went to searche the region were returned, they reported maruelous thinges as touching the great ryches of this Region. From these mountaynes, descende foure great ryuers, which by the maruelous indустrye of nature, diuideth the whole ilande into foure partes, in maner equal, ouerspredding & waterynge the whole ilande with their branches. Of these foure ryuers, the one reacheth towarde the Easte, this the inhabitantes call *Iuma*: another towarde the weste, and is called *Aitibunicus*: the thirde toward the North, named *Iachem*: the laste reacheth into the South, and is called *Naiba*. The day before the Ides of Marche, the Admirall him selfe, with al his horsemen, and foure hundred footemen, marched directly towarde the South syde of the golden Region. Thus passing ouer the ryuer, the playne, and the mountayne which enutrone the other syde of the playne, he chaunced vppon another vale, with a ryuer much bygger then the fyrste, & many other meane ryuers running through. When he had also comicighed his armie ouer the ryuer, and passed the seconde vale, which was in no part inferiour to the fyrst, he made away through the thirde mountaine, where was no passage before, and descended into another vale, whiche was now the begynnyng of *Cibana*. Through this also runne many fluddes and ryuers out of euery hyll, and in the sandes of them all is founde great plentie of golde. And when he had nowe entred threescore and twelue myles into the golden Region from the cite, he entended to buylde a fortreffe vppon the toppe of a hyll, standyng by y<sup>e</sup> thore of a certayne great ryuer, that he myght the better and more safelye searche the secretes of the inner partes of the Region: this he called the

The region of  
*Cipanga*, or  
*Cibana*.

Golde.

The golden  
region of  
*Cibana*.

The vale of  
*Cibana*.

fortresse

fortreſſe of ſaint Thomas, the whiche in the meane tyme whyle  
 he was buſyloyng, the inhabitauntes beyng deſpyrous of haukes  
 belles, and other of our thinges, reſorted dayly thither, to whom **Golde for**  
 the Admirall declared, that yf they woulde byng golde, they **haukes bels.**  
 ſhoulde haue whatſoener they woulde aſke. Foorthwith turning  
 theyr backes, and rummyng to the ſhoze of the next riuer, they  
 returned in a ſhozte tyme, byngyng with them theyr handes ful  
 of golde. Amongſt all other, there came an olde man, byngyng  
 with him two pibble ſtones of golde, weyghyng an ounce, deſp- **Grappes and**  
 ryng them to geue hym a bell for the ſame: who when he ſawe **pibble ſtones**  
 our men marueyle at the bygneſſe thereof, he made ſignes that **of golde.**  
 they were but ſmall and of no value in reſpecte of ſome that he  
 had ſeene, and takyng in his hande ſoure ſtones, the leaſt wher-  
 of was as bigge as a Walnut, and the biggeſt as bigge as an  
 Orange, he ſayd that there was ſounde peeces of golde ſo bygge  
 in his countrey, beyng but halfe a dayes iourney from thence,  
 and that they had no regarde to the geatheryng thereof, wherby **They paſſe**  
 we perceiued that they paſſe not muche for golde, inasmuch as **not for golde,**  
 it is golde only, but ſo farre eſteeme it, as the hande of the Arti- **in that it is**  
 ficer hath feſhioned it in any comely ſourme. For who dooth **golde onely**  
 greatly eſteeme rough marble, or vnwrought Iuorie? but if they **but. &c.**  
 be wrought with the cunning hande of *Phidias* or *Traxiteles*, and  
 ſhaped to the ſimilitude of ſ fayre Nymphes or Fayres of the ſea  
 (called *Nereides*) or the Fayres of the wooddes (called *Hama-*  
*driades*) they ſhal neuer lacke byers. Beſyde this olde man, there  
 came alſo diuers other, byngyng with them pybble ſtones of  
 golde, weighing .i. or .xii. drammes, & feared not to confeſſe, that  
 in þ place where they geathered that gold, there were found ſom-  
 tyme ſtones of golde as bygge as the head of a childe. When he **Stones of**  
 had taried here a few dayes, he ſent one *Luxanus*, a noble yong **golde as big**  
 gentleman, with a few armed men, to ſearch al the partes of this **as the head**  
 region: who at his returne, reported that the inhabitants ſhewed **of a childe,**  
 him greater thynges then we haue ſpoken of here befoze, but he  
 dyd openly declare nothyng thereof, whiche they thought was  
 done by the Admirals commaundement. They haue woods ful  
 of certayne ſpyces, but not ſuch as we commonly uſe: theſe they **Spices,**  
 geather euen as they do golde, that is, as muche as wyl ſerue for  
 their purpoſe, euery man for himſelfe, to exchange the ſame with  
 the

## The first Decade.

the inhabitauntes of other countreys adioynning to them, for such thynges as they lacke, as dythes, pottes, stooles, and such other necessities. As *Luxanus* returned to the Admirall (whiche was about the Ides of Marche) he founde in the woods certaine wilde vines, rype, and of pleasant taste, but the inhabitauntes passe not on them. This region, though it be full of stones and rockes (and is therefore called *Cibana*, whiche is as muche to say as a stone) yet it is wel replenysht with trees and pastures, yea they constantly affirme, that yf y<sup>e</sup> grasse of these mountaynes be cutte, it groweth agayne within the space of foure dayes, hygher then wheate. And forasmuche as many shewes of rayne dos fall in this region, whereof the ryuers and flooddes haue theyr encrease, in euery of the whiche golde is founde myxt with sande in all places, they iudge that the golde is dryuen from the mountaynes, by the vehement course of the streames whiche fall from the same, and runne into the ryuers. The people of this region are geuen to idlenesse and play, for suche as inhabite the mountaynes, syt quakyng for colde in the Wynter season, and had rather to wander vp and downe idelly, then take the paynes to make them apparell, where as they haue wooddes full of Gossampine cotton: but suche as dwell in the valles or playnes, feele no colde in Wynter. When the Admirall had thus searched the beginning of the region of *Cibana*, he repayed to *Isabella* (for so he named the citie) where, leauyng the gouernaunce of the Ilande with his deputies, he prepared hym selfe to search further the limittes of the Ilande of *Cuba* or *Iohanna*, whiche he yet doubted to be the firme lande, and distant from *Hispaniola* only .lxx. myles. This dyd he with more speedye expedition, callyng to remembraunce the kynges commaundement, who wylled hym fyrst with al celeritie, to ouerrunne the coastes of the new Ilandes, lest any other prince shoulde in the meane time attempt to invade the same, for the kyng of Portugale affirmed that it parteyned only to him to discouer these vnknown landes: but the bishop of Rome, Alexander the first, to auoyde the cause of this dissention, graunted to the kyng of Spayne by the auctoritie of his leaden builes, that no other prince shoulde be so bolde, as to make any voyages to any of these vnknown regions, ly-  
ing without the precinct of a direct lyne drawen from the North

Wilde vines  
of pleasure  
taste.

Fruitful mount-  
aynes.

Golde in the  
lande of ry-  
uers falling  
from the  
mountaynes.

Libertie and  
idleness.  
The mount-  
aynes are  
colde.

The Ilands  
of Cuba.

Least any other  
prince, &c.

Dissention  
betwene the  
Portugales  
and Spanis-  
ards.

to the South a hundred leagues Westwarde, without the parcels of the Ilandes called *Capud Viride*, or *Cabuerde*, whiche we thinke to be those that in olde tyme were called *Hesperides*: these parteyne to the kyng of Portugale, and from these his Pilotēs, whiche do peerelely searche newe coastes and regions, directe theyr course to the East, saylyng euer towarde the left hande by the backe of *Aphyzike*, and the seas of the *Ethiopians*: neyther to this day had the Portugales at any tyme sayled Southwarde or Westwarde from the Ilandes of *Cabouerde*. Preparing therfore three shippes, he made haste towarde the Ilande of *Iobanna* or *Cuba*, whither he came in short space, and named the poynt therof, where he fyrste arryued, *Alpha* and *O*, that is, the fyrste and the last: for he supposed that there had ben the ende of our East, because the sonne falleth there, and of the West, because it ryseth there. For it is apparant, that Westwarde, it is the beginning of *India* beyonde the ryuer of *Ganges*, and Eastwarde, the furthest ende of the same: whiche thyng is not contrary to reason, forasmuche as the Cosmographers haue left the lymittes of *India* beyond *Ganges* vndetermined, where as also some were of opinion, that *India* was not farre from the coastes of Spaine, as we haue said before. Within the prospect of the beginning of *Cuba*, he founde a commodious hauen in the extreme angle of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, for in this part the Ilande receiueth a great goulfe: this hauen he named *Saint Nicholas porte*, being scarcely twentie leagues from *Cuba*. As he departed from hence, and sayled Westward by the South syde of *Cuba*, the further that he went, so muche the more the sea seemed to be extended in breadth, and to bende towarde the South. On the South syde of *Cuba*, he founde an Ilande whiche the inhabitauntes call *Iamaica*, this he affirmeth to be longer & broder then the Iland of *Scicile*, haupng in it only one mountaine, which on euery part, beginning from the sea, ryseth by litle and litle into the myddest of the Ilande, and that so playnely without roughnesse, that such as goe vp to the toppe of the same, can scarcely perceiue that they assende: This Ilande he affirmeth to be very fruiteful and full of people, aswel in thinner partes of the same, as by the shore, and that the inhabitauntes are of quicker wytte then in the other Ilandes, and more expert Artificers, and warlyke men: For

The Ilandes  
of cabouerde  
or Hesperides.

The Portugales  
viages.

The ende of  
the easte and  
weste.

Note.  
India not far  
from Spaine.

Sainte Nicolas  
his porte.

The Iland of  
Iamaica.

Quicke witted  
people.



## The first Decade.

in many places where he woulde haue arpyued, they came armed againſt him, and forbode him with threacynge wordes: but beyng ouercome, they made a league of frendſhpy with hym. Thus departing from *Iamaica*, he ſayled toward the Weſt, with a prosperous wynde, for the ſpace of threſcore and tenne dayes, thynking that he had paſſed ſo farre by the compaſſe of the earth being vnderneath vs, that he had ben neare vnto *Aurea Cherſoneſus* (nowe called *Malacca*) in our eaſt India, beyonde the begynnynge of *Perſides*: for he playnely beleened that he had left only two of the twelue houres of the ſunne, which were vnknoen to vs, for the olde wyters haue left halfe the courſe of the ſunne vntouched, where as they haue but only diſcuſſed that ſuperficial parte of the earth whiche lyeth betweene the Ilandes of *Gades*, and the ryuer of *Ganges*, or at the vttermoſt, to *Aurea Cherſoneſus*. In this Nauigation, he chaunced on many furious ſeas, running with a fall as it had ben the ſtreames of floods, alſo many whyrlepooles, and ſhelfes, with many other dangers, and ſtraghtes, by reaſon of the multitude of ilandes whiche lay on euery ſyde. But not regardyng al theſe perylls, he determined to proceede, vntil he had certayne knowledge whether *Cuba* were an ilande, or firme lande. Thus he ſayled forward, coaſtyng euer by the ſhore toward the Weſt for the ſpace of CC. xxii. leagues, that is, about a thouſande and thre hundred myles, and gaue names to ſeuen hundred ilandes by the way, leapyng alſo on the left hande (as he feared not to report) thre thouſande here and there. But let vs nowe retorne to ſuche thynges as he founde woorthy to be noted in this nauigation. Saylyng therefore by the ſyde of *Cuba*, and ſearchyng the nature of the places, he eſpyed not farre from *Alpha* and *O* a large hauen, of capacitie to harborowe many ſhyppes, whoſe entraunce is bendyng, beyng incloſed on both ſydes with capes or poyntes whiche receiue the water: this hauen is large within, and of exceedyng deapth. Saylyng by the ſhore of this porte, he ſawe not farre from the ſame, two cotages, couered with reedes, and in many places ſpyekynbled. Here he ſent certayne armed men out of the ſhyppes to the cotages, where they founde neyther man nor woman, but roſtemeate penough, for they founde certayne ſpyttes of wood lying at the fyre, hauyng fyſhe on them about a hundred pounds

The compaſſing of the earth.

Aurea Cherſoneſus, or Malacca.

22 ſecrete of Aſtronomie.

The riuer of Ganges.

Dangerous ſtreights by reaſon of many Ilandes.

A large hauen.

Roſted fiſhe and ſerpents of viii. foote longe.

pounde weight, and two serpentēs of eyght foote long apeece: whereat marueyllyng, and lookyng about if they could espye any of the inhabitauntes, and that none appeared in syght (for they fledde al to the mountaynes at the comyng of our men) they fel to theyr meate, and ate the fyshe taken with other mens tra- uayle, but they absteyned from the serpentēs, which they affirme to differ nothing from the Crocodiles of Egypt, but only in byg- nesse: for (as *Plinie* sayth) Crocodiles haue sometymes ben found of .xviii. cubits long, but of these the biggest were but of eyght foote. Thus being wel refreshed, they entred into the next wood, where they found many of the same kynde of serpentēs, hanging vpon boughes of trees, of the whiche, some had theyr mouthes tyed with strynges, and some theyr teeth taken out. And as they searched the places neare vnto the hauen. they sawe about. lxx. men in the top of a hygh rocke, whiche fled as soone as they had espyed our men, who by signes and tokens of peace calling them agayne, there was one which came neare them, and stood on the toppe of a rocke, seemyng as though he were yet feare- full: but the Admiral sent one *Didacus* to hym, a man of the same countrey, whom he had at his fyrste voyage taken in the ilande of *Guanahaini*, being neare vnto *Cuba*, wyllyng hym to come neare, and not to be afraide. When he hearde *Didacus* speake to hym in his owne tongue, he came boldly to hym, and shortly af- ter resorted to his company, perswading them to come without al feare. After this messlage was done, there descended from the rockes to the shyps, about threescore and ten of the inhabi- tantes, profering frendship and gentleness to our men: whiche the Admiral accepted thankfully, and gaue them diuers rewar- des, and that therather, for that he had intelligence by *Didacus* the interpreter, that they were the kynges fyshers, sent of theyr loyde to take fyshe agaynst a solemne feast whiche he prepared for another kyng. And whereas the Admiralles men had eaten the fyshe whiche they lefte at the fyre, they were the gladder therof, because they had lefte the serpentēs: for there is nothing among theyr delicate dysshes; that they esteeme so muche as these serpentēs, in so muche that it is no more lawfull for common people to eate of them, then *Peacocks* or *Whe- lantes* among vs: as for the fyshes, they doubted not to take

Crocodiles of  
Egypt.

The kynges  
fyshers.

Serpentes  
esteemed for  
delicate meates

as

## The fyrst Decade.

as many moze the same nyght. Bepng asked why they spiste  
 rested the fyshe whiche they intended to beare to theyr kyng &  
 they answered, that they myght be the fresher and vncorrupted.  
 Thus ioynnyng handes for a token of further frendshyp, euerye  
 man resorted to his owne. The Admirall went forwarde as he  
 had appoynted, folowynge the falling of the sunne from the be-  
 ginning of *Cuba*, called *Alpha* and *O*: the shores of sea bankes  
 euen vnto this hauen, albeit they be full of trees, yet are they  
 rough with mountaines: of these trees, some were full of blis-  
 somes and flowres, and other laden with frutes. Beyond the  
 hauen, the lande is moze fertile and populus, whose inhabitantes  
 are moze gentle, and moze desyrous of our thynges: for as soone  
 as they had espied our shippes, they flocked all to the shore,  
 bynngyng with them suche bread as they are accustomed to eate,  
 and gourdes full of water, offeryng them vnto our men, and fur-  
 ther, desyryng them to come alande. In al these Ilandes is a cer-  
 taine kinde of trees as bigge as *Elmes*, whiche beare *Gourdes*  
 in the steade of frutes, these they vse only for drynkyng pottes,  
 and to fetch water in, but not for meate, for the inner substance  
 of them is sowyer then gall, and the barke as harde as any shell.  
 At the Ides of May, the watchmen lookyng out of the top castell  
 of the shyp, towarde the South, sawe a multitude of Ilandes  
 standyng thicke togeather, being al wel replenished with trees,  
 grasse, and hearbes, and well inhabited: in the shore of the conti-  
 nent, he chaunced into a nauigable riuer, whose water was so  
 hot, that no man might endure to abyde his hande therein anye  
 time. The day folowynge, espying a farre of a *Canoa* of fpyhermen  
 of the inhabitantes, fearyng lest they shoulde flee at the syght of  
 our men, he commaunded certayne to assaile them priuily with  
 the ship boates: but they fearyng nothing, tarped the comyng  
 of our men. Nowe shall you heare a newe kynde of fpyshyng.  
 Lyke as we with Greyhoundes do hunt Hares in the playne  
 feedes, so doo they, as it were with a hunting fische, take other  
 fishes: this fyshe was of shape or fourme vnknewen vnto vs,  
 but the bodye thereof not muche vnlyke a great peece, haupyng  
 on the hynder parte of the head a very tough skymme, lyke vnto  
 a great bagge or purse: this fyshe is tyed by the syde of the boate  
 with a corde, let downe so farre into the water, that the fische  
 may

Floures &  
 frutes both  
 at one time.

Trees which  
 beare gourdes.

A multitude  
 of Ilandes.

Hotte water.

A strange  
 kinde of fische  
 called a  
 Quig.

may lye close hid by the keele or bottome of the same, for she may in no case abyde the syght of the ayre. Thus when they elype any great fyshe, or Tortoyse (wherof there is great abundance, bygger then great targettes) they let the corde at length, but when she feeleth her selfe loosed, she inuadeth the fyshe or Tortoyse as swifely as an arrowe, and where she hath once fastened her holde, she casteth the purse of skynne, whereof we spake before, and by drawyng the same togeather, so graspeleth her pray, that no mans strength is suffycient to vnloose the same, excepte by lytle and lytle drawyng the lyne, she be lyfted somewhat aboue the hymme of the water, for then, as lone as she seeth the brightnesse of the ayre, she letteth goe her holde. The praye therfore beyng now drawen nere to the hymme of the water, there leapeth sodenly out of the boate into the sea, so manye fyschers as may suffice to holde fast the praye, vntyll the rest of the company haue taken it into the boate. Whiche thyng doone, they loose so muche of the corde, that the huntynge fyshe may agayne retorne to her place within the water, where by an other corde, they let downe to her a peece of the pray, as we vse to rewarde greyhoundes after they haue kylled theyr game. This fyshe, they cal *Guaicanum*, but our men cal it *Reuersum*. They gaue our men foure Tortoysses taken by this meanes, and those of suche byggnesse, that they almost fylled theyr fshyng boate: for these fshes are esteemed among them for delycate meate. Our men recompensed them agayne with other rewarde, and so let them depart. Beyng asked of the compasse of that lande, they aunswere that it had no ende westwarde. Most instantly they desyred the Admirall to come a lande, or in his name to sende one with them to salute theyr *Cazicus*, (that is) their kyng, affirmyng that he woulde geue our men many presentes, yf they would goe to hym. But the Admirall, lest he shoulde be hindered of the voyage whiche he had begonne, refused to goe with them. Then they desyred to knowe his name, and tolde our men lykewise the name of theyr kyng. Thus sayling on yet further euer toward the West, within fewe dayes he came nere vnto a certayne excedyng high mountayne, wel inhabited by reason of the great fertilitie of the same. Thinhabitauntes of this mountaine, brought to our shyp, bread, gossampine cotton, cunnies, & sundry kyndes

abundance  
of Tortoysses.

Fisher men.

The fische  
*Guaicanum*.

Humane  
people.

A mountayne  
fruitfull and  
well inhabited.



## The fyrst Decade

kyndes of wyldfoule, demaundayng relygiouſly of chinterpre-  
tours, if this nation deſcended not from heauen. The kyng of  
this people, and dyuers other ſage men that ſtoode by him, infor-  
med hym that that lande was no Iſlande. Shortly after, entring  
into one of the iſlandes being on the leſte hande of this lande,  
they founde no body therein, for they fledde al at the comming of  
our men: Yet founde they there foure dogges of maruelous de-  
formed ſhape, & ſuche as coulde not barke. This kynd of doggs,  
they eate as we do goates. Here is great plentie of geefe, duckes,  
and hearons. Betwene theſe iſlandes and the continent, he en-  
tered into ſo narrowe ſtreyghtes, that he coulde ſcarſely turne  
backe the ſhyppes, and theſe alſo ſo ſhalowe, that the keele of the  
ſhyppes ſomtyme raſed on the ſandes. The water of theſe ſtrey-  
ghtes, for the ſpace of fourtie myles, was white and thicke, lyke  
vnto mylke, and as though meale had ben ſparkeled throughout  
al that ſea. And when they had at the length eſcaped theſe ſtrey-  
ghtes, and were now come into a mayne and large ſea, and had  
ſayled thereon for the ſpace of foureſcore myles, they eſpyed an o-  
ther exceeding hygh mountayne, whither the Admirall reſorted  
to ſtoze his ſhyppes with freſhe water and fuel. Heare among  
certayne wooddes of Date trees, & pyneapple trees of exceedyng  
height, he founde two natie ſpynges of freſhe water. In the  
meane tyme, whyle the woodde was cuttyng, and the barrells  
fylling, one of our archers went into the wood to hunt, where  
he eſpyed a certayne man with a whyte beſture, ſo lyke a fryer of  
chorder of ſaynt Barpe of *Mercedis*, that at the fyrſte ſight he  
ſuppoſed it had ben the Admirals prieſt, which he brought with  
hym, being a man of the ſame order: but two other folowed him  
immediatlye out of the ſame wooddes. Shortly after, he ſawe a  
farre of a whole company of men clothed in apparel, being about  
xxx. in number. Then turning his backe, and crying out to his  
felowes, he made haſte to the ſhyppes with all that he myght  
dyeue. Theſe apparelled men, made ſygnys and tokens to hym  
to tary, and not to be afrayd, but that notwithstanding he ceaſed  
not to flee. The Admirall being aduertysed hereof, and not  
a lytle reioyryng that he had founde a ciuile people, in-  
continently ſent forth armed men, with commaundement  
that yf neede ſhould ſo requyre, they ſhoulde enter fourtie myles  
into

Dogges of  
ſtrainge ſhape  
and diuine

white and  
thicke water.

Wooddes of  
date trees.

Men apparel-  
led like white  
fryers.

Apparelled  
men.

into the islande, butyl they myght fynde eyther those apparelled men, or other inhabitants of that countrey. When they had passed ouer the wood, they came into a great playne ful of grasse and hearbes, in whiche appeared no token of any pathway. Here attemptyng to goe through the grasse and hearbes, they were so entangled and betwapt therein, that they were scarcelye able to passe a myle, the grasse beyng there lytle lower then our ripe corne: beyng therefore weeryed, they were enforced to retorne agayne, finding no pathway. The day folowynge he sent forth xvj. armed men another way, commaundynge them to make diligent search and inquisition what manner of people inhabited the lande: Who departyng, when they had found, not farre from the sea side, certayne steps of wyld beastes, of the which they suspected some to be of Lions feete, beyng strycken with feare, returned backe agayne. As they came, they founde a wood in the whiche were many natie vines, here and there creepynge about hygh trees, with many other trees bearyng aromatical fruites and spyes. Of these vines they brought with them into Spaine many clusters of grapes, very ponderous, and ful of licour: but of the other fruites they brought none, because they putrified by the way in the shyp, & were cast into the sea. They say also that in the landes or meadowes of those wooddes, they sawe flockes of great Cranes, twyse as hygge as ours. As he went forward, and turned his sayles towarde certayne other mountaynes, he espied two cotages on the shore, in the whiche he sawe only one man, who being brought to the shippe, signified with head, fyngers, and by al other signes that he coulde deuise, that the lande whiche lay beyonde those mountaynes was very full of people: and as the Admiral dyed neare the shore of the same, there met him certayne Canoes, hauyng in them many people of the countrey, who made signes and tokens of peace and frendshyp. But here Didiacus the interpretour, which understoode the language of th inhabitants of the beginning of Cuba, understode not them one whyle, whereby they considered that in sundry prouinces of Cuba, were sundry languages. He had also intelligence, that in the indande of this region was a king of great power, & accustomed to weare apparell: he sayde that all the tracte of this shore was destituted with water, and ful of mudde, besette with manye trees,

after

Natie vines,  
Trees bearyng  
spyes & sweete  
fruites.

Diners languages in the  
Islande of  
Cuba.

## The first decade.

Pearles in the  
fishes.

after the maner of our maryshes: Yet whereas in this place they went alande for freshe water, they founde many of the shell fishes in the whiche pearles are geathered. But that coulde not cause the Admirall to tracte the tyme there, intending at this viage, only to proue howe many landes & seas he could discover according to the kinges commaundement. As they yet proceeded forwarde, they sawe here and there, al the way along by the shore, a great smoke rysing, vntill they came to an other mountayne foure score myles distant, there was no rocke or hyll that coulde be seene, but the same was all of a smoke. But whether these fyres were made by thynhabitanes for their necessary busynesse, or (as we are wont to sette beacons on fyre when we suspecte thapproche of our enimies) thereby to geue warning to theyr neyghbours to be in a redynes, & geather togeather, if perhaps our men shoulde attempt any thynge against them, or otherwyle as (seemeth most lykely) to cal them togeather, as to a wonder, to beholde our shippes, they knowe yet no certentie. In this tracte, the shores bended somtyme towarde the South, and somtyme towarde the West and west south west, and the sea was euerye where entangled with Ilandes, by reason whereof, the keeles of the shippes often times rased the sandes for shallownesse of the water: So that the shippes being very sore bruised and appayred, the sayles, cables, and other tackelinges, in maner rotten, and the bytailes (especially the biskette bread) corrupted by takyng water at the ryftes euyl closed, the Admirall was enforced to turne backe agayne: This laste poynte where he touched of *Cuba* (not yet being knowen to be an ilande) he called *Euangelista*. Thus turning his sayles towarde other landes lying not farre from the supposed continent, he chaunced into a mayne sea, where was suche a multitude of great Tortoysses, that somtyme they stayed the shippes: Not long after, he entred into a gulf of whyte water, lyke vnto that wherof we spake before. At the length, fearing the shelves of the ilands, he returned to the shore of *Cuba* by the same way whiche he came. Here a multitude of thynhabitanes, as well women as men, resorted to hym with cheerefull countenances, and with feare, bringyng with them poppingayes, bread, water, and cunnys, but especially stocke boues, much bygger then ours, which he affirmeth, in sauour and taste,

The sea entan-  
gled with I-  
landes.

A multitude of  
great Tortoy-  
sses.  
A gulf of whyte  
water.

taste, to be muche moze pleasaunt then our partryches. Wherefore where as in eating of them he perceiued a certayne sauoure of spyce to proceede from them, he commaunded the croppe to be opened of suche as were newly kylled, and founde the same full of sweete spyces, whiche he argued to be the cause of theyr strange taste: For it standeth with good reason, that the fleshe of beastes, shoulde drawe the nature and qualitie of theyr accustomed nourishment. As the Admirall harde masse on the shoze, there came towarde hym a certayne gouernoure, a man of foure score yeres of age, and of great grauitie, although he were naked sauing his pyuie partes. He had a great trayne of men wayting on hym. All the whyle the prieste was at masse, he shewed him selfe very humble: and gaue reuerent attendance, with graue and demure countenance. When the masse was ended, he presented to the Admirall a baskette of the fruites of his countrey, delpyuering the same with his owne handes. When the Admirall had gentelly entertayned him, desyryng leaue to speake, he made an oration in the presence of *Didacus* the interpreter, to this effect. I haue byn aduertised (most mighty prync) that you haue of late with great power subdued many lands and Regions, hytherto vnknownen to you, and haue brought no litle feare vppon all the people and inhabitauntes of the same: the whiche your good fortune, you shal beare with lesse insolencie, if you remember that the soules of men haue two iourneyes after they are departed from this body: The one, soule and darke, prepared for suche as are inuirtuous and cruell to mankynde: the other, pleasaunt and delectable, ordeyned for them which in theyr lyfe tyme loued peace and quietnes. If therfore you acknowledge your selfe to be mortall, and consider that euery man shal receiue condigne rewarde or punishment for suche thynges as he hath done in this life, you wyl wrongfully hurte no man. When he had saide these wordes and other lyke, which were declared to the Admirall by the interpreter, he marueyling at the iudgement of the naked olde man, answered, that he was gladde to heare his opinion as touching the sundry iourneys and rewarde of soules departed from theyr bodies, supposing that nother he, or any other of th inhabitantes of those Regions, had had any knowledge thereof: declaring further, that the chiefe cause of his

The humanitie  
of a reuerende  
olde gouernour.

An oration of  
the naked go-  
uernour.

Their opinion  
of the soule of  
man.

comaring



## The first decade.

Despise of gold,  
founde that  
which religion  
coule not  
fynde.

*Virtus post  
nummos. &c.*

comming thither, was to instruct them in such godly knowledge and true religion: and that he was sent into those countreies by the Christian kyng of Spayne (his lord and maister) for the same purpose, and specially to subdue and punyssh the *Canibales*, and suche other mischeuous people, and to defend innocentes against the violence of euyl dooers, wyllyng hym, and al other suche as imbraced vertue, in no case to be afrayde, but rather to open his mynde vnto hym, yf eyther he, or any other suche quiet men as he was, had susteyned any wrong of theyr neyghbours, and that he woulde see the same reuenged. These comfortable wordes of the Admirall so pleased the olde man, that notwithstanding his extreme age, he woulde gladly haue gone with the Admirall, as he had done in deede, yf his wyfe and chyldren had not hyndered hym of his purpose: but he marueyled not a lytle, that the Admirall was vnder the dominion of another: and much more, when the interpretour tolde hym of the glozpe, magnificence, pompe, great power, and furnimentes of warre of our kinges, and of the multitudes of cities and townes whiche were vnder theyr dominions. Intendynge therefore to haue gone with the Admirall, his wyfe and chyldren fell prostrate at his feete, with teares desyring hym not to forsake them and leaue them desolate: at whose pitiful requestes, the woorthy olde man beyng mooued, remayned at home to the comfort of his people and familie, satisfiynge rather them then hym selfe: for not yet ceassynge to wonder, and of heauie countenance because he myght not depart, he demaunded of centymies yf that lande were not heauen, whiche brought forth suche a kynde of men? If or it is certaine, that among them the lande is as common as the sunne and water, and that Hyne and Thyne (the seedes of all myscheefe) haue no place with them. They are content with so lytle, that in so large a countrey they haue rather superfluitie then scarcenesse: so that (as we haue sayde before) they seeme to lyue in the golden worlde without toyle, lyuyng in open gardens, not intrenched with dyches, diuided with hedges, or defended with walles: they deale truly one with another without lawes, without bookes, and without iudges: they take hym for an euyl and mischeuous man, whiche taketh pleasure in dooyng hurt to ocher. And albeit that they delyte not in superfluities, yet make they

The lande as  
common as  
the sunne and  
water.

they promise for the increase of suche rootes whercof they make  
 theyr bread, as *Maizium*, *Iucca*, and *Agas*, contented with suche  
 symple dyet, whereby health is preserved, and diseases auoyded. Simple dyet.  
 The Amirall therefore departyng from thence, and myndyng to  
 retorne agayne shortly after, chaunced to come agayne to the  
 Ilande of *Iamaica*, beyng on the south syde thereof, and coasted  
 all a'long by the shore of the same from the West to the East,  
 from whose last corner on the East syde, when he saue towarde  
 the North syde on his left hande certayne hygh mountaynes, he  
 knewe at the length that it was the south syde of the Ilande of  
*Hispaniola*, whiche he had not yet passed by. Hispaniola.  
 Calendes of September, entryng into the hauens of the same  
 Ilande, called saint Nicholas hauens, he repayed his shippes,  
 to the intent that he might agayne waste and spoyle the Ilandes  
 of the *Canibales*, and burne all theyr *Canoas*, that those rauenyng  
 wolues might no longer persecute and deuoure the innocent  
 sheepe: but he was at this tyme hyndered of his purpose, by rea-  
 son of a disease which he had gotten by to much watching. Thus  
 beyng feeble and weake, he was ledde of the *Baryners* to the  
 cite of *Isabella*, where, with his two brethren whiche were there,  
 and other of his familiars, he recouered his health in shorte  
 space: yet coulde he not at this tyme assaile the *Canibales*, by  
 reason of sedition that was risen of late among the *Spanyarden*  
 whiche he had left in *Hispaniola*, whereof we wyll speake moze  
 hereafter. The Canibales.  
 Thus fare ye well. Sickenesse of to much watching.

The fourth booke of the first Decade, to  
*Lodouike Cardinal of Aragonie.*



**C**olumbus the Admirall of the Ocean, returning  
 (as he supposed) from the continent of  
 fyrry lande of East India, had aduertisment East India.  
 that his brother *Boilus*, and one *Peter Mar-*  
*garita*, an olde familiar of the kynges, and  
 a noble man, with diuers other of those to  
 whom he had left the gouernment of the  
 Ilande, were (of corrupted mynde agaynst hym) departed into  
 Spayne. The Spaniards rebell in the Admirals absence.  
 Therefore, aswel to purge hym selfe of suche crimes,  
 E i as

## The fyrst Decade.

as they should lay to his charge, as also to make a supply of other men in the place of them whiche were returned, and especiallpe to prouide for vyttualles, as wheate, wine, oyle, and suche other, whiche the Spanyarden are accustomed to eate, because they coulde not yet well agree with such meates as they founde in the Ilandes, determined shortly to take his voyage into Spayne: but what he dyd befoze his departure, I wyll bryefely rehearse.

The kinges  
of the ilandes  
rebell.

The Spanis  
arden misbe-  
hauour.

The kynges of the Ilandes which had hytherto lyued quietly, and content with theyr lytle whiche they thought aboundant, wheras they nowe perceiued that our men began to fasten foote within theyr regions, & to beare rule among them, they toke the matter so greenously, that they thought nothyng els but by what meanes they myght utterly destroy them, and for euer abolysh the memory of theyr name, for that kinde of men (the Spanyarden I meane, which folowed the Admirall in that nauigation) were for the moste part bnruly, regarding nothyng but idlenesse, play, and libertie, and woulde by no meanes abstepne from iniuries, rauishing of the women of the Ilandes befoze the faces of their husbandes, fathers, and bryethen: by which theyr abominable mysdemeanour, they disquieted the myndes of all the inhabitants, insomuche that wheresoeuer they founde any of our men vnprepared, they slue them with such fiercenesse and gladnesse, as though they had offered sacrifice to God. Intendyng therfore to pacifie theyr troubled myndes, and to punyshe them that slue his men befoze he departed from thence, he sent for the king of that vale, whiche in the booke befoze we described to be at the foote of the mountaynes of the region of *Cibana*, this kynges name was *Guarionexius*: who, the more straghtly to concyle vnto hym the frendshyp of the Admirall, gaue his syster to wyfe to *Didacus*, a man from his chyldes age brought vp with the Admirall, whom he vsed for his interpreter in the prouinces of *Cuba*. After this, he sent for *Caunaboa*, called the lord of the house of golde, that is, of the mountaynes of *Cibana*: For this *Caunaboa* he sent one Captayne *Hoieda*, whom the dictionaries of *Caunaboa* had enforced to keepe his holde, besieging for the space of thirtie dayes the fortreffe of saint Thomas, in the whiche *Hoieda* with his fytie souldiers stooode at theyr defence, vntyll the comming of the Admirall. Whyle *Hoieda* remayned with *Caunaboa*, ma-

Capitayne Ho-  
ieda.

ape

mye ambassadours of the kynges of diuers regions were sent to *Caunaboa*, perswading him in no condition to permit the Christians to inhabite the Ilande, except he had rather serue then ruse. On the other partie, *Hoieda* aduertised *Caunaboa* to goe to the Admirall, and to make a league of frendshyp with hym: but the ambassadours on the contrary part, threated hym, that if he woulde so doo, the other kynges woulde inuade his region. But *Hoieda* answered them agayne, that whereas they conspired to maynteyne theyr libertie, they should by that meanes be brought to seruitude & destruction, if they intended to resist or kepe warre against the Christians. Thus *Caunaboa* on the one side and the other beyng troubled, as it were a rocke in the sea beaten with contrary flooddes, and muche more vexed with the stormes of his gyttie conscience, for that he had priuily slayne. xx. of our men vnder pretence of peace, feared to come to the Admirall: but at the length, haupng excogitated his deceit, to haue slayne the Admirall and his compayne, vnder the colour of frendshyp, yf oportunitie would so haue serued, he repayred to y<sup>e</sup> Admirall, with his whole familie, and many other wayting on him, armed after theyr manner. Beyng demaunded why he brought so great a rout of men with him, he answered, that it was not decent for so great a prince as he was, to goe out of his house withoute suche a bande of men: but the thynge chaunced muche otherwyse then he looked for, for he fell into the snares whiche he had prepared for other, for whereas by the way he began to repent hym that he came forth of his house, *Hoieda* with many fayre woordes & promises brought him to the Admirall, at whose commaundement he was immediatly taken and put in prison, so that the soules of our men were not long from theyr bodyes vntreunged. Thus *Caunaboa* with al his familie beyng taken, the Admirall was determined to runne ouer the Ilande, but he was certified that there was suche famine among the inhabitauntes, that there was already fyfte thousande men dead thereof, and that they dyed yet dayly, as it were rotten sheepe, the cause whereof, was wel knowen to be theyr owne obstinacie and frowardnesse: for wheras they sawe that our men intended to choole them a dwelling place in the Ilande, supposing that they myght haue dyuen them from thence if the vidualles of the Ilande should fayle,

*Caunaboarons  
spireth the Admirals death.*

*Famine in the  
Ilande of his  
paniola.*



## The fyrst Decade.

The hunger  
of golde causeth  
greate  
famine.

they determined with them selues, not only to leaue sowynge and plantynge, but also to destroy and plucke vp by the rootes, euery man in his owne region, that whiche they had alredy sowen, of both kyndes of bread, whereof we made mention in the firste booke, but especially among the mountaynes of *Cibana*, otherwyle called *Cipanga*. forasmuche as they had knowledge that the golde whiche aboundeth in that region, was the chiefe cause that deteyned our men in the Island. In the meane tyme, he sent forth a Captayne with a bande of men, to searche the South syde of the Island, who at his returne, reported that throughtout all the regions that he trauayled, there was suche scarcenesse of bread, that for the space of. xvi. dayes, he ate nothyng but the rootes of hearbes, and of young date trees, or the frutes of other wyld trees: but *Guarionexius* the kyng of the vale, lying beneath the mountaynes of *Cibana*, whose kyngdome was not so wasted as the other, gaue our men certayne vyttualles. Within a fewe dayes after, both that the iourneys myght be the shorter, and also that our men myght haue more safe places of refuge, if the inhabitauntes shoulde hereafter rebell in lyke manner, he buylded another fortreffe (whiche he called the Towre of Conception) betweene the Citie of *Isabella*, and *Saint Thomas* fortreffe, in the marches of the kyngdome of this *Guarionexius*, within the pprecincte of *Cibana*, vpon the syde of a hyll, haupng a fayre riuer of holsome water runnyng harde by the same. Thus when the inhabitantes sawe newe buyldinges to be dayly erected, and our shippes lying in the haueu rotten and halfe broken, they began to dispayre of any hope of libertie, and wandred vp and dowlne with heauie cheare. From the Towre of Conception, searchyng diligentely the inner partes of the mountaynes of *Cibana*, there was a certayne kyng whiche gaue them a masse of rude golde as bigge as a mans fyft, weyghing. xx. ounces: this golde was not founde in the banke of that riuer, but in a heape of dye earth, and was lyke vnto the stone called *Tophus*, whiche is soone resolued into sande. This masse of golde I mee selfe sawe in Castile, in the famous Citie of *Methymna Campi*, where the Court lay al that wynter. I sawe also a great peece of pure *Electrum*, of the which belles, and Apothecaries morters, & many suche other vesselles and instrumentes may be made, as were in  
olde

The towre of  
conception.

olde tyme of copper the citie of *Corinthus*. This peece of *Electrum* was of suche weight, that I was not only with both my handes vnable to lift it from the ground, but also not of strength to remoue it epyther one way or other: they affirmed that it weyged moze then thre hundred pounde weyght, after eyght ounces to the pounde, it was founde in the house of a certayne pyince, and left hym by his predecessours: and albeit that in the dayes of the inhabitauntes yet lpyng, *Electrum* was no where digged, yet knewe they where the myne thereof was, but our men with muche adoo coulde hardely cause them to shewe them the place, they boze them suche pyinie hatred, yet at the length they brought them to the myne, beyng now ruinate and stopped with stones and rubbysh: it is muche easyer to dygge then is the iron myne, and might be restored agayne, yf myners and other workmen skylful therein were appoynted thereto. Not farre from the towre of *Conception*, in the same mountaynes, is founde great plentie of *Amber*, and out of certaine rockes of the same, distilleth a substance of the yelow colour whiche the *Paynters* vse. Not farre from these mountaynes are many great woods, in the whiche are none other trees then *Brasile*, which the *Italians* cal *Verzino*. But here perhaps (ryght noble pyince) you woulde aske, what shoulde be the cause, that where as the *Spaniards* haue brought out of these *Ilandes* certayne shyppes laden with *Brasile*, somewhat of *Gossampine* cotton, a quantitie of *Amber*, a lytle golde, & some spyes, why they haue not broughte suche plentie of golde, and suche other ryche marchaundizes, as the fruitefulnesse of these regions seeme to promyse: To this I aunswere, that when *Colonus* the Admirall was lykewyse demaunded the cause hereof, he made aunswere, that the *Spaniards* whiche he tooke with hym into these regions, were geuen rather to sleepe, play, and idlenesse, then to labour, and were moze studious of sedition and newes, then desirous of peace and quietnesse: also, that being geuen to licentiousnesse, they rebelled & forsooke him, findyng matter of false accusation against hym, because he went about to repressse theyr outragiousnesse: by reason whereof, he was not yet able to breake the power of the inhabitauntes, and freelye to possesse the full dominion of the *Ilande*, and these hynderaunces to be the cause that hy-

*Electrum* is a metall naturally mixt of one portion of golde, & an other of siluer, being of proprietye to be wyape popson, and was therfore in olde tyme in greater estimation then golde. The mine of *Electrum*,

An other kinde of *amber* is taken out of greates whale fisses.

Opement of oker.

Wooddes of *brasil* trees.

Licentiousnes of to much libertye.

## The first Decade,

And this onely  
geathered, and  
not digged out  
of the bodie of  
the mine.

therto the gaynes haue scarcely counteruayled the charges : albeit, euen this yeeere whyle I wrote these thyngs at your request, they geathered in two monethes the summe of a thousande and two hundred poundes weyght of gold. But because we entende to speake more largely of these thynges in theyr place, we wyl nowe retorne from whence we haue digressed. When the inhabitauntes perceiued that they coulde by no meanes shake the yoke from theyr necks, they made humble supplication to the Admiral, that they myght stande to theyr tribute, and applye them selues to reincrease the frutes of theyr countrey, beyng nowe almost wasted. He graunted them theyr request, and appoynted suche order that euery region shoulde pay theyr tribute, with the commodities of theyr countreys, accordyng to theyr portion, and at suche tyme as they were agreed vpon: but the violent famine did frustrate al these appoyntmentes, for al the trauayles of theyr bodyes, were scarcely able to suffice to fynde them meate in the wooddes, whereby to susteyne theyr lyues, beyng of long tyme contented with rootes and the frutes of wyld trees : yet many of the kynges with theyr people, euen in this extreme necessitie, brought part of theyr tribute, most humblye desyryng the Admiral to haue compassion of their calamities, and to beare with them yet a whyle, vntyl the Ilande were restored to the olde state, promysyng further, that that whiche was nowe wantyng, shoulde then be double recompenced. But fewe of the inhabitauntes of the mountaynes of *Cibaua* kept theyr promise, because they were soer oppressed with famine then anye of the other. They say that the inhabitantes of these mountaynes dyffer no lesse in language and manners from them whiche dwel in the playnes, then among vs the rusticalles of the countrey, from the gentlemen of the courte : wheras notwithstanding they lyue as it were both vnder one portion of heauen, and in many thynges much after one fashion, as in nakednesse, and rude simplicitie. But nowe let vs retorne to *Caimaboa* the king of the house of golde, beyng in captiuitie. When he perceiued hym selfe to be cast in prison, frettyng and gratyng his teeth, as it had been a Lion of *Libia*, and dayly and nyghtly deuylyng with hym selfe howe he myght be deliuered, beganne to perswade the Admiral, that forasmuche as he had nowe taken vnto his

dominion

The nature of  
the region disc  
poseth the ma  
ner of the peo  
ple.

Kyng *Caima*  
*boa* in capti  
uitie.

dominion the region of *Cipanga* or *Cibaua* (wherof he was king) it shoulde be expedient to sende thither a garrison of Christian men, to defende the same from the incursions of his olde enimies and borderers: for he sayde, that it was signified vnto him, that the countrey was wasted and spoyled with suche incursions. By this craftie deuise, he thought to haue brought to passe, that his brother whiche was in that region, and the other his kynsfolkes and frendes with theyr adherentes, should haue taken, eyther by sleight or force, as many of our men as myght haue redeemed hym. But the Admiral vnderstandyng his craftie meynyng, sent *Hoieda* with suche a compaignie of men, as myght banquish the *Cibauians*, yf they shoulde moue warre agaynst them. Our men had scarceelye entred into the region, but the brother of *Caunaboa* came agaynst them with an armie of fyue thousande naked men, armed after theyr manner, with clubbes, arrowes tipt with bones, and speares made harde at the endes with fyre. He stole vpon our men beyng in one of theyr houses, and encamped rounde about the same on euery syde. This *Cibauian*, as a man not ignorant in the discipline of warre, about the distaunce of a furlong from the house, diuided his armie into fyue battayles, appoyntyng to euery one of them a circuite by equall diuision, and placed the froont of his owne battayle directly agaynst our men. When he had thus set his battayles in good aray, he gaue certayne signes that y whole armie should marche forwarde in order with equall paces, and with a larome freshly assaile theyr enimies, in such sort that none might escape. But our men iudging it better to encountre with one of the battayles, then to abyde the hunte of the whole armie, gaue on set on the mayne battayle aranged in the playne, because that place was most commodious for the horsmen. When the horsmen therefore had geuen the charge, they ouerthrewe them with the brestes of theyr horsles, and slue as many as abode the ende of the fight, the residue beyng strycken with feare, disparclod, and fledde to the mountaynes and rockes: from whence they made a pitefull howlyng to our men, desyryng them to spare them, protestyng that they woulde neuer more rebell, but doo what so euer they woulde commaund them, yf they woulde suffer them to lyue in theyr owne countrey. Thus the brother of *Caunaboa*

*Caunaboa his brother rebels* leth.

A conflict betwene the *Cibauians* and the *Spaniards*.



## The first Decade.

beyng taken, the Admiral licenced the people to resort euery  
 man to his owne: these thynges thus fortunately atchiued, this  
 region was pacified. Among these mountaynes, the vale whi-  
 che *Caunaboa* inhabited, is called *Magina*, and is exceeding fruit-  
 ful, hauing in it many goodly springes and riuers, in the sande  
 whereof is founde great plentie of golde. The same yeere in  
 the moneth of Iune, they say there arose such a boystous tem-  
 pest of winde from the Southwest, as hath not lightly ben heard  
 of, the violence wherof was such, that it plucked vp by the rootes  
 whatsoeuer great trees were within the reache of the force ther-  
 of. When this whylewynde came to the hauen of the citie,  
 it beat downe to the bottome of the sea three shippes, whiche  
 lay at anker, and broke the cables in sunder, and that (whiche is  
 the greater marueyle) without any storme or roughnesse of the  
 sea, only turnyng them three or foure tymes about. The inha-  
 bitauntes also asseyne, that the same yeere the sea extended it  
 selfe further into the lande, and rose hygher then euer it dyd be-  
 fore by the memoire of man, by the space of a cubit. The people  
 therefore muttered among them selues, that our nation had  
 troubled the elementes, & caused suche portentous signes. These  
 tempestes of the ayre (whiche the Grecians call *Tiphones*, that  
 is, whylewyndes) they call *Furacanes*, whiche they say, doo often  
 tymes chaunce in this Ilande: but that neyther they, nor they  
 great graundfathers, euer sawe suche violent and furious *Fura-  
 canes*, that plucked vp great trees by the rootes, neyther yet such  
 surges and vehement motions on the sea, that so wasted the land:  
 as in deede it may appeare, forasmuche as wheresoeuer the sea  
 bankes are neere to any playne, there are in maner euery where  
 flopyshyng medowes reaching euen vnto the shore: but nowe let  
 vs returne to *Caunaboa*. As kyng *Caunaboa* therefore and his  
 brother shoulde haue ben brought into Spayne, they dyed by the  
 way, for very pensiuenesse and anguish of minde. The Admiral,  
 whose shippes were drowned in the foresayd tempest, perceiuing  
 him selfe to be nowe enclosed, commaunded forthwith two other  
 shippes (whiche the Spaniards call *Carauelas*) to be made: for  
 he had with hym all manner of Artificers parteyning thereun-  
 to. Whyle these thynges were dooyng, he sent forth *Bartho-  
 lomew Colonns* his brother, beyng Lieutenant of the Ilande,

with

A greate tem-  
pest in the mos-  
teth of Iune.

Whirle win-  
des.  
*Furacanes*.

The death of  
king *Cauna-  
boa* and his  
brother.

with an armie of men to searche the golde mynes, beyng distant threescore leagues from the citie of *Ijabella*, whiche were founde by the conducte of certayne people of the Ilande, befoze the mynes of *Cipanga* or *Cibana* were knowen. In these mynes they founde certayne deepe pittes, which had ben dygged in old time, out of these pyttes, the Admiral (who affirmeth this Ilande of *Hispaniola* to be *Ophir*, as we sayde befoze) suppolet that *Solomon* the kyng of *Hierusalem* had his great ryches of golde, whereof we reade in the olde Testament, and that his shyppes sayled to this *Ophir* by the gulse of *Persia*, called *Sinus Persicus*. But whether it be so or not, it lyeth not in me to iudge, but in my opinion it is farre of. As the myners dygged the superficial or byppermost part of the earth of y mynes, duryng for the space of sixe myles, & in dyuers places sited the same on the dyle lande, they founde suche plentie of golde, that euery hyred labourer could easily finde euery day the weight of thre dymmes. These mynes beyng thus searched & founde, the Lieutenant certified the Admirall hereof by his letters, the which when he had receiued, the fifth day of the Ides of March, Anno. 1495. he entred into his newe shyppes, and tooke his voyage directly to Spayne, to aduertise the kyng of all his affayres, leauing the whole regiment of the Ilande with his brother the Lieutenant.

The golde mines of *Solomon*.

Sold in the superficial partes of the earth.

The fift booke of the fyrst Decade, to  
*Lodouike Cardinall of Aragonie.*



After the Admirals departing into Spaine, his brother the Lieutenant buylded a fortresse in the golde mines, as he had commaunded hym: this he called the golden towne, because the labourers founde golde in the earth, and stonewherof they made the walles of the fortresse. He consumed thre

The golden tower.

monethes in makynge the instrumentes wherewith the golde shoulde be geathered, washed, tryed, and mousten: yet was he at this tyme, by reason of wante of vittualles, enforced to leaue al thynges imperfecte, and to goe seeke for meate. Thus as he, with a bande of armed men, had entred threescore myles further

Lack of vittualles.

## The fyrst Decade.

further within the land, the people of the countrey here and there  
 refortyng to hym, gaue hym a certayne portion of theyr bread,  
 in erchaunge for other of our thynges: but he coulde not long  
 tary here, because they lacked meate in the fortreffe, whyther he  
 hasted with such as he had now gotten. Leauyng therefore in the  
 fortreffe a garrison of ten men, with that portion of the Ilande  
 bread whiche yet remayned, leauyng also with them a Hounde  
 to take those kyndes of Iyle beastes whiche they call *Vsias*, not  
 muche vnlke our Conies, he returned to the fortreffe of Con-  
 ception. This also was the moneth wherein the kyng *Guarione-*  
*xius*, and also *Manicautexius* borderer vnto hym, shoulde haue  
 brought in theyr tributes. Remaynyng there the whole moneth  
 of Iune, he exacted the whole tribute of these two kynges, & vye-  
 tualles necessary for hym and such as he brought with hym, whi-  
 che were about foure hundred in number. Shortly after, about  
 the Kalendes of Iuly, there came three Carauels from Spayne,  
 bringyng with them sundrye kyndes of vyttualles, as wheate,  
 oyle, wine, bakon, & Hartelmas brese, whiche were diuided to  
 euery man accordyng as neede required, some also was lost in  
 the caryage for lacke of good lookyng to. At the arpyual of these  
 shyppes, the Lieutenaunt receiued commaundement from the  
 kyng and the Admiral his brother, that he with his men shoulde  
 remoue their habitation to the south syde of the Ilande, because  
 it was nearer to the golde mynes: Also that he shoulde make  
 diligent searche for those kinges whiche had slayne the Christi-  
 an men, and to sende them with theyr confederates bounde into  
 Spayne. At the next voyage therefore he sent three hundred cap-  
 tiues, with three kynges, and when he had diligently searched  
 the coastes of the south syde, he transported his habitation, and  
 buylde a fortreffe there, vpon the toppe of a hyl neare vnto a  
 sure haven: this fortreffe he called *saine Dominikes towre*.  
 Into this haven runneth a riuer of wholsome water, replenished  
 with sundry kyndes of good fyshes: they aspyme this ryuer to  
 haue many benefites of nature, for where so euer it runneth,  
 all thynges are exceedyng pleasaunt and fruitefull, haupyng  
 on euery syde groues of Date trees, and diuers other of the  
 Ilande fruites so plentifulle, that as they sayled along by the  
 shore, oftentymes the bryanches thereof, laden with flowres  
 and

Vittualles  
 brought from  
 Spayne.

Saint Domin-  
 nikes towre.

and fruite, hong so ouer theyr heades, that they might plucke them with theyr handes: also that the fruitfulness of this ground, is eyther equall with the soyle of *Isabella*, or better. In *Isabella* he lefte only certayne sicke men, and shippe wyghtes, whom he had appoynted to make certayne carauels, the residue of his men, he conueighed to the south, to saynt Dominickes towre. After he had buyded this foztresse, leauyng therein a garryson of .xx. men, he with the remanent of his souldiers, prepared them selues to searche the inner partes of the West syde of the Ilande, hitherto knowne onely by name. Therefore about .xxx. leagues, (that is) fourescore and tenne myles from the foztresse, he chaunced on the ryuer *Naiba*, whiche we sayde to defende from the mountaynes of *Cibaua*, ryght toward the south, by the myddest of the ilande. When he had ouerpasse this ryuer with a compaigne of armed men diuided into .xxv. decurions, that is, tenne in a compaign, with theyr capitaynes, he sent two decurions to the regions of those kynges in whose landes were the great wooddes of *brasile* trees. Inclining toward the lefte hande, they founde the wooddes, entred into them, and felled the high and precious trees, which were to that day vntouched. Eche of the decurions filled certayne of the ilande houses with the trunkes of *brasile*, there to be reserued vntill the shippes came which shoulde cary them away. But the Lieutenaunt directing his iourney toward the right hande, not farre from the bankes of the ryuer of *Naiba*, founde a certayne kyng whose name was *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, encamped against the inhabitantes of the prouince of *Naiba*, to subdue them vnder his dominion, as he had done many other kings of the iland, borderers vnto him. The palace of this great king, is called *Xaragua*, & is situate toward the West ende of the ilande, distant from the ryuer of *Naiba* .xxx. leagues. All the prynces which dwell betwene the West ende & his palace, are vassallaries vnto him. All that region from *Naiba*, to the furthest marches of the west, is utterly without golde, although it be full of mountaynes. When the kyng had espied our men, laying a part his weapons, & geuyng signes of peace, he spake gently to them (vncerteyne whether it were of humanitie or feare) and demaunded of them what they woulde haue. The Lieutenaunt answered, That he shoulde

*Isabella.**The Riuer of Naiba.**Wooddes of Brasile trees.**Mountaynes without golde.*



## The fyrst Decade.

paye tribute to the Admirall his brother, in the name of the Christian kyng of Spayne. To whom he sayde, Howe can you requyre that of me, whereas neuer a region vnder my dominion bringeth forth golde: For he had heard, that there was a strange nation entred into the ilande, whiche made great search for golde: But he supposed that they desyred some other thyng. The lieutenant answered agayne, God forbodde that we shoulde enioyne any man to paye such tribute as he myght not easely forbear, or such as were not engendered or growing in the region: but we vnderstande that your regions bying forth great plenty of Gossampine cotton, and hempe, with such other, wherof we desyre you to geue vs parte. When he heard these woordes, he promysed with cherefull countenance, to geue hym as much of these thynges as he woulde requyre. Thus dismissing his army, and sending messengers before, he him selfe accompanied the Lieutenant, and brought him to his palace, being distant (as we haue sayde) .xxx. leagues. In al this tracte, they passed through the iurisdiction of other princes, beyng vnder his dominion: Of the whiche, some gaue them hempe, of no lesse goodnes to make tackelinges for shippes then our wood: Other some brought bread, and some gossamppne cotton. And so euery of them payde trybute with suche commodities as theyr countreys brought forth. At the length they came to the kynges mansion place of *Xaragua*. Before they entered into the palace, a great multitude of the kynges seruantes & subiectes resorted to the court, honorably (after their maner) to receyue their kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, with the strangers which he brought with him to see the magnificence of his court. But now shal you heare howe they were intertaind. Among other triumphes and spghtes, two are especially to be noted: Fyrst, there mette them a company of .xxx. women, beyng al the kynges wyues and concubines, bearyng in theyr handes branches of date trees, singyng and daunsyng: they were all naked, sayng that theyr pryue partes were couered with breeches of gossampine cotton: but the virgins, hauyng theyr heare hangyng downe about their shoulders, tyed about the forehead with a syllet, were utterly naked. They affirme that theyr faces, brestes, papyes, handes, and other partes of theyr bodyes, were exceedyng smoothe,

The kinges  
wiues.

Well fattored  
women.

smothe, and well proportioned, but somewhat inclynnyng to a louely broune. They supposed that they had seene those most beutyfull *Dryades*, or the natyue nymphes or fayres of the fountaynes whereof the antiques spake so muche. The braunches of date trees, which they bore in theyr right handes when they daunced, they deliuered to the Lieutenaint, with lowe curtesy and smylling countenaunce. Thus enterynyng into the kynges house, they founde a delycate supper prepared for them, after theyr maner. When they were well refreshed with meate, the nyght drawyng on, they were brought by the kynges officers, euery man to his lodgyng, accordyng to his degree, in certayne of theyr houses about the pallaice, where they rested them in hangyng beddes, after the maner of the countrey, wherof we haue spoken more largely in an other place.

The day folowynyng, they brought our men to their common hall, into the whiche they come togeather as often as they make any notable games or triumphes, as we haue sayde before. Here, after many daunsynges, syngynges, maskynges, runnynges, wrestlyngs, and other tryng of mastreyes, sodaynly there appeared in a large plaine neere vnto the hal, two great armies of men of warre, whiche the kyng for his pastyme had caused to be prepared, as the Spaniardes vse the playe with reedes, which they call *Iuga de Canias*. As the armies drew neere togeather, they assailed the one the other as fiercely, as if mortall enimies with theyr baners spleade, should fight for theyr goodes, theyr landes, theyr lyues, theyr libertie, theyr countrey, theyr wyues & theyr children, so that within the momente of an houre, foure men were slayne, and many wounded. The battayle also shoulde haue continued longer, yf the kyng had not, at the request of our men, caused them to ceasse. The thyrde day, the Lieutenaint commaundyng the kyng to solue more plentie of gossampine vypon the bankes neere vnto the waters syde, that they myght the better paye theyr trybute pryuately, accordyng to the multitude of theyr houses, he preparred to *Isabelka*, to vylite the sycke men whiche he had lesse there, and also to see howe his woorkes went forwarde. In the tyme of his absence .xxx. of his men were consumed with diuerse diseases. Wherefore beyng sore troubled in his mynde, and in maner at his wyttes ende, what

Diades.

A pretty pastyme.

Foure men  
slayne in 1 poztPromission for  
diseased men.

## The first decade.

what he were best to doo, for as muche as he wanted al thynges  
 necessarie, as wel to restore them to health whiche were yet  
 accased, as also vitayles to mayntayne þ whole multitude, where  
 as there was yet no thyppe come from Spayne: at the length,  
 he determyned to sende abrode the sicke men here and there to  
 findrye Regyons of the ilande, and to the castelles whiche they  
 had erected in the same. For directly from the citie of Isabella  
 to saynt Dominikes towre, that is, from the north to the south,  
 through the ilande, they had buylded thus many castles. Fyrst,  
 xxxvi. myles distant from Isabella, they buylded the castell of  
*Sperantia*. From *Sperantia*, xxv. myles, was the castell of saynt  
 Katharine. From saynt Katharines .xx. myles, was saynt James  
 towre. Other .xx. myles from saynt James towre, was a strong-  
 er fortresse then any of the other, whiche they called the towre  
 of Conception, which he made the stronger, because it was situat  
 at the rootes of the golden mountaynes of Cibana, in the great  
 and large playne, so fruiteful and well inhabited as we haue be-  
 fore described. He buylded also an other in the mydde waye be-  
 twene the towre of Conception, & saynt Dominikes towre, the  
 whiche also was stronger then the towre of Conception, because  
 it was within the lymittes of a great kyng, haupng vnder his  
 dominion fise thousande men, whose chiefe citie and head of the  
 Realme, beyng called *Bonaum*, he wylled that the castell should  
 also be called after the same name. Therefore leauyng the sicke  
 men in these castels, and other of the ilande houses nere vnto  
 the same, he hym selfe repayred to saynt Dominikes, exacting  
 trybutes of al the kynges whiche were in his way. When  
 he had tarped there a fewe dayes, there was a rumour spredde,  
 that all the kynges about the borders of the towre of Concep-  
 tion, had conspyred with desperate myndes to rebell agaynst  
 the Spaniardes. When the Lieutenaut was certified hereof,  
 he tooke his tourney towarde them immediately, not beyng  
 discouraged eyther by the length of the waye, or feeblenesse of  
 his souldoyers, beyng in maner foreweried with trauayle. As  
 he drew nere vnto them, he had aduertysment that kyng  
*Guarionexius* was chosen by other prynces to be the Capitayne  
 of this rebellion, and that he was enforced therto halfe vntwyl-  
 lyng, beyng seduced by perswasions and prouocations: the  
 whiche

The castels  
 or towers of  
 Hispaniola.

The golden  
 mountaynes  
 of Cibana.

The kynges  
 rebell.

whiche is moze lykely to be true, for that he had before had experience of the power and policie of our men. They came together at a daye appoynted, accompanied with .xv. thousande men, armed after their manner, once agayne to proue the fortune of warre. Here the Lieutenaunt, consultyng with the Captayne of the fortresse and the other souldiers of whom he had the conducte, determined to sette vpon them vnwares in their owne houses, before they coulde prepare theyr army. He sent forth therefore to euery kyng a Centurion, that is, a captayne of a hundred, which were commaunded vpon a sudden to inuade theyr houses in the nyght, and to take them sleepyng, before the people (being scattered here & there) myght assemble togeather. Thus secretly enterpyng into their byllages, not fortified with walles, trenches, or bulwarks, they broke in vpon them, toke them, bound them, & led away euery man his prisoner accordyng as they were commaunded. The Lieutenent hym selfe with his hundred men, assailed kyng *Guarionexius* as the worthier personage, whom he tooke prisoner, as did the other captaynes theyr kings, and at the same houre appoynted. Fourteene of them were brought the same nyght to the towne of Conception. Shortly after, when he had put to death two of the kynges whiche were the chiefe autours of this newe reuolte, and had suborned *Guarionexius* & the other kynges to attempt the same, least the people for sorowe of theyr kynges shoulde neglecte or forsake their countrey, whiche thyng myght haue ben great incommodie to our men, who by thincrease of theyr seedes and frutes were oftentimes ayded, he freely pardoned and dismissed *Guarionexius* and the other kynges, the people in the meane tyme flocking together about the towne, to the number of fyue thousande without weapons, with pittifull howling for the deliuerance of their kynges: The ayre thundered, & the earth trembled through the vehemencie of theyr outcry. The Lieutenaunt warned *Guarionexius* and the other kynges, with threatenynge, with rewardes, and with promyses, neuer thereafter to attempt any suche thyng. Then *Guarionexius* made an oration to the people, of y great power of our men, of theyr clemencie toward offenders, & liberalitie to suche as remaine faithfull, despying them to quiet theyr mindes, and from thenceforth neyther in deede nor thought to interpryse

An army of  
.xv. thousand  
Barbarians.

The kinges  
are taken pris  
soners.

king *Guarionexius*  
is  
pardoned.



## The first decade.

any thyng agaynst the Chyistians, but to obeye and serue them, excepte they woulde dayly byyng them selues into further calamities. When the oration was synysed, they tooke hym by, and set hym on theyr shoulders, and so carped hym home to his owne pallace: and by this meanes, this Region was pacified for a whyle. But our men, with heauy countenaunce wandered by and done, as desolate in a strange countrey, lackyng vittailles, and woꝛne out of apparell, whereas. xv. monethes were now passed sence the Admirals departure, durynge which tyme, they coulde heare nothyng out of Spayne. The Lieuetenaunt comforted them all that he coulde with sayre wordes and promyses. In the meane tyme, *Beuchius Anacauchoa* (the kyng of the West partes of the Region of *Xaragua* (of whom we spake before) sent messengers to the Lieuetenaunt, to signifye vnto hym, that he had in a redynes the gossampine cotton, and suche other thynges as he wylled hym to prepare for the payment of his trybute. Whereupon the Lieuetenaunt tooke his iourney thither, and was honorably receiued of the kyng and his syster, somtyme the wyfe of *Caunaboa* the kyng of *Cibana*, bearyng no lesse rule in the gouernaunce of her brothers kyngdome, then he hym selfe: For they affirmed her to be a wyse woman, of good maners, & pleasaunt in company. She earnestly perswaded her brother, by the example of her husband, to loue and obeye the Chyistians. This woman was called *Anacaona*. He founde in the palace of *Beuchius Anacauchoa*. xxxii. kynges, which had brought theyr tributes with them, and abode his comming. They brought with them also, besyde theyr tribut assigned them, further to demerite y<sup>e</sup> fauour of our men, great plentie of vitailles, as both kindes of bread, cunnies, and fishes, alredy dried, because they should not putrifie: Serpentes also of that kynde which we sayd to be esteemed among them as most delicate meat, and lyke vnto Crocodiles sauing in bygnes. These serpentes they cal *Luannas*, which our men learned (somewhat to late) to haue ben engendꝛed in the ilande: For vnto that day, none of them durst aduenture to tast of them, by reason of theyr horrible deformitie and lothsomnes. Yet the Lieuetenant, being entysed by the pleasantnes of the kynges syster, determined to tast of the serpentes. But when he felte the fleshe thereof to be so delycate to his tongue,

Backe of bys  
caples.

xxxii. kynges.

Serpentes  
eaten.

tongue, he fel to amayne without al feare: the whiche thyng his  
 companions perceiuing, were not behinde hym in greedynesse,  
 insomuch that they had now none other talke, then of the sweete-  
 nesse of these serpentcs, which they aspyme to be of moze plea-  
 saunt taste, then epyther our Pheasantes or Partriches: but  
 they lose theyr taste, except they be prepared after a certayne fa-  
 shion, as doo Peacocks and Pheasantes, except they be enter-  
 larded before they be roasted. They prepare them therfore after  
 this manner: Fyrst, taking out theyr bowelles, euen from the  
 throte to the thyghes, they washe and rubbe theyr bodyes very  
 cleane both within & without, then rolling them together on a cir-  
 cle, inuolued after the manner of a sleeppynge snake, they thruste  
 them into a pot, of no bigger capacitie then to holde them only,  
 this done, putting a litle water vnto them, with a portion of  
 the Ilande Pepper, they seeche them with a soft fyre of swete  
 wood, and such as maketh no great smoke: Of the taste of them  
 beyng thus sodde, is made an exceedyng pleasant broth or pot-  
 tage. They say also, that there is no meate to be compared to the  
 egges of these serpentcs, which they vse to seeche by them selues:  
 they are good to be eaten as soone as they are sodde, and may  
 also be reserued many dayes after. But hauyng sayde thus  
 much of their entertaynement and dayntie fare, let vs nowe  
 speake of other matters. When the Lieutenant had fylled one  
 of the Ilande houses with the Gossampine cotton which he had  
 receiued for tribute, the kynges promysed furthermoze to geue  
 hym as muche of theyr bread as he woulde demaunde: he gaue  
 them hartie thanks, and gently accepted theyr frendly proffer.  
 In the meane tyme, whyle this bread was a geatheryng in sur-  
 dyng regions, to be brought to the pallace of Beuchius Anacaucoa  
 kyng of Xaragua, he sent messengers to Isabella, for one of the  
 two Catauelles whiche were lately made there, intendyng to  
 send the same againe thither laden with bread. The Maryners  
 glad of these tydynges, sayled about the Ilande, and in shorte  
 space brought the shyppe to the coastes of Xaragua. The wyfe  
 of kyng Beuchius Anacaucoa, that wyse and pleasaunt woman  
 Anacaona (the wyfe sometyme of Caunaboa the kyng of the gol-  
 den house of the mountaynes of Gibana, whose husbände dyed in  
 the way when he shoulde haue ben carped into Spayne) when

The dressing  
of serpentcs  
to be eaten.

Serpentes  
egges eaten.

Gossyping  
cotton.

Queene Ana-  
caona.

## The fyrst Decade.

she hearde say that our shyppe was arrived on the shore of her na-  
 tive countrey, perswaded the king her brother, that they both  
 myght goe together to see it: for the place where the shyppe lay,  
 was not passe. vi. myles distant from *Xaragua*. They rested all  
 nyght in the midway, in a certayne byllage in the which was the  
 treasure or iewel house of *Anacaona*. Her treasure was neither  
 golde, siluer, or pretious stones, but only thynges necessary to be  
 vsed, as chayres, stooles, settels, dishes, potingers, pottes,  
 pannes, balons, treyes, and such other houtholde stufte and in-  
 strumentes, workemanly made of a certayne blacke and harde  
 shynning wood, which that excellent learned phisicion, *John bap-  
 tist Elisius*, affirmeth to be *Hebene*. Whatsoever portion of wit  
 nature hath geuen to the inhabitantes of these landes, the same  
 doth most appeare in these kynde of woorkes, in which they  
 shewe great art and cunnypng, but those which this woman had,  
 were made in the island of *Guanabba*, situate in the mouth of the  
 west syde of *Hispaniola*: In these they graue the lyuely images  
 of such phantasies as they suppose they see walke by nyght,  
 which the antiques called *Lemures*: Also the images of men, ser-  
 pents, beastes, & what so euer other thing they haue once seene.  
 What woulde you thinke (moste noble prynce) that they coulde  
 doo, if they had the vse of Iron and Steele? For they only fyre  
 make these soft in the fyre, & afterwarde make them holowe and  
 carue them with a certayne stone which they fynd in the ryuers.  
 Of stooles and chayres, she gaue the Lieutenanant fourteene,  
 and of vesselles partayning to the table and kitchen, shee gaue  
 hym threescore, some of wood, and some of earth, also gossam-  
 pyne cotton redye spunne, foure great bottomes of exceeding  
 weight. The day folowing, when they came to the sea side, where  
 was an other village of the kynges, the Lieutenanant com-  
 maunded the shyppe boate to be brought to the shore. The kyng  
 also had prepared two Canoas, paynted after theyr maner, one  
 for hym selfe and certayne of his gentelmen, an other for his si-  
 ster *Anacaona* and her wayting women: but *Anacaona* despyed to  
 be caried in the shippe boate with the Lieutenanant. When  
 they nowe approached neare vnto the shippe, certayne great pee-  
 ces of ordinaunce were discharged of purpose, the sea was fyl-  
 led with thunder, and the ayre with smoke, they trembled  
 and

The treasure  
of Queene  
*Anacaona*.

Hebene wood.

The Lande of  
*Guanabba*.

Cunnypng Ar-  
tificers.

A stone in the  
Reede of Iron.

Summes.

and quaked for feare, supposyng that the frame of the worlde had ben in daunger of falling, but when they sawe the Lieutenant laugh, and looke chearefully on them, they called agayne theyr spirites, and when they yet drew nearer to the shyp, and hearde the noyse of the flutes, shawlnes, and drummes, they were wonderfully astonied at the sweete harmonie thereof. Entryng into the shyppe, and beholdyng the foreshyp and the sterne, the toppe castel, the maste, the hatches, the cabbens, the keele, and the tacklynges, the brother fyxing his eyes on the syster, and the syster on the brother, they were both as it were dumme and amazed, and wylste not what to say for to muche woondryng. Whyle beholdyng these thyngs, they wandered vp and downe the ship, the Lieutenaunt commaunded the ankers to be loosed, and the sayles to be hoysed vp. Then were they further astonysed, when they saw so great a mole to mooue as it were by it selfe, without oyes, and without the force of man: for there arose from the earth suche a wynde, as a man woulde haue wysshed for of purpose. Yet furthermore, when they perceined the shippe to mooue sometime forwarde, and sometyme backward, sometyme toward the right hande, and sometyme toward the lefte, and that with one winde, and in manner at one instant, they were at theyr wyttes ende for to much admiration. These thynges finished, and the shippes laden with bread, and suche other rewardes, they beyng also recompenced with other of our thynges, he dismissed not onely the kynge *Beuchius Anachaucha* and his syster, but lykewise all theyr seruantes & women, replenished with ioye & wondering. After this, he hym selfe tooke his iorney by foote with his soldiers to the citie of *Isabella*, where he was aduertised that one *Roldanus Ximenuis*, a noughty felowe (whom before, beyng his seruant, he had preferred to be capitayne of the myners and labourers, & after made hym a Iudge in causers of controuersie) had used hym selfe outragiously, and was maliciously mynded against hym, and further, the cause of much mischief in his absence. Ifor kynge *Guarionexius* (who a whyle before was pardoned of his former rebellion, and perswaded the people to obey the Spaniardes) was by his noughtie blage, and suche other as were confedered with hym, so accensed to reuenge the iniuries whiche they susteyned at his handes, besyde the abominable

Musical instruments.

Ignorance causeth admiration.

The intemperancie & malice of a seruile wit aduanced.



Ciguantans.

actes whiche they, folowing only the lawe of nature, abhorred to admit, that he, with his familye, famplyers, and ditionaries, of desperate minde fledde to the mountaines, being distaunt from *Isabella* only tenne leagues westwarde, towarde the north side of the sea. These mountaynes, and also the inhabitantmes of the same, they call by one name, *Ciguaios*. The great king of all the kinges and regions of these mountaynes is called *Maio-banexius*, and his court or pallace is named *Capronus*: the mountaynes are rough, high, and such as no man can passe to the toppes therof, they are also bending, and haue their corners reaching downe to the sea. Betweene both the corners of the mountaynes, is there a greate playne, by the whiche many riuers fall from the mountaynes into the sea, the people are verie fierse and warlike men, hauing theyr original of the *Cambales*: for when they descend from the mountaynes to the playnes, to keepe warre with theyr borderers, they eate all such as they kill. *Guarionexius* therfore, fleeing to this kyng of these mountaynes, gaue hym many presentes of such thinges as are wanting in his countrey, therewith declaring how vilely, villanously, and violently he had been vsed of our men, with whom he coulde nothyng preuaile, neither by fayre meanes, nor by foule, nother by humilitie, nor by stoutnesse, and that to be the cause of his resorting, to hym at that tyme, most humbly desyring hym to be his defence agaynst chopprellions of suche myscheuous people. *Maio-banexius* hereupon, made hym promisse to ayde and helpe hym against the Christians al that he might. The Licutenant therfore made haste to the fortreffe of *Conception*, whither, as soone as he was come, he sent for *Roldanus Xeminus*, who with suche as folowed hym, lay in certayne of the Island villages, xii. myles distant from the fortreffe. At his commyng, the Licutenant asked him what al these sturres and tumultes meant: He answered without abashment, Your brother the Admiral hath to doo therewith, and shall aunswere for the same before the kyng, for we perceiue that the kyng hath so put hym in trust, that he hath had no regarde to vs: here we peryshe for hunger, whyle we folowe you, and are dyuen to seeke our unhappye foode in the desartes: Your brother also assigned me assystant with you in gouernyng the Islande. Wherefore, syth you haue no more respect

respecte vnto vs, we are determined no longer to be vnder your obedience. When *Roldanus* had spoken these wordes, and suche other, the Lieutenannt woulde haue layde handes on hym, but he escaped his syngers, and fledde to the West partes of the region of *Xaragua*, hauyng with hym a trayne of threescore and ten men, whiche were of his confederacie. Here this fylthy synke of rebelles thus conspired, playde theyr vages, and lyued with loose bypdes in al kynde of myscheefe, robbyng the people, spoyling the countrey, and rauishyng both wyues and virgins. Whyle these thynges were dooing in the Islande, the Admiral had eight shippes appoynted him by the kyng, of the whiche he sent two laden with vyttualles, from *Cales* or *Gades* of *Hercules* pylers, directly to the Lieutenant his brother. These shypes by chaunce arryued fyrst on that syde of the Islande where *Roldanus* *Xeminus* ranged with his companions. *Roldanus* in short tyme had seduced them, promysyng them in the steede of mattockes, wenches pappes: for labour, pleasure: for hunger, abundance: and for weerynesse and watching, sleepe and quietnesse. *Guarionexius* in the meane tyme assembled a power of his frendes and confederates, & came ostentymies downe into the playne, and slue as many of the Chyristian men as he coulde meete conuenientlye, and also the Islande men whiche were theyr frendes, wastynge theyr grounde, destroying theyr seedes, and spoyling their byllages. But *Roldanus* and his adherentes, albeit they had knowledge that the Admiral woulde shortly come, yet feared they nothing, because they had seduced the newe men whiche came in the fyrst shypes. Whyle the Lieutenant was thus tossed in the myddest of these stormes, in the meane tyme his brother the Admiral set forwarde from the coastes of Spayne: but not directly to *Hispaniola*, for he turned more toward the south. In the whiche voyage, what he dyd, what coastes both of the lande and sea he compassed, and what newe regions he discovered, we wyl fyrst declare: for to what ende and conclusion the sayd tumultes and seditions came, we wyl expresse in the ende of the booke following. Thus fare ye well.

Licentiousnesse  
in libertie.

Hercules pylers.

A violent perswasion.

The furle of  
*Guarionexius*.

The thyn voyage of  
*Colonus* the Admiral.

## The first Decade.

### The syxt booke of the fyrst Decade, to

Lodouike Cardinal of Aragonie.



Olonus the Admirall, the thirde day of the Calendes of Iune, in the yeere of Chyriste 1498. hopyed by his sayles in the haueu of the towne Barramedabas, not farre distant from Cales, and set forwarde on his voyage with eyght shippes laden with vittualles and other necessities. He diuered from his accustomed race, whiche was by the Ilandes of Canarie, by reason of certayne frenchemen pyrates and rousers on the sea, whiche lay in the ryght way to meete with hym. In the way from Cales to the Ilandes of Canarie, about fourescore and tenne myles toward the left hande, is the Ilande of Madera, more southward then the citie of Ciuile by foure degrees, for the Pole Artike is eleuate to Ciuile. xxxvi. degrees, but to this Ilande (as the Mariners say) only. xxii. He sayled therefore fyrst to Madera, and sendyng from thence directly to Hispaniola the residue of the shippes laden with vittualles and other necessities, he him selfe with one shyppe with deckes, and two Marchant Carauelles, coasted toward the South to come to the Equinoctial lyne, and so forth to folowe the tracte of the same toward the West, to the intent to search the natures of suche places as he coulde finde vnder or neare vnto the same, leauing Hispaniola on the north side on his ryght hande. In the middle of this race, lye xiii. Ilandes of the Portugales, whiche were in olde tyme called Hesperides, and are now called Caput Viride, or Cabouerde, these are situate in the sea, ryght over agaynst the inner partes of Ethiope; Westwarde two dayes saylyng. One of these the Portugales call Bonauista. With the Snaples, or rather the Tortoyles of this Ilande, many leproous men are healed and cleansed of theyr leprosie. Departing sodainly from hence, by reason of the contagiousnesse of the ayre, he sayled CCC. lxxx. myles toward the West south west, whiche is in the myddelt betweene the West and the South. There was he so bered with maladies and heate (for it was the moneth of Iune) that his shyps were almost set on fyre: The hoopes of his barrells cracked and brake, and the fresh water ranne out: the men also complayned that they were not able

Frenchemen  
pyrates.

The island of  
Madera.

Healing of  
the leper.

Contagious  
ayre and ex-  
creme heate.

to abide that extremitie of heate. Here the north pole was eleuate  
 onely. vii. degrees from the Horizontall. For the space of viii.  
 dayes; in the which he suffered these extremities, onely the first  
 day was fayre, but al the other, cloudy and rayny, yet neuer  
 thelesse feruent hotter. Wherefore it bntenpines repented hym  
 not a fittle, that euer he tooke that way. Being tossed in these dan-  
 gers and vexations eyght continuall dayes; at the length an  
 Eastsoutheast wynde arose; and gaue a prosperons blaste to his  
 sayles. Whiche wynde folowing directly towarde the west, he  
 founde the starres ouer that paralell placed in other order,  
 and an other kynde of ayre, as the Admirall hym selfe tolde  
 me. And they al affirme, that within thre dayes sayling, they  
 founde most temperate and pleasaunt ayre. The Admirall al-  
 so affirmeth, that from the clime of the great heate and unhollsome  
 ayre, he euer ascended by the backe of the sea, as it were by a  
 hygh mountayne towarde heauen; yet in all this tyme, coulde  
 he not once see any land. But at the length, the day before the Ca-  
 lendes of Iuly, the watchman lookyng forth of the toppe castel  
 of the greatest shippe, cried out aloude for ioy that he espied thre  
 exceeding hygh mountaynes, exhortyng his felowes to be of good  
 cheere, and to put away al pensuenies: for they were very heaty  
 and sorowfull, as well for the greafe which they susteyned by rea-  
 son of thintollerable heate, as also that their freshe water sayled  
 them, whiche ranne out at the ryfes of the baryls, caused by ex-  
 treme heate, as we haue sayd. Thus being wel comforted, they  
 drew to the land, but at theyr first appoach they could not aryue,  
 by reason of the shalownes of the sea nere the shore. Yet looking  
 out of theyr shippes, they myght well perceiue that the Region  
 was inhabited, and wel cultured, for they sawe very fayre gar-  
 dens, and pleasaunt meadowes: from the trees and herbes wher-  
 of, when the moynyng dewes beganne to ryse, there proceeded  
 manye sweete saoures. Twentie myles distant from hence,  
 they chaunced into a hauen, very apte to harborowe shippes;  
 but it had no ryuer running into it. Sayling on yet somewhat  
 further, he founde at the length a commodious hauen, wherein he  
 might repaire his shippes, and make prouision of freshe water  
 and fud. *Arenalis* calleth this land *Putra*. They found no houses  
 nere vnto the hauen, but innumerable sheppes of certeyn wilde  
 beasts

The island of  
Putra.



## The first Decade.

beastes feete, of the whiche they founde one dead, muche lyke a  
goate. The day folowynge, they sawe a Canoa comynge a farre  
of, haupyng in it foure and twentie young men of goodly corpora-  
ture and high stature, al armed with targets, bowes, & arrowes:  
the heare of theyr heades was long and playne, and cutte on the  
forehead much after the manner of the Spanyards, their pyruie  
partes were couered with syllets of gossampine cotton, of sun-  
dry colours enterlaced, & were beside al ouer naked. Here the Ad-  
miral, confydering with him selfe the corporature of this people,  
and nature of the lande, he beleued the same to be so muche the  
nearer heauen, then other regions of the same paralel, and further  
remoued from the grosse vapours of the vales, and maryshes,  
howe muche the hyghest toppes of the hyggest mountaynes  
are distant from the deepe vales. For he earnestly affirmeth, that  
in al that nauigation, he neuer went out of the paralels of Ethio-  
pe: So great difference is there betweene the nature of thinha-  
bitantes, and of the soyles of diuers regions, al vnder one clime  
or paralel, as is to see betweene the people and regions beyng  
in the fyne lande of Ethiope, and them of the Ilandes vnder  
the same clime, haupyng the pole starre eleuate in y same degree.  
For the Ethiopians are all blacke, hauing theyr heare curled,  
more like wool then heare: but these people of the Iland of Puta,  
(beyng as I haue sayde vnder the clyme of Ethiope) are white,  
with long heare, and of yelow colour. Wherefore it is apparant,  
the cause of this so great difference, to be rather by the disposition  
of the earth, then constitution of heauen. For we knowe,  
that snowe falleth on the mountaynes of the Equinoctial, or  
burnt lyne, and the same to endure there continuallye: we  
knowe lykewyse, that the inhabitantes of the regions farre di-  
stant from that lyne towarde the north, are molested with great  
heate. The Admirall, that he myght allure the young men to  
hym with gentlenesse, shewed them lookynge glasses, sayre and  
bryght vessels of copper, haukes belles, and suche other thynges  
vniouen to them. But the more they were called, so muche  
the more they suspected craft and decefte, and fledde backe-  
warde: Yet dyd they with great admiration beholde our  
men and theyr thynges, but styll hauing theyr eyes in theyr  
handes redy to flee. When the Admirall sawe that he coulde

People of com-  
ly corporature,  
and long heare,  
neere the Equi-  
noctial.

The higher, the  
colder.

by no meanes assure them by gyftes, he thought to prooue what he coulde do with muscalle instrumentes, and therefore commaunded that they whiche were in the greatest shyp, should play on theyr drummes and shawlines. But the young men supposing this to be a token of battayle, lest theyr oyes, & in the twinclyng of an eye had theyr arrowes in theyr bowes, and theyr targets on their armes: and thus directing theyr arrowes toward our men, stode in expectation to knowe what this noyse might meane. Our men likewise preparyng theyr bowes and arrowes, approached toward them by litle and litle. But they departing from the Admirals shyppe, and trusting to the dexteritie of theyr oyes, came so neare one of the lesse shippes, that one of them plucked the cloke from the gouernour of the shyppe, and as wel as they coulde by signes, required hym to come alande, promisyng sayth that they woulde commune with him of peace. But when they sawe him goe to the Admirals shyp, whyther he went to aske leaue that he might commune with them, suspecting hereby some further decept, they leapt immediatlye into the Canoa and fledde as swyft as the wynde, so that to conclude, they could by no meanes be assured to familiaritie: Wherefore the Admiral thought it not conuenient to bestowe any long time there at this voyage. No great space from this Ilande, euer toward the West, the Admiral sayth he found so outrageous a fall of water, runnyng with suche a violence from the East to the West, that it was nothyng inferior to a myghtie streame fallyng from hygh mountaynes. He also confessed, that synce the first day that euer he knewe what the sea meant, he was neuer in suche feare. Proceedyng yet somewhat further in this dangerous voyage, he founde certayne gulfes of eyght myles, as it had ben the entraunce of some great hauen, into the whiche the sayde violent streames dyd fall. These gulfes or streyghtes he called *Os Draconis*, that is, the Dragons mouth: and the Ilande directly oueragaynst the same, he called *Margarita*. Out of these strayghtes, issued no lesse force of freshe water, whiche encounteryng with the salte, dyd stryue to passe forth, so that betwecne both the waters, was no small conspycter: But entryng into the gulfe, at the length he founde the water thereof verye freshe and good to drynke. The Admirall

Muscalle instruments.

The violent course of the water from the East to the West.

The gulfe called *Os Draconis*.

hym

## The fyrst Decade.

hym selfe, and they which were his companions in this voyage, beyng men of good credit, and perceauing my diligence in searchyng for these matters, tolde me yet of a greater thyng, that is, that for the space of .xxvi. leagues, amountyng to a hundreth and foure myles, he sayled euer by freshe water, inso- much that the further he proceeded, especially towarde the west, he affirmed the water to be the fresher. After this, he came to a highe mountayne inhabited onely with Monkeys or Par- masets, on that part towarde the East: For that syde was rowgh with rockye and stony mountaynes, and therefore not inhabited with men. Yet they that went a lande to searche the countrey, founde nere vnto the sea, many fayre fieldes, well tilled and sowne, but no people, nor yet houses or cotages: Parhappes they were gone further into the countrey, to sowe theyr corne, and applye theyr husbandry, as wee often see our husbandemen to leaue theyr stationz and villages for the same purpose. In the west syde of that mountayne, they espyed a large playne, whither they made hast, and cast anker in the brode ryuer. As soone as the inhabitantes had knowledge that a strange nation was arryued in theyr coastes, they came flockyng without all feare to see our men. We understode by theyr sygnes and poyntynges, that this Region was called *Paria*, and that it was very large: in so muche that the further it reacheth towarde the weste, to be so muche the better inhabited and replenished with people. The Admirall therfore, takyng into his shippe foure of the men of that lande, searched the west partes of the same. By the temperatenes of the ayer, the pleasauntnes of the ground, and the multitude of people which they sawe daily more & more as they sayled, they coniectured that these thynges portended some great matter: as in deede their opininon failed them not, as we will further declare in his place. The sonne not yet rysen, but beginnyng euen now to ryse, being one day allured by the plea- sauntnes of the place, and sweete saours whiche breathed from the lande to the shippes, they went a lande: Here they founde a greater multitude of people, then in any other place. As our men appoched towarde them, there came certeine messengers from their *Cacici*, that is, the kinges of the countrey, to desyre the Admirall in the name of theyr princes to come to theyr palaces with.

Sea of fresh water.

Parmasets, Monkeys.

The sayre and large region of Paria.

Humane people.

without feare, and that they and al theyrs shoulde bee at his commaundement. When the Admirall had thanked them, and made his excuse for that tyme, there came innumerable people with theyr boates to the shyppes, haung for the most parte cheynes about theyr neckes, garlandes on theyr heades, and brase'ttes on theyr armes of pearles of India, and that so commonly, that our women in playes and tryumphes, haue not greater plentie of stones of glasse and crystall in theyr garlands, crownes, girdels, and suche other tymentes. Being asked where they gathered them, they poynted to the next shore by the sea bankes. They signified also, by certeyne scozefull iestures whiche they made with theyr mouthes and handes, that they nothing esteemed pearles. Taking also baskettes in their handes, they made signes that the same myght be fylled with them in shorte space. But because the corne wherewith his shyppes were laden to be carped into *Hispaniola*, had taken hurt by reason of the salt water, he determined to deferre this marte to a more conuenient tyme: Yet he sent to land two of the shyp boates laden with men, to thintent to fetch some garlands of pearles for exchange of our thynges, and also somewhat to searche the nature of the Region, and disposition of the people. They enterteyned our men gently, and came flocking to them by heapes, as it had ben to beholde some strange monsters. First there came to meete our men, two men of grauitie, whom the multitude folowed: One of these was well in age, and the other but young. They thinke it was the father, with his sonne whiche should succede hym. When the one had saluted and embrased the other, they brought our men into a certeyne rounde house, neere vnto the whiche was a great court. Wyther were brought many chapers and stooles made of a certeyne blacke wood, and very cummyngly wrought. After that our men and theyr Princes were sette, theyr waytyng men came in laden, some with sundry delicate dyshes, and some with wyne: But theyr meat, was only frutes, and those of dyuers kyndes, and betterly vnknown to vs. Theyr wyne was both whyte and redde, not made of grapes, but of the lycour of dyuers frutes, and very pleasaunte in drynkyng. After this banquet made in the olde mans house, the young man brought them to his tabernacle or mansion place, where

Chapers and  
stooles of Ye  
bene.



## The fyrst Decade.

was a great company both of men and women; but they stood  
disseuered the one from the other. They are whyte, eilen as  
our men are, sauung suche as are much conuerlant in the sinne.  
They are also very gentle, and full of humanitie towrde stran-  
gers. They couer theyr priuie partes with gossampine cotton,  
wrought with sundry colours, and are besyde all naked. There  
was fewe, or none, that had not eyther a collar, a chayne, or a  
bracelet of golde and pearles, and many had all. Beryng as-  
ked where they had that golde, they poynted to certayne moun-  
taines, seemyng with theyr countenance to dissuade our men  
from goyng thither: For putting theyr armes in theyr mouthes,  
and grymmyng as though they bytte the same, styl poyntyng  
to the mountaynes, they seemed to insinuate that men were  
eaten there: but whether they meant by the Canibales, or wylde  
beastes, our men coulde not wel perceiue. They tooke it excee-  
dyng greuouslye, that they coulde neyther vnderstande our  
men, nor our men them. When they whiche were sent to lande,  
were returned to the shippes about thre of the clocke at after  
noone the same day, hyngyng with them certayne garlandes,  
and collers of pearles, they loosed theyr ankers to departe, in-  
dyng to come agayne shortlye, when all thynges were set in  
good order in *Hispaniola*: but he was preuented by another,  
whiche defeated him of the rewarde of his trauaile. He was al-  
so hyndered at this time by reason of the shalownesse of the sea, &  
violent course of the water, which with continuall tossyng, bruised  
the greatest shippe as often as any great gale of wind arose. To  
auoyde the daungers of suche shalowe places and shelves,  
he euer sent one of the smallest Carauelles before to trye the  
way with soundyng, and the byggest shippes folowed be-  
hynde. The regions beyng in the large prouince of *Paria*, for the  
space of CCC. myles, are called of the inhabitants, *Cumana*, and  
*Manacapan*; from these regions distant .lx. leagues, is there an  
other region called *Curiana*. When he had thus passed ouer this  
long tract of sea, supposyng styl that it had ben an Ilande, & doub-  
tyng that he myght passe by the West to the North directly to  
*Hispaniola*, he chaunced into a ryuer of .xxx. cubits deapth, and  
of suche breadth as hath not lyghly ben hearde of. For he as-  
symeth it to be, xxviii. leagues. A lytle further towarde the  
West,

Whyte men  
neere the Equi-  
noctiall.

Shalownesse  
of the sea.

The use of Ca-  
rauels or Bri-  
gantines.

A ryuer of mar-  
tyllous deapth  
and breadth.

West, yet somewhat moze southwarde, as the bendyng of the shore requyred, he entered into a sea full of herbes or weedes. The seede of the herbes whiche swymme on the water, are muche lyke the berryes of the tree called *Lentiscus*, whiche beareth the swete gumme called *Mastix*: they grewe so thicke, that they somtyme in maner stayed the shippes. The Admiral reported, that here there is not one daye throughtout all the yeeere much longer or shorter then an other, and that the North pole is here eleuate onely fyue degrees as at *Paria*, in whose tracte all these coastes lye. He also declared certayne thinges as concernyng the variete of the north pole: the whiche because they seeme contrarie to thopinions of all the Astronomers, I wyll touche them but with a dye foote, as sayth the prouerbe. But it is well knowen (most noble prince) that whiche we call the pole starre, or north starre (called of the Italians *Tramontana*) is not the very poynt of the pole Arctike, bypon the whiche the axes or extremities of heauens are turned about. The whiche thing may well be proued, if when the starres first appeare, you beholde the pole starre throughe any narowe hole: For so, applying your instrument therto in the mornynge, somewhat before the daye spring haue blemished theyr light, yf then you looke through the same hole, you shall perceiue it to be moued from the place where you sawe it first. But howe it cometh to passe, that at the begynnyng of the euenyng twilight, it is eleuate in that Region only fyue degrees in the moneth of Iune, and in the mornynge twylyght to be eleuate .xv. degrees by the same quadrant, I doo not vnderstande, nor yet doo the reasons whiche he byngeth, in any poynt satisfye me. For he sayth, that he hereby coniectured, that the earth is not perfectly round: but that when it was created, there was a certayne heape raysed thereon, muche hygher then the other partes of the same. So that (as he sayth) it is not rounde after the forme of an apple or a bal (as other thinke) but rather lyke a pearce as it hangerh on the tree, and that *Paria* is the Region which possellerh the superminent or hyghest part thereof nearest vnto heauen: In so muche that he earnestly contendeth, the earthly Paradyse to be sytuat in the toppes of those three hylls, whiche we sayde before, that the watchman sawe out of the toppe castel of the

The eleuation  
of the Pole at  
*Paria*.

Note a secreete  
as concernyng  
the Pole starre.

An experience.

A marueylous  
secrete.

S

the shippe, and that the outragious streames of the freshe waters  
whiche so violentlye issue out of the sayde gulfes, and strue  
so with the salt water, fall headlong from the toppes of the saide  
mountaynes: But of this matter, it shall suffice to haue sayde  
thus muche. Let vs nowe therefore returne to the hystorie  
from whiche we haue digressed. When he perceiued him selfe  
to be thus intwapped in so great a gulfie beyonde his expecta-  
tion, so that he had nowe no hope to fynde any passage towarde  
the north, wherby he myght sayle directly to *Hispaniola*, he was  
enforced to turne backe the same way by the whiche he came,  
and directed his voyage to *Hispaniola* by the north of that lande  
lying towarde the East. They whiche afterwarde searched this  
lande more curiouslye, wyll it to be parte of the continent or  
firme lande of *India*, and not of *Cuba* as the Admirall supposed:  
For there are many whiche affirme that they haue sayled round  
about *Cuba*. But whether it be so or not, or whether enuying  
the good fortune of this man, they seeke occasion of quarelyng  
agaynst hym, I can not iudge: But tyme shall speake, whiche  
in tyme appoynted, reuealeth both truth and falsehod. But whe-  
ther *Paria* be continent or not, the Admirall doth not muche  
contende, but he supposeth it to be continent: He also affir-  
meth that *Paria* is more southwarde then *Hispaniola*, by eyght  
hundred fourescore and two myles. At the length he came to  
*Hispaniola* (to see his souldiers which he left with his brethren)  
the thyrd day of the calendes of September, in the yeere. 1498.  
but (as often times chaunceth in humane thynges) among his  
so many prosperous, pleasaunt, and luckye affayres, fortune  
myngled some seedes of wormewood, and corrupted his pure  
corne with the malicious weedes of cockle.

Time reuealeth  
all thynges.

¶ The seuenth booke of the fyrst decade, to  
the same Lodowike Cardinal. &c.



The Spaniards  
des rebell in the  
Admiralles abs-  
ence.

¶ When the Admirall was now come to the Is-  
lande of *Hispaniola*, he founde all thynges  
confounded and out of order. For *Roldanus*  
(of whom we spake before) refused in his  
absence to obey his brother, trusting to the  
multitude of such as were confedered with  
hym,

hym, and not onely behaued hym selfe proudly agaynst the Admiralles brother and Lieutenant, sometyme his maister, but also sent letters to his reproche to the kyng of Spayne, therein accusyng both the brethren, laying heynous matters to theyr charges. But the Admirall agayne sent messengers to the kyng, whiche myght informe hym of theyr rebellyon, instantly desyring his grace to sende hym a newe supplye of men, wherby he might suppress the lewdiuousnes, and punish them for theyr mischeuous actes. They accused the Admirall and his brother to be vniust men, cruel enemies, and shedders of the Spayne blood, declaring that vppon euery lyght occasyon they woulde racke them, hang them, and head them, and that they tooke pleasure therein, and that they departed from them, as from cruell tyrantes and wyld beasts reioycyng in blood, also the kynges enemies: affirmyng lyke wyse, that they wel perceiued theyr entent to be none other then to vsurpe the myre of the Ilandes, whiche theyng (they sayde) they suspected by a thousande coniectures, and especially in that they woulde permit none to resorte to the golde mynes, but only suche as were theyr familiers. The Admirall on the contrary part, when he desyred ayde of the kyng to infringe theyr insolencie, auouched that al those his accusers, which had deuised suche lyes agaynst hym, were noughtie felowes, abhominable knaues and vilains, theeves and baudes, ruffians, adulterers, & raiuers of women, false periured bagaboundes, and such as had ben eyther conuict, in prysons, or fledde for feare of iudgement: so escaping punishment, but not leauing vice, wherein they still contynued, and brought the same with them to the land, luyng there in like manner as before, in theste, lechery, & all kyndes of mischeuise, and so gyuen to Idolenes and sleepe, that wheras they were brought thither for myners, labourers, & sculthans, they would not now goe one furlong from theyr houses, except they were borne on mens backs, like unto them whiche in olde tyme were called *Ediles Carules*: for, to this office they put the miserable land me, whom they handled most cruelly. For leaue theyr bandes should discontinue from shedding of blood, and the better to trye theyr strength and manhod, they vscd now & then for their pastyme, to stryue among them selues, and proue who coulde most clearely

The Spaniards  
des accuse the  
Admiral.

The Admirall  
answers.

These had the  
custodies of the  
temples.



A cruel & deuill  
like paine.

With his woodde at one stroke stryke of the head of an innocent  
Soe that he whiche coulde with moſte agilitie make the head  
of one of thoſe poore wretches to flee quyte and cleane from the  
bodde to the grounde at one ſtrocke, he was the beſt man, and  
counted moſt honorable. Theſe thyngs, and many ſuche other,  
the one of them laid to the others charge before the king. While  
theſe thinges were dooing, the Admirall ſent his brother the  
Lieutenannt with an army of foureſcore and tenne footemen,  
and a ſewer hoſemen (with three thouſande of the Iſlande men,  
whiche were mortall eniemies to the Ciguaniens) to meete  
the people of Ciguana, with Kyng Guarionexius theyr graunde  
captayne, who had doone muche myſcheefe to our men, and  
ſuche as fauoured them. Therefore when the Lieutenant  
had conducted his army to the bankes of a certeyne great ryuer  
runnyng by the playne, whiche we ſayde before to lye betwene  
the corners of the mountaynes of Ciguana and the ſea, he founde  
two ſcoutes of his enimies luyking in certeyne buſhes, where  
of the one, caſtyng hym ſelfe headlong into the ſea, eſcaped, and  
by the mouth of the ryuer ſwamme ouer to his companions: the  
other being taken, declared that in the woodde on the other ſyde  
the ryuer, there lay in campe ſixe thouſande Ciguaniens redde,  
inwaies to aſſaile our men paſſing by. Wherefore the Lieute-  
nannt finding a ſhalow place where he might paſſe ouer, he with  
his whole army entred into the ryuer, the which thing when the  
Ciguaniens had eſpyed, they came runnyng out of the wooddes  
with a terrible crye, and moſt horrible aſpect, much like vnto the  
people called *Agathyſi*, of whom the poet virgil ſpeaketh: For  
they were all paynted and ſpotted with ſundry colours, and eſ-  
pectall with blacke and red, which they make of certeyne fruites  
nooſhed for the ſame purpoſe in theyr gardens, with the iuyce  
wherof they paynt them ſelues from the forehead, euen to the  
knees, hauyng theyr heare (whiche by art they make long and  
blacke, if nature deny it them) wreathed and rolled after a thou-  
ſande faſhions, a man woulde thinke them to be deuylles incar-  
nat newly broke out of hell, they are ſo like vnto helhoundes. As  
our men waded ouer the ryuer, they ſhotte at them, and hurled  
dartes ſo thicke, that it almoſt tooke the lyght of the ſonne from  
our men: inſomuche that if they had not bozne of the force  
therof

Heare made  
long & blacke  
by arte.

thereof with theyr targettes, the matter had gone wrong with them. Yet at the length, manye beyng wounded, they passed ouer the ryuer: which thyng when the enimies sawe, they fledde, whom our men pursuyng, slue some in the chace, but not manye, by reason of theyr swyftnesse of foote. Thus beyng in the wooddes, they shotte at our men more safely, for they beyng accustomed to the wooddes, and naked without anye lette, passed throughe the bushes and shrubbes, as it had ben wyld bores or Hartes, whereas our men were hyndered by reason of theyr apparell, targets, long iavelins, & ignorance of the place. Wherefore, when he had rested there al that nyght in bayne, and the day folowynge he sawe no stirring in the wooddes, he went (by the counsel and conducte of the other Ilande men whiche were in his army) immediatly fro thence to the mountaynes, in the whiche kyng *Maioanaxius* had his cheefe mansion place, in the village called *Capronum*, by the which name also the kyngs palace was called, beyng in the same village. Thus marching forwarde with his armie, about twelue myles of, he encamped in the village of another kyng, whiche the inhabitauntes had forsaken for feare of our men: Yet makynge diligent searche, they found two, by whom they had knowledge that there was tenne kinges with *Maioanaxius* in his palace of *Capronum*, with an armie of eight thousand *Cigauians*. At the Lieutenants first appproch, he durst not geue them battayle, vntyll he had somewhat better searched the region: yet dyd he in the meane tyme skymme the with them twyse. The next nyght about mydnyght, he sent forth scoutes, and with them guides of the Ilande men whiche knewe the countrey: Whom the *Cigauians* espying fro the mountaines, prepared them selues to the battayle, with a terrible crye or alarum after their maner, but yet durst not come out of the woods, supposing that the Lieutenant with his mayne army had ben euen at hande. The day folowynge, when he brought his army to the place where they encamped, leaping out of the wooddes, they twyse attempted the fortune of warre, fiercely assayling our men with a mayne force, and wounding many before they coude coouer them with theyr targettes: Yet our men put them to flyght, slue manye, and tooke manye, the resydue fledde to the wooddes, where they kept them styll as in their

Kyng *Maioanaxius*.

An army of eight thousand *Cigauians*.

## The fyrst Decade.

Kyng Guarionexius.

Naturall hatred of vyce.

most safe holde. Of them whiche were taken, he sent one, and with him another of the Ilande men, which was of his part, to *Maiohanexius*, with commaundement in this effect, The Lieutenannt brought not hyther his army (*Maiohanexius*) to kepe warre either against you, or your people, for he greatly despyeth your frendshyp: but his intent is, that *Guarionexius*, who hath perswaded you to be his ayde against him, to the great destruction of your people, and vndoing of your countrey, may haue due correction, as well for his disobedience towards hym, as also for rayling tumultes among the people: Wherefore he requireth you, and exhorteth you to deliuer *Guarionexius* into his handes, the whiche thing yf you shal perfourme, the Admirall his brother wyll not only gladly admyt you to his frendshyp, but also enlarge and defende your dominion. And yf herein you refuse to accomplysh his request, it wyll folowe, that you shal shortly repente you thereof: For your kyngdome shalbe wasted with sworde and fyre, and you shall abyde the fortune of warre, whereof you haue had experience with fauour, as you shall further know heareafter to your payne, yf with stubbernesse you prouoke him to shewe the uttermoste of his power. When the messenger had thus doone his arant, *Maiohanexius* answered, that *Guarionexius* was a good man, indued with many vertues as all men knewe, and therfore he thought him worthy his ayde, especially in as much as he fled to him for succoure, and that he had made him suche promise, whom also he had proued to be his faithfull frend: againe, that they were noughty men, violent, and cruell, desiring other mens goodes, and such as spared not to shed innocentes blood: in fine, that he would not haue to doo with suche myscheuous men, nor yet enter into frendshyppe with them. When these thynges came to the Lieutenanntes eare, he commaunded the village to be burnt where he hym selfe encamped, with manye other villages there about: and when he drew nere to the place where *Maiohanexius* lay, he sent messengers to him agayne, to common the matter with him, and to wyll hym to send some one of his moste faythfull frendes to entreate with hym of peace. Whereuppon the kyng sent vnto hym one of his cheefe gentelmen, and with hym two other to wayte on hym. When he came to the Lieutenanntes presence,

sence, he frendly requyred hym to perswade his lord and maister in his name, and earnestly to admonishe hym, not to suffer his flourishing kyngdome to be spoyled, or hym selfe to abyde the hard sarde of warre for *Guarionexius* sake: and further to exhorte hym to delyuer hym, excepte he woulde procure the destruction both of hym selfe, his people, and his countrey. When the messenger was returned, *Maïobanexius* assembled the people, declaring vnto them what was doone: but they cryed out on him to deliuer *Guarionexius*, and began to curl the daye that euer they had receaued hym, thus to disturbe theyr quietnesse. *Maïobanexius* answered them, that *Guarionexius* was a good man, & had well deserved of him, geuing him many princely presentes, and had also taught both his wife and him to sing and daunce, which thing he did not little esteeme, and was therfore fully resolved in no case to forsake him, or agaynst al humanitie to betray hys frende, which fled to him for succoure, but rather to abide al extremities with him, then to minister occasion of obloquie to slaundersers, to repozte that he had betrayed his ghest, whom he toke into his house with warranties. Thus dimissing the people, sighing and with sorowfull hartes, he called *Gnarionexius* before him, promising him agayne, that he would be partaker of his fortune while life lasted: in so much that he thought it not best to send any further woozde to the Lieutenant, but appoynted him whom before he sent to him, to keepe the way with a garrison of men, to thintent, that yf any messengers should be sent from the Lieutenant, to slay them by the way, and admit none to communication, or further entreatie of peace. In the meane time, the Lieutenant sent two, wherof the one was a captiue *Ciguanian*, and the other an *Island* man, of them which were frendes to our men: and they were both taken and slaine. The Lieutenant followed them only with ten footemen & foure horsemen, finding his messengers dead in the way, he was further prouoked to wyath, and determined moze extremely to deale with *Maïobanexius*, & therfore went forward incontinently with his whele army to his cheefe pallace of *Capronum*, where he yet lay in campe. At his approche, al y kynges fled. euery man his way, & forsoke their capitaine *Maïobanexius*, who also with al his familye, fled to y rough moûtaines. Some of the *Ciguanians* sought for

The Lieutenants gentleness toward *Maïobanexius*.

A rare faithfulness in a barbarous kyng.

The Lieutenants messengers are slayne.



## The fyrst Decade.

*Guarionexius* to slay hym, for that he was the cause of all these troubles: but his feete saued his lyfe, for he fledde in tyme to the mountaines, where he lurked in maner alone among the desolate rockes. Wheras now the Lieutenantes souldiers were forsweped with long warre, with watching, laboure, and hunger (for it was nowe thre monethes sence the warres began) many despyed leaue to departe to the towne of Conception, where they had graneges, & exercised tillage. He gaue them their passeports with allowance of vittayles, and so that onely thyrtye remayned with hym. These thre monethes warre, they contynued very paynefull and myserabyle: So that duryng al that tyme, they had none other meate but only *Cazibi*, that is, such rootes whereof they make theyr bread, and that but seldome to theyr fyll: also *Vsas*, that is, lyttle beastes lyke Conyes, if by chaunce nowe and then they tooke some with theyr houndes. Their drinke was none other then water, such as they founde, somtyme sweete, and somtyme muddie, saueryng of the marysters. Among these delicates, that lyttle sleepe that they had, was euer for the most parte abrode vnder the firmament, and that not without watchmen, and in continual remoouing, as the nature of warre requirereth. With these fewe therfore, the Lieutenant determined to searche the mountaynes, dennes, and caues, if he coulde in any place fynde the steppes of *Maiohanexius* or *Guarionexius*. In the meane tyme certayne of his men (whom hunger enforced to goe a hunting, to proue if they coulde take any conies) chaunced bypon two of *Maiohanexius* famillyers, which were sent to certayne villages of his, to make prouision of bread. These he enforced to declare where theyr lord lay hid, & vsed the same also for guides, to byng our men to the place. Twelue of our men tooke this enterpryse in hand, painting them selues after y<sup>e</sup> maner of the *Ciguanians*: So that by this stratageme or policie, they came sodenly bypon *Maiohanexius*, and tooke hym prisoner, with his wyfe, chyldren, & family, and conuighed them to the towne of Conception to the Lieutenant. Within a fewe dayes after, hunger compelled *Guarionexius* to come out of the dennes, whom certayne of the people fearing the Lieutenant, bewrayed to our hunters. The Lieutenant being certified hereof, sent forth a bande of foote men, commaunding them to lye in ambushe vn-

The Spaniards are painfull in the warres.

A desperate aduenture with thirtie men.

A policie.

Uyl suche tyme as *Guarionexius* went from the playnes to the mountaynes, and then sodenly to entrappe hym. They went as they were commaunded, tooke hym, and brought hym away with them, and by this meanes were al the regions neare about pacified and quieted. A certayne noble woman of neare kynred to *Maiohanexius*, and wyfe to another kyng, whose dominion was yet vntouched, folowed hym in all these aduersties. They affirme this woman to be the sayrest and most beautifull, that euer nature brought forth in the Ilande: Whom, when the king her husbände, who loued her most ardently (as her beautie deserued) hearde say that she was taken prysoner, he wandered by and dōwne the desertes lyke a man out of his wyte, not knowyng what to doo or say. But at the length, he came to the Lieutenant, promisyng most saythfullye, that he woulde submit him selfe and al that he coulde make, vnder his power, so that he woulde restore hym his wyfe. The Lieutenant accepted the condition, & restored him his wife, with certayne other rulers and gentlemen which he had taken prysoners before: charging them, and bynding them with an othe, to be euer redy at his commaundement. Shortly after, this king of his owne free motion, came agayne to the Lieutenant, byngyng with him fyue thousande men without weapons, sayng only suche instrumentes as they vse in tyllage of theyr ground. He brought with hym also seedes to sow, wherwith at his owne charge, he caused such plentie of theyr corne and frutes to growe in sundry places of the larg vāle, wherof we spake before, that shortly after, were seene many sayre and fruitfull feedes that came therof: and for his gentelness being rewarded of the Lieutenante with certayne of our thynges, he departed ioyfullye. When the report hercof came to the *Ciguatians*, it moued the mindes of the kynges to hope of clemencie, whereuppon they came together to the Lieutenant with humble submission and faithfull promyse, euer after to be vnder his obedience, desyryng hym to restore vnto them theyr kyng with his familie. At theyr request, the kynges wyfe and his housholde was set at libertie, but the king kept styl as a prysoner. These thynges dyd the Lieutenant in the Ilande, not yet knowyng what his aduersaries and accusers had layde to his charge before the kyng of

A beautifull  
woman.

The kynges  
submit them  
selues to the  
Lieutenant.

## The fyrst Decade.

Spaine: who being disquieted with theyꝝ quarelinges and accusations, and especially for that by reason of theyꝝ discention, of so greate abundance of golde and ocher thynges, there was as yet but litle brought into Spayne, appoynted a newe gouernour, which shoulde see a redresse in thele thynges: and epyther to punyshe such as were faultie, or els to sende them to him. What was founde agaynst the Admirall and his brother, or agaynst his aduersaries which accused hym, I do not well knowe. But this I am sure of, that both the brethren are taken, brought, and caste in prison, with theyꝝ goodes confiscate. But as soone as the king vnderstode that they were brought bounde to Cales, he sent messengers in poste, with commaundement that they should be loosed and come freely to his presence: wherby he declared that he toke their troubles greenously. It is also said, that the new gouernour sent letters to the kyng, written with the Admiralles hand in straunge and vnknownen sypheringes, to his brother the Lieutenanunt being absent, wyllyng hym to be in a redynes with a power of armed men to come and ayd hym, if the Gouernoure should proffer hym any violence. Wherof the gouernour hauing knowledge (as he sayth) beyng also aduertised that the Lieutenanunt was gone to his brother before the men whiche he had prepared were in a redynes, apprehended them both vnwares, before the multitude came togeather. What wyl folowe, tyme, the most true and prudent Iudge wyl declare. Thus fare ye well.

### ¶ The cygth booke of the fyrst Decade, to Cardinall Lodouike.

The Ocean sea  
heretofore vn-  
knowne.



The great, ryche, and plentifull Ocean sea, heretofore vnknownen, and nowe founde by *Christophorus Colonus* the Admiral, by chauctoritie & furtherance of the Catholyke king, I haue presented vnto your honour (ryght noble Prince) like a golden chayne vnworkmanly wrought: but you shal now receiue a pretious iewel to be appendaunt therto. Therefore among such as were pylottes or gouernours vnder the admyrall, and had diligently marked the courses & dyfferences of the winde,

many

many had lycences graunted them of the kyng to seeke further at theyr owne charges, vpon condition to pay hym saythfully his portion, which is the syfic part. But because amonge all other, one *Petrus Alphonsus*, called *Nignus* by his surname, sayled towarde the south with more prosperous fortune then any of the other, I thinke it best first to speake somewhat of his voyage. He therfore with only one shyp, well furnished at his owne charges, after that he had his passeporte, with commaundement in no case to cast anker past fyfye leagues distant from anye place where the Admirall had touched, sayled fyrst to *Paria*, where the Admirall founde both the men and women so laden with cheynes, garlandes, and braselettes of pearles, as we haue sayde before. Coastying therfore along by the same shore, accordyng to the kings commaundement (yet leauing behynd hym the regions of *Cumana* and *Manacapana*) he came to the regions which thinhabitantes therof cal *Curiana*, where he found a hauen (as he saith) much lyke the port of *Gades* or *Cales*: into the which enterpyng, he sawe a farre of certayne houses one the shore, and perceyued, when he drew neere, that it was a village of only eyght houses. Proceeding yet further for the space of three myles, he espied an other village well replenished with people, where there met hym fyfye naked men on a company, hauing with them a certayne ruler, who despyred Alphonsus to come to theyr coastes. He brought with hym at thys tyme, many haukes belles, pyrnes, nedels, braselettes, cheynes, garlandes, and rynges, with counterfet stones and g'asses, and such other tryfelles, the which within the moment of an houre, he had exchaunged for fyfteeene ounces of theyr pearles, which they wore aboute theyr neckes and armes. Then they yet more earnestly despyred hym to sayle to theyr coastes, promysyng hym that he shoulde there haue as many pearles as he woulde desyre. He condescended to theyr request: and the day folowing, came to the place where they appointed hym: Lying there at anker, a great multitude of people resorted to hym, instantly requyring hym to come alande. But when he considered the innumerable multitude of people which was there assembled, and he had only .xxiii. men in his company, he durst not commit hym selfe to theyr handes, but gaue them to vnderstand by sygnes and tokens, that they shoulde

The nauigation of *Petrus Alphonsus*.

Pearles for tryfles.

Great plentie of pearles.



## The first Decade,

come to the shyp with their *Canoas*: for their boates (which the men of the iland cal *Canoas*) are made only of one whole peece of wood as in the Ilandes, yet more rude, and not so artificially as theyrs are: these they call *Gallitas*. These swarmed therfore to the shyp as faste as they might, byingpng with them greate plenty of pearles (which they cal *Tenoras*) exchanging the same for our marchaundies. He founde this people to be of gentyll nature, simple, and innocent, being conuersant with them in theyr houses, for the space of xx. dayes. Theyr houses are made of wood, couered with the leaues of date trees. Their meate for the moste parte, is the shellfishes in the which the pearles are engendered, wherof their sea costes are full. They haue also greate plenty of wyld beastes, as hartes, wyld bores, and connies like vnto hares, both in coloure and bignesse, stocke doues also, and turtle doues: lykewylse geese and duckes, which they nozise in theyr houses as we doo. Peacockes flee aboute in maner in euery wood and groue, but they are not distinct with sundry colours as ours are: for the cockes are like vnto the hennes. These people of *Curiana* are craftie hunters, and exceeding cunning archers, so that they will not lyghtly misse any beaste or byrde that they shoote at. Our men consumed certayne dayes heare very pleasantly: duryng which time, whosoener brought them a peacocke, had for the same foure pinnes: he that brought a pheasant, had two, and for a stocke doue, or turtle doue, one, and for a goose, a smale looking glasse, or a litle stone of glasse. Thus they bought and solde with profering and bydding, denyng and refusing, as it had byn in a greate market. When pinnes were profered them, they asked what they shoulde do with them, being naked: But our men satisfied them with a craftie answer, declaring by tokens that they were very necessary, to picke theyr teeth and to pull thornes out of theyr flethe. But aboue al thynghes, haukes belles were most esteemed among them, for theyr sound & faire colour, and woulde theyr geue much for one of them. Our men, loaging in their houses, heard in the nyght season horrible noyses & roynages of wild beastes in the wooddes, whiche are full of exceeding greate and hygh trees of sundrye kindes: but the beastes of these wooddes, are not noysome to men, for the people of the countrey goo daylye a huntynge naked,

Shel fishes in  
which pearles  
are engendyed.

Theyr manner  
of bargayning.

The vse of  
pinnes.

Haukes belles  
in great estima-  
tion.

Roynng of wild  
beastes.

naked, with theyr bowes and arrowes, yet hath it not ben harde of, that any man hath ben slayne of any wylde beast. As many hartes or wylde bores as our men woulde desyre them to byng, they woulde kyll in the woodes with their arrowes, and not to fayle to byng them. They lacke kyne, goates and sheepe. Theyr bread is made of rootes, as is theyrs of the Ilands. This nation, hath blacke heare, grosse and somewhat curlede, yet long also. They keepe theyr teeth very whyte, and for that purpose vse to cary a certaine herbe betwene theyr lippes for the most part of the day, and to washe theyr mouthes when they cast it away. The women doo all theyr busynes at home in theyr howses, and haue also the cure of tyllage of the grounde: but the men apply them selues to the warres and huntynge, to playe, syngynge and dauncynge. They haue sundry kyndes of water pottes, iugges, and drynkyng cuppes made of earth in other places about them, and brought thither for exchaung of other thynges: For they vse sayres and markettes for the same purpose, and are greatly desyrours of such thynges, as are not brought forth or made in theyr countrey, as nature hath geuen a disposicion to al men, to desyre and be deltyed with newe and strang thynges. Many of them had hangynge at theyr pearles the images of certeine beastes and birdes, very artitiously made of golde, but not pure: these also are brought them from other places for exchaung of other thynges. The golde wherof they are made, is natieue, and of much lyke finenes to that wherof the florens are coyned. The men of this countrey, inclose theyr priuie members in a gourde, cutte after the fashio of a coddepice, or els couer the same with the shell of a toxtopse, tyed about theyr loynes with laces of gossampine cotton: In other places of that tract, they thrust the synew within the sheeth therof, and bynde the skynne fast with a string. The great wylde beastes wherof we spake before, and many other thynges which are not found in any of the Ilands, testifie that this region is parte of y<sup>e</sup> continet or firme lande. But the chieffest coniecture wherby they argue the same, is, that by the coastes of that lande, from *Paria* towarde the west, they sayled about thre .iiij. myles, findyng no signe or token of any ende. These people of *Curiana* (whiche some call *Curtana*) being demaunded where they had such plentie of golde, signified that it

Hartes and  
wylde bores.

Cumynge and  
rifiers.

Base golde,

Tokens of the  
continet or  
firme lande,

was

## The first decade.

The golden re-  
gion of Can-  
chieta.

Was brought them from a region called *Canchieta*, or *Canchieta*,  
beyng distant from them fixe sunnes, that is, fixe dayes iourney  
westwarde: and that theyr images of golde were made in the  
same region. Whereupon our men directed theyr voyage thither  
immediatly, and arrived there at the Kalendes of November,  
in the yere of Christe a thousande and fyue hundred. The  
people of the countrey resorted to them without feare, bynggynge  
with them of the golde whiche we sayde to be natue in that region.  
This people had also collers of pearles about theyr neckes, whiche  
were brought them from *Cariana* for exchange of theyr marchandise.  
None of them woulde exchange anye of those thynges whiche  
they had out of other countreys: as nyther the *Curians* golde, nor  
the *Canchietans* pearles: yet among the *Canchietans* they founde  
but lytle golde redy geathered. They toke with them from thence  
certayne very fayre *Parmalets* or *Bunkepes*, and many *Poppyngayes*  
of sundry coloures. In the moneth of November, the ayre was  
there most temperate, and nothyng colde. The guardens of the  
north pole were out of syght to both these people, they are so  
neare the Equinoctial. Of the degrees of the pole, they can geue  
none other accompte. These people are wel disposed men, of honest  
condition, and nothyng suspicious, for almost al the nyght  
long they resorted to the shyppe with theyr boates, and went  
aboorde shyppe without feare, as dyd the *Curians*. They call  
pearles, *Corixas*. They are somewhat ielous, for when anye  
straungers come among them, they euer place theyr women  
behynde them. In this region of *Canchieta*, the gossampine trees  
growe of them selues commonly in many places, as doo with  
vs elmes, wyllowes, and fallowes: and therefore they vse to  
make breeches of cotton, wherewith they couer theyr priuie  
partes in many other regions thereabout. When they had yet  
sayled on forwarde by the same coastes, there came forth against  
them about two thousande men, armed after theyr manner, for-  
byddyng them to come alande. These people were so rude and  
sauage, that our men coulde by no meanes allure them to fami-  
liaritie. Our men therefore, contented only with theyr pearles,  
returned backe y same way they came, where they remained with  
the *Curians* continually for the space of .xx. dayes, & fylled theyr  
bellies

The Equinoctial line.

Gossampine  
trees.

bellies wel with good meate. And here it seemeth to me not farre from my purpose, to declare what chaunced vnto them in theyr returne when they came now within the sight of the coast of *Paria*. They happened therfore in the way, at *Os Draconis*, and the gulfes of *Paria* (wherof we spake before) to meete with a nauy of xlviii. Canoas of Canibales, which went a rousing to hunt for men: who as soone as they had espied our men, assailed their ship fiercely, & withoni feare enclosed y<sup>e</sup> same, disturbing our men on euery side with their arrowes: but our men so feared them with theyr gunnes, that they fled immediatly, whō our men folowing with the shyp boate, tooke one of theyr Canoas, and in it only one Canibal (for the other had escaped) and with him another man bounde, who with teares runnyng downe his cheekes, and with gesture of his handes, eyes, and head, signified that sixe of his companions had ben cruelly cut in peeces, and eaten of that mischeuous nation, and that he shoulde haue ben likewise handled the day folowynge: wherfore they gaue hym power ouer the Canibal, to do with him what he would. Then with the Canibals owne clubbe, he layde on hym al that he might dyspue with hande and foote, grinning and fretting as it had ben a wyld boze, thinking that he had not yet sufficiently reuenged the death of his companions, when he had beaten out his braynes and guttes. When he was demaunded after what sort the Canibales were woont to inuade other countreys, he answered, that they euer vsed to carye with them in theyr Canoas, a great multitude of clubbes, the whiche, wheresoener they do lande, they pytch in the grounde, and encampe them selues within the compasse of the same, to lye the more safely in the nyght season. In *Curiana* they founde the head of a captayne of the Canibales, nayled ouer the doore of a certayne gouernour for a token of victoery, as it had ben the standerde or helmet taken from the enimie in battayle. In these coastes of *Paria* is a region called *Haraia*, in the which great plentie of salt is geathered after a strange sorte: for the sea beyng there tossed with the power of the wyndes, dyspueth the salte waters into a large playne by the sea syde, where, afterwarde when the sea waxeth calme, and the sunne begynneth to shine, the water is coniealed into most pure and whyte salte, wherewith innumerable shyppes myght be laden, yf men dyd

Canibales in  
the gulfes of  
*Paria*.

Death for  
death.

Howe the Canibales fortifie  
their camps.

*Haraia*.

resorte



## The fyrst Decade.

resort thether for the same before there sale any rayne: For the rayne melteth it, and causeth it to synke into the sande, and so by the poores of the earth, to returne to the place from whence it was dyuen. Oher say, that the playne is not fylled from the sea, but of certeine spynges whose water is more sharpe and salt then the water of the sea. Thinhabitantes do greatly esteeme this bay of salt, whiche they vse, not only for theyr owne commoditye, but also woorking the same into a square forme lyke unto bricke, they sell it to strangers for exchange of other thynges whiche the lacke. In this Region, they stretche and dye the dead bodies of theyr kinges and noble men, laying the same vpon a certayne frame of woodde, muche lyke vnto a hurdle or grediren, with a gentell fyre vnder the same, by lyttle and lyttle consuming the fleshe, and keping the skynne hole with the bones inclosed therein. These dyed carcases, they haue in great reuerence, and honour them for theyr houshoulde and famplier gods. They say that in this place they sawe a man, & in an other place a woman, thus dyed and reserued. When they departed from *Curiana*, the .viii. day of the Ides of February, to returne to *Spainne*, they had threescore and .xvi. poundes weight (after .viii. vnces to the pounce) of pearles, which they bought for exchange of our thynges, amounting to the value of fyue shillinges. Departing therfore, they consumed threescore dayes in theyr iourney (although it were shorter then from *Hispaniola*) by reason of the continuall course of the sea in the west, which dyd not only greatly stey the shippe, but also somtymes dyue it backe. But at the length they came home so laden with pearles, that they were with euery maryner, in maner as common as chaffe. But the master of the shippe, *Petrus Alphonsus*, being accused of his companyons that he had stowlen a great multitude of precious pearles, and defrauded the kynge of his portion whiche was the fifth parte, was taken of *Fernando de Vega*, a man of great learning and experyence, & gouernour of *Gallecia*, where they aryued, and was there kept in pryson a long tyme. But he styll denyeth that euer he deteyned any part of the pearles. Many of these pearles were as bygge as halpell nuttes, and as oriente (as we call it) as they be of the East partes: Yet not of so great pryce, by reason that the holes thereof are not so perfecte. When I my selfe

Springes of  
salt water.

The bodpes of  
prynces dyed  
and reserued.

Orient pearles  
as bygge as  
halpell nuttes.

selfe was present with the right honorable duke of *Methyna*, and was bidde to dymner with him, in the citie of *Ciuite*, they broughe to hym aboue a hundred and twentie ounces of pearles to be solde, whiche surely dyd greatly delyte me with their fayrenes and brightnes. Some say, that *Alphonfus* had not these pearles in *Curiana*, being distant from *Os Draconis* moze then a hundred & twentie leagues, but that they had them in the regions of *Cumana* and *Manacapana*, nere vnto *Os Draconis* and the ilande of *Margarita*: for they deny that there is any pearles founde in *Curiana*. But sith the matter is yet in controuersie, we wyl passe to other matters. Thus muche you haue, whereby you may coniecture, what commoditie in tyme to come may bee looked for from these newe landes of the west Ocean, whereas at the fyrst discovering, they shewe suche tokens of great ryches. Thus fare ye well.

The Ilande of *Margarita*.

¶ The .ix. booke of the fyrst Decade  
to Cardinal Lodowke.



*Incentiagnes Pinzonus*, & also *Aries Pinzonus*, his neuiew by his brother syde, whiche accompanied the Admiral *Colonus* in his fyrst vyage, & were by him appoynted to be maisters of two of the small shippes which the Spaniards call *Carauelas*, being moued by the great ryches & amplitude of the new

The nanigati-  
on of *Vincen-  
tus*, and *Aries  
Pinzonus*.

landes, furnyshed of theyr owne charges foure *Carauels*, in the hauen of theyr owne countrey, which the Spaniards cal *Palos*, bordering on the west Ocean. Hauing therfore the kings licence & passeport to depart, they looked from the hauen, about the Calendes of December, in the yeere. 1499. This hauen of *Palos*, is threescore & twelue myles distant from *Gades*, commonly called *Cales*, and .lxxiii. myles from *Ciuite*. All thynhabitanes of this towne, not one excepted, are greatly geue to searching of the sea, and continually exercised in sayling. They also directed their vyage fyrst to the iland of *Canarie* by the ilands of *Hesperides*, now called *Cabouerde*, which some cal *Gorgodes Meducias*. Sayling therfore directly toward the south from that ilande of *Hesperides* whiche the Portugales (beyng possessers of the same) cal *Sancti*

The Ilandes  
of *Canarie*.  
*Cabouerde*.

*Iacobi*,

## The first decade.

S. James  
Ilande.

The north pole  
out of sight.

Habitable regi-  
ons under the  
Equinoctial  
lyne.

*Tacobi*, and departing from thence at the Ides of January, they followed the south-west wynde, beyng in the myddest betwene the south and the west. When they supposed that they had sayled about thre hundred leagues by the same wynde, they say that they lost the syght of the North starre: and were shortly after tossed with exceeding tempestes bothe of wynde and sea, and vexed with intollerable heate: Yet sayled they on further (not without great daunger) for the space of two hundred & fortie leagues, following yet the same wynd by the lost pole. Therefore, whether habitable regions be under the Equinoctiall lyne or not, let these men and the olde wyters, aswel Philosophers as poetes and cosmographers discusse. For these men affirme it to be habitable, and metuelously replenished with people: and they, that it is uninhabitable by reason of the sonne beames depending perpendicularly or directely ouer the same. Yet were there many of the olde wyters, whiche attempted to proue it habitable. These mariners being demaunded, if they saw the south pole, they answered that they knew no starre there like vnto this pole, that might be discerned about the poynt: but that they sawe an other order of starres, and a certeyne thicke myst rysing from the horizontall lyne, whiche greatly hyndered theyr syght. They contende also, that there is a great heape or rysing in the myddest of the earth, whiche taketh away the syght of the south pole, vntyll they haue vterly passed ouer the same: but they verely beleue that they sawe other images of starres, muche differing from the situation of the starres of our hemispherie, or halfe circle of heauen. Howe so euer the matter be, as they informe vs, we certifie you. At the length, the seuenith day of the calendes of Februarye, they espied lande a farre off, and seeing the water of the sea to be trobelous, sounding with theyr plummet, they founde it to be xvi fathames deepe. Going a lande, and taryng there for the space of two dayes, they departed, because they sawe no people stering, although they founde certeyne steppes of men by the sea syde. Thus grauing on the trees & the stones here vnto the shore, the kynges name and theyrs, and the tyme of theyr commyng thither, they departed. Not farre from this station, following the syers on the land by nyght, they founde a nation lying vnder

the open fyrmament, after the maner of warre. Our men thought it not best to trouble them vntyll the moornyng. There fore, at the rysyng of the sonne, fortie of our men well armed, wente towarde them: agaynst whom came forth. xxii. of them, with bowes, synges and dartes, euen redy to fyght. The o- ther compayne folowed them, armed after the same maner. Our men affirme that they were of hygher stature then eyther the Al- maynes or Pannonians. They beheld our men with frownyng & threatenyng countenaunce: but our men thought it not good to fal to bickering with them, vncertayne whether it were for feare, or bycause they would not dyue them to flight. Where- fore they went about to allure them by faire meanes & rewards: but they refused all kynde of gentelnes, and stode euer in a re- dines to fight, declaring the same by signes and tokens. Thus our men resorted to theyr shyppes, and they to the place from whence they came, without any further busines. The same nyght about mydnyght, they fledde, & left the place voyde where they lay in the campe. Our men suppose them to be a vagabund and wandering nation, lyke vnto the Scythians, without houses or certeyne dwelling places, lyuing only with the frutes of the earth, hauing theyr wyues and chyldren folowing them. Suche as measured their footesteppes in the sande, affirme with great othes, that one of theyr feete is almost as long as two feete of our men of the meane sorte. Sayling on yet further, they founde an other riuer, but not of deapth sufficient to beare the Carauels: they sent therefore the foure shippe boates to lande, full of ar- med men to search the countrey. They espyed vppon a hygh hyll nere vnto the sea syde, a greate multitude of people, to whom our company sent forth one man with certeyne of our synges to allure them to exchange. And when he had cast a haukes bell towarde them, they cast downe a wedge of golde a cubit longe: the which as he stooped to take vp, they sodenly inclosed hym, and carped hym away, But he was shortly after rescued by his companions, to some of their paynes: for they slue eyght of our men, & wounded many a farre of, with theyr arrowes, and dartes made of wood, hardened at the endes with fyre. After this they encompassed our shippe boates within the ryuer, and came rath- ly within the reache of our men, laying holde on the boates sydes,

People of high  
nature.

A vagabonde  
kynde of men.

Giantes,



Desperate  
boldnesse.

111 In  
11111

A sea of freshe  
water.

Many fruitfull  
Ilandes.

Many peeces  
of.

Regions of  
Paria.

Gold & pearles

sydes, where they were thrust through, and betwen in peeces as it had ben sheepe, by reason they were naked. Yet woulde they not for al this geue ouer, but tooke from our men one of their boates, hauing no men in it: for the gouernour thereof being slayne with an arrowe, the other fledde and escaped. And thus they leste this fierce and warlyke people, saylyng toward the north-west, along by the same coastes, with sorrowfull hartes for the death of theyr companions. When they had sayled about .xl. leagues, they chaunced into a sea of suche freshe water, that they fylled theyr barelles and hoggesheades therewith. Searching the cause hercof, they vnderstoode that a vehement course of riuers discedded with great violence from the toppes of certayne great hylles. They say also that there lyeth within the sea, manye fortunate and fruitfull Ilandes, and well inhabited, and that thynhabitanes of this tracte are men of meeke nature, and suche as doo not refuse straungers, yet lytle profitable to them, because they haue no marchandyses for their purpose, as golde, or precious stones: for lacke whercof, they brought from thence thyrtye captiues to sell for slaues. Thynhabitanes call this region *Mariatambal*. The region of the east part of that ryuer, is called *Camomorus*, and that of the west part *Paricora*, in the midlande whereof, thynhabitanes signified that there is great plenty of golde: For, folowing this riuer directly toward the North (as the bending of the shore requyred) they recovered againe the syght of the north pole. All the coaste of this tracte, parteyneth to *Paria*, the which (as we sayd before) was fyrst found by *Colonus* hym selfe, and hath in maner in euery place great abundaunce of pearles. They say that these coastes are adioynnyng vnto, and all one with *Os Draconis*, and also borderynyng vppon the regions of *Cumana*, *Mañacapaná*, *Curiana*, *Cauchicta*, and *Cuchibachoa*. Wherefore they thought it to be part of the firme lande of India, beyonde the riuer of *Ganges*. For the great & large compasse thereof, doth not permit that it shoulde be an ilande, albeit the whole earth vncouered with water, largely taken, may be called an Ilande. From the poynt of that land where they lost the sight of the north pole, saylyng by a continuall tracte about thre hundred leagues towarde the west syde of *Paria*, they say that (almost in the mid way) they chaunced into a riuer called *Maragnonum*, whiche

whiche they affirme to be of suche exceedyng breadth, that it might seeme incredible, yf the antiques dyd not make mention of the lyke. Belyng demaunded of me yf it were not salt water where it diuided the lande, they answered that the water therof was very freshe and sweete, and that the further it ranne, to be so muche the fresher: also ful of Ilandes and wholsome fysh: they dare auouche the breadth therof to be moze then thirtie leagues. Yet yf we wel weigh and consyder the largenesse and widenesse of *Boriofcomea* and *Spiriofcomea*, the mouthes of the famous riuer of *Ister* (nowe called *Danubius*) and howe farre they violate or corrupt the salt water with their freshnesse, we shal ceasse to marueyle, although this other riuer be greater: for who can diminish the power of nature, but that it may make this bigger then the other, and another bygger then this? And I suppose this to be the ryuer whereof *Colonus* the Admirall made mention in the description of his voyage in these coastes. But we shal hereafter haue further knowledge hereof: let vs nowe therefore retorne to the commodities of these regions. They found in many Ilands about *Paria*, great wooddes of *Brasile* trees, and brought away with them thre thousande poundes weyght thereof. They say that the *Brasile* of *Hispaniola*, is muche better then this to dye cloth with a moze fayre and durable colour. From hence, following the winds (whiche the Spaniards cal *Northwest*, and the Italians *Græco*) they passed by many Ilandes very fruiteful, yet left desolate and wadded by reason of the crueltie of the *Canibales*: for they went alande in many places, they founde the ruines of many destroyed houses: yet in some places they founde men, but those exceedyng fearefull, fleeyng to the mountaynes, rockes, and wooddes at the syght of euery straunger or thyppe, & wanderyng without houses or certayne abydyng places, for feare of the *Caniballes* layyng wayte and huntynge after them. Here they found those great trees whiche of them selues in dyuers places byyng forth that fruite or spice, which the Apothecaries cal *Cassia Phistula*, and that of no lesse goodnesse, then that whiche the phisicians minister to suche as be diseased with the ague, but it was not rype at theyr beyng there. They affirme that there are trees of suche byguesse, that xvi. men ioynning handes togeather, and standyng in compasse, can scarcely embrace some of them.

The commodities of the regions & Ilands about *Paria*, *Brasile*.

*Canibales*.

Trees of *Cassia Phistula*.

## The fyrst Decade.

**A monstrous  
beast.**

Among these trees is found that monstrous beast with a snoute  
lyke a foxe, a tayle lyke a marmasette, eares lyke a bat, handes  
lyke a man, and feete lyke an ape, bearyng her whelpes aboute  
with her in an outwarde bellye much lyke vnto a great bagge  
or purse. The deade carkas of this beast, you sawe with me,  
and turned it ouer and ouer with your owne handes, maruey-  
lyng at that new belly, and wonderful prouision of nature. They  
say it is knowen by experience, that she neuer letteth her whel-  
pes goo out of that purse, except it be ether to play, or to sucke,  
vntill suche tyme that they be able to gette theyr lyuyng by  
them selues. They tooke thys beast with her whelpes: But  
the whelpes dyed shortly after in the shyppes. Yet the damme  
liued certayne monethes: but at the length, not being able to a-  
bide so great alteration of ayre, and change of meate, she died al-  
so in the way. But of this beast, we haue saide enough. Let vs  
now therfore returne to the aucthours of these thinges. These  
two *Pinzoni*, the vncle and the neuiew, susteyned many greate  
troubles & horrible tempestes and perilles in this navigation.  
For when they had nowe sailed by the coastes of *Paria* about fyre  
hundred leagues, & (as they supposed) beyond the cite of *Cathay*,  
and the coastes of *East India* beyond the riuer of *Ganges*, there  
rose sodenly so fierce a tempest in the moneth of *July*, that of the  
four *Carauels* which they had with them, two were drowned  
euen before theyr eyes: and the thyrde lying at anker, with lyke  
sodennes caried out of theyr syght thowgh the violence of the  
tempest: the fourth also lying at anker, was so shaken and broo-  
sed, that all the seames therof were almost loosed: Yet came  
they to land out of this last shyp, but bitterly despaynyng of the  
shyp. Wherefore consultyng with them selues what was best  
to be donne in so extreeme a case, and how to prouyde them  
a safe dwellyng place in those Regions, beyng out of all hope  
how to depart from thence, they determyned to slay all the in-  
habytaunces of the countrey nere about them, least they with  
the other shoulde conspyre together to kyll them, but theyr for-  
tune was better: For the *Carauel* which the tempest had caried  
away, was come to them agayne. This had in it. xviij. men:  
And the other that remayned, was saued and repayned. With  
these two therfore, they tooke theyr voyage directly to *Spayne*,

**Extreme remedies  
die in a desper-  
rate case.**

and

and thus being tossed with tempestes, and vexed with aduersities,  
they returned to theyr natyue countrey of *Palos*, to theyr wyues  
and chyldren, the day before the Calendes of October, with the  
losse of many of theyr deere friends & neighbours. They brought  
with them *Cinamome* and ginger: but not very good, because  
they were not there fully seasoned with the heate of the sonne,  
before they brought them from thence. They brought also cer-  
taine pretious stones, which *Baptista Elysus* that excellent phi-  
losopher, and your lordshyppes physician, affirmeth to be true  
*Topases*. After these mens returne, other of theyr neighbours  
being moued thereto by a certayne emulation, to proue yf theyr  
fortune wold be any better, lyke men of good corage, beyng na-  
thing discomforted by the hard fortune of their neighboures, kno-  
wing that it often times chaunceth, that that which is one mans  
vndoing, is an other mans making, attempted a newe voiage to-  
ward the south by y costes of *Paria*, folowynge the steps of *Colonus*  
the Admiral, who had fyrste discouered the same. They also  
brought with them great plentie of *Cassia fistula*, and founde that  
precious medicine called of the Spaniards *Anima album*, whose  
perfume is of most excellent effect to heale the reumes, mures,  
and heauines of the head. As touching this vyage, as yet I know  
no other newes that I thought woorthy to certifie you of, wher-  
fore, I wyl nowe make an ende of this booke, because you put  
me so often in remembrance of your departure: Yet to accom-  
plyshe the Decade, I wyl declare somewhat of the superstitions  
of *Hispaniola*. You shall nowe therfore vnderstand the illusions  
wherewith the people of the Ilande haue ben seduced after the  
errors of the olde gentilitie, and wandered in the ignorance  
and blyndnesse of humane nature, corrupted by the disobedience  
of our fyrst parentes, whiche hath remayned in all nations vpon  
the face of the earth, except where it hath pleased GOD by the  
lyght of his spirite by his woorde, to powre vpon his electe the  
grace of renouation, by the lyght whereof the natural darke-  
nesse receiueth some clearenesse as in a glasse, vntill imperfection  
shalbe abolished. Our men therefore were long in the Ilande of  
*Hispaniola*, before they knewe that the people thereof honoured  
any other thyng then the lyghtes of heauen, or had anye other  
religion: but when they had ben nowe long conuersant

*Cinamome*  
and *Ginger*.

*Topases*.

Men of noble  
courage.

Another  
voyage.

*Anima album*

The superstiti-  
ons of *Hispa-*  
*niola*.  
The errors of  
the olde genti-  
litie.



## The first Decade.

with them, and by vnderstand yng their language, drew to a further familiaritie, they had knowledg that they vsed diuers rites and superstitions: I haue therefore geathered these fewe thinges folowynge, out of a booke wyrtten by one Ramonus an Heremite, whom Colonus had left with certayne kynges of the Ilande to instruct them in the Chyistian fayth. And because in manner their whole religion is none other thyng then idolatrie, I wil begyn at theyr idolles. It is therefore apparant by the images whiche they honour openly and commonly, that there appeare vnto them in the nyght seasons, certayne phantasies and illusions of euil spirites, seducing them into many sonde and foolish errors: for they make certayne images of Gossampine cotton, folded or wreathed after theyr manner, and hard stopped within. These images they make sytting, muche lyke vnto the pyctures of spirites and deuyls which our paynters are accustomed to paynt byon walles: but forasmuche as I mee selfe sent you foure of these images, you may better presently signifie vnto the kyng your vncle, what manner of thynges they are, and howe like vnto paynted deuylles, then I can expresse the same by wyrtynge. These images, the inhabitantes call *Zemes*, whereof the leaste, made to the lykenesse of young deuyls, they bynde to their foreheades when they goe to the warres agaynst theyr enimies, and for that purpose haue they those stringes hangyng at them which you see. Of these, they beleue to obteyne rayne, yf rayne be lackyng, lykwylse saye weather: for they thynke that these *Zemes* are the mediatours and messengers of the great god, whom they acknowledge to be only one, eternal, without ende, omnipotent, and inuisible. Thus euery kyng hath his particuler *Zemes*, whiche he honoureth. They cal the eternal god by these two names, *Iocauna* and *Guamaonocon*, as theyr predecessours taught them, affyrmyng that he hath a father called by these fīue names: that is, *Attabeira*, *Ma mona*, *Guacarapita*, *Liella*, *Guima-  
Zoa*. Nowe shal you heare what they fable on the earth as touching the original of man There is in the Iland, a region called *Caunana*, where they sayne that mankynde came fyrst out of two caues of a mountayne: and that the bygggest sorte of men came forth of the mouth of the bygggest caue, and the least sort out of the least caue. The rocke in the which these caues are, they call

*Canta*,

**I**dolatrie  
and idolles.

**I**llusions of  
euil spirites.  
Images of  
gossampine  
cotton.

**Y**oung deuyls.

*Canta.* The greatest denne, they name *Cazibaxagua*, and the lesse, *Amaiauna*. They say, that before it was lawfull for men to come forth of the caue, the mouth of the caue was kept and watched nyghtly by a man whose name was *Machochael*: this *Machochael*, departyng somewhat farre from the caue, to the intent to see what things were abroad, was sodenly taken of the sunne, (whose syght he was forbidden) & was turned into a stone. They sayne the lyke of diuers other, that whereas they went forth in the nyght season a fyshyng so farre from the caue, that they could not returne before the rysyng of the sunne (the whiche it was not lawfull for them to beholde) they were transfourmed into *Pyrobalane* trees, which of them selues grow plentifully in the Island. They say furthermoze, that a certayne ruler called *Vagoniona*, sent one forth of the caue to goe a fyshyng, who by like chaunce was turned into a *Nyghtingale*, because the sunne was rysen before he came agayne to the caue: and that yeerely about the same tyme that he was turned into a byrde, he doth in the nyght with a mournyng song bewaile his mysfortune, and call for the helpe of his maister *Vagoniona*: And this they thynke to be the cause why that byrd syngeth in the nyght season. But *Vagoniona*, beyng sore troubled in his mind for the losse of his familiar frend whom he loued so entirely, leaupyng the men in the caue, brought forth only the women with theyr suckyng chyldren, leaupyng the women in one of the Islands of that tracte, called *Matbinino*, and carped the chyldren away with hym: which poore wretches oppressed with famine, saynted and remayned on the banke of a certayne riuer, where they were turned into frogges, and cryed *toa, toa*, that is, *mamma, mamma*, as chyldren are woont to crye for the mothers pappe. And hereof they say it cometh that frogges vse to crye so pitifully in the spryng tyme of the yee: And that men were scattered abroad in the caues of *Hispaniola* without the company of women. They say also, that where as *Vagoniona* him selfe was accustomed to wander in diuers places, and yet by a special grace neuer transfourmed, descended to a certayne sayre woman whom he saue in the bottome of the sea, and receiued of her certayne pibble stones of marble (which they cal *Cibas*) and also certayne yellowe and bright plates of latten, which they cal *Guaninos*. These things to this day are had in

Fables muche lyke *Quide* his transfourmations.

The *Nyghtingale*.

The Islande of *Matbinino*.

Children turned into Frogges

A special grace.

Holy reliques.

A holy caue.

The original of  
the sunne and  
moone.

Walking  
spirites.

A remedie as  
gapest walking  
spirites.

great estimation among the kynges, as goodly ieiuelles, and most holy reliques. But nowe (moste noble prynce) you shall heare a moze pleasaunt fable. There is a certayne caue called *Iouanaboina*, in the territorie of a certayne kyng whose name is *Machinnech*: This caue they honour moze religiously then dyd the Grekes in tyme past, *Corinth*, *Cyrrha*, or *Nysa*, and haue adourned it with ppyctures of a thousand fashions. In the entrance of this caue they haue two grauen Zemes, wherof the one is called *Binthaitel*, and the other *Marobu*. Beyng demaunded why they had this caue in so great reuerence, they answered earnestly, because the sunne and the moone came fyrst out of the same to geue lyght to the worlde: they haue religious concourse to these caues, as we are accustomed to goe on pylgrimage to Rome, or Vaticane, Compostella, or Hierusalem, as most holy & head places of our religion. They are also subiect to another kynde of superstition: for they thynke that dead folkes walke in the night, and eate the fruite called *Guannaba*, vnknowne vnto vs, & some what like vnto a Quince: affyrmyng also that they are couersant with lpyng people, euen in theyr beddes, and to deceiue women in takyng vpon them the shape of men, shewyng them selues as though they woulde haue to do with them: but when the matter cometh to actual deede, sodaynely to banishe away. If any do suspect that a dead body lyeth by him, whē he feeleth any strange thyng in the bed, they say he shalbe out of doubt by feelyng of the belly thereof: affyrmyng that the spirites of dead men may take vpon them al the members of mans body, sauing only the navel. If therfore by the lacke of y navel he do perceiue that a dead body lyeth by him, the feelyng is immediatly resolued. They beleeue verily, that in the nyght, and oftentimes in theyr iourneys, and especiallye in cominon and high wayes, dead men do meete with the lpyng: Agaynst whom, yf any man be stowte and out of feare, the fantasie vanysheth incontinentlye: but yf anye feare, the fantasie or vision dooth so assaulte hym and stryke hym with further feare, that manye are thereby astonysed, and haue the lymmes of theyr bodyes taken. The inhabitants beyng demaunded of whom they had those bayne superstitions, they answered, that they were lesse them of theyr forefathers, as by discent of inheritaunce, and that they haue had

had the same before the memorie of man, composed in certayne rymes and songues, whiche it was lawfull for none to learne, but only the kynges sonnes, who committed the same to memorie, because they had neuer any knowledge of letters. These they syng before the people on certayne solemne and festiuall daies, as most religious ceremonies: whyle in the meane tyme they play on a certayne instrument made of one whole peece of wood, somewhat holowe lyke a tymbyrel. Theyr priestes and diuines (whom they cal *Boitios*) instructe them in these superstitions: These priestes are also phisitions, deuyfying a thousande craftes and subtilties howe to deceiue the simple people whiche haue them in great reuerence: for they perswade them that the *Zemes* vse to speake with them familiarlye, and tel them of thinges to come. And yf any haue ben sycke, and are recovered, they make them beleue that they obteyned theyr health of the *Zemes*. These *Boitii* bynde them selues to muche fastyng, and outward clea-  
lynesse, and pouргыnges, especially when they take vpon them the cure of any prince, for then they drynke the powder of a certayne herbe, by whose qualitie they are driuen into a fury, at whiche time (as they say) they learne many thinges by reuelation of the *Zemes*. Then puttyng secretely in theyr mouthes, eyther a stone, or a bone, or a peece of fleshe, they come to the sicke person, commaundyng al to depart out of that place, except one or two, whom it shal please the sycke man to appoynt: this done, they goe about hym thre or foure tymes, greatly deforming theyr faces, lypps, and nozthyls, with sundry fytthy gestures, blowing, breathyng, and suckyng the forehead, temples, and necke of the patient, whereby (they say) they drawe the euyl ayre from him, and sucke the disease out of his baynes: then rubbyng hym about the shoulders, thyghes, and legges, and drawyng downe theyr handes close by his feete, holdyng them yet faste togeather, they runne to the doore beyng open, where they enclose and shake theyr handes, affirmyng that they haue dryuen away the disease, and that the patient shall shortly be perfectiue restored to health. After this, commyng behynde hym, he conueigheth a peece of fleshe out of his owne mouth lyke a sugger, and sheweth it to the sycke man, sayyng, Beholde, you haue eaten to muche, you shal nowe be whole, because I haue

Priestes and  
diuines.  
Phisitions.

Ignorance is  
nourished with  
superstition.

A powder of  
maruepious  
effect.

A strange mas-  
ter of curyng.



## The first Decade.

Angry gods.

They make the  
dead to speake.

Faries or spi-  
rites of the gen-  
tiles, much like  
to the papistes.

The powder of  
the herbe Co-  
hobba.

taken this from you. But yf he entende yet further to deceiue the patient, he perswadeth hym that his *Zemes* is angry, eyther because he hath not buylded hym a chappell, or not honoured him religiously, or not dedicated vnto hym a groue or garden. And if it so chaunce that the speke person dye, his kynsfolks, by witchcraftre, enforce the dead to confesse whether he dyed by naturall deathey, or by the negligēce of the *Boitius*, in that he had not fasted as he shoulde haue done, or not ministred a conuenient medicine for the disease: so that if this phisition be founde faultie, they take reuenge of hym. Of these stones or bones whiche these *Boitii* cary in theyr mouthes, yf the women can come by them, they keepe them religiously, beleeuynge them to be greatly effectuall to helpe women trauaylyng with chyldre, and therefore honour them as they do theyr *Zemes*. For diuers of the inhabitantes honour *Zemes* of diuers fashions: some make them of wood, as they were admonyshed by certayne visions appearing vnto them in the woods: Other, whiche haue receiued aunswere of them among the rockes, make them of stone and marble. Some they make of rootes, to the similitude of suche as appeare to them when they are geatherynge the rootes called *Ages*, whereof they make theyr bread, as we haue sayd before. These *Zemes* they beleue to send plentie & fruitfulness of those rootes, as the antiquitie beleued such farries or spirites as they called *Dryades*, *Hamadryades*, *Satyros*, *Panes*, and *Nereides*, to haue the cure & prouidence of the sea, woods, springes, and fountaynes, assignyng to euery thing their peculier goddess: Euen so do the inhabitantes of this Ilande attribute a *Zemes* to euery thyng, supposyng the same to geue eare to theyr inuocations. Wherefore, as often as the kyngs aske counsell of theyr *Zemes* as concernyng their warres, increas of fruites, or scarcenes, or health and sicknesse, they enter into the house dedicate to theyr *Zemes*, where, smuffing vp into theyr nosethys the powder of the herbe called *Cobobba* (wherewith the *Boitii* are dyuen into a furie) they say that immediatly they see the houses turned topsy turuie, and men to walke with theyr heeles vpward, of such force is this powder, vnto take away all fence. As soone as this madnesse ceaseth, he embraceth his knees with his armes, holdyng downe his head. And when he hath remayned thus a whyle astonysed, he lyftech vp his head

head, as one that came newe out of sleepe : and thus looking vp toward heauen, fyrst he fumbleth certayne confounded woordes with hym selfe, then certayne of the nobilitie or cheefe gentlemen that are about him (for none of the common people are admitted to these mysteries) with loude voyces geue tokens of reioycing that he is returned to them from the speech of the *Zemes*, demaundayng of hym what he hath seene. Then he openyng his mouth, doateth that the *Zemes* spake to hym duryng the tyme of his traunce, declaring that he had reuelations either concerning victorie or destruction, famine or plentie, health or syckenesse, or whatsoeuer happeneth fyrst on his tongue. Nowe (most noble Prince) what neede you hereafter to marueyle of the spirite of *Apollo* so shakynge his *Sibylles* with extreme furie : you had thought that the superstitious antiquitie had peryshe. But nowe wheras I haue declared thus muche of the *Zemes* in general, I thought it not good to let passe what is sayde of them in particuler. They say therefore that a certayne kyng called *Guamaretus*, had a *Zemes* whose name was *Corochotum*, who (they say) was oftentimes woont to descend from the hyghest place of the house where *Guamaretus* kept hym fast bound. They affirme, that the cause of this his breakyng of his bandes and departure, was eyther to hyde hym selfe, or to goe seeke for meate, or els for the acte of generation : and that sometymes beyng offended that the kyng *Guamaretus* had ben negligent and slacke in honouring hym, he was woont to lye hyd for certayne dayes. They say also, that in the kynges byllage there are sometyme chyldren borne hauyng two crownes, whiche they suppose to be the chyldren of *Corochotum* the *Zemes*. They sayne likewyse, that *Guamaretus* being ouercome of his enimies in battayle, and his byllage with the pallace consumed with fyre, *Corochotus* brake his bands, and was afterwarde founde a furlong of, safe and without hurte. He hath also another *Zemes* called *Epileguanita*, made of wood, in shape lyke a foure footed beast : who also is sayde, often tymes to haue gonne from the place where he is honoured, into the wooddes. As soone as they perceiue hym to be gone, a great multitude of them geather togeather to seeke him, with deuout prayers : and when they haue founde hym, byyng hym home religiously on theyr shoulders to the chappel dedica-

Secrete mysteries.

Reuelations.

The spirite of *Apollo*.  
The *Sibylles*.

Chyldren with two crownes.

Wandering images.

## The first decade.

ted vnto hym. But they complayne, that sence the commynge of the Christian men into the Island, he fled for altogether, and coulde neuer sence be founde, wherby they diuined the destruction of theyr countrey. They honoured an other *Zemes* in the likenes of a woman, on whom wayted two other lyke men, as they were mynisters to her. One of these, executed thoffice of a mediatour to the other *Zemes*, which are vnder the power and commaundement of this woman, to raise wyndes, cloudes, and rayne. The other is also at her commaundement a messenger to the other *Zemes*, which are ioyned with her in gouernaunce, to geather togeather the waters which fall from the hygh hylls to the valleries, that being loosed, they may with force brulle out into greate floodes, and ouerflowe the countrey, yf the people do not geue due honoure to her Image. There remayneth yet one thing worthy to be noted, wherwith we will make an end of this booke. It is a thing well knowen, and yet freshe in memory among the inhabitantes of the island, that there was sometime two kings (of the which one was the father of *Guarionexius*, of whom we made mention before) which were woont to absteyne fyue daies togeather continually from meate & drinke, to know somewhat of their *Zemes* of thinges to come, and that for this fasting beyng acceptable to their *Zemes*, they receyued answer of them, that within few yeres there shoulde come to the islande a nation of men coucred with apparell, which shoulde destroy al the customes and cerimonies of the island, and epther slay al theyr chyldren, or bryng them into seruitude. The common sort of the people vnderstode this oracle to be ment of the *Canibales*, & therefore when they had any knowledge of theyr commynge, they euer fled, and were fully determined neuer moze to aduenture the battayle with them. But when they saw that the *Spanyarden* had entered into the Islande, consyltyng among them selues of the matter, they concluded that this was the nation whiche was ment by thoracle. Wherin, theyr opinyon deceyued them not, for they are nowe all subiect to the Christians, all such beyng slayne as stubbornly resysted: Nor yet remayneth there anye memorye of theyr *Zemes*, for they are all brought into Spayne, that we myght be cerisyed of theyr illusions of euyl spirites and Idolles, the which you your selfe (most noble Wynce)

haue

A woman Zemes of great power.  
Mediatours.

A marueplous illusion of the deuill.

The idolles abolished.

haue seene and felt when I was present with you. I let passe many thynges because you put me in remembrance that to morowe you take your iorney towards your countrey, to hyng home the queene your aunt, whom you accompanied hyther at the commaundement of kyng Frederike your vncke. Wherefore I byd you farewell for this tyme, despyng you to remember your *Martyr*, whom you haue compelled in the name of the kyng your vncke, to geather these fewe thynges out of a large felde of hystories.

The tenth and last booke of the fyrst Decade, as a conclusion of the former bookes: wrytten to  
*Inacus Iopez Mendocins*, Countie of  
*Tendilla*, & viceroy of *Granata*.



The fyrst begynning and newe attempte, when *Colonus* had taken vpon hym the enterpryse to seache the Ocean sea, I was earnestly moued and required by the letters of certaine of my frendes and noble men of Rome, to wyte those thinges as shoulde happen. For they whispered with great admiration, that where as there were many newe landes founde, and nations which liued naked and after the lawe of nature, they could heare no certentie therof, being greatly desyrus of y<sup>e</sup> same. In this meane time had fortune ouerthrowne *Ascanius* (his brother *Lodonike* being cast out of *Millane* by the frenchmen) whose auctoritie would not suffer me to be idle, but euer to haue my pen in hand. To him I wrote the two first bookes of this decade, beside many other of my hid comentaries which you shal see shortly: but fortune dyd no lesse withdraw my minde from wytyng, then disturbe *Ascanius* from power. As he was tossed with contrary stormes, and ceased to perswade me: euen so slackted my feruentnesse to enquire any further, vntil the yere of Christ. 1500 when the Court remained at *Granata* where you are viceroy: At whiche tyme, *Lodonike* the Cardinal of *Aragonie*, newew to king *Frederike* by his brothers syde. (beyng at *Granata* with the queene *Parthenopea* the sister of our Catholique kyng) brought me king *Frederikes* letters, whereby he exhorted me to finish the

*Millane* in  
the hands of  
the french men.



## The fyrst Decade.

the other bookes which folowed the two epyttell bookes, which I wytte to *Ascanius*: For they both acknowledged that they had the coppe of al that I wytte to cardinall *Ascanius*. And albeit that euen then I was sicke (as you knowe) yet tooke I the burden vppon me; and applyed my selfe to wytyng. I haue therfore chosen these fewe thynges, out of a greate heape of such as seemed to me most worthy to be noted among the large wytynges of the aucthoures and searchers of the same. Wherefore, forasmuch as you haue endeouered to wrest out of my handes the whole example of all my woorkes, to adde the same to the innumerable volumes of your lypharie, I thought it good nowe to make a bryefe reherfall of those thynges which were done from that yeare of a thousand and fyne hundred, euen vnto this yeare which is the tenth from that: For I entend to wytte more largely of these thynges hereafter, if god graunt me lyfe. I had wytten a whole booke by it selfe of the superstitions of the people of the island, supposyng therwyth to haue accomplished the whole Decade consisting of ten bookes. But I haue added this to the tenth as a perpendyculer lyne, and as it were a backe guide or rereward to the other: So that you may knytte the fyrst tenth to the nynt, & impute this to occuppe the place of the tenth to fyl vp the Decade. This order haue I appoynted, lest I shoulde be compelled often tymes to wytte ouer the whole worke, or send you the same defaced with blottes and interlynyng. But now let vs come to our purpose. The shyppes maisters and mariners ran ouer many coastes during these ten yeares: But euer folowed such as were fyrst found by *Colonus*. For rasyng continually alonge by the tract of *Paria*, which they beleue to be part of the firme land or continent of east India, some of them chaunced vppon certaine new landes towarde the east, and some towarde the west, in which they founde both gold and frankensence. For they brought from thence manye iewells and ouches of golde, and greate plentie of frankensence, which they had of the people of those countreyes, partlye for exchaunge of some of our thynges, and partlye by force, ouercommyng them by warre. Yet in some places, although they be naked, they cuercame our men, and slewe whole armyes. For they are exceedyng pyerce, and vse venenous arrowes, and long

The history folowynge, containeth the actes of ten yeeres.

*Paria* part of the same lande of East India.

*Golde & Frankensence.*

The fiercenesse of the naked people.

## The fyrst Decade.

long staues lyke iauelens, made hard at the ende with fire. They founde many beastes, both creppng and foure footed, much dyfferyng from ours, varyable and of sundrye shapen innumerable: yet not hurtfull, except Lions, Tigers, and Crocodiles. This I meane in sundry regions of that greate lande of *Paria*, but not in the ilandes: no not so muche as one, for all the beastes of the ilandes, are meeke and without hurte, except men, which (as wee haue sayde) are in many ilandes deuourers of mans fleshe. There are also dyuers kyndes of foules. And in many places battes of such bygnes, that they are equall with turtle doues. These battes, haue oftentimes assailed men in the night in theyr sleepe, and so bytten them with theyr venemous teeth, that they haue ben therby almost dyuen to madnes, in so much that they haue ben compelled to flee from such places, as from rauinous Harpies. In an other place, where certaine of them slept in the night season on the sands by the sea syde, a monster commyng out of the sea, came vpon one of them secretely, and caried hym away by the myddest out of the sight of his fellows, to whom he cryed in bayne for helpe, vntyl the beast leapt into the sea with her pray. It was the kynges pleasure that they shoulde remayne in these landes, and buylde townes and fortreffes: whereunto they were so well wyllyng, that diuers profered them selues to take vpon them the subduyng of the lande, making great suite to the kyng that they myght be appoynted thereto. The coast of this tracte is exceedyng great and large, and the regions and landes thereof extende marueylous farre, so that they affirme the continent of these regions with the Ilandes about the same, to be thyrse as bygge as al Europe, beside those landes that the Portugales haue founde southwarde, whiche are also exceedyng large. Therfore doubtesse Spayne hath deserued great prayse in these our dayes, in that it hath made knowne vnto vs so many thousandes of *Antipodes* whiche lay hid before, and vnknowne to our forefathers: and hath thereby ministered so large matter to wyte of, to suche learned wyttes as are desirous to set forth knowledge to the commoditie of men: to whom I opened a way when I gathered these things rudelye togeather as you see: the whiche, neuerthelesse I truste you will take in good part, aswell for that I can not adourne my

A man deuoured of a monster of the sea.

Note the largenesse of the new Ilandes.

*Antipodes*.

## The first decade.

my radenesse with better besture, as also that I neuer toke penne in hande to wypte lyke an hystoriographer, but only by epistles scribeled in haste, to satisfie them, from whose commaundementes I myght not drawe backe my foote. But nowe I haue digressed yenough, let vs nowe therfore returne to *Hispaniola*. Our men haue founde by experiance, that the bread of the Ilande is of smal strength to suche as haue ben vbled to our bread made of wheate, and that theyr strengthes were muche decayed by vsyng of the same: wherefore the kyng hath of late commaunded that wheate shoulde be sowen there in diuers places, and at sundry tymes of the yere: It groweth into holow reedes, with few eares, but thole very bygge and fruitefull. They fynde the lyke softnesse and delicatenesse to be in hearbes, whiche growe there to the height of corne. Meate or cattel, become of bygger stature, and exceedyng fat, but theyr fleshe is more vnsauerie, and theyr bones (as they say) eyther without marow, or the same to be very wateryshe: but of hogges and swyne, they affirme the contrary, that they are more wholsome, and of better taste, by reason of certayne wyde frutes whiche they eate, beyng of much better nourishment then masse. There is almost none other kynde of fleshe commonly solde in the market. The multitude of hogges are exceedyngly encreased, and become wyld as soone as they are out of the swyneheards keepyng. They haue suche plentie of bestes and foules, that they shal hereafter haue no neede to haue any brought from other places. The increase of al bestes grow bigger then the broode they came of, by reason of the ranknes of the pasture, although theyr feeding be only of grasse, without eyther barley or other grayne. But we haue sayd yenough of *Hispaniola*. They haue nowe founde that *Cuba* (which of long tyme they thought to haue ben firme lande, for the great length thereof) is an Ilande: yet is it no maruayle that the inhabitants them selues tolde our men when they searched the length thereof, that it was without ende. For this nation beyng naked, and content with a lytle, and with the limittes of theyr owne countrey, is not greatly curious to knowe what theyr neyghbours doo, or the largenesse of theyr dominion, nor yet knewe they yf there were any other thyng vnder heauen, belyde that whiche they walked on with theyr feete. *Cuba* is from the East  
into

The nature of  
the place, altereth  
the formes  
and qualities  
of thynges.

Plentie of  
bestes and  
foule.

*Cuba* is an  
Ilande.

into the West, muche longer then *Hispaniola*, and in breadth from the North to the South, muche lesse then they supposed at the first: for it is very narrowe in respect of the length, and is for the most part very fruitefull and pleasaunt. Eastwarde, not farre from *Hispaniola*, there lyeth an Island lesse then *Hispaniola* more then by the halfe, whiche our men called *Sancti Iohannis*, beyng in manner square, in this they founde exceedyng ryche golde mynes: but beyng nowe occupied in the golde mynes of *Hispaniola*, they haue not yet sent labourers into the Island. But the plentie and reuenue of golde of al other regions, geue place to *Hispaniola*, where they geue them selues in manner to none other thyng then to geather golde, of whiche worke this order is appointed. To euery such wittie and skilful man as is put in trust to be a surueyours or ouerseer of these workes, there is assigned one or more kinges of the Island, with their subiects. These kinges accordyng to theyr league, come with theyr people at certayne tymes of the yeere, and resoꝛt euery of them to the golde myne to the whiche he is assigned, where they haue al manner of dygging or mining tooles deliuered them, and euery king with his men, haue a certayne rewarde alowed them for theyr labour. For when they depart from the mynes to sowynge of coꝛne, and other tyllage (wherunto they are addict at certayne other tymes, lest theyr foode should faile them,) they receiue for their labour, one a ierkin, or a dublet, another a tunicke, another a cloke or a cap: for they nowe take pleasure in these thyngs, and goe no more naked as they were woont to doo. And thus they vse the helpe and labour of the inhabitauntes, both for the tyllage of theyr ground, and in theyr golde mynes, as though they were theyr seruantes or bondemen. They beare this yoke of seruitude with an euill wyl, but yet they beare it: they cal these hyꝛed labourers, *Anaborias*: yet the kyng dooth not suffer that they shoulde be vsed as bondemen, and only at his pleasure, they are set at libertie, or appoynted to worke. At suche tyme as they are called togeather of theyr kynges to wooꝛke (as souldiers or pysoners are assembled of theyr centurions) many of them stele away to the mountaynes and wooddes, where they lye lurkyng, beyng content for that tyme to lyue with wylde frutes, rather then take the paynes to labour. They are docible and apte to learne, and

The description  
of Cuba.

The Islande of  
Barichema, or  
S. Iohannis.  
Golde mynes.

Tyllage.

They abhorre  
labour.

They are  
docible.



## The fyrst Decade.

haue nowe bitterly forgotten theyre olde superstitions. They beleue godly, and beare well in memory such thynges as they haue learned of our fayth. Theyr kyngs children are brought up with the chiefest of our men, and are instructed in letters and good maners. When they are growen to mans age, they sende them home to theyr countreyes to be example to other, and especially to gouerne the people, yf theyr fathers be dead, that they may the better set forth the Christian religion, and keepe theyr subiectes in loue and obedience. By reason wherof, they come now by faire meanes & gentel perswasions, to the mines which lye in two regions of the ilande, about thyrty myles dystaunt from the cytie of *Dominica*, wherof the one is called *Sancti Christophori*: and the other beyng distant aboute fourscore and tenne myles, is called *Cibana*, not farre from the cheefe haven called *Portus Regalis*. These regions are very large, in the which in many places here and there, are founde somtyme euen in the vpper crust of the earth, and somtyme among the stones, certayne rounde pieces or plates of golde, sometime of smale quantytie, and in some places of great wayght: in so much that there hath byn founde rounde pieces of three hundred pounce weyght, and one of three thousande, three hundred and tenne pounce weyght, the whiche (as you harde) was sent whole to the kyng in that shyp in the which the gouernour *Boadilla* was commynge home into *Spaine*, the shyp with all the men beyng drowned by the way, by reason it was ouer laden with the weyght of gold & multitude of men, albeit, there were mo then a thousande persons which saw and handeled the piece of gold. And wheras here I speake of a pounce, I do not meane the common pounce, but the summe of the ducate of gold, with the coyne called *Triens*, which is the thirde part of a pounce. which they call *Pesus*. The summe of the weight hearof, the Spanyardes call *Castellenum Aureum*. All the gold that is digged in the mountaines of *Cibana* and *Port Regale*, is caried to the tower of *Conception*, where shoppes with al thinges appertayning are redy furnished to fine it, melt it, and caste it into wedges. That doone, they take the kynges portion therof, which is the fyfte parte, and so restore to euery man his owne which he gotte with his labour. But the gold which is founde in saynt *Christophorus* myne

and

The kynges  
children.

The two cheefe  
golde mynes of  
*Hispaniola*.

A costly shyp,  
wrecke.

*Pesus*.

The smyng  
and distribus  
ting of gold.

and the regions there about, is carped to the shoppes which are in the byllage called *Bonauentura*. In these two shops, is moultēn peerelely aboue three hundred thousand pound wayght of gold. If any man be knowen deceptfullpe to keepe backe any portion of golde, whereof he hath not made the kynges officers priuie, he forseyteth the same for a fyne. There chaunceth among them ostentpnyes many contentions and controuerxies, the whiche vnlesse the magistrates of the Ilande do synpthe, the case is remoued by appellation to the hygh counsaile of the court, from whose sentence it is not lawfull to appeale in al the dominions of Castyle. But let vs nowre returne to the newe landes, from whence we haue digressed. They are innumerable, diuers, and exceeding fortunate. Wherefore the Spanyardes in these our dayes, and they noble enterpryses, do not geue place epyther to the factes of *Saturnus*, or *Hercules*, or anye other of the auncient pynces of famous memory, which were canonized among the goddes, called *Heroes*, for they searchyng of newe landes and regions, and byngyng the same to better culture and ciuilitie. Oh God, howe large & farre shal our posteritie see the Christian religion extended? howe large a campe haue they now to wander in, whiche by the true nobilitie that is in them, or moued by vertue, wyll attempt epyther to deserue lyke prayse among men, or reputation of well doyng before God? What I conceiue in my mynde of these thynges, I am not able to expresse with penne or tongue. I wil now therefore so make an end of this perpendicular conclusion of the whole Decade, as myndyng hereafter to search and geather euery thyng particularly, that I may at further leysure wyte the same more at large. For *Colonus* the Admiral, with foure ships, and a hundred, threescore, and ten men, appoynted by the kyng, discouered in the yere of Christe. 1520. the lande oueragaynst the West corner of *Cuba*, distant from the same about a hundred and thirrie leagues: in the myddest of whiche tracte, lyeth an Ilande called *Guanassa*. From hence he directed his voyage backwarde toward the East, by the shore of that coast, supposyng that he shoulde haue founde the coastes of *Paria*, but it chaunced otherwise. It is sayde also that *Vincencius Agnes* (of whom we haue spoken before) and one *Iohannes Daiz* (with diuers other, of whose voyages I haue as yet no certayne knowledge)

Three hundred thousand weight of gold molten peerelely in *Vispaniola*.

The newe landes.

Enlargyng of the Christian religion.  
The original of true nobilitie.

The Ilande of *Guanassa*.

The voyage of *Iohannes Daiz*.

## The seconde Decade.

knowledge) haue ouerruine those coastes : but yf God graunte me lyfe, I trust to knowe the trueth hereof, and to aduertise you of the same. Thus fare ye well.

*The ende of the fyrst Decade.*

The fyrst booke of the seconde Decade, to *Leo* Bishop of Rome, the tenth of that name, of the supposed continent or firme lande.



Since the tyme that *Galeatius Butrigarius* of Bononie, and *Iohannes Curcius* of Florence (most holy father) came to the Catholique kyng of Spayne, the one of your holynesse ambassage, and the other for the assayes of his common wealth, I was euer for the moste parte in theyr companie, and for theyr ver-

tues and wysedome had them in great reuerence. And whereas they were greatlye geuen to studie, and continuall reuoluing of diuers auctours, they chaunced vpon certayne bookes, negligently let slippe out of my handes, entreatyng of the large landes and regions hitherto lying hyd, and almost *West Antipodes*, founde of late by the Spanpardes. Yet being allured and delycted with the newnesse and straungenesse of the matter, although rudely adourned, they commended the same, therewith earnestly despyrnyng me in theyr owne names, and requiring me in the name of your holynesse, to adde hereunto al such thynges as were founde after that tyme, and to geue them a copie therof, to sende to your holynesse, that you myght thereby vnderstande, both howe great commodities is chaunced to the progenie of mankynde, as also encrease of the militant congregation in these our dayes, by the fortunate enterpryses of the kynges of Spayne. For lyke as rased and vnpaynted tables, are apte to receiue what fourmes soeuer are fyrst drawen thereon by the hande of the paynter, euen so these naked and simple people, doo soone receyue the customes of our religion, and by conuersation of our men, shake of theyr fierce and native barbarous.

*West Antipodes.*

*The encrease of the Christian congregation.*

barbarousnesse. I haue thought it good therfore to satisfie the request of these wyle men, especially vsyng chaucthorptie of your name, wherunto not to haue obeyed, I shoulde esteeme my selfe to haue committed a heynous offence. Wherfore I wyll nowe bryefly rehearse in order, what hyd coastes the Spanyardes ouer- ran, who were chaucthous therof, where they rested, what fur- ther hope they brought, and finally what greate thynges those tractes of landes do promyse in tyme to come. In the declaration of my decade of the ocean, which is nowe prynted and dyspersed throughout Chyristendome vnwares to me, I described howe *Christophorus Colonus* founde those ilandes wherof wee haue spo- ken, and that turnyng from thence towarde the left hande south- ward, he chaunced into greate regions of landes, and large seas, distant from the Equinoctiall lyne, onely from syue degrees to tenne: where he founde brode ryuers and exceeding hygh moun- taynes couered with snowe, and harde by the sea bankes, where were manye comodious and quyet hauens. But *Colonus* being now departed out of this lyfe, the kyng beganne to take care, how those lands might be inhabited with Chyristian men, to thin- crease of our fapth: Wheruppon he gaue lycence by his letters patentes to al such as would take the matter in hand, and espeti- ally to two, wherof *Diego Nicuesa* was one, & the other was *Al- phonsus Fogeda*. Wherfore about the Ides of December, *Alphon- sus* departing fyrst with thre hundred souldiers from the ilande of *Hispaniola* (in the which we sayd the Spanyardes had builded a cytie, & planted theyr habitation) & saylyng in maner ful south, he came to one of the hauens found before, which *Colonus* named *Portus cart'aginis*, both because of the iland standyng agaynst the course of the streame, and also that by reason of the largenesse of the place and bendyng sydes, it is much lyke to the hauen of Spayne called *Carthago*. The inhabytantes call the Ilande *Codego*, as the Spanyardes cal the Ilande of theyr hauen *Scombria*. This region is calid of the inhabitantes *Caramairi*, in the whiche they affyrme both the men and women to bee of goodly stature, but naked. The men haue theyr heare cutte rounde by theyr eares, but the women were it long, both the men and women are very good archers. Our men founde cer- tayne trees in this prouince, which boze great plenty of sweete

Of landes dis- tant from the Equinoctiall, from syue de- grees to ten.

The death of *Colonus*.

A generall lycence.

The navigatio- on of *Alphon- sus Fogeda*.

The region of *Caramairi*.



Apples whiche  
turne into woꝝ-  
mes.  
A tree whose  
shadowe is  
hurtful.

apples, but hurtful, for they turne into woꝝmes when they are eaten. Especially the shadowe of the tree is contagious, for such as sleepe vnder it any tyme, haue theyꝝ heades swolne, and lose their sight: but if they sleepe but a while, theyꝝ sight commeth agayne after a fewe dayes. This porte is distant foure hundred, fyfte, & sixe myles from that porte of *Hispaniola* whiche the Spaniards call *Beata*, in the whiche also they furnithe them selues when they prepare anye voyage to seeke other newe landes. When *Fogeda* had entred into the hauen, he enuaded, slue, and spoyled the people, whom he founde naked and scattered: for they were geuen him for a pray by the kynges letters patentes, because they had ben before tyme cruell agaynst the Christians, and coulde neuer be allured to permytte them quiettlye to come within theyꝝ dominions. Here they founde golde, but in no great quantitie, nor yet that pure: they make of it certayne brest plates and brooches whiche they weare for comelynesse. But *Fogeda* not content with these spoyles, vsyng certayne captiues, which he had taken before, for gypdes, entred into a byllage twelue myles dystant from the sea syde further into the lande, into the which they were fled when he fyrst enuaded. Here he found a naked people, but apte to warre: for they were armed with targettes, shieldes, long swoordes made of wood, and bowes with arrowes typt with bone, or hardened with fyre. As soone as they had espyed our men, they with theyꝝ ghestes whō they had receiued, assayled them with desperate myndes, beyng therto moze earnestly prouoked, beholdyng the calamitie of these whiche fled vnto them, by the violence done to theyꝝ women and chyldren, in the spoyle and slaughter. In this conflict our men had the ouerthrowe: in the which, one *Iohannes de Lacossa* (being in aucthoritie next vnto *Fogeda* the captayne, and also the fyrste that geathered gold in the sandes of *Vraba*) was slaine with fittie souldiers: for these people infecte their arrowes with the deadlye poyson of a certayne herbe. The other with theyꝝ captayne *Fogeda* beyng discomfited, fledde to the shyppes. Whyle they remayned thus in the hauen of *Carthago*, sorowful and pensiue for the losse of theyꝝ companions, the other captayne *Diego Nicuesa*, (whom they left in *Hispaniola*, preparyng hym selfe towarde the voyage in the hauen *Beata*) came to them with fyue shippes,

Marlphe  
people.

Arrowes in-  
fected with  
poyson.

The nauigati-  
on of Diego  
Nicuesa.

and

and seuen hundred fourescore and fyftee men. For the greater number of souldyers folowed *Nicuesa*, bothe because free lybertye was geuen them to choose which of the capytaynes them lyst, and also that by reason of his age, he was of greater authoritie: But especially because the rumoure was that *Beragua* being by the kyngs commission appoynted to *Nicuesa*, was rycher in golde then *Vraba* assigned to *Alphonfus Fogeda*. Therfore, at the arryual of *Nicuesa*, they consulted what was best to be doone: and determyned fyrste to reuenge the deathe of theyr felowes. Whereupon, setting theyr battayle in aray, they marched in the nyght towarde them whiche stue *Cossa* with his companyons. Thus stealyng on them vnwares in the laste watche of the nyght, and encompassyng the byllage where they lay, consystryng of a hundred houses and more, haupyng also in it thysle as many of theyr neyghbours as of them selues, they set it on fyre, with diligent watche that none myght escape. And thus in thort time they brought them and theyr houses to ashes, and made them paye the raunsome of blood with blood: for of a great multitude of men and women, they spared only fyre chyldren, all other beyng destroyed with fyre or swoord, except fewe whiche escaped priuily, they learned by these reserued chyldren, that *Cossa* and his felowes were cut in peeces, and eaten of them that stue them. By reason whereof, they suppose that these people of *Camairi* tooke theyr original of the *Caribes*, otherwyle called *Canibales*. Here they founde some golde among the ashes. For the hunger of golde dyd no lesse incourage our men to aduenture these perylls and labours, then dyd the possessyng of the landes. These thinges thus finished, and the death of *Cossa* and his felowes reuenged, they returned to the hauen. After this, *Fogeda* whiche came fyrst, fyrst lykewyle departyng with his armie to seeke *Vraba*, committed to his gouernaunce, sayled by an Islande called *Fortis*, lying in the mydway betweene *Vraba* and the hauen of *Carthago*: into the whiche descending, he founde it to be an Islande of the *Canibales*, bynyng with hym from thence two men and seuen women, for the residue escaped. Here he founde in the cotages of them that fledde, a hundred, fourescore, and tenne drammes of golde, caste and wrought in dyuers fourmes. Saylyng forwarde from hence, he came to the

The regions of  
*Uraba* and  
*Beragua*.

The Spaniards  
des reuenge the  
death of theyr  
companions.

A great slaughter.

*Canibales*.

The hunger  
of golde.

The Islande  
*Fortis*.

Wrought gold.

## The seconde Decade.

East coastes of *Vraba*, whiche the inhabitants call *Caribana*, from whence the *Caribes* or *Canibales* of the *Ilandes* are sayd to haue theyr name and originall. Here he began to builde a fortresse, and a byllage neere vnto the same, therein intendyng to place theyr fyrst habitation. Shortly after, beyng instructed by certayne captiues, that there was about twelue myles further within the lande, a certayne byllage called *Tirusi*, hauyng in it a ryche golde myne, he determined to destroy the village, to the which when he came, he founde the inhabitantes redy to defende theyr ryght, and that so stoutlye, that encounteryng with them, he was repulled with shame and damage: for these people also vse bowes and venemous arrowes. Within a fewe dayes after, beyng enforced for lacke of vittualles to inuade another village, he hym selfe was strycken in the thygh with an arrowe. Some of his felowes say, that he was thus wounded of one of the inhabitants whose wyfe he had ledde away captiue before. They say also that he had fyrst frendlye communed with *Fogeda* for redeming of his wife, and had appoynted a day to bring a portion of golde for her raunsome, and that he came at the day assigned, not laden with golde, but armed with bowes and arrowes, with eyght other confederate with hym which had ben before partakers of the iniuries done to them fyrst at the haue of *Carthago*, and afterward at the burnyng of the byllage, in reuenge whereof, they had desperately consecrated them selues to death: But the matter beyng knowen, the captayne of this conspiracie was slayne of *Fogeda* his companton, and his wyfe deteyned in captiuitie. *Fogeda* also through the maliciousnesse of the venime, consumed and was dried up by litle & litle. While these things chaunced thus, they espied *Nicuesa* the other captayne, to whom *Beragua* the region of the West syde of *Vraba* was assigned to inhabite. He gaue wynd to his sayles to take his voyage toward *Beragua*, the day after that *Fogeda* departed out of the haue of *Carthago*. He with his armie that he brought with hym, coasted euer along by the shore, vntyl he came to the gulfe *Coiba*, whose kynges name is *Careta*. Here he founde theyr language to be in manner nothyng lyke vnto that of *Hispaniola*, or of the haue of *Carthago*: whereby he perceyued that in this tracte, there are many languages differyng from theyr owne borderers. *Nicuesa*

*Nicuesa.*

The gulfe  
*Coiba.*

Departyng from Coiba, went to the prouince of Lienetenaime-  
 thyp of Foga: a his companion. Within a fewe dayes after, he  
 hym selfe enteryng into one of those marchaunt shippes whi-  
 che the Spanyarden call *Carauelas*, commaunded that the big-  
 ger vessels should folow farre behinde. He tooke with hym two  
 smal shippes commonly called *Bergandines* or *Bzigandines*.  
 I haue thought it good in al the discourse of these bookes, to vse  
 the common names of thynges, because I had rather be playne  
 then curious, especially forasmuche as there do dayly arylse ma-  
 ny newe thynges vnknewen to the antiquitie, whereof they haue  
 left no true names. After the departure of *Nicuesa*, there came a  
 shyppe from *Hispaniola* to *Fogeda*, the captayne wherof, was one  
*Barnardino de Calauera*, who had stolne the same from *Hispaniola* Barnardino de  
 with threescore men, without leaue or aduice of the Admiral and  
 the other gouernours. With the byttualles which this shyppe  
 brought, they refreshed them selues, and somewhat recovered  
 theyr strengthes, muche weakened for lacke of meate. *Fogeda*  
 his companions whyspered and muttered agaynst hym daylye  
 more and more, that he fedde them foorth with vayne hope: for  
 he had tolde them that he left *Ancisus* in *Hispaniola* (whom he  
 chose by the kinges commission to be a iudge in causes, because  
 he was learned in the law) to come shortly after him with a shyp  
 laden with byttualles, and that he marueyled that he was not  
 come many dayes synce. And herein he sayd nothing but trueth:  
 for when he departed, he left *Ancisus* halfe redye to folowe hym.  
 But his selowes supposyng that al that he had sayde of *Ancisus*  
 had ben fayned, some of them determined priuily to steale away  
 the two *Bzigandines* from *Fogeda*, and to returne to *Hispaniola*.  
 But *Fogeda* hauyng knowledge hereof, preuented theyr deuices:  
 for leaupyng y<sup>e</sup> custodie of the fortresse with a certayne noble gen-  
 tleman called *Francisco Pizarro*, he him selfe thus wounded, with  
 a fewe other in his companye, entred into the shyppe wherof we  
 spake before, and sayled directly to *Hispaniola*, both to heale the  
 wounde of his thygh, yf any remedie myght be found, and also to  
 knowe what was the cause of *Ancisus* taryng: leaupyng hope  
 with his selowes (whiche were nowe brought from thye hun-  
 dred to threescore, partly by famine, and partly by warre) that  
 he woulde returne within the space of. xv. dayes, prescribyng  
 also

*Barnardino de Calauera.*

*Fogeda returneth to Hispaniola.*

*Famine.*



also a condittion to Pizarro and his companions, that it should not be imputed to them for treason, to depart from thence yf he came not agayne at the day appoynted, with vptuales, and a newe supplie of men. These .xv. dayes beyng now past, wheras they coulde yet heare nothyng of *Fogeda*, and were dayly more and more oppressed with sharpe hunger, they entred into the two Brigandines which were left, and departed from that land. And as they were now sayling on the mayne sea towarde *Hispaniola*, a tempest sodayne'y arysyng, swallowed one of the Brigandines with all that were therein. Some of theyr felowes asfyrmyng, that they playnely sawe a spihe of huge greatnesse, swimmyng about the Brigandine (for those seas byng soorth great monsters) and that with a stroke of her tayle, she broke the rudder of the shyppe in peeces, whiche sayling, the Brigandine beinge dyuen about by force of the tempest, was drowned not farre from the Island called *Fortis*, lying betwene the coastes of the haven *Carthago* and *Vraba*. As they of the other Brigandine would haue landed in the Islande, they were dyuen backe with the bowes and arrowes of the fierce barbarians. Proceeding therefore on theyr voyage, they mette by chaunce with *Ancisus*, betwene the haven of *Carthago*, and the region of *Cuchibacoa* in the mouth of the riuer whiche the Spanyardes called *Boium gatti*, that is, the house of the catte, because they sawe a catte fyrste in that place: *Boium*, in the tongue of *Hispaniola*, is a house. *Ancisus* came with a shyppe laden with al thynges necessarie, both for meate, and drynke, and apparell, byngyng also with hym an another Brigandine. This is he for whose commyng the captayne *Fogeda* looked for so long. He loosed anker from *Hispaniola* in the Ioes of September: and y fourth day after his departure, he espyed certayne hygh mountaynes, the whiche for the abundance of snow which lieth there continually in the tops therof, the Spanyardes called *Serra Neuata*, when *Colonus* the fyrst fynder of those regions passed by the same. The fift day he sayled by *Os Draconis*. They which were in the Brigandine, tolde *Ancisus* that *Fogeda* was returned to *Hispaniola*: but *Ancisus* supposyng that they had fained that tale, commaunded them by chauctoritie of his commission to turne backe agayne. The Brigandiners obeyed & folowed him: yet made they humble suite vnto him that

A Brigandine  
drowned with  
the stroke of  
a spihe.

The region of  
*Cuchibacoa*.

*Serra Neuata*.

*Os Draconis*.

he woulde graunt them that with his fauour they myght eyther goe agayne to *Hispaniola*, or that he hym selfe woulde bring them to *Nicuesa*: and that they woulde for his gentlenesse, declared towarde them in this behalfe, rewarde hym with two thousande drammes of golde: for they were ryche in golde, but poore in bread. But *Ancifus* assented to neyther of theyr requestes, asfymyng that he myght by no meanes goe any other way, then to *Vraba* the prouince assigned to *Fogeda*. Whereupon, by theyr conduct, he tooke his voyage directly towarde *Vraba*. But nowe let it not seeme tedious to your holynesse, to heare of one thyng woorthy to be remembred, whiche chaunced to this Lieutenent *Ancifus* as he came thither: for he also cast anker in the coastes of the region of *Caramairi*, whiche we sayde to be famous, by reason of the hauens of *Carthago*, and of the goodly stature, strength, and beautie both of men and women beyng in the same. Here he sent certayne to goe alande on the shore both to fetch fresh water, & also to repayre the ship boate which was sore bryused. In this meane tyme, a great multitude of the people of the countrey, armed after theyr manner, came about our men, as they were occupied about theyr busynesse, and stode in a redynesse to fyght, for the space of thre dayes continually, durynge whiche time, neyther durst they set vpon our men, nor our men assaile them. Thus both parties keepynge theyr aray, stode styll thre whole dayes, the one gasynge on the other. Yet al this tyme our men applyed theyr woorkes, placynge the shypwyghtes in the myddest of theyr armie. As they stode thus amaled, two of our company went to fylle theyr water pottes at the mouth of the ryuer neere vnto them both, where sodenly there came forth agaynst them a captain of the barbarians with tenne armed men, whiche inclosed them, and with terrible countenance bent theyr arrowes against them, but shot them not of. One of our men fledde, but the other remainned, calling his felowe agayne, and rebukynge hym for his fearefulnesse. Then he spake to the barbarians in theyr owne language, whiche he had learned beyng conuersant with the captiues that were carped from thence long before. They marueyllynge to heare a stranger speake in theyr native tongue, put of theyr fiercenesse, and fell to frendly communication, demanding who were the captaynes of that company whiche

ryche in golde,  
and poore in  
bread.

were

## The seconde decade.

were aryued in theyr lande. He answered that they were strangers passing by, and that he marueyled why they would attempt to driue them from theyr coastes, and disturbe their shypps arguyng them of follie and crueltie, and further threacnyng their ruine and destruction, except they woulde vse them selues more frendely towarde them. For he aduertised them that there woulde shortlye come into theyr lande armed men, in number like vnto the landes of the sea, and that to theyr vtter destruction; not only yf they resysted them not, but also except they receiued them, and entertayned them honourably. In the meane time, *Ancifus* was enfourmed that his men were deteyned: wherefore suspectyng some deceyte, he brought forth all his target men, for feare of theyr venemous arrowes: and lettynge them in battel araye, he marched forwarde towarde them whiche stayed his men. But he whiche communed with the barbarians, geuyng hym a signe with his hande to proccede no further, he stayed, and callng to hym the other, he knewe that all was safe: for the barbarians profered hym peace, because they were not they whom they suspected them to haue ben, meanyng by *Fogeda* & *Nicuesa*, who had spoyled the byllage standyng there by the sea syde, and carped away many captiues, and also burnt another byllage further within the lande. And therefore (as they sayde) the cause of theyr comyng thither, was to reuenge those iniuries, yf by any meanes they coulde, yet that they woulde not exercise theyr weapons agaynst the innocent: for they sayd, it was vngodly to fyght agaynst any, not beyng prouoked. Laying apart therefore theyr bowes and arrowes, they enterteyned our men gentelly, and gaue them great plentie of salted fysh, and bread of theyr countrey, and filled theyr vessels with Syder made of their countrey fruites and seedes, not inferiour to wine in goodnesse. Thus *Ancifus* hauing entred into frendship, and made a league of peace with thynhabitantes of *Caramairi*, which were before sore prouoked by other captaynes, he lanchod from that lande, and directed his course to *Vraba* by the *Ilande Fortis*, hauing in his shippe a hundred and fyftie freshe men, whiche were substitute in the place of suche as were dead: also twelue Mares, and manye swine, and other beastes both males and females for encrease. Lykewyse, fyfte peeces of ordinaunce; with great multi-

The vse of targetts agaynst venemous arrowes.

The barbarians haue respect to iustice.

Salted fysh.

Wine of fruites and seedes.

Artillerie.

tude

knde of targettes, swoordes, iavelyns, and suche other weapons  
 for the warres, but all this with euil sperde, and in an euil houre:  
 for as they were euen now e ntryng into the haueu, the gouer-  
 nour of the thyppe whiche sate at the helme, stroke the thyppe  
 bypon the sandes, where it was so fast enclosed and beaten with  
 the waues of the sea, that it opened in the myddest, and all lost  
 that was therein, a thyrng surelye miserable to beholde: for of  
 all the vttualles that they had, they saued only twelue barrells  
 of meale, with a fewe cheeses, and a lytle bysket bread, for al  
 the beastes were drowned, and they them selues escaped hard-  
 ly and halfe naked, by helpe of the Brigandine and ship boate,  
 caryng with them only a fewe weapons. Thus they fell from  
 one calamitie into another, beyng nowe more carefull for theyr  
 lyues then for golde. Yet beyng brought alyue and in health to  
 that lande whiche they so greatly desyred, they coulde do no lesse  
 then to prouide for the susteynyng of theyr bodyes, because they  
 coulde not lyue only by ayre: and whereas theyr owne sayled,  
 they must needes lyue by other mens. Yet among these so many  
 aduersties, one good chaunce offered it selfe vnto them: for they  
 founde, not farre from the sea syde, a groue of Date trees, among  
 the which, and also among the reeke or weedes of the marishes,  
 they espyed a multitude of wylde bozes, with whose fleshe they  
 fed the selues wel certayne dayes. These they say to be lesse then  
 ours, and with so short tayles, that they thought they had ben cut  
 of. They differ also from ours in theyr feete: for theyr hinder  
 feete are whole vndiuided, and also without any hooft. But they  
 affirme that they haue prooued by experience, theyr fleshe to be  
 of better taste and more wholsome then ours. During this time,  
 they fed also of Dates, and the rootes of young Date trees, whi-  
 che they eate likewise in Ciuile and *Granata*, where they call  
 them *Palmitos*, of y<sup>e</sup> leaues wherof they make beescmes in Rome.  
 Sometymes also they eate of the apples of that region, whiche  
 haue the taste of pynnes, and haue also stones in them, and are  
 but lytle and of redde colour: I suppose them to be of that kinde,  
 wherof I ate in the citie of *Alexandria* in Egypt, in the moneth  
 of Appyll, the trees whereof, the Jewes that dwell there, be-  
 yng learned in the lawe of Moyses, affyrme to be the Cedars  
 of *Libanus*, whiche beare gylde frutes and newe all the yere,

Anticus thyppe  
wjacke.

A groue of  
date trees.

Wylde bozes.

Apples of a  
strange kinde.

Cedars of  
Libanus.



## The seconde Decade.

as both the orange tree. These app'les are good to be eaten, and haue a certayne sweetenes: myrre with a gentyll sharpnesse, as haue the fruites called *Sorbes*. *Chinhabitantes* plant these trees in theyr orchardes and gardens, and norye them with greate diligence as we do cherries, peaches, and quinces. This tree in leaues, heyght, and trunke, is very lyke vnto the tree that beareth the fruyte called *Zizipha*, which the Apothecaries call *Iuinba*. But where as now the wyde bores began to fayle them, they were agayne enforced to consulte and prouyde for the tyme to come: Whereuppon with theyr whole armye, they entered further into the land. The *Canibales* of this prouynce, are most expert archers. *Ancisus* had in his companye, a hundred men. They mette by the way with only three men of *chinhabitantes*, naked, and armed with bowes & venemous arrowes, who without all feare, assayed our men sperecelly, wounded manye, and slue manye, and when they empyed theyr quiers, fledde as swyftely as the wynde: For (as we haue saide) they are exceeding swyfte of foote by reason of theyr loose goeing from theyr chyldes age, they assure that they lette slyp no arrowe out of theyr bowes in vayne. Our men therfore returned the same way that they came, muche more vnfortunate then they were before, and consulted among them selues to leaue the land, especialy because the inhabytantes had ouerthrowne the fortresse which *Fogeda* buylded, and had burnt thyrtye houses of the vyllage, as soone as *Pizarrus* and his company lefte of *Fogeda*, and forsaken the land. By this occasion therfore, being dyuen to seeke further, they had intelligence that the west syde of that goulfe of *Vraba*, was more fruitfull & better to inhabite. Wherefore, they sent the one halfe of theyr men thither with the brigandine, and left the other neere to the sea syde on the east part. This gulf, is fourteene myles in breadth, and howe muche the further it entereth into the syrne lande, it is so much the narrower. Into the gulf of *Vraba*, there fall many ryuers, but one (as they saye) more fertile then the ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypt. This ryuer is called *Darien*, vpon the bankes whereof, being very fruitfull of trees and grasse, they entended to plante theyr newe colonye or habitation. But the inhabytantes marueplyng at the brigandynes being bigger then theyr canoas, and specially at the sayles therof,

Men of desperate boldnesse.

The gulf of Vraba.

The great riuer of Darien.

therof, first sent away theyr chyldren and weakeſte ſort of theyr people with theyr baggage and houſhold ſtuffe, and aſſembled all ſuche togeather both men and women, as were meete for the warres. Thus beynge armed with weapons and deſperate mindes, they ſtoode in a redynesse to fyght, and caryed the commyng of our men vpon a lytle hyll, as it were to take the aduantage of the grounde: our men iudged them to be about ſiue hundred in number. Then *Ancifus* the captayne of our men, and *Lieutenant* in the ſtede of *Fogeda*, ſettyng his men in order of battayle aray, and with his whole company kneeling on his knees, they all made humble prayers to GOD for the victorie, and a bowe to the image of the bleſſed virgin whiche is honoured in Ciuite, by the name of *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, promyſyng to ſende her many golden gyftes, and a ſtraunger of that countrey: alſo, to name the byllage *Sancta Maria Antiqua* after her name: ykewyſe to erecte a temple called by the ſame name, or at the leaſt to dedicate the king of that prouince his pallace to that vſe, if it ſhould pleaſe her to aſſiſt them in this dangerous enterpriſe. This done, al the ſouldiers toke an oth, that no man ſhould turne his backe to his enimies. Then y captayne commaunding them to be in a redynesse with theyr targets and iauelyng, and the trumpetter to blowe the battayle, they fiercely aſſayled theyr enimies with a larme: but the naked barbarians, not long able to abyde the force of our men, were put to flight, with theyr kynge and captayne *Cemaccus*. Our men entred into the byllage, where they founde plentie of meate, ſuch as the people of the countrey vſe, ſufficient to aſſwage theyr preſent hunger, as bread made of rootes, with certayne frutes vnylike vnto ours, whiche they reſerue for ſtoze, as we doo *Chelimittes*. Of theſe people, the men are bitterly naked, but the women, from the navel downewarde are couered with a fyne cloth made of goſſampine cotton. This region is viterly without any ſharpenesse of wynter: for the mouth of this ryuer of *Darien*, is onely eyght degrees diſtaunt from the *Equinoctiall* lyne, ſo that the common ſoyre of our men, ſcarcely perceyue any dyfference in length betweene the day and nyght all the whole yeere: but becauſe they are ignorant in aſtronomie, they can perceyue no ſmall dyfference. Therefore we neede not muche paſſe if the degree differ ſome

The ſouldiers  
make an othe.

The barbarians  
are dygued  
to ſpyght.

The river of  
*Darien*, but  
vii. degrees  
from the *Equinoctiall* lyne.

what

## The seconde decade.

what from theyr opinion, forasmuche as the dyfference can not be great. The day after that they aryued at the lande, they sailed along by the ryuer, where they founde a great thicket of reedes, continuyng for the space of a myle in length, supposing (as it chaunced in deede) that the borderers thereabout whiche had fled, had eyther lyeu lurking there, or els to haue hid theyr stuffe among those reedes: Whereupon, armynge them selues with theyr targets, for feare of the people lying in ambushe, they searched the thicket diligently, and founde it without men, but replenished with houtholde stuffe and golde. They founde also a great multitude of shetes, made of the silke or cotton of the gossampine tree: lykewys diuers kyndes of vessels & tooles made of wood, and many of earth: also many best plates of golde, and ouches wrought after theyr manner, to the summe of a hundred & two pound weight: for they also take pleasure in the beaurie of golde, and worke it very artificially, although it be not the pryce of thyngs among them as with vs. They haue it out of other regions, for exchaunge of such thynges as theyr countrey bringeth forth: for such regions as haue plentie of bread and gossampine, lacke golde, and suche as byng forth golde, are for the most part rough with mountaynes and rockes, and therefore barren: and thus they exercise marchandises without the vse of mony. Resoplyng therefore with double gladnesse, as wel in that they sawe great lykenesse of golde, as also that fortune had offered them so fayre and fruiteful a countrey, they sent for theyr felowes whom they had left before in the East syde of the gulfe of *Vraba*. Yet some say, that the ayre is there vnholsome, because that part of the region lyeth in a lowe valley, enuironed with mountaynes and maryshes.

### The seconde booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



I haue described to your holynesse where *Fogeda* with his companie (to whom the large tractes of *Vraba* was assigned to inhabit) intended to fasten theyr foote. Let vs nowe therefore leaue them of *Vraba* for a whyle, and returne agayne to *Nicuesa*, to whom

Golde founde  
in a thicket  
of reedes.

Best plates  
of golde.

The golden  
regions are for  
the most part  
barren.

whom the gouernaunce and Lieutenants<sup>hip</sup> of the moste large prouince of *Beragua* (beyng the West syde of the gulf of *Vraba*) was appoynted. We haue declared howe *Nicuesa*, departyng with one *Carauel* and two *Brigandines*, from *Vraba* the iurisdiction of his friend & companion *Fogeda*, directed his course Westwarde to *Beragua*, leauing the bygger shippes somewhat behind hym, to folowe hym a farre of, but he tooke this deuice in an euyl houre, for he both lost his felowes in the nyght, and went past the mouth of the riuer *Beragua*, whiche he cheefely sought. One *Lupus Olanus* a *Cantabrian*, and gouernour of one of the great shippes, had the conduct of one of the *Brigandines*: he comyng behynde, learned of the inhabitants, whiche was the way Eastwarde to the gulf of *Beragua*, ouerpasse and left behynde of *Nicuesa*, *Olanus* therfore directyng his course toward the East, met with the other *Brigandine*, which had also wandered out of the way by reason of the darkenes of the night. The gouernour of this *Brigandine*, was one *Petrus de Vmbria*. Thus both beyng glad of theyr meetyng, they consulted what was best to be done, and whiche way they coulde coniecture theyr gouernour had taken his voyage. After deliberation, they iudged that *Nicuesa* coulde no more lacke some to put hym in remembrance of *Beragua*, then they them selues were mindful hereof, hoppyng also to fynde hym there. They sayled therefore towarde *Beragua*, where they founde within .xvi. myles distant, a ryuer whiche *Colonus* named *Lagartos*, because it nouryssheth great *Lylards*, whiche in the Spanishe tongue are called *Lagartos*. These *Lylards* are hurtful both vnto man and beast, and in shape much like vnto the *Trocodiles* of the ryuer *Nilus* in *Egypt*. In this ryuer they founde theyr companions and felowes of theyr errour, lying at anker with the great shippes, whiche folowed behynde by the gouernours commaundement. Here the whole assemblie beyng careful and disquieted by reason of the gouernours errour, after consultation, by the aduice of the captaynes of the *Brigandines*, who had rased neere vnto the coastes of *Beragua*, they sayled directly thether. *Beragua*, in the language of the inhabitants of the same prouince, is as much to say, as the golden riuer. The region it selfe is also called by the same name, takyng name of the ryuer. In the mouth of this ryuer, the greatest basselles

*Lupus Olanus*

*Petrus de Vmbria.*

The ryuer  
*Lagartos*,

The golden  
riuer of *Beragua*.

cast



## The seconde Decade.

cast anchor, and conueyghed all theyr victuales and other necessities to lande with theyr shyp boates, and elected *Lupus Olanus* to be theyr gouernour in steede of *Nicus*, whom they had loste. By chaduyce therfore of *Olanus* and the other vnder cappytainez, that all hope of departure myght be taken from the soudyers which they had now brought thither, and to make them the more wylling to inhabite that lande, they vterly forsooke and caste of those shyppes beyng nowe rotten for age, and suffered them to be shaken and broosed of the surges of the sea. Yet of theyr soundeste planks, wyth other newe, made of the trees of that Region (which they saue to be exceeding bigge and hygh) they framed a new carauell shoptelpe after, whiche they myght vse to serue for theyr necessitie. But *Beragua* was founde by the vnforgotten destenpe of *Petrus de Vmbria*. For hee, beyng a man of prompt wit and apt forwardnesse to attempte thinges (in which some tyme fortune will beare a stroke notwithstanding our prouidence) tooke vppon hym chaduenture to searche the shore, to thintent to fynde a way for his felowes where they myght beste come aland. For this purpose, he chose hym .xii. maryners, and went aboarde the shyp boate whiche serued the greatest shyppes. The flowpyng of the sea, raged and rored there, with a horryble whurling, as we reade of the daungerous place of *Scylla* in the sea of *Cicilie*, by reason of the houghe & ragged rockes reaching into the sea, from whiche the waues rebounding with vyolence, make a great noyse and roughnesse on the water, which roughnesse or reflowing, the Spaniardes call *Resacca*. In these daungers wretched *Vmbria* wresteled a while, but in short space, a waue of the sea almoste as hygge as a mountayne, reboundyng from the rockes, ouerwhelmed the boate, and deuoured the same with the men, euen in the sight of their felowes: So that of them all, only one escaped by reason he was expert in swimming. For getting holde of the corner of a rocke, and susteyning the rage of the sea vntyll the next day when it waxed cauline, and the shore was drye by the fall of the water, he escaped and resorted to his companie. But *Vmbria* with the other eleuen, were vterly caste awaye. The resydue of the companie, durst not committe them selues to the shyppe boates, but went alande with theyr byggantines. Where remayning a fewe dayes, and saylyng  
along

The enterpryse  
& deatch of *Petrus de Vmbria*

The daungerous place of  
*Scylla* in the  
sea of *Cicilie*.

along by the ryuer, they founde certayne byllages of the inhabitants, which they call *Mumu*. Here they began to builde a fortresse, and to sowe seedes after the manner of theyr countrey, in a certayne vale of fruiteful grounde, because in other places the region is barren. As these thyngs were thus doing in *Beragua*, one of theyr companie standing upon the top of a high rocke of especiall, and lyster his eyes towarde the West, began to crye, *Lynnen sayles, lynnen sayles*. And the neerer it drew towards hym, he perceiued it to be a shyp boate, commyng with a lytle sayle: yet receiued they it with muche reioycing, for it was the fyller boate of *Nicuesa* his Carauel, and of capacitie to cary only fyue men, and had nowe but thre in it, whiche had stolne it from *Nicuesa*, because he refused to geue credite to them that he had passed *Beragua*, and left it behinde him Eastwarde. For they seeing *Nicuesa* and his felowes to consume daylye by famine, thought that they would prooue fortune with that boate, yf theyr chaunce myght be to fynde *Beragua*, as in deede it was. Debating therefore with theyr felowes of these matters, they declared how *Nicuesa* erred and lost the Carauel by tempest, and that he was nowe wanderyng among the maryshes of vnknowen coastes, full of miserie and inextreme penurie of all thynges, hauing nowe lyued for the space of threescore and tenne dayes, only with herbes and rootes, & seldome with fruites of the countrey, contented to drynke water, and yet that oftentymes sayling, because he was instant to traually Westwarde by foote, supposyng by that meanes to come to *Beragua*. Colonus the first fynder of this mayne lande, had coasted along by this tracte, and named it *Gracia Dei*, but the inhabitants call it *Cerabaro*. Through this region, there runneth a riuer, whiche our men named *Sancti Matthei*, distant from the West syde of *Beragua*, about an hundred and thyrtye myles. Here I let passe the name of this riuer, and of manye other places by the names whiche the inhabitants vse, because our men are ignorant thereof. Thus *Lupus Olanus* the conductor of one of the shypes of *Nicuesa*, and nowe also vice Lieutenant in his steepe, after that he had receyued this information of the Haryners, sent thither a Brigandine vnder theyr guydyng. These Haryners therefore, whiche came in the fyller boate, founde *Nicuesa*, and brought hym to the

The miserable  
case of *Nicuesa*

The riuer of  
*S. Matthei*.

## The seconde Decade.

The riges  
counsell of  
Nicuesa.

place where *Olanus* lay, whom at his conning he cast in prison, and accused hym of treason, because he vsurped the aucthoritie of the *Lieutenanthyp*, and that for the desyre he had to beare rule and be in aucthoritie, he tooke no care of his errours: also that he behaued him selfe negligently, demaundayng furthermore of hym, what was the cause of his so long delay. Lykewyse he spake to al the vnder officers sharpsly, and with a troubled mind, and within fewe dayes after, commaunded them to trusse by theyr packes, and make them redy to depart. They desyred him to quyet hym selfe, and to forbeare them a whyle, vntyl they had reaped the coyne that they had sowne, whiche woulde shortly be rype: for all kynde of coyne waxeth rype there euery fourth moneth after it is sowne. But he utterly denyed to tarye anye whyle, but that he woulde forthwith depart from that vnfortunate lande, and plucked by by the rootes all that euer was brought into the gulse of *Beragua*, and commaunded them to direct theyr course towarde the East. After they had sayled about the space of sixteene myles, a certaine young man, whose name was *Gregorie*, a *Genues* bozne, and of a chyld brought by with *Colonus*, called to remembraunce that there was a haven not farre from thence: and to pprooue his sayinges true, he gaue his felowes these tokens, that is, that they shoulde fynde vpon the shore, an anker of a lost shyppe halfe couered with sande, and vnder a tree next vnto the haven a spryng of cleare water. They came to the lande, founde the anker and the spryng, and commended the wytte and memoire of the young man, that he onely among manye of the *Haryners* which had searched those coastes with *Colonus*, bore the thyng so well in mynde. This haven *Colonus* called *Portus Bellus*. Where as in this voyage for lacke of vptualles, they were sometymes enforced to goe alande, they were euyl entreated of thynhabitantes: by reason whercof, theyr strengthes were so weakened with hunger, that they were not able to keepe warre aga<sup>n</sup>st naked men, or scarcely to beare their harnesse on theyr backes: and therefore our men lost twentie of theyr companions, which were slayne with venemous arrowes. They consulted to leaue the one halfe of theyr felowes in the haven of *Portus Bellus*, & the other part *Nicuesa* toke with hym towarde the East, where about twentie and eyght myles from

Come waxeth  
rype euery  
fourth moneth

The commen-  
dation of a  
young man  
brought by  
with *Colonus*.  
*Portus Bellus*.

Weakenesse of  
hunger.

*Portus Bellus*, he intended to buylde a forresse harde by the sea  
 syde, vpon the poyn t or cape, whiche in tyme past *Colonus* named  
*Marmor*, but they were so feeble by reason of long hunger, that *Cape Mar-*  
 they strength serued them not to susteyne suche labour, yet he *mor.*  
 erected a lytle towre, able to resyst the fyrst assaulte of the inha-  
 bitauntes: this towre he called *Nomen Dei*. From the tyme that *Nomen Dei.*  
 he left *Beragua*, what in the iourney among the sandie playnes,  
 then also for hunger while he builded the towre, of the fewe whi-  
 che remainned alpye, he lost two hundred. And thus by litle and  
 lytle, the multitude of seuen hundred, fourescore, and fyue men,  
 was brought nowe to scarcelye one hundred. Whyle *Nicuesa*  
 lyued with these fewe miserable men, there arose a contention  
 among them of *Vraba*, as concernyng the Lieutenantshyppe:  
 for one *Vascus Nunnez*, by the iudgement of al men, trustyng  
 more to his strength then wit, styred by certayne light felowes  
 agaynst *Ancisus*, sayng that *Ancisus* had not the kyngs letters  
 patentes for that office, and that it was not sufficient that he  
 was aucthorised by *Fogeda*, and therefore forbode that he should  
 execute the office of the Lieutenantshyp, and wylled them to  
 choose certayne of theyr owne compayne, by whose counsaile  
 and aucthoritie they myght be gouerned. Thus being diuided  
 into factions, by reason that *Fogeda* theyr captayne came not a-  
 gayne, whom they supposed to be nowe dead of his venenous  
 wound, they contended whether it were best to substitute *Nicue-*  
*sa* in his place. The wysest sort, suche as were familer with *Ni-*  
*cuesa*, & could not beare the insolencie of *Vascus Nunnez*, thought  
 it good that *Nicuesa* shoulde be sought out throughout all those  
 coastes: for they had knowledge that he departed from *Beragua*,  
 because of the barrenesse of the ground, and that by the exam-  
 ple of *Ancisus*, and suche other as had made shypwracke, it were  
 possible that he myght wander in some secrete place, and that  
 they coulde not be quiet in theyr myndes, vntyl they knewe the  
 certayntie whether he with his felowes were alieue or dead. But  
*Vascus Nunnez*, fearyng lest at the comyng of *Nicuesa*, he  
 shoulde not be had in aucthoritie among his felowes, sayd they  
 were mad men to thynke that *Nicuesa* lyued, and although he  
 were alpye, yet that they had no neede of his helpe: for he  
 auouched that there was none of his felowes, that were not

785.  
100.



## The seconde Decade.

The nauigati-  
on of Roderi-  
cus Colmenar-  
is.

as meeete to rule as *Nicuesa*. Whyle they were thus reasonyng to and fro, one *Rodericus Colmenaris* arpyued in those coastes with two great shyppes, haupyng in them threescore frethe men, with great plentie of vyttualles and apparell. Of the nauigation of this *Colmenaris*, I intend to speake somewhat moze. He therfore departed from the hauen of *Hispaniola*, called *Beata* (where they prepare and furnyshe them selues whiche make any voyage into these landes) about the Ides of October, in the yeeere. 1510. and landed the ix. of Nouember in a region in the large prouince of *Paria*, founde by *Colonus* betwene the hauen *Carthago*, and the region of *Cubibachoa*. In this voyage, what by the roughnesse of the sea, and fiercenesse of the barbarians, he suffered many incommodities: for when his frethe water sayled, he sayled to the mouth of a certayne riuer which the inhabitantes cal *Gaira*, beyng apt to receiue shippes. This riuer had his course from the toppe of an exceedyng hygh mountayne couered with snowe, hygher then the wjiche, al the companions of this captayne *Rodericus* say, that they neuer sawe: And that by good reason, yf it were couered with snowe in that region, which is not past ten degrees distant from the *Equinoctial* lyne. As they began to draw water out of theyr shyp boate, a certayne kyng made towarde them, apparelled with vestures of gossampine cotton, haupyng twentie noble men in his company apparelled also: which thyng seemed straunge to our men, and not seene befoze in those parties. The kynges apparell hong loose from his shoulders to his elbowes, and from the gyrdle downewarde, it was much lyke a womans kytte, reaching euen to his heeles. As he drew neere towarde our men, he seemed frendly to admonysh them to take none of the water of that ryuer, affyrmyng it to be vnwholsome for men, and shewed them that not farre from thence, there was a ryuer, of good water. They came to the ryuer, and endeuouryng to come neere the shpre, they were driuen backe by tempest. Also the burbuling of the sand, declared the sea to be but shalow there. They were therfore enforced to returne to the fyrste ryuer where they myght safely cast anker. This kyng layde wayte for our men: for as they were spillyng theyr barrellles, he set on them with about seuen hundred men (as our men iudged) armed after theyr manner, although they were naked:

for

An exceedyng  
hygh moun-  
taine couered  
with snowe.

Apparelled  
men.

for only the kyng and his noble men were apparelled. They tooke away the shypboate, and broke it in manner to chips: so fiercely assaylyng our men with theyr venemous arrowes, that they slue of them fourtie and seuen, before they coude couer them selues with their targets. For that poyson is of such force, that albeit the woundes were not great, yet they dyed therof immediately, for they yet knewe no remedie agaynst this kynde of poyson, as they after learned of the inhabitants of Hispaniola: for this Ilande byngeth forth an hearbe which quencheeth and mortifieth the violent poyson of the hearbe, wherwith theyr arrowes are infected, so that it be ministred in tyme. Yet of our compaignie whiche went for water, seuen escaped that conflict, and hydde them selues in a hollowe tree, lurkyng there vntyll nyght, yet escaped they not the handes of theyr enemies: for the shyppe departed from thence in the nyght season, and left them there, supposyng that they had ben slayne. Thus by manye such perils and daungers (which I lyghly ouerpasse, because I wyll not be tedious to your holynesse) he arpued at the length at the hauen of *Vraba*, and cast anker at the East syde thereof, from whence not long before, our men departed to the West syde, by reason of the barrennesse of that soyle. When he had continued a whyle in the hauen, and sawe no man styrre, marueled at the silence of the places (for he supposed there to haue found his felowes) he could not coniecture what this should meane: and thereupon began to suspect that eyther they were dead, or that they had changed the place of theyr habitation. To knowe the certayntie hereof, he commaunded all the great ordinaunce, and other small gunnes whiche he had in his shippes, to be charged, and fyers to be made in the night vpon the toppes of the rockes. Thus the fyers beyng kyndled, he commaunded all the gunnes to be shot of at one instant, by the horrible noyse whereof, the gulf of *Vraba* was shaken, although it were. xliii. myles distant, for so hode is the gulf. This noyse was heard of theyr felowes in *Dariena*, and they answered them agayne with mutual fyers. Wherefore, by the folowyng of these fyers, Colmenaris brought his shippes to the West syde. Here those wretched and miserable men of *Dariena*, whiche nowe through famine and feblenesse, helde theyr weerie soules in theyr teeth,

Spaniards  
slayne with  
venemous  
arrowes.

A remedie  
agaynst  
venemous  
arrowes.

The hauen  
of  
*Vraba*.

## The seconde Decade.

redy to depart from theyr bodyes, by reason of the calamities whiche besel unto them after *Ancisus* shipwacke, lising by their handes to heauen, with the teares running downe theyr cheekes both for ioy and sorow, embraced *Rodericus* and his felowes with such kinde of reioyctyng, as theyr present necessitie seemed to requyre: for whereas they were before his commyng, without vittuals, and almost naked, he brought them abundance of meate, drinke, and apparel. It resteth now (most holy father) to declare what came of the dissention among them of *Vraba*, as concerning the gouernance after the losse of theyr captaynes.

### The thirde booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



**A**Ll the cheefe officers in *Beragua*, and suche as were most politike in counsaile, determined that *Nicuesa* should be sought out, yf by any meanes he coulde be founde. Wherupon they tooke from *Ancisus* the gouernour, refusing the commyng of *Nicuesa*, a *Bygandine* whiche he made of his owne charges: and agreed, agaynst both the wyl of *Ancisus*, and the maister of fence *Vaschus Nunnez*, that *Nicuesa* should be sought forth to take away the stryfe as touching the gouernment. They elected therefore *Colmenaris* (of whom we spake before) to take this matter in hande, willing him to make diligent searche for *Nicuesa* in those coastes where they supposed he erred: for they hearde that he had forsaken *Beragua*, the region of an vnfructefull ground. They gaue him therfore commaundement to bring *Nicuesa* with hym, and further to declare vnto him that he should do right good seruice to come thither, in takyng away the occasion of theyr seditions. *Colmenaris* tooke the thyng vpon hym the more gladly, because *Nicuesa* was his very frende, supposyng his commyng with vittualles should be no lesse thankfull to *Nicuesa* and his company, then it was to them of *Vraba*. Furnyshyng therefore one of his owne shippes whiche he brought with hym, and also the *Bygandine* taken from *Ancisus*, he frapghed



the same with part of the vittuals and other necessities which he brought with hym before from *Hispaniola* to *Vraba*. Thus coursyng along by al the coastes and gulfes neere thereabout, at the length, at the poynt called *Marmor*, he founde *Nicuesa*, of al luyng men most infortunate, in manner dyled by with extreme hunger, fylthy and horrible to beholde, with only threescore men in his company, left alieue of seuen hundred. They all seemed to him so miserable, that he no lesse lamented theyr case, then yf he had found them dead. But *Colmenaris* comforted his frend *Nicuesa*, and embracyng hym with teares and cheareful words, releued his spirites, and further encouraged hym with great hope of better fortune, declaring also that his comynge was looked for, and greatlye despyred of all the good men of *Vraba*, for that they hoped that by his auctoritie, theyr discorde and contention shoulde be finished. *Nicuesa* thanked his frende *Colmenaris* after suche sorte as his calamitie required. Thus they tooke shyp together, and sailed directly to *Vraba*. But so variable and unconstant is the nature of man, that he soone groweth out of vse, becommeth insolent and vnmindfull of benefites after to muche felicitie: for *Nicuesa* after thus many teares and weepynge, after diuers bewaplynges of his infortunate destenye, after so many thankesgeyng, yea after that he had fallen downe to the ground, and kyssed the fete of *Colmenaris* his sauitour, he began to quarel with hym before he came yet at *Vraba*, reproving hym & them all for the alteration of the state of thynges in *Vraba*, and for the gathering of golde, affirmyng that none of them ought to haue layde hande of anye golde without the aduice of hym or *Fogeda* his companyon. When these sayinges and suche lyke, came to the eares of them of *Vraba*, they so styred by the myndes of *Ancisus* Lieutenant for *Fogeda*, and also of *Vaschus Nunnez* of the contrary part, agaynst *Nicuesa*, that shortly after his aryual with his threescore men, they commaunded hym with the armyng to depart from thence: but this pleased not the better sort. Yet fearyng lest tumult shoulde be among the people, whom *Vaschus Nunnez* had styred to factions, the best part was fayne to geue place to y<sup>e</sup> greatest. This wretched man therfore *Nicuesa* thus downed in miseries, was thrust into the *Brigandine* whiche he had selfe brought, and with him only seuentene men, of

*Nicuesa* is founde in a miserable case.

Insolencie after muche felicitie.



## The seconde Decade.

his threescore whiche remainned alyue. He tooke shippe in the Calendes of Marche, in the yeere. 1511. intendyng to goe to Hispaniola to complayne of the rashnesse of *Vaschus Nunnez*, and of the violence done to hym by *Antisus*: But he entred into the Brigandine in an vnfortunate houre, for he was neuer seene after. They suppose that the Brigandine was drowned with al the men therein. And thus unhappie *Nicuesa* fallng headlong out of one misery into another, ended his life more miserably then he lyued. *Nicuesa* being thus bylely reiected, and theyr byttuals consumed which *Colmenaris* brought them, falling in maner mad for hunger, they were enforced lyke rauening woodues seekyng theyr pray, to inuade suche as dwelt about theyr confynes. *Vaschus Nunnez* therfore, their new captaine of their owne election, assemblyng togeather a hundred and thirtie men, and settynge them in order of battayle after his swoordplayers fashon, pushed vp with pryde, placed his souldiers as pleased hym, in the forewarde and rerewarde, and some, as partizens, about his owne person. Thus assosiatyng with hym *Colmenaris*, he went to spoyle the kynges whiche were borderers therabout, and came fyrst to a region about that coast called *Coiba* (whereof we made mention befoze) imperiously and with cruell countenance commaundyng the kyng of the region, whose name was *Careta* (of whom they were neuer troubled as often as they passed by his dominions) to geue them byttualles. But *Careta* denyed that he coulde geue them any at that tyme, alleagyng that he had oftentimes ayded the Christians as they passed by those coastes, by reason whereof, his store was now consumed: also that by the meanes of the continuall warre whiche he kept euer from his chyldeys age with a kyng whose name was *Poncha*, bordering vpon his dominion, he and his familie were in great scarcenesse of al thynges. But *Vaschus* woulde admyt none of these excuses, and thereupon tooke *Careta* prisoner, spoiled his byllage, and brought him bounde with his two wyues and chyldren, and all his familie to *Dariena*. With this kyng *Careta*, they found three of the felowes of *Nicuesa*, the whiche whē *Nicuesa* passed by those coastes to seeke *Beragua*, fearing punishment for theyr euil desertes, stole away from the shippes lying at anker: And when the naue departed, committed them selues to the mercie of *Careta*.

The death of  
*Nicuesa*.

Famine enfor-  
seth them to fall  
to bypplyng.  
*Careta* kyng  
of *Coiba*.

Kyng *Careta*  
is taken and  
spoiled.

who

Who enterteyned them very friendly. They had nowe ben there eightene monethes, and were therefore as vterly naked as the people of the countrey. Duryng this tyme, the meate of thinhabitanes seemed vnto them delicate dishes & princely fare, especially because they enioyed the same without any stryfe for mine and thynne, whiche two thynnges moouue and enforce men to suche harde shyftes and miseries, that in lpyng they seeme not to lpye. Yet desyred they to retorne to theyr olde cares, of suche force is education and naturall affection towarde them with whom we haue ben brought vp. The vptuals which *Vaschus* brought from the byllage of *Careta*, to his felowes left in *Dariena*, was rather somewhat to asswage theyr present hunger, then vterly to take away theyr necessitie. But as touchyng *Ancifus*, beyng Lieutenant for *Fogeda*, whether it were before these thynngs, or after, I knowe not: but this I am sure of, that after the reiectyng of *Nicuesa*, many occasions were sought against *Ancifus* by *Vaschus* and his factionaries. Howsoever it was, *Ancifus* was taken, and cast in pryson, and his goodes confiscate: the cause hereof was (as *Vaschus* alleaged) that *Ancifus* had his commission of the Lieutenantshyp of *Fogeda* only, whom they said to be now dead, and not of the kyng, sayyng that he woulde not obey anye man that was not put in off ce by the kyng him selfe by his letters patentes. Yet at the request of the grauest sort, he was somewhat pacified, and dealt more gentelly with hym, haupyng some compassion on his calamities, and thereupon commaunded him to be loosed. *Ancifus* beyng at libertie, tooke shyppe to depart from thence to *Hispaniola*: but before he had hoysed vp his sayle, al the wisest sort resorted to him, humblye desyryng hym to retorne agayne, promysyng that they woulde doo their diligence, that *Vaschus* being reconciled, he myght be restored to his full auctoritie of the Lieutenantshyp: but *Ancifus* refused to consent to theyr request, and so departed. Yet some there were that murmured that God and his angels shewed this reuenge vpon *Ancifus*, because *Nicuesa* was reiected through his counsaile. Howe so euer it be, the searchers of the newe landes fall headlong into ruine by theyr owne follie, consumyng them selues with ciuile discorde, not weighing so great a matter, nor employing theyr best endeouour about the same, as the woorthynesse

Thinne & thynne  
the seedes of all  
unpleasur.

*Ancifus*, Lieutenant  
for *Fogeda*, is cast in  
pryson.

*Ancifus* taketh  
his voyage to  
*Hispaniola*.

The reuenge  
of God.

The inconueniencies  
of discorde.

nelle of the thyng requireth. In this meane tyme, they determined all with one agreement, to sende messengers into *Hispaniola* to the yong Admirall and viceroy, sonne and heyre to *Christophorus Colonus* the fynder of these landes; and to the other gouernours of the *Islande* (from whom the newe landes receiue theyr ayde and lawes) to signifie vnto them what state they stood in, and in what necessitie they liued, also what they had founde, and in what hope they wer of greater thyngs, if they were furnished with plentie of byttualles and other necessities. For this purpose they elected, at the assignement of *Vaschas*, one *Valdina*, being one of his faction, and instructed by hym agaynst *Ancisus*, and to be assistant with hym, they appoynted one *Zamudius* a *Cantabrian*, so that commaundement was geuen to *Valdina* to retorne from *Hispaniola* with vittuals, & *Zamudius* was appoynted to take his voyage into *Spayne* to the kyng. They toke shyp both togeather with *Ancisus*, hauyng in mind to certifie the king howe things were handled there, much otherwise then *Zamudius* inforimation. I mee selfe spake with both *Ancisus* & *Zamudius* at their comming to the court. Whyle they were occupied about these matters, those wretched men of *Dariena* loosed *Careta* the king of *Coiba*, vpon condition that he shoulde ayde them in their warres agaynst his enemie and theys, kyng *Poncha*, bordering vpon his dominions. *Careta* made a league with them, promising that as they passed by his kingdome, he woulde geue them all things necessarie, & meete them with an armie of men, to goe forward with them to the battaile against *Poncha*. Theyr weapons are neyther bowes nor venomed arrowes, as we layde thinhabitauntes to haue, whiche dwel eastward beyonde the gulf. They fyght therefore at hande with long swordes (whiche they call *Macanas*) made of wood, because they haue no Iron. They vse also long staues lyke iauelyns, hardened at the endes with fyre, or typt with bone, also certayne spynges and darter. Thus after the league made with *Careta*, both he and our men had certayne dayes appoynted them to tyll theyr grounde and sowe theyr seedes. This done, by the ayde of *Careta*, and by his conduction, they marched towarde the pallace of *Poncha*, who fled at theyr comming. They spoyled his byllage, and mitigated theyr hunger with such byttuals as they founde there: yet coulde they not

King Poncha.

Swordes of wood.

King Careta conspireth with the Spaniards agaynst kyng Poncha.



not helpe they? felowes therewith, by reason of the farre distance of the place, although they had great plentie: for the byllage of Poncha was more then a hundred myles distant from Dariena, whereas was also none other remedie, but that the same shoulde haue ben carped on mens backes to the sea syde; beyng farre of, where they left they? shippes in the whiche they came to the byllage of Careta. Here they founde certayne poundes weight of gold, grauen & wrought into sundry ouches. After the sackynge of this byllage, they resorted toward the ships, intending to leaue the kynges of the inlande vntouched at this tyme, and to inuade only them which dwelt by the sea coastes. Not farre from Coiba, in the same tracte, there is a region named Comogra, and the king thereof called Comogrus, after the same name. To this kyng they came fyrst next after the subuersion of Poncha, and founde his pallace situate in a fruitfull playne of .xii. leagues in breadth, at the rootes of the further syde of y next mountaynes. Comogrus had in his courte a certayne noble man of neere consanguinitie to kyng Careta, whiche had fled to Comogrus by reason of certayne dissentions which was betwene Careta & hym, these noble men, they cal Iura. This Iura therefore of Coiba, met our men by the way, and conciled Comogrus to them, because he was wel known to our men, from the tyme that Nicuesa passed fyrst by those coastes. Our men therfore went quietly to the pallace of Comogrus, beyng distant from Dariena thirtie leagues by a plaine way about the mountaynes. This kyng Comogrus had seuen sonnes, yong men, of comely fowme and stature, which he had by sundry wyues. His pallace was framed of postes or proppes made of trees fastened together after a strange sort, and of so strong building, that it is of no lesse strength then walles of stone. They whiche measured the length of the floore thereof, founde it to be a hundred and fiftie paces, and in breadth, fourescore foote; beyng roofed and paved with marueylous arte. They founde his storehouse furnished with abundance of delicate vittuals, after the manner of they? countrey, and his wyne seller replenished with great vesselles of earth and also of wood, fylled with their kinde of wyne and syder, for they haue no grapes: but lyke as they make they? bread of those three kindes of rootes called *Lucca*, *Agis*, and *Mazium* (whereof we spake in the fyrst Decade) so

The region of Comogra, distant from Dariena. xxx. leagues.

Kyng Comogrus.

The kynges pallace.

Wyne & syder.

make



## The seconde Decade.

make they theyr wyne of the frutes of Date trees, and Syder of other frutes and seedes, as do the Almaynes, Fleminges, Englyshe men, & our Spanyardes which inhabite the mountaynes, as the *Vascons* and *Asturians*: lykwylse in the mountaynes of the Alpes, the *Noricians*, *Swenians*, and *Heluecians*, make certayne drynkes of barley, wheate, hoppes, and apples. They say also that with *Comogrus* they drunke wines of sundry tastes, both whyte and blacke. But nowe you shal heare of a thyng more monstrous to behold. Entyrng therfore into the inner partes of the pallasce, they were brought into a chamber hangd about with the carkasses of men, tyed with ropes of gossampine cotton. Bepng demaunded what they meant by that superstition, they answered that those were the carkasses of the father, graundfather, & great graundfather, with other the auncetours of theyr kyng *Comogrus*, declaryng that they had the same in great reuerence, and that they tooke it for a godly thyng to honour them religiously, and therfore apparelled euery of the same sumptuously with gold and precious stones, accordyng vnto theyr estate. After this sorte dyd the antiquitie honour theyr *Penates*, whiche they thought had the gouernance of theyr lyues. Howe they dype these carkasses vpon certayne instrumentes made of wood, lyke vnto hurdells, with a soft fyre vnder the same, so that only the skinne remayneth to hold the bones togeather, we haue described in the former Decade. Of *Comogrus* his seuen sonnes, the eldest had an excellent natural wyt. He therfore thought it good to flatter and please this wanderyng kinde of men (our men I meane) liuing only by thiftes and spyle, lest being offended, and seeking occasions against him & his familie, they should handle hym as they dyd other which sought no meanes how to gratifie them: Therfore, he gaue *Vaschus* and *Colmenaris* foure thousande ounces of golde artificially wrought, and also fiftie slaues, whiche he had taken in the warres: for suche, eyther they sell for exchaunge of other thynges, or otherwylse vse them as them listeth, for they haue not the vse of money. This golde with as muche more which they had in another place, our men weighed in the porche of *Comogrus* his palace, to separate the fift parte thereof, whiche portyon is due to the kynges *Exchequer*: for it is decreed, that the fyft part of both golde, pearles, and precious

Blaske wine.

The carkasses  
of men dyped.

The distributis  
on of golde.

precious stones, shoulde be assigned to the kynges treasurers, and the residue to be diuided among them selues by composition. Here as bhabbling and contention arose among our men about the diuidyng of golde, this eldest sonne of kyng Comogrus beyng present, whom we praysed for his wysedome, commyng somewhat with an angrye countenance towarde hym whiche helde the ballaunces, he stroke them with his spste, and scattered all the golde that was therein about the porche, sharpe ly rebukyng them with woordes in this effecte. What is the matter, you Christian men, that you so greatly esteeme so lytle portion of golde more then your owne quietnesse, whiche neuer thelesse you entende to deface from these sayre ouches, and to melt the same into a rude masse. If your hunger of golde be so insatiable, that onely for the desyre you haue thereto, you disquiete so manye nations, and you your selues also susteyne so many calamities and incommodities, lyuyng lyke banished men out of your owne countrey, I wyll shewe you a region flowing with golde, where you may satisfie your rauenyng appetites: But you must attempt the thing with a greater power, for it standeth you in hand by force of armes to ouercome kings of great puissaunce, and rigorous defendours of theyr dominions. For helyde other, the great kyng Tumanama wyll come forth agaynst you, whose kyngdome is most riche with golde, and distant from hence only syre lunnys, that is, syre dayes: for they number the dayes by the sunne. Furthermoze, or euer you can come thicher, you muste passe ouer the mountaynes inhabited of the cruell Canibales, a fierce kynde of men, deuourers of mans fleshe, lyuyng without lawes, wanderyng, and without Empire: for they also beyng desyrous of golde, haue subdued them vnder theyr dominion, whiche before inhabited the golde mynes of the mountaynes, and vse them lyke bondemen, byng theyr labour in dyggyng and woorkyng their golde in plates and sundry images, lyke vnto these whiche you see here: for we do no more esteeme rude golde vnwrought, then we do cloddes of earth, before it be fourmed by the hande of the woorkeman to the similitude epyther of some vessel necessarye for our vse, or some ouch beautiful to be woyn. These thynges doo we receyue of them for exchaunge of other of

Young Comogrus his oration.

The hunger of golde.

A region flowing with golde.

Kyng Tumanama.

Canibales.

The golde mines of the mountaynes.

Vnwrought golde not esteemed.

our

## The seconde decade.

our thynges, as of prysoners taken in warre, whiche they buye to eate, or for theetes and other thynges parteynyng to the furniture of houtholde, suche as they lacke whiche inhabite the mountaynes, and especially for vittualles, whereof they stande in great neede, by reason of the barrennes of the mountaynes. This tourney therefore must be made open by force of men, and when you are passyng ouer these mountaynes (poyntyng with his finger towarde the south mountaynes) you shal see another sea, where they sayle with shippes as bygge as yours (meanyng the Carauels) byng both sayles and ores as you doo, although the men be naked as we are: all the way that the water runneth from the mountaynes, and al that syde lying towarde the South, byngeth forth golde abundantly. As he sayd these woordes, he poynted to the vesselles in whiche they vse to serue theyr meate, affyrmyng that kyng *Tumanama*, and all the other kyngs beyond the mountaynes, had such & al other theyr household stuffe of golde, and that there was no lesse plentie of gold among those people of the South, then of Iron with vs: for he knewe by relation of our men, whereof our swordes and other weapons were made. Our captaynes marueplyng at the oration of the naked young man (for they had for interpreters those thre men whiche had ben before a yere and a halfe conuerlaunt in the court of kyng *Careta*) pondered in theyr mindes, and earnestly consydered his sayinges, so that his rashnesse in scatteryng the golde out of the ballaunces, they turned to myrth and brbanitie, commendyng his dooyng and sayng therein. Then they asked hym frendly, vpon what certaine knowledge he spake those thynges, or what he thought best herein to be done, yf they should bring a greater supply of men? To this young *Comogrus*, stayng a whyle with him selfe, as it were an Oratour preparing hym selfe to speake of some graue matter, and disposing his body to a iesture meete to perswade, spake thus in his mother tongue, Geue eare vnto me, O you Christians. Albeit that the greedie hunger of golde hath not yet vexed vs naked men, yet do we destroy one another by reason of ambition and desyre to rule. Hereof spryngeth mortall hatred among vs, and hereof cometh our destruction. Our predecessours kept warres, and so dyd *Comogrus* my father, with princes beyng borderers about him.

An

Abundance of  
golde.

Houtholde  
stuffe of golde.

Naked peo-  
ple tormented  
with ambition.

In the whiche warres, as we haue ouercome, so haue we ben ouercome, as doth appeare by the number of bondmen among vs, which we toke by the ouerthrowe of our enimies, of the whiche I haue geuen you lystie. Lpke wylse at another tyme, our aduersaries hauping the bypper hande agaynst vs, ledde alwaye many of vs captiue, for suche is the chaunce of warre. Also, among our familiers (whereof a great number haue ben captiues with them) beholde here is one whiche of long time led a payneful lyfe in bondage vnder the yoke of that kyng beyonde the mountaynes, in whose kyngdome is such abundance of gold. Of hym, and suche other innumerable, and lpkewylse by the resort of free men on theyr side commyng to vs, and agayne of our men resoptyng to them by safe conduct, these thynges haue ben euer as well knowen vnto vs, as our owne possessions: but that you may be the better assured hereof, and be out of all suspition that you shall not be deceiued, make me the guyde of this voyage, byndyng me fast, and keepyng me in safe custodie to be hanged on the next tree, yf you fynde my sayinges in anye poynt vnttrue. Followe my counsaile therefore, and sende for a thousande Christian men apt for the warres, by whose power we may, with also the men of warre of Comogrus my father, armed after our manner, inuade the dominions of our enimies: where both you may be satisfied with golde, and we for our conductyng and apdyng you in this enterpryse, shall thinke our selues abundantly rewarded, in that you shal helpe to deliuer vs from the iniuries and perpetuall feare of our enimies. After these woozdes, this prudent young Comogrus helde his peace, and our men mooued with great hope and hunger of golde, began agayne to swalowe downe theyr spytelle.

so beherment  
perswasion,

so token of  
hunger.

The fourth booke of the seconde Decade, of  
the supposed continent.



After that they had tarped here a fewte daves, and baptised Comogrus, with all his familie, and named hym by the name of Charles, after the kyng of Spayne, they returned to theyr sclowes in Dariena, leauyng with hym the hope of the thousande.

Kyng Comogrus is baptised with his familie,



## The seconde Decade.

lande souldiers, whiche his some required to passe ouer those mountaynes towards the South sea. Thus enteryng into the byllage whiche they had chosen to inhabite, they had knowledge that *Valdinia* was returned within sixe monethes after his departure, but with no great plentie of vyttualles, because he brought but a smal shyppe: yet with hope that shortly after, there shoulde be sent them abundance of vyttualles, and a newe supplie of men. For young *Colonus* the Admiral, and viceroy of *Hispaniola*, and the other gouernours of the Ilande, acknowledged that hitherto they had no respect to them of *Darien*, because they supposed that *Ancisus* the Lieutenant had safely arryued there with his shyppe laden with vyttualles: wylling them from henceforth to be of good cheare, and that they shoulde lacke nothing hereafter, but that at this present tyme they had no bigger ship wherby they myght send them greater plentie of necessaries by *Valdinia*. The vyttuals therfore which he brought, serued rather somewhat to mitigate theyr present necessitie, then to satisfie theyr lacke. Wherefore, within a fewe dayes after *Valdinia* his returne, they fel agayne into lyke scarcenesse: especially forasmuche as a great storme and tempest whiche came from the hygh mountaynes, with horrible thunder and lychtning in the moneth of Nouember, brought with it suche a floodde, that it partly carped away, and partly drowned al the corne and seedes which they had sowed in the moneth of September, in a fruitfull grounde before they went to kyng *Comogrus*. The seedes whiche they of *Hispaniola* call *Maizium*, and they of *Vraba* call *Hobba*, whereof they make theyr bread, whiche also we sayde to be rypp thysle euery yeere, because those regions are not bytten with the sharpenesse of wynter by reason of theyr neerenesse to the Equinoctiall lyne. It is also agreeable to the principles of natural philosophie, that this bread made of *Maizius* or *Hobba*, shoulde be more wholsome for the inhabitants of those countreys then bread made of wheate, by reason that it is of easier digestion: for whereas colde is wantyng, the natural heate is not dyuen from the outwarde partes into the inwarde partes and precordials, whereby digestion is muche strengthened. Being therefore thus frustrate of the increase of theyr seedes, and the kynges neere about them, spoyled of both vyttualles

and

Horrible thunder and lychtning in the moneth of Nouember.

and golde, they were enforced to seeke theyr meate further of, and therewith to signyfie to the gouernours of *Hispaniola* with what great necessitie they were oppressed, and what they had learned of *Comogrus* as concernyng the Regions towarde the South, willyng them in consideration thereof, to aduertise the kyng to send them a thousande souldiers, by whose helpe they myght by force make waye through the mountaynes, diuidyng the sea on both sydes, if they coulde not byng the same to passe quietly. The same *Valdiuia* was also sent on this message, caryng with hym to the kynges treasurers (hauing theyr office of receipt in *Hispaniola*) three hundred poundes weyght of golde, after eyght ounces to the pounce, for the fyft portion due to the kynges exchequer. This pound of eight ounces, the Spaniardes call *Marcha*, whiche in weight amounteth to fyfthe peeces of golde called *Castellani*, but the Castilians call a pounce *Pesum*. We conclude therefore, that the summe hereof, was .xv. thousand of those peeces of gold called *Castellani*. And thus is it apparent by this accompt, that they receiued of the barbarous kinges, a thousande and fyue hundred poundes, of eyght ounces to the pounce: all the whiche they founde readye wrought in sundrye kyndes of ouches, as cheynes, braselets, tablets, and plates, both to hang before theyr brestes, and also at theyr eares, and nosegayles. *Valdiuia* therfore tooke shypping in the same Carauell in the which he came last, and returned also before the thyrde day of the Ides of January, in the yeere of Christe M. D. xxi. What chaunced to hym in this voyage, we wyll declare in place comenient. But let vs now retorne to them whiche remayned in *Vraba*. After the dismissyng of *Valdiuia*, beyng pricked forward with outragious hunger, they determined to searche the inner partes of that gulfe in sundry places. The extream angle or poynt of the same gulfe is distant from the enterance thereof, about fourescore myles. This angle or corner, the Spaniardes call *Culata*. *Vaschus* hym selfe came to this poynt with a hundred men, coasting along by the gulfe with one byggandine and certayne of the boates of those regions, whiche the Arabians call *Vru*, lyke vnto them whiche thynhabitauntes of *Hispaniola* call *Canoas*. From this poynt, there falleth a ryuer from the East into the gulfe, ten times bigger then the ryuer of *Dariena*, which also

## The seconde Decade.

so falleth into the same. Saylyng along by the ryuer about the space of thyrty myles (for they cal it niene leagues) and somewhat enclynyng towarde the ryght hande Southwarde, they founde certayne byllages of thynhabitauntes, the kyng whereof was called *Dabaiba*. Our men also were certified befoze, that *Cemacchus* the kyng of *Dariena*, whom they put to flyght in the battayle, fledde to this *Dabaiba*, but at the comyng of our men, *Dabaiba* also fledde. It is thought that he was aduynsyshed by *Cemacchus*, that he shoulde not abyde the byunte of our men. He folowed his counsayle, forsooke his villages, and left all thynges desolate: yet our men founde heapes of bowes and arrowes, also muche houtholde stuffe, and many fshyng boates. But those maryshe groundes were neyther apt for sowyng of seedes, or plantyng of trees, by reason whereof, they founde there fewe fuche thynges as they despyed, that is, plentie of byttualles: for the inhabitauntes of this region haue no bread, but such as they geat in other countreys nzare about them by exchange, for their fsh, only to serue theyr owne necessitie: yet founde they in the houses of those whiche fledde, golde wrought and grauen, amountyng to the summe of seuen thousande of those peeces, whiche we sayde to be cailed *Castellani*: also certayne Canoas, of the whiche they brought away two with them, and great plentie of theyr houthold stuffe, with certayne bundels of bowes & arrowes. They say, that from the maryshes of that riuer, there come certayne bates in the nyght season, as bygge as turtle doues, inuadyng men, and bytyng them with a deadly wounde, as some of them testifie whiche haue ben bytten of the same. I mee selfe communing with *Ancifus* the Lieuetenant whom they reiected, and among other thynges askyng hym of the venemous byting of these bates, he tolde me that he hym selfe was bytten by one of them on the heele, his foote lyng vncovered in the nyght, by reason of the heate in sommer season, but that it hurte hym no more, then if he had ben bitten by any other beast not venemous. Other say, that the byting of some of them is venemous: yet that the same is healed incontynently, yf it be washed with water of the sea. *Ancifus* tolde me also, that the venemous woundes made by the *Canibales* arrowes infected with popson, are healed by washing with water of the sea, and also by cauterisying

Maryshe  
grounde.

*Ancifus* bitten  
of a Batte.

with

with whot irons, and that he had experience thereof in the regi-  
on of *Caribana*, where many of his men were so wounded. They  
departed therefore from the poynt of the gulfe of *Vraba*, not wel  
contented, because they were not laden with vittualles. In this  
they returne, there arose so great a tempest in that wyde gulfe,  
that they were enforced to cast into the sea al the houthold stuffe, A tempest.  
whiche they tooke from the poore wretches whiche liued only by  
fyslyng. The sea also swallowed by the two boates that they  
tooke from them, wherewith the men were lykewys drowned.  
The same tyme that *Vasbus Nunnez* attempted to searche the  
poynt of the gulfe towarde the south, euen then by agreement,  
dyd *Rodericus Colmenaris* take his voyage toward y<sup>e</sup> mountaines  
by the east, with threescore men, by the riuer of the other gulfe.  
About fourtie myles distant from the mouth of the other ryuer,  
(for they cal it twelue leagues) he founde certayne byllages situ-  
ate vpon the bankes of the ryuer, whose *Cbiui* (that is) kyng, they  
cal *Turui*. With this kyng dyd *Colmenaris* yet remayne, when  
*Vasbus* after his returne to *Dariena*, saylyng by the same ryuer,  
came to hym. Here refreshyng they whole companye with the  
vittuals of this *Turui*, they departed from thence together. D<sup>r</sup> King Turui.  
After fourtie myles from hence, the ryuer encompassed an Island  
inhabited with fischermen. In this, because they sawe great plen-  
tie of trees whiche beare *Cassia fistula*, they named the Islande  
*Cannafistula*. They found in it .lx. villages of ten cotages apiece. The Islande of  
Cannafistula.  
On the ryght syde of the Islande there runneth another riuer,  
whose chanel is of deapth sufficient to beare Brigandines. This  
riuer they called *Ruum Nigrum*, fro the mouth wherof, about .xv.  
miles distant, they found a towne of five .C. houses seuered, whose  
*Chebi* (that is) kyng, was called *Abenamachei*. They al forooke  
they houses, as soone as they heard of our mens commyng: but  
when they saw that our men pursued them, they turned againe, &  
ran vpon them with desperate mindes, as men dyuen from their  
owne possessions. They weapons are swords of wood, & long  
staues lyke sauelins, hardened at the ende with fyre: but they ble  
neither bowes nor arrowes, nor any other of the inhabitants  
of the West syde of the gulfe. The poore naked wretches were  
easily dyuen to flyght with our weapons. As our men fo-  
llowed them in the chafe, they tooke the kyng *Abenamachei*, and



## The seconde Decade.

certaine of his noble men. A common souldier of ours, whom the kyng had wounded, commyng to hym when he was taken, cut of his arme at one stroke with his swoorde: but this was done vnawares to the captaynes. The number of the Chyristian men whiche were here, was about an hundred and fytie: the one halfe whereof the captaynes left here, and they with the residue rowed by the riuer agayne, with twelue of the boates of those regions, whiche they cal *Vru*, as they of *Hispaniola* cal them *Canoas* as we haue sayde. From the ryuer of *Riuus Niger*, and the Islande of *Cannafistula*, for the space of threescore and ten myles, leauyng both on the right hande and on the left, many riuers falling into it bygger then it selfe, they entred into one, by the conducting of one of the naked inhabitauntes, beyng appoynted a guyde for that purpose. Vpon the banke of this ryuer next vnto the mouth of the same, there was a kyng called *Abibeiba*, who because the region was full of maryshe, had his pallace buylded in the toppe of a hygh tree, a new kind of building, and seldome seene: but that lande byngeth forth trees of such exceeding height, that among theyr branches a man may frame large houses: as we reade the lyke in diuers auctours, howe in many regions where the Ocean sea riseth and ouerfloweth the lande, the people were accustomed to flee to the hygh trees, and after the fall of the water, to take the fysh left on the lande. This manner of buyldyng, is to lay beames crosse ouer the branches of the trees, fast bounde togeather, and thereupon to rayse theyr frame, strongly made agaynst wynde and weather. Our men suppose that they builde theyr houses in trees, by reason of the great floods and ouerflowyng of riuers, whiche oftentymes chaunce in those regions. These trees are of suche heygth, that the strength of no mans arme, is able to hurle a stone to the houses buylded therein. And therefore do I geue the better credit to *Plinie*, and other auctours, whiche write that the trees in some places in *India* are so high by reason of the fruitfulness of y<sup>e</sup> ground, abundance of water, and heate of the region, that no man is able to shoote ouer them with an arrowe: and by iudgement of all men, it is thought that there is no fruitfuller grounde vnder the sunne, then this is - whereof we nowe entreate. Our men measurynge manye of these trees, founde them to be of

suche

King Abibeiba  
dwelleth in  
a tree.

The ryng of  
the Ocean sea.

Trees of mar-  
ueilous height.

*Plinie*.

Fruitfull  
grounde.

suche bignes, that seuen men, yea sometimes eight, holdyng hande in hande with theyr armes stretched forth, were scarcely able to fathame them about: yet haue they theyr cellers in the grounde, well replenished with such wyne wherof we haue spoken before. For albeit that the vehemencie of the winde is not of power to cast downe those houses, or to breake the branches of the trees, yet are they tossed therewith, and swaye somewhat from syde to syde, by reason whercof, the wyne shoulde be muche troubled with moouing. All other necessarpe thinges, they haue with them in the trees. When the kyng or any other of the noble men, dyne or suppe in these trees, theyr wyues are brought them from the cellers by theyr seruantes, whiche by meanes of exercise, are accustomed with no lesse celeritie to runne by and downe the staires adherente to the tree, then doo our wayting boyes vppon the playne grounde fetch vs what wee call for from the cobbarde besyde our dyning table. Our men therefore came to the tree of kyng *Abibeiba*, and by thinterpretoures called hym forth to communication, geuing hym signes of peace, and therevppon wylling hym to come downe. But he denyed that he woulde come out of his house, desyring them to suffer hym to lyue after his fashion: but our men fell from fayre woordes to threating, that except he woulde descend with all his familie, they woulde eyther ouerthrowe the tree, or elles set it on fyre. When he had denied them agayne, they fell to hewing the tree with theyr axes. *Abibeiba* seeing the chippes fall from the tree on euery syde, chaunged his purpose, and came downe with only two of his sonnes. Thus after they had entreated of peace, they conanuned of geatherpnyng of golde. *Abibeiba* answered that he had no golde, and that he neuer had any neede therof, nor yet regarded it any more then stones. But when they were instante vppon hym, he sayde vnto them, If you so greatly desyre golde, I wyll seeke for some in the next mountaynes, and byng it vnto you: for it is plentifully engendred in those mountaynes. Then he appoynted a daye when he woulde byng this golde. But *Abibeiba* came noether at the day, nor after the day appointed. They departed therfore from thence well refreshed with his vittuals and wyne, but not with golde as they hoped: yet were they enscourmed the like by *Abibeiba* and

*Abibeiba*, the kyng of the tree, peeldeth to *Paschus*.

Golde no more esteemed then stones.

## The seconde Decade.

Canibales.

his ditionaries as concerning the golde mynes and the Canibales, as they hearde before of kyng *Comogrus*. Saylyng yet further about thyrtye myles, they chaunced vpon certayne cotages of the Canibales, but vtterly boyde without men or stufte: for when they had knowledge that our men wandered in the prouinces neere about them, they resorted to the mountaynes, caryng all theyr goodes and stufte with them.

### The fyfte booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.



In the meane tyme whyle these thynges were done along by the shores or bankes of the ryuer, a certayne *Decurian*, that is, a captayne ouer tenne, of the compaignie of those which *Vaschus* and *Colmenaris* had left for a garryson in *Riuo Nigro*, in the dominion of kyng *Abinamachei*, whether it were that he was compelled through hunger, or that his fatal day was nowe come, he attempted with his souldiers to searche the countreys neere thereabout, and entred into the byllage of a king called *Abraiba*. This captaynes name was *Raia*, whom *Abraiba* slue with two of his felowes, but the residue fledde: Within a fewe dayes after, *Abraiba* haupng compassion on the calamitie of his kynsman and neyghbour *Abenamacheius*, beyng dauen from his owne possessions (whose arme also we sayd before that one of the souldiers cut of at the riuer of *Riuo Nigro*) and now remainyng with *Abraiba*, to whom he fled by stealth after he was taken, went to *Abibeiba* thynhabitour of the tree, who had nowe likewyse forlaken his countrey for feare of our men, and wandered in the desolate mountaynes and woods. When he had therefore founde hym, he spake to hym in this effect. What thyng is this, oh vnforgunate *Abibeiba*? or what nation is this that so tormenteth vs, that we can not enioy our quiet libertie? howe long, howe long I say, shall we suffer theyr crueltye? were it not much better for vs to dye, then to abide suche iniuries and oppressions as you, as *Abinamacheius* our kinsman, as *Cemacbus*, as *Careta*, as *Poncha*, as I and oether prynces of our order doo susteyne? Can anye thyng be more intollerable, then to see our wyues,

our

our chyldren, and our subiectes, to be ledde away captiues, and our goodes to be spoyled euen before our faces: I take the gods to witnesse, that I speake not so much for mine owne part, as I do for you, whose case I lament: for albeit they haue not yet touched me, neuertheles by the example of other, I ought to thinke that my destructiō is not farre of. Let vs therfore (if we be men) trye our strength, & pꝛooue our fortune agaynst them which haue dealt thus cruelly with *Abenamacheius*, and dꝛiuen him out of his countrey, let vs set on them with al our power, and bitterly destroy them. And if we can not slay thē al, yet shal we make them afraide either to assaile vs agayne, or at the least diminishe their power: for whatsoeuer shal befall, nothyng can chaunce woorse vnto vs then that which we now suffer. When *Abibeiba* heard these words, & such other lyke, he condescended to do in al things as *Abxaiba* would require: whereupon they appoynted a day to hyng theyr conspiracie to passe, but the thyng chaunced not accordyng to their desyre: for of those whiche we sayd to haue passed to the *Canibals*, there returned by chaunce to *Riuus Niger*, the night before the day appoynted to worke their seate, thirtie men, to the ayde of them whiche were left there, yf any sedition should rise as they suspected. Therfore at the dawning of the day, the confederate kynges, with fyue hundred of theyr ditionaries armed after theyr maner, besieged the village with a terrible alarome, knowyng nothing of the newe men whiche came thither the same nyght. Where our target men came foorth against them, and first assailed them a farre of with theyr arrowes, then with theyr pykes, and last with theyr swoordes: but the naked seelye soules, perceyving a greater number of theyr aduersaries then they looked for, were soone dꝛiuen to fygght, and slayne for the most parte lyke scatteryng sheepe. The kynges escaped, they slue many, and tooke many captiues, whiche they sent to *Dariena*, where they vsed them for labourers to tyll and sowe theyr grounde. These thynges thus happily atcheyued, and that pꝛouince quieted, they returned by the ryuer to *Dariena*, leauyng theyr chytie men for a garrison, vnder the gouernance of one *Euratado* a captayne. This *Euratado* therfore, sent from *Riuo Nigro*, where he was appoynted gouernour, xx. of his felowes, and one woman, with xxiii. captiues, to *Vaschus* and his companye, in

Men good pe-  
nough yf they  
had iron.

Captiues.

xx garrison of  
thirtie men.



## The seconde Decade.

one of the byggest *Canoas* of that prouince . As they rowed  
downe by the ryuer, there came forth suddenly ouerthwart the  
ryuer agaynst them foure great *Canoas*, which ouerthwe they  
boate, and slue as many of them as they coulde come by, because  
they were vnzepared, suspecting no such thyng. Our men were  
all drowned and slaine, except two, which hid them selues among  
certeyne fagottes that swamme on the water, in the whiche they  
laye lurkyng, and so escaped to theyr felowes in *Dariena*: who  
by them beyng aduertysed hereof, beganne to cast theyr wyttes  
what this thyng myght meanz, being no lesse solicitate for them  
selues, then meditatyng in what daunger theyr felowes had ben  
in *Riuo Negro*, excepte by good fortune, those thirtie newe men  
whiche were sent to them, had come to the byllage the nyght  
before the conspiracie shoulde haue ben wrought. Consultyng  
therefore what was best to be doone herein, at the length with  
diligent searchyng, they had intelligence that fyue kynges, that  
is to wytte, *Abibeiba* the inhabitour of the tree, and *Cemacchus*  
dyuen from his byllage which our men now possessed, *Abraiba*  
also and *Abenamacheius*, kynsemen, with *Dabaiba* the kyng of the  
fysher men, inhabytyng the corner of the gulse whiche we called  
*Culata*, were al assembled to conspire the Chyistian mens destruc-  
tion at a daye assigned: whiche thyng had surely come to passe,  
if it had not ben otherwyle hyndered by Gods prouidence. It  
is therefore ascrybed to a myracle, and truely not vnworthyly,  
if we waye howe chaunce detected and betrayed the counsaile  
of these kynges. And because it is worthy to be heard, I wyll  
declare it in fewe woordes. *Vascus Nunnez* therefore, who ra-  
ther by power then by election, vsurped the gouernance in *Dari-  
ena*, beyng a maister of fence, and rather a rashe royster then a  
politike captaine (although fortune somtime fauoureth fooles)  
among many women whiche in diuers of these regions he had  
taken captiue, had one, which in fauour and beutie excelled all o-  
ther. To this woman her brother often tymes resorted, who was  
also driuen out of his countrey with king *Cemacchus*, with whom  
he was very famillyer, and one of his cheefe gentelmen. Among  
other communicacion whiche he had with his syster whom he  
loued entierly, he bitteder these woordes, By deare and welbelo-  
ued syster, geue eare to my sayinges, and keepe most secretely  
that

Eightene Spa-  
nyardes slayne  
and drowned.

The kinges  
which conspi-  
red the death of  
the Chyistians.

A strange  
chaunce.

Women can  
keepe no coun-  
saile.

that whiche I will declare vnto you, yf you desyre your owne wealth and myne, and the prosperitie of our countrey and kynnesfolkes. The insolencie and crueltie of these men whiche haue dyruen vs out of our possessions, is so intollerable, that the princes of the lande are determyned no longer to susteyne theyr oppressions. By the conducting therefore of fyue kynges (whiche he named in order) they haue prepared a hundred great Canoas, with fyue thousande men of warre by lande and by sea, with victuals also in the village of *Tichiri*, sufficient to mantayne suche an army: declaring further, that the kynges by agreement, had diuided among them the goodes and heades of our men, and therefore admonysht her, at the day appoynted by some occasion to conueigh her selfe out of the way, lest she shoulde be slayne in the confusion of the battayle: For the souldier victourer, is not woont to spare any that cometh in his rase. And thus shewing his sister the day assigned to the slaughter, he departed. But the young woman (for it is the swoorde that women feare, and obserue moze then the grauitie of *Cato*) whether it were for the loue or feare that she had to *Vaschus*, forgetting her parentes, her kynnsfolkes, her countrey, and all her freendes, yea and al the kynges into whose throttes *Vaschus* had thruste his swoorde, she opened al the matter vnto hym, and concealed none of those thinges which her vndiscrete brother had declared to her. When *Vaschus* therfore had hearde the matter, he caused *Fuluia*, (for so had they named her) to sende for her brother, who came to her immediatly, was taken, & enforced to tel the whole circumstances of the matter: wherupon he playnely confessed, that king *Cemacchus* his lord and maister, sent those foure Canoas to the destruction of our men, and that these new conspiracies were attempted by his counsaile: likewise that *Cemacchus* sought the destruction of *Vaschus* him selfe, when he sent him, xl. men, under pretence of frendshipp, to tyll and sowe his grounde, after the maner of the countrey, geuing them in comaundement to slay *Vaschus* at *Marris*, whither he resorted to comfort his labourers, as the maner is of al good husbandes, yet durst they at no time execute their lordes commaundement vpon hym, because *Vaschus* came neuer among them a foote or vnarmed, but was accustomed to ryde to them in harnesse with a tauelyn in his hande, and

An armie of an hundred Canoas, and fyue. M. men.

Triumph befoze victorie.

Affection corrupteth true iudgement.

The conspiracie of the kyngs is detected.

Kyng *Cemacchus* conspireth the death of *Vaschus*.

a swoorde

## The seconde decade,

**Vaschus pur-**  
sueth the kings  
with threescore  
and ten men.

a swoorde by his syde. Wherefore *Cemacchus* being frustrate of his particuler counsaile, tooke this last thing in hande, to his owne destruction and his neighbours: for the conspiracie being detected, *Vaschus* called threescore and tenne souldiers, commaunding them to folowe hym, but declared nothing vnto them whither he went, or what he intended to do. He went forwarde therfore fyrst toward *Cemacchus*, which lay from hym only tenne myles: but he had knowledge that he was fledde to *Dabaiba*, the kyng of the maryshes of *Culata*. Yet searching his village, he founde a noble man, a ruler vnder hym, and also his kynsman, whom he tooke prysoner, with many other of his familiers and frendes both men and women. The same houre that he set forwarde to seeke for *Cemacchus*, *Rodericus Colmenaris* rowed by the ryuer with foure of theyr byggest *Canoas*, and threescore men, by the conduction of the maydes brother who brought hym to the village of *Tichiri*, in y<sup>e</sup> which we said al their vittuals to remaine: which were prepared for theyr armye. *Colmenaris* therfore sacked the village, and possessed all their vittuals, and wine of sundry colours, likewise tooke the gouernour thereof prysoner, and hanged him on the tree in whiche he dwelt him selfe, commaunding hym to be shotte through with arrowes in the syght of the inhabitants, and with hym foure other rulers to be hanged on gibbers, to the example of other rebelles. This punishment thus executed vppon the conspiratours, strooke the hartes of all the inhabitants of the prouince with such feare, that there is not now a man that dare styre his synger agaynst the wrath of our men. They lyue now therefore quietly, and the other kyngs by theyr example do the gladlyer lyue in subiection, with lesse offence bearyng the yoke which they can by no meanes shake of.

**Four rulers**  
hanged & shot  
through with  
arrowes.

### The syxte booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent,



These thynges thus synysed, assembling al theyr company togeather, they determined with one consent, that a messenger shoulde forthwith be sent to *Hispaniola* (from whence they haue theyr lawes and ayde) to declare the whole order of al these affayres,  
fyfthe

First to the Admirall and gouernour of the Ilande, and after ward to the Kyng of Spayne, and to perswade hym to sende those thousande men whiche young *Comogrus* sayde to be expedient to passe ouer the mountaynes, lying betwene them and the golden regions toward the South. *Vaschus* hym selfe dyd greatlye affect this embassage: but neither would the residue of his felowes electe hym therto, nor his factionaries suffer hym to departe, aswell for that thereby they thought they should be left desolate, as also that they murmured, that if *Vaschus* should once go from them, he would neuer returne to suche turmoyles and calamities, by the example of *Valdiua* and *Zamudius*, who had ben not absent sence the moneth of Ianuary, in so much that they thought they would neuer come agayne: but the matter was otherwise then they tooke it, as I wyll shewe in his place, for they were perished. At the length after many scrutinies, they elected one *Iohn Quicedus*, a graue man, wel in peeres, and treasourer of the kynges Exchequer in those prouinces: they had conceived a good opinion of this *Quicedus*, that all thynges shoulde be well brought to passe by his meanes, aswell for his wysdome, as also that they were in good hope of his return, because he had brought his wife with hym to those regions, whom he left with his felowes for a pledge of his comming agayne. When they had thus elected *Quicedus*, they were againe of diuers opinions whom they might ioyne with him for assistance, affirming that it were a dangerous thing to committe so weightie a matter to one mans handes, not that they mistrusted *Quicedus*, but because the life of man is fraile, & the change of the ayre perillous, especially to them, hauing now of long time ben accustomed to the temperature neere vnto the *Equinoctial*, if they should be compelled to returne to y<sup>e</sup> North, with alteration of ayre & diet. They thought it therfore good to appoynt a companion to *Quicedus*, that if by chaunce the one should faile, thother might remaine, & that if they both escaped, the king should geue y<sup>e</sup> better credit to the relation of both. After long consultation therfore, they chose *Rodericus Colmenaris*, a man of good experience, of whom we haue oftentimes made mention: for from his youth he had trauailed ouer al Europe by lande and by sea, and was present at the doynges of al things in *Italie* agaynst the *Frenchmen*, of whose returne also, they

*Iohan. Quicedus* is sent to Spayne.



had no smal hope, because he had many farmes, and had tyld  
and sowne much grounde in *Dariena*, by the increase wherof, he  
myght get much gold by selling the same to his felowes. He left  
therfore the charge of al his affayres in *Dariena* with his partner  
*Alphonfus Nunnez*, a iudge of the lawe, who also was lyke to  
haue ben chosen procuratour of this voyage before *Colmenaris*, yf  
one had not put them in remembrance that he had a wife at *Ma-  
tritis*, fearing lest being ouercome with her teares, he woulde no  
more returne. *Colmenaris* therfore, a free man, & at libertie, being  
associate assystant with *Quicedus*, they tooke shyping together  
in a Brigandine, the fourth day of the Calendes of Nouember,  
in the yeere of Christe. 1512. In this voyage, beyng tossed with  
sundry tempestes, they were by the violence of the winde cast vp-  
on the West coastes of that large Island, which in the fyrst De-  
cade we called *Cuba*, supposed to haue ben firme land. They were  
soe oppressed with hunger, for it was nowe three monethes  
synce they departed from theyr felowes: by reason whereof, they  
were enforced to take lande, to prouide what ayde they coulde get  
among the inhabitauntes. Theyr chaunce therfore was to  
arryue in that part of the Islande, where *Valdiuia* was dyuen  
aland by tempest. But oh you wretched men of *Dariena*, tary for  
*Valdiuia*, whom you sent to prouide to helpe your necessities,  
proude for your selues rather, and trust not to them whose  
fortune ye knowe not. For when he arryued in *Cuba*, the inhabi-  
tantes shue hym with al his felowes, and left the Carauel wherin  
they were caryed, tozne in peeces, and halfe couered with sande  
on the shore, where *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* synding the frag-  
mentes thereof, bewayled theyr felowes mylfortune: but they  
founde none of theyr carcasses, supposyng that they were eyther  
drowned, or deuoured of the Canibales, which oftentimes make  
incursions into that Islande to hunt for men. But at the length,  
by two of the Islande men which they had taken, they had know-  
ledge of *Valdiuia* his destruction, and that the inhabitauntes the  
more greedily attempted the same, for that they had heard by the  
babbling of one of his felowes, that he had great plentie of  
golde: for they also take pleasure in the beautie of golde, whiche  
they fourme artificially into sundry ouches. Thus our men stric-  
ken with pensiuenesse for the cruell destenie of theyr felowes,  
and

A wife is a hin-  
derance.

The death of  
alduia.

Murt of launphs  
nelle of the  
tongue.

and in bayne seeking reuenge for theȝ inuuries, determined to forsake that vnfortunate lande, departyng from those couetous naked barbarians, with more sorowe and necessitie then they were in before. Or euer they had passed the South syde of *Cuba*, they fel into a thousande mysfortunes, and had intelligence that *Fogeda* arryued therabout, leadyng a miserable lyfe, tossed and turmopled with tempestes, and vexed with a thousande perplexities: so that departyng from thence almost alone, his felowes beyng for the most part al consumed with maladies and famine, he came with much difficultie to *Hispaniola*, where he dyed by force of the poyson of his venemous wounde which he had receiued in *Vraba* as we haue sayde before. But *Ancifus* elected Lieutenant, sayled by al those coastes with much better fortune: for as he hym selfe tolde me, he founde prosperous wyndes in those parties, and was wel enterteyned of thinhabitantes of *Cuba*, but this specially in the dominion of a certayne kyng whose name was *Commendator*: for wheras he desyred of the Christian men whiche passed by, to be baptised, demaundayng the name of the gouernour of the Islande next vnto *Hispaniola*, beyng a noble man, and a knyght of the order of *Galatraua*, of whiche order, all are called *Commendatores*, this kings desyre was to be named after him. Kyng *Commendator* therefore frendly receiued *Ancifus*, & gaue him great abundance of al thinges necessarie. But what *Ancifus* learned of theȝ religion during the tyme of his remaynyng there, I haue thought good to aduertise your holynesse. You shal therfore vnderstande, that certayne of our men saylyng by the coastes of *Cuba*, left with kyng *Commendator* a certayne poore Maryner beyng diseased, who in short space recoueryng his health, and hauyng now somewhat learned theȝ language, began to growe into great estimation with the kyng and his subiectes, insomuche that he was oftentimes the kynges Lieutenant in his warres agaynst other princes his borderers. This mans fortune was so good, that al thynges prospered well that he tooke in hande: and albeit that he were not learned, yet was he a vertuous and well meanyng man, accordyng to his knowledge, and dyd religiousely honour the blessed virgin, bearyng euer about with him her ppycture fayre paynted vpon paper, and sowed in his apparel neere vnto his brest, signifying vnto the kyng,

The calamities and death of *Fogeda*.

Maladies and famine.

The prosperous voyage of *Ancifus*.

A king of *Cuba* baptised by the name of *Commendator*.

A marueylous hystorie howe God wrought miracles by the simple faith of a Maryner.

Be not rash in iudgement.

## The seconde decade.

kyng, that this holynes was the cause of al his victories : perswading him to doo the like, and to cast away all his *Zemes*, which were none other then the similitudes of euill spirites, most cruell enemies and deuourers of our soules, and to take vnto him the holy virgin and mother of God to be his patronesse, if he despyred all his affayres aswel in warre as in peace to succcede prosperously : also that the blessed virgyn woulde at no tyme fayle hym, but be euer redye to helpe him and his, if they woulde with deuout hartes call vppon her name . The maryner had soone perswaded the naked nation, and therevppon gaue the king (who demaunded the same) his ppycture of the virgin, to whom he buylded and dedicated a chapell and an alter, euer after contemning and reiecting his *Zemes*. Of these *Zemes* made of gossampine cotton, to the similitudes of spirites walking in the nyght, which they oftentimes see, and speake with them familiarly, we haue spoken sufficiently in the mynenth booke of the first Decade . Furthermoze, according to the institution of this maryner, when the sonne draweth towarde the fall, this king *Commendator* with al his famly, both men and women, resort daylye to the saide chapell of the virgin *Marie*, where kneeling on theyr knees, and reuerently bowing downe theyr heades, holdyng theyr hands ioynd together, they salute the image of the virgin with these wordes, *Aue Maria, Aue Maria*, for fewe of them can rehearse any more wordes of this prayer . At *Ancisus* his being there, they tooke hym and his felowes by the handes, and ledde them to this chapell with reioysing, saying that they woulde shewe them marueylous thinges . When they were entered, they poynted with theyr fyngers to the Image of the virgyn, al to be set and hanged about with ouches and iewels, and many earthen pottes, fylled some with sundry meates, and some with water, rounde about all the tabernacle : for these thinges they offer to the image in the steede of sacrifice, according to theyr olde superstition towarde theyr *Zemes*. Being demaunded why they dyd thus, they answered, Lest the image should lacke meate, if perhaps it should be a hungred : for they most certainly beleue that images may hunger, and that they doo eate & drinke. But what ayde and helpe they confesse that they haue had of the godly power of this image, that is of the blessed virgyn, it is

A Chappell  
builded to the  
pycture of the  
virgin *Marie*.

One superstitious religion  
turned into another, holdeth  
still many thinges of the first.

a thing woorthy to be heard, and most assuredly to bee taken for a trueth: for by the report of our men, there is such feruent godly loue and zeale in these simple men toward the holy virgin, that to them being in the daunger of warre agaynst theyr enimies, they doo in maner (yf I may so terme it) compel her to descende from heauen to helpe them in theyr necessities. For such is the goodnes of God, that he hath left vnto men in maner a pryce whereby we may purchase hym with his holy angels & sayntes, that is to witte, burnyng loue, charitie, and zeale. Howe therefore can the blessed virgin at any time be absent from them which call for her helpe with pure faith and feruent loue: *Commendator* him selfe, with al his noble men and gentelmen, doo testifie with one voyce, that in a fought battayle in the whiche this maryner was capitaine, bearing with him this picture of the virgin *Mari*, the *Zemes* of theyr enimies turned their backes, and trembled in the presence of the virgins image, and in the sight of them all: for euerye of them byyng theyr *Zemes* to the battaile, hoping by theyr helpe to obtaine the victorie. Yea they say further, that during the time of the battaile, they saw not only an Image, but a liuely woman clothed in sayre and white apparel, ayding them agaynst theyr enimies: which thing also the enimies themselves acknowledged, confessyng that on the contrary part, she appeared to them shakynge a scepter in her hande with threatenyng countenance, whiche caused theyr hartes to shake and faint for feare: but after that this *Maryner* departed from them, being taken into a shyppe of certayne Christians passyng by those coastes, *Commendator* declared that he with al his subiectes, continually obserued his institutions: insomuch that beyng at contention with another prince, whiche of theyr *Zemes* were most holy and of greatest power, the matter grewe to such extremitie, that they tryed it with hande strokes: and that in all these attempts, the blessed virgin neuer sayled hym, but was euer present in the brunt of the battayle, and gaue hym easie victorie with a final power of men, agaynst a maine armie of his enimies. Beyng demaunded with what woordes they cryed vpon the virgin *Mary* when they assailed theyr enimies, they answered that they had learned no other woordes of the *Maryners* doctrine, but *Sancta Maria adiuna nos. Sancta Maria adiuna nos.* That is, holy

Zeale without knowledge is neuer godly.

Marke this blindnesse.

This ignorance is to be lamented.

The deuill dissembleth to keepe his in blindnesse still.

A notable type of a papistical heretike.

One blasphemeth vpon another.

*Mary*



## The seconde Decade.

**M**arie helpe vs, holy Marie helpe vs, and this also in the Spanishe tongue: for he had left these wordes in the mouthes of all men. Whyle they murdered and destroyed them selues thus on both sydes, they fell to entreatie of peace, and agreed to trye the matter, not hande to hande by combatte of certayne chosen for both parties, as the maner was among the Romanes and diuers other nations in the old tyme, or by any sleight or policie, but that two yong men shoulde be chosen, for eche partie one, with theyr handes bounde faste behynde them in the playne fyerde, bothe parties beyng sworn to acknowledge that Zemes to be the better, which fyrst loosed the bandes of the yong man which stood bounde for the tryall of his religion. Thus diuidyng them selues, and placyng the sayd yong men before them in the syght of them all, with theyr handes fast bounde by theyr enimies, the contrary parte called fyrst on theyr Zemes (that is the deuyl, to whose similitude theyr Images are made) who immediately appeared in his lykenesse aboute the yong man that stood bounde in the defence of Satans kyngdome. But as soone as *Commendator* with his companie cryed *Sancta Maria adiuua nos, Sancta Maria adiuua nos*, forthwith there appeared a fayre virgin clothed in whyte, at whose presence the deuyl vanquished immediatly. But the virgin, hauing along rod in her hande, & putting the same on the bandes of the yong man that stood for *Commendator*, his handes were loosed immediatly in the syght of them all, and his bandes found about the handes of hym that stood for the other partye, insomuch that they them selues founde hym double bounde. But for all this, were not the enimies satisfied, quarelling that this thyng was done by some sleight or deuise of man, & not by the power of the better Zemes. And thereupon requyred, for thaduoyning of all suspicion, that there myght be eyght graue and sage men appoynted, for eche side foure, which shoulde hynde the men in the syght of them all, and also geue iudgement whether the thing were done without craft or guyle. Oh pure simplicitie and constant fayth: oh golden and blessed confidence. *Commendator* and his familiers, doubted not to graunt theyr enimies theyr request, with lyke fayth wherewith the diseased woman obteyned health of the fluxe of her blood, and wherby Peter feared not to walke on the sea

The deuill appeareth in his lykenesse.

What likenesse?

A strange myracle not to be credited.

Another myracle.

Wise men.

Math. xiii. This is another matter.

sea

Sea at the syght of his maister Christ. These young men therfore  
 were bounde in the presence of these eight graue men, and were  
 placed within theyr yppes in the syght of both parties. Thus  
 vpon a signe geuen, when they called vpon theyr Zemes, there  
 appeared in the sight of them al, a deuyl with a long taile, a wide  
 mouth, great teeth, and hoznes, resembling the similitude of  
 the image whiche the kyng bepng eninite to *Commendator* hono-  
 red for his Zemes. As the deuyl attempted to loose the bandes of  
 his client, the blessed virgin was immediatly present as befoze at  
 the cal of *Commendator* & his subiectes, & with her rodde loosed the  
 bandes of her suppliant, whiche were agayne likewyse founde  
 fast tyed about the handes of hym that stode for the contrarpe  
 part. The eninites therfore of *Commendator*, being stricken with  
 great feare, and amased by reason of this great myracle, confes-  
 sed that the Zemes of the virgin was better then theyr Zemes: for  
 the better ppoofe whereof, these pagans being borderers to *Com-  
 mendator*, whiche had euer befoze ben at continuall warre and en-  
 initie with hym, when they had knowledge that *Ancifus* was ar-  
 ryued in those coastes, they sent Ambassadors vnto hym, to  
 desire him to sende them priestes, of whom they might be bapti-  
 sed: wherupon he sent them two which he had there with hym  
 at that present. They baptised in one day an hundred and thyrtye  
 of thinhabitantcs, sometime eninites to *Commendator*, but nowe  
 his frendes, and ioyned with hym in aliance. All suche as came  
 to be baptised, gaue the priestes of theyr owne liberalitie, ei-  
 ther a cocke or a henne, but no capons, for they can not yet skill  
 howe to carrie theyr cocke chickens to make them capons. Also  
 certayne salted fishes, and newe fyne cakes made of theyr bread:  
 likewise certayne foules franked and made fatte. When the  
 priestes, refozted to the thypptes, syre of these newe baptised men  
 accompanied them laden with vittuals, wherewith they ledde  
 a ioyful Easter: for on the Sunday, two dayes befoze saynt La-  
 zarus day, they departed from *Dariena*, and touched at that tyme  
 only the cape or angle of *Cuba*, neere vnto the East syde of *His-  
 paniola*. At the request of *Commendator*, *Ancifus* left with him one  
 of his companye, to the intent to teache hym and his subiectes,  
 with other his borderers, the salutation of the angell, whiche  
 we cal the *Aue Maria*: for they thynke them selues to be so much

The deuyl ap-  
peareth againe

The virgin  
Mary in her  
owne person  
ouercometh  
the deuyl.

The priestes  
rewarde.

Why name  
you Capons?

## The seconde Decade.

Ancifus boiage  
to Spayne.

Ancifus com-  
playneth of  
Dalcus.

Marke to who  
this fayned  
impraculous  
storie was  
wrytten.

the more beloued of the blessed virgin, as they can rehearse the more woordes of that prayer. Thus *Ancifus* takynge his leaue of kynge *Commendator*, directed his course to *Hispaniola*, from which he was not farre. Shortly after, he tooke his voyage to Spayne, and came to *Valladoletto* to the kynge, to whom he made greuous complaynt of the insolencie of *Vaschus Nunnez*, inso-muche that by his procurement the kynge gaue sentence agaynst hym. Thus muche haue I thought good (most holy father) whereof to aduertise your holynesse, as concernynge the religion of these nations, not only as I haue ben instructed of *Ancifus* (with whom I was dayly conuersant in the Court, and bled hym familiarlye) but also as I was enfourmed of diuers other men of great authoritie, to the intent that your excellencie may vnderstande howe docible this kynd of men are, and with what facilitie they may be allured to embrace our religion: but this can not be done sodenly, yet we haue great cause to hope that in short time they wyl be al drawen by litle and litle, to the Euangelical lawe of Christe, to the great encrease of his flocke. But let vs nowe returne to the messengers or procuratours as concernynge the affayres of *Dariena*.

The seventh booke of the seconde Decade, of the sup-  
posed continent.



From *Dariena* to *Hispaniola*, is eyght dayes saylynge, and sometimes lesse with a prosperous winde: yet *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* the procuratours of *Dariena*, by reason of tempestes & contrary windes, could scarcely sayle it in a hundred dayes. When they had taried a fewe dayes in *Hispaniola*, and had declared the cause of the commynge to the Admirall and the other gouernours, they toke shipping in two marchant shippes, beyng redy furnyshed, whiche were also accustomed to sayle to and fro betweene Spayne and thelande of *Hispaniola*. They departed from *Dariena* (as we sayde before) the fourth day of the Calends of Nouember, in the yere of Christ. 1512. and came not to the court before the Calendes of May in the yere folowynge, beyng the yere of Christ. 1513. At theyr commynge to the court,

*Ioban*

*Iohannes Fonseca* (to whom at the beginnyng the charge of these affayres was committed, whom also for his faythfull seruice towards the kyng, your holynesse created general Commissarie in the warres agaynst the *Moors*) receiued them honourably, as men commyng from the newe worlde, from naked nations, and landes vnknown to other men. By the preferment therfore of the Bysshop of *Burges*, *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* were brought before the kyng, and declared theyr legacie in his presence. Suche newes and presentes as they brought, were dilectable to the kyng and his noble men, for the newnesse and strangenesse thereof. They also sojourned with me oftentimes. Theyr countenaunces do declare the intemperatnesse of the ayre and region of *Dariena*, for they are yelow, lyke vnto them that haue the yelow gaundies, and also swolne: but they ascribe the cause hereof, to the hunger whiche they susteyned in tymes past. I haue ben aduertised of the affayres of this newe worlde, not only by these procuratours of *Dariena*, and *Ancisus*, and *Zamudius*, but also by conference with *Baccia* the lawyer, who ran ouer a great part of those coastes: lykewylse by relation of *Vincentius Amex*, the patrone of the shypps, and *Alphonsus Nignus*, both being men of great experience, and wel trauailed in those parties, beside many other, of whom we haue made mention in other places, for there came neuer any from thence to the court, but tooke great pleasure to certifie me of al thynges, eyther by worde of mouth or by wytyng. Of many thynges therfore whiche I learned of them, I haue geathered such as to my iudgment seme most worthy to satisfie them that take delyte in histories. But let vs now declare what folowed after the comyng of the procuratours of *Dariena*. Therfore, before theyr arryual, there was a rumoz spred in the court, that the cheefe gouernours and Lieutenantes *Nicuesa* and *Fogeda*, also *Iohannes de la Cossa* (a man of such reputation, that by the kinges letters patentes he was named the great maister of the kynes shyppes) were al perished by mischaunce: and that those fewe whiche yet remayned aloue in *Dariena*, were at contention and discorde among them selues, so that they neither endenoured theyr diligence to allure those synple nations to our fayth, nor yet had regarde to searche the natures of those regions. In consyderation whereof, the kyng was de-

The procuratours of *Dariena* are honourably receiued at the court.

The great maister of the kynes shypps.



## The seconde Decade.

terminated to sende a newe captayne thither, which should restore and set all thynges in good order, and put them out of aucthoritie whiche had vsurped the Empire of those prouinces without the kynges speciall commaundement. To this office, was one *Petrus Arias* assigned, a man of great prowesse, and a citizen of *Seogonia*, but when the procuratours of *Dariena* had published in the courte howe great a matter it was, and of what moment, many laboured earnestly to the kyng, to take the office out of his handes: but the Bishop of *Burges*, beyng the kynges cheefe chaplayne, and one of the Commissioners appoynted by hym in these matters, beyng aduertised hereof, came immediatly to the king, and spake to hym in this effect: May it please your hyghnesse to vnderstande (most catholique prynce) that wheras *Petrus Arias*, a man of valiant courage and great seruice, hath offered him selfe to aduenture his life in your maiesties affaires, vnder vncertayne hope of gayne, and most certayne perylls, yet that notwithstanding, some other haue ambicioussly maliced his felicitie and preferment, laboring for the office wherto he is elected. It may please your grace herein, so to shew him your fauour, and permit hym to enioy his sayde office, as your maiestie do knowe hym to be a woorthy and meete man for the same, hauyng in tyme past had great experience of his prowesse and valyانتnesse, as wel in behauyng him selfe, as orderyng his souldiers, as your hyghnesse may the better consyder, yf it shal please you to call to remembraunce his dooynges in the warres of *Aphycca*, where he shewed him selfe both a wise Captaine, and a valiant souldier. As concernyng his manners and blages otherwayes, they are not vnknownen to your maiestie, vnder whose wyng he hath of a chylde ben brought vp in the Courte, and euer founde faythfull toward your highnesse. Wherefore, to declare my opinion, vnder your graces fauour (whom it hath pleased to appoynt me a Commissioner in these affayres) I thynke it were vngodly that he shoulde be put from his office at the suite of any other, especially beyng thereto mouued by ambition and couetousnesse, who perchance would proue them selues to be the same men in the office, if they should obteyne it, as they now shew them selues in the ambitious despyrnyng of the same. When the Bishop had sayd these wordes, the kyng confirmed the election of *Petrus Arias* in

more

*Petrus Arias*  
is elected go-  
uernour of  
*Dariena*.

The oration of  
the Bishop of  
*Burges*, in the  
defence of *Petrus Arias*.

The warres of  
*Aphycca*.

more ample manner then before, wyllyng the byshop to appoynt hym a thousande and two hundred souldiers at his charges, making hym a warrant to the officers of his Exchequer, to deliuer hym money in prest for the same purpose. *Petrus Arias* therfore beyng thus put in office, and aucthorised by the kinges letters patentes vnder his brode seale, chose a great number of his souldiers in the court, and so depa. ted from *Valladoletto*. about the Calends of October, in the yere. 1513. and sayled first to *Ciuite*, beyng a very ryche citie, and wel replenished with people, where by the kynges magistrates, he was furnyshed with men and vntualles, and other necessaries parteynyng to so great a matter: for the kyng hath in this citie erected a house, seruyng only for the affayres of the Ocean, to the whiche al they that goe or come from the newe landes and Islandes, resorte to geue accomptes, aswel what they cary thither, as what they byyng from thence, that the kyng may be truely answered of his custome of the fyft part, both of golde and other thynges, as we haue sayde before. This house they cal the house of the Contractes of *Indi*. *Petrus Arias* founde in *Ciuite* aboute two thousand young men, whiche made great suite to goe with hym, lyke wyse no smal number of couetous olde men, of the whiche, many offered them selues to goe with him of their owne charges without the kings stipende. But lest the ships shoulde be pestered with to great a multitude, or lest vittuals shoulde fayle them, the libertie of free passage was restraynt. It was also decreed that no stranger myght passe without the kynges licence. Wherefore I doo not a lytle maruaile at *Aloisius Cadamustus* a *Venetian*, and wyter of the *Portugales* voyages, that he was not ashamed to wyte thus of the *Spanyarde*s nauigations: we went, we sawe, we dyd: whereas he neuer went, nor any *Venetian* sawe, but he stole certayne annotations out the thre first bookes of my fyrst Decade, wyrtten to *Cardinal Ascanius* & *Arcimboldus*, supposyng that I would neuer haue publyshed the same. It myght also happen that he came by the copie therof at the hand of some ambassadour of *Venice*, for I haue graunted the copie to many of them, & was not dangerous to forbyd them to communicate the same to other. Howe so euer it be, this honest man *Aloisius Cadamustus* feared not to challenge vnto hym the fruite of another mans labour.

A house in *Ciuite* appoynted to the affayres of *India*.

*Perularia*.

## The seconde Decade.

The Portugales inuentions.

The nauigation of Petrus Arias.

A shipwacke.

Americus Vesputius.

A notable example of a valiant woman.

Of the inuentions of the Portugales (whiche surely are wonderfull) whether he haue written that which he hath seene (as he saith) or likewise bereaued other men of the iust commendations of thei trauayles, I wy<sup>t</sup> not iudge, but am content to let hym lyue after his manner. Among the company of these souldiers, there were none embarked but such as were licēsed by the king, except a few Italians, Genues, who by frendshyp and suite were admitted for the Admiralles sake young *Colonus*. Some and heyre to *Christophorus Colonus*, the fyrst fynder of those landes. *Petrus Arias* therfore toke shipping in the riuer *Betis* (now called *Guadalqueir*) running by the citie of *Citile*, about the begynnyng of the yeere of *Christ*. 1514. But he loosed anker in an euyl houre, for such a tempest folowed shortly after his departure, that it rent in peeces two of his ships, and so tossed the other, that they were enforced to heaue ouerboorde part of thei byttualles to lyghten them. All suche as escaped, sayled backe agayne to the coastes of *Spayne*, where, beyng newly furnyshe and refreshed by the kyngs officers, they went forward on thei voyage. The master *Pylote* of the gouernours shyp, was *Iohannes Vesputius* a *Florentine*, the neuiew of *Americus Vesputius*, who left him as it were by discent of inheritance, the experience of the *Harpyers* facultie, and knowledge of the sea, carde, and compasse. But we were aduertised of late by certayne whiche came from *Hispaniola*, that they had passed the Ocean with moze prosperous winde: for this marchaunt shyppe commyng from *Hispaniola*, founde them lāding at certaine Islands neere therabout. But in the meane time, whyle my importunate callers on, *Galeacens Butrigarius*, and *Iohannes Cursus*, men studious by al meanes to gratifie your holynesse, ceased not to put me in remembrance that they had one in a redines to depart into *Italy*, & taried only to eary with him vnto your holines these my fayre *Nereides*, although rudely decked, lest I shoulde bestow much tyme in bayne, I haue let passe many things, & wil reherse only such as seeme in my iudgement moste worthy memory, although somewhat disordered, as occasion hath serued. So it is therefore, that this *Petrus Arias* hath a wife named *Helisabetha Boadilla*, beyng niese by the brothers syde to the marques of *Boadilla*, whiche rendred the citie of *Segonia* to *Fernando* and *Helisabeth* princes of *Spayne*, at suche time as the

Portu

Portugales inuaded the kingdome of Castile, by reason wherof, they were encouraged fyrst to resyst, and then with open warre to assaile and expulke the Portugales, for the great treasure whiche kyng Henry brother to queene Helisabeth had geathered togeather there. This marquesse, while she liued, did euer shewe a manly and stoute mynde, both in peace and warre, so that by her counsaile, many noble thinges were brought to good effecte in Castile: vnto this noble woman the wyfe of *Petrus Arias* was niece by her brothers syde. She, folowynge the magnanimitie of her aunt, perceiuyng her husband nowe furnyshynge hym selfe to depart to the vnknown coastes of the newe worlde, and those large tractes of lande and sea, spake these wordes vnto hym: My most deare and welbeloued husbände, we ought not nowe to forget that from our young yeres we haue ben ioyned togeather with the yoke of holy matrimonie, to thintent that we shoulde so lyue togeather, and not asunder, durynge the tyme of our natural lyfe: wherefore for my part, to declare my affection herein, you shal vnderstande, that whither soeuer your fatall destenie shall dyue you, epyther by the furious waues of the great Ocean, or by the manyfolde and horrible daungers of the lande, I wyll surely beare you company: there can no peryll chaunce to me so terrible, nor any kynde of death so cruell, that shal not be muche easyer for me to abyde, then to liue so farre separate from you. It were muche better for me to dye, and cyther to be cast into the sea, to be deuoured of the fyshes, or on the lande to the Cannibales, then with continual mournynge and bewaylynge, to liue in death, and dye lyuynge, whyle I consume in lookynge rather for my husbandes letters, then for hym selfe. This is my full determination, not rashly, nor presently excogitate, nor conceiued by the lyght phantasie of womans brayne, but with long deliberation and good aduilement. Nowe therefore choole to whether of these two you wyll assent, epyther to thruste your swoorde in my throte, or to graunt me my request. As for the chyldren which god hath geuen vs as pledges of our inseparable loue (for they had foure sonnes, and as many daughters) shall not stay me a moment: let vs leaue vnto them such goodes and possessions as haue ben left vs by our parentes and freendes, whereby they may lyue among the woorthypfull of theyr order:

The wyfe of  
*Petrus Arias*.



## The seconde Decade.

for other thynges I take no care. When this noble matrone of manly vertue had finished these woordes, her husbände seepng the constant mynde of his wyfe, and her in a redynesse to do accordyng to her woordes, had no hart to denye her louyng petition, but embracing her in his armes, commended her intent, and consented to her request. She folowed hym therfore, as did *Ipsicratea* her *Mithridates*, with her heare hangyng loose about her shoulders: for she loued her husband, as dyd *Halicarnassea* of *Caria* hers, being dead, and as dyd *Artemisia* her *Mausolus*. We haue also had aduertisment since theyr departure, that she (beyng brought by as it were amōg soft fethers) hath with no lesse stout courage susteyned the royinges and rages of the Ocean, then dyd eyther her husbände, or any of the *Pyrrners* brought by euen among the scourges of the sea. But to haue sayde thus muche hereof, this shall suffice: let vs nowe speake of other thynges no lesse worthy memorie. Therfore, wheras in the first Decade we haue made mention of *Vincentius Amex Pinzonus*, ye shal vnderstand, that he accompanied *Christophorus Colonus* the Admirall in his first voyage, and afterwarde made an other voyage of his owne charges with only one shyppe. Agayne, the fyrst peere after the departyng of the Captaynes *Nicuesa* and *Fogeda*, he ran ouer those coastes from *Hispaniola*, and searched al the South syde of *Cuba*, from the East to the West, and sayled rounde about that Island, whiche to that day, for the great length thereof, was thought to haue ben part of the continent or firme land, although some other say that they dyd the lyke. *Vincentius Amex* therefore, knowyng nowe by experience that *Cuba* was an Islande, sayled on further, and found other landes Westwarde from *Cuba*, but suche as the Admirall had first touched. Therfore, beyng in maner encompassed with this newe lande, turning his course towarde the left hande, and rasing the coastes of that lande by the East, ouerpasing also the mouthes of the gulfes of *Beragua*, *Vraba*, and *Cuchibachoa*, he arryued at the region whiche in the first Decade we called *Paria* and *Os Draconis*, and entred into the great gulf of fre the water, which *Colonus* discovered, beyng replenyshed with great abundance of fysh, and famous by reason of the multitude of Islandes lyng in the same, beyng distant Eastwarde from *Curiana* about an hundred and thirtie myles, in the which tracte,

are

are the regions of *Cumana* and *Manacapana*, whiche also in the first booke of the fyrst Decade we sayd to be regions of the large prouince of *Paria*, where many asseyme to be the greatest plentie of the best pearles, and not in *Curiana*. The kynges of these regions (whom they cal *Chiacones*, as they of *Hispaniola* cal them *Cacici*) beyng certified of the comming of our men, sent certayne spyes to enquire what new nation was arryued in theyr coastes, what they brought, and what they would haue, and in the meane tyme furnyshed a number of theyr *Canoas* (whiche they call *Chibchos*) with men armed after theyr manner: for they were not a lytle astonysht to beholde our shippes with the sayles spread, whereas they vse no sayles, nor can vse but small ones yf they woulde, by reason of the narrownesse of theyr *Canoas*. Swarming therefore about the shyppe with theyr *Canoas* (whiche we may wel cal *Monoxyla*, because they are made of one whole tree) they feared not to shoote at our men, beyng yet within their shippes, and keepyng them selues vnder the hatches, as safely as yf they had ben defended with stone walles. But when our men had shotte of certayne peeces of ordinaunce agaynst them, they were so discomfited with the noyse and slaughter thereof, that they droue them selues to flyght. Being thus disparcled, our men chased them with the ship boate, toke many, and slue many. When the kynges heard the noyse of the gunnes, and were certified of the losse of theyr men, they sent ambassadours to *Vincetius Agnes* to entreate of peace, fearyng the spoyle of theyr goodes, and destruction of theyr people, yf our men should come alande in theyr wrath and furie. They desyred peace therefore, as coulde be coniectured by theyr signes and poyntynges: for our men vnderstoode not one woord of theyr language. And for the better prooffe that they desyred peace, they presented our men with thre thousande of those weyghtes of gold that the Spaniards call *Castellanum Aureum*, whiche they commonly call *Pesum*. Also a great barrel of wood ful of molste excellent masculine Frankencense, weighing about two thousande and fye hundred poundes weight, after eight ounces to the pounce: where by they knewe that that lande brought forth great plentie of Frankencense, for there is no entercourse of marchaundies betweene the inhabitauntes of *Paria* and the *Sabeans*, being so

Plentie of  
pearles,

The vse of  
gunnes.

Great abun-  
dance of gold  
& frankencense.  
*Olibanum*.

*Sabea* is a coun-  
tre in Arabia,  
which bringeth  
forth Frank-  
encense.

farre

## The seconde decade.

farre distant, whereas also they of *Paria* knowe nothing without  
 theyr owne coastes. With the golde and Frankencense whiche  
 they presented to our men, they gaue them also a great multitude  
 of theyr peacockes, both cockes and hannes, dead and alpye, as  
 wel to satisfie theyr present necessitie, as also to carry with them  
 into Spayne for encrease, lykewyse certayne carpettes, cover  
 lettes, table clothes, and hangyngs, made of Gossampine lilke,  
 finely wrought after a strange deuice, with pleasant and variable  
 colours, haupng golden belles, and such other spangles and pen  
 dauntes, as the Italians call *Sonaglios*, and the Spanyarde  
*Cascaueles*, hangyng at the purses therof. They gaue them fur  
 thermoze speakyng poppyngayes of sundry colours, as many as  
 they woulde aske: for in *Paria* there is no lesse plentie of poppy  
 ngayes, then with vs of doves or sparows. The inhabitants of these  
 regions, both men & women, are apparelled with vestures made  
 of gossampine cotton, the men to the knees, and the women to  
 the calfe of the legge. The fashion of theyr apparel is simple and  
 playne, muche lyke vnto the Turkes: but the mens is double,  
 and quilted, like that which the Turkes vse in the warres. The  
 princes of *Paria* are rulers but for one yere: but theyr auctoritie  
 is no lesse among the people both in peace and warre, then is  
 chauctoritie of other kyngs in those regions. Their villages are  
 builded in compasse, along by the bankes of al that great gulfe.  
 Fyue of theyr princes came to our men with theyr presentes,  
 whose names I thought woorthy to be put in this historie, in re  
 membrance of so notable a thing, *Chiaconus Chiauccha* (that is,  
 the prince of *Chiauccha*, for they cal princes or kings *Chiaconus*)  
*Chiaconus Pintiguanus*, *Chiaconus Chamailaba*, *Chiaconus Polomus*,  
 and *Chiaconus Potto*. The gulfe beyng first found of the Admiral  
*Colonus*, they cal *Baia Natiuitatis*, because he entred into the same  
 in the day of y natiuitie of Christ, but at that time he only passed  
 by it without any further searchoyng, and *Baia* in the Spanyhe  
 tong, signifieth a gulfe. The *Vincentius* had thus made a league  
 with these princes, folowynghis appoynted course, he founde  
 many regions toward y East, desolate by reason of diuers floods  
 and ouerflowyngs of waters: also many standyng pooles in di  
 uers places, and those of exceeding largenesse. He ceased not to  
 folowe this tracte, vntyl he came to the poynt or cape of that  
 mosse

Rulers for  
one yere.

The great  
gulfe of *Paria*.

most long lande. This poynt seemeth as though it would inuade the mount *Atlas* in *Africa*: for it prospecteth towarde that part of *Africa*, which the *Portugales* cal *Caput bonæ Sperantie*. The poynte & or capes of the mount *Atlas*, are rough and sauage, neere vnto the sea. The cape of *Bona Speranza*, gathereth thyrtye and foure degrees of the South pole, called the pole *Antarctike*, but that poynt only seuen degrees. I suppose this lande to be that, whiche I fynde in olde wyters of *Cosinographie* to be called the great *Ilande Atlantike*, without any further declaryng eyther of the situation, or of the nature thereof.

The great *I*  
land *Atlantike*,

The eight booke of the seconde Decade, of  
the supposed continent,



When *John* the king of *Portugale* liued, whiche was predecessour to him that nowe raigneeth, there arose a great contention betwene the *Castilians* and the *Portugales*, as concernyng the dominion of these newe founde landes. The *Portugales*, because they were the fyrst that durst attempte to searche the *Ocean* sea synce the memoire of man, affirmed that al the nauigations of the *Ocean*, ought to parteyne to them only. The *Castilians* argued on the contrary part, that whatsoeuer God by the ministracion of nature hath created on the earth, was at the begynnynge common among men, and that it is therefore lawfull to euery man to possesse such landes as are voyde of *Christian* inhabitours. Whyle the matter was thus vncertainely debated, both parties agreed that the controuersie shoulde be despyded by the byshop of *Rome*, and plighted fapth to stande to his arbitrement. The kyngdome of *Castile* was at that tyme gouerned by that great queene *Helisabeth* with her husband: for the Realme of *Castile* was her dowrie. She also and the kyng of *Portugale*, were cosyn germanes of two systers, by reason whereof, the dissention was moze easly pacified. By the assent therfore of both parties, *Alexander* the byshop of *Rome*, the vi. of that name, by thauthoritie of his leaden bull, drew a right lyne from the North to the South, an hundred leagues Westwarde, with

Contention be-  
twene the *Ca*  
stilians & *Por*  
tugales for the  
newe landes.

The byshop of  
*Rome* diuideth  
the landes,



## The seconde Decade.

without the paralels of those Ilandes whiche are called *Capas Viride*, or *Cabouerde*, within the compass of this lyne (although some deny it) falleth the poynt of this lande whereof we haue spoken, whiche they cal *Caput Sancti Augustini*, otherwysse called *Promontorium Sancti Augustini*, that is, saint Augustines cape or poynt: and therefore it is not lawfull for the Castilians to fasten foote in the begymmyng of that land, *Vincentius* Annex therefore departed from thence, beyng aduertised of the inhabitantes, that on the other syde of the hygh mountaynes towarde the South, lying before his eyes, there was a region called *Ciamba*, whiche brought forth great plentie of golde. Of certayne captiues whiche he tooke in the gulse of *Paria* (whiche certaynely parteyneth to the dominion of Castile) he brought some with him to *Hispaniola*, and left them with the young Admirall to learne our language: but he hym selfe repayed to the court, to make earnest suite to the kyng, that by his fauour he myght be gouernour of the Island of *Sancti Iohannis* (otherwise called *Burichena*, being distant from *Hispaniola* only, .xxv. leagues) because he was the fyrst finder of golde in that Islande. Before *Vincentius* made suite for this office, one *Don Christopher*, a Portugale, the sonne of the countie of *Camigna*, was gouernour of the Island, whom the *Cambales* of the other Ilandes slue, with al the Christian men that were in the same, except the Bishop and his familiers, whiche fled and hyfted for them selues, forsakynge the churche and al the ornamentes thereof: for your holynesse hath consecrated fye byshops in these Ilands, at the request of the most catholique king. In *Sancto Dominico* the chiefe citie of *Hispaniola*, *Garsia de Padilla*, a regular Fryer of the order of saint *Frauncis*, is byshop. In the towne of *Conception*, doctoz *Petrus Xuarez* of *Deza*, and in the Islande of saint Iohn or *Burichena*, *Alphonsus Mansus* a licenciate, being both obseruantes of the institution of saint *Peter*. The fourth is Fryer *Barnarde* of *Mesa*, a man of noble parentage, borne in *Toledo*, a preacher, & bishop of the Islande of *Cuba*. The fift is *Iohannes Cabedus*, a fryer preacher, whom your holynesse annoynted minister of Christe, to teache the Christian fayth among the inhabitantes of *Dariena*. The *Cambales* shal shortlye repent them, and the blood of our men shalbe reuenged, and that the sooner, because that shortly after they had committed this

The golden region of Ciamba.

The Islande of S. Iohannis.

Fyue byshops of the Islande made by the bishop of Rome.

this abominable slaughter of our men, they came agayne from theyr owne Ilande of *Sancta crux* (otherwise called *Ay Ay*) to the Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis*, and slue a kyng whiche was a freende to our men, and ate hym, and al his family, viterly subuerting his village, vpon this occasion, that violating the law of hostage, he had slayne seuen Canibales whiche were left with hym by composition to make certayne Canoas, because the Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis* beareth greater trees, and apter for that purpose; then doth the Iland of *Sancti crux*, the cheefe habitatiō of the Canibales. These Canibales yet remainyng in the Iland, certaine of our men saylyng from *Hispaniola*, chaunced vpon them. The thyng beyng vnderstoode by the interpreters, our men quarelling with them, and calling them to accompt for that mischeuous deede, they immediatly directed theyr bowes and venemous arrowes against them, and with cruell countenances threated them to be quiet, lest it shoulde repent them of theyr commyng thither. Our men fearyng theyr venemous arrowes (for they were not prepared to fyght) gaue them signes of peace. Beyng demaunded why they destroyed the byllage, and where the king was with his familie, they answered, that they raled the byllage, and cut the kyng with his familie in peeces, and ate them in the reuenge of theyr seuen woorkmen: and that they had made faggottes of theyr bones, to cary them to the wiues and chilsdren of theyr slayne woorkemen, in wytnesse that the bodyes of theyr husbandes and parentes lay not vreuenged, and therewith shewed the faggottes of bones to our men, who beyng astonysed at theyr fiercenesse and crueltie, were enforced to dissemble the matter, and holde theyr peace, quarelling no further with them at that tyme. These and suche other thynges doo dayly chaunce, the whiche I do let passe, lest I should offende the eares of your holynesse with such bloody narrations. Thus haue we sufficiently digressed from the regions of *Beragua* and *Vraba*, beyng the cheefest foundations of our purpose. We wyll now therefore entreate somewhat of the largenesse and deapth of the ryuers of *Vraba*: also declare both what they and the landes which they runne through do bying forth: lykwylse of the greatnesse of the lande from the East to the West, and of the breadth thereof from the South to the North, and what theyr opinion and hope

The Canibales  
of the Iland of  
*Sancta Cruz*.

The ryuers of  
*Vraba*.

hope is of thynges yet vnknownen in the same. We wil therfore begyn at the newe names, wherwith the Spanyardes haue named these prouinces, synce they were vnder the dominions of the Christians.

The nienth booke of the second Decade, of  
the supposed continent.



*B*eragua therfore they called *Castella Aurea*, that is, golden Castile, and *Vraba* they named *Andalusia noua*, that is, newe Andalusia. And lyke as of many Ilandes whiche they subdued, they chose *Hispaniola* for the cheefe place of theyr habitation: so in the large tracte of *Paria*, they appoynted theyr colonie or biding place in the two regions of *Vraba* and *Beragua*, that al suche as attempt any voyages in those coastes, may resort to them, as to safe portes to be refreshed when they are weerie or dryuen to necessitie. Al our seedes and plantes do now marueylously encrease in *Vraba*, lykewyse blades, settes, slippes, grasses, suger canes, and suche other as are brought from other places to those regions, as also beastes and foules, as we haue sayd before: O marueylous fruitefulnesse. Twentie dayes after the seede is sownen, they geather rype cucumbers, and such lyke, but *Collwoortes*, *Beetes*, *Lettule*, *Bozage*, are rype within the space of ten dayes. *Gourdes*, *Melones*, and *Pompions*, within the space of .xxviii. dayes. *Dariena* hath many natieue trees and fruites, of diuers kinds, with sundry tastes, & holseme for the vse of men, of the which I haue thought it good to describe certaine of the best. They nouryshe a tree whiche they call *Guaiana*, that beareth a fruite muche resembling the kinde of *Citrones* which are commonly called *Limonos*, of taste somewhat sharpe, myxt with sweetenes. They haue also abundance of nuts of pine trees, and great plentie of *Date* trees, which beare fruites bigger then the *Dates* that are knownen to vs, but they are not apt to be eaten for theyr much sowynesse. Wilde & barren *Date* trees grow of them selues in sundry places, the branches wherof they vse for beesomes, and eate also the buddees of the samie. *Guaranana*, being hygher and hygher then the orange tree, byngeth forth a great fruite

The fruitfulness  
of Vraba.

The fruitfulness  
of Dariena

fruite as bygge as pome Citrons. There is another tree much like to a chestnut tree, whose fruite is like to the bigger sorte of fygs, beyng holsome and of pleasant taste. *Mameis*, is another tree that bringeth forth fruite as bygge as an orange, in taste nothing inferior to the best kindes of *Helones*. *Guananala*, beareth a fruite lesse then any of the other, but of sweete savour like spice, and of dilectable taste. *Honos* is another tree, whose fruite both in shape and taste is muche lyke to prunes, but somewhat bygger: they are surely perswaded that this is the *Myrobalane* tree. These growe so abundantly in *Hispaniola*, that the hogges are fedde with the fruite therof, as with mast among vs. The hogges like this kynde of feedyng so wel, that when these fruites ware ripe, the swineheards can by no meanes keepe them out of the woods of these trees, by reason whereof, a great multitude of them are become wilde. They also affirme, that in *Hispaniola* swines flesh is of muche better taste and more wholsome then mutton: for it is not to be doubted, but that diuers kindes of meates do engender sundry tastes and qualities in such as are nourished therewith. The most puissant prince *Ferdinandus*, declared that he had eaten of another fruite brought from those landes, being full of scales, with keyes, much lyke a pineapple in fourme and colour, but in tendernes equal to melow pepons, and in taste exceeding al garden fruites: for it is no tree, but an hearbe, much like vnto an archichoke, or *Acantho*: The king him selfe gaue the cheefest commendation to this. I haue eaten none of these fruites: for of a great number which they brought from thence, only one remained vncorrupted, the other being putrified by reason of the long voyage. Alsuche as haue eaten of them newly geathered in their native soyle, do marueylously commende theyr sweetenesse and pleasaunt taste. They dygge also out of the grounde certayne rootes growyng of them selues, whiche they call *Betatas*, muche lyke vnto the nauie rootes of *Billane*, or the great puffes or mushromes of the earth. Howsoeuer they be dyessed, epyther fyled or sodde, they geue place to no such kynde of meate in pleasant tendernes. The skynne is somewhat rougher then epyther the nauies or mushromes, and of earthy colour, but the inner meate therof is very white: These are nourished in gardens, as we sayd of *Iucca* in the first Decade. They are also eaten rawe,

Swynes fleshe  
of better taste &  
more holsome  
then mutton,

If fruites putris-  
fied on the sea,

*Betatas*.

and



Lions and  
Tygers.

A strange  
beast.

The ryuers of  
Vraba.

A league is  
xxiiii. fur-  
longes.

Danubius.

A Crocodile is  
muche lyke a  
Pente, but of  
exceedyng  
bignesse.

and haue the taste of rawe chestnuts, but are somewhat sweeter. We haue spoken sufficiently of trees, hearbes, and fruites, we wyl now therefore entreate of thynges sencitiue. The landes and desolate pastures of these regions, are inhabited and deuoured of wylde and terrible beastes, as Lions, Tygers, and suche other monstres as we nowe knowe, and haue ben described of olde auctours in tyme past. But there is specially one beast engendred here, in which nature hath endeoured to shew her cunning: This beast is as hygge as an Oxe, armed with a long snoute lyke an Elephant, and yet no Elephant, of the colour of an ore, and yet no ore, with the hooft of a horse, and yet no horse, with eares also muche lyke vnto an Elephant, but not so open, nor so much hangyng downe, yet muche wyder then the eares of any other beast. Of the beast which beareth her whelpes about with her in her second belly as in a purse (theyng knowen to none of the olde wyters) I haue spoken in the fyrst Decade, which I doubt not to haue come to the handes of your holynesse. Let vs nowe therefore declare what resteth of the flooddes and ryuers of Vraba. The riuer of Dariena falleth into the gulse of Vraba, with a narrow chanel, scarcely able to beare the Canoas or Lighters of that prouince, and runneth by the billage where they chole theyr dwelling place, but the ryuer in the corner of the gulse whiche we sayde that Vascbus passed by, they founde to be xxxiii. furlonges in breadth (whiche they call a league) and of exceedyng deapth, as of two hundred cubits, fallyng into the gulse by diuers mouthes. They say that this riuer falleth into the gulse of Vraba, lyke as the ryuer Ister (otherwyle called Danubius, and Danowe) falleth into the sea Pontike, and Nilus into the sea of Egypt, wherefore they named it Grandis, that is, great: whiche also they aspyne to nouryshe many and great Crocodiles, as the old wyters testifie of Nilus, and especially as I haue learned by experience, haupyng sayled by and downe the riuer of Nilus, when I was sent Ambassadour to the Souleane of Alcazz, at the commaundement of the most catholique kyng. What I may therefore geather out of the wytynges of so many learned auctours as concernyng the riuer of Nilus, I knowe not: for they say that nature hath geuen two ryuers of that name to water the lande, whether they wyl them to spyrng out of the mountaynes of the moone

moone or the sunne, or out of the tops of the rough mountaines of *Ethiopia*, affirming one of the same to fall into the gulfes of *Egypt* toward the North, and the other into the South Ocean sea. What shal we say in this place? Of that *Nilus* in *Egypt* there is no doubt. The Portugales also which sayle by the coastes of the *Ethiopians* called *Nigrita*, and by the kyngdome of *Melinda*, passing vnder þe Equinoctial lync, among theyr marueylous inuentions haue found another toward the South, and earnestly affirme the same to be also deriued from the mountaynes of the moone, and that it is another chanel of *Nilus*, because it byingeth forth *Crocodiles*, whereas it hath not ben read before time, that any other riuer nourished *Crocodiles* sauing only *Nilus*. This riuer the Portugales cal *Senega*. It runneth through the region of the *Nigritas*, beyng very fruiteful toward the North shore, but on the South syde sandie and rough. *Crocodiles* are also engendred herein. What shal we then say of this thirde? yea I may wel say the fourth: for I suppose them also to be *Crocodiles*, whiche *Colonus* with his company found, armed with scales as hard as shelles, in the ryuer called *Delagartos*, wherof we haue made mention before. Shal we say that these ryuers of *Dariena* also and *Vraba*, haue theyr original from the mountaynes of the moone, wheras they spring out of the next mountaynes, and can by no meanes haue the same original with *Nilus* in *Egypt*, or that in *Nigrita*, or els that in the kyngdome of *Melinda*, from whence so euer they are derpued, whereas these other (as we haue sayde) spring out of the next mountaynes, which diuide another South sea, with no great distance from the North Ocean. Wherefore, it appeareth by experience of such as haue trauailed the world in our tyme, that other waters besyde the riuer of *Nilus* in *Egypt*, may lykewyse bying forth *Crocodiles*. In the *Marythes* also and fennes of the regions of *Dariena*, are founde great plentie of *Phesantes* and *Peacockes* (but not of variable colours) with manye other kyndes of byrdes and foules vnlke vnto ours, aswel apt to be eaten, as also to delyte the eares of men with pleasaunt noyse. But our *Spanyardes*, because they are ignorant in sowlyng, take but fewe. Also innumerable poppingayes of sundry kyndes are founde chattering in the groues of those fennie places. Of these there are some equall to Ca-

The Portugales  
naungatt  
ons.

## The seconde Decade.

pons in bygnesse, and some as lytle as sparowes. But of the diuerstie of poppyngayes, we haue spoken sufficiently in the fyrste Decade: for in the case of this large lande, *Colonus* hym selfe brought and sent to the courte a great number of euery kynde, the whiche it was lawfull for all the people to beholde, and are yet dayly brought in like manner. There remaineth yet one thyng mooste woorthy to be put in hystorie, the whiche, I had rather to haue chaunced into the handes of *Cicero* or *Liue*, then into myne: for the thyng is so marueylous in my estimation, that I fynde my wytte more entangled in the discription hereof, then is sayde of the henne when she seeth her young chycken inwapped in towne or flaxe. The breadth of that lande from the North Ocean to the south sea, is only sixe dayes iourney, by relation of the inhabitauntes. The multitude therfore and greatnesse of the riuers on the one syde, and on the other syde the narrownesse of the lande, byying me into suche doubt howe it can come to passe, that in so lytle a space of three dayes iourney, measurypg from the high toppes of those mountaynes, I doo not vnderstande howe so many and so great ryuers may haue recourse vnto this North sea: for it is to be thought, that as many do flow toward the inhabitants of the south. These riuers of *Vraba* are but small, in comparison of many other in those coastes: for the Spaniards say, that in the tyme of *Colonus*, they found and passed by an other riuer after this, whose gulfte fallypg into y<sup>e</sup> sea, they affirme to be litle lesse then a hundred myles in the fyrst coastes of *Parla*, as we haue sayde elsewhere: for they say, that it falleth from the toppes of high mountaynes with so swyft and furious a course, that by the violence and greatnesse thereof, it dypueth backe the sea, although it be rough & enforced with a contrary wynd. They al affirme lykewyse, that in al the large tracte therof, they felt no lowe or salt water, but that all the water was freeste, sweete, and apt to be drunke. The inhabitauntes call this ryuer *Maragonum*, and the regions adiaacent to the same, *Mariatambal*, *Camamorus*, and *Paricora*: belyde those riuers whiche I haue named before, as *Darien*, *Grandis*, *Dabaiba*, *Beragua*, *Sancti Mathei*, *Boius gatii*, *Delagartos*, & *Gaira*, they which of late haue searched those coastes, haue founde many other. Deliberatypg therfore with me selfe, from whence these mountaynes, beyng so

narrowe

A philosophi-  
cal discourse  
as concerning  
the original of  
springs and  
ryuers.

The breadth  
of the lande  
at *Vraba*, from  
the North O-  
cean to the  
South sea.

narowwe and neare into the sea on both sydes, haue suche great holowe caues or denmes of such capacitie, and from whence they are fylled, to cast forth suche abundance of water: hereof also as- kyng them the opinions of the inhabitauntes, they affirme them to be of diuers iudgementes herein, alleaging fyrst the greatnes of the mountaynes to be the cause, whiche they say to be verpe high, whiche thyng also *Colonus* the first synder thereof affirmeth to be true, addyng thereunto that the paradise of pleasure is in the tops of those mountaynes whiche appeare from the gulfe of Paria & Os Draconis, as he is fully perswaded. They agree there- fore that there are great caues within these mountaynes, but it resteth to consyder from whence they are fylled. If therfore al the riuers of freshe waters, by the opinion of many, do so flowe out of the sea, as dyuen and compelled through the passages or pores of the earth, by the ponderous weyght of the sea it selfe, as we see them breake forth of the springes, and directe theyr course to the sea agayne, then the thyng is lesse to be maruey- led at here, then in other places: for we haue not read that in any other place, two suche seas haue enuironed any lande with so narowwe lymyttes: for it hath on the ryght syde the great Ocean, where the sunne goeth downe on the left hande, and another on the other syde where the sunne ryseth, nothyng inferiour to the fyrste in greatnesse, for they suppose it to be myrte and ioyned as al one with the sea of East India. This lande therfore beyng burdened with so great a weyght on the one syde, & on the other, (yf this opinion be of any value) is enforced to swalowe by such deuoured waters, and agayne to cast forth the same in open springes and streames. But yf we shall denye that the earth draweth humours of the sea, and agree that all fountaynes or springes are engendred of the conuersion or turnyng of ayre into water, distilling within the holow places of the mountaines (as the most part thinke) we wyll geue place rather to thaucho- ritie of them whiche stycke to those reasons, then that our sense is satisfied of the ful trueth thereof. Yet do I not repagne, that in some caues of mountaynes, water is turned into ayre: for I mee selfe haue seene, howe in the caues of manye mountaynes in Spayne, in manner showes of rayne do fall continuallye, and that the water gathered by this meanes, doth sende forth

The sea.

The lande en-  
closed with  
two seas.Conuersion of  
ayre into wa-  
ter in the ca-  
ues of moun-  
taines.



## The seconde Decade.

certayne riuers by the sydes of the mountaynes, wherewith all  
suche trees as are planted on the steepe or foote of the mountay-  
nes, as vines, olive trees, and suche other, are watered, and this  
especially in one place: as the right honorable Lodouike the  
Cardinal of Aragonie, most obsequious to your holynesse, and  
two other bishops of Italy, whereof the one is *Siluius Pandonus*,  
and the other an Archbishop (whose name and title I do not re-  
member) can beare me witnesse: for when we were together at  
*Granata*, lately deliuered from the dominion of the Moores, and  
walked for our pastyme to certaine pleasant hilles (by the whiche  
there ranne a fayre ryuer) while Cardinal Lodouike occupied  
hym selfe in shootyng at byrdes whiche were in the bushes neere  
vnto the ryuer, I & thother two bishops determined to clyme the  
mountaynes, to searche the original and spring of the ryuer: for  
we were not farre from the toppes thereof. Following therfore  
the course of the ryuer, we founde a great caue, in which was a  
continual fall of water, as it had ben a showre of rayne, the wa-  
ter whereof, falling into a trenche made with mans hande, en-  
creaseeth to a ryuer, and runneth downe by the sydes of the moun-  
taynes. The lyke is also seene in this famous towne of *Vallado-  
leto* (where we nowe sojourne) in a certaine greene close, not past  
a furlong distant from the walles of the towne. I graunt there-  
fore, that in certayne places, by conuersion of the ayrie deawe in-  
to water, within the caues of suche mountaynes, many springes  
and riuers are engendred: but I suppose that nature was not sol-  
licitate to byrnyng forth suche great floods by this so small indu-  
strie. Two reasons therfore do sounde best to my iudgement:  
wherof the one is, the often fall of rayne: the other, the continual  
autume or spring tyme which is in those regions, being so neere  
vnto the Equinoctial, that the common people can perceiue no  
difference betweene the length of the day and the nyght through-  
out all the yeere, where as these two seasons are more apt to en-  
gender abundance of rayne, then eyther extreme wynter, or fer-  
uent sommer. An other reason in effect much like vnto the first,  
is this: If the sea be ful of pores, and that by the pores therof, be-  
ing opened by the south wyndes, we shal consent that vapours  
are lyfted vp, wherof the watery cloudes are engendred, this  
lande must needes be moysted with more showres then anye o-  
ther,

The often fall of  
rayne and con-  
tinuall spring  
tyme.  
The Equinoec-  
tiall.

The pores of  
the sea, and the  
south wynde.

ther, yf it be as narrowe as they say, and enuironed with two  
 mayne seas collaterally beatyng on the same: howsoeuer it be,  
 I can not but geue credite to the report of suche worthy men as  
 haue recourse to those regions, and can no lesse then declare the  
 same, albeit it may seeme incredible to some ignorant persons,  
 not knowing the power of nature, to whom, *Plinie* was perswa-  
 ded, that nothing was impossible. We haue therefore thought it  
 good to make this discourse by the way of argument, lest on  
 the one syde, men of good learnyng and iudgement, and on  
 the other syde, suche as are studious to finde occasions of quarel-  
 lyng in other mens wyptynges, shoulde iudge vs to be so vndis-  
 crete, lightly to geue credite to euery tale, not being consonant  
 to reason: but of the force and great violence of those freshe wa-  
 ters, whiche repulshyng the sea, make so great a gulf (as we haue  
 sayde) I thynke the cause thereof to be the great multitude of  
 floods and riuers, whiche beyng geathered together, make so  
 great a poole, and not one ryuer, as they suppose. And foras-  
 much as the mountaynes are exceeding high and steepe, I thinke  
 the violence of the fall of the waters to be of suche force, that this  
 conflict betweene the waters, is caused by thimpulsion of the  
 poole, that the salt water can not enter into the gulf. But here  
 perhaps some wyl marueyle at me, why I should marueyle so  
 muche hereat, speakyng vnto me scornefully, after this manner:  
 Why doth he so marueyle at the great riuers of those regions?  
 Hath not *Italie* his *Eridanus*, named the kyng of ryuers of the  
 old wyters? Haue not other regions also the lyke: as we reade  
 of *Tanais*, *Ganges*, and *Danubius*, which are sayde so to ouercome  
 the sea, that freshe water may be drawen fourtie myles within  
 the same. These men I would satisfie with this answer. The  
 famous ryuer of *Padus* in *Italie* (whiche they nowe call *Po*,  
 and was of the Greekes called *Eridanus*) hath the great moun-  
 taynes called *Alpes*, diuiding *Fraunce*, *Germanie*, and *Danno-*  
*nie*, from *Italie*, lyng at the backe therof, as it were bulwarkes  
 agger, full of moysture, and with a long tracte receiuyng *Tici-*  
*nam*, with innumerable other great ryuers, falleth into the sea  
*Adriatike*. The lyke is also to be vnderstoode of the other. But  
 these ryuers (as our men were enfourmed by the kynges) fall  
 into the Ocean sea with larger and fuller channels neere hande,

The fable  
*Eridanus*.

## The seconde Decade.

and some there are whiche affirme this lande to be very large in other places, although it be but narrowe here. There commeth also to my remembraunce another cause, the whiche although it be of no great force, yet do I entende to wyte it. Perhaps therefore the length of the lande reachyng farre from the East to the West, if it be narrowe, may be a helpe hereunto: for as we reade, that the rpuer *Alpheus* passeth through the holowe places under the sea, from the citie of *Elis* in *Peloponeso*, and breaketh forth at the fountayne or spring *Arethusa* in the Island of *Sicillia*, so is it possible that these mountaines may haue such long caues parteynyng vnto them, that they may be the receptacles of the water passing through the landes beyng farre distant, and that the same waters comyng by so long a tracte, may in the way be greatly encreased, by the conuersion of ayre into water, as we haue sayde. Thus much haue I spoken freely, permitting both to them which do frendly interpyete other mens dooyngs, and also to the malicious scorners, to take the thing euen as them lysteth, for hitherto I can make no further declaration hereof, but when the trueth shalbe better knowen, I wil do my diligence to commit the same to wytyng. Nowe therfore, forasmuch as we haue spoken thus muche of the breadyth of this lande, we entende to describe the length and fourme of the same.

### The tenth booke of the seconde Decade, of the supposed continent.

The length  
and forme of  
the Island.



What lande reacheth forth into the sea, euen as doth Italy, although not lyke the legge of a man, as it doth. But nowe I compare a *Higmean* or a dwarfe, to a Giant: for that part thereof whiche the Spanyardes haue ouer runne, from the sayd East poynt which reacheth towarde the sea Atlantike, (the ende not beyng yet founde towarde the West) is more then eyght tymes longer then Italye. And by what reason I am moued to say eyght tymes, your holynesste shall vnderstande. From the tyme therefore that I fyrste determined to obeye theyr requestes, who wylled me fyrst in your name to wyte these thynges

thinges in the Latine tongue, I did my endeour that al things  
 myght comie forth with due triall and experience: whereupon  
 I repayed to the Bishop of Burges, beyng the cheefe refuge of  
 this nauigation. As we were therfore secretly togeather in one  
 chamber, we had many instruments pertaineing to these affaires,  
 as globes, and many of those maps whiche are commonly called  
 the shipmans cardes, or cardes of the sea. Of the which, one was  
 drawen by the Portugales, wherunto *Americus Vesputius* is said  
 to haue put to his hande, beyng a man most expert in this fa-  
 cultie, and a Florentine boine, who also vnder the stipende of the  
 Portugales, had sayled towarde the South pole many degrees  
 beyonde the Equinoctiall. In this carde we founde the first troupe  
 of this lande to be broder then the kynges of *Yraha* had per-  
 swaded our men of theyr mountaynes. To another, *Colonus* the  
 Admiral, while he yet lyued, and searched those places, had ge-  
 uen the beginning with his owne handes: wherunto *Bartholo-  
meus Colonus* his brother and Lieutenant had added his iudge-  
 ment, for he also had sayled about those coastes. Of the Spany-  
 ardes lykewyse, as many as thought them selues to haue anye  
 knowledge what parteyned to measure the land & the sea, drew  
 certayne cardes in parchment as concernyng these nauigations.  
 Of all other, they moste esteeme them whiche *Iohannes de la  
Cossa* the companion of *Fogeda* (whom we sayde to be Rayne of  
 the people of *Caramairi* in the haven of *Carthago*) and another ex-  
 pert pylote called *Andreas Moralis*, had set forth. And this as-  
 wel for the great experience which they both had (to whom these  
 tractes were aswel knownen as the chambers of theyr owne hou-  
 ses) as also that they were thought to be cunninger in that part  
 of Cosmographie, which teacheth the description and measuring  
 of the sea. Conferreing therfore at these cardes togeather, in euery  
 of the whiche was drawen a lyne, expressing not the myles, but  
 leagues, after the maner of the Spaniardes, we tooke our com-  
 passes, & began to measure the sea coastes after this order. From  
 that point or fronte whiche we sayde to be included within the  
 lyne parteynyng to the Portugales iurisdiction, beyng drawen  
 by the paralleles of the Islands of *Cabouendas*, but a hundred lea-  
 gues further towarde the West (whiche they haue now also  
 searched on euery syde) we founde three hundred leagues, to the  
 entrance

Cardes of  
the sea.

The carde of  
*Americus  
Vesputius*.

The carde of  
*Colonus*.

The carde of  
*Iohannes de la  
Cossa*.

The carde of  
*Andreas mor-  
alis*.

The maner of  
measuring the  
cardes.

*Argentine*  
*Indes*  
*Indes*  
*Indes*



league.

entrance of the riuer *Maragnonum*; and from thence to *Os Draconis*, seven hundred leagues, but somewhat lesse by the discription of some, for they doo not agree in al poyntes exquisitely. The Spaniards wyl that a league conteyne foure myles by sea, and but three by lande. From *Os Draconis*, to the cape or poynt of *Cuchibacoa*, whiche being passed, there is a gulf on the left hande, we measured three hundred leagues in one Card, & much thereabout in another. From this poynt of *Cuchibacoa*, to the region of *Caramairi*, in whiche is the haven *Cartago* (whiche some cal *Cartagena*) we found about a hundred & seuentie leagues. From *Caramairi* to the Island *Fortis*, fiftie leagues. From thence to the gulfes of *Praba*, among the whiche is the byllage called *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, where the Spaniards haue appoynted theyr habitation, only xxxiii. leagues. From the ryuer of *Praba* in the prouince of *Dariena*, to y<sup>e</sup> riuer of *Beragua*, where *Nicuesa* had intended to haue fastened his foote, if God had not otherwylse decreed, we measured a hundred and thirtie leagues. From *Beragua*, to that riuer, which we said of *Colonus* to be called *Sancti Matthei*, in the which also *Nicuesa* loosing his Carauel, wandered in great calamities, we founde in our Cardes only a hundred and fourtie leagues: Yet many other whiche of late tyme haue come from these partes, haue described many mo leagues in this tract from the ryuer of *Sancti Matthei*, in whiche also they place diuers ryuers, as *Aburema*, with the Island called *Scutum Catiba*, lying before it, whose kyngs name is *Facies combusta*. Likewise another ryuer called *Zobraba*, after that, *Vrida*, and then *Duraba*, in the which golde is founde. Furthermore, many goodly hauens, as *Cerabaro* and *Hiebra*, so called of the inhabitants: And thus yf your holynesse wyl conferre these numbers togeather, you shall fynde in this accompt, a thousand, fyue hundred, twentie and fyue leagues, which amount to fyue thousande & seven hundred miles, from the poynt of *Sancti Matthei*, whiche they cal *Sinum perditum*, that is, The gulf of y<sup>e</sup> lost men. But we may not leaue here: for after this, one *Asur Ouetenis*, otherwylse named *Iohannes Dias de Solis*, bozne in *Nebrissa* (whiche byngeth soorth many learned men) sayling from this riuer towarde the West, ouerranne many coastes and leagues, but the middlest of that thore bendeth towarde the North, and is not therefore directly placed in order

The nauigation of Iohannes Dias.

with

with the other, yet may we geather by a diameter or right lyne, about thre hundred leagues. Whereby may you geather what is the length of this lande, but of the breadth, perhaps we shal hereafter haue further knowledge. Let vs nowe speake somewhat of the varietie of the degrees of the eleuation of the pole starres. This lande therefore, although it reache forth from the East into the West, yet is it crooked, and hath the poynt bendynge so toward the South, that it looseth the syght of the North pole, and is extended beyonde the Equinoctial lyne seuen degrees toward the South pole: but the poynt hereof, parteyneth to the iurisdiction of the Portugales, as we haue sayde. Leauing this poynt, and saylynge toward *Paria*, the North starre is seene agayne, & is so much the more lifted vp, in how much the region euclineth more toward the West. The Spanyardes therefore haue diuers degrees of eleuations, vntyll they come to *Dariena*, being theyr cheefe station and dwelling place in those landes: for they haue forsaken *Beragua*, where they founde the North pole eleuate. viii. degrees, but from hence, the land doth so much bend toward the North, that it is there in manner equal with the degrees of the straghtes of Hercules pylles, especially yf we measure certaine landes founde by them toward the North syde of *Hispaniola*, among the which there is an Island about thre. C. and. xlv. leagues fro *Hispaniola*, as they say which haue searched the same, named *Boiuca*, or *Agnaneo*, in the which is a continuall spring of running water, of such marueilous vertue, that y water thereof being drunke, perhaps with some diet, maketh olde men young agayne. And here must I make protestation to your honneste, not to thynke this to be sayde lyghtly or rashly, for they haue so spread this rumour for a trueth throughout al the courte, that not onely al the people, but also many of them whom wyse dome or fortune hath diuided from the common sort, thynke it to be true: but yf you shal aske my opinion herein, I wyl answere, that I wyl not attribute so great power to nature, but that God hath no lesse reserued this prerogatiue to hym selfe, then to searche the hartes of men, or to geue substance to priuation, (that is) beyng, to no beyng, except we shall beleeue the fable of *Colchis* of *Eson* renouate, to be as true as the wyrtynnes of *Sibylla Erythrea*, Albeit perhaps the scooles of Philosophies

The eleuation  
of the pole.

The iurisdiction  
of the  
Portugales.

Hercules pyl  
lers.

The Islande  
*Boiuca* or  
*Agnaneo*.  
The renouatis  
on of age.  
A water of mar  
ueilous vertue.

and

## The seconde decade.

and natural philosophers, wyll not muche stycke to affyrme, that by the vse of certayne secrete medicines and dyet, the accidentes of age (as they cal them) may be long hydden and deferred, whiche they wyl to be vnderstoode by the renouation of age. And so haue sayde thus much of the length and breadth of these regions, and of the rough and hugious mountaynes, with theyr waterpe caues, also of the diuers degrees of that lande, I thinke it sufficient. But I thought it not good to let passe what chaunced to these miserable men among theyr generall calamities. I remember that when I was a chyld, me thought my botwelles grated, and that my spirites were maruelously troubled for very pittie, when I read in the poete Virgyl, howe *Achemenides* was left of *Vlysses* vpon the sea bankes among y<sup>e</sup> gigantes called *Cyclopes*, where for the space of many dayes from the departyng of *Vlysses*, vntyl the comming of *Eneas*, he eate none other meate, but only berries and hawes. But our vnforgunate *Spaniards*, whiche folowed *Nicuesa* to inhabite *Beragua*, would haue esteemed hawes & berries for great delicates. What should I heare speake of the head of an asse bought for a great pryce, and of such other extremities as men haue suffered in towne besieged: After that *Nicuesa* had determined to leaue *Beragua* for the barrenesse of the soyle, he attempted to searche *Portum Bellum*, and then the coastes of the poynt called *Marmor*, yf he myght there fynde a place moze fortunate to inhabite. In this meane tyme, so greuous famine oppressed his souldiers, that they neyther abstained fro eating of mangie dogges, which they had with them, as wel for theyr defence as for huntynge (for in the warre agaynst the naked people, dogges stood them in great steade) nor yet sometyme from the flaine inhabitauntes: for they found not there any fruitfull trees, or plentie of foules, as in *Dariena*, but a barren ground, and not meete to be inhabited. Here certaine of the souldiers made a bargayne with one of their felowes for the pryce of a leane dogge, who also was almost dead for hunger: they gaue the owner of the dogge many of those peeces of gold which they cal *Pesos*, or golden Castellans. Thus agreeing of the pryce, they slayed the dogge to be eaten, and cast his mangie skynne, with the bones of the head hangyng thereto, among the bushes. The day folowynge, a certayne footeyman of theyr compaignye, chaim-

The accidentes  
of age may be  
hydden.

Extreme hun-  
ger.

This was at  
the sieg of Hieru-  
salem.

Many dogges  
eaten.

A mangie dog  
beare folde.

red to fynde the skynne being nowe full of maggottes and stynk-  
 yng. He brought it home with hym, sodde it, and eate it. Many  
 resorted to hym with theyr dysshes for the brothe of the sodde  
 skynne, profering hym for euerye dysshfull a piece of golde.  
 An other founde two toades, and sodde them, which a sycke man  
 bought of hym for two fine shurtes, curiously wrought of linnen  
 intermyxed with golde. Certayne other wanderyng about to  
 seeke for vittuals, found in a pathway in the myddest of a feelde,  
 a dead man, of the inhabitantes, which had ben slaine of his owne  
 compayn, and was nowe rotten and stynkyng. They drewe  
 hym a syde, dismembred hym secretly, roasted hym, and ate  
 hym, therewith allwagynge theyr hunger, as yf they had ben  
 fedde with pheasauntes. One also, whiche departing from his  
 companions in the nyght season, went a fyshyng among the  
 reedes of the marysshes, lyued only with slyme or mudde for the  
 space of certayne dayes, vntyl at the length creepynge, & almost  
 deade, he founde the way to his felowes. And thus these mise-  
 rable men of *Beragua*, vexed with these and suche other afflictions,  
 were brought from the number of seuen hundredeth, threescore and  
 ten souldiers, scarcely to fourtie, beyng nowe also added to the  
 compayn of them in *Dariena*. Fewe were slayne of thinhabi-  
 tauntes, but the resydue consumed by famine, breathed out  
 theyr wery soules, openyng a way to the newe landes for suche  
 as shal come after them, appeasynge the fury of the barbarous na-  
 tions, with the pryce of theyr blood. Consyderynge therfore, after  
 these storres, with what ease other men shall ouerrunne and in-  
 habite these landes, in respect to the calamities that these men  
 haue suffered, they shall seeme to goe to hyde feastes, where all  
 thynges are redy prepared agaynst theyr comynge. But where  
*Petrus Arias* arryued with the kynges nauie and newe supply of  
 men, to this houre I knowe no certantie. What shal chaunce  
 hereafter, I wyl make diligent inquisition, if I shal vnderstand  
 this to be acceptable to your hoynes. Thus I byd you farewell:  
 from the courte of the most Catholyke kyng, the daye before the  
 nones of December, in the yere of Christ. 1514.

Broth of a  
 mangie dogs  
 skynne.

Toades eaten.

A dead man  
 eaten.

Note.

*Petrus Arias*  
 who the Spas  
 nyards call  
*Pedriarias*.

The



## The thyrde decade.

**A stone in the** without instrumentes of Iron, with certayne sharpe stones,  
**Reeds of Iron.** whiche they fynde in the ryuers. Thus *Vaschus*, leaupng all  
thynges in safetie behinde hym, marched forwarde with his ar-  
mie toward the mountaines, by the conduct of certayne guides  
and labourers which *Poncha* had geuen him, aswel to leade hym  
the way, as also to cary his baggages, and open the strayghtes  
through the desolate places and craggie rockes ful of the denness  
of wyld beasts: for there is seldome any entercourse of buying  
and sellng betweene these naked people, because they stande in  
neede offewe thynges, and haue not the vse of money: but yf at  
any tyme they exercise any barterng, they doo it but neere  
hande, exchangng golde for household stuffe, with their confines,  
which somewhat esteeme y same for ornament when it is wrought.  
**Superflui-** Other superfluities they vterly contemne, as hynderaunces of  
**ties hynder** theyr sweete libertie, forasmuche as they are geuen only to play  
**libertie.** and idlenes. And for this cause y high wayes which lye betwene  
theyr regions, are not muche woyn with manye iourneyes, yet  
haue theyr scoutes certayne priuie markes, wherby they knowe  
the way the one to inuade the others dominions, and spoyle and  
infest them selues on both sydes with mutual incursions priuily  
in the nyght season. By the helpe therfore of theyr guides and  
labozers, with our **Carpenters,** he passed ouer the horrible moun-  
taines, and many great ryuers lying in the way, ouer the which  
**Hydges.** he made hydges, either with pylles or trunks of trees. And here  
doo I let passe many thynges whiche they suffered for lacke of  
necessaries, being also in maner ouercome with extreme labour,  
lest I shoulde be tedious in rehearsing thinges of small value.  
But I haue thought it good not to omitt suche dooynge as he  
had with the kynges by the way. Therefore or euer he came to  
the toppes of the high mountaynes, he entred into a region cal-  
**The region of** led *Quarequa*, and mette with the king thereof called by the same  
**Quarequa.** name, with a great bande of men armed after theyr manner,  
as with bowes and arrowes, long and brode two handed  
swoozdes made of wood, long staues hardened at the endes with  
fyre, dartes also and slynges. He came proudeley and cruellye  
agaynst our men, and sent messengers to them to bydde them  
stande and proceede no further, demaundng whyther they  
went, and what they had to doo there: Herewith he came  
foorth

foorth and shewed hym selfe, beyng apparelled with al his nobilitie, but the other were al naked. Then approaching towarde our men, he threathed the, with a Lions countenance, to depart from thence, except they woulde be slayne euery mothers some. When our men denyed that they woulde goe backe, he assailed them fiercely, but the battayle was soone finished: for as soone as they hearde the noyse of the hargabulies, they beleued that our men carped thunder and lyghnyng about with them. Many also beyng slayne and sore wounded with quarrels of crossebowes, they turned theyr backs and fledde. Our men folowing them in the chase, hewed them in peeces, as the Butchers doo fleshe in the shambles, from one an arme, from another a legge, from hym a buttocke, from another a shoulder, and from some the necke from the bodie at one stroke. Thus, fyre hundred of them, with theyr kyng, were slayne lyke brute bestes. *Vaschus* founde the house of this kyng infected with moste abominable and vnnaturall lechery: for he founde the kynges brother, and many other young men in womens apparell, smoothe and effeminately decked, whiche by the report of suche as dwelt about hym, he abused with preposterous venus. Of these about the number of fourtie, he commaunded to be geuen for a pray to his dogges: for (as we haue sayd) the Spanyardes vse the helpe of dogges in theyr warres agaynst the naked people, whom they iniude as fiercely and rauenyngly, as yf they were wilde bores or Hartes: insomuche that our Spanyardes haue founde theyr dogges no lesse faythful to them in al dangers and enterprises, then dyd the Colophonians or Castabalences, whiche instituted whole armies of dogges, so made to serue in the warres, that beyng accustomed to place them in the forefront of the battayles, they neuer shonke or gaue backe. When the people had hearde of the seuerer punishment whiche our men had executed vpon that fylthy kynde of men, they resorted to them as it had ben to Hercules for refuge, by violence bypugnyng with them all suche as they knewe to be infected with that pestilence, spyttyng in theyr faces, and cryng out to our men to take reuenge of them, and rydde them out of the worlde from among men, as contagious bestes. This synkyng abomination had not yet entred among the people, but was exercised onely

kyng Quares  
qua is dyuen  
to fyght.  
Hargabulies.

Crossebowes

bi. C. Barbarians  
are slaine

The vse of  
dogges in the  
warre agaynst  
the naked  
Barbarians.

Natural ha-  
tred of vnnat-  
ural sinnes.

by

I woulde al  
men were of  
this opinion.

by the noble men and gentlemen. But the people lvsyng by  
theyr handes & eyes toward heauen, gaue tokens that God was  
greuously offended with suche byle deedes, affyrmyng this to  
be the cause of theyr so many thundersynges, lychtynng, and tem-  
pestes, wherewith they are so often troubled, and of the ouer-  
flowyng of waters which drowne theyr sets and frutes, whereof  
famyne and diuers diseases ensue, as they simply and saythfully  
belene, although they knowe none other GOD then the sunne,  
whom only they honour, thinkyng that it doth both geue and  
take away, as it is pleased or offended: Yet are they very docti-  
ble, and easie to be allured to our customes and religion, if they  
had any teacher. In theyr language there is nothyng unplea-  
saunt to the eare, or harde to be pronounced, but that all theyr  
woordes may be wyrtten with latine letters, as we sayde of the  
inhabitauntes of *Hispaniola*. It is a warlyke nation, and hath  
ben euer hytherto molestous to theyr borderers: but the region  
is not fortunate with fruiteful grounde, or plentie of golde. Yet  
is it full of great barren mountaynes, beyng somewhat colde by  
reason of their height, and therefore the noble men and gentle-  
men are apparelled, but the common people liue content only  
with the benefites of nature. There is a region not past two  
dayes iourney distant from *Quarequa*, in whiche they founde on-  
ly blacke Doores, and those exceedyng fierce and cruel: They  
suppose that in tyme past certayne blacke Doores sayled thyr-  
ther out of *Ethiopia* to robbe, and that by thyrpyracke or some  
other chaunce, they were dnyen to those mountaynes. The in-  
habitauntes of *Quarequa* lyue in continual warre and debate with  
these blacke men. Here *Vasbus* leauing in *Quarequa* many of his  
souldiers (which by reason they were not yet accustomed to such  
trauayles and hunger, fel into diuers diseases) tooke with hym  
certayne guides of the *Quarequatans*, to conduct hym to the  
toppes of the mountaynes. From the pallace of kynge *Poncha*, to  
the prospect of the other south sea, is only sixe dayes iourney, the  
which neuerthelesse, by reason of many hinderances & chaunces,  
and especially for lacke of vittuals, he coulde accomplishe in no  
lesse then .xxv. dayes. But at the length, the seuenty day of the  
Calendes of October, he behelde with woonderyng eyes  
the toppes of the hygh mountaynes, shewed vnto hym by the  
guides

The harvest is  
great, and the  
woorkemen  
but fewe.

Warlyke pro-  
ple.

The higher, the  
colder.

A region of  
blacke Doores

Diseases of  
change of ayre  
and dyet.

The south sea.

of *Qmarequa*, from the whiche he myght see the other sea so long looked for, and neuer seene before of any man commyng out of our worlde. Approching therfore to the toppes of the mountaynes, he commaunded his armye to stay, and went hym selfe alone to the toppe, as it were to take the fyrst possession thereof. There, falling prostrate vppon the grounde, and rayling hym selfe againe vpon his knees, as the maner of the Christians is to praye, lftying vp his eyes and handes towarde heauen, and directyng his face towarde the newe founde south sea, he powred forth his humble and deuout prayers before almighty God, as a spirituall sacrifice with thankes gyuing, that it pleased his diuine maiestie, to reserue vnto that day the victorie and prayse of so great a thyng vnto hym, beyng a man but of smal wyt and knowledge, of lytle experience, and base parentage. When he had thus made his prayers after his warlike maner, he beckned with his hande to his companions, to come to hym, shewyng them the great mayne sea heretofore unknowen to inhabitants of Europe, Aphrike, and Asia. Here agayne he fell to his prayers as before, desyryng almyghtie God (and the blessed virgin) to fauour his beginnynges, and to geue hym good successe to subdue those landes, to the glory of his holy name, and encrease of his true religion. All his companions dyd lykewyse, and prayed God with loude voyces for ioy. Then *Vascs*, with no lesse manlye corage then Hanniball of Carthage shewed his souldiers Italye, and the promontories of the Alpes, exhorted his men to lft vp theyr hartes, and to beholde the lande euen now vnder theyr feete, and the sea before theyr eyes, whiche shoulde bee vnto them a full and iust rewarde of theyr great laboures and trauayles now ouerpasse. When he had sayde these woordes, he commaunded them to raise certaine heapes of stones, in the stede of alters, for a token of possession. They descendyng from the toppes of the mountaynes, least suche as myght come after hym shoulde argue hym of lying or fallshood, he wrote the kyng of Castels name here and there, on barkes of the trees, both on the ryght hande and on the left, and rayled heapes of stones all the way that he went, vntyll he came to the region of the next kyng towarde the south, whose name was *Chiapes*. This kyng came forth agaynst hym with a great multitude of men, threating

Prayer.

God rayseth  
the poore from  
the doughtfulHanniball of  
Carthage.



## The thyerde Decade.

King Chiapes.  
 & battaple.

Chiapes is dy-  
 uen to flyght.

Vaschus sen-  
 deth for kyng  
 Chiapes.

Chiapes sub-  
 mitteth hym  
 selfe to Vas-  
 chus.

and forbyddyng him not only to passe through his dominions; but also to goe no further. Hereupon *Vaschus* set his battaple in aray, and exhorted his men (beyng nowe but fewe) fierly to assaile theyr enemies, and to esteeme them no better then dogges meate, as they shoulde be shortly. Placing therefore the hargabusters and masties in the forefront, they saluted kyng *Chiapes* and his men with such alarome, that when they hard the nopsle of the gunnes, saw the flames of fire, and smelt the sauour of brimstone (for the wynde blew towards them) they droue them selues to flyght, with such feare lest thunderboultes and lyghtnynges folowed them, that many fell downe to the ground, whom our men pursuing, fyrst keepyng theyr order, and after breakyng theyr aray, slue but fewe, and tooke manye captiue: For they determined to vse no extremitie, but to pacyfie those regions as quietly as they myght. Enteriug therefore into the pallace of kyng *Chiapes*, *Vaschus* commaunded many of the captiues to be loosed, wyllyng them to search out theyr kyng, and to exhort hym to come thither: and that in so doyng, he woulde be his frend, and profer hym peace, besyde many other benefices: But if he refused to come, it shoulde turne to the destruction of hym and his, and utter subuersion of his countrey. And that they myght the more assuredly do this message to *Chiapes*, he sent with them certayne of the guides whiche came with hym from *Quarequa*. Thus *Chiapes*, beyng perswaded aswell by the *Quarequans*, who coulde coniecture to what end the matter woulde come, by therperience whiche they had seene in them selues and theyr kyng, as also by the reasons of his owne men, to whom *Vaschus* had made suche frendly promyses in his behalfe, came forth of the caues in the whiche he lurked, and submitted hym selfe to *Vaschus*, who accepted hym frendly. They ioyned handes, embraced the one the other, made a perpetuall league of friendship, and gaue great rewarde on both sydes. *Chiapes* gaue *Vaschus* foure hundred poundes weyght of wrought golde, of those poundes whiche they call *Pesos*, and *Vaschus* recompenced hym agayne with certayne of our thynges. Thus beyng made frendes, they remayned together a fewe dayes, vntyll *Vaschus* souldiers were come, whiche he left behynde hym in *Quarequa*. Then calling vnto hym the

the gypdes and labourers whiche came with hym from thence, he rewarded them liberally, and dismissed them with thanks. Shortly after, by the conduct of *Chiapes* hym selfe, and certayne of his men departyng from the toppes of the mountaynes, he came in the space of foure dayes to the bankes of the newe sea: where assemblyng al his men togeather, with the kynges scribes and notaries, they addicted all that mayne sea with all the landes adiacent thereunto, to the dominion and Empire of Castile. Here he left part of his souldiers with *Chiapes*, that he myght the easelie search those coastes. And takyng with hym niene of theyr lyghters made of one whole tree (whiche they call *Culchas*, as thynhabitantes of *Hispaniola* cal them *Canoas*) & also a bande of fourescore men, with certeyne of *Chiapes* men, he passed ouer a great riuer, and came to the regiõ of a certeine king, whose name was *Coquera*. He attempted to resyst our men as dyd the other, and with lyke successe: for he was overcome and put to flight. But *Vaschus*, who intended to winne him with gentelnes, sent certeyne *Chiapeans* to hym, to declare the great power of our men, howe inuincible they were, howe mercifull to such as submit them selues, also cruell and seuerer to such as obstinately withstand them: Promisyng hym furthermore, that by the friendship of our men, he might be wel assured by the example of other, not only to liue in peace and quietnes hym selfe, but also to be reuenged of the iniuries of his enimies: Wyllyng hym in conclusion so to weigh the matter, that yf he refused this gentlenes proffered vnto hym by so great a victourer, he should or it were long learne by feelyng, to repent hym to late of that peryll whiche he myght haue auoyded by hearyng. *Coquera* with these wordes and examples, shaken with great feare, came gladly with the messengers, byngyng with him .650. *Pesos* of wrought golde, whiche he gaue vnto our men. *Vaschus* rewarded hym likewise, as we sayd befoze of *Poncha*. *Coquera* beyng thus pacified, they returned to the pallace of *Chiapes*, where, visting theyr companions, and resting there a whyle, *Vaschus* determined to search the next great gulfe, the whiche, from the furthest reachyng thereof into the lande of theyr countreyes, from the enterance of the mayne sea, they say to be threescore myles. This they named saint Michaels gulfe, whiche they say to be full of inhabited

A gulfe of threescore myles.  
Saint Michaels gulfe.

## The thyrd Decade.

habited Ilandes and hugious rockes. Entyrng therfore into the niene boates of *Culchas*, wherewith he passed ouer the ryuer befoze, haupng also with him the same companye of fourescore whole men, he went forwarde on his purpose, although he were greatly dissuaded by *Chiapes*, who earnestly desyred him not to attempt that voyage at that tyme, affirming y<sup>e</sup> gulfe to be so tempestuous and stormie thre monethes in the yeere, that the sea was there by no meanes nauigable, and that he had seene many *Culchas* deuoured of whirlepooles, euen befoze his eyes. But invincible *Vaschus*, impacient of idlenesse, and voyde of all feare in Gods cause, answered, that God and his holy saintes would prosper his enterpryses in this case, forasmuche as the matter touched God, and the defence of the Christian religion, for the mayntenance wherof, it shoulde be necessarie to haue abundance of ryches and treasure, as the sinewes of warre against the enemies of the fayth. Thus vsyng also the office both of an orator and preacher, and haupng perswaded his companions, he lanchted from the lande. But *Chiapes*, lest *Vaschus* shoulde any thyng doubt of his faythfulnesse toward him, profered hym selfe to goe with hym whither soeuer he went, and woulde by no meanes assent that *Vaschus* shoulde depart from his palace, but that he woulde bypng hym on the way, and take part of his fortune. Therfore, as soone as they were now entred into the maine sea, such surges & conflyctes of water arole agaynst them, that they were at theyr wittes endes, whither to turne them, or where to rest. Thus being tossed and amased with feare, the one looked on the other with pale & vnchearefull countenances, but especially *Chiapes* and his company, who had befoze tyme with theyr eyes seene the experience of those ieopardies, were greatly discomforted (yet as God woulde) they escaped all, and landed at the next Ilande, where, makyng fast theyr boates, they rested there that nyght. Here the water so encreased, that it almost onerflowed the Ilande. They say also, that the South sea doth so in manner boyle and swel, that when it is at the hygh-est, it doth couer many great rockes, whiche at the fall thereof, are seene farre aboute the water. But on the contrarpe parte, all suche as inhabite the North sea, affyrme with one voyce, that it scarcelye ryseth at any tyme a cubite above the bankes,

The manly  
courage and  
godly zeale of  
*Vaschus*

Ryches are  
the sinewes of  
warre  
The faythful-  
nes of kynge  
*Chiapes*.

A tempest on  
the sea.

The increas-  
ing of the  
South sea.

The North  
Ocean.

as they also confesse whiche inhabite the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, and other Ilandes situate in the same. The Ilande therefore being nowe dyne by the fall of the water, they resorted to theyr boates, which they founde al ouerwhelmed, & ful of lande, and some soze bruised with great ryftes, and almost lost by reason theyr cables were broken: suche as were bruised, they tyed faste with theyr gyrdles, with styppes of the barkes of trees, and with tough and long stalkes of certayne hearbes of the sea, stoppyng the ryftes or chynkes with grasse, according to the present necessitie. Thus were they enforced to retorne backe agayne, lyke unto men that came from shipwracke, being almost consumed with hunger, because theyr vyttualles were utterly destroyed by tempest. The inhabitants declared that there is hearde all the yere horrible roynge of the sea among those Ilandes, as often as it ryseth or falleth, but this most especially in those three monethes in the whiche it is most boystous, as *Chiapes* tolde *Vaschus* before, meanyng (as they coulde coniecture by his wordes) October, Nouember, and December: for he signified the present moone, & the two moones folowynge, countynge the monethes by the moones, whereas it was nowe October. Here therefore refreshing him selfe and his souldiers a whyle, and passynge by one vnprofitable kyng, he came to another, whose name was *Tumaccus*, after the name of the region, being situate on that syde of the gulf. This *Tumaccus* came forth agaynst our men, as dyd the other, and with lyke fortune: for he was overcome, dyuen to flyght, and many of his men slayne. He him selfe was also soze wounded, but yet escaped. *Vaschus* sent certayne messengers of the *Chiapians* to hym, to retorne, and not to be afrayde: but he coulde be nothing moued, neyther by promises, nor theatynge: yet when the messengers were instant, and ceased not to threaten death to him and his familie, with the vtter desolation of his kyngdome, if he persisted in that obstinacie, at the length he sent his sonne with them, whom *Vaschus* honourably enterteynyng, apparellynge hym gorgeously, and geuyng him many gyftes, sent him to his father, wyllynge hym to perswade hym of the puissaunce, munificence, liberalitie, humanitie, and clemencie of our men. *Tumaccus* being moued by this gentlenesse declared towarde his sonne, came with hym

Hard shyft in  
necessitie.

The region  
*Tumacca*.

Kyng *Tumaccus*  
is dyuen to  
flyght.



## The thyrde Decade.

the thyrde day, byrnyng nothyng with hym at that tyme. But after that he knewe that our men desyred golde and pearles, he sent for syre hundred and fourteene *Perfos* of golde, and two hundred and fourtie of the byggest and fayrest pearles, besyde a great number of the smallest sort. Our men marueyled at the byggenes and fayrenes of these pearles, although they were not perfectly whyte, because they take them not out of the sea muscles, except they fyrst rost them, that they may the easelýer open them selfe, and also that the splybe may haue the better tast, whiche they esteeme for a delicate and princely dyshe, and set moze therby, then by the pearles them selues. Of these thynges I was enfourmed of one *Arbolantius*, beyng one of *Vaschus* companions, whom he sent to the kyng with many pearles, and certayne of those sea muscles. But when *Tumaccus* sawe that our men so greatly regarded the beautie of the pearles, he commaunded certayne of his men to prepare them selues to go a spylhyng for pearles: *Alho* departing, came agayne within foure dayes, byrnyng with them twelue pounce weight of orient pearles, after eight ounces to the pounce. Thus reioycing on both parties, they embrased, and made a league of continual frendshyp. *Tumaccus* thought hym selfe happie that he had presented our men with such thankfull gyftes, and was admitted to theyr frendshyp: and our men thinkyng them selues happie and blessed that they had founde such tokens of great ryches, swalowed downe theyr spytte for thyrst. At all these dosinges, kyng *Chiapes* was present, as a wytnes and companion. He also reioyced not a litle, aswell that by his conductyng he sawe that our men shoulde bee satisfied of theyr desyre, as also that by this meanes he had declared to the next kyng his borderer and enemie, what frendes he had of our men, by whose ayde he myght lyue in quietnes, and be reuenged of his aduersarie, if neede shoulde so requyre. For (as we haue sayde) these naked kynges tusest them selues with greuous warres, onely for ambition and desyre to rule. *Vaschus* bothe in his epistle, that he learned certayne maruelous secretes of *Tumaccus* hym selfe, as concernyng the great ryches of this lande, wherof (as he sayth) he would utter nothyng at this present, forasmuche as *Tumaccus* tolde it hym in his eare. But he was enfourmed of both the kynges, that there is an

Golde and  
pearles.

Muscles of  
the sea.

Spylhyng for  
pearles.

The thyrst of  
golde.

Ambition among  
naked  
men.

Ilande

Ilande in that gulfe, greater then any of the other, haupng in  
 it but onely one kyng, and hym of so great power, that at suche  
 tymes of the peere as the sea is calme, he inuadeth theyr domi- A kyng of great  
power.  
 nions with a great nauie of *Culchas*, spoylyng and cariying away  
 for a praye all that he meeteth. This Ilande is distant from  
 these coastes, only twentie myles: So that the promontories  
 or poyntes thereof, reachyng into the sea, may be seene from the  
 hylles of this continent. In the sea neere about this Ilande,  
 sea muscles are engendred, of such quantitie, that many of them  
 are as bode as bucklers. In these are pearles founde (beyng 25pg pearles.  
 the hartes of those shell fyshes) ofentymes as bygge as beanes,  
 somtymes bygger then *Olyues*, and suche as sumptuous *Cleopa-*  
*tra* myght haue desyred. Although this Ilande be so neere to Cleopatra,  
queene of Es  
gypt, resolved  
a pearle in his  
neger & drinke  
it. Wore fime  
thousande  
pounde of our  
moneys.  
 the shore of this firme lande, yet is the begynnyng thereof in  
 the mayne sea, without the mouth of the gulfe. *Vaschus* beyng  
 ioyful and mery with this ryche communication, fantasying nowe  
 in maner nothing but princes treasures, beganne to speake fierce  
 and cruell wooordes against the tyrant of that Ilande, meanyng  
 hereby to wynde the myndes of the other kynges, and bynde  
 them to hym with a neerer bonde of frendshyp. Yet therefore  
 raplyng further on hym with spytefull and approbrious wooordes,  
 he sware great othes, that he woulde forthwith inuade the I-  
 lande, spoylyng, destroying, burnyng, drownyng, and hang-  
 yng, sparyng neyther swoorde nor fyre, vntyll he had re-  
 uenged theyr iniuries: and therewith commaunded his *Culchas*  
 to be in a redynes. But the two kynges, *Chiapes* and *Tumaccus*,  
 exhorted hym frendly to deferre this enterpryse, vntill a more qui-  
 et season, bycause that sea was not nauigable without great dan-  
 ger, beyng nowe the begynnyng of *Maucember*: Wherein the  
 kynges seemed to saye true. For as *Vaschus* hym selfe wyreth,  
 great rolyng of the sea was heard among the Ilands of the gulfe,  
 by reason of the ragyng and conflict of the water. Great ryuers  
 also, descendyng from the toppes of the mountaynes the same  
 tyme of the peere, and ouerflowyng theyr bankes, dryuyng  
 downe with theyr violence great rockes and trees, make a mar-  
 ueylous noyse. Likewise the furie of the South and Northeast  
 wyndes, associate with thunder and lyghcnyng at the same sea-  
 son, dyd greatly moleest them. Whyle the wether was fayre,  
they

## The thyrde Decade.

they were vexed in the night with colde, and in the day tyme the heat of the Sonne troubled them, wherof it is no marueyle, forasmuche as they were neere vnto the Equinoctial line, although they make no mention of the eleuation of the pole, for in suche regions, in the nyght the Moone and other colde planettes, but in the day the Sonne and other hotte planettes, doo cheefely exercise theyr influence, although the antiquitie were of an other opinion, supposyng the Equinoctiall circle to bee inhabitable and desolate, by reason of the heate of the Sonne, hauyng his course perpendicularly or directly ouer the same, except a fewe of the contrary opinion, whose assertions the Portugales haue at these dayes by experience proued to be true: for they sayle peerelely to the inhabitants of the south pole, beyng in maner *Antipodes* to the people called *Hyperborei* vnder the North pole, and exercise marchaundize with them. And here haue I named *Antipodes*, forasmuche as I am not ignorant that there hath ben men of singuler witte and great learnyng, whiche haue denyed that there is *Antipodes*, that is, suche as walke feete to feete. But it is most certaine, that it is not geuen to any one man to knowe all thynges, for euen they also were men, whose propertie is to erre, and be deceiued in many thynges. Neuerthelesse, the Portugales of our tyme, haue sayled to the fyue and fytie degree of the south pole: where, compassyng about the poynt therof, they myght see throughout all the heauen about the same, certeyne shynnyng whyte cloudes here and there among the starres, lyke vnto them which are seene in the tract of heauen called *Lactea via*, that is, the mylke whyte way. They say, there is no notable starre neare about that pole, lyke vnto this of oures, which the common people thynke to be the pole of it selfe (called of the Italians *Tramontana*, and of the Spanyardes *Nortes*) but that the same falleth beneath the Ocean. When the Sonne descendeth from the myddest of the exiltree of the worlde from vs, it ryseth to them, as a payre of ballances, whose weyght enclinyng from the equall payle in the myddest towarde eyther of the sydes, causeth the one ende to ryle as much as the other falleth. When therfore it is Autumne with vs, it is spring tyme with them, and sommer with vs, when it is wynter with them. But it sufficeth to haue sayde thus much of strange matters. Let vs nowe there-  
fore

The starres about the south pole.

A similitude declaring *Antipodes*.

foze retorne to the hystorie, and to our men.

The seconde booke of the  
thyrd Decade,



*Aschus* by thadvice of king *Chiapes* and *Tumaccus*, determined to deferre his voyage to the sayde Ilande, vntyll the next spryng or sommer, at which tyme, *Chiapes* offered him selfe to accompany our men, and ayde them therein al that he myght. In this meane tyme, *Vaschus* had knowledge that these

kynges had nettes and fysshynge places in certeyne stations of that sea neare vnto the shoze where they were accustomed to fysh for sea muscles, in the which pearles are engendred, and that for this purpose they had certeyne dyuers or fysshers, exercised from theyr youth in swimmyng vnder the water. But they doo this onely at certeyne tymes when the sea is calme, that they may the easlier come to þ place where these shel fishes are wont to lye: for the bygger that they are, so much lye they the deeper & neerer to þ bottome: but the lesser, as it were daughters to thother, are neerer the bymme of the water: likewise the least of al, as it were their nieces, are yet neerer to the superficial part therof. To them of the byggest sort whiche lye lowest, the fysshers descende the depth of thre mens heyght, and somtyme foure, but to the daughters or nieces, as their succession, they descende only to the mydde thygh. Somtymes also, after that the sea hath ben disquieted with vehement tempestes, they fynde a great multitude of these fishes on the sandes, beyng dyuen to the shoze by the violence of the water. The pearles of these, which are founde on the sande, are but lytle, the fysh it selfe, is moze pleasaunt in eatyng, then are our oysters, as our men report: But perhaps hunger, the sweete faulse of all meates, caused our men so to thynke. Whether pearles be the hartes of sea muscles (as Aristotle supposed) or the byrth or spawne of their intrals (as *Plinie* thought) or whether they cleaue continually to the rockes, or wander by companies in the sea by the guyding of the eldest, whether euery fysh byng forth one pearle or moze, at one byrth, or at dyuers: also whether

The maner of  
of fysshynge for  
pearles.



## The thyerde decade.

whether they be syled from the rockes wherunto they cleaue, or may be easely pulled away, or otherwysse fall of by them selues when they are come to theyr full growth : Lykewysse whether pearles be harde within the shel, or soft, our men haue as yet no certayne experience, but I trust or it be long to knowe the trueth hereof : for our men are euen now in hand with the matter. Also, as soone as I shall be aduertised of the aryuall of *Petrus Arias* the captayne of our men, I wyll desire hym by my letters to make diligent search for these thynges, and certifie me therof in all poyntes. I knowe that he wyll not be slacke or omit any thyng herein, for he is my perpe freende, and one that taketh great pleasure in considering the workes of nature. And surely it seemeth vnto me vndecent, that we shoulde with silence ouerslyp so great a thyng, which aswel in the olde tyme, as in our dayes, hath and yet doth, drawe both men and women to the immoderate desire of superfluous pleasure. Spayne therfore shalbe able hereafter with pearles to satisfie the greedy appetyte of such as in wanton pleasures are lyke vnto *Cleopatra* and *Asopus*: So that from hencefoorth we shall neyther enue nor reuerence the nice fruitfulnessse of *Stoicism*, or *Taprobana*, or the red sea. But let vs now retorne to our purpose. *Vaschus* therfore determined with the fyshers of *Chiapes*, to proue what myght be doone in his fishe pooles or stations of sea muscles. *Chiapes* to shewe hym selfe obedient to *Vaschus* his request, although the sea were boysteous, commaunded chytie of his fyshers to prepare them selues, and to resort to the fishyng places. *Vaschus* sent onely fyre of his men with them, to beholde them from the sea bankes, but not to commit them selues to the daunger of the sea. The fishyng place was distant from the pallace of *Chiapes* about tenne myles. They durst not aduenture to dyue to the bottome, by reason of the furie of the sea : Yet of the muscles whiche lye hyghest, and of such as were dyuen to the shore by the violence of the water, they brought fyre great fardelles in the space of a fewe dayes. The pearles of these were but lyttle, about the bygnesse of small fyches : yet verpe fayre and beautifull, by reason that they were taken newly out of the fysh, beyng yet rawe. And that they should not be repproued of lying, as

concerning

*Petrus Arias.*

Wanton and  
superfluous  
pleasures.

The fishyng  
place of kyng  
*Chiapes*.

concernyng the bygnesse of these sea muscles, they sent many of them into Spayne to the kyng, with the pearles, the fysh being taken out: We thynke verily that there may in no place bygger be founde. These shel fyshes therefore being thus founde here in so many places in that sea, and gold in maner in every house, doo argue the ryche treasure of nature to be hydde in those coastes, forasmuche as great ryches haue ben founde, as it were in the litle synger of a giauntes hande. What then may we thynke of the whole hande of the giaunt (for hytherto they haue onely benne in hande with the confines of *Vraba*) when they shall haue throughtlye searched all the coastes and secretes of the inner partes of all that large lande? But *Vaschus* contented with these signes, and ioyfull of his good successe in these enterpysses, determined by another way to returne to his felowes in *Dariena*, where also they haue golde mynes, about tenne myles from the byllage. He gaue therefore kyng *Chiapes* leaue to depart, and to solowe hym no further, counsaylyng hym to continue faythful vnto the chrystian king his lord and maister. Thus embracing the one the other, & ioyning handes, *Chiapes* departed with teares, declaring the good minde which he bore to our men. *Vaschus* leauing his sicke men with *Chiapes*, went forward on his iourney with the residue, hauyng also with hym for guides three of *Chiapes* Baryners. He conueyghed his armie ouer a great river, into the dominion of a certayne king called *Teaocha*, who being aduertised of the commying of our men, of whose famous actes he had hearde muche before, was very glad thereof, and enterteyned them honourably, so that for a token of his frendly affection toward them, he gaue *Vaschus* twentie pounds weight of wrought golde, after eyght ounces to the pounce: also two hundred bygge pearles, but not sayre, by reason they were taken out of the muscles after they had ben lodden. After they had ioyned hands, *Vaschus* recompenced him with certayne of our thynges: lykewyse rewarding his guides the seruantes of *Chiapes*, he dismissed them with commendations to their lord. King *Teaocha*, at the departure of our men from his pallace, dyd not only appoynt them guides to conduct them in the way, but also gaue them certayne slaues, in the steede of beastes to cary theyr vittuals, because they shoulde passe through many desartes, barren and rough

Gold in maner  
in every house.  
The ryche treas-  
ure of nature.

The golde  
mynes of  
*Dariena*.

King *Teaocha*  
enterteyneth  
*Vaschus*  
frendly.

Twentie pound  
weight of  
wrought gold.

## The thyryde decade.

Desartes full of rough mountaynes and terrible woods full of Tigers and Lions, wilde beastes. He sent also one of his sonnes with these slaues, lading them with salted and dried fishe, & bread of those regions, made of the rootes of *Maizium* and *Lucca*. He also commaunded his sonne not to depart from our men, until he were licensed by *Vaschus*. By theyr conductyng therfore, *Vaschus* came to the dominion of an other kyng, whose name was *Pacra*, a cruel tyrant, fearefull to the other kynges his borderers, and of greater power then any of them. This tyrant, whether it were that his gilty conscience, for his mischeuous actes, put him in feare that our men woulde reuenge the same, or that he thought him selfe inferior to resist them, fled at their conning. *Vaschus* writeth, that in these regions in the moneth of Nouember, he was sore afflicted with great heate and intollerable thirst, by reason that side of the mountaynes hath little water: Insomuche that they were in daunger to haue perished, but that certayne of th inhabitantes shewed them of a spring, which was in y<sup>e</sup> secret place of a wood, whither *Vaschus* with all speede sent two quicke & strong young men of his companions, with theyr gourdes, and such water vessels as *Teaocha* his men brought with them. Of th inhabitantes, there durst none depart from theyr company, because the wilde beastes do sone iniade naked men: For in those mountaynes, and especially in the woods neare vnto the spring, they say that they are sometimes taken out of theyr houses in the night, except they take good heede that the doores be well sparde. It shal not be from my purpose heere to declare a particuler chaunce, before I enter any further in this matter. They say therfore, that the last yee the region of *Dariena* was no lesse infested and troubled with a fierse Tiger, then was *Calidonia* in tyme past with a wild Boore, and *Nemea* with a horrible Lion. For they affyrme that for the space of fyre whole monethes, there passed not one nyght without some hurt doone: so that it kyled nyghtly eyther a Bullocke, a Hare, a Dogge, or a Hogge, and sometymes euen in the hygh wayes of the byllage: For our men haue nowe great herdes of cattayle in those regions. They say also, that when this Tyger had whelpes, no man myght safely goe forth of his doores, because shee sparred not men, yf shee mette fyrste with them. But at the length,

Dried fysh.

Kyng Pacra  
a tyrant.

Great heate in  
the moneth of  
Nouember.

Hurt by wilde  
beastes.

A Tyger.  
Calidonia is  
a forrest in  
Scotlande.  
Nemea is a  
wood in  
Greece.

Tigers whelpes.

length, necessitie enforced them to inuent a policie howe they myght be reuenged of suche bloodshed. Searchyng therfore diligently her foote-steppes, and folowynge the pathe whereby she was accustomed in the nyght season to wander out of her denne to seeke her praye, they made a great trenche or pyt in her walke, coueryng the same with hurdels, whereupon they caste parte of the earth, and dispearsed the resydue. The dogge Tyger chaunced fyrst into this pitfall, and fel vpon the poyntes of sharpe stakes, and such other engins as were of purpose fxyed in the bottome of the trench. Beyng thus wounded, he rored so terribly, that it grated the bowels of suche as harde hym, and the wooddes and mountaynes neare about rebounded the noyse of the horryble crye. When they perceiued that he was layde fast, they resorted to the trenche, and slue hym with stones, dartes, and pykes. With his teethe and clawes he brake the dartes into a thousande chypes. Beyng yet dead, he was fearefull to all such as behelde hym: what then thynke you he woulde haue doone beyng alyue and loose? One Iohannes Ledisma of Ciuile, a neare frende to Vascus, and one of the companions of his tra-uayles, tolde me that he hym selfe dyd eate of the fleshe of that Tyger, and that it was nothyng inferiour to beefe in goodnes. Beyng demaunded howe they knewe it to be a Tyger, forasmuch as none of them had euer seene a Tyger: they answered that they knewe it by the spottes, fiercenes, agilitie, and suche other markes and tokens wherby auncient wyters haue described the Tyger. For some of them had before tyme seene other spotted wylde bestes, as Libardes and Panthers. The dogge Tiger beyng thus kyled, they folowynge the traile of his steppes towarde the mountaynes, came to the denne where the bytche remainned with her two young suckyng whelpes. But she was not in the denne at their comyng. They fyrst carped away the whelpes with them. But afterwarde, fearyng lest they shoulde dye because they were young, entendyng when they were bygger to send them into Spaine, they put cheynes of iron about theyr neckes, and carped them agayne to their denne: whither returnyng within a fewe dayes after, they founde the denne emptye, and they cheynes not remoued from theyr place. They suppose that the damme in her furee toze them in peeces, and

Thus the Egyp-  
tians take  
Crocodiles

The dogge  
tyger taken.

The roying of  
the tyger.

Tigers fleshe  
eaten.

The bytche  
tyger.

Tigers whelps.

A straunge  
thyng.

carped



## The thyrde Decade.

carped them away, lest any shoulde haue the fruition of them. For they playnely affirme, that it was not possible that they shoulde be loosed from the chaynes alpye. The skynne of the dead Tyger stuffed with dye hearbes and strawe, they sent to Hispaniola, to the Admiral, and other of the cheefe rulers, from whom the newe landes receiue their lawes and succour. It shall at this tyme suffice to haue written thus muche of the Tygers, as I haue learned by report of them which both susteyned domage by their rauenyng, and also handled the skynne of that whiche was slayne. Let vs nowe therfore retorne to king *Pacra*, from whom we haue digressed. When *Vaschus* had entred into the houses forsaken of *Pacra*, he sent messengers to reconcile him, as he had doone the other kynges. At the first he refused to come: but after threathnynges he came, with thre other kynges in his company. *Vaschus* writeth, that he neuer sawe a more monstrous & defourmed creature, and that nature hath only geuen hym humane shape, and otherwyle to bee worse then a byuite beast, with maners accordyng to the liniamentes of his body. He abused, with most abominable lechery, the daughters of foure kynges his borderers, from whom he had taken them by violence. Of the fylthy behauiour of *Pacra*, of his crueltie, and iniures doone by hym, many of the other kyngs made greuous complayntes to *Vaschus*, as vnto a hygh Iudge, and iust reuenger, most humbly beseechynge hym to seee suche thynges punished, forasmuche as they tooke hym for a man sent of God for that purpose. Herevpon *Vaschus*, aswell to wyn their good wylls, as also to shewe an example of terrour to such as vsed lyke fashions, commaunded that this monstrous beast, with the other thre kynges whiche were subiecte to hym, and of lyke conditions, shoulde be geuen for a pray to his fyghtyng dogges, and their tozne carkases to bee burned. Of these dogges whiche they vse in the warres, they tell marueylous thynges: for they say, that they runne vpon thinhabitauntes, armed after their maner, with noo lesse fiercenes, then if they were Hartes or wylde Bores, if the Spaniards doo but onely poynt towarde them with theyr fyngers: Insomuche that oftentymes they haue had no neede to dyue their enemyes to flyght with swoordes or arrowes, but haue doone

the

King *Pacra*.

Natural hatred  
of vice.

Four kynges  
denoured of  
dogges.

The vse of  
dogges in  
warre against  
naked men.

the same only with dogges, placed in the forefront of theyr battayle, and lettynge them slpye with theyr watche wooorde and priuite token: whereupon the barbarians strycken with feare, by reason of the cruell countenances of theyr masties, with theyr desperate boldenesse, and vniaccustomed howlyng and barkyng, haue disparckled at the first onsette, and brake theyr array. Yet it chaunceth otherwysse when they haue any conflycte agaynst the Canibales, and the people of *Caramairi*: for these are fiercer and moze warlyke men, also so expert archers, that they can mosse certaynely direct theyr venemous arrowes agaynst the dogges, with suche seleritie as yf they were thunderboltes, by reason whereof, they sometymes kyll many of them. The inhabitants of these mountaynes doo not keepe warre with bowes and arrowes, but vse only *Macanis*, that is, certayne long and hynde swoordes made of wood, also slynges, long pykes, and dartes, hardened at the endes with fyre. Whyle kyng *Pacra* yet lyued, no man coulde knowe of hym, neyther by sayre meanes nor by fowle, where he had the golde whiche was founde in his house: for our men founde in his iewell house fiftie poundes weyght of golde. Beyng therfore demaunded where he had it, he aunswered, that they which geathered the same in those mountaynes in his fathers dayes, were all dead, and that sence he was a chyld, he neuer esteemed golde moze then stones: More then this they coulde not geat of hym. By this seuere punishment executed vpon *Pacra*, *Vaschus* conueyled vnto hym the myndes of all the ocher kynges of that prouince, and by this meanes it came to passe, that when he sent for the sycke men whiche he left behynde hym with kyng *Chiapes*, another kyng whiche was in the mydde way, (whose name was *Bononiama*) enterteyned them gentelly, and gaue them twentie pounde weight of pure wrought golde, besyde great plentie of vittualles. And not this onely, but also accompanied them hym selfe, vntyll he had brought them safely from his pallace, into the dominion of *Pacra*, where takyng eche of them by the ryght handes, he deliuered them to *Vaschus* hym selfe, as a faythfull pledge committed to his charge, and therewith spake to *Vaschus* in this effecte: Goste myghtie and valyaunt victourer, beholde, I heere deliuer vnto you,

The Canibales  
are expert archers.

Swoordes of  
wood.

fiftie pound  
weight of gold.

Kyng Bononiama,  
frend to  
the christians.

Wrought gold.

your

## The thyrd Decade.

The oration  
of kynge  
Bononiana.

The sparke of  
the lawe of  
nature, is the  
lawe written in  
the hartes of  
men.

your companions in suche plight as I receiued them: wishing that I had ben aswell able to geue them health, as they were hartly welcom: to suche poore entertaynement as I was able to shewe them. For the fauoure and gentlenesse whiche I haue founde both in you and them, he shall reward you whiche sendeth thundering and lyghtning to the destruction of mycheuous men, and of his cleimencie geueth vnto good men plenty of *Iucca* and *Maizium* in due season. As he spake these woordes, he lysted vp his handes and eyes towarde the Sonne, whom they honour as God. Then he spake further to *Vaschus*, saying, In that you haue destroyed and slayne our violent and proude enemies, you haue brought peace and quietnesse to vs and our families, and bounde vs for euer to loue and obey you. You haue so ouercome and tamed wyld monsters, that we thynke you to bee sent from heauen, for the punishment of euill men, and defence of innocentes, that vnder the protection of your myghtieswoorde, we maye hereafter leade our lyues without feare, and with more quietnesse geue thanks to the geuer of all good thynges, for his mercie shewed vnto vs in this behalfe. When the interpretoure had tolde *Vaschus* that the kynge *Bononiana* had sayde these woordes, and suche lyke, *Vaschus* rendered hym lyke thanks for his humanitie declared towarde our men, and rewarded hym as he had doone o-ther in whom he founde lyke gentlenesse. *Vaschus* wyrteth, that he learned manye thynges of this kynge as concernyng the great rycheesse of these regions, but that he woulde at this present speake nothing thereof, and rehearseth the same, as thinges lyke to haue good successe. What this implicate *Hiperbole*, or aduancement meaneth, I do not well vnderstand, but he plainly seemeth hereby to promise many great thynges. And suerly it is to be thought, that accordyng to his hope, great riches may be looked for. For they came in maner into none of thynhabitaunts houses, but that they founde in them eyther bresteplates or cures of golde, or elles golden ouches, iewels, or garlandes to weare about their heades, neckes, or armes. I coniecture therefore thus by a similitude of our houses: If among vs any man of great power were moued with the desyre to haue great plenty of Iron, and woulde enter into *Italie* with a mayne force, as

Great plenty  
of golde.

A similitude  
for the prose of  
plentye of  
golde.

byd the Gothes in tyme past, what abundance of Iron shoulde  
 he haue in theyr houses, whereas he shoulde fynde in one place  
 a fryngpan, in another a caldron, here a trinet, and there a  
 spitte, and these in manner in euery pooze mans house, with  
 suche other innumerable? whereby any man may coniecture,  
 that iron is plentifully engendryed in suche regions where they  
 haue so great vse thereof. Our men also perceiued, that the inha-  
 bitauntes of these regions do no more esteeme golde then we do  
 iron, nor yet so much, after they sawe to what vse iron serued vs.  
 Thus much haue I thought good to write to your holynesse, of  
 suche thynges as I haue geathered out of the letters of *Vaschus*  
*Nunnez*, and learned by woorde of mouth of suche as were  
 his companions in these affayres. As we receiue them, so we  
 geue them vnto you. Tyme, whiche reuealeth al secretes, shal  
 hereafter minister larger argument of wyptyng. They coulde at  
 this tyme do no great thyng in searchyng the golde mynes, for-  
 asinuche as of a hundred, fourescore, and tenne men, which *Vas-*  
*chus* brought with him from *Dariena*, there remayned only three-  
 score and ten, or at the most fourescore, whose ayde he nowe vsed  
 in these dangerous aduentures, leauing euer the crafed men be-  
 hynde hym in the kynges houses all the way that he went, but  
 they mooste especially fel into sundry diseases, whiche came late-  
 ly from *Hispaniola*, for they were not able to abyde such calami-  
 ties, as to lyue only contented with the bread of those regions,  
 and wyld hearbes, without salt, drynkyng none other then riuer  
 water, and that oftentimes eyther lackyng, or vnholosome,  
 where as before theyr stomackes had ben vsed to good meates.  
 But the olde souldiers of *Dariena*, were hardened to abyde all  
 sorowes, & excedyng tollerable of labour, heate, hunger, & wat-  
 chyng, insomuche that merily they make theyr boast, that they  
 haue obserued a longer & sharper Lent then euer your holynesse  
 enioyned: for they say, that for the space of foure whole yeres,  
 they ate none other then hearbes and frutes, except nowe and  
 then perhappes fysh, and very seldome fleshe: yea, and that  
 sometyme for lacke of all these, they haue not abhorred from  
 mangie dogges and fylthy toades, as we haue sayde before.  
 The olde souldiers of *Dariena*, I call those whiche fyyste  
 folowed the captaynes *Nicuesa* and *Fogeda*, to inhabite the  
 lande,

Change of  
 dyet is daunges  
 rous.

Old souldiers.

As long lent.



lande, of the whiche nowe fewe were lpyng. But let vs nowe ompt these thynges, and retorne to *Vaschus*, the byctourer of the mountaynes.

### The thyrd booke of the thyrd Decade.



When *Vaschus* had remained thyrtye dayes in the palace of kyng *Parra*, concilyng vnto him the mindes of the inhabitauntes, and prouidyng thynges necessarie for his companions. As he departed frō thence, by the conduct of certayne of kyng *Teaocha* his men, and came to the banke of the riuer *Comogrus*, wherof the region and kyng thereof, are named by the same name, he found the sydes of these mountaynes so rude and barren, that there was nothyng apt to be eaten, but wilde rootes, and certayne vnpleasaunt frutes of trees. Two kynges beyng neere of blood, inhabited this vnfortunate region, which *Vaschus* ouerpasse with all speede, for feare of hunger. One of these poore kynges was named *Cotochus*, and the other *Ciuriza*. He tooke them both with him, to guyde hym the way, and dismissed *Teaocha* his men with vittuals and rewards. Thus for the space of thre dayes, he wandered through many desart woods, craggy mountaynes, & muddie marishes, ful of suche quamyres, that men are oftentimes swallowed by in them, if they loke not y more warely to their feete: also through places not frequented with resort of men, and suche as nature had not yet opened to theyr vse, forasmuche as the inhabitauntes haue seldome entercourse betweene them, but only by sundry incursions, the one to spoyle and destroy the other: beyng otherwys contented to lyue only after the lawe of nature, without al worldly toyle for superfluous pleasures. Thus entryng at the length into the territorie of another kyng, whose name was *Bechebuea*, they founde all thynges voyde and in seilence: for the kyng and his subiectes were al fledde to the woods. When *Vaschus* sent messengers to fetch hym, he dyd not only at the fyrst submit hym selfe,

*Comogrus.*

Two poore  
kynges.

Desartes.

selfe, but also promise his ayde, with all that he myght make:  
 Protestyng furthermoze, that he fledde not for feare that our  
 men woulde doo them iniurie, but that he hyd hym selfe for  
 verpe shame and greefe of mynde, for that he was not able to  
 receiue them honorablie, accordyng vnto theyr dignitie, be-  
 cause his store of vitayles was consumed. Yet in a token of  
 obedience and frendshyppe, he sent our men many vesselles of  
 golde, despying them to accepte them as the gifte of a frend, Vesselles of  
golde.  
 whose good wyll wanted not in greater thynges, if his abilitie  
 were greater. By whiche woordes, the pooze man seemed  
 to insinuate that he had ben robbed, and otherwyle cruelly  
 handled of his borderers, by reason whereof, our men were  
 enforced to depart from thence moze hungerly then they came.  
 As they went forwarde therfore, they espyed certayne naked  
 men comyng downe from a hyll towarde them. *Vaschus*  
 commaunded his armye to stay, and sent his interpretours to  
 them, to knowe what they woulde haue. Then one of them, to  
 whom the other seemed to geue reuerence, spake in this effect.  
 Our lorde and kyng *Chioris*, greeteth you well, wyllyng vs  
 to declare that he harde of your puissaunce and vertue, whereby kyng Chioris  
his sendeth  
Vaschus xxx.  
dishes of pure  
golde.  
 you haue subdued euill men, and reuenged the wronges doone to  
 innocentes: For the whiche your noble factes and iustyce, as  
 he doth honour your fame, so woulde he thynke hym selfe most  
 happie, if he myght receiue you into his palace. But, forasmuch  
 as his fortune hath ben so euill (as he imputeth it) that beyng  
 out of your way, you haue ouerpasse him, he hath sent you this  
 golde, in token of his good wyll and frendshyppe toward you.  
 And with these woordes he deliuered to *Vaschus* thirtie dishes  
 of pure golde, addyng hereunto, that when so euer it shoulde  
 please hym to take the paynes to come to theyr kyng, he shoulde  
 repeaue greater gyftes. He declared further, that a kyng  
 whiche was their borderer and mortall enimie, was very ryche  
 in golde, and that in subduyng of hym, they shoulde both  
 obtayne great rycheffe, and also delyuer them from dayly vex-  
 ations: whiche thyng myght easily be doone by their helpe,  
 because they knewe the countrey. *Vaschus* put them in good  
 comfort, and gaue them for rewarde certayne Iron axes, whi-  
 che they moze esteemed then great heapes of gold. For they haue Axes of Iron  
moze esteemed  
then any golde.

## The thyerde Decade.

they haue lytle neede of golde, hauyng not the vse of pestiferous money: but he that may geat but one axe or hatchet, thynketh hym selfe richer then euer was *Crassus*. If or euen these naked men, doo perceiue that an axe is necessarie for a thousande vbes, and confesse that golde is desired only for certayne bayne and effeminate pleasures, as a thyng whiche the lyfe of man may lacke without any inconuenience: for our gluttony and superfluous sumptuousnesse hath not yet corrupted them. By reason whereof, they take it for no shame to lacke cobordes of plate, whereas the pypde and wantonnesse of our tyme, doth in maner impute it to vs for ignominie, to be without that, whereof by nature we haue no neede. But theyr contentation with the benefites of nature, doth playnely declare, that men may leade a free and happye lyfe without tables, table clothes, carpets, napkyns, and towels, with such other innumerable, wherof they haue no vse, except perhaps the kynges furnysh theyr tables with a fewe golden vessels. But the common people driue away hunger with a peece of theyr bread in the one hand, and a peece of brylled fysh, or some kynde of fruite in the other hand: for they eate flesh but seldome. When theyr fyngers are imbued with any unctionous meates, they wyppen them eyther on the soles of theyr feete, or on theyr thyghes, y e and sometimes on the skyns of theyr priuite members, in the steede of a napkyn: and for this cause do they oftentimes washe them selues in the riuers. Our men therfore went forwarde laden with gold, but sore afflicted with hunger. Thus they came at the length to the dominion of kyng *Pocchorrosa*, who fled at their commyng. Here for the space of thyrtye dayes, they fylled their emptye bellies with bread of the rootes of *Maizium*. In the meane tyme, *Vaschus* sent for *Pocchorrosa*, who beyng allured with promyses and fayre wordes, came and submitted hym selfe, byngyng with hym for a present fyfteene poundes weighe of wrought golde, and a fewe slaues: *Vaschus* rewarded hym as he had doone other before. When he was mynded to depart, he was aduertised, that he shoulde passe through the dominion of a certayne kyng, whose name was *Tumanama*. This is he whom the sonne of kyng *Comogrus* declared to be of so great power, and fearefull to all his borderers, and with whom

Plenty of gold  
and scarcenesse  
of meate.

many

many of *Comogrus* familiars had ben captiue, but our men now percepued that they measured his power by theyr owne: For theyr kynges are but gnattes (compared to Elephantes) in respect to the power & policie of our men. Our men were also enfourmed by such as dwelt neare about *Tumanama*, that his region was not beyond the mountaynes as they supposed, nor yet foryche in golde as young *Comogrus* had declared: Yet consulted they of his subduing, whiche they thought they myght the easelie byng to passe, because *Pocchorrosa* was his mortal enemy, who most gladly promised them his aduice and ayde herein. *Vaschas* therfore, leauyng his sicke men in the byllage of *Pocchorrosa*, tooke with hym threescore of his most valiant souldiers, and declared vnto them, howe kyng *Tumanama* had often tymes spoken proude and threating wordes agaynst them: <sup>A good possie.</sup> Lykewyse that it nowe stood them in hand of necessitie to passe through his dominion, and that he thought it best to set vpon hym bynwares. The souldiers consented to his aduice, and exhorted hym to geue the aduventure, promising that they woulde folow hym, whither soeuer he went. They determined therfore to goe two dayes iourney in one day, that *Tumanama*, not knowing of theyr sodayne commyng, myght haue no leysure to assemble an army: and the thyng came to passe euen as they had deuised. For in the first watche of the nyght, our men, with the *Pocchorrosians*, inuaded the byllage and pallace of *Tumanama*, where they tooke hym prysoner, suspectyng nothyng lesse. He had with hym two young men, whiche he abused vnnaturally, also fourscore women, whiche he had taken violently from diuers kynges: lykewyse, a great number of his gentlemen & subiectes were taken straglyng in other byllages neere about his pallace. For theyr houses are not adherent togeather as ours be, because they are oftentymes troubled with vehement whirlewyndes, by reason of the sodayne chaunges and motions of the ayer, caused by the influence of the planettes, in the equalitie of the day and nyght, beyng there in maner both of one length throughout all the yeere, forasmuch as they are neere vnto the Equinocall line, as we haue sayde before. Theyr houses are made of trees, couered, and after theyr maner thatched with the stalkes of certayne rough hearbes. To the pallace

The cause of  
vehement  
windes neere  
the Equinoc-  
tiall.



## The thyrde Decade.

of *Tumanama*, was only one house adherent, and that euen as bygge as the pallace it selfe. Eytber of these houses were in length a hundred and twentye paces, and in breadth fiftie paces, as our men measured them. In these two houses the kyng was accustomed to muster his men, as often as he prepared an army. When *Tumanama* therfore was thus taken captiue, with all his *Sardanapanicall* familie, the *Pocchorrosians* bragged and threated hym, beyng now bound, that he shoulde shortly be hanged: the other kynges also his borderers, reioyced at his mysfortune. Whereby our men perceyued that *Tumanama* was no lesse troublesome to his neyghbours, then was *Pacra* to the kynges of the south syde of the mountaynes. *Vaschus* also the better to please them, threated hym greuouslye, but in deede intended no euill towards hym. He spake therfore sharply vnto hym with these woordes: Thou shalt now suffer punishment thou cruell tyrant, for thy pryde and abominations. Thou shalt knowe of what power the Christians are, whom thou hast so contemned, and threated to drawe by the heare of theyr heades to the next ryuer, and there to drowne them, as thou hast oftentimes made thy baunt among thy naked slaues: But thou thy selfe shalt fyrrst feeble that, whiche thou hast prepared for others. And heere with commaunded hym to be taken vp: Neuerthelesse geuyng a pryue token of pardon to them whiche layde handes on hym. Thus unhappy *Tumanama*, fearyng and beleuyng that *Vaschus* had ment in earnest as he commaunded, fell prostrate at his feete, and with teares desired pardon: Protesting that he neuer spake any suche woordes, but that perhaps his noble men in theyr drunkenesse had so abused theyr tongues, whiche he coulde not rule: For theyr wynges, although they be not made of grapes, yet are they of force to make men drunken. He declared furthermore, that the other kynges his borderers had of malice surmised such lyes of hym, enuyng his fortune, because he was of greater power then they, most humbly desyryng *Vaschus*, that as he tooke hym to be a iust victourer, so to geue no credite vnto theyr vniust and malicious complayntes: Addyng heereunto, that if it woulde please hym to pardon hym, not hauyng offended, he woulde byng hym great plenty of golde. Thus laying his ryght hande on his breast, he

*Vaschus his  
Woordes to  
King Tuma-  
nana.*

*Oderunt quem  
metuunt.*

he swore by the Sonne, that he euer loued and feared the Chri-  
 stians sence he fyrst hearde of theyr fame and victories : espe-  
 cyally when he harde say, that they had *Michanas*, that is, swor-  
 des sharper then theys, and suche as cutte in peeces all thinges  
 that come in theyr wayes . Then directyng his eyes towarde  
*Vaschus*, who had his sworde in his hand, he spake thus, *Who*  
 (except he were out of his witte) dare lyft by his hande agaynst  
 this sworde of yours, wherewith you ate able with one strooke  
 to cleaue a man from the head to the naueil ? Let no man  
 therfore perswade you (O most myghtye victourer) that euer  
 such wordes proceeded out of my mouth . As *Tumanama*  
 with tremblyng spake these wordes, therwith swalowyng  
 downe the knot of death, *Vaschus* secimed by his teares to be  
 moued to compassion , and speakyng to hym with chearfull  
 countenance, commaunded hym to be loosed . This doone,  
 he sent immediatly to his pallace for thyrtye poundes weyght <sup>xxx. pounde</sup>  
 of pure golde, artificepally wrought into sundry ouches, whiche <sup>weight of</sup>  
 his wyues and concubines bled to weare . Also the thyrde daye <sup>wrought gold.</sup>  
 folowyng, his noble men and gentlemen, sent threescore poun- <sup>Threescore</sup>  
 des weyght of gold for theyr fine and raunsome . *Tumanama* be- <sup>poundes</sup>  
 yng demaunded where they had that gold: he answered, that it <sup>weight of gold.</sup>  
 was not geathered in his dominions, but that it was brought his  
 auncestours from the riuer *Comogrus* towarde the south . But  
 the *Pocchorrosians* and other his enemies sayde that he lyed, af-  
 firmyng that his kyngdome was ryche in golde. *Tumanama* on  
 the contrary part , instantly protested that he neuer knelwe any  
 golde myne in all his dominions: yet denied not but that there  
 hath sometymes been found certayne small graynes of golde, to  
 the geathering whereof, he neuer had any regard, because they  
 could not get it without great & long labour. While these things  
 were doing, the sicke men which *Vaschus* had left in the byllage  
 of *Pocchorrosa*, came to hym the .viii. day of the Calendes of Ja-  
 nuary, in the yeere of Christ. *M.D.LXIII.* byngyng with them  
 certayne labourers from the kynges of the south, with sundrye  
 instrumentes to dygge the grounde, and geather gold. Thus  
 passing ouer the day of the natiuitie of Christ without bodyppe  
 labour, vpon Saynt Stephens day he brought certayne mi-  
 ners to the syde of a hyll, not farre distant from the pallace

They abhorre  
labour.

## The thyrde Decade.

of *Tumanama*, where (as he sayth) he perceyued by the colour  
of the earth, that it was lyke to hyng sooth golde. When they  
had dygged a pyt, not past a hand breadth and a halfe, and syfted  
the earth thereof, they founde certayne small graynes of golde,  
no bygger then lintell seedes, amountyng to the weyght of  
twelue graynes, as they proued with theyr balances of assaie,  
before a notarie and wytnesse, that the better credits myght bee  
geuen thereto. Whereby they argued, that the ryehenesse of  
that land was agreeable to the report of the borderers, although  
*Vaschus* coulde by no meanes cause *Tumanama* to confesse the  
same. They suppose that he nothyng esteemed so small a por-  
tion: but other say, that he denyed his countrey to be fruiteful  
of golde, least by reason thereof, the desyre of golde myght  
intyle our men to inhabyte his kyngdome, as in deede the scely  
kyng was a prophet in so thynkyng. For they chole that and the  
region of *Pocchorrosato* inhabyte, and determynd to buylde  
townes in them both, if it should so please the kyng of Castile:  
aswel that they myght be baptyng places and vittaillyng houses  
for suche as shoulde iourney towarde the south, as also that both  
the regions were fruiteful, and of good ground to beare fruites  
and trees. Intendyng now therefore to depart from thence,  
he tryed the earth by chaunce in an other place, where the co-  
lour of the ground, with certayne shynnyng stones, seemed to be  
a token of golde, where causyng a small pyt to be dygged, litle  
beneath the vpper crust of the earth, he founde so muche golde,  
as weyghed the peere of golde whiche the Spaniardes call  
*Castellatum aureum*, and is commonly called *Pesus*, but not in  
one graine. Receyvyng at these tokens, in hope of great riches,  
he had *Tumanama* to be of good comfort, promysyng hym that  
he woulde be his secende and defender, so that he troubled  
not any of the kynges, whiche were frendes to the Christians:  
He also perswaded hym to geather plentie of golde. Some say  
that he ledde away all *Tumanama* his women, and spoyled hym,  
least he shoulde rebell. Yet he deliuered his sonne to *Vaschus*,  
to be brought by with our men, to learne theyr language and  
religion, that he myght hereafter the better vse his helpe,  
aswell in all thynges that he shoulde haue to doo with our men,  
as also more politickely rule, and obtayne the loue of his owne  
subiectes.

The colour of  
the golden  
earth, and a tri-  
all of the same,

Tokens of  
great plentie  
of gold.

subiectes. *Vaschus* at this tyme fell into a vehement feuer, by reason of excesse of labour, immoderate watchyng, and hunger, insomuche that departyng from thence, he was sayne to be borne vpon mens backes in sheetes of gossampyne cotton: lyke wyse also manye of his souldiers, which were soo weake, that they could nother go nor stande. To this purpose they vsed the helpe of thynhabitanter, who shewed them selues in all thynges wyslyng and obedient. Also some of them whiche were somewhat feeble, and not able to traualle, although not greuously sycke, were led by the armes, vntyll they came to the dominion of kyng *Comogrus*, a great frende to the Christians, of whom we haue largely made mention before. At *Vaschus* comyng thither, he founde that the olde kyng was dead, and his sonne (whom we so prayed for his wysedome) to reigne in his steade, and that he was baptised by the name of *Charles*. The palace of this *Comogrus* is situate at the foote of a steepe hyll well cultured, hauyng toward the south a playne of twelue leagues in breadth, and very fruitefull. This playne they call *Zauana*. Beyond this, are the great and hygh mountaynes, whiche diuide the two seas, whereof we haue spoken before. Out of the steepe hylls, spryngeth the ryuer *Comogrus*, whiche runneth through the sayde playne to the hygh mountaynes, receauyng into his chanel by their valleys, all other ryuers, and so falleth into the south sea: It is distant from *Dariena*, about threescore and tenne leagues toward the west. As our men therefore came to these parties, kyng *Comogrus* (other wyse called *Charles* by his christian name) met them ioyfully, and entertayned them honorably, geuyng them their fyl of pleasaunt meates and drynkes: He gaue also to *Vaschus* twentie pounde weight of wrought golde. *Vaschus* recompensed hym with thynges whiche he esteemed muche more, as axes, and sundry kyndes of carpenters tooles: also a souldiours cloke, and a fayre shurt, wrought with needle woork. By these gyftes, *Comogrus* thought hym selfe to be halfe a God among his borderers. *Vaschus* at his departyng from hence, earnestly charged *Comogrus*, and the other kynges, to remayne faythfull and obedient to the christian kyng of Castile, if they desyred to lyue in peace and quietnesse, and that they shoulde hereafter more dili-

feeblenesse of  
hunger and  
watchyng.

The river  
*Comogrus*.

gently



## The thyerde decade.

gently apply them selues to the geatheryng of golde, to be sent to the great chrystian *Tiba* (that is) kyng: Declaryng further, that by this meanes, they shoulde both get them and their posteritie a pairone and defender agaynst their enemyes, and also obtayne great abundaunce of our thynges. These assayes thus happely atchined, he went forward on his voyage to the palaice of kyng *Poncha*, where he found foure young men, which were come from *Dariena*, to certifie hym that there were certayne shippes come from *Hispaniola* laden with vyttayles, and other necessaries. Wherefore takyng with hym twentie of his most lusty souldiers, he made hast to *Dariena*, with long iorneys: leauyng the residue behynd him, to folowe at theyr leysure. He writteth, that he came to *Dariena* the .xiii. Ca. of Fe. An. 1514. The date of his letter is: fFrom *Darena*, the .iiii. day of March. He writteth in the same letter, that he had many sore conflictes, & that he was yet neyther wounded, or lost any of his men in the battayle: and therefore in all his large letter, there is not one lease without thanks geuyng to almyghy God for his delyuery, and preservation from so many imminent perylls. He attempted no enterpryse, or toke in hand any voyage, without thynuocation of God and his holy sayntes. Thus was *Vaschus Balboa* of a vyolent Goliath, turned into *Heliseus*, and from *Anteus* to *Hercules*, the conquerour of monsters. Beyng therefore thus turned from a rashe royster, to a polyprike and discrete capitayne, he was iudged woorthy to be aduanced to great honour: By reason whereof, he was both receiued into the kynges fauour, and thereupon created the generall or Lieutenaint of the kynges army in those Regions. Thus muche haue I geathered both by the letters of certayne my faythfull frendes beyng in *Dariena*, and also by woorde of mouth of suche as came lately from thence. If your holynes desyre to knowe what I thynke herein, suerly, by suche thynges as I haue seene, I beleue these thynges to be true, euen so thorder and agreeyng of *Vaschus* and his companions warrelpyke letters, seeme to confirme the same. The Spanyarde therefore shall not neede hereafter, with vndermyng the earth with intollerable labour, to breake the bones of our mother, and enter many myles into her bowels, and with innumerable daungers cut in sunder

whole

*Vaschus* returneth to *Dariena*.

The good fortune of *Vaschus*.

A flattering fortune, looke his death in the hooke of the fland lately found

The earth is our generall mother.

Whole mountaynes, to make away to the courte of infernal Pluto, to byying from thence wycked gold, the seede of innumerable mescheeues, without the whiche, notwithstanding we may nowe scarcelye leade a happye lyfe, sith iniquitie hath so preuayled, and made vs slaues to that, whereof we are lordes by nature: The Spaniarde (I say) shall not neede with such trauayles and difficultie, to dygge farre into the earth for gold, but shall fynde it plentifully, in maner in the vpper crust of the earth, or in the sandes of ryuers dyed vp by the heat of sommer, onely washyng the earth softly from the same, and shall with lyke facilitie geather plentie of pearles. Certaynly the reuerent antiquitie (by all the Cosinographers assent) obteyned not so great a benefyte of nature, nor yet aspired to the knowledge hereof, because there came neuer man before out of our knowen wyldes, to these vnknown nations, at the least with a power of men by force of armes, in maner of conquest: wheras otherwyle nothyng can be gotton here, forasmuch as these nations are for the most part seuered defenders of theyr patrimonies, and cruell to strangers, in no condition admitting them otherwise then by conquest, especially the fierce Canibales or Caribes. For these wylie hunters of men, geue them selues to none other kynde of exercyse, but onely to manhuntynge, and tyllage, after theyr maner. At the comynge therefore of our men into theyr regions, they looke as lured to haue them fall into their snares, as if they were hartes or wyld bores: and with no lesse confydence, licke their lippes secretly, in hope of their praye. If they get the vpper hande, they eate them greedily: if they mistrust them selues to be the weaker part, they trust to theyr feete, and flee swifter then the wynde. Agayne, yf the matter be tryed on the water, as wel the women as the men can dyue and swimme, as though they had ben euer brought vp and fedde in the water. It is no marueyle therefore, yf the large tract of these regions haue ben hitherto vnknown. But nowe sith it hath pleased God to discouer the same in our tyme, it shall become vs to shewe our naturall loue to mankynde, and duetie to God, to endeuour our selues to byying them to ciuilitie and true religion, to thyncrease of Christes flocke, to the confusion of Infidels and the Deuyll theyr father, who delyteth in our destruction, as he hath doone from

The rout of  
infernal Pluto.

Manhunters.

The speerthelle  
of the Canis  
bales.

Our duty to  
god, and natu-  
rall loue to  
mankinde.

## The thyrde decade.

doone from the begynnyng. By the good successe of these fyrst frutes, our hope is that the Christian religion shall stretch forth her armes very farre, whiche thyng shoulde the sooner come to passe, yf all men to theyr power, especially Christian princes (to whom it cheefely parteyneth) woulde put theyr handes to the plough of the lordes vineyarde: The haruest surely is great, but the woorkemen are but fewe. As we haue sayde at the begynnyng, your holynesse shal hereafter nouryshe many myriades of hoodes of chykens vnder your wynges. But let vs nowe retorne to speake of *Beragua*, beyng the West syde of *Vraba*, and first found by *Colonus* the Admiral, then vnsfortunatly gouerned by *Diego Nicuesa*, and nowe left in maner desolate, with the other large regions of those prouinces, brought from theyr wyld and beastly rudenesse, to ciuilitie and true religion.

The office of  
Christian  
princes.  
The haruest is  
great.

## The fourth booke of the thyrd Decade.



Was determined (moste holy father) to haue proceeded no further herein, but þ one fvery sparke, yet remaynyng in my minde, would not suffer me to ceasse. Whereas I haue therfore declared how *Beragua* was fyrst founde by *Colonus*, me thynke I should commit a haynous crime, if I shoulde defraud the man of the due commendations of his trauayles, of his cares and troubles, and finally of the daungers & peryls whiche he susteyned in that nauigation. Therfore in the peere of Christ 1502. in the 6. day of the Ides of May, he hopped vp his sayles, and departed from the Ilandes of *Gades*, with foure shippes, of fyfte or threescore tunne a peece, with a hundred, threescore, and ten men, and came with prosperous wynde to the Ilandes of *Canaria*, within fyue dayes folowynge. From thence, arryuyng the 16. day at the Ilande of *Dominica*, being the cheefe habitati- on of the *Canibales*, he sailed from *Dominica* to *Hispaniola* in fure other dayes. Thus within the space of 26. dayes, with prosperous wynde, and by the swyfte fall of the Ocean from the East to the West, he sailed from *Spayne* to *Hispaniola*, whiche course

The fourth  
nauigation of  
Colonus the  
Admiral.

course is counted of the mariners, to be no lesse then a thousand and two hundred leagues. He tarped but a whyle in *Hispaniola*, whether it were wyllyngly, or that he were so admonished of the Vice Roy. Directyng therefore his voyage from thence toward the west, leauyng the *Ilandes* of *Cuba* and *Iamaica* on his ryght hand towarde the north, he wytteth that he chanced vpon an *Ilande* more southwarde then *Iamaica*, whiche thynhabitan-tes call *Guanassa*, so flopyshyng and fruitefull, that it might secme an earthyie *Paradys*e. Coastyng along by the shores of this *Iland*, he mette two of the *Canoas*, or boates of those prouinces, whiche were drawne with two naked slaues agaynst the streame. In these boates was carped a ruler of the *Iland*, with his wyfe and chyldren, all naked. The slaues seeyng our men a lande, made signes to them with prouid countenaunce in theyr maisters name, to stand out of the way, and threathned them, if they woulde not geue place. Their symplenes is such, that they neyther feared the multitude, or power of our men, or the greatnes and straungenes of our shypes. They thought that our men woulde haue honoured theyr maister with lyke reuerence as they dyd. Our men had entelligence at the length, that this ruler was a great marchant, whych came to the marte from other coastes of the *Ilande*: for they exercyse byyng and sellyng by exchaunge with their confines. He had also with hym good store of suche ware as they stand in neede of, or take pleasure in: as laton belles, rasers, knyues, and hatchettes made of a certayne sharpe yelowe bygght stone, with handles of a strong kinde of wood: also many other necessary instrumentes, with kytchen stuffe, and vesselles for all necessary bles: lyke wyse sheetes of gossampine cotton, wrought of sundrie colours. Our men toke hym prysoner, with al his family, but *Colonus* commaunded hym to be loosed shortly after, and the greatest part of his goodes to bee restored, to wyne his frendshyppe. Beyng here instructed of a land lying further toward the south, he tooke his voyage thither. Therfore litle more then tenne myles distant from hence, he founde a large land, whiche thynhabitan-tes called *Quiriquetana*, but he named it *Ciamba*. When he went a lande, and commaunded his chaplaine to say masse on the sea bankes, a great confluence of the naked inhabitantes flocked thither,

from Spaine  
to Hispaniola a  
thousande and  
two hundred  
leagues,

Simple people

A great  
marchant.



## The thyrde Decade.

**Gentle people.** ther, simply and without feare, bringyng with them plenty of meate and freshe water, marueplyng at our men, as they had ben some straunge miracle. When they had presentedt theyr gistes, they went somewhat backward, and made lowe curtelty after theyr maner, bowyng their heades and bodyes reuerently. He recompensed their gentilnes, rewardyng them with other of our thynges, as counters, bassettes, and garlands of glasse, and counterfet stones, lookyng glasses, needelles, and pynnes, with suche other tralhe, whiche seemed vnto them pretious marchandize. In this great tracte, there are two regions, whereof the one is called *Tuia*, and the other *Maia*. He wytereth, that all that lande is very sayre and hollome, by reason of the excellent temperatnesse of the ayre: And that it is inferiour to no land in fruitefull ground, beyng partly full of mountaynes, and partly large playnes: also replenyshed with many goodly trees, hollome hearbes, continuyng greene, and flopphyng al the whole yeere. It beareth also very many holly trees, and pyneaple trees. Also .vii. kyndes of date trees, where of some are fruitefull, and some baren. It byngeth forth likewise of it selfe *Pelgoras*, and wilde vines, laden with grapes, euen in the wooddes among other trees. He sayth furthermore, that there is such abundaunce of other pleasunt and profitable fruites, that they passe not of vines. Of one of those kyndes of date trees, they make certayne long and brode swoordes, and dartes. These regions beare also gossampyne trees here and there commonly in the woods. Lykewise *Mirobalanes* of sundry kyndes, as those which the phisicians call *Emblicos*, and *Chebulo*: *Maizium* also, *Iucca*, *Ages*, and *Battatas*, lyke vnto those which we haue sayd before to be founde in other regions in these coastes. The same noorysheth also Lions, Tygers, Hartes, Roes, Goates, and dyuers other beastes. Lykewise sundry kyndes of byrdes and foules: among the whiche they keepe onely them to franke and feede, which are in colour, bygnes, and tast, muche lyke vnto our *Dehennes*. He sayth that thynhabitanes are of hygh and goodly stature, well lynned and protioned, both men and women, coueryng theyr priuy partes with fyne breeches of gossampyne cotton, wrought with diuers colours. And that they may seeme the moze comely and beautifull (as they take it)

ic) they paynt theyr bodie redde and blacke, with the iuice of certayne apples, whiche they plant in theyr gardens for the same purpose. Some of them paynt theyr whole bodyes, some but part, and other some drawe the portitures of hearbes, floures, and knottes, euery one as seemeth best to his owne phantasie. Theyr language differeth vterly, from theyrs of the Ilandes neere about them. From these regions, the waters of the sea ran with as full a course towards the West, as if it had byn the fall of a swift riuer. Neuerthelesse he determined to searche the East partes of this land, reuoluyng in his minde that the regions of *Paria* & *Os draconis* with other coastes founde before towards the East, shoulde be neere there about, as in deeede they were. Departyng therfore from the large region of *Quiriquetana*, the .xiii. day of the calendes of September, when he had layled thyrty leagues, he found a ryuer, within the mouth wherof he drew freshe water in the sea: where also the shore was so cleane without rockes, that he founde grounde euery where, where he myght aptly cast anker. He wyiteth, that the swift course of the *Ocean* was so vehement and contrary, that in the space of fourtie dayes, he coulde scarcely sayle threescore and tenne leagues, and that with much dyfficultie, with many fetches and compassynges, fyndyng him selfe to be some tymes repulled and dyuen farre backe by the violent course of the sea, when he woulde haue taken lande towarde the euening, leaste perhaps wanderyng in vnknownen coastes in the darcknesse of the nyght, he myght be in daunger of shypwacke. He wyiteth, that in the space of eyght leagues, he found three great and fayre ryuers, vpon the banckes whereof there grewe reedes bygger then a mannes thygh. In these riuers was also great plenty of fysh, and great *Tortoyles*: Lykewyse in many places, multitudes of *Crocodyles* lying in the sande, and panyng to take the heate of the sonne: besyde, dyuers other kyndes of beastes, wherunto he gaue no names. He sayeth also, that the soyle of that lande is verye diuers and variable, beyng somewhere stonye and full of rough and craggie promontories, or poyntes reachyng into the sea, and in other places as fruitefull as may be. They haue also diuers kynges and rulers. In some places they call a kyng *Cacicus*: in other places they

They paynt  
theyr bodyes.

The swifte  
course of the sea  
from the East  
to the West,

Freshe water  
in the sea.

Fayre ryuers.  
Great reedes.

Great *Tortoyles*.

## The thyrde Decade.

they call hym *Quebi*, and somewhere *Tiba*. Such as haue be-  
 haued them selues valyantlye in the warres agaynst theyr  
 enemies, and haue theyr faces full of scarres, they call *Cupras*,  
 and honour them as the antiquitie dyd the gods whiche they cal-  
 led *Heroes*, supposed to be the soules of suche men, as in theyr  
 lyfe tyme excelled in vertue and noble actes. The common peo-  
 ple they call *Chiui*, and a man, they call *Homem*. When they  
 say in theyr language, take man, they say *Hoppa home*. After  
 this, he came to another ryuer apt to beare great shippes, be-  
 fore the mouth whereof, lye foure small Ilandes, full of stony-  
 shyng and fruitfull trees: these Ilandes he named *Quatuor tem-  
 pora*. From hence, sayling toward the East for the space of .xiii.  
 leagues, styl against the violent course of the water, he found  
 twelue other small Ilandes, in the which, because he founde a  
 new kind of frutes, much like vnto our Lemons, he called them  
*Limonares*. Wanderyng yet further the same way for the space  
 of .xii. leagues, he founde a great hauen entryng into the lande,  
 after the maner of a gulse, the space of thre leagues, and in  
 maner as brode, into y<sup>e</sup> which fel a great riuer. Here was *Nicuesa*  
 lost afterward, when he sought *Beragua*, by reason whereof, they  
 called it *Rio de los perdidos*, that is, the ryuer of the lost men.  
 Thus *Colonus* the Admirall, yet further continuyng his course  
 agaynst the furye of the sea, founde manye hygh mountaynes,  
 and horrible valleys, with dyuers ryuers and hauens, from all  
 the which (as he sayth) proceeded sweete sauours, greatly recre-  
 atyng and comfortyng nature: Insomuch that in al this long  
 tract, there was not one of his men diseased, vntyll he came to a  
 region whiche thynhabitanes call *Quicuris*, in the whiche is the  
 hauen called *Cariai*, named *Mirobalanus* by the Admirall, by-  
 cause the *Mirobalane* trees are natie in the regions thereabout.  
 In this hauen of *Cariai*, there came about two hundred of thyn-  
 habitanes to the sea syde, with euerye of them thre or foure  
 dartes in theyr handes, yet of condition gentle yenough, and  
 not refusyng straungers. Their comynge was for none other  
 purpose, then to knowe what this newe nation meant, or what  
 they brought with them. When our men had geuen them  
 sygnes of peace, they came swymmyng to the shypes, and de-  
 syed to barter with them by exchaunge. The Admirall, to  
 assure

*Quatuor  
tempora.*

The region of  
*Quicuri.*

The hauen of  
*Cariai* or *Mi-  
robalanus*

assure them to frendshyppe, geue them many of our thynges: But they refused them, suspecting some disceyt thereby, bycause he would not receiue theirs. They wrought all by sygnes: for one vnderstoode not a woord of the others language. Suche gyftes as were sent them, they left on the shore, and woulde take no part thereof. They are of suche ciuillitie and humanitie, that they esteeme it more honorable to geue, then to take. They sent our men two young women, beyng virgines, of commendable fauour, and goodly stature, signifying vnto them, that they myght take them away with them, if it were their pleasure. These women, after the maner of their countrey, were couered from their ancles somewhat aboue their priuie partes, with a certayne cloth made of gossampine cotton, but the men are all naked. The women vie to cut their heare: but the men let it growe on the hynder part of their heades, and cut it on the fore part. Their long heare, they bynde vp with fyllettes, and wynde it in sundry rowles, as our maydes are accustomed to do. The virgines whiche were sent to the Admirall, he decked in fayre apparell, and gaue them many gyftes, and sent them home agayne. But lykewyse all these rewardes and apparel they left vppon the shore, bycause our men had refused their giftes. Yet tooke he two men away with hym (and those very wyllyngly) that by learning the Spanyshe tongue, he myght afterward vse them for interpretours. He considered that the tractes of these coastes were not greatly troubled with vehement motions, or ouerflowynges of the sea, for as inuche as trees growe in the sea not farre from the shore, euen as they doo vppon the bankes of ryuers: the whiche thyng also other do affirme, whiche haue latelyster searched those coastes, declaryng that the sea ryseth and falleth but litle therabout. He sayth furthermore, that in the prospect of this land, there are trees engendred euen in the sea, which after that they are growen to any height, bend downe the toppes of theyr bzaunches into the ground: whiche embracing them, causeth other bzaunches to spring out of the same, and take roote in the earth, byngyng forth trees in theyr kynd successiuelly, as dyd the fyrst roote from whence they had theyr oryginall, as do also the settes of vines, when onely both the endes thereof are put into the grounde. Plinie in the twelfth

Ciuite and hus  
mane people

Trees growing  
in the sea after  
a strange sort.

Plinie.



## The thyrde Decade.

booke of his natural historie maketh mention of suche trees, describyng them to be on the lande, but not in the sea. The Admiral wytteth also, that the lyke beastes are engendred in the coastes of *Cariac*, as in other prouinces of these regions, and such as we haue spoken of before: Yet that there is one founde here in nature muche differyng from the other. This beast is of the bygnesse of a great Donkey, but with a tayle much longer and bygger, it lyueth in the wooddes, and remoueth from tree to tree in this maner: Hanyng by the tayle vppon the bryanche of a tree, and gathering strength by swaying her body twyse or thryse to and fro, she casteth her selfe from bryanche to bryanche, and so from tree to tree, as though she flew. An archer of ours hurt one of them, who, perceiuyng her selfe to be wounded, leapt downe from the tree, and fiercely set on him whiche gaue her the wound, in so much that he was fayne to defend hym selfe with his swoorde. And thus by chaunce, cutting of one of her armes, he tooke her, and with much ado brought her to the shippes, where within a while she waxed tame. Whyle she was thus kept and bounde with cheynes, certayne other of our hunters had chased a wyld Boze out of the marshes neere vnto the sea syde: for hunger and desyre of fleshe, caused them to take double pleasure in huntynge. In this meane tyme other which remayned in the shippes, goyng a lande to recreate them selues, tooke this Donkie with them, who, as soone as she had espyed the Boze, set vp her byssels, and made towarde him. The Boze lykewyse shooke his byssels, and whet his teeth. The Donkie furiously inuaded the Boze, wrappynge her tayle about his body, & with her arme, reserued of her victourer, helde him so fast about the throte, that he was suffocate. These people of *Cariac*, vse to dye the dead bodies of theyr princes vppon hurdels, and so rescrue them inuolued in the leaues of trees. As he went forwarde, about twentie leagues from *Cariac*, he founde a gulfe of suche largenes, that it contayned .xii. leagues in compass, in the mouth of this gulfe was foure litle Islandes, so neere togeather, that they made a safe haven to enter into the gulfe: This gulfe is the haven whiche we sayde before to be called *Cerabaro* of thynhabitanter. But they haue nowe learned, that only the land of the one syde therof, lying on the ryght hande

A strange kynd  
of Monkeys.

A Monkey  
fghteth with  
a man,

A conflict be-  
twene a Mon-  
key and a wyld  
Boze.

The bodies of  
kynge dyed  
and reserued.

at the enterpynge of the gulfe, is called by that name, but that on the left syde, is called *Aburema*. He sayth that all this gulfe is full of fruitefull Islandes, wel replenished with goodly trees, and the grounde of the sea to be very cleane without rockes, and commodious to cast anker: lykewylse the sea of the gulfe to haue great abundance of fyshe, and the lande on both the sydes to bee inferyor to none in fruitfulness. At his fyrst arryuyng, he espyed two of thynhabitanes, hauyng cheynes about theyr neckes, made of ouches (whiche they call *Guauines*) of base golde, artificially wrought in the fourmes of Eagles, and Lions, with dyuers other beastes, and foules. Of the two *Cariacians* whiche he brought with hym from *Cariacai*, he was enfourmed that the regions of *Cerabaro* and *Aburema* were ryche in golde, and that the people of *Cariacai* haue al theyr gold from thence for exchaunge of other of theyr thynges. They tolde hym also, that in the same regions there are fve villages, not farre from the sea syde, whose inhabitants apply them selues onely to the gathering of gold. The names of these villages are these, *Chirara*, *Puren*, *Chitazza*, *Iureche*, *Atamea*. All the men of the prouince of *Cerabaro*, go naked, & are painted with diuers colours. They take great pleasure in wearing garlandes of floures, and crownes made of the clawes of Lions & Tygers. The women couer only theyr pryncipall partes with a syllet of gossampine cotton. Departing from hence, & coasting styl by the same shore for the space of xviii. leagues, he came to another ryuer, where he espyed about thre hundred naked men in a company. When they sawe the shyppes drawe neare the lande, they cryed out aloud, with cruel countenaunces, shakynge theyr woooden swoordes, and hurlyng darters, takynge also water in theyr mouthes, and spoutynge the same agaynst our men: whereby they seemed to insinuate, that they woulde receiue no condition of peace, or haue ought to do with them. Here he commaunded certayne peeces of ordinaunce to be shot of towarde them, yet so to ouerhoote them, that none myght be hurt thereby: For he euer determined to deale quietly & peaceably with these newe nations. At the noyse therefore of the gunnes, and syght of the fyre, they fel downe to the grounde, and desyred peace. Thus enterpynge into further frendshyp, they exchaunged theyr cheynes and ouches of

Crownes of  
beastes clawes.

Spytfull  
people.

Guns make  
peace.

## The thyerde Decade.

golde, for glasses, and haukes belles, and suche other marchan-  
dies. They vse drummes or tymbrels made of the shelles of  
certaine sea fyshes, wherewith they encorage them selues in the  
warres. In this tract are these seuen ryuers, *Acateba*, *Quareba*,  
*Zobroba*, *Aiaguitin*, *Vrida*, *Duribba*, *Beragua*, in all the whiche,  
golde is founde. They defende them selues agaynst rayne and  
heat with certayne great leaues of trees, in the steade of clokes.  
Departying from hence, he searched the coastes of *Ebetere*, and  
*Embigar*, into the whiche fall the goodly ryuers of *Zoboran* and  
*Cubigar*: And here ceaseth the plentie and fruitfulness of gold, in  
the tract of fiftie leagues, or there about. From hence, only three  
leagues distant, is the rocke whiche in the vnfortunat discourse  
of *Nicuesa* we sayde was called of our men *Pignonem*, but of thin-  
habitantes the Region is called *Vibba*. In this tract also, about  
syxe leagues from thence, is the hauen whiche *Colonus* called  
*Portus Bellus* (wherof we haue spoken before) in the region which  
thinhabitants cal *Xagua guaya*. This region is very populous,  
but they goe all naked. The kyng is paynted with blacke  
colours, but all the people with redde. The kyng and seuen of  
his noble men, had euery of them a litle plate of golde hangyng  
at theyr noses, pylles, downe vnto theyr lippes: and this they  
take for a comely ornamēt. The men inclose theyr priue mem-  
bers in a shell, and the women couer theyr with a pyllet of gol-  
famine cotton, tyed about theyr loynes. In theyr gardens they  
noyſe a fruite muche lyke the nut of a pine tree, the which (as  
we haue sayde in an other place) groweth on a shrubbe, muche  
lyke vnto an hartichoke, but the fruite is much softer, and meate  
for a kyng: also certayne trees whiche beare gourdes, whereof  
we haue spoken before: this tree they call *Hibnero*. In these  
coastes they met sometymes with Crocodiles lying on the  
sandes, the whiche when they fled, or tooke the water, they  
left a very sweete sauoure behynde them, sweeter then mulke  
or *Castoreum*. When I was sent ambassadoure for the catho-  
lyke kyng of Castile, to the Soltane of Babylon, or Alcayre in  
Egypt, thinhabitantes neere vnto the ryuer of *Nilus* tolde me  
the lyke of theyr female Crocodiles, affyrmyng furthermoze,  
that the fat or shewet of them, is equall in sweetnes with the  
pleasaunt gummēs of Arabie. But the Admirall was now at  
the

Seuen goldeu  
ryuers

Note wher the  
plentie of gold  
endeth

Crocodiles of  
sweet sauour.

Alcayre or Baby-  
lon in Egypt.

the length enforced of necessitie to depart from hence, aswell  
 for that he was no longer able to abyde the contrarie and vio-  
 lent course of the water, as also that his shyppes were dayly  
 more and more putrified, and eaten thzough with certayne wo- Shyppes eaten  
with wormes.  
 mes, which are engendred of the warmenesse of the water in al  
 those tractes, neere unto the Equinoctiall line. The Vene-  
 tians call these wormes *Bissas*. The same are also engendred in  
 two hauens of the cite of *Alexandria* in Egypt, and destroy the Alexandria in  
Egypt.  
 shyppes if they lye long at anker. They are a cubit in length,  
 and somewhat more, not passing the quantitie of a synger in big-  
 nesse. The Spanysh mariner calleth this pestilence *Broma*. *Co-*  
*lonus* therfore, whom before the great monsters of the sea could  
 not feare, now fearyng this *Broma*, being also sore vexed with the  
 contrary fall of the sea, directed his course with the Ocean toward  
 the west, and came first to the riuer *Hiebra*, distant only two  
 leagues from the riuer of *Beragua*, because that was comodious  
 to harborowe great shypps. This region is named after the riuer,  
 and is called *Beragua* the lesse, because both the riuers are in the  
 dominion of the kyng whiche inhabiteth the region of *Beragua*.  
 But what chaunced vnto hym in this voyage on the ryght  
 hand and on the left, let vs now declare. While therfore *Co-*  
*lonus* the Admiral remayned yet in the riuer *Hiebra*, he sent *Bar-*  
*tholomeus Colonus* his brother, and Liefetenaunt of *Hispaniola*,  
 with the shyp boates, and theelscöre and eyght men, to the riuer  
 of *Beragua*, where the kyng of the region, beyng naked, and Hölve the kyng  
of Beragua en-  
certayned the  
Liefetenant.  
 paynted after the maner of the countrey, came towards them,  
 with a great multitude of men waytyng on hym, but all unarmed  
 and without weapons, geuyng also signes of peace. When he  
 approached neerer, and entred communication with our men, cer-  
 tayne of his gentlemen, neereft about his person, remembryng  
 the maiestie of a kyng, and that it stood not with his honour to  
 bargayne standyng, tooke a great stone out of the riuer, wash-  
 yng and rubbing it very decently, and so put it vnder hym, with  
 humble reuerence. The kyng thus sittynge, seemed with signes  
 and tokens, to insinuate that it should be lawfull for our men to  
 search and biewe al the riuers within his dominion. Wherefore,  
 the fyrst day of the Ides of February, leauing his boates with  
 certayne of his company, he went by land a foote, from the  
Their reuerence  
to their kyng.



bankes of *Beragua*, vntyll he came to the ryuer of *Duraba*, which he affirmeth to be rycher in gold then eyther *Hiebra* or *Beragua*: For gold is engendred in all ryuers of that land, insonmuch that among the rootes of trees growyng by the bankes of the ryuers, and among the stones left of the water, and also wheresoeuer they dygged a hole or pyt in the ground, not past the deapth of a handefull and a halfe, they founde the earth, beyng taken out therof, myrte with golde: whercuppon he determyned to fasten his foote there, and to inhabit. Whiche thing the people of the countrey perceiuing, and sinellyng what inconuenience and mischiefe myght thereof ensue to their countrey, if they should permit straungers to plant theyr inhabitations there, assembled a great armie, and with horrible outcryes assailed our men (who had now begun to build houses) so desperatly, that they were scarcely able for to abyde the fyrst byunt. These naked Barbarians at theyr fyrst appoche, vled onely synges and dartes: but when they came neerer to hande strokes, they fought with theyr wooden swoordes, whiche they cal *Machanas*, as we haue sayde before. A man woulde not thynke what great malice and wyath was kyndled in theyr hartes agaynst our men, and with what desperate myndes they fought for the defence of theyr libertie, whiche they more esteeme then lyfe or riches: For they were now so boyde of al feare, and contemning death, that they neyther feared long bowes or crosse bowes, nor yet (which is mooste to be marueyled) were any thyng discouraged at the terrible noyse of the gunnes, shoote of from the shyppes. They retyned once: but shortly after encreasyng theyr number, they returned more fiercely then at the fyrste. They woulde haue ben contented to haue receiued our men frendly as straungers, but not as inhabitours. The more instant that our men were to remayne, so much the greater multitude of borderers flocked togeather dayly, disturbyng them both nyght and day, sometymes on the one syde, and sometymes on the other. The shyppes lying at anker neare vnto the shore, warded them on the backe halfe: but at the length they were fayne to forsake this lande, and returne backe the same way by the whiche they came. Thus with much difficultie & daunger they came to the Island of Iamaica, lying on the south side of Hispaniola & Cuba, with theyr

Synges and  
dartes.

Libertie more  
esteemed then  
ryches.

The Spaniards  
are dyspued  
so aght.

theyr thyppes as full of holes as syues, and holes so eaten with wormes, as though they had been bozed through with wymbles. The water entred so fast at the ryftes and holes, that yf they had not with the paynful labour of theyr handes emptied the same as fast, they were lyke to haue perished: where as yet by this meanes they arryued at *Iamaica*, although in manner halfe dead. But theyr calamitie ceased not heere: For as fast as theyr thyppes leaked, theyr strength diminished, so that they were no longer able to keepe them from sinkyng. By reason whereof, fallyng into the handes of the Barbarians, and inclosed without hope of departure, they led theyr lyues for the space of tenne monethes among the naked people, more miserablie then euer dyd *Achemenides* among the Giautes, called *Ciclopes*, rather luyng, then beyng eyther contented or satisfied with the strange meates of that Islande, and that onely at suche tymes as pleased the Barbarians to geue them part of theyrs. The deadly enmitie and malice whiche these barbarous kynges beare one agaynst an other, made greatly with our men: For at suche tymes as they attempted warre agaynst theyr borderers, they woulde sometymes geue our men part of theyr bread, to ayde them. But how miserable and wretched a thyng it is to liue onely with bread gotten by beggynge, your holynesse may easily coniecture: especially where al other accustomed foode is lackyng, as wyne, oyle, fleische, butter, cheese, and mylke, wherewith the stomackes of our people of Europe haue euer been nozished, euen from theyr cradels. Therfore as necessitie is subiect to no law: so doth it enforce men to attempt desperate aduentures, and those yf sooner, which by a certayne nobilitie of nature, do no further esteeme lyfe then it is toynd with some felicitie. *Bartholomeus Colonus* therfore, intendyng rather to proue what God woulde do with hym and his companions in these extremities, then any longer to abyde the same, commaunded *Diego Mendez* his Steward, with two guides of that Islande, whom he had hyred with promyses of great rewardes at theyr returne, to enter into one of theyr Canoas, and take theyr voyage to *Hispaniola*. Beyng thus tossed on the sea to and fro from rocke to rocke, by reason of the shortnesse and narrownesse of the *Canoa*, they arryued at the length at the last corner of *Hispaniola*,

A miserable  
case.

Necessitie hath  
no laws.

Howe farre life  
is to be esteemed

## The thyrd Decade.

niola, beyng distant from *Iamaica* fourtie leagues. Here his  
 gupdes departyng from hym, returned agayne to *Colonus*, for  
 the rewardes whiche he had promised them: but *Diegus Mendez*  
 went on forwarde a foote, vntyll he came to the citie called *Sanc-*  
*tus Dominicus*, beyng the chiefe & head citie of the *Ilande*. The  
 offycers and rulers of *Hispaniola*, beyng enfourmed of the  
 matter, appoynted hym two shypes, wherewith he returned  
 to his maister and companions. As he founde them, so came  
 they to *Hispaniola*, very feeble, and in maner naked. What  
 chaunced of them afterwarde, I knowe not as yet. Let vs now  
 therefore leaue these particulers, and speake somewhat more of  
 generals. In al those tracts, whiche we sayd here before to haue  
 been founde by *Colonus* the Admiral, both he hym selfe writeth,  
 and all his companions of that voyage confesse, that the trees,  
 hearbes, and frutes, are flopythyng and greene all the whole  
 yeere, and the ayre so temperate & holesome, that of al his compa-  
 nie there neuer fel one man sycke, nor yet were vexed eyther with  
 extreme colde or heate, for the space of fyftie leagues, from the  
 great hauen of *Cerabaro*, to the ryuers of *Hiebra* and *Beragua*.  
 The inhabitants of *Cerabaro*, and the nations whiche are be-  
 twyxt that & the sayde ryuers, applie not them selues to the gra-  
 ther yng of gold, but only at certayne tymes of the yeere, and are  
 very expert and cunnyng herein, as are our myners of syluer  
 and Iron. They knowe by long experience in what places  
 golde is most abundantly engendred: as by the colour of the  
 water of the ryuers, and such as fall from the mountaynes,  
 and also by the colour of the earth and stones. They beleeue a  
 certayne godly nature to be in golde, forasmuche as they neuer  
 geather it, except they vse certayne religious expiations or  
 purgynge, as to absteyne from women, and all kyndes of plea-  
 sures, and delicate meates and drinckes, during all the tyme that  
 their golden haruest lasteth. They suppose that men do naturally  
 liue and die as other beastes do, and therefore honour none other  
 thyng as God: Yet do they pray to the Sonne, and honour it  
 when it ryseth. But let vs now speake of the mountains, and si-  
 tuation of these landes. From all the sea bankes of these regions,  
 exceedyng great and hygh mountaynes are seene towarde the  
 South, yet reaching by a continual tract from the East into the  
 west,

*Santus Domi-*  
*nicus.*

Landes founde  
 by *Colonus*.

Temperat res-  
 gions and hol-  
 some ayre.

Expert miners

A godly nature  
 in golde.

Golden haruest

Hygh and great  
 mountaynes.

west, by reason wherof, I suppose that the two great seas (wherof I haue spoken largely before) are deuided with these mountaynes, as it were with bulwarke, least they shoulde ioyne and repugne, as Italie diuidenth the sea called *Tirrhenum*, from the sea *Adriatike*, whiche is nowe commonly called the gulfe of *Venice*. For whiche way so euer they sayled from the poynt called *Promontorium, S. Augustini* (whiche parteyneth to the *Portugales*, and prospecteth against the sea *Atlantike*) euen vnto *Vraba* and the hauen *Cerabaro*, and to the furthest landes founde hitherto westward, they had euer great mountaynes in syght, both neere hande, and also farre of, in all that long rase. These mountaynes were in some place smooth, pleasaunt, and fruitfull, full of goodly trees and hearbes, and somewhere hygh, rough, full of rockes, and barren, as chaunceth in the famous mountayne of *Taurus* in *Asia*, and also in dyuers coastes of our mountaynes of *Apennini*, & such other of like bygnesse. The rydgies also of these mountaynes are diuided with goodly and fayre valleyes. That part of the mountaynes which includeth the limittes of *Beragua*, is thought to be hygher then the cloudes, insomuch that (as they say) the tops of them can seldome be seene for the multitude of thicke cloudes whiche are beneath the same. *Colanus* the Admiral, the fyrst synder of these regions, affirmeth that the toppes of the mountaynes of *Beragua*, are more then fiftie myles in heyght. He sayth furthermore, that in the same region at the rootes of the mountaynes the way is open to the south sea, & compareth it as it were betwene *Venice* and *Genua*, or *Ianna*, as the *Genues* wyl haue it called, whiche fable that theyr cite was builded of *Ianus*. He affirmeth also, that this land reacheth forth toward the south, and that from hence it taketh the beginning of breadth: lyke as from the *Alpes*, out of the narowe thygh of *Italie*, we see the large and mayne landes of *Fraunce*, *Germanie*, and *Pannonie*, to the *Sarmatians* and *Scythians*, euen vnto the mountaynes and rockes of *Riphea*, and the frozen sea, and embrace therewith, as with a continuall bonde, al *Thracia*, and *Grecia*, with all that is included within the promontorie or poynt of *Malea*, and *Hellepontus* southwarde, and the sea *Euzinus*, and the maryshes of *Meotis* in *Scythia* northwarde. The Admiral supposeth, that on the left hande, in saylyng towarde the west, this

*Tirrhenum* is  
nowe called  
*Tuscaue*.

The mostaynes  
of *Beragua*  
hygher then the  
cloudes.

Mountaynes  
of fiftie myles  
hegght.

*Ianus* others  
waxe called  
*Iaphet* the son  
of *Noe*.

lande



## The thyrde Decade.

By this coniecture, the way shoulde open to Cathai by the Hyperboreans.

ooke the navigation of Cabote. Deca. iiii. lib. vi.

The great riuer Maragnonus.

The great riuer Dabaiba, of Sancti Iohannes.

lande is ioyned to *India*, beyonde the ryuer of *Ganges*, and that on the ryght hande towarde the North, it is extended to the frozen sea, beyonde the *Hyperboreans* and the North pole: So that both the seas (that is to meane that south sea which we sayd to bee founde by *Vaschus*, and our Ocean) shoulde ioyne and meete in the corners of that lande, and that the waters of these seas do not onely inclose and compasse the same without diuision, as *Europe* is inclosed with the seas of *Hellespontus*, and *Tanais* with the frozen Ocean, and our sea of *Tyrrhenum* with the *Spanyshe* seas: But in my opinion, the vehement course of the Ocean toward the west, doth signifie the let that the sayd two seas shoulde not so ioyne togeather, but rather that that lande is adherent to the firme landes towarde the North, as we haue sayde before. It shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche of the length hereof: Let vs nowe therefore speake somewhat of the breadth of the same. We haue made mention before howe the south sea is diuided by narrowe limittes from our Ocean, as it was proued by the experience of *Vaschus Nunnez* and his companions, which fyrst made open the way thither. But as dyuersly the mountaynes of our *Alpes* in *Europe* are somewhere narrowe, and in some place brode: euen so, by the lyke prouidence of nature, this land in some part therof reacheth farre in breadth, and is in other places coarcted with narrowe limittes from sea to sea, with valleys also in some places, whereby men may passe from the one syde to the other. Where we haue described the regions of *Vraba* and *Beragua* to be situate, these seas are diuided by small distance: Yet ought we to thynke the region, whiche the great ryuer of *Maragnonus* runneth through, to be very large, if we shall graunt *Maragnonum* to be a ryuer, and no sea, as the freshe waters of the same ought to perswade vs. For in suche narrowe caues of the earth, there can be no swalowping gulfses of suche bygnesse as to receiue or nooryshe so great abundance of water. The lyke is also to be supposed of the great ryuer of *Dabaiba*, whiche we sayde to be from the corner of the gulfes of *Vraba*, in some place of fourtie fathomes depth, and somewhere fittie: also thre myles in breadth, and so to fall into the sea. We must needes graunt, that the earth is brode there, by the which the ryuer passeth from the high mountaines of *Dabaiba* from

from the East, and not from the west. They say that this ryuer consisteth and taketh his encrease of foure other ryuers, falling from the mountaynes of *Dabaiba*. Our men call this ryuer *Flumen S. Iohannis*. They say also that from hence it falleth into the gulle of *Vraba* by seuen mouthes, as dooth the ryuer of *Nilus* into the sea of Egypt: Lykewyse that in the same region of *Vraba*, there are in some places narowe streyghtes, not passing fyftee leagues, and the same to be sauage, and without any passage, by reason of dyuers marshes and desolate wayes, whiche the Latines call *Lamas*, but the Spanyardes accordyng to theyr varietie call them *Tremedales*, *Trampales*, *Cenegales*, *Sumideros*, & *Zabondaderos*. But before we passe any further, it shall not be greatly from our purpose to declare from whence these mountaynes of *Dabaiba* haue theyr name, accordyng vnto antiquities of th inhabitantes. They sayd that *Dabaiba* was a woman, of great magnanimitie and wysedome among theyr predecessours in olde tyme, whom in her lyfe all th inhabitantes of those prouinces dyd greatly reuerence, and beyng dead, gaue her diuine honour, and named the region after her name, beleuyng that she sendeth thunder and lyghtnyng, to destroy the frutes of the earth yf she be angred, and to sende plentie if shee be well pleased. This superstition hath been perswaded them by a craftie kynde of men, vnder pretence of religion, to thintent that they myght enioy suche gyftes and offerings as were brought to the place where she was honoured. This is sufficient for this purpose. They say furthermore, that the marshes of the narowe land, whereof we haue spoken, bring forth great plentie of Crocodiles, Dragons, Battes, and Gnats, beyng very hurtfull. Therefore whensoever they take any iourney toward the south, they go out of the way toward the mountaynes, and eschewe the regions neere vnto those peryllous fennes or marshes. Some thynke that there is a valley lying that way that the ryuer runneth, which our men cal *Rio de las perdidos*, that is, the ryuer of the lost men (so named by the misfortune whiche there befell to *Nicuesa* and his company) and not farre distant from the hauen *Cerabaro*, whiche diuideth those mountaines toward the south. But let vs now finishe this booke with a fewe other thinges woorthy to be noted. They say there-

The riuers haue theyr increase from the springes of the mountaynes. The ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypt.

Marshes and desolate wayes

A superstitious opinion of the originall of the mountaynes of *Dabaiba*.

Dragons and Crocodiles in the marshes.

The hauen *Cerabaro*.

fore,

## The thyrde Decade.

Twentie gol-  
den ryuers.

foze, that on the ryght hand and left hande from *Dariena* there are  
twentye ryuers, in all the whiche great plente of gold is found.  
Beyng demaunded what was the cause why they brought no  
greater aboundance of golde from thence: they answered, that  
they lacked miners, and that the men whiche they tooke with  
them from *Spayne* thither, were not accustomed to labour, but  
for the most part brought vp in the warres. This land seemeth  
also to promise many precious stones: For belyde those which  
I sayde to be founde nere vnto *Cariac* and *Santa Martha*, one  
*Andreas Moralis*, a pilot (who had traueled those coastes with  
*Iohannes de la Cossa* whyle he yet lyued) had a precious Dia-  
monde, whiche he bought of a naked young man in the region  
of *Cumana*, in the prouince of *Paria*. This stone was as long  
as two ioyntes of a mans myddle fynger, and as byg as the  
fyrst ioynt of the thumbe, beyng also paynted on euery syde, con-  
sisting of egypt squares, perfectly fourmed by nature. They say  
that with this they made scarres in anuyles and hammers, and  
brake the teeth of fyles, the stone remainyng unperyshe. The  
young man of *Cumana*, wore this stone about his necke among  
other ouches, & solde it to *Andreas Moralis* for fyue of our coun-  
terfect stones, made of glasse, of diuers colours, wherewith the  
ignorant young man was greatly deleyted: They found also cer-  
tayne *Topases* on y<sup>e</sup> shore. But the estimation of gold was so farre  
entred into the heades of our men, that they had no regarde to  
stones. Also the most part of the *Spanyardenes*, do laugh them  
to scozne which vse to weare many stones. specially such as are  
common, iudging it to be an effeminate thyng, and more meete  
for women then men. The noble men onely, when they celebrate  
solemne mariages, or set forth any triumphes, weare cheynes  
of gold, beset with precious stones, and vse fayre apparel of silke,  
embrodered with golde, intermixt with pearles and precious  
stones, and not at other tymes. They thynke it no lesse effe-  
minate for men to sinel of the sweete saours of *Arabie*, and iudge  
hym to be infected with some kynde of fylthylechery, in whom  
they sinel the saour of mulke or *Castoreum*. But lyke as by one  
apple taken from a tree, we may perceiue the tree to be fruiteful,  
and by one fysh taken in a ryuer, we may knowe that fysh is  
ingendred in the same: euen so, by a litle gold, and by one stone,

we

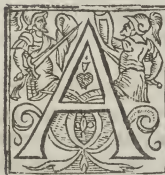
Precious  
stones.

A precious Di-  
amond of ex-  
ceeding vigne.

Topasis.

We ought to consider that this lande bringeth forth great plenty of golde, and precious stones. What they haue founde in the porte of *Sancta Martha*, in the region of *Cariac*, when the whole nauie passed thereby vnder the gouernaunce of *Petrus Arias* and his company, with certayne other of the kynges officers, I haue sufficiently declared in his place. To be short therefore, al thynges do so flozyshe, growe, encrease, and prosper, that the last are euer better then the fyrst. And surely to declare my opinion herein, whatsoeuer hath heretofore ben discouered by the famous traauyles of *Saturnus* and *Hercules*, with suche other whom the antiquitie for their heroical factes honoured as gods, seemeth but litle and obscure, if it be compared to the *Spaniards* victorizous labours. Thus I bydde your holynesse farewell, desyryng you to certifie me howe you lyke these fyrst frutes of the *Ocean*, that beyng encouraged with your exhortations, I may the gladlyer, and with lesse tediousnesse, wyte suche thynges as shall chaunce hereafter.

## The fyfth booke of the thynde Decade.



Alliche luyng creatures, as vnder the cyrcle of the moone bring forth any thing, are accustomed by thynstincte of nature, as soone as they are deliuered of theyr byrth, eyther to close vp the matrice, or at the least to be quyet for a space: But our most fruitefull *Ocean* and newe worlde, engendreth and byngeth forth dayly new byrthes, wherby men of great wytte, and especially such as are studious of new and marueylous thynges, may haue somewhat at hand wherwith to feed theyr myndes. If your holynesse do aske to what purpose is all this: ye shal vnderstand, that I had scarcely finished the historie of such thynges as chaunced to *Vaschus Nannez* and his companie in theyr voyage to the south sea, when sodenly there came new letters from *Petrus Arias* the new gouernour, whom the kyng had appoynted the yere before with an army of men and a nauy of shypps to sayle to these newe landes. He signified by his letters,



## The thyryde decade.

letters, that he with his nauie and company arryued al safely. Furthermore, *Iohannes Cabedus* (whom your holinesse at the request of the most catholique kyng had created Bishop of that prouince of *Dariena*) and thre other of the cheefe officers ioyned in commission to be his assystantes, as *Alfonfus de Ponte*, *Diegus Marques*, and *Iohannes de Taura*, confirmed the same letters, and subscribed them with theyr names. The nauigation therfore of *Petrus Arias*, was in this maner. The day before the Ides of Apryl, in the yeere of Christe. 1514. he hopped vp his sayles, in the towne of saint *Lucar de Barrameda*, situate in the mouth of the ryuer *Betis*, which the Spanyardes now cal *Guadalebeir*. The seuen Ilandes of *Canaria* are about foure hundred myles distant from the place where this riuer falleth into the sea. Some thynke that these are the Ilandes whiche the olde wyrters dyd call the fortunate Ilandes: but other thynke the contrary. The name of these Ilandes are these. The two that appeare fyrst in sight, are named *Lanzelota* and *Fortisuentura*. On the backhalfe of these, lyeth *Magna Canaria* or *Grancanaria*. Beyond that is *Tenerif* and *Gomera* somewhat towarde the north from that. *Palma* and *Ferre* lye behynde, as it were a bulwarke to al the other. *Petrus Arias* therfore, arryued at *Gomera* the eyght day after his departure, with a nauie of seuentene ships, & a thousand and fye hundred men, although there were only a thousand and two hundred assigned hym by the kynges letters. It is sayd furthermore, that he left behynde hym moze then two thousande, very pensue and sighing that they also myght not be receiued, profering them selues to goe at theyr owne charges. He tarried xvi. dayes in *Gomera*, to the intent to make prouision of fuel and freshe water, but cheefely to repayre his shyppes, beyng sore hrooled with tempestes, and especially the gouernours shyppe, which had lost the rudder: For these Ilandes are a commodious resting place for al suche as intende to attempt any nauigations in that maine sea. Departing from hence in the Ides of May, he sawe no more lande vntyll the thyryde day of Iune, at the whiche he arryued at *Dominica* an Ilande of the *Canibales*, being distant from *Gomera* about eight hundred leagues. Here he remained foure dayes, makinge newe prouision of freshe water and fuel, during whiche tyme, he sawe no man, nor yet anye

steppes

The nauigation  
of *Petrus  
Arias*.

The Ilande of  
*Canarie*.

Prouision of  
freshe water  
and fuel.

Heppes of men, but founde plenty of sea Crabbes: and great Lizards. From hence he sayled by the Ilandes of *Matinina* (otherwyle called *Madanino*) *Guadalupea* and *Galanta* (otherwyle called *Galana*) of al which we haue spoken in the fyrst Decade.

He passed also through the sea of hearbes or weedes, continuing a long tract: Yet neyther he, nor *Colonus* the Admirall (who fyrst found these Ilandes, and sayled through this sea of weedes):

The sea of hearbes.

haue declared any reason how these weedes should come. Some thynke the sea to be verye muddye there, and that these weedes are engendred in the bottome thereof, and so beyng loosed, to ascende to the vppermost part of the water, as we see oftentimes chaunce in certayne standyng pooles, and sometymes also in great ryuers.

Other suppose that they are not engendred there, but to be beaten from certayne rockes by the violence of the water in tempestes: And thus they leaue the matter in doubt.

Neyther haue they yet any certayne experience whether they stycke fast and geue place to the Shyppes, or wander loose vpon the water: But it is to be thought, that they are engendred there, for otherwyle they shoulde be dryuen together on heapes, by the impulsion of the Shyppes, euen as a beasome geathereth the sweepynges of a house, and shoulde also let the course of the Shyppes.

The fourth day after that he departed from *Dominica*, the hyghe mountaynes couered with snowe (whereof we haue spoken in the seconde Decade) appeared vnto hym. They say that there the seas runne as swyftly toward the west, as it were a ryuer fallyng from the toppes of hygh mountaynes, although they sayled not directly toward the west, but inclined somewhat to the south.

These mountaynes are called *Montes Niuales*, or *Serra Neuata*, Decade. ii. lib. i. and. ii.

From these mountaynes falleth the ryuer of *Gaira*, famous by the slaughter of our men, at such tyme as *Rodericus Colmenares* passed by those coastes, as we haue sayde before: Lykewyle many other sayre ryuers haue theyr original from the same mountaynes.

This prouince (in the which is also the region of *Caramairi*) hath in it two notable hauens, of y<sup>e</sup> which our men named the one *Carthago* or *Carthagen*, and thother *Sancta Martha*, the region wherof the inhabitants call *Saturma*.

The port of *Sancta Martha*, is nerer to the mountaynes couered with snowe, called *Montes Niuales*, for it is at the rootes of the same mountaynes, but y<sup>e</sup> haven of *Carthago* is more

Mountaynes couered with snowe.

westwarde,

## The thyrde Decade.

westward, about fyfte leagues. He wyrteth manye plous thinges of the hauen of *Sancta Martha*, whiche they also confirme that came lately from thence: Of the which young *Vesputius* is one, to whom *Americus Vesputius* his vnckle (beyng a florentine bozne) left the exact knowledge of the mariners facultie, as it were by inheritance after his death, for he was a very expert maister in the knowledge of his carde, his compasse, and the eleuation of the pole starre, with all that pertaineth thereto. This young *Vesputius* was assigned by the kyng to be one of the maisters of the gouernours shipp, because he was cunning in iudging the degrees of the eleuation of the pole starre by the quadrant: For the charge of gouerning the rudder, was cheefly committed to one *Iohannes Serranus* a Spaniard, who had oftentimes ouerrunne those coastes. *Vesputius* is my very familiar frende, and a wittie young man, in whose company I take great pleasure, and therfore vse hym oftentimes for my ghest. He hath also made many voyages into these coastes, and diligently noted suche thynges as he hath seene. *Petrus Arias* therfore wyrteth, and he confirmeth the same, that the inhabitants of these regions tooke theyr originall of the Caribbes or Canibales, as appeared by the desperat pyeruelles and crueltie which they oftentimes shewed to our men when they passed by theyr coastes. Suche stoutnesse and fortitude of mynde is naturallie engendred in these naked Barbarians, that they feared not to assaile our whole nauy, and to forbyd them to come a lande. They fyght with venemous arrowes, as we haue sayde before. Harceyuyng that our men contemned theyr threathynghes, they ranne furpously into the sea, euen vnto the breastes, nothyng fearynge eyther the bygnesse or multitude of our shippes, but ceased not continually, beyng thus in the water, to cast darteres, and to shoote theyr venemous arrowes as thicke as hayle: Inso much that our men had byn in great daunger, yf they had not bin defended by the cages or pauilles of the shippes, and their targettes: Yet were two of them wounded, which died shortly after. But this conflict continued so sharp, that at the length our men were enforced to shoote of theyr greatest pieces of ordinaunce with hayleshoote: at the slaughter and terrible noyse wherof, the Barbarians beyng sore discomfited and shaken with feare,

thynkynge

The stoutnes  
of the Barbari-  
ans.

The Canibales  
fight in the  
water.

The bit of  
gunnes.

Thynkyng the same to be thunder and lyghtnyng, turned theyr  
 backes, and fledde amayne. They greatly feare thunder, because  
 these regions are oftentimes vexed with thunder and lyght-  
 nynges, by reason of the hyghe mountaynes, and nearenesse of  
 the same to the region of the ayre, wherein such fierie tempestes  
 are engendred, whiche the philosophers call *Meteora*. And albeif  
 that our men had nowe dyuen theyr enemies to flyght, and  
 sawe them disparted and out of order, yet doubted they, and  
 were of diuers opinions, whether they shoulde pursue them, or  
 not. On the one partie shame prynced them forwarde, and on  
 the other syde, feare caused them to caste manye perples, especia-  
 lly consyderpng the venemous arrowes whiche these Barba-  
 rians can direct so certaynely. To depart from them with a dyre  
 foote (as sayth the prouerbe) with so great a nauie, and suche an  
 armie, they reputed it as a thynge greatly soundyng to theyr re-  
 proche and dishonour. At the length therefore, shame ouercom-  
 myng feare, they pursued them, and came to land with theyr ship  
 boates. The gouernour of the nauie, & also *Vesputius* do wynte,  
 that the hauen is no lesse then thre leagues in compasse,  
 beyng also safe without rockes, and the water therof so cleare,  
 that a man may see pybble stones in the bottome twentie cubits  
 deepe. They say lyke wyse, that there falleth two sayre ryuers of  
 freshe water into the hauen: but the same to be meete to beare  
 the Canoas of these prouinces, then any hygger vessels. It is a  
 delectable thynge to heare what they tel of the plentie and varie-  
 tie, and also of the pleasaunt tast of the fyshes, aswell of these ry-  
 uers, as of the sea therabout: By reason wherof they found here  
 manye fysher boates and nettes woonderfully wrought of the  
 stalkes of certayne hearbes or weedes. dyed and tawed, and  
 wreathed with corde of spinne gossampyne cotton. For the peo-  
 ple of *Caramairi*, *Gaira*, and *Saturma*, are very cunning in fishe-  
 yng, and vse to sel fysh to theyr borderers, for exchaunge of such  
 thynges as they lacke. When our men had thus chased the  
 Barbarians from the sea coastes, and had now entred into theyr  
 houses, they assayed them with newe skymishes, especia-  
 lly when they sawe them fall to sacking and spoylyng, and  
 theyr wyues and chyldren taken captyue. Their householde  
 stuffe was made of great reedes, whiche growe on the sea ban-

The generati-  
 on of thunder  
 and lyghtning.

Plentie of fish.

Cunning  
 fyshers.



Tapystrye.

kes, and the stalkes of certayne hearbes beaten, and afterwarde made harde. The floores thereof were strewed with hearbes of sundry colours, and the walles hanged with a kynde of tapystry, artificially made of gossampine cotton, and wrought with pictures of Lions, Tygers, and Eagles. The doores of theyr houses and chambers were full of dyuers kyndes of shelles, hanging loose by small cordes, that beyng shaken by the wynde, they myght make a certayne rattelyng, and also a whytelyng noyse, by geatheryng the wynde in theyr holowe places: for herein they haue great delyght, and impute this for a goodly ornament. Dyuers haue shewed me many wonderfull thynges of these regions, especially one *Conzalus Fernandus Ouiedus*, beyng one of the magistrates appoynted in that office, which the Spanyardes call *Veedor*, who hath also hitherto entred further into the lande then any other. He affirmeth, that he chaunced vppon the fragment of a Saphire, bygger then the egge of a goose, and that in certayne hylles where he traauled with thirtie men, he founde many of the pretious stones called Smaragdes, Calcidones, and Iaspers, besyde great peeces of Amber of the mountaines. He also, with diuers other, do affirme that in the houses of some of the Canibales of these regions, they found the like pretious stones, set in gold, and inclosed in tapystry or arras (if it may so be called) wherewith they hang theyr houses. The same land bypargeth forth also many wooddes of brase trees, and great plentie of golde, in so much that in maner in al places they founde on the sea bankes, & on the shores, certayne marchalites in token of golde. *Fernandus Ouiedus* declareth furthermore, that in a certayne region called *Zenu*, lying fourescore and tenn miles from *Dariena* Eastwarde, they exercise a straunge kynde of marchandize: For in the houses of the inhabitantes, they founde great chestes and baskets, made of the twigges and leaues of certayne trees apte for that purpose, being all full of Grasshoppers, Grylles, Crabbes, or Crespithes, Snayles also, and Locustes, whiche destroye the fieldes of cozne, al well dyed and salted. Beyng demaunded why they reserued suche a multitude of these beastes: they answered, that they kept them to be solde to theyr borderers, whiche dwell further within the lande, and that for the exchange of these pretious byrdes, and salted fyshes, they re-

ceiued

This is he  
whom *Carda-*  
*nus* praiseth.

Precious  
stones.  
The Smaradges  
is the true  
Emerode.  
Another kynde  
of Amber is  
founde in  
Whales.

Golde and  
Brasse.  
Marchalites  
are howses of  
mettals, by the  
colours wher-  
of, the kyndes  
of mettals are  
knowne.

These Locustes  
burne the cozne  
with touching,  
and deuoure  
the residue.  
They are in  
India of thre  
foote length.

reliued of them certayne strange thynges, wherein partly they take pleasure, and partly vse them for theyr necessary assayes. These people dwell not togeather, but scattered here and there. The inhabitants of *Caramairi*, seeme to dwell in an earthly Paradise, theyr region is so fayre and fruitefull, without outrageous heate, or sharpe colde, with litle difference of the length of day and nyght throughout all the yeere. After that our men had thus dyuened the Barbarians to flyght, they entred into a balley, of two leagues in breadyth, and thre in length, extendyng to certayne fruitefull mountaynes, full of grasse, hearbes, and trees, at the rootes whereof, lye two other balleys towarde the ryght hande and the leaft, through eyther of the whiche runneth a fayre ryuer, wherof the ryuer of *Caira* is one, but vnto the other they haue yet geuen no name. In these balleys they found many fayre gardens, and pleasaunt feedes, watered with trenches, distributed in marueplous order, with no lesse art then our Insulbrians and Vetrurians vse to water their feedes. Theyr common meate, is *Ages*, *Lucca*, *Maizium*, *Battata*, with suche other rootes and fruites of trees, and also such fysh as they vse in the Ilandes and other regions of these prouinces. They eate mans fleshe but seldome, because they meete not oftentymes with strangers, except they goe forth of theyr one dominions with a mayne army, of purpose to hunt for men, when theyr rauenynge appetite pricketh them forward: For they abstayne from them selues, and eate none but suche as they take in the warres, or otherwyle by chaunce. But sicerly it is a miserable thyng to heare howe many myriades of men these fylthy and unnaturall deuourers of mens fleshe haue consumed, and lesse thousandes of most fayre and fruitefull Ilandes and regions desolate without men: by reason whereof, our men founde so manye Ilandes, whiche for theyr fayrenes and fruitefulness myght seeme to be certayne earthly Paradyses, and yet were vterly voyde of men. Hereby your holynesse may consider howe pernicious a kynde of men this is. We haue sayde before, that the Ilande named *Sancti Iohannis* (which inhabitants call *Burichena*) is next to *Hispaniola*. It is sayde, that only the *Canibales* which dwell in the other Ilandes neere about this, as in the Ilande called *Haybay* or *Sancta Crucis*, and in *Guadalupea* (otherwyle called

Gardens.

Insulbries are  
nowe called  
Lumbardes,  
and Vetruci,  
Tuscans.

One myriade,  
is ten thousande,

## The thyrd Decade.

*Queraqueiera*, or *Carucuiera*) haue in our tyme violently taken out of the sayde Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis*, more then fyue thousande men to be eaten. But let it suffice thus muche to haue wandered by these monstrous bloodsuckers. We wyl nowe therfore speake somewhat of the rootes whereof they make theyr bread, so as inuche as the same shal hereafter be fooode to Christian men, in steade of bread made of wheate, and in the steade of rabythe, with such other rootes as they haue been accustomed to eate in Europe. We haue oftentimes sayd before, that *Iucca* is a roote, whereof the best and most delicate bread is made, both in the firme lande of these regionz, and also in the Ilandes: but howe it is tyllid or husbanded, howe it groweth, and of how dyuers kyndes it is, I haue not yet declared. Therfore, when they entende to plant this *Iucca*, they make a hole in the earth, knee deepe, and rayse a heape of the earth taken out of the same, fashionyng it lyke a square bedde, of niene foote breadth on euery syde, setting twelue trunks of these roots (being about a foote and a halfe long a peece) in euery of the sayd beddes, containyng thre rootes of a syde, so layde a slope, that the endes of them ioyne in maner togeather in the center or midst of the bedde within the ground. Out of the ioyntes of the rootes, and spaces betwene the same, spryng the toppes and blades of newe rootes, whiche by litle and litle encreasyng, growe to the bygnes and length of a mans arme in the brawne, and oftentimes as bygge as the thygh: so that by the tyme of theyr full rypenes, in maner all the earth of the heape is conueried into rootes. But they say that these rootes are not rype in lesse then a peece and a halfe, and that the longer they are suffered to grow, euen vntyl two peeres complete, they are so much the better, and more perfecte to make bread thereof. When they are taken forth of the earth, they scrape them, and styfe them, with certayne sharpe stones, seruyng for the same purpose: And thus laying them betwene two great stones, or puttyng them in a sacke made of the stalkes of certaine tough hearbes and smal reedes, they presse them (as do we cheese or crabbes, to drawe out the iuice thereof) and so let them dype a daye before they eate them. The iuice or liquour they cast away: for (as we haue sayde) it is deadly poyson in the Ilandes. Yet is the iuice of  
suche

The manner of  
planting the  
roote *Iucca*.

Earth turned  
into rootes.

Howe bread is  
made of rootes

Riche as growe in the firme land whole some, yf it be sodde, as is  
 the whey of our mylke. They say that there are many kyndes  
 of this *Iucca*, wherof some are more pleasaunt and delicate then  
 the other, and are therefore reserued as it were to make fyne  
*Panchet* for the kynges owne table: But the Gentlemen eate  
 of the meaner sort, and the common people of the basest. The fi-  
 nest they call *Cazabbi*, whiche they make rounde lyke cakes,  
 in certayne presses, before they seeche it, or bake it. They say  
 furthermoze, that there are lykelwyl diuers kyndes of the rootes  
 of *Ages*, and *Battata*. But they vse these rather as frutes, and  
 dyshes of seruice, then to make bread thereof, as we vse *Rapes*,  
*Radishes*, *Mushromes*, *Maues*, *Herbys*, and suche lyke.  
 In this case, they mooste especially esteeme the best kynde of  
*Battatas*, which in pleasant taste and tenderneesse, farre exceedeth  
 our *Mushromes*. It shal suffice to haue sayd thus much of rootes:  
 We wyl nowe therefore speake of another kynde of their bread.  
 We declared before, that they haue a kynde of grayne or *Pulle*,  
 muche lyke vnto *Panicum*, but with somewhat bygger graynes,  
 which they beate into meale, vpon certayne great hollow stones,  
 with the labour of theyr handes, when they lacke *Iucca*, and of  
 this is made the more bulgar or common bread. It is sown  
 thysle a yeere, so that the fruitfulnessse of the ground may beare  
 it, by reason of the equalitie of the tyme, whereof we haue spoken  
 sufficiently before. In these regions they founde also the grayne  
 of *Maizium*, and sundry kyndes of frutes of trees, diligentlye  
 planted, and wel husbanded. The way betweene the regions  
 of *Caramairi* and *Saturma*, is fayre, broode, and ryght footth.  
 They founde here also sundry kyndes of water pottes made  
 of earth, of diuers colours, in the whiche they both fetch and  
 keepe freshe water: Lykelwyl sundry kyndes of iugges, god-  
 derdes, dypnyng cuppes, pottes, pannes, dyshes, and plat-  
 ters, artificially made. When the gouernour had geuen com-  
 maundement by proclamation, that the inhabitauntes should ey-  
 ther obey the Christian kyng, and embrace our religion, or els  
 to depart out of theyr countrey: they answered with venemous  
 arrowes. In this skymyshe, our men tooke some of them:  
 whereof, clothyng the mooste parte in fayre apparell, they sent  
 them againe to their owne company: But leading the residue to

*Panicum* is a  
 grayne some-  
 what lyke mil:  
 The Italians  
 call it *Melica*.

He meareth the  
 equal length of  
 day and nyght:  
 which is conta-  
 naly in regis-  
 ons vnder the  
 Equinoctiall  
 line.



## The thyrd Decade.

the shyppes, to thintent to shewe them the power and magnificence of the christians, that they might declare the same to thei companions, therby to wyne their fauour, they appareled them lykewyse, and sent them after thei felowes. They aspyme, that in all the ryuers of these coast, they sawe great argumentes and tokens of golde. They founde here and there in their houses good store of Harts flesh, & Bores fleshe, wherwith they fedde them selues delicately. They also haue great plentie of sundry kyndes of byrdes, and foules, whereof they byng by many in their houses, some for necessarie foode, and other for dayntie dyshes, as we do Hennes and Partriches. Our men hereby coniecture, that the ayre of these regions is very holosome, forasmuche as slepyng all nyght vnder the fyrmament on the bankes of the ryuers, none of them were at any tyme offended with reumes or headache, by reason of any noysome humour, or vapour proceeding from the earth, ayre, or water. Our men furthermore founde there many great botomes of gossampyne cotton redy spunne, and fardelies of dyuers kyndes of fethers, whereof they make them selues crestes and plumes, after the maner of our men of armes: also certeine clokes, whiche they esteeme as most comely ornaments. They founde lykewyse an innumerable multitude of bowes and arrowes. The inhabitants also of these regions, in some places vse to burne the carcases of their princes when they are dead, and to reserue their bones buried with spyes in certayne hylls. In other places, they onely dye them, and imbawme them with spyes and sweete gummes, and so reserue them in sepulchers in thei owne houses. Somewhere also, they dye them, spye them, adourne them with precious iewelless, and ouches, and so reuerently place them in certayne tabernacles, made for the same purpose in thei owne palaces. When our men had many of thei tablets, braiselettes, collers, and suche other ouches (whiche they call *Guanines*) they founde them rather to be made of laton then of golde: whereby they suppose that they haue vsed to exchaunge thei ware with some craftie straungers, whiche brought them those counterfeyt ouches, to defraude them of thei golde: For euen our men perceiued not the deceyte untill they came to the melting. Furthermore, certayne of our buyl-

gred

Holosome ayre.

Gossampyne  
Cotton.  
Fethers.

Bowes and  
arrowes.

Dead bodie  
reserued.

Donxalus Qui-  
edus sayeth,  
that they got  
marueylous  
with the use of  
a certayne  
beache.

bers wanderyng a litle way from the sea coastes, chaunced to fynde certayne peeces of white marble: whereby they thynke, that in tyme past some straungers haue come to those landes, whiche haue dygged marble out of the mountaynes, and leste those fragmentes on the playne. There our men learned that the ryuer *Maragnonis* descendeth from the mountaynes couered with snow, called *Montes Niuales*, or *Serra Neua*, and the same to be encreased by many other ryuers, whiche fall into it throughout all the lowe and waterly regions, by the which it runneth with so long a tract from the sayd mountaynes into the sea, and this to be the cause of the greatnesse thereof. These thynges being thus brought to passe, the gouernour commaunded the trumpeter to blowe a retraite: Therupon they which were sent to lande (beyng fye hundred in number) making a great shout for ioy of theyr victorie, set them selues in order of battayle, and so keepyng theyr array, returned to the shippes laden with spoyle of those prouinces, and shynnyng in souldiers clokes of feathers, with fayre plumes and crestes of variable colours. In this meane tyme, hauyng repaired theyr shippes, and furnished the same with all necessaries, they loosed anker the xvi day of the Calendes of Iuly, directyng their course to the haven of *Cartazena*, in the whiche voyage they destroyed and wasted certayne Ilandes of the *Canibales*, lying in the way, accordyng as they were commaunded by the kyng. But the swift course of the water deceiued both *Iohannes Sarranus* the chiefe Pilot of the gouernours shippe, and all the other, although they made their best that they perfectly knewe the nature therof: For they affyrme, that in one night they were caried fourtie leagues beyond their estimation.

White marble,

The great riuer  
*Maragnonis*.  
This cometh  
with the mighty  
river called  
*Flumen Amazonas*, founte  
of late.

Clokes of  
feathers.

The swift  
course of the  
water.

Fortie leagues  
in one  
nighe.

The sixte booke of the thyrde Decade.



Here must we somewhat digresse fro Cosmography, & make a philosophical discourse to searche the secreete causes of nature. For whereas they all affirme with one consent, that the sea runneth there from the east to the west, as swiftly as it were a ryuer fallyng from hygh mountaynes, I thought it not

Sundry opinions  
why the  
sea runneth  
with so swifte  
course from  
the East into  
the West.

good to let suche matter slyppe vntouched. The which whyle I consyder, I am drawn into no small ambiguitie and doubt, whyther those waters haue theyr course, whiche flowe with so continuall a tract in circuite from the East, as though they fledde to the west, neuer to returne, and yet neyther the west thereby any whit the more fylled, nor the East emptied. If we shall say that they fall to theyr centre (as is the nature of heauie thynges) and assigne the Equinoctiall line to bee the centre (as some asseyrme) what centre shall we appoynt to be able to receiue so great abundance of water? Or what circumference shall be founde wet? They whiche haue searched those coastes, haue yet founde no lyke reason to be true. Many thynke that there shoulde bee certayne large straighes or entrances in the corner of that great lande, whiche we described to be epght tymes bygger then Italye, and the corner thereof to be full of gulfes, whereby they suppose that some straghtes shoulde passe through the same, lying on the west syde of the Islande of Cuba, and that the sayde straghtes shoulde swallowe by those waters, and so conuey the same into the west, and from thence agayne into our East Ocean, or north seas, as some thynke. Other wyl, that the gulfe of that great lande be closed vp, and the lande to reache farre toward the north on the backe syde of Cuba, so that it embrace the north landes, whiche the frozen sea encompasseth vnder the north pole, and that all the lande of those coastes, shoulde ioyne togeather as one firme lande: Whereby they coniecture, that those waters shoulde be turned about by the obiecte or resistaunce of that land, so bendyng toward the north, as we see the waters turned about in the crooked bankes of certayne ryuers. But this agreeth not in all poyntes. For they also whiche haue searched the frozen sea, and sayled from thence into the west, do lykewyse asseyrme, that those north seas flowe continually toward the west, although nothyng so swiftly. These north seas haue ben searched by one Sebastian Cabot, a Venetian boye, whom beyng yet but in maner an infant, his parentes caried with them into Englande, hauyng occasion to resort thither for trade of marchandize, as is the maner of the Venetians, to leaue no part of the worlde vnsearched to obtayne rycheffe. He therfore furnished

two

The Equinoctiall line.  
Why al waters moue toward the south or Equinoctial, read Cardanus ae subtilit liber ii. de elementis. Straghtes.

As by the straght of Magellanus The north landes.

The frozen sea.

Sebastian Cabot.

two shippes in England at his owne charges: And fyrst with thre hundred men, directed his course so farre toward the north pole, that euen in the moneth of Iuly he founde monstrous heapes of Ice swymming on the sea, and in maner continuall day lyght: Yet sawe he the lande in that tract free from Ice, whiche had ben moulted by heat of the Sonne. Thus sleepng suche heapes of Ice before hym, he was enforced to turne his sayles, and folowe the west, so coastyng styll by the shore, that he was thereby brought so farre into the south, by reason of the lande bendyng so muche southwarde, that it was there almost equall in latitude with the sea called *Fretum Herculeum*, hauyng the north pole eleuate in maner in the same degree. He sayled lykewyse in this tract so farre toward the west, that he had the Islande of *Cuba* on his left hande, in maner in the same degree of longitude. As he traueyled by the coastes of this great lande (whiche he named *Baccallaos*) he sayth, that he founde the lyke course of the waters toward the west, but the same to runne more softly and gentelly, then the swifte waters whiche the Spanyardes founde in their nauigations southwarde. Therefore, it is not onely more lyke to be true, but ought also of necessitie to be concluded, that betwene both the landes hitherto unknowen, there shoulde be certayne great open places, wherby the waters shoulde thus continually passe from the East into the west: whiche waters I suppose to be dyuen about the globe of the earth by the vncessant mouyng and impulsion of the heauens, and not to be swallowed by and cast out agayne by the breathyng of *Demogorgon*, as some haue imagined, bycause they see the seas by increase & decrease, to flow & reflow. Sebastian Cabot hym selfe, named those landes *Baccallaos*, bycause that in the seas therabout he founde so great multitudes of certayne bygge fyshes, muche like vnto Tunnies (which inhabitants call *Baccallaos*) that they somtymes stayed his shippes. He founde also the people of those regions couered with beastes skynnes: yet not without the vse of reason. He also sayth there is great plentie of Beares in those regions, whiche vse to eate fysh: For plungyng them selues into the water where they perceiue a multitude of these fyshes to lye, they fasten theyr claws in theyr scales, and so drawe them to lande, and eate them: So that (as he sayth)

The voyage of Sebastian Cabot from Englands to the frozen sea.

*Demogorgon* is the spirite of the earth.

People couered with beastes skynnes.

the



the Beares beyng thus satisfied with fythe, are not noplome to men. He declareth further, that in many places of these regions, he sawe great plentie of lator among the inhabitants. Cabot is my very frend, whom I vse familiarly, and delyte to haue hym sometymes keepe me company in my owne house: For beyng called out of Englande by the commaundement of the catholique kyng of Castile, after the death of Henry kyng of Englande, the seuench of that name, he was made one of our counsaile and assistaunce as touching the affayres of the new Indies, lookyng dayly for shippes to be furnished for hym to discover this hyd secret of nature. This voyage is appoynted to be begonne in Marche in the yeere next folowynge, beyng the yeere of Christ. 1516. What shall succede, your holynesse shall be aduertysed by my letters, yf God graunt me lyfe. Some of the Spaniardes denye that Cabot was the fyrst fynder of the lande of *Bacallaos*, and affirme that he went not so farre westwarde: But it shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche of the gulfes and straghtes, and of Sebastian Cabot. Let vs nowe therfore returne to the Spaniardes. At this tyme, they let passe the haven of *Carthago* vntouched, with al the Ilandes of the *Cannibales* there aboute, whiche they named *Insulas Sancti Bernardi*, leauyng also behind theyr backs, al the region of *Caramaari*. Here by reason of a sodayne tempest, they were caste vpon the Ilande *Fortis*, beyng about fyftie leagues distant from the entraunce of the gulf of *Vraba*. In this Iland, they founde in the houses of the inhabitants, many baskettes made of certayne great sea reedes, ful of salt. For this Iland hath in it many goodly salt bayes, by reason wherof they haue great plentie of salte, which they sell to other nations for such thyngs as they stande in neede of. Not farre from hence, a great Curlew, as bygge as a

A strange thing  
Storke, came flyng to the gouernours shipp, and suffered her selfe to be easely taken, whiche beyng carryed aboute among all the shippes of the nauie, dyed shortly after: They sawe also a great multitude of the same kynde of foules on the shore a farre of. The gouernours shippe, whiche we sayd to haue lost the rudder, beyng nowe soe broosed, and in maner vnpropytable, they left beynde, to folow at leasure. The nauie arryued at *Dariena* the twelfth day of the Calendes of Iuly, and the gouernours

The Ilandes  
of the Canni-  
bales.

The Ilande  
*Fortis*.

Salte.

uernours thyppe (beyng boyde of men) was dyuen alande in the same coastes within foure dayes after . The Spanyardes whiche now inhabited *Dariena*, with theyr Captayne and Lieutenant *Vaschus Nunnez Balboa* (of whom we haue largely made mention before) beyng certifyed of the arriual of *Petrus Arias* and his companie, went forth three myles to meete him, and receiued him honorably, and religiously with the psalme *Te deum laudamus*, geuyng thanks to god by whose safe conduct they were brought so prosperously thither to al theyr comfortes. They receyued them gladly into theyr houses buided after the maner of those prouinces. I may wel cal these regions, *Prouinces*, a *Procul Vitis* (that is) such as are ouercome farre of, forasmuche as our men do now inhabite the same, al the barbarous kynges and Idolatours beyng elected. They entertayned them with such cheare as they were able to make them: as with the fruites of those regions, and new bread, both made of rootes, and the graine *Maizium*. Other delicates to make vp the feast, were of theyr own store, which they brought with them in theyr ships, as poudred flesh, salted fysh, and bread made of wheat: for they brought with them many barrells of wheate meale for the same purpose. Heere may your holynesse, not without iust cause of admiration, beholde a kynges nauy and great multitude of Christians, inhabiting not only the regions situate vnder the cycyle of heauen, called *Tropicus Cancris*, but also in maner vnder the Equinoctiall line, contrary to the opinion of the olde wyrters, a fewe excepted. But after that they are now mette together, let vs further declare what they determined to do. Therfore, the day after that y nauie arriued, there assembled a company of Spanyards thynhabitours of *Dariena*, to the nuber of foure hundred and fiftie men. *Petrus Arias* the gouernour of the nauy, and his companie, conferred with them both priuily and openly of certayne articles, whereof it was the kynges pleasure he shoulde enquire: and most especially as concernyng suche thynges wherof *Vaschus* the fyrst synder and Admirall of the South sea, made mention in his large letter sent from *Dariena* to Spayne. In this inquisition they founde al thyngs to be true whereof *Vaschus* had certified the king by his letters, and thereupon concluded, that in the dominions of *Comogra*, *Pocchorrosa* &

*Holwe Vaschus* receiued the newe gouernour.

Habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall line.

*Tumanamas*

## The thirde decade.

*Tumanama* at the assignement of *Vaschus*, certayne fortresses shoulde be erected forthwith, to thintent there to plant theyr colonie or habitation. To the better accomplyshment hereof, they sent immediatly one *Iohannes Aiora*, a noble young gentleman of *Corduba*, and vnder Lieutenent, with foure hundred men, and foure Carauels, and one other lytle shyp. Thus departyng, he sayled fyrst directly to the haueu of *Comogrus*, distant from *Dariena* about twentie and fyue leagues, as they wypte in theyr last letters. From hence, he is appoynted to send a hundred and fytie of his foure hundred, towarde the South, by a newe and ryghter way founde of late, by the whiche (as they say) it is not past twentie and syre leagues from the pallace of kyng *Comogrus* to the entraunce of the gulfes of *Sancti Michaelis*. The residue of the foure hundred shal remayne there, to be an ayde and succour to all such as shall iorney to and fro. Those hundred and fytie whiche are assigned to go southward, take with them for interpretours certain of our men, which had learned the soothern language of the bondmen which were geuen to *Vaschus* when he ouerranne those regions, and also certayne of the bondemen themselves which had nowe learned the Spanyshe tongue. They say that the haueu of *Pocchorrosa* is only seuen leagues distant from the haueu of *Comogrus*. In *Pocchorrosa* he is assigned to leaue fytie men, with the lightest ship, which may be a passinger betwene them: that like as we vse post horses by land, so may they by this currant shyp, in short space certifie the Lieutenauit and inhabitous of *Dariena* of such thynges as shal chaunce. They entend also to build houses in the region of *Tumanama*. The pallace of kyng *Tumanama*, is distant fro *Pocchorrosa* about twenty leagues. Of these foure hundred men, beyng of the olde souldiers of *Dariena*, & men of good experience, fytie were appointed to be as it were Decurians, to guide and conduct the new men from place to place to do theyr affayres. When they had thus set all thynges in order, they thought it good to aduertysle the kyng hereof, and therwith to certyspe hym, that in those prouinces there is a kyng named *Dabaiba*, whose dominion is verperche in gold: but the same to be yet vntouched by reason of his great power. His kyngdome soyneth to the second great rpuer, named *Dabaiba* after his name, whiche falleth into the sea

Where the new  
gouernour  
planteth his ha-  
bitation.

A passinger  
shyp.

Decurians are  
officers deuise  
d into  
tennes &c.

The gold mi-  
nes of *Dabaiba*.

sea out of the corner of the gulse of *Vraba*, as we haue largely declared befoze. The common report is, that all the land of his dominions is ryche in gold. The pallace of kyng *Dabaiba* is fiftie leagues distant from *Dariena*. The inhabitantes saye, that from the pallace, the gold mynes reache to the borders on euery syde. Albeit our men haue also golde mynes not to be contemned, euen within thre leagues of *Dariena*, in the whiche they geather golde in many places at this present: Yet do they affirme greater plentye to be in the mynes of *Dabaiba*. In the bookes of our fyrst frutes, wrytten to your holynesse, we made mention of this *Dabaiba*, wherein our men were deceyued, and mystooke the matter: For where they founde the fysher-men of kyng *Dabaiba* in the marishes, they thought his region had been there also. They determined therfore to send to kyng *Dabaiba*, thre hundred choyse young men, to be chosen out of the whole army, as most apt to the warres, and well furnyshed with all kyndes of armour and artyllerie, to the intent to go vnto hym, and wylly hym, eyther frendly and peaceably to permit them to inhabite part of his kyngdome, with the fruition of the golde mynes, or els to hye hym battayle, and dyue hym out of his countrey. In theyr letters, they oftentymes repeate this for an argument of great ryches to come, that they in a maner dygged the ground in no place, but found the earth myxt with sparkes and small graynes of golde. They haue also aduertised the kyng, that it shalbe commodious to place inhabitours in the hauens of *Sancta Martha*, in the region of *Saturma*, that it may be a place of refuge for them that sayle from the Ilande of *Dominica*, from the whiche (as they saye) it is but foure or fyue dayes saylyng to that hauen of the region of *Saturma*, and from the hauens, but thre dayes saylyng to *Dariena*. But this is to be vnderstoode in goyng, and not in returnyng. For the returnyng from thence is so laborious and difficulte, by reason of the contrary course of the water, that they seeme as it were to ascende hygh mountaynes, and stryue agaynst the power of *Neptunus*. This swyft course of the sea towards the west, is not so violent to them whiche retorne to Spayne from the Ilandes of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, although they also do labour agaynst the fall of the Ocean: The cause whereof is, that the sea is

An error.

The region of  
Saturma.  
The Ilande of  
Dominica.

Difficult say-  
lyng agaynst  
the course of  
the sea,

beere



## The thyerde decade.

heere very large, so that the waters haue theyr full scope. But in the tract of *Paria*, the waters are constraigned togeather by the bendyng sydes of that great land, and by the multitude of *I*landes lying agaynst it, as the lyke is seene in the straghtes or narrow seas of *Scicile*, where the violent course of the waters cause the daungerous places of *Scilla* and *Caribdis* by reason of those narrowe seas which conteyne *Ionium*, *Libicum*, and *Tirrhenum*. *Colonus* the fyrste synder of these regions, hath left in wytyng, that sayling from the *I*lande of *Guanassa*, and the prouinces of *Iaia*, *Maia*, and *Cerabaro*, beyng regions of the west marches of *Beragua*, he founde the course of the water so vehement and furious agaynst the foreparte of his shyp, whyle he sayled from those coastes towarde the East, that he coulde at no time touche the grounde with his soundyng plummet, but that the contrary violence of the water woulde beare it by from the bottome: He affyrmeth also, that he coulde neuer in one whole day, with a meetely good wynde, wynde one myle of the course of the water. And this is the cause why they are oftentimes enforced to saile fyrst by the *I*landes of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, and so into the mayne sea towarde the North, when they retorne to *Spayne*, that the North wyndes may further theyr voyage, whiche they can not byng to passe by a direct course: But of the motions of the Ocean sea to and fro, this shal suffice. Let vs nowe therefore rehearse what they wypte of *Dariena*, and of theyr habitation there, whiche they cal *Santa Maria Antiqua*, planted on the sea bankes of *Dariena*. The situation of the place, hath no natural munition or defence, and the ayre is more pestiferous then in *Sardus*. The Spanishe inhabitours are al pale and yelow, lyke vnto them whiche haue the yelow fauundes: which neuertheless commeth not of the nature of the region, as it is situate vnder the heauen. For in many regions beyng vnder the selfe same degree of latitude, hauing the pole of the same eleuation, they fynd holsome & temperate ayre, in such places where as the earth byngeth forth fayre springes of water, or where holsome riuers runne by bankes of pure earth without mudde: but most especially where they inhabite the sides of the hyls, and not the valleys. But that habitation whiche is on the bankes of the ryuer of *Dariena*, is situate in a deepe valley, and enuironed

The daungerous  
straighes  
of *Scilla* and  
*Charibdis*.

The vehement  
course of the sea  
from the east to  
the west.

on euery syde with hygh hylles : By reason wherof, it recepueth the Sonne beames at noonetyde dyrectly parpendicular ouer theyr heades, and are therefore soze vexed by reflection of the beames, both before, behynde, and from the sydes . For it is the reflection of the sonne beames whiche caueth feruent heate, and not theyr accesse or neerenesse to the earth, forasmuche as they are not passible in themselves, as doth manifestly appeare by the snowe lyng continually bumoulten byon certayne hygh mountaynes, as your holynesse knoweth ryght well. The sonne beames therfore fallyng on the mountaynes, are reflected downward into the balley, by reason of the obiect of the declining sydes of the hylles, as it were the fall of a great round stone, rowled from the toppe of a mountayne . The balley therefore recepueth both those beames whiche fall directly thereon, and also those whiche are reflected downwarde from euery syde of the mountaynes . Theyr habitation therefore in *Driena*, is pernicious and unhollsome, onely of the particuler nature of the place, and not by the situation of the region as it is plased vnder the heauen, or neare to the sonne . The place is also contagious by the nature of the soyle, by reason it is compassed about with muddy and stynkyng marishes, the infection whereof is not a lytle encreased by the heate . The vyllage it selfe is in a marithe, and in maner a standyng puddle, where, of the droppes fallyng from the handes of the bondemen, whyle they water the paumentes of theyr houses, Toades are engendred immediately, as I my selfe saw in an other place the droppes of that water turne into flees in the sommer sealon . Furthermore, wheresoeuer they dygge the grounde the deapth of a handful and a halfe, there spyngeth out unhollsome and corrupt water, of the nature of the ryuer, whiche runneth through the deepe and muddye chanell of the balley, and so falleth into the sea : Nowe therefore they consult of remouyng theyr inhabitations . Necessitie caused them fyrst to fasten theyr foote heere, because that they whiche fyrst arryued in those landes, were oppressed with suche vrgent hunger, that they had no respect to chaunge the place, although they were thus vexed by the contagion of the soyle and heate of the Sonne, besyde the corrupt water, and infectious ayre, by reason of venemous vapours, and exhalations

By what meanes the Sonnes beames are cause of feruent heate.

The pernicious ayre of *Dariena*.

Toades and flees engendred of droppes of water.

Necessitie hath no lawe.

## The thyrde decade.

ons ryfing from the fame . An other great incommoditie was, that the place was deftitute of a commodious haven, being three leagues diftant from the mouth of the gulfe : The way is alfo rough and difficult to bying vyttayles and other necessities from the fea . But let vs nowe fpeake fomewhat of other particuler thynges whiche chaunced . Therefore fhortly after that they were arryued, there happened many thynges whereof they had no knowledge before . A certayne well learned philifion of Ciuile, whom partly the auctoritie of the Bifhop of *Dariena*, and partly the defyre of golde, had allured to thofe landes, was fo fcarred with lyghtnyng in the nyght feafon, lying in bedde with his wyfe, that the houfe and all the ftuffe therein being fet on fyre and burnt, he and his wyfe being both foze fcorched, ranne forth crying, and almoft naked, hardely elcappng the daunger of death. And an other tyme, as certayne of them ftoode one the fhoze, a great Crocodile fodenly carped away a mafly of a peere and a halfe olde, as a kyte fhoude haue fnatched by a chicken : and this euen in the prefence of them all, where the miserable dogge cryed in bayne for the helpe of his maifter . In the nyght feafon they were tormented with the bytyng of Battes, which are there fo noyſome, that if they byte any man in his fleepe, they put hym in daunger of lyfe, onely with drawyng of blood : In fo muche that fome haue dyed thereof, falling as it were into a conſumption through the maliciousneffe of the venemous wounde . If thefe Battes chaunce to fynde a cocke or a henne abrode in the nyght feafon, they byte them by the combes, and fo kyl them. They alfo whiche went laft into thefe regions, do wyte, that the lande is troubled with Crocodiles, Lions, and Tygers: but that they haue nowe deuifed artes and ingens howe to take them . Lykelwyfe that in the houfes of theyr felowes, they founde the hydes and cales of fuche Lions and Tygers as they had kylled . They wyte furthermore, that by reafon of the rankenefle and fruitefulneffe of the grounde, kyne, fwyne, and hoxes, doo maruelſuſly increafe in thefe regions, and growe to a muche bygger quantitie then they whiche were of the fyrſt broode. Of the exceedyng byghneffe of the trees with theyr fruites, of the garden hearbes, fruites, plantes, and feedes,

whiche

A houſe ſet on  
fyre with light-  
nyng.

A dogge deu-  
oured of a  
Crocodile.  
*Tanquam ca-  
nis de Nilo.*

The bytyng  
of Battes.

Lions and  
Tygers.

Beaſtes were  
higher in theyr  
kynde.

whiche our men brought from Spayne, and solwed and set the same in these regions: lykewyse of the Partes and other foure footed beastes both tame and wyld, also of dyuers kyndes of foules, byrdes, and fythes, they wypte euen as we haue declared in the decades before. *Careta*, the kyng of the region of *Cioba*, was with them for the space of thre dayes: whom when they had frendly entertayned, and shewed hym the secrete places of theyr shyppes, their Horses also, with theyr trappers, bardes, and other furnimentes, belyde many other thynges whiche seemed straunge to hym, and had further dellyted his mynde with the harmony of theyr musycal instrumentes, & geuen hym many rewardes, they dysmyssed hym halfe amased with to muche admiration. He signified vnto them, that there are trees in that prouynce, of the planks whereof if shyppes were made, they shoulde be safe from the woozmes of the sea, whiche they call *Bromas*. Howe these woozmes gnawe and corode the shyppes, we haue declared before. Our shyppes are greatly troubled with this plague, if they lye long in the hauens of these regions. But they asseyme that the wood of this tree is so hytter, that the woozmes wyl not taste thereof. There is also an other tree peculpar to these landes, whose leaues if they onely touche the bare in any place of a mans body, they cause great blysters, and those so malitious, that except the same be soorthwith healed with salte water or fastyng spyttle, they do incontynently engender deadly paynes. They say lykewyse, that the sauour of the wood is present poyson, and that it can no whither be caried without daunger of lyfe. When the inhabitantes of the Islande of *Hispaniola* had oftentymes attempted to shake of the yoke of seruitude, and coulde neuer byrnyng the same to passe, nether by open warre, nor yet by priuie conspiracies, they were determined in the nyght season to haue kyllled our men in theyr sleepe with the smoke of this wood: But when the Christian men had knowledge hereof, they compelled the poore wretches to confesse theyr intent, and punished the chiefe auctours of the deuice. They haue also a certayne hearbe with the saurour wherof they are preserued from the hurt of this venenous wood, so that they may

Note.

*Broma* or *Billa*  
are woozmes  
which destroy  
shyppes.

A venenous  
tree.

Perhaps their  
venenous arrows  
are made  
of this wood.

A preseruatue  
agaunst poyson.



## The thyrde Decade.

beare it safely . Of these small thinges it shall suffice to haue  
 sayde thus much. They looke dayly for many greater thinges to  
 certifie vs of from the Ilandes of the south sea: For at such tyme  
 as the messenger whiche brought our letters departed from  
 thence, *Petrus Arias* prepared an expedition to that ryche Island  
 which lyeth in the mouth of the gulf called *Sinus S. Michaelis*,  
 and reacheth into the south sea, being also left vntouched of *Vas-*  
*chus*, by reason that the Sea was at that tyme of the peerefore  
 troubled with tempestes, as we haue further declared in *Vaschus*  
 his bypage to the south . Wee looke therefore dayly for greater  
 thinges then are hitherto passe : For they haue now taken in  
 hande to subdue many other prouinces, which we suppose to be  
 eyther very ryche, or to byng forth some straunge workes of  
 nature . *Iohannes Diaz Solisius* of *Nebrissa* (of whom we haue  
 made mention before) is sent by the froot of the cape or poynt  
 of *Sancti Augustini* (which reacheth seuen degrees beyonde the  
 Equinoctiall lyne, and parteyneth to the dominion of the *Portu-*  
*gales*) to thintent to ouerrunne the south syde, from the backe  
 halfe of *Paria*, *Cumana*, *Cuquibacca*, with the hauens of *Carthago*,  
 and *Sancta Martha*, of *Dariena* also, and *Berazua*, that more per-  
 fect and certayne knowledge may be had of those tractes . Fur-  
 thermore, one *Iohannes Poncius* was sent forth with three ships,  
 to destroye the *Canibales*, both in the lande and Ilandes there  
 about : as well that the nations of the more humane and innocent  
 people may at the length lyue without feare of that pestiferous  
 generation, as also the better and more safely to searche the se-  
 cretes and rycheesse of those regions. Many other lykewyse were  
 sent dyuers and sundry wayes, as *Gasper Bencius* to search the  
 West parts, *Franciscus Bexerra*, to sayle by the corner of the gulf,  
 and *Valleius*, to passe by the mouth or entraunce thereof to the  
 East coastes of the gulf, to searche the secretes of that lande, in  
 the which *Fogeda* with his company had of late begunne to plant  
 their habitation, and had buydded a foytresse and a byllage. *Badai-*  
*ocius* departed fyrst from *Dariena*, with fourescore souldiours wel  
 appoynted, whom *Lodowicus Mercado* folowed with fyftye : To  
*Bexerra* were also fourescore assigned, and threescore and tenne  
 to *Valleius* . Whether they shall arryue at safe and commodi-  
 ous hauens, or fall into vnfortunate stations, he onely knoweth  
 whose

The Ilandes of  
the south sea.

The rich Island  
called *Giles*.

Cap. sancti  
Augustini.  
Of the euill suc-  
cesse of these vi-  
ages, reade De-  
cade, 3. Liber. 9.

An expedition  
to destroy the  
*Canibales*.

Booke decade.  
3. Lib. 9.

whose prouidence ruleth all : for as for vs men wee are included within the knowledge of thinges after they haue chaunced, Let vs now therefore come to other matters.

The seuenth booke of the  
third decade,



*P*etrus Arias the gouernour of the supposed continent, was scarfly entred into the mayne sea with his nauye, onwarde en his vpage to *Dariena*, but I was aduertised that one *Andreas Moralis* a pilot, who had oftentymes ouerrunne the coastes of these new seas, and the Ilandes of the same, was

The nauigations of *Andreas Moralis*.

come to the court to sell such marchaundies as he brought with him from thence . This man had diligently searched the tracte of the supposed continent, and especially thinner regions of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, whereunto he was appoynted by his brother *Nicolaus Ouandus* (the gouernour of the Ilande, and chiefe Commendator of the order of the knyghtes of *Alcantara*) because he was a wytty man, and moze apt to search suche thinges then any other : so that with his owne handes he drew faire cardes and tables of such regions as he discovered . Wherein as he hath been founde faythfull of such as haue since had better crypall hereof, so is he in most credite amongst the best sorte . We therefore resorted to me, as all they are accustomed to doe which retorne from the Ocean . What I learned of him and dyuers other, of thinges heretofore vnknowen, I will now declare . The beginning of this narration, shalbe the perticular description of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, forasmuch as it is the heade, and as it were, y<sup>e</sup> principall mart of all the liberalitie of the Ocean, & hath a thousand & againe a thousand, faire, pleasant, beautiful, & ryche *Nereides*, which lye about it on euery syde, adournyng this their ladie & mother, as it were an other *Tethis* the wyfe of *Neptunus*, empyrioning her about, & attending vpon her as their queene & pa-

A perticular description of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*.

*Nereides* are nymphees of the sea, he meaneth Ilandes, *Tethis* the wyfe of *Neptunus* & gods, deesse of the sea.

## The thyrede Decade.

tronesse. But of these Nereïades (that is to saye, the Mlandes placed about her) we wyll speake more hereafter. Let vs in the meane tyme declare somewhat of the Ilande whiche our men named *Margarita Dives* (whiche the Spanyardes call *De las perlas*) beyng nowe well knowen, and lying in the south sea in the gulfe called *Sinus Sancti Michaelis* (that is) saint Michaels gulfe. This Ilande hath presently brought to our knowledge many straunge and woonderfull thynges, and promyseth no small hope of greater thynges in tyme to come. In this is founde great plentie of pearles, so sayre and great, that the sumptuous queene *Cleopatra* myght haue seemed to weare them in her crownes, chaynes, and bassettes. Of the shellfishes where in these are engendered, we wyll speake somewhat more in the end of this narration. But let vs nowe returne to *Hispaniola*, most lyke vnto the earthly paradise. In the description hereof, we wyll begynne of the imposition of dyuers names, then of the fourme of the Ilande, temperate ayre, and beneficial heauen, and finally of the deuision of the regions. Therefore for the righte pronounciation of the names, your holynesse must vnderstande, that they are pronouncd with thaccent, as you may knowe by the verge set ouer the heddes of the bowels, as in the name of the Ilande *Matinino*, where the accent is in the last bowell, and the lyke to be vnderstoode in all other names. They saye therefore, that the fyrst inhabitours of the Ilande were transported in theyr *Canoas* (that is, boates made of one whole peece of wood) from the Ilande of *Matinino*, beyng lyke banyshed men dyuen from thence by reason of certayne contrary factions and deuisions among them selues, lyke as we reade howe *Dardanus* came from *Corytho*, and *Teucus* from *Creta* into Asia, and that the region where they placed their habitation, was afterward called *Troianum*. The like we reade howe the *Cyprians* and *Sidonians* arrined with their nauie in *Libya* by the fabulous conduction of *Dido*. These *Matinians* in like maner being banyshed from their owne countrey, planted their fyrst habitation in that parte of the Iland of *Hispaniola*, which they call *Cahonao*, vppon the banke of the ryuer named *Bababoni* as is redde in the begynnyng of the Romanes that *Eneas* of *Troy* arryued in the region of *Italy*, called *Latium*, vppon the bankes of the ryuer of *Tiber*.

Mithin

Great pearles.

*Hispaniola*  
like vnto the  
earthly paradise

The first inhabi-  
tours of *Hispaniola*.

Within the mouth of the ryuer of *Bahaboni*, lyeth an *Ilande*, where it is sayde that thynhabitanter buylded theyr fyrst house, whiche they named *Camoteia*. This house they consecrated shortly after, and honoured the same reuerently, with continual gyftes and monumentes, euen vntyll the commyng of our men, lyke as the Chyistians haue euer religiously honoured *Ierusalem* the fountayne and originall of our fayth: As also the *Turkes* attribute the lyke to the citie of *Mecha* in *Araby*, and the inhabitantes of the fortunate *Ilandes* (called the *Ilandes of Canarie*) to *Tyrma*, buylded vppon a hygh rocke, from the whiche many were wont with ioyfull myndes and songes to cast them selues downe headlong, beyng perswaded by theyr priestes that the soules of all such as so dyed for the loue of *Tyrma*, shoulde thereby enioye eternall felicitie. The conquerours of the *Ilandes of Canarie*, founde them yet remaynyng in that superstition euen vntyll our tyme, nor yet is the memory of theyr sacrifices bitterly woyn away: the rocke also referueth the olde name vnto this daye. I haue also learned of late, that there yet remayneth in the *Ilande* some of the faction of *Betanchor* the Frenchman, and fyrst that brought the *Ilandes* to good culture and ciuilitie, beyng thereto lycentenced by the kynge of *Castile*, as I haue sayde before. These do yet (for the most part) obserue both the language and maners of the *Frenchmen*, although the heyres and successours of *Betanchor*, had solde the two subdued *Ilandes* to certayne men of *Castile*: Yet thynhabitours whiche succeeded *Betanchor*, and builded them houses, and encreased their families there, do conpnyue to this day, and lyue quietly and pleasauntly with the *Spanyarde*s, not greued with the sharpe colde of *Fraunce*. But let vs nowe returne to thynhabitanter of *Matinino* and *Hispaniola*. The *Iland* of *Hispaniola* was first named by the first inhabitours *Quizqueia*, and then *Haiti*: and this not by chaunce, or at the pleasure of suche as diuised these names, but of credulitie and beleefe of some great effecte. For *Quizqueia*, is as muche to say as, A great thyng, and that so great, that none may be greater. They interpret also, that *Quizqueia* signifieth, large, vniuersall, or all, in lyke signification as the *Greekes* named theyr god called *Pan*, bycause that for y greatnes therof, these simple soules

*Ierusalem.*

*Mecha.*  
The *Ilandes*  
of *Canarie*.

*Betanchor* a  
Frenchman.

The first names  
of *Hispaniola*.



## The thyrd Decade.

supposed it to bee the whole worlde : and that the Sonne beames gaue lyght to none other worlde, but onely to this Ilande; with the other adiacent about the same, and thereby thought it most woorthy to be called great, as the greatest of all other knownen to them. *Haiti* is as muche to saye by interpretation, as, rough, sharpe, or craggie. But by a figuratiue speache called denomination (whereby the whole is named by part) they named the whole Ilande *Haiti* (that is) rough: forasmuche as in many places the face of this Ilande is rough, by reason of the craggie mountaynes, horrible thicke wooddes, and terribly darke and deepe valleys, enuironed with great & high mountaynes, although it be in manye other places exceedyng beautifull and flopyng. Here must we somewhat digresse from the order we are entred into. Perhappes your holynesse wyl maruell by what meanes these symple men shoulde of so long continuance beare in mynde suche principles, whereas they haue no knowledge of letters. So it is therefore, that from the begynnyng, they princes haue euer been accustomed to commit theyr children to the gouernaunce of their wise men, whiche they call *Boitios*, to be instructed in knowledge, and to beare in memorie such thynges as they learne. They geue them selues chiefly to two thynges: As generally, to learne the originall and successe of thynges, and peticulerly, to rehearse the noble factes of theyr graundefathers, great graundefathers, and auncestours, aswell in peace as in warre. These two thynges they haue of olde tyme composed in certayne mysters and ballettes in theyr language. These rymes or ballettes, they call *Areitos*. And as our mynstrelles are accustomed to syng to the Harpe or Lute, so do they in lyke maner syng these songes, and daunce to the same, playing on Tymbrels made of shels of certaine fishes: These Tymbrels they call *Maguei*. They haue also songes and ballettes of loue, and other of lamentations and mournyng, some also to encourage them to the warres, with euery of them theyr tunes agreeable to the matter. They exercise them selues muche in dauncepng, wherein they are very actyue, and of greater agilitie then our men, by reason they geue them selues to nothyng so muche, and are not hyndered with apparell, whiche is also the cause of theyr swiftenesse of foote. In theyr ballettes lest they of theyr auncestours, they haue prophecies

Their maner of  
learnynge.

Ballettes and  
rhymes.

Singynge and  
dauncepng.  
Songes of  
loue and mour-  
nyng.

of the commynge of our men into theyr countrey. These they syng with mournynge, and as it were with gromynge, bewayle the losse of their libertie and seruitude. For these propheties make mention that there shoulde come into the Island *Maguacobias*, that is, men clothed in apparell, and armed with suche swoordes as shoulde cut a man in sunder at one stroke, vnder whose yoke their posteritie shoulde be suboued. And here I do not maruell that theyr predecessours coulde prophcey of the seruitude and bondage of their succession (if it be true that is sayd) of the familiaritie they haue with spirites, whiche appeare to them in the nyght, whereof we haue largely made mention in the nienth booke of the fyrst decade, where also we haue entreated of their Zemes (that is) their Idoles, and Images of deuylles whiche they honoured. But they saye that since these Zemes were taken away by the Christians, the spirites haue no more appeared. Our men ascribe this to the signe of the crosse, wherewith they defende them selues from suche spirites: For they are nowe all cleaused and sanctified by the water of baptisine, whereby they haue renounced the deuyl, and are consecrated the holy members of Christ. They are vniuersally studious to knowe the boundes and limittes of their regions & kingdomes, and especially their *Mitani* (that is) noble men: so that euen they are not vtterly ignozant in the surueying of theyr landes. The common people haue none other care then of settynge, sowynge, and plantynge. They are most expert fyshers, by reason that throughout the whole peere, they are accustomed dayly to plunge them selues in the ryuers, so that in maner they lyue no lesse in the water then on the lande. They are also geuen to huntynge: For (as I haue sayd before) they haue two kindes of foure footed beastes, whereof the one is, litle Cunnys, called *Vtias*, and other Serpentes, named *Iuanmas*, much lyke vnto Crocodils, of eyght foote length, of most pleasaunte tast, and lyuyng on the lande. All the Landes nooryshe innumerable byrdes and foules: as Stockdowes, Duckes, Geese, Hearons, besyde no lesse number of *Hopingia*s then Sparowes with vs. Euery kynge hath his subiectes diuided to sundrye affaires: as some to huntynge, other to fyshynge, & other some to husbandrye. But let vs nowe retorne to speake further of the names. We haue sayde that

Prophecies.

Note.

Their familiaritie with spirites.

The deuyl is diuyn away by baptisine.

Surueyers.

Serpentes.  
A Crocodile is muche lyke to our Swete or Asperte.

## The thyrde Decade.

*Cipanga.*

*Italy called  
Latium.*

*Isabella.*

*The fourme of  
the Ilande of  
Hispaniola.*

*A particuler  
carde of Hispani-  
oliola.*

*Hispaniola  
compared to  
Ita. 16.*

*The temperas-  
ture of Hispani-  
oliola.*

*Quizqueia* and *Haiti*, were the olde names of this Ilande. The whole Ilande was also called *Cipanga*, of the region of the mountaynes aboundynge with golde: lyke as our auncient poetes called all *Italy Latium*, of part thereof. Therefore as they called *Ausonia* and *Heperia*, *Italy*: euen so by the names of *Quizqueia*, *Haiti*, and *Cipanga*, they vnderstode the whole Ilande of *Hispaniola*. Our men dyd fyyst name it *Isabella*, of queene *Helisabeth*, whiche in the Spanysh tounge is called *Isabella*, and so named it of the fyyst Colonie where they planted their habitation, vpon the banke neere vnto they sea on the North syde of the Ilande, as we haue further declared in the fyyst decade. But of the names, this shal suffice. Let vs nowe therfore speake of the fourme of the Ilande. They whiche fyyst ouerran it, described it vnto me to be lyke vnto the leafe of a Chestnut tree, with a gulle towarde the west syde, lying open agaynst the Ilande of *Cuba*. But the expert thymmaistier *Andreas Moralis*, broughe me the fourme thereof somewhat differynge from that. For from both the corners, as from the East angle and the West, he described it to be indented & eaten with many great gulfes, and the corners to reache foorth very farre, and placeth manye large and safe hauens in the great gulle on the East syde: But I trust shortly so to trauiyle further herein, that a perfect carde of the particular description of *Hispaniola* may be sent vnto your holynesse. For they haue nowe drawne the Geographicall description thereof in cardes, euen as your holynesse hath seene the fourme and situation of *Spayne* and *Italy*, with theyr mountaynes, valleyes, riuers, cities, and colonies. Let vs therfore without shamfastnesse compare the Iland of *Hispaniola* to *Italy*, somtyme the head and queene of the whole worlde. For if we consyder the quantitie, it shalbee founde litle lesse, and muche more fruitefull. It reacheth from the East into the West, fyue hundred and fourtie myles, accordyng to the computation of the later searchers, although the Admiral somewhat increased this number, as we haue syde in the fyyst decade. It is in breadyth somewhere almost thre hundred myles, and in some places narower, where the corners are extended: But it is surely muche more blessed and fortunate then *Italy*, beyng for the most part thereof so temperate and flooyshyng, that it is

it is neyther vexed with sharpe colde, nor afflicted with immoderate heate. It hath both the steppings or conuersions of the Sonne (called *Solstitia*) in maner equall with the Equinoctial, with litle difference betwene the length of the day and the nyght throughout all the yeere. For on the south syde, the day ascendeth scarcely an houre in length aboue the nyght, or contrariwise. But the difference is more on the north syde: Yet are there some regions in the Islande in the whiche the colde is of some force. But your holynesse must vnderstande this to be incident by reason of yobiect or neerenes of the mountaynes, as we wyll more largely declare hereafter: Yet is not this colde so pearcyng or sharpe, that thinhabitanes are molested with snowe or bytyng frost. In other places, the Islande enioyeth perpetuall spring tyme, and is fortunate with continuall sommer and haruest. The trees floreye there all the whole yeere, and the medowes continue alway greene. All thynges are exceedyng fortunate, and growe to great perfection. Howe wonderfully all garden hearbes and fruites do encrease, so that within the space of fyrtene dayes after the seede is sowne, all hearbes of small steames, as lettise, borage, radish, and suche other, come to theyr full rypenesse, and also howe hearbes of the bygger sort, as Gourdes, Melons, Cucumbers, Pompons, Citrons, and such other, come to theyr perfection in the space of thyrtye dayes, we haue sufficiently declared elsewhere. Of the beastes transported out of Spayne thither, we haue sayde howe they growe to a much greater kynde: insomuch that when they fall into communication of the oxen or kyne, they compare them in bygnesse to Elephantes, and swyne to Mules: but this somewhat by an excessive kynde of speache. We haue also made mention howe theyr swynes flethe is more sauourye and of farre better and of more pleasaunt tast, and more holseme then ours, by reason that they are fedde with the fruites of Mirabolane trees, and other pleasaunt and nourishing fruites of that countrey, whiche growe there of them selues, as do with vs Beeches, Holly, and Okes. Vines woulde also prosper there with marueylous encrease, if they had any regarde to the plantyng thereof. The lyke encrease commeth of wheate, if it be sowne vpon the mountaynes, where the cold is of some strength: but not

The Equinoctial.

Cold accidental, and not by the situation of the region.

Perpetuall spring and sommer.

Marueylous fruitfullnesse.

Beastes.

Oxen and swine of exceeding bygnesse.

Swine fed with Mirabolanes.



## The thyrd decade.

in the same playnes, by reason of to much fatnesse and ranknesse of the ground. It is in maner incredible to heare, that an eare of wheate shoulde be bygger then a mans arme in the browne, and more then a spanne in length, bearyng also more then a thousand graynes, as they all confesse with one voyce, and earnestlye attyune the same with othes. Yet they say that the bread of the Island called *Cazabbi*, made of the roote of *Iacca*, to be more hol- some, because it is of easier digestion, and is cultured with lesse labour, and greater encrease. The residue of the tyme which they spend not in lettynge and plantynge, they bestowe in geathering of golde. They haue nowe such plenty of foure footed beastes, that Horses and ore hydes, with sheepe skynnes, and goate skynnes, and such other, are brought from thence into Spayne: so that now the daughter in many thynges helpeth and succoureth her mother. Of the trees of brasye, spycies, the grayne which colour- eth scarlet in bright shyning red, masticke, gossampyne cotton, the precious metall called *Electrum*, and such other commodities of this Islande, we haue spoken sufficiently before. That ther- fore can chaunce more happye vnto man vpon the earth, then there to lyue where he neede not to be dyuened to close chambers with sharpe colde or sayntynge heate, nor yet in winter eyther to be laden with heauy apparel, or to burne the shynnes with conti- nual sitting at the fyre, which thynges make men olde in short tyme, by resoluing the naturall heate, whereof a thousand di- seases ensue. They also affirme the ayre to be very healthfull, and the waters and ryuers to be no lesse holsome, as they which haue their continuall course through the earth of the golden mynes. For there is in maner no ryuers, no mountaynes, and but fewe playnes, that are utterly without golde. But let vs nowe at the length come to the particuler description of the in- ner partes of this blessed Islande. We haue before declared how it is in maner equally diuided with foure great ryuers, des- cendynge from hygh mountaynes, whereof that whiche runneth towards the East, is called *Iunna*, as that towards the West is named *Attibunicus*, the thyrd is *Nabiba* or *Haiba*, which runneth Southward, the fourth is called *Iache*, & falleth toward the North. But this bypmaister hath brought an other des- cription, obserued of the inhabitants from the beginnyng.

An eare of  
wheat as bigge  
as a mans  
arme in the  
browne.

Great plentie  
of cattayle.

In commodi-  
ties of intertye  
rate, regions

Holsome ayre  
and water.

Golde euery  
where.

Let

Let vs therfore diuide the whole Island into five partes, calling the regions of euery prouince by theyr olde names: and finally make mention of such thyngs as are worthy memory in euery of them. The beginning of the Islande on the East syde, is conteyned in the prouince named *Caizcimu*, so named for that in theyr language *Cimu* signifieth the front or beginning of anye thyng. After this, foloweth the prouince of *Hubabo*, and then *Caibabo*, the fourth is *Bainoa*, *Guaccaiarima* conteyneth the west corner. But the last saue one, *Bainoa* is of larger boundes then the three other. *Caizcimu* reacheth from the fyrst front of the Island to the ryuer *Hozama*, which runneth by the citie of saint Dominicke. But towarde the North syde, it is ended at the rough mountaynes of *Haiti*. *Hubabo*, is enclosed within the mountaynes *Haiti* and the ryuer *Iaciga*. *Caibabo* the thyrd prouince, conteineth al that lyeth between *Cubabo* and *Dabatio*, euen vnto the mouth of the ryuer of *Iaccha* or *Iache* (one of the foure which diuide the Island equally) & ascendeth to the mountaynes of *Cibana*, where the greatest plenty of gold is found, out of the which also the ryuer *Demabus* spryngeth: and ioining with the sprynges of the ryuer of *Naiba* (beyng an other of the foure which diuideth the Island toward the south sea) falleth to an other banke of the riuer of saint Dominick. *Bainoa*, beginneth at the confines of *Caibabi*, and reacheth euen vnto the Island of *Cabini*, which lyeth neare vnto the sea bankes of the North syde of the Island, where we sayde that they erected y<sup>e</sup> first colonie or habitation. The prouince of *Guaccaiarima*, occupieth the remanent toward the west: this they named *Guaccaiarima*, because it is the extreme or uttermost part of the Island. For *Iarina* in theyr language, signifieth the tayle or end of any thing, and *Gua* is an article which they vse oftentimes in the names of things, and especially in the names of theyr kinges, as *Guarionexius* & *Guaccanavillus*. In the prouince of *Cazium*, are these regions, *Higuel*, *Guadama*, *Reyre*, *Xagua*, *Aramana*, *Arabo*, *Hazoa*, *Macorix*, *Caiacoa*, *Guaiagua*, *Baguaimabo*, & the rough mountaynes of *Haiti*. Here let vs speake somewhat of their aspirattons, which they vse otherwise then the Latines do. It is to be noted that there is no aspiration in their bowels, which hath not the effect of a consonant. So that they pronounce theyr aspirattons more vehemently then

The citie of S.  
Dominick.

Of prouinces  
diuided into  
regions.

## The thyrd decade,

we do the consonant .f. *Pea*, all suche wordes as in theyr tongue are aspirate, are pronounced with lyke breath and spirite as is .f. sayng that heerin the neather lippe is not moued to the vppermost teeth. With open mouthes and shakynge theyr breastes they breath out these aspirations, *ba, be, bi, bo, bu*, as the Hebrewes and Arabians are accustomed to pronounce theyrs. I fynde also that the Spanyardes vse the lyke vehemencie in the aspirations of these wordes which they haue receyued of the Moores & Arabians which possessed Spaine, and continued there many yeeres, as in these wordes *Almohadda*, which signifieth a pylow or bolster, also *Almobaça*, that is a hoyle combe: with diuers such other wordes, which they speake in maner w<sup>th</sup> panting breathes, and vehement spirite. I haue thought it good to rehearse these thyngs, because among the Latines it oftentimes so chaunceth, that only the accent or aspiration, chaungeth the signification of the worde, as *bora*, for an houre, and *ora*, for the plurale number of this worde *os*, whiche signifieth the mouth: also *ora*, whiche signifieth regions or coastes. The lyke also chaunceth in y<sup>e</sup> diuersitie of y<sup>e</sup> accent, as *occido* I kil, & *occido* I fat: euen so in the language of these simple men, there are many thynges to be obserued. But let vs now returne to the discription. In the prouince of *Hubabo*, are these regions, *Xamana*, *Canabacoa*, *Cubabo*, with many other, the names wherof I haue not yet learned. The prouince of *Cubabo*, conteyneth these regions, *Migua* and *Cacacubana*. The inhabitauntes of this region, haue a peculier language much differing from the common language of the Island, and are called *Maioriexes*. There is also an other region called *Cubana*, whose language differeth from the other. Lykewyse the region of *Baiobagua*, hath a diuers tongue. There are also other regions, as *Dababon*, *Cybabo*, and *Manababo*. *Cotoy* is in the middle of the Island. By this runneth the riuer *Nizaus*, and the mountaines called *Mabaitin*, *Hazua*, & *Neibaymao*, confine w<sup>th</sup> the same. In the prouince of *Bainoa*, are y<sup>e</sup> regions of *Maguana*, *Iagobaiucbo*, *Baurucco*, *Dabaiagua*, & *Attibuni*, so named of the riuer: also *Caunoa*, *Buiaci*, *Dababonici*, *Maiaguariti*, *Ariei*, *Maccazina*, *Guaabbã*, *Anniuci*, *Mariẽ*, *Guaricco*, *Amaguei*, *Xaragua*, *Taguana*, *Azuei*, *Iacchi*, *Honorucco*, *Diaguo*, *Camaie*, & *Neibaimao*. In *Guaccaierima* y<sup>e</sup> last prouince, these regions are contened *Mauicarao*, *Guaabagua*, *Taque-*

The pronun-  
ciation of the He-  
brewes and Ara-  
bians.

The Moores  
and Arabians  
possessed  
Spaine,

How the aspi-  
ration chaun-  
geth the signi-  
fication of  
wordes.

Diuers lan-  
guages in  
the Island.

*Tajuenazabo, Nimaca, Baiona the lesse, Cabaini, Iamaici, Manabaxao, Zauana, Habacoa, and Ayquiora.* But let vs entreate some what of the particulers of the regions. In the prouince of *Caizcimu*, within the great gulfe of the beginning, there is a great caue in a hollow rocke vnder the roote of a high mountayne, about two furlonges from the sea, the entry of this caue is not muche vnlyke the doozes of a great temple, beyng very large, and turning many wayes. *Andreas Moralis* the shypmaister, at the commaundement of the gouernour, attempted to search the caue with the smalest vessels. He sayeth that by certayne priue waies many riuers haue concourse to this caue, as it were a syncke or chanel. After the experience hereof, they ceased to marueyle whether other riuers ranne, which comming fourscore and ten miles were swallowed vp, so that they appeered no more, nor yet fell into the sea by any knowen wayes. Nowe therefore they suppose that riuers swallowed vp by the hollowe places of that stony mountayne, fall into this caue. As the shypmaister entred into the caue, his shyp was almost swallowed. For he sayth, that there are many whyrlepooles and rylnges or boylnges of the water, whiche make a violent conflict and horrible roylng, one encounterng the other: also many huge holes and hollowe places, so that what on the one syde with whirlepooles, and on the other syde with the boylng of the water, his shyppe was long in maner tossed vp and downe like a ball. It greatlye repented hym that he had entred, yet knew he no way how to come forth. He now wandzed in darknesse, aswell for the obscurenesse of the caue into the which he was farre entred, as also that in it were thicke clouds, engendred of the moist vapours proceeding of the conflict of the waters, which continually fal with great violence into the caue on euery syde. He compareth the noyse of these waters, to the fal of the famous riuier *Nilus* from the mountains of *Ethiope*, they were also deafe, that one coulde not heare what an other saide. But at the length with great daunger and feare, he came forth of the caue, as it had been out of hell. About threescore myles distant from the cheefe citie of *sainct Dominicke*, there are certayne hygh mountaynes, vpon the toppes whereof is a lake or standing poole inaccessible, neuer yet seene of them which came latelye to the *Ilande*, both by reason of the rough-

Riuers denou-  
red of caues,

Whirlepooles,  
and conflict of  
waters.

Cloudes in the  
caue.

The Cataracts  
of *Nilus*.

A standing  
poole in the  
top of a high  
mountayne.

nesse



## The thyrde decade.

roughnesse of the mountaynes, and also for that there is no path or open way to the toppes of the same. But at the length the thynnmaister beyng conducted thither by one of the kyngez, ascended to the toppes of the mountaynes, and came to the poole. He sayth that the colde is there of some force: and in token of wynter, he founde fearne and bramble bushes, whiche two growe only in colde regions. These mountaynes, they call *Ymizui Hibabaino*. This poole is of freshe water three myles in compasse, and well replenished with diuers kyndes of fyshes. Many small riuers or brookes fall into it. It hath no passage out, bycause it is on euery syde enclosed with the toppes of mountaynes. But let vs now speake of an other poole, whiche may well be called a sea in the mydlande, and be compared to the Caspian or Hircanian sea in the fyrme lande of *Asia*, with certayne other lakes and pooles of freshe water.

Fearne and  
bramble bushes,  
growe only  
in colde regions.

The Caspian  
and Hircanian  
sea.

## The eyght booke of the thyrde decade.



A great lake of  
sour and salte  
water.

Sea fyshes in  
lakes of the  
mydlande.

The deuouring  
fysh called  
*Tiburonus*.

The prouince of *Bainoa* beyng thise as bigge as the thre fyrst, that is, *Caizimu*, *Vhabo*, and *Caibabo*, includeth a valley named *Caiouani*, in the whiche there is a lake of salt, sowre, and bytter water, as we reade of the sea called *Caspium*, lying in the firme lande betwene *Sarmatia* and *Hircania*. We haue therefore named it *Caspium*, although it bee not in the region of *Hircania*. It hath manye swallowyng gulfes, by the whiche, both the water of the sea spryngeth into it, and also suche as fall into it from the mountaynes are swallowed vp. They thynke that the caues thereof, are so large and deepe, that great fyshes of the sea passe by the same into the lake. Among these fyshes, there is one called *Tiburonus*, whiche cutteth a man in sunder by the myddest at one snap with his teeth, and deuoureth hym. In the ryuer *Hozama*, runnyng by the cheefe citie of saint *Dominicke*, these *Tiburoni* do sometymes come from the sea, and deuoure many of thynhabitauntes: especially suche as do dayly ploonge them selues in the water, to thir-

tent

tent to keepe their bodyes very cleane. The ryuers whiche fall into the lake, are these . From the North syde *Guanicabon*: From the Southe, *Xaccoci*: from the East, *Guannabo*: And from the West, *Occoa* . They saye that these ryuers are great and continuall, and that besyde these, there are .xx. other small ryuers whiche fall into this *Caspium* . Also on the North syde within a furloug of the lake, there are aboute two hundred springs, occuppyng lyke wyse about a furlong in circuit, the water wherof is colde in sommer, frelhe also, and holosome to be drunke. These sprynges make a ryuer that can not bee waded ouer, which neare at hande ioyning with the other, falleth into the lake . Here must we stape a while . The kyng of this region founde his wyfe praying in a Chapell buylded by the Christians within the precincte of his dominion, and requyred her company to satisfie his fleshely lust. His wyfe repproued him, and put him in remembraunce to haue respecte to the holy place. The wordes which she spake to him were these, *Teitoca, Teitoca*, which is as muche to say, as, be quyet, be quyet. *Techeta cynato guamechyna*: That is, God will be greatly angry. *Guamechyna*, signifyeth God, *Techeta* greatly, *Cynato* angrye . But the husbände halyng her by the arme, sayde, *Guaibba*, that is, goe, *Cynato macabuca guamechyna*: That is, What is that to me if God be angry? And with these wordes as he profered her violence, sodeinly he became dumme and lame . Yet by this myracle being stryken with repentaunce, he euer after ledde a religious lyfe, insomuche that from thenceforth he would neuer suffer the Chapell to bee swepte or decked with any other mans hande . By the same myracle, many of the inhabitants, and all the Christians being moued, resorted deuoutly to the Chapell. They take it in good partie that the kyng suffered the reuenge of that reproche . Let vs now reurne to *Caspium* . That salte lake is tossed with stormes and tempestes, and ofentymes drowneeth small shypes or fyllher boates, and swaloweth them vp with the maryners: In so muche that it hath not been hearde of, that any man drowned by shypwrecke, euer plunged vp againe, or was caste on the shore, as commonly chaunceth of the dead bodyes of suche as are drowned in the sea. These tempestes, are the daintie banquets of the *Tiburones*.

The ryuers that fall into the lake *Caspium*.

CC. Springes within the space of a furlong.

A myracle.

The Indian language.

A kyng others dumme and lame by a myracle.

Such as are drowned in the lake are not cast vp againe.

This

## The thyrdē decade.

This *Caspium*, is called *Hagueigabon*. In the myddest hereof, lyeth an Island named *Guarizacca*, to the which they resort when they go a fishyng: but it is now cultured. There is in the same playne, an other lake next vnto this, whose water is myrte of salt and fresh, and is therfore neyther apt to be drunke, nor yet to be refused in vrgent necessitie: This conteyneth in length twentie and fyue myles, and in breadyth eyght myles, in some places also niene or ten. It receyueth many ryuers, which haue no passage out of the same, but are swallowed vp as in the other. Water spynggeth out of the sea into this also: but in no great quantitie, which is the cause that it is so conmyxt. In the same prouince towards the west syde, there is an other lake of freshe water, not farre distaunt from *Caspus*: this the inhabitants call *Iainagua*. The same salte lake hath on the North syde thereof, an other named *Guaccaa*: this is but lytle, as not past thre or foure myles in breadyth, and one in length, the water of this may well be drunke. On the South syde of the salt lake, there lyeth an other named *Babbareo*, of thre myles in length, and in maner rounde. The water of this is freshe, as of the two other. This lake, because it hath no passage out, nor yet any swallowyng gulfes, conueyeth the superfluous waters to the sea, if it be encreased with y<sup>e</sup> streames which fall sometymes more abundantly from the mountaynes: this is in the region of *Xamana* in the prouince of *Bainoa*. There is an other called *Guaniba*, lying betwene the East and the South, neere vnto the syde of *Caspus*: this is ten myles in length, and almost round. There are furthermore many other small standyng pooles or lakes dispersed here and there in the Island, whiche I wyl let passe, lest I shoulde be tedious in remaynyng to long in one thyng. I wyl therfore make an ende with this addition, that in all these great plentie of fysh and foule is nourished. All these lakes lye in a large playne, the whiche from the East reacheth into the West a hundred and twentie miles, being of breadyth. xviij. miles where it is narrowest, and .xxv. where it is largest. Lookyng toward the West, it hath collaterally on the left hande the mountaynes of *Daiguani*, and on the ryght hande, the mountaynes of *Gaigua*, so called of the name of y<sup>e</sup> vale it selfe. At the rootes of the mountaynes

A lake of salt & freshe water.

A lake of freshe water.

A lake of ten myles in length.

A playne of a hundred and twenty myles

mountaynes of *Caigua* towarde the North syde, there lyeth an o-  
 ther vale much longer and larger then that be fore named: For it  
 conteineth in length almost two hundred miles, and in breadth  
 thirtie where it is largest, and about. xx. where it is narrowest.  
 This vale in some parte thereof, is called *Maguana*, in an o-  
 ther place, *Iguani*, and els where, *Hathathiei*. And forasmuch as  
 we haue here made mention of this parte of the vale named *Ha-  
 thathiei*, we will somewhat digresse from the discourse of this de-  
 scription, and entreate of a thing so straunge and marueilous,  
 that the lyke hath not been hearde of. So it is therefore, that the  
 kynge of this region named *Caramatexius*, taketh great pleasure  
 in fshing. Into his nettes chaunced a young fsh, of the kynde  
 of those huge monsters of the sea which thynhabitours call *Ma-  
 nati*, not founde I suppose in our seas, nor knowne to our men be-  
 fore this tyme. This fsh is foure footed, and in shape lyke vnto  
 a Tortoise, although shee be not couered with a shell, but with  
 scales, and those of such hardnesse, & couched in such order, that no  
 arrow can hurte her. Her scales are beset & defended with a thou-  
 sande knobbes, her backe is playne, and her head bitterly lyke  
 the head of an Oxe. She lyueth both in the water, & on the lande,  
 shee is slowe of meuyng, of conditiō mecke, gentle, affociable,  
 and louing to mankynde, and of a marueilous sense or memorie,  
 as are the Elephant and the Delphyn. The kynge nozished this  
 fsh certeine dayes at home with the bread of the countrey, made  
 of the roote of *Lucca* & *Panycke*, & with such other rootes as men  
 are accustomed to eate: For when shee was yet but young, hee  
 cast her into a poole or lake neare vnto his palace, there to be fed  
 with hande. This lake also receiueth waters, and casteth not the  
 same forth againe. It was in tyme paste called *Guanrabo*: but  
 is now called the lake of *Manati*, after the name of this fsh,  
 which wandered safely in the same for the space of. xxv. yeeres,  
 and grewe exceeding byg. Whatsoeuer is writtē of the Del-  
 phines of *Baian* or *Arion*, are muche inferior to the dooinges  
 of this fsh, whiche for her gentle nature they named *Matum*,  
 that is, gentle, or noble. Therefore whensoever any of the kynges  
 familters, especially such as are knowne to her, resort to the  
 bankes of the lake, and call *Matum*, *Matum*, then she (as mynde-  
 full of such benefites as shee hath receyued of men) listeth by her

A platie of two  
 hundred miles  
 in length.

The marues-  
 lous fsh,  
*Manati*.

A monster of  
 the sea fedde  
 with mans  
 hande.

*Matum*.



A fpythe carpyeth  
men ouer the  
lake.

A marneilous  
thing.

head, and commieth to the place whither shee is called, and there recepueth meate at the handes of such as feede her. If any desirous to passe ouer the lake, make signes and tokens of theyr intent, shee boweth her selfe to them, therewith as it were gently smytyng them to amount vppon her, and conueyeth them safely ouer. It hath been seene, that this monstrous fpythe hath at one tyme safely carped ouer tenne men singing and playing. But if by chaunce when she lysted vp her head shee espyed any of the Christian men, she would immediatly plunge downe againe into the water, and refuse to obey, bycause shee had once receyued iniury at the handes of a certayne wanton young man among the Christians, who had cast a sharpe darte at her, although shee were not hurte, by reason of the hardenesse of her skynne, being rough, and full of scales and knobbes, as we haue sayde: Yet dyd shee beare in memorie thiniurie shee susteyned, with so gentle a reuenge requityng thingratitude of him, which had delt with her so vngentely. From that day whensoever shee was called by any of her familiers, she would fyrst looke circumspectly about her, least any were present apparelled after the manner of the Christians. She would oftentimes play and wrestle vppon the banke with the kynges chamberlens, and especially with a young man whom the kyng fauoured well, being also accustomed to feede her. Shee would be sometymes as pleasaunt and full of play as it had been a monkey or marmalet, and was of long tyme a great comfort and solace to the whole Island: For no small confluence aswell of the Christians as of thynhabitantes, had dayly concourse to beholde so straunge a myracle of nature, the contemplation whereof was no lesse pleasaunt then wonderfull. They say that the meate of this kynde of fpythe, is of good taste, and that many of them are engendred in the seas thereabout. But at the length, this pleasaunt playfelowe was losse, and carped into the sea by the great ryuer *Attibunicus*, one of the four which diuide the Island: For at that tyme there chaunced so terrible a tempest of wynde, and rayne, with suche floods ensuing, that the lyke hath not lightly been heard of. By reason of this tempest, the ryuer *Attibunicus* so overflowed the bankes, that it filled the whole bale, and myxt it self with all the other lakes: at which tyme also, this gentle *Matum* & pleasaunt

compa-

The ryuer  
*Attibunicus*.

companyen, folowing the vehement course and fall of the floods, was thereby restored to his olde moother and natyue waters, and since that tyme neuer seene agayne. Thus hauyng digressed sufficiently, let vs now come to the situation of the vale. It hath colliaterally the mountaynes of *Cibana* and *Caignam*, which byyng it to the South sea. There is an other vale beyonde the mountaynes of *Cibana* towarde the North, this is called the vale of *Guarionexius*, bycause that before the memoize of man, the predicessours & auncestours of kyng *Guarionexius*, to whom it is descended by ryght of inheritaunce, were euer the Lordes of the whole vale. Of this kyng, wechaue spoken largely in the fyrst narration of the Ilande in the fyrst Decade. This vale is of length from the East to the West, a hundred and fourescore myles, and of bzeadth from the South to the North, thirtie myles where it is narrowest, and fiftie where it is broadest. It beginneth from the region *Canobocoa* by the prouinces of *Huhabo* and *Caiabo*, and endeth in the prouince of *Bainoa*, and the region of *Mariena*: it lyeth in the myddest betweene the mountaynes of *Cibana*, and the mountaynes of *Cabonai* & *Caxacubuna*. There is no prouince nor any region, which is not notable by the maiestie of mountaynes, fruitfulnessse of vales, pleasauntnesse of hylles, and delectableness of playnes, with abundance of faire ryuers running thzough the same. There are no sides of mountaynes or hylles, no ryuers, which abound not with golde and de-lycate fyshes, except only one ryuer, which from the original thereof, with the springes of the same breakyng forth of the mountaynes, commeth out salt, and so continueth vntill it perissh: This ryuer is called *Babuan*, and runneth thzough the myddle of the region *Maguana*, in the prouince of *Bainoa*. They suppose that this ryuer hath made it selfe a way vnder the grounde, by some passages of playster, or salte earth: for there are in the Ilande manye notable salte bayes, whereof we will speake moze heereafter. Wee haue declared howe the Ilande is diuided by foure ryuers, and fyue prouinces. There is also an other partition, which is this, The whole Ilande consisteth of the toppes of foure mountaynes, whiche diuide it by the myddest from the East to the West: in all these is abundaunce of noozphynge moysture, and great plentie of golde, of the causes also of the which, the waters

The great vale  
of *Guarionexius*.

Golde in all  
mountaynes,  
and golde and  
fyshes in all ry-  
uers.

Salte bayes.

## The thyrd Decade.

The riuers  
haue their in-  
crease from the  
sauies of the  
mountaynes.  
No hurtfull or  
rauening beast  
in the Ilande.

of all the riuers (into the which the caues emptye them selues)  
haue they originall and increase. There are lykewyse in them  
horryble denues, obscure and darke vales, and myghtie rockes of  
stone. There was neuer any noysome beast founde in it, nor yet  
any rauening foure footed beast: no Lion, no Beare, no fierce  
Tigers, no crasie Foxes, nor deuouring Woolfes. All thinges  
are blessed and fortunate, and now more fortunate, for that so ma-  
ny thousandes of men are receyued to bee the sheepe of Chrystes  
flocke, all they zemes and Images of deuylles being reiected  
and betterly out of memorie. If I chaunce now and then in the  
discourse of this narration to repeate one thing dyuers tymes,  
or otherwyse to make digression, I must desyre your holynesse  
therewith not to bee offended: For whyle I see, heare, and  
wyte these thinges, mee seemeth that I am heere with so affec-  
ted, that for very ioy I feele my mynde stirred as it were with  
the spirite of Apollo, as were the Sibilles, whereby I am en-  
forced to repeate the same agayne: especially when I consider  
howe farre the amplitude of our religion spreadeth her wynges.  
Yet among these so many blessed and fortunate thinges, this one  
grecueth mee not a lyttle: that these simple pooze men, neuer  
brought by in labour, doe dayly peryshe with intollerable tra-  
uayle in the golde mynes, and are thereby brought to suche de-  
spiration, that many of them kyll them selues, haupng no re-  
garde to the procreation of chyldren: insomuche that women  
with chyldre, perceyuing that they shall byng forth suche as  
shalbe slaues to the Christians, vse medecines to destroy theyr  
conception. And albeit that by the kynges letters patentes it  
was decreed that they should be set at libertie: yet are they con-  
strayned to serue more then seemeth conuenient for free men.  
The number of the pooze wretches is wonderfully extenuate,  
they were once reckened to bee aboue twelue hundred thousand  
heades: but what they are now, I abhorre to rehearse. We will  
therfore let this passe, and returne to the pleasures of Hispaniola.  
In the mountaynes of *Cibaua*, which are in maner in the myd-  
dest of the Ilande, in the prouince of *Caiabo* (where we sayde to  
bee the greatest plentie of natyue golde) there is a region named  
*Cotobi*, situate in the cloudes, enuironed with the toppes of hygh  
mountaynes, and well inhabited: it consisteth of a playne  
of

The anethours  
excuse.

By what mea-  
nes the people  
of the Ilande  
are greatly  
consumed.

The pleasures  
of Hispaniola.

The region of  
*Cotobi*, situate  
in the cloudes.

of .xxv. myles in length, and .xv. in breadth. This playne is hygher then the toppes of other mountaynes : so that these mountaynes may seeme to bee the chiefe progenitours of the other. This playne suffereth alterations of the foure tymes of the yere, as the Spring, Sommer, Autumne, and wynter. Heere the hearbes waie wythered, the trees loose theyr leaues, and the meadowes become hoare : the whiche thinges (as we haue sayde) chaunce not in other places of the Ilande, where they haue onely the Spring and Autumne. The soyle of this playne byngeth forth fearne and brymble bushes, bearyng blacke berries, or wylde raspes, which two are tokens of colde regions : Yet is it a fayre region, for the colde thereof is not very sharpe, neyther doeth it afflicke thynhabitantcs with frost or snowe. They argue the fruitfulnessse of the region by the fearne, whose stalkes or steames are bygger then a speare or Iauelyn. The sydes of those mountaynes are ryche in golde, yet is there none appoynted to dygge for the same, bycause it shalbe needefull to haue apparelled myners, and such as are vsed to labour : For thynhabitants lypung contented with little, are but tender, and can not therefore away with labour, or abyde any colde. There are two ryuers which runne throughe this region, and fall from the toppes of the present mountaynes : One of these is named *Comoiaixa*, whose course is towarde the West, and falleth into the chanell of *Nai-ba* : the other is called *Tirecotus*, which runnyng towarde the East, ioyneth with the ryuer of *Iunna*. In the Ilande of *Creta* (now called *Candie*) as I passed by in my legacie to the Soldane of *Alcayr* or *Babylon* in *Egypt*, the *Venetians* tolde mee, that there lay such a region in the toppes of the mountaynes of *Ida*, whiche they affirme to bee more fruitefull of wheate corne then any other region of the Ilande : But forasmuch as once the *Cretences* rebelled against the *Venetians*, and by reason of the streight and narrow way to the toppes thereof, long defended the region with armes against chauchopitie of the Senate, and at the length, being forweryed with warres, rendred the same, the Senate commaunded that it should be left desarte, and the streightes of thentraunces to be stopped, least any should ascnd to the region without their permission. Yet in the yere of *Christ* M. D. ii. licence was graunted to the husbände men to cylv

a plaine in the toppes of mountaynes.

The hygher, the colder. Moderate colde in the mountaynes.

Golde.

Thynhabitantes of *Ytis* pantola can abyde no labour nor colde.

The Ilande of *Creta* or *Candie*, vnder the dominion of the *Venetians*.



## The thyrd Decade.

and manure the region, on such condition, that no such as were apte to the warres myght enter into the same . There is also an other region in *Hispaniola*, named *Cotoby*, after the same name : this diuiderh the boundes of the prouinces of *Vbabo* and *Caiabo*. It hath mountaynes, hailes, and playnes : but bycause it is barren, it is not muche inhabited : Yet is it richest in golde, for the originall of the abundaunce of golde beginneth hercin, in somuch that it is not geathered in small graines and sparkes, as in other places : but is founde whole, massie, and pure, among certaine softe stones, and in the baynes of rockes, by breakyng the stones whereof, they folowe the baynes of golde. They haue founde by experience, that the bayne of golde is a lyuing tree, and that the same by all wayes that it spreadeth and springeth from the roote by the softe pores and passages of the earth, putteth forth branches, even vnto the uppermost parte of the earth, and ceaseth not untill it discouer it selfe vnto the open ayre : at which tyme, it sheweth forth certaine beautifull colours in the steede of floures, rounde stones of golden earth in the steede of frutes, and thynne plates in steede of leaues . These are they which are disparciel throughout the whole *Ilande* by the course of the ryuers, eruptions of the springes out of the mountaynes, and violent falles of the flooddes : For they thincke that such graines are not engendred where they are geathered, especially on the drye land, but otherwise in the riuers . They say that the roote of the golden tree extendeth to the center of the earth, and there taketh nourishment of increase : For the deeper y they dygge, they fynde the trunckes thereof to be so much the greater, as farre as they may folowe it for abundaunce of water springing in the mountaines . Of the branches of this tree, they fynde some as small as a thread, & other as bygge as a mans synger, accordyng to the largenesse or straightnesse of the ryftes and clyftes. They haue sometymes chaunced vpon whole caues, susteyned & bozne vp as it were with golden pyllers, and this in the wayes by the which the branches ascende : the which beyng fylled with the substance of the trunke creepng from beneath, the branche maketh it selfe waye by whiche it maye passe out . It is oftentimes diuided by encountryng with some kynde of harde stone : Yet is it in other clyftes nourished by the exhalations

and

Pure and massie golde in the region of *Cotoby*.

The bayne of golde is a lyuing tree. These colours of floures are called *Marshallies*.

The roote of the golden tree.

The branches of the golden tree.

Caues sustented with pyllers of golde.

The stones of the golde mynes.

and vertue of the roote . But nowe perhaps you will aske mee what plentie of golde is brought from thence. You shall therfore vnderstand, that onely out of *Hispaniola*, the summe of foure hundred, and sometymes fyue hundred thousande ducates of golde is brought peerele into Spayne : as may be geathered by the fyfth portion due to the kynges Exchequer, which amounteth to the summe of a hundred and fourescore, or fourescore and tenne thousande Castellanes of golde, and sometymes more . What is to be thought of the Ilande of *Cuba* and *Sancti Iohannis* (otherwise called *Burichena*) being both very ryche in golde, we will declare further hereafter : to haue sayde thus much of golde, it shall suffice . We will now therfore speake somewhat of salt, wherewith wee may season and reserue suche thinges as are bought with golde . In a region of the prouince of *Bainoa*, in the mountaynes of *Daiaquo*, about twelue myles distant from the salt lake, called *Cassius*, there are salte bayes in the mountaynes, in a manner as harde as stones , also clearer and whyter then cristall. There are lykewys such salt bayes, which grow wonderfully in *Laletania* (now called *Cataloma*) in the territorie of the duke of *Cadona*, the chiefe ruler in that region : but suche as knowe them both, affyrme that these of *Bainoa* are most notable. They say also, that this can not bee cleft without wedges and beetelles of Iron : But that of *Laletana* may easily bee broken, as I my selfe haue prooued . They therfore compare this to suche stones as may easily bee broken, and the other to marble . In the prouince of *Caizimu*, in the regions of *Iguanama*, *Caiacoa*, and *Guariagua*, there are springes whose waters are of marueylous nature, being in the superficiall or vppermost parte freshe, in the myddest myrte of salte and freche, and in the lowest parte salte and soure. They thincke that the salt water of the sea issueth out softly, and the freshe to spring out of the mountaynes : The one falleth downe, and the other ryleth, and are not therfore so vniuersally myrte, whereby the one may utterly corrupte thother. If any man laye his eare to the grounde nere to any of these springes, hee shall perceyue the grounde there to bee so hollow, that the reboundyng noyle of a horseman comyng, may be heard for the space of thre myles, and a footeman one myle. In the last region toward the South, named *Guacaiarima*, in the

What golde is brought perely from *Hispaniola* into Spayne

Salt of the mountaynes, very harde and cleare.

Salt as harde as stones.

Springes of salt, freshe, and souer water.

Hollow canes in the grounde.

## The thyarde Decade.

Certaine wylde  
men lyuing in  
caves and  
denues.

Men without  
a certayne lan-  
guage.

Men as swift  
as Grehoundes

A wylde man  
runneth away  
with a chyld.

Pitch of the  
rocke.

Pitch of two  
kynndes of trees  
The Wyne  
tree.

lordship of *Zauina*, they say there are certaine wylde men, which lyue in the caues and denues of the mountaynes, contented onely with wylde frutes : these men neuer vse the company of any other, nor will by any meanes become tame . They lyue without any certayne dwellyng places, and without tyllage or culturyng of the grounde, as wee reade of them which in olde tyme lyued in the golden age . They say also that these men are without any certayne language : They are sometymes seene , but our men haue yet layde handes on none of them . If at anye tyme they come to the syght of men, and perceue any makynge towarde them, they flee swifter then a Harte : Yea, they asfyrme them to bee swifter then Grehoundes . What one of these solitarie wanderers dyd, it is worth the hearyng . So it is, that our men hauyng granges adioyning neere vnto the thicke woods, certaine of them repaired thither in the moneth of September, in the yeere. *M.D.xliiii.* in the meane tyme, one of these wylde men came leapyng out of the wood, & approachyng somewhat towarde them with synkling countenaunce, sodeinly snatched by a chyld of theyrs, being the sonne of the owner of the grange, which he begot of a woman of the Ilande : Hee ranne away with the chyld, and made signes to our men to folowe hym : Many folowed, aswell of our men, as of the naked inhabitantes, but all in vayne . Thus when the pleasaunt wanderer perceued that the Christians ceased to pursue hym, hee left the chyld in a crosse way by the which the swynehardes were accustomed to dyue the swyne to theyr pasture . Shortly after, a swynehearde founde the chyld, and brought him home to his father, yet tormenting him selfe for sorowe, supposing that wylde man to haue been one of the kynde of the *Canibales*, and that his sonne was now deuoured . In the same Ilande they geather pytch, which sweateth out of the rockes, being muche harder and sourer then the pytche of the tree, and is therefore moze commodious to calke or defende shyppes agaynst the woormes called *Bromas*, whereof wee haue spoken largelye before . This Ilande also byngeth forth pytche in two kynndes of trees, as in the *Wyne* tree, and an other named *Copeia*. I neede not speake of the *Wyne* tree, bycause it is engendred and knowne in maner euery where . Let vs therefore speake somewhat of the

the other tree called *Copeia*. Pitche is lykewyse geathered of it, as of the *Pyne* tree, although some say that it is geathered by distylling or droppying of the wood when it is burnt. It is a straunge thyng to heare of the leafe thereof, and howe necessary prouision of nature is shewed in the same. It is to be thought that it is the tree, in the leaues whereof the *Chaldeans* (beyng the fyrst fynders of letters) expressed theyr myndes before the vse of paper was known. This leafe is a spanne in breadth, and almost rounde. Our men wyte in them with pynnes or nedles, or any suche instrumentes made of metall or wood, in maner as well as on paper. It is to be laughed at, what our men haue perswaded the people of the *Ilande* as touchyng this leafe. The symple soules beleue, that at the commaundement of our men, leaues do speake and disclose secretes. They were brought to this credulitie by this meanes. One of our men dwelling in the citie of *Dominica*, the cheife of the *Ilande*, delyuered to his seruauant (beyng a man bozne in the *Ilande*) certayne roasted *Connies* (whiche they call *Vtias*, beyng no bygger then myse) wyllyng him to cary the same to his frende, whiche dwelt further within the *Ilande*. This messenger, whether it were that he was thereto constrained through hunger, or entyled by appetite, deuoured thre of the *Connies* by the way. He to whom they were sent, wrote to his frende in a leafe howe many he receyued. When the maister had looked a whyle on the leafe in the ptesence of the seruauant, he sayde thus vnto hym, Ah some, where is thy fayth? Coude thy greedie appetite preuaile so muche with thee, as to cause thee to eate the *Connies* committed to thy fidelitie? The poore wretche trembling and greatly amaled, confessed his faulte, and therewith despyed his maister to tell hym howe he knewe the truieth thereof. This leafe (quod he) whiche thou broughtest me, hath tolde me all. Then he further rehearsed vnto hym the houre of his comyng to his frende, and lykewyse of his departyng when he retourned. And thus they merply deceyue these seely soules, and keepe them vnder obedience: insomuche that they take our men for *Goddes*, at whose commaundement leaues do disclose suche thynges as they thynke most hyd and secrete. Both the sydes of the leafe receyue the fourmes

The tree  
*Copeia*.

The leafe of a  
tree in the stede  
of paper.

They beleue  
that leaues do  
speake.  
A puerie  
storie.

Ignorance  
causeth ad-  
miracion.



## The thyrde Decade.

The leafe  
wherein they  
wypte.

of letters, euen as dooth our paper. It is thyecker then double parchment, and marueylous tough. Whyle it is yet flozys-  
hynge and newe, it sheweth the letters whyte in greene, and  
when it is dye, it becommeth whyte and harde, lyke a table  
of wood, but the letters were yelow: It dooth not corrupt or  
putrify, nor yet looseth the letters though it bee wet, nor  
by any other meanes, except it be burnt. There is an other  
tree named *Xagua*, the iuice of whose soure apple, beyng of a  
darke redde coloure, stayneth and coloureth whatsoeuer is  
touched therewith, and that so fymely, that no washynge  
can take it away for the space of twentie dayes. When the  
apple is full rype, the iuice looseth that strength. The apple  
is eaten, and of good tast. There is an hearbe also, whose smoke  
(as we haue rehearsed the lyke before of a certayne wood) is  
deadly popson. On a tyme when the kynges assembled to-  
geather, and conspired the destruction of our men, where as  
they durst not attempt thinterprise by open warre, they deuise  
was, priuilye to lay many bundels of those hearbes in a certayne  
houle, whiche shortly after they intended to set on fyre, to thintent  
that our men, makynge hast to quench the same, myght take  
theyr death with the smoke thereof: But, theyr purposed pra-  
ctise beyng betrayed, the aucthours of the deuise were punished  
accorpyngly. Nowe (most holy father) forasmuche as your  
holynesse wyrteth, that whatsoeuer we haue wyrtten of the newe  
woorde, dooth please you ryght well, we wyll rehearse certayne  
thynges out of order, but not greatly from our purpose. Of

A stronge co-  
loure of the  
iuice of an  
apple.

An hearbe  
whose smoke  
is popson.

the lettynge the rootes of *Maizium*, *Agas*, *Lucca*, *Battatas*,  
and such other, beyng their common foode, and of the  
use of the same, we haue spoken sufficiently before:

But by what meanes they were fyrst applyed  
to the comoditie of men, we haue not yet

declared. We nowe therefore entende to  
entreate somewhat hereof.

The

The ninth booke of the  
thyrd Decade.

They say that the fyrst inhabitours lyued contented with the rootes of Dates, and *Paganeans*, which is an hearbe, much lyke vnto that which is commonly called *Sengrene* or *Dipin*: also the rootes of *Guaite-gans*, which are rounde and great, muche lyke vnto puffes of earth or multhromes.

The kynndes of frutes where with thinhabia rautes lyued first.

They dyd lyke wyse eate *Guaieros*, lyke vnto *Perlunips*, *Cibaio*s, lyke *Muttres*, *Cibaioes* and *Macoanes*, like vnto *Onions*, with diuers other such rootes. They say that after many yeeres, a certayne *Boition*, that is, a wyse old man, saw vypon the bankes syde a bush lyke vnto fenell, & transplanting the roote therof, brought it from wylonelle to a better kynnde, by nooryshing it in gardens.

This was the begynning of *Iucca*, which at the fyrst was deadly poison to al such as did eate therof rawe. But for as muche as they perceyued it to be of pleasaunt tast, they determined many wayes to proue the vse therof, and at the length founde by experience, that beyng sodde, or fryed, it was lesse hurtful: by whiche meanes also, they came to the knowledge of the venome lying hyd in the iuile of the roote. Thus by drying, salting, seasoning, and other wyse tempering it, they brought it to theyr fyne bread, whiche they call *Cazabbi*, more delectable and hoisome to the stomacke of man then bread made of wheate, because it is of easyer digestion. The same is to be understood of other rootes, and the grayne of *Maizium*, which they haue chosen for theyr chiefe meate among the leedes of nature, as we reade howe *Ceres* the daughter of *Saturnus*, geathered wheate and barley (with suche other corne as are now most in vse among men) in *Egypt*, of certayne graynes taken out of the mydde dryuen from the mountaynes of *Ethiopia* by thincreate of the river *Nilus*, & left in the playne at such tyme as *Nilus* resorted agayne to his chanell. For the which fact, we reade that the antiquitie gaue diuine honour to *Ceres*, who fyrst nooryshed and increased suche chosen seedes.

Accettitie the mother of al artes.

The fyne bread *Cazabbi*, made of the rootes of *Iucca*.

How *Ceres* first founde wheate and barley in *Egypt*.

There

## The thyrdē Decade.

There are innumerable kyndes of *Ages*, the varietie wherof, is knowen by theyr leaues and flowers. One kynde of these, is called *Guanaguax*, this is white both within and without. Another named *Guaraguei*, is of violet colour without, and white within. The other kyndes of *Ages*, they call *Zazauaios*, these are redde without and white within. *Squietes*, are whyte within and without. *Tunna*, is altogether of violet colour. *Hobos* is yelow both of skynne and inner substance. There is an other named *Atibuniei*, the skynne of this is of violet colour, and the substance white. *Aniguamar*, hath his skynne also of violet colour, and is white within. *Guaccaracca*, hath a white skynne, and the substance of violet colour. There are many other, which are not yet brought to vs. But I feare me lest in the rehearfall of these, I shal prouoke the spurre of malicious persons against me, which wyl scorne these our doynges, for that we haue wyrtten of many such small thynges, to a pryncce occupied in suche weyghtie affayres, as vnto your holynesse, vpon whose shoulders resteth the burden of the whole Christian worlde. But I would aske of these malicious enuyers of other mens trauayles, whether *Plinie* and such other famous wryters, when they directed and dedicated such thyngs to kynges and princes, intended only to profite them to whom they consecrated the fruite of theyr knowledge. They sometimes intermixt famous things with obscure things, light with heauie, and great with small, that by the furtheraunce of princes, theyr vniuersall posteritie might enioye the fruition of the knowledge of thyngs. At other times also being entent about perticular things, and desirous of new things, they occupied them selues in searchyng of perticular tractes and coastes, with such thynges as nature brought forth in the same, by this meanes to come the better to more absolute and vniuersall knowledge. Let them therfore contemne our doyng, and we wyl laugh to scorne, not theyr ignoraunce and slouthfulnesse, but pernicious curiosnesse: and therewith haupng pytie of theyr frowarde dispositions, wyl commit them to the venomous Serpentes of whom enuye tooke his fyrst originall. It shall in the meane tyme abundantly content vs, that these thynges doo please your holynesse, and that you do not dyspse our synple vesture, wherewith we haue onely weaved

togeth

The rootes of  
Ag:s.

The aucthours  
excuse.

*Plinie.*

together, and not adourned, geathered, and not described, such maruelous thynges, in the garnysyng whereof, nature hath sufficiently shewed her cunnyng. Our desyre is none other herein, but for your sake to doo our endeuoure that these thynges may not peryshe: let euery man take hereof what lyketh hym best. Of the sheepe or Bullocke solde in the market, nothyng remaineth in the euenyng, because the shoulder please one, the legge an other, and the necke an other: yea some haue most phantasie to the bowels, and some to the feete. Thus haunyng penough wandered, let vs returne to our purpose, and declare with what woordes they salute the kynges chylde when they are fyrst bozne, and howe they applye the begynning of their liues to the end, and why their kinges are called by many names. Therefore when the kyng hath a sonne bozne, suche as dwell neare about his pallace or village, repayre to the queenes chamber, where one saluteth the newe bozne chylde with one name, and an other with an other name. God saue thee thou thynnyng lampe, sayth one: An other calleth hym, bygght and cleare: Some name hym the victourer of his enemies: and other some, the puissaunt conquerour descended of blood royall, and bygghter then gold: with dyuers other suche bayne names. Therefore lyke as euery of the Roman emperours was called *Adiabenicus, Parthicus, Armenicus, Dacicus, Gothicus, and Germanicus*, according to the titles of their parentes and auncestours: euen so by thynposition of names inuented by other kinges, *Beuchicus Anacacoa* the lord of the region of *Xaragua* (of whom and of the wyse woman *Anachaona* his syster, we haue spoken largely in the first Decade) was called by all these names folowynge, *Tureigua Hobin*, whiche is asyniche to saye as, a kyng thynnyng as bygght as lator, *Starei*, that is, bygght, *Huibo*, byghnesse, *Duibeynequen*, a ryche flood. With all these names, and more then fourtie other suche, dooth kyng *Beuchius* magnifie hym selfe as often as he commaundeth any thing to be doone, or causeth any proclamation to be made in his name. If the cryer by negligence leaue out any of these names, the kyng thynketh it to sounde greatly to his contumely and reproche: The lyke is also of other. Howe fondely they blesse them selues in makynge theyr testamentes, we wyll nowe declare. They leaue thinheritaunce of their kyngdomes to the best

By what names they salute the kyngs child when they are bozne.

The names and titles of the Romane Emperours.

Howe they make theyr testamentes.

sonnes



## The thyrde Decade.

sonnes of theyr eldest sisters. If the sayle, to the eldest of the seconde sister, and so of the thyrde if the seconde also sayle: For they are out of doubt that those chyldren come of theyr blood, but the chyldren of theyr owne wyues, they counte to be not legitimate. If there remaine none of theyr sisters chyldren, they leaue thinheritaunce to theyr brothers: and if they sayle, it descendeth to theyr owne sonnes. Last of all, if all these faile, they assigne it to the woorthiest, as to him that is of greatest power in all the Ilande, that he may defende theyr subiectes from their aunient enimies. They take as many wyues as them lysteth. They suffer the best beloued of the kynges wyues and concubines to be buryed with hym. *Anacbaona* the sister of *Beuchius* the kyng of *Xaragua*, being a woman of such wisdom and cunnyng, that in makynge of rhymes and ballattes she was counted a prophetisse among the best, commaunded, that among all the wyues and concubines of the kyng her brother, the fayrest (whose name was *Guanabattabenechina*) shoulde be buried alpye with hym, and two of her waytynge maydes with her: She would surely haue appointed diuers other to that offyce, if she had not been otherwys perswaded by the prayers of certayne freres of saint *Fraunces* order, whiche chaunced then to be present. They saye that this *Guanabattabenechina* had none in all the Ilande comparable to her in beautie. She buryed with her all her iewels, and twentie of her best ornamentes. Their custome is, to place besyde euery of them in their sepultures, a cuppe full of water, & a portion of the fyne bread of *Cazabbi*. In *Xaragua*, the region of this kyng *Beuchius*, and in *Hazua*, part of the region of *Caiabo*, also in the fayre vale of salt and freshe lakes, and lykewyse in the region of *Yaquino* in the prouince of *Bainoa*, it rayneth but seldome: In all these regions are fosses or trenches made of olde tyme, whereby they conueye the waters in order to water theyr fieldes, with no lesse art then do th inhabitours of newe *Carthage*, and of the kingdome of *Murci* in *Spartaria* for the seldome fall of rayne. The region of *Maguana*, diuideth the prouince of *Bainoa* from *Caiabo*, and *Zauana* from *Guacciarima*. In the deepe vales, they are troubled with rayne more often then nedeth. Also the confines of the chiefe citie, named saint *Dominike*, are moister thē is necessary. In other places, it raineth moderately

So dyd great Alexander.

The kynges wyues & concubines are buryed with him.

They burpe theyr iewels with them.

It dreame of an other lyfe after this.

Where it rayneth but seldome.

Where it rayneth much.

moderately. There are therfore in the Island of *Hispaniola*, diuers and variable motions of the elementes, as we reade the lyke of many other regions. Of theyr colonies or mancions which the Spaniardes haue erected in this Island, we haue spoken sufficiently before. They haue since that tyme builded these villages, *Portus plate*, *Portus Regalis*, *Lares*, *Villanoua*, *Azuam*, and *Salua terra*. Pausing sayde thus much of the Island of *Hispaniola*, the mother and lady of the other Ilandes, and as it were *Tethys* the most beautifull wyfe of *Neptunus* the god of the sea, let vs nowe entreate somewhat of her Nymphes and sayre *Nereides*, which wayte bypon her, and adourne her on euery syde. The wyll therfore begyn at the nearest, called the newe *Aretbusa*, so named of the fountaine *Aretbusa* in the Island of *Sicilie*. This is famous by reason of a spring, but otherwyse vnyprofitable. Our men named it of late *Duas Arbores*, because it hath onely two trees growng in it: neere vnto the which is a fountayne that commeth from the Island of *Hispaniola*, through the secrete passages of the earth vnder the sea, and breaketh forth in this Inde, as the ryuer *Alpheus* in *Achaia* runneth vnder the sea from the cite of *Elde*, and breaketh forth in y<sup>e</sup> Island of *Sicilie* in the fountayne *Aretbusa*. That the fountayne of this newe *Aretbusa*, hath his originall from the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, it is manifest heereby, that the water issuyng out of the fountayne, bypygeth with it the leaues of many trees whiche growe in *Hispaniola*, and not in this Island. They saye that the fountayne hath his originall from the ryuer *Tiamiroa*, in the region of *Guacaiarima*, conuynng with the lande of *Zauana*. This Ilande is not past a myle in circuite, and commodious for fishermen. Directly towards the East (as it were the porter keepyng the entyre to *Tethys*) lieth the Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis* (otherwyse called *Burichena*) whereof we haue spoken largely before: this is boundeth with gold, and in fruitfull soile is equall with her mother *Hispaniola*: in this are many colonies or mancions of Spaniardes, which apply them selues to geatherynge of golde. Towards the west on the North syde, great *Cuba* (for the longnesse thereof, long supposed to be continent or fyrry lande) wardeth our *Tethys* on the backe halfe. This is much longer then *Hispaniola*, and from the East to the west, is diuided in the myddest

Variable motions of the Elementes.

The colonies and villages whiche the Spaniardes haue builded.

The other Ilandes about *Hispaniola*.

The Island of *Aretbusa*.

A spring runnyng vnder the sea from *Hispaniola* to *Aretbusa*.

The Island of *Sancti Iohannis*.

The Ilande of *Cuba*.

## The thyrde Decade.

iniddest with the circle called *Tropicus Cancrī*. *Hispaniola* and the  
 other lying on the South syde of this, are enclosed almost in the  
 mydde space betweene the sayde Tropike and the Equinoctiall  
 line, which many of the olde wyriters supposed to be uninhabitable  
 and desart, by reason of the feruent heate of the Sonne in that  
 clyme, as they coniectured: but they were deceyued in theyr o-  
 pinion. They affirme that rycher golde mynes are founde in  
*Cuba*, then in *Hispaniola*. They say also that euen now whyle I  
 wyrite these thynges, there is golde gathered togeather redy to  
 the melting, amountyng to the quantitie of a hundred and foure-  
 score thousand Castellans of golde, an argument surely of great  
 rychesse. *Iamaica* is moze towards the South then these, and  
 is a pleasaunt and fruitful Ilande, of soyle apt for corne, grasse,  
 and settes, it consisteth of onely one mountayne: the inhabitant-  
 es are warrelke men, and of good wyte, *Colonus* compared it  
 to *Scicilie* in bygnesse. They whiche of late searched it moze  
 exactly, say that it is somewhat lesse, but not muche. It is  
 thought to be without golde and precious stones, as the lyke  
 was supposed of *Cuba* at the beginning. The Ilande of *Guada-  
 lupea* ( fyrst named *Caraqueira* ) lying on the South syde of *Hispa-  
 niola*, is foure degrees nearer the Equinoctiall. It is eaten and  
 indented with two gulfes (as we reade of great *Britanie*, nowe  
 called *England*, and *Calidonia*, nowe called *Scotland*) beyng  
 in maner two Ilandes. It hath famous Portes. In this they  
 founde that gumme whiche the Apothecaries call *Anima Al-  
 bum*, whose fume is holseme agaynst reumes and heauinesse of  
 the head. The tree whiche engendreth this gumme, beareth  
 a fruite much like vnto a Date, beyng a spanne in length. When  
 it is opened, it seemeth to contayne a certayne sweete meale.  
 As our husbandmen are accustomed to referue Chestnuts, and  
 such other harde fruites, all the winter, so do they the Dates  
 of this tree, beyng muche lyke vnto a Fygge tree. They  
 founde also in this Ilande, Myne trees, of the best kynde, and  
 such other dayntie dyshes of nature, whereof we haue spoken  
 largely before: Wea they thynke that the inhabitants of o-  
 ther Ilandes, had theyr seedes of so many pleasaunt fruites  
 from hence. For the *Cambales*, beyng a wyld and wander-  
 yng people, and ouerturmyng all the countrey about them,

to

Habitable regi-  
ons under the  
Equinoctial.

The rich golde  
mines of Cuba.

The Iland of  
Iamaica.

The Iland of  
Guadalupea.

England and  
Scotland

The gum cal-  
led Anime  
album.

Dates.

Vine trees.

The Cani-  
bales.

to hunte for mans fleshe, were accustomed to byrnyng home with them whatsoeuer they founde straunge or profyttable in anye place : They are intractable, and will admit no strangers. It shall therefore bee needefull to ouercome them with great power : For as well the women as men, are experte archers, and vse to inuene the arrowes . When the men go forth of the lande a man huntynge, the women manfully defend their coastes agaynst suche as attempt to inuade the same . And hereby I suppose it was thought, that there were Ilandes in the Ocean, inhabited onely with women, as *Colonus* the Admirall him selfe perswaded mee, as I haue sayde in the fyrst Decade. This Ilande hath also fruitefull mountaynes and playnes, and notable ryuers . It nouryssheth hony in trees, and in the caues of rockes, as in *Palma* one of the Ilandes of *Canarie*, hony is geathered among the byers and bryamble bushes . About .xviii. myles Eastward from this Ilande, lyeth an Ilande which our men named *Desiderata*, beyng .xx. myles in circuite, and verie fayre . Also about tenne myles from *Guadalupea* towarde the South, lyeth the Ilande of *Galanta*, beyng thirtie myles in circuite, and plaine: It was so named for the neatenesse and beautifullnesse therof. Niene myles distant from *Guadalupea* towarde the East, there are fyve small Ilandes, named *Todos Sanctos*, or *Barbata*: these are full of rockes, & barren, yet necessary to be knowen to such as vse to trauallye the seas of these coastes . Agayne, from *Guadalupea* .xxxv. myles towarde the North, there is an Ilande named *Monsserratus*, conteynyng in circuite fourtie myles, hauyng also in it a mountayne of notable heygth . The Ilande named *Antiqua*, distante from *Guadalupea* thirtie myles, is about fourtie myles in circuite . *Diego Colon* the sonne and heyre of *Christophorus Colon*, tolde me that his wyfe (whom he lefte in the Ilande of *Hispaniola* at his commyng into Spayne to the courte) did wyte vnto him, that of late among the Ilandes of the *Canibales*, there is one founde which aboundeth with golde. On the lefte syde of *Hispaniola* towarde the South, neere vnto the hauen *Beata*, there lyeth an Ilande named *Portus Bellus*: they tell marueilous thinges of the monsters of the sea about this Ilande, and especially of the *Crotopes*, for they say that they are bygger then great rounde targettes . At suche tyme as the

Whereby it was thought that there were Ilandes of women.

Hony in trees and rockes.

The Ilande *Desiderata*.  
The Ilande *Galanta*.

The Ilandes of *Todos Sanctos*, or *Barbata*.

The Ilande *Monsserratus*.  
The Ilande *Antiqua*.

The Ilande *Portus Bellus*.  
Great *Crotopes* sea.  
The generatyon of *Crotopes* sea.



## The thynde Decade.

heate of nature moueth them to generation, they come forth of the sea, and makynge a deepe pyt in the sande, they lay three or foure hundred egges therein. When they haue thus emptied theyr bagge of conception, they put as muche of the sande agayne into the pyt, as may suffice to couer the egges, and so resorte agayne to the sea, nothyng carefull of theyr succession, At the day appoynted of nature to the procreation of these beastes, there creepeth out a multitude of Tortoyles, as it were pyllemares swarmyng out of an ant hyll: and this onely by the heate of the Sunne, without any helpe of theyr parentes. They say that theyr egges are in maner as bygge as Geese egges. They also compare the fleshe of these Tortoyles, to bee equall with beale in taste. There are besyde these, innumerable Ilandes, the whiche they haue not yet searched, nor yet is it greatly necessary to syt this meale so synely. It may suffice to vnderstande that there are large landes, and many regions, which shall heereafter receyue our nationz, toungez, and maners, and therewith embrace our religion. The Trojans dyd not sodeinly replenshe Asia, the Tyrians Libya, nor the Greekes and Phenices Spayne. As touchyng the Ilandes whiche lye on the North syde of Hispaniola, I haue let passe to speake: For albeit they are commodious for tyllage and fshyng, yet are they lesse of the Spanyardes as poore and of small value. We will nowe therefore take our leaue of this olde *Tethis*, with her moyst and watery Nymphes, and receyue to our new acquayntance the beautifull lady of the South sea, richly crowned with great pearles, the Ilande of *Dites* beyng ryche both in name and in treasure. In my Epistle booke which I sent vnto your holynesse this last yee, I declared howe *Vasbus Nunnez Balboa*, the Captayne of them which passed ouer the daungerous mountaynes toward the South sea, learned by report, that in the prospecte of those coastes there laye an Ilande aboundyng with pearles of the greatest sort, and that the kyng thereof was ryche, and of great power, infestynge with warres the other kynges his borderers, and especially *Chiapes* and *Tumacchus*: Wee declared further, howe at that tyme it was left vntouched by reason of the ragyng tempestes which troubled that South sea three monethes in the yee. But

The Egges of  
Tortoyles.

Innumerable  
Ilandes.

Trojans.  
Tyrians.  
Greekes.  
Phenicians.  
The North  
Ilandes.

The Ilandes  
of the south sea.

The Ilande of  
pearles.

It is now better knowne to our men, who haue now also brought that fierce kyng to humanitie, and conuerted him from a cruell Tyger, to one of the mecke sheepe of Christes flocke, sanctified with the water of baptisme, with all his family and kyngdome. It shall not therefore bee from our purpose to declare, by the gouernance of what captaines, or by what meanes these thinges were so happily atchpyued.

Wylde brastres must be tamed with the rod.

The tenth booke of the thynde Decade.



The arryual of *Petrus Arias* the newe gouernour of *Dariena*, he gaue commaundement that one *Gasper Moralis* should take in hande the expedition to the Island of *Dites*. He therfore tooke his vyage first to *Chiapes* and *Tumacchus* kings of the South, whom *Vaschus* before had conciled and left friends

An expedition to the Islande of *Dites* in the south sea.

to the Christians. They friendly and magnifically enterteyned our men, who prepared them a nauie of the kyngs boates to passe ouer into this Islande, which they call *Dites*, & not *Margarita* or *Margaritea*, although it abounde with pearles, which in the latin tonge are called *Margaritæ*. For they first called an other by this name, which lyeth next to the mouth of *Os Draconis* in the region of *Paria*, in the which also is found great plenty of pearles. *Gasper* brought with him onely .lx. armed men to the Islande, for that hee could conuey ouer no greater number, by reason of the smalnesse and narrownes of their boates or barkes, which they call *Culchas*, made of one whole peece of timber, as we haue sayd before. The kyng of y<sup>e</sup> Island came forth agaynst them fiercely, w<sup>th</sup> cruell and threathning countenance, & with a great bande of armed men, crying in maner of a larme, & in token of the battaile, *Guazzauara*, *Guazzauara*, which is as much to say as, battayle against y<sup>e</sup> enemy, & is (as it were) a watch word to giue thonsert: wherewith also they threw their darts, for they haue not thuse of bowes. They were so obstinate & desperate, that they assailed our men w<sup>th</sup> foure *Guazzauaras*, that is, battayles. At the length our men with certaine of *Chiapes* and *Tumacchus* men (being olde enemies to this kyng of the Islande) got the vpper hande, by reason they assailed

The Islande of *Margarita*.

*Os Draconis*, *Paria*.

A conflict.

## The thyrd Decade.

the kyng sodeinly and vnawares. Yet was he determined to assemble a greater power, and once agayne to attempt the fortune of warre, but that he was othertwyle perswaded by the kynges his borderers, whiche counselled him to geue ouer, and submit him selfe, somtyme by the example of them selues & other, threatening the destruction of his floozyschyng kyngdome, and otherwhyle declarpng vnto him the humanitie and gentlenesse of our men, by whose friendship hee might obteyne honour and quietnesse to him and his: willyng him furthermore to consider, what chaunced vnto them which the peere befoze resisted and aduentured the haharde of the battayle, as dyd these kynges, *Poncha, Pochorrofa, Quarequa, Chiapes, and Tumacchus*, with such other. By these persualions, the kyng submitted him selfe, and came friendly to our men, whom he conducted to his palace, which they say to bee marueylously adourned and princelyke. As soone as they entred into the pallasce, hee brought forth a basket of curious workemanshpy, and full of pearles, which he gaue them. The summe of these pearles amounted to the weight of a hundred and ten poundes, after .viii. vnces to the pounce: being agayne rewarded of our men, with such tryfles as they brought with them of purpose, as garlandes of Chyristall, and glasse, and other counterfet stones of dyuers colours, with lookyng glasses also, and lalen belles, and especially two or three Iron hatchets (whiche they more esteeme then great heapes of golde) hee thought him selfe abundantly recompenced. They laugh our men to scorne, that they will depart with so great and necessarie a thing for any summe of golde: asseymyng an axe or hatchet to bee profitable for many vles of men, and that golde serueth onely for wanton pleasures, and not to be greatly necessary. Being therefore toofull and glad of the friendship of our men, he tooke the captayne by the hande, and brought him with certayne of his familiars to the hyghest towre of his palace, from whence they might prospecte the mayne sea: then casting his eyes about him on euery syde, and lookyng towarde the East, he sayde vnto them, Beholde, heere lyeth open before you the infinite sea, extended beyonde the summe beames: then turnyng hym towarde the South and West, he signified vnto them that the lande which laye before their eyes, the toppes of whose great mountaynes

The kyng of  
the Ilande of  
Pures submit-  
teth him selfe.  
The kynges  
pallasce.  
A hundredeth  
and ten pounce  
weight of  
pearles.

Axe and hat-  
chets more  
esteemed then  
golde.

The kynges  
wordes.

they

they myght see, was exceeding large : then commyng some-  
 what neerer, hee sayde, Beholde these Ilandes on the ryght  
 hande and on the left, which all obey vnto our empyre, and are  
 ryche, happye, and blessed, if you call those landes blessed  
 whiche abounde with golde and pearle . We haue in this I-  
 lande litle plentie of golde: but the deepe places of all the seas a-  
 bout these Ilandes are full of pearles, whereof you shall re-  
 ceue of mee as many as you will requyre, so that yee persist  
 in the bonde of friendship which you haue begonne . I great-  
 ly desyre your friendship, and woulde gladly haue the fruiti-  
 on of your thinges, whiche I set muche more by then milli-  
 ons of pearles : You shall therefore haue no cause to doubt  
 of any vnfaithfulnesse or breache of friendship on my behalfe.  
 Our men gaue hym lyke friendly wordes, and encouraged  
 hym with many fayre promyses to doe as hee had sayde. When  
 our men were now in a readynesse to depart, they counsaun-  
 ted with him to paye peerele to the great kyng of Castyle a  
 hundred pounce weyght of pearles . Hee gladly agreed to  
 theyr request, and tooke it for no great thyng, nor yet thought  
 hym selfe any whit the more to become tributarie . With this  
 kyng they founde suche plentie of Hartes and Cunnies, that  
 our men, standyng in theyr houses, myght kyll as many as them  
 lyst with their arrowes . They lyue heere very pleasauntly, ha-  
 uyng great plentie of all thinges necessary. This Iland is scarce-  
 ly sixe degrees distant from the Equinocall lyne . They haue  
 the same maner of bread, made of rootes and the graine of  
*Maxium*, and wyne made of seedes and fruites, euen as they  
 haue in the region of *Comogra*, and in other places, aswell in  
 the Ilandes, as in the firme lande . This kyng is now baptised,  
 with all his family and subiectes . His desyre was, at his baptis-  
 me, to bee named *Petrus Arias*, after the name of the gouer-  
 nour. When our men departed, he accompanied them to the sea  
 syde, and furnished them with boates to returne to the continent.  
 Our men diuided the pearles among them, reseruyng the fift  
 portion to bee deliuered to thoffycers of the kynges Exchequer  
 in those parts. They say that these pearles were maruelous pre-  
 cious, faire, orient, & exceeding byg: insonmuch that they brought  
 many with them bygger then halfe hundred mites. Of what pryce & ba-

Ilandes ryche  
 in golde and  
 pearles.

A pounce  
 weyght of  
 pearles peerele  
 for a tribute.

Plentie of  
 Hartes and  
 Cunnies.

Wyne of fruits  
 and seedes.

The kyng is  
 baptised.

The fift part  
 of pearles due  
 to the kyng.

Byg pearles.



## The thyrde Decade.

A pearle for a  
Pope.

200 other  
pearle of great  
price.

Perle and su-  
perfluous  
pleasures.

Dyuers opini-  
ons of the ge-  
neration of  
pearles.

Pearles in the  
bottom of  
the sea.

A hundred  
pearles in one  
shell fythe.

lue they myght bee, I consider by one pearle the which *Paulus*,  
predicessour to your holines, bought at the second hand of a mar-  
chant of *Venice* for foure & fourtie thousand ducates: Yet among  
those which were brought from this *Island*, there was one bought  
euen in *Dariena*, for a thousand & two hundred Castellans of gold:  
this was almost as hyge as a meane walnut, & came at y length  
to the handes of *Petrus Arias* the gouernour, who gaue it to that  
noble and faythfull woman his wyfe, of whose maner of depar-  
ture with her husbande, we haue made mention before. We must  
then needes thinke that this was very precious, whiche was  
bought so deare among such a multitude of pearles, where they  
were not bought by one at once, but by poundes, and at the least  
by ounces. It is also to be thought that the *Venecian* marchaunt  
bought his for no great summe of money in the East partes: But  
he solde it the dearer, for that he chaunced to lyue in those lasciu-  
ous and wanton dayes, when men were giuen to such nyse and  
superfluous pleasures, and met with a marchant for his purpose.  
But let vs now speake somewhat of the shell fythes, in the which  
pearles are engendred. It is not unknowne to your holynesse,  
that *Aristotle*, and *Plinie* his folower, were of dyuers opini-  
ons as concernyng the generation of pearles. But these *In-*  
*dians*, and our men, rest onely in one assertion, not assentynge to  
them in any other: as, eyther that they wander in the sea, or,  
that they moue at any tyme after they are bozne. They will  
therefore that there be certayne greene places, as it were mea-  
dowes, in the bottom of the sea, byrnyng forth an hearbe much  
lyke vnto *Cymie*, and affyrme that they haue scene the same, and  
that they are engendred, noyrshed, and growe therein, as wee see  
chyncrease and succession of *Dysters* to grow about them selues:  
Also that these fythes delygtheth not in the conuersation or com-  
pany of the sea dogges, nor yet to bee contented with onely  
one, two, or three, or at the most foure pearles, affyrmyng  
that in the fyshyng places of the kyng of this *Islande*, there  
was founde a hundred pearles in one fythe, the whiche *Cas-*  
*par Moralis* the captayne him selfe, and his companions, di-  
ligently numbred: For it pleased the kyng at theyr beyng  
there, and in their presence, to commaunde his dyuers to goe a  
fyshyng for those kynde of fythes. They compare the matris-  
ces

res of these fyshes, to the places of conception in Hennes, in the whiche theyr egges are engendred in great multitudes and clusters, and beleue that these fyshes byng forth theyr byrth in lyke maner. For the better prooffe whereof, they say that they founde certayne pearles commyng forth of their matrices, as beyng now come to the tyme of theyr full ryppenesse, and moued by nature to come out of theyr mootheres wombe, opening it selfe in tyme conuenient: lykwyle, that within a whyle after, they sawe other succede in lyke maner. So that to conclude, they sawe some commyng forth, and other some yet abyding the tyme of theyr perfection: which beyng complete, they also became loose, and opened the matrice. They perceyued the pearles to bee inclosed in the myddest of theyr bellies, there to bee nourished and increase, as an infant sucking his mootheres pappes within her wombe, before hee moue to come forth of her priuie places. And if it chaunce any of these shellyshes to bee founde scattered in the sande of the sea (as I my selfe haue seene Dyuers disparcled on the shores in dyuers places of the Ocean) they asseyme that they haue been violently dyuen thither from the bottome of the sea by force of tempestes, and not to haue wandered thither of them selues: But, that they become whyte by the clearenesse of the moonyng deawe, or waxe pelowe in troubled weather, or otherwyle that they seeme to reioyce in fayre weather and cleare ayre, or contrarywyle, to bee as it were astonysht and dymme in thunder and tempestes, with suche other: the perfect knowledge hereof, is not to bee looked for at the handes of these vnlearned men, whiche handle the matter but grossely, and enquire no further then occasion serueth. Yet doe they asseyme by therperience and industrie of the dyuers, that the greatest pearles lye in the deepest places, they of the meane sort hygher, and the least hyghest of all, and neerer to the bymme of the water: And say therfore, that the greatest doe not wander, but that they are created, nourished, and increase in the deepest places of the sea, whither fewe dyuers (and that but seeldome) dare aduenture to diue so deepe to geather them, aswell for feare of the sea crabbes, whiche wander among these pearle fyshes to feede of them, and for feare of other monsters of the sea, as also least their breath should fayle them in to long

The matrice of the pearle fysh.

The byrth of pearles.

Where the biggest meane, and least pearles are engendred.

Sea crabbes.

## The thyerde Decade.

The sea mus-  
cles wherein  
pearles are en-  
gondred.

remayning in the water: And this they say to bee the cause why the oldest (& therfore byggest) sea muscles inhabite y<sup>e</sup> deepest places, from whence they are not lightly moued by tempestes. Furthermoze, how much the bygger & older these fyshes are, they say that in their larger matrices, the greater number & bigger pearles are founde, & that for this cause there are fewer founde of the byggest sort. They thinke also, that when they first fall from their fyshes in the deepe places, they are deuoured of other fyshes, because they are not yet heard. Againe, the smallest differ from the byggest in a certaine swelling or impostumation, which y<sup>e</sup> Spaniards call a tympany: For they deny that to be a pearle which in olde muscles cleaueth faste to the shell, but that it is a wart, which being rased from the shell with a fyle, is rounde & bryght but onely of one syde, and not precious, being rather of the nature of the fysh it selfe, then of a pearle. They confesse that they haue seene certayne of these muscles cleauyng on rockes, yet these but fewe, and nothyng woorth. It is also to bee thought, that the pearle fyshes or sea muscles which are founde in India, Arabia, the redde sea, or Cappobana, are ruled in suche order as the asopenamed famous authours haue wrytten: For their opinion herein is not utterly to bee reiected, sozasmuch as they were learned men, and trauayled long in the seachyng of these thinges. But wee haue nowe spoken sufficiently of these sea fyshes, and of their egges, which the fonde nysenesse and wantonnesse of men haue made deerer then the egges of hennies or geese. Let vs therefore entreate somewhat of other perticular thinges, which are come to our knowledge of late. Wee haue elsewhere largely described the mouthes of the gulse of *Praba*, with sundry and variable regions diuided with the manifolde gulses of that sea: But as concernyng the West coastes, in the which our men haue buylded houses, and planted their habitations on the bankes of *Dariena*, I haue no newe matter to wryte. Yet as touchyng the East partes of the gulse, I haue learned as followeth. They say that the vniuersall lande of the East region of the gulse, from the corner thereof farre reachyng into the sea, and from the extreme or bittermoste mouth of the same, recepyng the waters of the sea whiche fall into it, euen vnto *Os Draconis* and *Paria*, is by one generall name called *Cari-*  
*bana*.

The regions  
of the East syde  
of the gulse of  
*Praba*.

*Caribana*, of the *Caribes* or *Canibales* whiche are founde in euery region in this tract : But from whence they had theyr particular originall, and howe, leauyng theyr natie soyle, they haue spredde theyr generation so farre, lyke a pestiferous contagion, we wyll nowe declare. Therefore from the fyrst front reachyng foorth into the sea ( in whose tract we sayde that *Fogeda* fastened his foote ) towarde the corner, about niene myles distant, there lyeth a village of *Caribana*, named *Eutcraca*: Thee myles distant from this, is the village of *Vraba*, of the whiche it is thought that the whole gulse toke his name, because this village was once the head of the kyngdome. About syxe myles from this, is *Feti*: Niene myles from *Feti*, is *Zerema*: And about twelue myles from this, *Sorache*. Our men founde all these villages full of people, al the whiche gyue them selues onely to manhuntynge: Insomuche that if they lacke enimies agaynst whom they may keepe warre, they exercise crueltie agaynst them selues, and eyther slaye the one the other, or els dyue the vanquished to flyght. Whereby it is apparant, that by these theyr continuall warres, and dyuyng the one the other out of theyr countreys, this infection hath gone so farre, not onely on the fyne lande, but also into the Ilandes. I was also aduertised of an other thyng, the whiche to my iudgement seemeth woorthie to be put in memozye. One *Cornales*, a iudge in causes of lawe among the *Spanyarden* of *Dariena*, sayth, that on a tyme walkyng abrode with his booke in his hande, he met by the way with a fugityue, whiche had fledde from the great landes lying farre towarde the west, and remayned here with a Kyng with whom he was entertayned. When this man percepued the lawyer lookyng on his booke, marueyllyng thereat, he came runnyng vnto hym, and by interpretours of the kyng whom he serued, spake thus vnto hym, Haue you also bookes, wherein you may reserue thynges in perpetual memozy: and letters, whereby you may declare your mynde to suche as are absent? And herewith desyred that the booke myght be opened vnto hym, supposyng that he shoulde therein haue founde the letters of his owne countrey: But when he sawe them onelyke, he sayde further, that in his countrey there were cities fortified with walles, and gouerned by lawes, and that the

The region of *Caribana*.

The original of the *Canibales*.

The villages of *Caribana*.

Manhunters.

Bookes:  
Toke in the beginning of the booke of the landes lately founde.

people



## The thyrd Decade.

Circumcised  
people.

What chaunced to the Canibales whiche the gouernour sent byuers waies.

Rooke decade  
ist. liber. vi.

The binage of  
Iohannes Solisius.  
Cab. S. Augustini.

John Solisius  
is name of the  
Canibales.

The spicenes of  
the Canibales.

people also bled apparell : but of what religion they were, I dyd not learne . Yet had our men knowledge both by the woordes and signes of this fugitiue, that they were circumcised . What nowe thynke you hereby (most holy father :) Of what do you diuine may come hereof, when tyme shall subdue all these vnder your thzone ? Let vs nowe entermyngle certayne small thynges among these great matters . I haue not thought good to pretermitt that which chaunced to *Iohannes Solisius*, who, to searche the South syde of the supposed continent, departed with thre shippes from the port *Ioppa* ( not farre distant from the *Islandes of Gades* or *Cales* in the Ocean) the fourth day of the *Ides of September*, in the yeere .*M.D.xv.* or what successe *Iohannes Pontius* had, whom the newe gouernour *Petrus Arias* appoynted to vanquyshe and destroy the *Caribes* or *Canibales*, deuourers of mans fleshe : also to what ende the voyages of the other captaines came, which were sent forth diuers waies at the same tyme, as *Gonzalus Badaiocius*, *Franciscus Bezarra*, and *Valleius*, *Iohannes Solicius* tooke the matter in hand in an euyll houre. He sayled beyond the point of *Saint Augustine* (which they cal *Cabo, S. Augustini*) toward the South side of the supposed continent beyond the *Equinoctial* line. For (as we haue said before) that point reacheth Southwarde to the seueneth degree of the South pole, called the pole *Antartike* . He proceeded in that voyage syxe hundred leagues, and found the lande from the point to extende so farre towarde the South beyonde the *Equinoctial*, that he came to the thirtieth degree of y<sup>e</sup> South pole . As he sayled thus forwarde, hauyng nowe on his backe halfe the starres named *Caput Draconis*, ( that is, the Dragons head) and the regions of *Paria* lying northwarde from hym, & prospectyng towarde the pole *Artyke*, he chaunced to fall into the handes of the filthy *Canibales*: For these craftie foxes seemed to make signes of peace, when in theyr myndes they conceyued a hope of a dainty banquet, & espying their enemies a farre of, began to swalowe theyr spetle, as their mouth watered for greedines of theyr pray. As vnhappy *Solisius* descended, with as many of his company as coude enter into the boate of the byggest shyppe, sodenly a great multitude of inhabitants brust forth vppon them, and slue them: euery man with clubbes, euen in the syght of theyr felowes.

felowes. They caried away the boate, and in a moment broke it all to fytters, not one elcaping. Theyr furie not thus satisfied, they cut the slayne men in peeces, euen bypon the shore, where theyr felowes myght behold this horrible spectacle from the sea. But they beyng stricken with feare through this example, durst not come foozth of their shyppes, or deuise how to reuenge the death of theyr Captayne and companyons. They departed therefore from these vnfortunate coastes, and by the way ladyng theyr shyppe with brasell, returned home agayne with losse, and heauie cheare. Of these thynges I was aduertised of late by theyr owne letters. What they haue els doone, I shall haue moze perticular knowledge heereafter. *Iohannes Pontius* was also repulsed by the Canibales in the Island of *Guadalupea*, beyng one of the chiefe Ilandes of theyr habitation. For when they sawe our men a farre of on the sea, they lay in ambushe, sodenly to inuade them when they shoulde come alande. Our men sent foozth a fewe foote men, and with them theyr Laundresses to washe theyr shertes and sheetes: for from the Island of *Ferrea*, beyng one of the Ilandes of *Canarie* (euen vnto this Island, for the space of foure thousand and two hundred myles) they had seene no land, where they myght synde any fresh water, soe as muche as in all this large space the Ocean is without Ilandes. At theyr commyng therefore to lande, the Canibales assapled them, caried away the women, and put the men to suche distresse, that fewe of them escaped. By reason whercof, *Pontius* beyng greatly discomfited, durst not inuade the Canibales, fearyng theyr venommed arrowes, which these naked man-hunters can direct most certaynely. Thus good *Pontius* sayling of his purpose, was fayne to geue ouer the Canibales, whom (being safe & vnder the house rooffe) he threained to vanquish and destroy. Whither he went from thence, or what new thyngs he founde, I haue as yet no further knowledge. By these misfortunes, *Solisus* lost his lyfe, & *Pontius* his honour. Let vs nowe speake of an other, whose enterpryse came to lyke purpose the same peere. *Iohannes Aiora*, bozne in the citie of *Corduba*, a man of noble parentage, sent in steade of the Lieutenant (as we haue saide) moze couetous of gold, then careful of his charge, or desirous of prayle for well deseruing, sought occasions of quarelyng agaynst

Wasples.

*Iohannes Pontius* is repulsed by the Canibales.

The voyage of *Iohannes Aiora*.  
 Looke Decade  
 iii, liber vi.

## The thyrd Decade.

agaynst the kynges, and spoyled many, violentlye extortyng gold of them agaynst ryght & equitie: and further, handeled them so extremely, that of frendes they became most cruel enemies, insomuch that they ceased not with desperat myndes, by al meanes they coude, to slay our men openly or priuilie. By reason whereof it is come to passe, that where before they bartered quietly, exchanging ware for ware, they are now sayne to do all thynges by force of armes. When he had thus exacted a great quantitie of golde of them (as it is sayde) he fled priuilie, andooke away a shyp with hym by stealth, as the common rumour goeth, nor yet hitherto haue we hard whyther he went, or where he is arryued. Some suspect that *Petrus Arias* the gouernour shoulde consent to his departure, because this *Iohannes Aiora*, is brother to *Gonsalus Aiora*, the kynges historigrapher, a man both learned, and expert in the discipline of warre, and so much the gouernours friend, that these two among a fewe, may be counted examples of rare amitie. If my selfe also am greatly bounde vnto them both, and haue long enioyed theyr frendshipp: yet shall I desire them both to pardon me in declaring my phantasie heerein, that in al the turmoyles and tragical affayres of the Ocean, nothyng hath so muche displeased me, as the couetousnesse of this man, who hath so disturbed the pacified myndes of the kynges. Nowe among these troublous chaunces, let vs rehearse the variable fortune of *Gonsalus Badaocius*, and his fellows, whose prosperous begynnings, ended with vnfortunate successe. *Gonsalus* therfore in the moneth of May, in the yeere of Christ. 1515. departed from *Dariena* with fourscore armed men, directing his voyage toward the South, and resting in no place vntyll he came to the region of *Cerabaro*, which our men named *Gratia Dei*, distaunt from *Dariena* about a hundred and fourscore myles: for they call it threescore leagues. He spent certaine dates heere in idlenesse: for he coude neither by sayne meanes, nor by foule, allure the kyng of the region to come to hym. Whyle he lay thus idelly, there came to hym other sylicie men, sent from *Dariena* vnder the gouernaunce of capytayne *Lodouicus Mercado*, who departed from *Dariena* in the calendes of May, to the intent to searche the inner partes of those regions. When they met togeather, they determined, after consultation, to passe ouer

The lewde behaviour of  
John Aiora.

The variable  
fortune of Gonsalus  
Badaocius.

Cerabaro. Decade. iii. li. iiii.

ouer the mountaynes lying towarde the South, euen into the South sea lately founde. Beholde nowe a wonderfull thyng, that in a lande of suche marueylous longitude in other places, they founde it here to be onely about fyftie myles distant to the South sea: for they count it .xvii. leagues, as the maner of the Spanyardes is to reckon, and not by myles:

The South sea.

Yet saye they that a league consisteth of thre myles by lande, and foure by sea, as we haue noted before. In the toppes of the mountaynes and turnyng of the waters, they founde a kyng named *Iuana*, whose kyngdome is also named *Coiba*, as is the region of king *Careta*, of whom we haue made mention elsewhere. But for as muche as the region of this *Iuana*, is rycher in golde, they named it *Coiba Dites*, that is, *Coiba* the ryche: For,

A league consisteth foure myles by sea and but thre by lande.

wheresoeuer they dygged the grounde, whether it were on the drye lande, or in the wet chanelles of the ryuers, they founde the lande, whiche they cast forth, myxt with golde. *Iuana* fledde at the comyng of our men, and coulde neuer be brought agayne. They spoyled all the countrey neare about his palace: yet had they but litle golde, for he had caried all his stuffe with hym.

The golden region *Coiba Dites*. Sande myxt with golde.

Here they founde certayne slaues, marked in the faces after a straunge sorte: For with a sharpe pycke made eyther of bone, or els with a thorne, they make holes in theyr faces, and forthwith sprinklyng a powder thereon, they moiste the pounced place with a certayne blacke or reede iuice, whose substance is of suche tenacitie and clamminesse, that it wyl neuer weare away: They brought these slaues away with them. They say that this iuice is of suche sharpenesse, and putteth them to suche payne, that for extreme doloure they haue no stomacke to theyr meate certayne dayes after. The kynges whiche take these slaues in theyr warres, vse theyr helpe in seeking for golde, and in tyllage of the grounde, euen as doo our men.

Howe theyr slaues are marked in the face.

From the pallace of *Iuana*, folowynge the course of the water about tenne myles towarde the South, they entred into the domination of an other kyng, whom our men named the olde man, because he was olde, not passyng of his other name. In the region of this kyng also, they founde golde in all places, both on the lande, and in the ryuers. This region is very fayre, and fruitefull, and hath in it many famous ryuers. Departyng

Golde.

from



## The thyrde Decade.

from hence, in fyue dayes iourney they came to a lande leſſe deſolate: They ſuppoſe that this was deſtroyed by ciuile diſcorde, forasimuche as it is for the moſt parte fruitfull, and yet not inhabited. The fyfth day, they ſawe two men coming a ſarre of: theſe were laden with bread of *Maizium*, whiche they caried on theyr ſhoulders in ſackes. Our men tooke them, and underſtoode by them that there were two kynges in that tract, the one was named *Periquete*, who dwelt nere vnto the ſea, the others name was *Totonoga*. This *Totonoga* was bynde, and dwelt in the continent. The two men which they met, were the fyſhers of *Totonoga*, whom he had ſent with certayne ſardelles of fyſhe to *Periquete*, and had agayne receyued bread of hym for exchaunge: For thus do they communicate theyr commodities one with an other by exchaunge, without the uſe of wycked mony. By the conducting of theſe two men, they came to kyng *Totonoga*, dwelling on the Weſt ſyde of ſain: Michaels gulfe, in the South ſea. They had of this kyng the ſumme of fyre thouſand Caſtellans of golde, both rude, and artifycially wrought. Among thoſe grounnes of rude or natyue golde, there was one founde of the weyght of two Caſtellans, whiche argued the plentifull rychenelle of the grounde. Following the ſame coaſt by the ſea ſyde towarde the Weſt, they came to a kyng, whoſe name was *Taracuru*, of whom they had golde, amountyng to the weyght of eyght thouſande *Pesos*. We haue ſayde befoze that *Pesus* is the weyght of a Caſtellane, not copned. From hence they went to the dominion of this kynges brother, named *Pananome*, who fledde at their coming, and appeared no more afterwarde. They ſay that his kyngdome is ryche in golde. They ſpoiled his palſace in his abſence. Syre leagues from hence, they came to another king, named *Tabor*. From thence they came to the kyng of *Cheru*. He frendly entertained our men, and gaue them foure thouſand *Pesos* of golde. He hath in his dominion many goodly ſalt bayes: the region alſo aboundeth with golde. About twelue myles from hence, they came to another king called *Anata*, of whom they had xv. thouſande *Pesos* of golde, whiche he had gotten of the kynges his borderers, whom he had vanquiſhed by warre. A great part of this gold was in rude ſourme, bycauſe it was molten when he

ſet

A fruitfull region leſt deſolate by ciuile diſcorde.

Syre thouſand Caſtellans of golde.

kyng *Taracuru*.

Foure thouſand *Pesos* of gold.  
*Dalte*,

set the kinges houses on fyre whom he spoyled. For they robbe and slay the one the other, sackynge & fyring theyr villages, and wastinge theyr countreies. They keepe warre barbarously, and to viter destruction, executyng extream crueltie agaynst them that haue the ouerthrowe, *Gonsalus Badaocius*, with his felowes, wandred at libertie, vntyll they came to this kyng, and had gathered great heapes of golde of other kynges. For, what in brastettes, collers, earepynges, brest plates, helmettes, and certaine barres wherewith women beare by theyr brestes, they had gathered togeather in gold the summe of fourscore thousand Castellans, which they had obtayned partly by exchange for our things where they founde the kynges theyr frendes, & otherwise by forcyble meanes where they founde the contrary. They had gotten also fourtie slaues, whose helpe they vsed both for cariage of their victualles and baggagies, in the steede of Hopyles or other beastes of burden, & also to releene such as were sick and forwearyed by reason of theyr long iourneies and hunger. After these prosperous voyages, they came by the dominton of kyng *Scoria*, to the palace of a kyng named *Pariza*, where (fearyng no suche thing) *Pariza* enclosed them with a great armie, and assayled them straggelyng and vnwares, in such sort that they had no leasure to put on theyr armure. He slue and wounded about fyftie, and put the resydue to flyght. They made suche hast, that they had no respect eyther to the golde they had geathered, or to theyr slaues, but left all behynde them. Those fewe that escaped, came to *Dariena*. The opinion of all wyse men, as concernyng the variable and inconstant chaunces of fortune in humane things were false, if all thynges shoulde haue happened vnto them prosperously. For such is the nature of this blynde goddess, that she oftentymes delyteth in the ouerthrowe of them whom she hath exalted, and taketh pleasure in confounding hygh thynges with lowe, and the contrary. We see this order to be immutable, that who so wyl apply hym selfe to geather rootes, shal sometymes meete with sweete *Lyquereisse*, and other whyles with sowre *Cockle*. Yet wo vnto *Pariza*: for he shall not long sleepe in rest. The gouernour him selfe was of late determined with thye hundred & fiftie choise souldiers to reuenge the death of our men: but where as he by chaunce fel sicke, his power went

Theyr maner  
of warre.

*Gonsalus Badaocius* hath  
the ouerthrowe  
and is spoiled  
of great riches  
of gold.

The inconstancy  
of fortune.

forwarde

## The thyrde Decade,

forwarde vnder the conducting of his Lieutenannt *Gaspar Splanosa*, a Iudge in cases of lawe in *Dariena*. At the same tyme o-  
ther were sent forth to the Island of *Dites*, to exact the portion  
of pearles limited to the kynge for his tribute. That hath suc-  
ceede, time wyl bring to our knowledge. The other two attempt-  
ed thinhabitantes beyond the gulfe *Franciscus Bezerra*, pas-  
syng ouer the corner of the gulfe, & the mouthes of the riuer of  
*Dabaiba*, with two other captaines, and a hundred and fiftie sol-  
diers wel appoynted, went to make warre vpon the *Canibales*,  
euen in *Caribana* theyr owne cheefest dominion, towards the vil-  
lage of *Turussy*, wherof we haue made mention befoze in the  
commynge of *Fogeda*. They brought also with them diuers en-  
gins of warre, as thre peeces of ordinaunce, whose shot were  
hygger then egges: lykewyse fourtie archers, and .xxv. hagbut-  
ters, to the entent to reach the *Canibales* a farre off, & to preuent  
theyr venommed arrowes: But what became of him & his compa-  
ny, or where they arriued, we haue yet no perfect knoweledge.  
Certayne which came of late from *Dariena* to Spaine reported,  
that at theyr departure they of *Dariena* stood in great feare lest  
they also were tossed with some misfortune. The other captaine  
*Valleius* obteyned the fore part of the gulfe, but he passed ouer  
by an other way then did *Bezerra*, for he tooke the beginning of  
*Caribana*, & *Bezerra* the end: *Valleius* returned againe. But of the  
threescore and ten men which he comicighed ouer with hym, he  
left fourtie and eight slayne among the *Canibales*. These are the  
newes which they bring that came last from *Dariena*. There  
came to me the day befoze the Ides of October in this yeeze  
1516. *Rodericus Colmenares* (of whom we haue made mention  
befoze) & one *Franciscus Delapiente*. This *Franciscus* was one of  
the vnder captaines of this band, whose cheefe captaine was *Gon-  
salus Badaocius*, who hardly escaped the handes of king *Pariza*.  
These two captaines therfoze, *Rodericus* & *Franciscus*, who depar-  
ted from *Dariena* immediatly after y misfortune which beset to *Ba-  
daocius* & his company, do both affirme, the one, that he hath  
hard, & the other, that he hath seene, that in the South sea there  
are diuers Ilandes lying westward from the Island of *Dites*, and  
Saint Michaels gulfe, in many of the which are trees engen-  
dred & noozished, which bring forth y same arrormatical fruites  
as

The expedition  
of fraunces  
Bezerra against  
the Canibales.

Guines.

Valleius repul-  
sed of his ene-  
mies.

The Ilandes of  
the South sea.

In this sea lye  
the Ilandes of  
*Molucca*,  
most fruitful  
of spices.

As doeth the region of *Collacutæa*. This lande of *Collacutæa*, with the regions of *Cochinus* and *Camemorus*, are the chiefe marke places from whence the Portugales haue their spices: And hereby doe they coniecture, that the lande where the fruitfullnesse of spice beginneth, should not be farre from thence, insomuche, that many of them which haue ouerrunne those coastes, do onely desire that leaue may be graunted them to searche further, and that they will of their owne charges frame and furnysh shippes, and aduenture the vyage to seeke those Ilandes and regions. They thinke it best that these shippes should be made and prepared, & uen in sainte Michaels gulfe, and not to attempt this vyage by sainte Augustines point, which way were both long and difficult, and full of a thousande daungers, and is sayde to reache beyonde the fourtieth degree of the pole Antartike. The same *Franciscus*, being partener of the trauayles and daungers of *Gonsalus*, saith, that in ouerrunning those landes, he founde great heardes of *Hartes* and wyld *Bozes*, and that he tooke many of them by an arte which thynhabitantcs taught him: which was, to make pittes or trenches in their walkes, and to couer the same with boughes: By this meanes also they deceyue all other kyndes of wyld & foure footed beastes. But they take foules after y same maner that we do: As stocke doues, w an other tame stocke doue brought vp in their houses. These they tye by a stryng, and suffer them to flee a litle among the trees: to the which as other birdes of their kynde resorte, they kill them with their arrowes. Otherwyle they take them with nettes, in a bare place purged from trees & bushes, & scattering certayne seedes round about y place, in y middelt wherof they tye a tame foule or byrd, of the kynde of them which they desyre to take: In lyke maner doe they take *Hopingiayes* and other foules. But they say that *Hopingiayes* are so simple, that a great multitude of them wyl flee euen into the tree in whose boughes the fouler sitteth, and swarme about the tame chatterynge *Hopingiay*, sufferyng them selues to bee easily taken: For they are so without feare of the sight of the fouler, that they tary whyle he cast the snare about their neckes, the other beyng nothyng feared heereby, though they see him drawe them to him with the snare, and put them in the bagge which hee hath about him for the same purpose. There is an

*Collacutæa*,  
*Cochinus* and  
*Camemorus*,  
from whence  
the Portugales  
haue their spys  
ces.

He meaneth by  
the streight of  
*Magellanus*.

Howe they  
take *Hartes*  
and wyld  
*Bozes*.

Stocke doues.

Their maner  
of fowling.

*Hopingiayes*  
are easily takett



## The thyrde Decade.

A strange  
kynde of fou-  
lyng.

other kynde of foulpyng, heere tofore neuer hearde of, and pleasant to consider. Wee haue declared before howe that in certayne of the Ilandes, and especially in *Hispaniola*, there are dyuers lakes or standyng pooles: In some of these (being no deeper then men may wade ouer them) are seene great multitudes of water foules: as well for that in the bottome of these lakes there growe many hearbes and wredes, as also that by reason of the heate of the Sunne, pearlyng to the naturall place of generation and conception, where being doubled in force by reflection, and preserued by moyster there, are engendred of the slimynesse of the earth and water, and by the prouidence of the vniuersall creator, innumerable little fyshes, with a thousand sundry kyndes of frogges, wormes, gnattes, flies, and such other. The foules which vse these lakes, are of dyuers kyndes: as Duckes, Geese, Swannes, sea Bewes, Gullies, and such other. We haue sayde also, that in theyr Dychardes they noythe a tree which beareth a kynde of great Gourdes. Of these Gourdes therfore, well stop- ped least any water should enter in at theyr ryftes, & cause them to sinke, they cast many in the shalowe pooles, where, by theyr continuall wanderyng and waueryng with the motions of the wynde and water, they put the foules out of suspicion & feare: the fouler in the meane tyme, disguising him selfe as it were with a visour, putteth a great gourde on his head, much lyke to a hel- met, with two holes neere about his eyes, his face and whole head besyde being couered therewith: and thus entreteth hee into the poole euen vnto the rhyne. For being from theyr infancie exercised in swymmyng, and accustomed to the waters, they re- fuse not to continue therein a long space: the foules thynking this Gourde to bee one of the other that swymme vpon the water, the fouler goeth softly to the place where hee seeth the greatest flocke of foules, and with waggpyng his head, counterfeiting the moouyng of the waueryng Gourdes, draweth neare to the foules, where softly puttynge forth his ryght hande, he sodain- ly snatcheth one by the legges, and plungeth her into the wa- ter, where hee putteth her into a bagge whiche hee hath with hym of purpose: The other foules supposyng that this dyued into the water of her owne motion to seeke for foode (as is theyr maner) are nothyng moued heereby, but goe forwarde on theyr

way

Fyshes and  
worms engen-  
dred of slime.  
Foules.

Gourdes of  
the tree.

way as before, vntyll they also fall into the same snare. I haue heer e for this cause entred into the declaration of theyr maner of huntynge and feildynge, that by these moze pleasaunt narrati-  
ons, I may somewhat mittigate and asswage the horrour con-  
ceyued in your stomake by the former rehearsal of theyr blooddy  
actes and cruell maners. Let vs nowe therefore speake some-  
what agayne of the newe and later opinions, as concernynge the  
swyft course of the sea towarde the West about the coastes of  
*Paria*, also of the maner of geatherynge of golde in the golde  
myne of *Dariena*, as I was aduertised of late: and with these  
two quiet and peaceable thinges, we will make an ende of the  
tragicall assayes of the Ocean, and therewith byd your holy-  
nesse farewell. So it is therfore, that *Andreas Moralis* the pilot,  
and *Oniedus* (of whom wee haue made mention before) repay-  
red to mee, at my house in the towne of *Patrice*. As we met  
thus togeather, there arose a contention betweene them two, as  
concernynge this course of the Ocean. They both agree, that these  
landes and regions parteynyng to the dominion of *Castile*, doe  
with one continual tract & perpetual bond, embrace as one whole  
firme lande or continent, all the mayne lande lyng on the North  
side of *Cuba*, & the other Islands, being also North-west both from  
*Cuba* & *Hispaniola*: Yet as touching the course of the water, they  
barry in opinion. For *Andreas* wil that this violent course of wa-  
ter be receiued in the lappe of the supposed continent, which ben-  
deth so much, and extendeth so farre towarde the North, as wee  
haue sayde: and that by the object or resistance of the lande, so  
bending and crookynge, the water should as it were rebounde  
in compasse, and by force thereof bee driuen about the North  
syde of *Cuba*, and the other Islands, excluded without y circle cal-  
led *Tropicus Cancrī*, where the largenes of y sea may receiue the  
waters falling from the narrow streames, & therby represseth thac  
inordinate course, by reason that the sea is there very large and  
great. I can compare his meanyng to nothing moze aptely, then  
to the swyft streame conuynge forth of a myll, and fallynge into  
the myll poole: For in all such places where waters runne with  
a violent fall throught narrowe chanelles, and are then receyued  
in large pooles, they are sodenly disparclod, and theyr violence  
broken: So that whereas before they seemed of suche force as

Later opinions  
of the swyft  
course of the  
Ocean toward  
the West.

The continent  
of firme lande.

## The thyrd Decade.

The bypages  
of Diegus  
Colonus.

The biage  
from the new  
lands to Spain

to ouerthrowe all thinges beyng in theyr way, it can not then be perceyued which way they runne. The Admirall him selfe *Diegus Colonus*, sonne and heyre to *Christiphorus Colonus*, the fyrst synder of these landes (who had nowe in comynge and going, foure tymes passed throughe these seas) being demaunded of me what he founde or perceyued in saylyng too and fro: answered, that there was muche difficultie in returnyng the same way by the which they goe. But whereas they fyrst take the way by the mayne sea towarde the North, before they directe theyr course to Spayne, he sayth that in that tract hee felt the shyppes sometymes a lyttle dzyuen backe by the contrary course of the water: Yet suppoeth that this chaunceth onely by the ordinary flowyng and reflowyng of the sea, and the same not to bee enforced by the circumflection or course of the water, reboundyng in compasse as wee haue sayde: But thinketh rather, that this mayne lande or supposed continent, should somewhere bee open: and that the sayde open place, should bee as it were a gate, entrie, or streyght, diuiding the North partes of that lande from the South, by the which also the Decan runnyng towarde the West, may by the rotation or impulsion of the heauens, bee dzyuen about the whole earth. *Oniedus* agreeth with *Andreas Moralis* as touchyng the continuall adherence and closenesse of the sayde continent: Yet neyther that the waters should so beate agaynst the bendyng backe of the West lande, or bee in such sort repulsed and drinen into the mayne sea: But sayth, that he hath diligently considered, that the waters runne from the deepest and myddest of the mayne sea, towarde the West: Also, that saylyng neere vnto the shore with small bessels, hee founde the same waters to returne againe towarde the East, so that in the same place they runne togeather with contrary course, as we oftentimes see the lyke to chaunce in ryuers, where by the object of the bankes, dyuers whirlepooles and turnynges arysen in the water. By reason whereof, if any chaffe, strawe, wood, or any other thyng of lyght substance be cast in any such places in ryuers, it foloweth, that all suche as runne with the water in the myddest of the channell, proceede well forwarde, but suche as fall into the bendyng gulfes and indented margentes of the crooked bankes, are carryed ouerthwart the channell, and so wander about vntyll they

The contrary  
course of wa-  
ters.

they meete with the full and directe course of the ryuer. Thus haue we made you partener of suche thinges as they haue giuen vs, and wrytten their dyuers opinions: We will then giue more certayne reason, when more certayne truely shalbe knowne. We must in the meane tyme leane to opinions, vntill the day come appointed of God to reueale this secreete of nature, with the perfect knowledge of the pointe of the pole starre. Hauyng sayde thus muche of the course of the Ocean, a brieue declaration of the golde mynes of *Dariena*, shall close vp our Decades, and make an ende of our trauiayles. Wee haue sayde, that niene mynes distant from *Dariena*, are the sydes of the hylles and the dyse playnes in the whiche golde is geathered, both on the dyse lande, and also on the bankes, and in the chanelles of ryuers. Therefore to all suche as are wyllyng to geather golde, there is of ordinarie custome appointed to euery man by the suruoyers of the mynes, a square plotte of grounde, conteynyng twelue pases, at the arbitrement of the chooser, so that it be not grounde already occupied, or left of other. The portion of grounde being thus chosen (as it were assigned of the augures to buylde a temple) they inclose their slaues within the same, whose helpe the Christians vse in tylling of their grounde, and geatheryng of golde, as we haue sayde. These places appointed vnto them, they keepe as long as them lyst: and if they perceyue tokens of little golde, they requyre an other plot of grounde of twelue pases to be assigned them, leauyng the first in common: And this is thorder which the Spaniardes inhabiting *Dariena* obserue in geatheryng of golde. I suppose also, that they vse the lyke order in other places: Howbeit, I haue not yet enquired so farre. It hath been proued, that these twelue pases of grounde, haue yelded to their choosers the summe of fourescore Castellanes of golde. And thus leade they theyr lyues in fulfillyng the holy hunger of golde. But the more they fyll their handes with syndyng, the more increaseth theyr couetous desyre. The more woodde is sayde to the fyre, the more furiously rageth the flame. Unsatiabable couetousnesse is no more diminished with increase of rycheffe, then is the drynesse of the dryspye satisfied with drynke. I let passe many thinges, whereof I intende to wryte more largely in tyme conuenient, if I shall in the meane season vnder

The point of  
the pole starre.

The golde  
mynes of *Dariena*, and the  
maner of geatheryng golde.

Our inclosers  
would haue no  
such commons

*Auri sacra Fames.*

The dryspye of  
couetousnesse.



## Of the west Indies

derstande these to bee acceptable unto your holynesse: my dutie and obseruance to whose auctoritie, hath caused mee the gladlier to take this labour in hande. The prouidence of the eternall creatour of all thinges, graunt your holynesse many prosperous peeres.

*Here endeth the three bookes of  
the Decades.*

## *Of Cuba, Hispaniola, and other Ilands*

in the VVest Indies seas: and of the maners  
of the inhabitants of  
the same.



Booke Decade  
3. Liber. 10.

Cities fortified  
with walles.

The Ilande of  
Cuba or Fernandina.

Haue partlye declared before in my Decades, howe certaine fugitiues which came out of the large West landes, arriued in the confines of *Dariena*, and howe that marueling at the booke of our men, they declared that they sometime dwelt in regions whose inhabitants vsed such instruments, & were ruled by politicke lawes: Also that they had cities fortified with walles, and faire pallaces, with streates well paved, & common places whither marchauntes resorte, as to the burse or streate: These landes, our men haue now founde. Therefore who were thauctours hereof, or what successe they had herein, who so desireth to knowe, with the conditions of straunge regions, and the maners of the people, let him giue diligent attendaunce to suche thinges as folow. Of the Ilande of *Cuba* (now called *Fernandina*, lying next vnto *Hispaniola* on the West syde, and yet somewhat so bending towarde the North, that the circle called *Tropicus Cancri* diuiderth it in the myddest, whereas *Hispaniola* is distant from the Tropike, and declining certayne degrees towarde the Equinoctiall line) we haue spoken somewhat before. In this Ilande of *Fernandina*, there are now sixe townes erected, wherof the chiefe is named *Sanctiago*, of *S. James*, the patrone of the Spaniards. In this, there is native gold found, both in y<sup>e</sup> mountaines  
and

and ryuers : by reason wherof they are dayly occupied in geathering & digging the same. But shortly after that I had finished my sayd booke, thre Spaniards y were the most auncient citizens of Cuba, as Franciscus Fernandes of Corduba, Lupus Ocho, & Christophorus Morantes, determined to seeke new lands, as the myndes of the Spaniards are euer vnquiet & giuen to attempt great enterpryses. They furnished, at their owne charges, thre of those shippes which they call Carauels, and hauing first lycence of Diego Velasquen the gouernour of the Ilande, they departed with a hundred and ten men from the West angle of Cuba: For this angle is most commodious to relieue shippes, & to make prouision for freshe water & fuell. Thus they sayled continually sixe dayes and a halfe betwene the west & the South, contented onely with the sight of the heauen & the water, during which tyme, they suppose that they sayled not past threescore and sixe myles: For they lay at anker all nyght, wheresoeuer the falling of the Sunne tooke the day lyght from them, least by wanderyng in vnknown seas, they nyght chaunce to bee cast vppon rockes or sandes: But at the length they chaunced vppon a great Ilande, named Iucatana, whose begynnynge thynhabitauntes call *Eccampi*. Our men went to the citie, standyng on the sea syde, the which, for the bygnesse threof, they named *Cayrus*, or *Alcayr*, thynhabitauntes wherof entertained them very friendly. When they were entred into the citie, they marueyled to beholde the houses buylded lyke Towres, magnificall temples, streates well paved, and great exercise of bying and sell yng by exchaunge of ware for ware. Their houses are either built of stone, or of brycke and lyme, and artificially wrought. To the first porches of theyr houses, and first habitations, they ascend by ten or twelue staires: they are couered either with tyles, slates, reades, or stalkes of certayne hearbes, they gratified the one the other with mutuall gyfts. The Barbarians gaue our men many brooches and iewelless of golde, very fayre, and of cunnynge workemanshype: our men recompensed them with vestures of sylke and wooll, counterfeyte stones, of coloured glasse and chrystall, Haukes belles of latten, and suche other rewarde, whiche they greatly esteemed for the straingenesse of the same: they set nought by lookyng glasses, because they haue certayne stones muche bryghter.

The Spaniards of Cuba attempt new vpages.

The West angle of Cuba.

Note.

The Ilande of Iucatana. A great citie well buylded.

Temples.

Humane people.

Cunnynge artificers.

Apparelled  
people.

Circumcised  
Idolaters.

This nation is apparelled after a thousande fashions, with be-  
stures made of gossampyne cotton or bombage, of dyuers co-  
lours. The women are couered from the girdle to the heele, ha-  
uynge dyuers fashions of vailles about their heades and brestes,  
with great cautell least any part of their legges or feete be seene:  
they resorte muche to their temples, vnto the whiche the chiefe  
rulers haue the wayes paved from their owne houses: they are  
Idolaters, and circumcised, they occupie their maner of ex-  
chaunging with muche fidelitie: they vse to adourne the heares  
of their heades. Being demaunded by thinperpretours, of whom  
they receyued theyr circumcision: they answered, that there once  
passed an exceeding fayre man by their coastes, who left them  
that in token to remember him. Other say, that a man bright-  
er then the Sunne, went among them, and executed that of-  
fyce: but there is no certayntie heereof. When our men had  
remayned there certayne dayes, they seemed to bee molestous to  
thinhabitantes, accordyng to the common saying, The lon-  
ger a ghest tarpyeth, the worse is his entertaynement: The which  
thyng our men perceyving, they made the more hast away. Be-  
ing therefore prouided of all thinges necessary, they tooke theyr  
viage directly towarde the West, by the prouince which thinha-  
bitantes call *Comi*, and *Maia*. They ouerpasse these regi-  
ons, takyng onely freshe water and fuell in the same. The Bar-  
barians, both men, women, and childe, flocked to the sea syde,  
astonyshed greatly to beholde the huge bygnesse of the shippes.  
Our men marueyled in maner no lesse to view their buyldinges,  
and especially their temples situate neare vnto the sea, and erec-  
ted after the maner of towres. Thus at the length hauyng say-  
led about a hundred and ten myles, they thought it good to lay  
Anker in a prouince named *Campechium*, whose chiefe towne  
consisteth of three thousande houses. Thinhabitantes came swim-  
myng to the shippes, marueplyng exceedingly at the maner of  
saylyng, and at the sayles and other tackelinges: But when they  
hearde the thunder of the gunnes, sawe the smoke, and smelte  
the sauour of bymistone and fyre, they supposed that thunderbolts  
and lyghtnynges had been sent from God. The kyng recey-  
ued our men honourably, and brought them into his pallace:  
where hee feasted them well, after his maner. They are accusto-

med

*Campechium*.  
A towne of  
three thousand  
houses.

Plentie of  
beastes and  
foules.

Theyr Idoles  
and Idolatry.

Houſes of lime  
and ſtone.

The prouince  
Aquanil.  
Mosco.

med to eate fleſhe, and haue great plentie of beaſtes and foules, as Peacockes, and other, whiche they francke and feede in theyr houſes: alſo dyuers kyndes of wyld foules of the mountaynes, wooddes, and waters: lyke wyſe Partriches, Quailles, Turtle doones, Duckes, and Geese. Of beaſtes, they haue Conies, Woolues, Lions, Tigers, Foxes, wyld Boozes, Hartes, and Hares. After this banquet, the kyng with his trayne and familye brought our men into a hyde croſſe way, where many ſtreates do meete: In this, they ſhewed them as it were a great and high alter, buylded ſoure ſquare of marble, compacte togeather partly with the tough cleve of Babilon called *Bitumen*, and partly with ſmall ſtones, it had on euery ſyde ſoure ſtappes: Upon the altare was an Image of a man made of marble, and ſett by it the images of two beaſtes of vnknown ſhape, which ſeemed as though they woulde with yanyng mouth haue toyne in ſunder the belly of the mans Image. On the other ſyde ſtoode a great Serpent, compact of the ſayde tough cleve and ſmall ſtones: This Serpent beyng in length .xlviij. foote, and of the bygneſſe of a large Ore, ſeemed to deuour a Lion of marble, and was all beſparckled with freſhe blood. Harde by the altare, were three poſtes faſtned in the ground, the which three other traueſed, and were ſuſteyned with ſtones. In this place offenders were put to death, in token wherof they ſawe innumerable arrowes ſtayned with blood, ſome ſcattered, ſome lying on heapes, & ſome broken: alſo a great number of mens bones, lying in a court or yarde nere vnto this funeſtal place, their houſes are here alſo buylded of lime and ſtone: They named this kyng *Lazarus*, becauſe they arrived at this lande on ſaint *Lazarus* day. Departing from hence, and directing their courſe ſtil toward the Weſt, for the ſpace of .xv. myles, they came to a prouince named *Aquanil*, whole chiefe towne is called *Mosco*, and the king therof *Cupoton*. He behelde our men with a frowarde countenaunce, and ſought occaſion to do the ſome pryncy miſchiefe, while they ſought for freſhe water: For he made ſignes vnto them, that on the further ſyde of the next hyl they ſhould fynde ſprynges of water, intending to haue aſſailed them in that narowe paſſage: But by the colouring of theyr forheades (as they are accuſtomed in theyr warres) and by the bearing of theyr bowes & other weapons, our

men:



## Of the west Indies

men perceyued theyr wylpnes, and refused to go any further: Yet a thousande of the Barbarians assailed them vnwares, and vnprepared: by reason whereof, they were put to flyght, and dyuers of them slayne in the chace. Many that fledde toward the shyppes, were entangled in the mudde and maryshes neere vnto the shore: Twentie and two were slayne with arrowes, and the resydue for the most part wounded. *Franciscus Fernandes* the gouernour of the nauie, receyued in this conflict three and thirtie woundes, and in maner none escaped without hurt: If they had gone to the hylls whiche were appoynted them, they had ben slaine euery man. They therfore that escaped, returned to the Islande of *Fernardina*, from whence they came, where they were receyued of theyr felowes with heaute cheate. But when *Diegus Vclasquen* the gouernour of the Islande, had intelligence hereof, he immediatly furnyshed a newe nauie of foure Carauelles, with three hundred men: Of this nauie he appointed *Iohn Grisalua*, his nephue, to be y<sup>e</sup> gouernour, & assigned for vnder captaynes, *Alphons Auila*, *Frances Montegio*, and *Peter Aluaredo*: For the pylot he assigned *Antonie Alamino*, who had the regiment of the fyrst nauie. They attempted the same viage agayne, but declined somewhat more toward the South, about threescore and tenne myles. Before they sawe any lande, they espied a towre a farre off, by the viewe whereof, they came to an Islande named *Cozumella*, from the whiche they smelt sweete sauiours proceedyng with the wynde, before they approached to the lande by the space of three myles. They founde the Islande to be xlv. myles in circuitie, it is playne, and of maruelous fruitefull soyle, there is also golde in it, but it is not engendred there, but brought thither from other regions: It aboundeth with hony, fruites, and hearbes, and hath also great plentie of foules, and foure footed beastes. Theyr order and maner of lyuyng, is in all thynges lyke vnto theyr of *Iucatana*: lykewylse theyr houses, temples, streates, and apparell. In many of theyr houses, are great poasses of marble, after the maner of our buyldyng. They found there, the fundations of certayne olde towres ruinate, and one especially with .xviii. staires ascendyng to it, after the maner of solemne temples. They marueyled greatly at our shyppes and maner of saylyng. At the fyrst, they woulde admit no straun-

gers;

The Spany-  
ardes are put  
to flyght, and  
many slayne.

An other expe-  
dition.

The Islande of  
*Cozumella*.  
Sweete sa-  
uiours.  
A fruitefull  
Islande.

Towres and  
temples.

gers: but shortly after, receiued them gentyle. Theyr cheife ruler (whom our men supposed to bee a priest) led them vp to the toppe of the towre, where they erected a banner, and addicted the Ilande to the dominion of the kyng of Castyle, namyng it *Sancta Crux*, because they entred into the same in the nones of Maye, being then the feast of the holpe crosse. They saye that it was called *Cozumella*, of kyng *Cozumellus*, whose auncestours were the fyrst that inhabited the Ilande. In the towre they found many chambers furnished with Images, made both of earth and marble to the similitude of Beares: these they cal vpon with a howling and lamentable songue, perfuming them with sweete odours, and otherwysely honouring them as theyr domesticall goddes: they are also circumcised. The kyng was in fayre apparell, made of gossampine cotton, curiously wrought: he was lame on the one foote, by reason that as he once exercised hym selfe in swymmyng, a deuouryng fysh called *Tuberon*, byt of all the toes of one of his feete: he entreated our men very frendly, and made them great cheare. After they had been heere three dayes, they departed: and saylyng styll towards the West, they espyed great mountaynes a farre of, but as they drew neare, they perceyued it to be the Ilande of *Iucatana*, being distant from *Cozumella* only fyue myles. Directyng therfore theyr course towards the south syde of *Iucatana*, they compassed it on that syde which lyeth nearest to be supposed continent: yet coulde they not saile round about it, by reason of the multitude of rocks, shalowe places, and shelles of lande. Then *Alaminus* the pilot turned his sayles to the North syde, whereof he had better knowledge. Thus at the length, they came to the towne *Campechium*, and kyng *Lazarus*, with whom they had been that attempted the first voyage the yere before. At the fyrst, they were gentylely receiued, and required to resort to the towne: but shortly after, they repented that they had bydden them, and thereupon willed them to stay about a stones cast from the towne, and to proceede no further. When our men desired that they myght make provision for freshe water before theyr departure, they assigned them to a certayne well whiche they had left behynde them, declaring further, that it shoulde be lawfull for them to take water there, or els no where. Our men rested that nyght in the feede

*Cozumella named Sancta Crux,*

*Idles Ipe Beares.*

*Idolatry.*

*Gentle people.*

*Iucatana but fyue myles from Cozumella.*

*The Barbarians make resistance.*

adiopyng

adjoining to the well: the whiche thyng the Barbarians suspecting, assembled an army of three thousand men, and encamped not farre from them. Both partes passed a way the nyght without sleepe: they fearyng lest our men shoulde breake into the towne: and our men, lest the Barbarians shoulde inuade them sodenly, on the one part with Trumpettes, and on the other syde with the noyse of Tymbrels, kept them still wakyng that were disposed to sleepe. At the spyng of the day, the Barbarians approached to our mens campe, and called for the interpreters of *Cuba*, whose language is much agreable vnto theirs. They had deuised to lyght a Torche of franckensence, and to place the same betweene both the armies, to the intent that yf our men dyd not depart before the Torche were consumed, to stand to theyr peryll. The Torche was wasted, and the matter came to hand strokes. They slue only one of our men with an arrowe, because his Target failed him: but many were wounded. After this conflict, our men resorted to theyr ordinaunce, whiche they had planted neere vnto the wel. When they had discharged certayne peeces, the Barbarians fled backe into the towne, and our men were of fierse and greedie courage to haue pursued them, but that *Grisalua* the gouernour would not suffer them. From thence they proceeded to the last ende of *Iucatana*, which they founde to reach moze then two hundred myles from the East to the West. Here they founde a commodious hauen, and named it *Portus desideratus*. From hence they sailed to other landes, & came to the region next to *Iucatana* Westward, which they doubt whether it be an Island, or part of the fyne lande, but thinke it rather to be annexed to y<sup>e</sup> continēt: in this there is a gulf, whiche they suppose to be incompassed with both the landes: but of this there is no certentie. The inhabitants call this region *Caluacam*, or otherwise *Oloan*. They found here also a great riuer, whiche by his violent course and fall, driueth freshe water two myles into the sea: this they called *Grisalua*, after the name of the gouernour. The Barbarians marueylng at the huge greatnesse and monning of our shypps, came swarming on the bankes of both sydes the riuer, to the number of fyre thousande men, armed with targettes and best plates of golde, bowes and arrowes, byrde swoordes of heauie wood, and long sauelyns hard-

the conflict.

The length of  
Iucatana.

The region of  
Caluacam, or  
Oloan.

The riuer  
Grisalua.

Targets and  
best plates of  
golde,

ned at the endes with fyre . Thus standyng in battayle raze  
to defende theyr coastes , and with proude countenaunces for-  
byddyng our men to come alande , both parties watched all  
that nyght in armes . In the dawne of they dape , our men es-  
pyed about a hundred Canoas (whiche we haue sayde to bee  
theyr boates ) full of armed men . Here also, the language of  
thinterpretours of *Cuba* agreed well yenough with theirs.  
When they had admitted the peace profered them by thinter-  
pretours, al the Canoas staid, except one which approched to-  
warde the shypes . A certayne ruler that was in this Canoa, de-  
maunded of our men what they sought in other mens landes.  
They answered, Gold, and that for permutacion of other ware,  
and not of gift, or violently . The *Canoa* returned, and the ruler  
certified the king hereof, who came gladly to the shippes. When  
he had saluted the gouernor, he called his chamberlaine vnto him,  
commaundyng hym to byng his armur, and other ornamentez  
of gold, wherewith he armed *Grisalua* from the toppe of the head,  
to the sole of the foote : insomuche that what so euer any man of  
armes, armed at all partes, is among vs accustomed to weate of  
Iron or Steele when he commeth into the fielde, all such kynde of  
furnitures made of golde, and wrought with woonderfull art, the  
kyng gaue to the gouernour . He recompenced hym with ves-  
tures of lycke, cloth, linnen, and other of our thynges . In the  
begynnyng of this *Lucatana*, when they sayled to *Cozumella*, they  
chaunced vpon a *Canoa* of fishermen, to the number of niene, fysh-  
yng with hookes of golde : they tooke them all prysoners . One  
of them was knowen to this kyng, who promysed the day folow-  
yng, to send the gouernour as much gold for his raunsome, as the  
man hym selfe waighed . But the gouernour denied that he could  
release hym, without the consent of his felowes, and therefore  
kept hym styll, to proue what he coulde further knowe of hym.  
Departyng from hence, and saylyng styll westwarde, they  
founde a great gulse, in the which three small Ilandes were situ-  
ate : Of these, they went to the byggest . But oh abhominable  
crueltie, oh most corrupted myndes of men, and diuyls the im-  
pietie . Let euery godly man close y mouth of his stomake, lest he  
be disturbed . They offer young chyldren of both kyndes to their  
Idoles of marble & earth . Among their Idoles of marble, there  
standeth

Armur of gold.

Expert artificers.

Fyshhookes  
of golde.

The Ilandes  
of Sacrifice.

Chyldren sacri-  
ficed to Idols.  
The Idoles  
of marble.



standeth a Lion, haupng a hole through the necke, into the whiche they poure the blood of the miserable sacrifice, that it may from thence runne downe into a syncke of marble. Let vs now declare with what ceremonies they sacrifice the blood of these poore wretches. They cut not theyr throtes, but open the very brestes of these feeble soules, and take out theyr hartes yet pantyng, with the hot blood whereof, they annoynt the lippes of theyr Idoles, and suffer the resydue to fall into the syncke: This doone, they burne the hartie and bowels, supposyng the smoke thereof to be acceptable to theyr goddes. Of theyr Idoles, one is made to the shape of a man, bowyng downe his head, and lookyng towarde the syncke of blood, as it were acceptyng the offeryng of the slayne sacrifice. They eate the fleshe of the armes, thyghes, and legges, especially when they sacrifice an enemie taken in the warres. They founde a streame of coniealed blood, as though it had runne from a boochery. For this mischeuous purpose, they bring these wretches from the next Ilandes. They sawe also innumerable heades, and trunks of bodies thus mangled, besyde many other yet remainyng whole, and couered with certayne mattes. Al the tractes of these regions abound with gold and pretious stones. One of our men wandryng in the Ilande, chaunced to fynde two water pottes of alabaster, artificially wrought, and full of litle stones of dyuers colours. They say also that they founde a stone of the value of two thousande Castellans of golde, which they sent to the gouernour. This Iland they named the Iland of sacrifice. Thynhabitauntes are circumcised. There are also other Ilands situate about this Coluacana, or Galuacam, the which are inhabited onely with women, lyuing without the compaignie of men, after the maner of the *Amazones*. But they that ponder the matter moze wysely, thynke them rather to be certayne women whiche haue bowed chastitie, and professed a solitarie life, as the Nunnes do with vs, or as the virgins called *Vestales*, or *Bona Dea*, were accustomed to do among the gentiles in olde tyme. At certayne tymes of the peere, men of the other Ilandes resorte vnto them, not for thintent of generation, but moued with pittie, to helpe them to dresse theyr gardens, and tyll theyr grounde. The reporte goeth lyke wyse, that there are other Ilandes of corrupt

Golde and pretious stones.

A stone of great price.

Ilandes of women.

rupt women, to whom men resort for carnall copulation, and that they cut of one of the pappes of theyr women childzen, lest it shoulde hynder theyr shootyng: also that they keepe only the women childzen, and send away the men childzen. Our men therefore dyewe neare to the shore of *Coluacana*, where they quietly exercised marchandies with th inhabitantes. The king gaue them a great Hot of golde: also braselettes, chaynes, brooches, with many other iewels, and all of golde. Our men agayne on the other part satisfied hym with such stuffe as they had done other before. Heere would they gladly haue planted a new colonie or habitation, but that the gouernour woulde not permit them, where at they grudged not a litle. The houses and other edifices of this prouince, are builded lyke vnto Townes. It hath also sytceene great townes in it. Of these they assyyme, that they haue seene some consistyng of moze then twentie thousand houses, not ioyning togeather, but disseuered with courtes and gardens. They haue also certayne large market places, encompassed with walles, and streates wel paued: likewise fornares & ouens, made of lime and bricke: furthermoze al sortes of handie craftes men, and very cunning artificers. This kynges name was *Potanchanus*, and the region is called *Palmaria*. The towne where the kyng keepeth his court, conteyneth .xv. thousand houses. When they receyue any straungers, & make a league of frendship with them, they are accustomed with a knyfe made of a sharp stone to let them selues blood in the tongue, hande, arme, or some other part of the bodie, and this euen in the syght of them whom they admit to frendship, in token that they are redy to shed theyr blood in theyr frendes causes. Theyr priestes professe a vertuous lyfe, and lyue vnmarrid. What it is to haue doto w women, no man knoweth before he be married. Fornication and adulterie (which seldome chaunceeth among them) they count abhominacion. The women are of marueilous chastitie. Euery noble man, after that he haue had one wife, may haue as many concubines as hym lysteth: but a married woman taken in adulterie, is solde of her husband, but this onely to the prince, at whose handes it shal be lawfull for her kynnsfolke to redeme her. It is not lawefull for suche as are not married, to syt at the same table with them that are married, or to eate of the same dyshe, or drynke of the same cup.

Golde.

Houses lyke  
Townes.  
xv. great  
townes in the  
prouince of  
*Coluacana*.  
& townes of .xx.  
thousand  
houses.

The region of  
*Palmaria*.

A token of  
frendshipp.

Priestes.

Chastitie.

The punish-  
ment of adul-  
terie.

Marriage is  
honoured.

In

## Of the west Indies

In the moneth of August and September, they abſteyne. *xxxij.* dayes, not onely from fleſhe, whereof they haue great plentie, but alſo from fyſhe, and all other thynges that lyue by blood, and during theſe dayes, lyue onely with hearbes and fruites. They reckon twentie dayes to the moneth, and twentie monethes to the yere. Our men conſumed certayne dayes heere very pleaſantly. When they departed, coaſting ſtil by the ſame ſhore, they came to an other kyng, whom they named *Ouandus*. When he had intelligence that our men deſired gold, he brought forth certayne plats of molten gold. But when the gouernour ſignified vnto hym by the interpreter, that he deſired great plentie of that metall, the day folowing he brought him a mans image of gold, being a cubite in length: alſo a fanne of golde, and an Idole of one of his domeſtical gods, of curious woorkmanſhip: likewyſe garlandes of ſtones of ſundrye colours, with many beſt plates, byooches, and other kyndes of ornaments, and all of golde. He gaue hym furthermoze abundaunce of delicate meates, well ſalted, and powdered with ſpices. When he had required our men to come alande, he commaunded his ſeruauntes with all ſpeede to prepare a great multitude of bryanches of trees, and to wayte vppon our men to his pallace. As they went thus in order, ſome behynde, and ſome before, on both ſydes, they ſeemed ſo to ſhadow our men with bowes, as though they had gone in a continuall labour. The kyng hym ſelfe haupng a Scepter in his hande, dyd ſet them in theyr arraye, and ſome tyme ſtryke ſuche as were negligent in bearyng theyr bowes. They ſhewed themſelues obedient in all thynges, and with graue countenance humbled themſelues to receyue his ſtrypes. When he was demaunded where he had ſuche plentie of golde: he poynted with his ſpynger to the next mountaynes, and to the riuers deſcending from the ſame. They are ſo accuſtomed to the riuers, and exerciſed in ſwimming, that it is all one to them to lyue in the water and on the lande. When they deſire to gather golde, they plunge themſelues in the riuers, and byng from the bottome thereof both theyr handes full of ſande, whiche ſyſtyng from hande to hande, they gather out the graynes of golde. And by this meanes in the ſpace of two houres, they fylle a reede as bygge as a mans ſpynger. Of the ſweete ſauours

**Faſting.**

**Kyng Ouandus.**

**Idoles, ſewels and ouches of golde.**

**Golde in mountaynes and riuers.**

**Their maner of gathering golde.**

**Sweete ſauours.**

fauours of these landes, many thinges might be spoken, the which  
 bycause they make rather to theffeminauynge of the myndes of  
 men, then for any necessary purpose, I haue thought best to o-  
 mit them. The kyng also gaue the gouernour a young virgine,  
 of twelue yeres of age, adourned with ryche and sayre iewel-  
 les. Of the stones whiche hee had of this kyng, one was valued at  
 two thousande Castellanes of golde. Thus at the length they  
 departed from this kyng, laden with golde and precious stones.  
*Grisalua* the gouernour, sent one of the Carauelles to his vncle  
*Diego Velasquen*, gouernour of the Ilande of *Cuba*, with messen-  
 gers to despyrre him the golde, iewel-les, and other ornaments,  
 the resydue in the meane tyme styll folowed the tracie towarde  
 the West. One of them in the whiche *Frauncis Montegius*  
 the vnder gouernour was carped sayled harde by the shore,  
 and the other two kepte aloofe within prospecte of the lande.  
 The inhabitants of these coastes also, no lesse marueyllyng  
 at the shippes then dyd the other, came with twelue Canoas  
 to *Montegius*, despyrre him by thinterpretours to come a-  
 lande, promysyng in the name of theyr kyng, that hee shoulde  
 bee honourably entertayned. But *Montegius* answered, that  
 hee coulde not assent to theyr request, bycause his compani-  
 ons were so farre from him: Yet dyd hee gyue them certayne  
 of our thinges, straunge vnto them, and thanks for their gen-  
 tlenesse. Shortly after, espying a great towne, they directed  
 their course thither. The inhabitants prohibyted them to come  
 alande, and came forth agaynst them with bowes and quiers  
 full of arrowes, broad swoordes made of heauy wood, and Flaue-  
 lins hardned at the ende with fyre. They shot at our men a farre  
 of, and our men discharged certayne peeces of ordinaunce a-  
 gainst them. The Barbarians astonished at the noyse of the gun-  
 nes fled amayne, and despyred peace. Here our mens vitayles be-  
 gan to fayle them, and theyr shippes were brooked with long  
 biages. Waynyng therefore founde and done these thinges  
 whereof wee haue spoken, *Grisalua* returned to the Ilande of  
*Eernandina* well contented, but so were not his companions. We  
 muste nowe diuerse somewhat from this matter, and speake of  
 an other nauigation: and from thence will wee retorne to these  
 landes whiche our men haue founde. So it is therefore, that

A stone of  
 great price.

Other biages  
 from Cuba or  
 Eernandina.



*Diegus Velasquen*, the gouernour of the Ilande of *Fernandina*, about the same tyme that he had sent forth this nauie of foure Carauelles, he prepared an other nauigation of onely one Carauell, and one bygantine, with fourtie and fyue men. These exercised violent handes against the inhabitants of those regions where they arryued, thynksyng that they myght forceably drawe them to the dyggyng of golde, bycause they were Casttranite Idolaters and circumcised. There are at the sea syde not farre from the supposed continent, many litle Ilandes, of most fortunate and fruitefull soyle, whereof three are thus named, *Guanapan*, *Guan-guan*, and *Quitilla*. Out of one of these (which they named *Santa Marina*) they violently caryed away three hundred men & women, which they thrust into the Carauell, and returned immediately to *Fernandina*, leauyng the bygantine with .xxv. of theyr felowes, to thintent to hunt for more men. The hauens where the Carauell first arryued, is called *Carenas*, beyng distant from the angle of *Cuba*, and the chiefe citie of *Sanctiago*, two hundred and fytie myles: For this Ilande of *Cuba*, is very long, reachyng in length from the East to the West, and situate directly vnder the circle called *Tropicus Cancrī*, as we haue sayd before. Nowe shall you heare howe fortune sought the reuenge of these poore wretches. Therfore as their keepers went aland, and few remained in the Carauell, they perceiuing occasion ministred whereby they myght recouer their libertie, sodeinly snatched by our mens weapons, and slue sixe of them which yet remained in the Carauell, whyle the residue leapt into the sea. And by this meanes the Barbarians possessed the Carauell whiche they had soone learned to rule, and thus returned to their owne countreys. But they sayled first to the nexte Ilande, where they burnt the Carauell, and caryed away the weapons with them. From hence they conueyed them selues to their owne countreys with the Canoas of this Iland. Here in lyke maner they pynilly assailed them that were left with the bygantine, and slue many of them also: The residue that escaped, fledde to the bygantine, where they bewayled theyr felowes deathes, and counted theyr owne escape a victorie. On the shore not farre from the place where they suffered this misfortune, there is a tree, in the toppes whereof they set vp a crosse, and graued this inscription in the barke of the

Many Ilands  
betwene Cuba  
and the tpyne  
lande,

Sanctiago the  
chiefe citie of  
Cuba.

The Barbari-  
ans slep the  
Spaniardes  
with theyr  
own weapons

the tree, *Vannuis Aldarieci*. There is a ryuer named *Darien*, on the banke whereof standeth the chiefe citie of the supposed continent. The gouernour therefore hauyng intelligence heereof, sent with all speede two shippes of warre well furnished, to the ayde of them that were left: but they were wyse to late. Yet folowing the viewe of the crosse, they came to the shore, and red the letters grauen on the tree, but durst not attempt fortune. Thus with all theyr hardie souldiers departyng from hence with dispayre, they sayled to the nexte Ilande, out of the whiche they carped away by violence syue hundred men and women, supposyng lykewyse that they myght lawfully so doe, bycause they were Idolaters and circumcised: But the lyke chaunce happened vnto them when they landed at *Eernandina*. For the Barbarians, espying oportunitie, set vppon the Spanyarden in one of the shippes with theyr owne weapons, and slue theyr keepers: the residue that escaped, castyng them selues into the sea, swamme to the nexte *Carauell*, and with theyr felowes assayled the *Carauell* that was taken from them. This conflict was so sharpe, that for the space of foure houres, it was doubtfull whether parte should obteyne the victorie. The Barbarians both men and women fought very fiercely, aswell to recouer their libertie, as also to holde fast the praye which they had gotten: But in fine, the Spanyarden had the vpper hande, by reason they were more experte in handlyng of theyr weapons, & rulyng of their *Carauell*. The Barbarians beyng thus ouercome, leapt into the sea, but the Spanyarden tooke them agayne with the shyppe boates. About a hundred of the Barbarians perished, being partly drowned, and partely slayne with the swoorde, and but fewe of the Spanyarden. These thinges thus pacified, the residue of the Barbarians were carped to the towne of *Sanctiago*, and condemned to labour in the golde mynes. Shortly after they made out a newe viage to an other of the Ilandes, which lye there about so thicke, that they commonly call the number of them *Archipelagus*, as they in our sea of *Ionicum* are called *Symplegades*. Here our men were cruelly handled, and as many of them as came a-lande eyther slayne or wounded. This Ilande they named *Florida*, bycause they arriued there on Easter day, whiche the Spaniards call the floryshyng day of the resurrection. They say

The chiefe citie of the supposed continent.

The Spanyarden are slaine agayne with their owne weapons.

The Barbarians are slayne and put to flight.

A multitude of Ilandes. *Archipelagus*. An other viage

## Of the west Indies

xxvi. Ilandes  
about Hispani-  
ola & Cuba.

Images of  
golde.

Rasiers of  
stone.

Instruments  
and tooles.

Ilandes lyke  
vnto the earth  
ly Paradyse.

An other vpage  
of ten Caras-  
nels and fyue  
hundred men.

Horses and  
mares.

Fernando  
Cortellus.

also that in this tracte they sawe. xxvi. Ilandes, which *Colonus* had ouerpassed, and the same so to lye about *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, as though they warded them from the furie of the Ocean. In many of these they founde native golde, of lyke goodnesse to that which is founde in *Granatum*. The inhabitants also weare many iewelies, and haue many Images of theyr domesticall goddes, made both of golde artificially wrought, and also of wood gylted. *Frauncis Cberegatus* brought one of theyr Idols with him, whereby may bee considered of what wytte and aptnesse they are. It is a marueylous thynge to see what maner of rasers they haue, made of certayne yelow stones, cleare and transparent lyke vnto chrystall, with these they shaue and carue, as though they were made of fyne Steele : When the edges are blunt with long exercyse, they sharpen them not with a whetstone, or powder, or any other stone, but temper them onely with water. They haue also a thousande kyndes of instrumentes or tooles, and such other thinges of fyne deuice, which were to long to rehearse. Let vs therefore returne from whence wee haue digressed, as to *Cozumella*, *Iucatana*, *Coluacana*, or *Olloa*, being all landes lately founde, and so rych, fruitfull, and pleasaunt, that they may in maner bee compared to the earthly Paradyse. Therefore, after that it was knowne to our men of howe great moment these tractes were, the Spaniards which inhabited the Ilande of *Cuba*, *Annunsius* being the governour of the Ilande, furnished a new nauie of ten Carauelles, and fyue hundred men, with two small brigantines, as it were in the steade of lyght horsemen, or forerunners, whose ayde they myght vse as scoutes, to search the wayes for daunger of rockes and shalow landes or sheifes. They shipte also certayne horses, as fyue stoned horses, and. xxvi. mares, apt for the warres. For theyr generall gouernour and Admirall of the nauy, they elected *Fernando Cortesius*, who at y tyme was y chief ruler of the citie of *Sanctiago*. For vnder Capitaynes, they appoynted *Alfons Portucareius*, *Francis Montegius*, *Alfons Auila*, *Aluerado Spatense*, *Iohn Velasquen*, and *Diegus Ordassus*. They styl folowed the same wynde, from the last angle of *Cuba* toward the West. As soone as *Francis Fernandes* of *Corduba*, and then *Iohn Grisalua* came within prospecte of the Ilande of *Sacrifices* (whereof wee haue made mention before) sodainly a tempest of

contrary

contrary wynde prohibited them to take lande, and droue them  
 backwarde to *Cozumella*, lying on the East syde of *Lucatana*: The Ilande of  
 this Ilande hath onely one haven, named saint Iohns porte, *Cozumella*.  
 and hath in it onely fyre townes: also none other water then in  
 welles and cesterne, bycause it lacketh ryuers and sprynges by  
 reason it is playne, conteynnyng onely . xlv. myles in circuite.  
 At the commynge of our men, thynhabitauntes fledde to the thicke  
 woods, and forsooke theyr townes for feare: Our men entred  
 into theyr houses, where they founde plentie of vittayles, and  
 many ornamentees parteynyng to the furnyshyng of theyr hou-  
 ses, as hanginges and carpettes of dyuers colours, sheetes  
 also of gossampine cotton (whiche they call *Amaccas*) and  
 muche apparell. They haue furthermore innumerable bookes,  
 of the which with many other thinges sent to our newe Empe-  
 rour, wee will speake more largely heereafter. The souldiers  
 wandered about the Ilande, and viewed all thinges diligently,  
 keepyng them selues styll in battayle raye, least they myght bee  
 sodeinly inuaded. They founde but a fewe of thynhabitauntes,  
 and onely one woman in theyr company. By thinterpretours of  
*Cuba*, and other which the Spaniardes tooke first from *Lucatana*,  
 they perswaded the woman to call the kynges that were absent.  
 They came gladly, and made a league of friendship with our  
 men, wherby they were restored to theyr houses, and a great  
 parte of their stuffe. They are circumcised Idolatours, and sacri-  
 fyce children of both kyndes to their Zemes, which are the Im-  
 ages of their familiar and domesticall spirites, whiche they ho-  
 noure as goddes. When I enquired of *Alaminus* the pilot, also  
 of *Francis Montegius*, and *Portucarenius*, from whence they had  
 the children they offered in sacrifice: they answered, that they  
 bought them in the Ilandes thereabout, by exchaunge for golde  
 and other of their trashycke: For in all this so large a space of land,  
 the deuillyshe anxietie for the desyre of wicked money, hath not  
 yet oppressed thynhabitauntes. They say the same also of the I-  
 landes lately founde, whereof two are named *Destam* and *Sestam*,  
 whose inhabitants go naked, and for scarcenesse of children, sacri-  
 fice dogges, which they nouryshe aswell for that purpose, as also  
 to eate, as wee doe *Cummies*: these dogges are dunnie, & can not  
 bark, hauing snoutes lyke vnto *foxes*. Suche as they destinate

Carpettes and  
 sheetes.  
 Innumerable  
 bookes,

Circumcised  
 Idolaters.

They Sacrifyce  
 Children.

The Ilandes  
 of *Destam* and  
*Sestam*.

The sacrifice of  
 dogges.



## Of the west Indies

to eate, they gette while they are whelpes, whereby they waxe very fat in the space of foure monethes. They reserue all the bytches for increase, and but fewe dogges. Our men diswaded them from these superstitions, declaryng howe they were abhominable, and detested of God. They were soone perswaded, and despyed a lawe which they myght folowe. Our men therfore declared vnto them, that there was onely one God, which made heauen and earth, the giuer of all good thinges, beyng of one incomprehensyble substance, vnder triplicitie of person. As soone as they heard these wordes, they broke their *Zemes*, and pared, scraped, and washed the pauements and walles of their temples. Our men gaue them a paynted picture of the blessed virgine, which they placed reuerently in their temple, & about it a crosse, to be honoured in the remembraunce of God and man, and the saluacion of mankynde. They erected also an other great crosse of wood in the toppe of the temple, whyther they oftentymes resorte togeather to honour the Image of the virgine. Thinhabitauntes signified by thinterpretours, that in the Ilande of *Iucatana*, not farre from them, there were seuen Christians captiues, which in tyme past were dzyen thither by tempest. The Ilande of *Cozumella*, is onely fyue myles distant from *Iucatana*. The gouernour *Cortesijs* being aduertised hereof, furnished two Carauels with fiftie men, willing them incōtinent to direct their viage thither, & to make search for these mē. They tooke w̄ them iiii. interpretours of *Cozumella* (whose lāguage agreeth w̄ theirs) with letters to the Christians if any might be founde. He further declared vnto them, howe goodly a matter they should byng to passe, if they coulde byng away any of them: For hee no wayes doubted but that by their information, he should be fully certified of the commodities of all those tractes, & the maners of thinhabitauntes. Thus they departed, with commaundement to returne within the space of six dayes. But when they had remayned there now, viii. dayes, & heard no word of their *Cozumellane* interpretours, whom they had sent alande with the message and letters, our men returned to *Cozumella* without them, suspectyng that they were either slaine, or deteyned. And where as the whole nauie was now determined to depart from *Cozumella*, but that they were hyndered by contrary wynde, they sodainly espied towarde  
the

They are soone  
perswaded to  
our religion.

This people  
leauing one  
kynde of Ido-  
latry be taught  
another.

Another viage

the west a Canoe coming from *Iucatana*, and in it one of the Christian captiues (named *Hieronimus Aquillaris*) who had lyued seuen yeeres in that Ilande: With what ioye they embraced the one the other, the chaunce may declare. They were no lesse desyrous to heare, then he to tell of the mysfortune which befell to him and his companions. And heere it shall not bee greatly from my purpose, briefly to rehearse howe the thing chaunced. In my *Decades* I haue made mention of a certayne noble man named *Valdiuia*, whom the Spanyardes which inhabited *Darien* in the supposed continent of the gulf of *Vraba*, sent to the Iland of *Hispaniola* to *Colonus* the Admirall and biceroyn, with the residue of the Senate and counsaile there (to whom parteyneth the redresse and orderynge of all thinges in these new landes) to signifie vnto them in what extreme necessitie and penurie they lyued. Unhappy *Valdiuia* therefore, takynge this matter in hande in an euill houre, was with a sodeine and violent whirlewynde dzyuen vppon certayne quickelandes, in the prospecte of the Ilande of *Iamaica*, lying on the South syde of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*. These blynde and swalowynge landes, the Spaniardes call *hypers*, and that by good reason, because in them many *hypes* are entangled, as the *Lisertes* are implicate in the tayles of the *hypers*. While the *Carauell* thus wresteled with the water, it was so burst in sunder, that *Valdiuia* with thirtie of his felowes could scarcely with much difficultie discende into the *shyp boate*: where without oyes, and without sayles, they were carped away by the violence of the water. For (as we haue sayd before in our *Decades*) the seas doe runne there continually with a violent course toward the West. They wandered thus, .xiii. dayes, not knowing whither they went, nor yet fyndyng any thing to eate. Famine consumed seuen of them, which were cast into the sea to feede the fshes. The residue lykewyse, in maner consumed by fampne, and fallynge from one calamitie into an other, were dzyuen to *Iucatana*, and seil into the handes of a cruell kyng, who sene *Valdiuia* the gouernour, with certayne of his felowes: and when he had first sacrificyd them to his *Zemes*, shortly after hee ate them, with his friendes of that conspiracie. For they eate onely their enemies & straungers, & doe otherwise absteyne from mans fleshe. In this meane tyme, while *Hieronimus Aquillaris*,

*Aquillaris*. vii.  
yeeres captiue  
in the Ilande  
of *Iucatana*.

*Valdiuia*.

The shipwrack  
of *Valdiuia*.

The quicke  
landes called  
*hypers*.

The course of  
the sea toward  
the West.

*Valdiuia* is  
sacrificed to  
*Idoles*.

How *Aquillas*  
is escaped.

with fyre of his felowes, were reserved to be sacrificed the thyrde day, they brake theyr bandes, escaped the handes of that cruell Tyrant, and fledde to an other kyng beyng his enemy, who receyued them, yet onely as bondmen . It is a straunge thyng to heare of the moother of this *Aquillaris* : For as soone as shee hearde that her sonne was fallen into the handes of the nations that ate mans fleshe, shee fell madde incontinent : so that whensoever after, shee sawe any meate roastyng at the fyre, or onely redy spytte to laye to the fyre, shee ceased not to crye out in this maner, O mine most wretched moother, behold the members of my sonne . But to returne to our purpose, When *Aquillaris* had now receyued the gouvernours letter, sent by the Cozumellane messengers, hee declared to the kyng his maister (whose name was *Taxmarus*) what was theyr errande thither, and wherefore they were sent : vsyng in the meane tyme many large discourses, in expresseyng the great power and magnificence of theyr kyng, who had of late arryued in those coastes : also of theyr humanitie and gentlenesse towarde theyr friendes and such as submitted them selues to them, & againe their rigour and fiercenesse agaynst suche as stubberly eyther contemned them, or denyed their requestes. With these wordes he brought *Taxmarus* into such feare, that the maister was now fayne to desyre his seruauant so to handle the matter, that they myght quickly enter into his dominion as his friendes, and not as his enemies. *Aquillaris* promised in their behalfe & they shoulde not onely come in peace, but also to ayde him agaynst his enemies if neede should so require. Wherevpon he dismissed *Aquillaris*, & with him three of his familiers and companions . Thus they sayled togeather from Cozumella to Iucatana, to the ryuer which they had founde before in the fyrst biage thither, by the gouernance of *Alaminus* the pilot. They founde the mouth of the ryuer stopped with sand, as we reade of the ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypte, when the wyndes (called *Etesi*) blow in summer, and especially in the canicular dayes . Therefore where as they could not enter into the ryuer with the biggest vesselles (although it be otherwyle apte to receyue great shyppes) the gouernour caused two hundred men to bee set alande with the Brigantines and shyppe boates, wplyng *Aquillaris* to offer peace to the inhabitants . They de-

maunded.

Kyng Taxmarus.

The mouth of a ryuer stopped with sande.

maunded what our men requyred . *Aquillaris* answered, bittayles . There was a longe space of lande by the syde of the towne , whyther they wylled them to resort , promysyng to bryng them bittayles thither the day folowynge . Our men went, and they came, accordyng to theyr promysse, and brought with them eyght of theyr Hennes, beyng as bygge as Peacockes, of brownysh coloure, and not inferiour to Peacockes in pleasaunt tast . They brought also as muche bread made of *Maizium* (whiche is a grayne not muche vnylike vnto panyke) as woulde scarcely serue tenne hungry men, and herewith desyred them to depart . But when they percepued that our men made no hast away, immediately there came a great company of armed men towarde them, demaundyng what they had to do thus to wander in other mens landes . Our men made answere by *Aquillaris*, that they desyred peace, bittayles, and golde, for exchange of other thynges . They answered againe, that they woulde nother peace nor warre with them, but threathned them to auoyde the land, except they would be destroyed euery man . Our men sayd that they woulde not depart, without sufficient bittayles to mayntayne their souldyers. They appoynted the day folowynge to bryng them more bittayles, but they broke promise : Yet percepyng the seconde day that our men were encamped on the lande, and had reposed there that nyght, they brought them as much more bittayles, and commaunded them in the name of theyr kyng to departe . Our men sayde that they were desyrous to see the towne, and to haue yet more store of bittayles. The Barbarians denyed theyr request, and therewith departed, whisperyng and mutterynge among them selues. In the meane tyme our men were still so oppressed with hunger, that they were enforced to seeke for meate. The gouernour therefore sent his vnder captaynes to lande with a hundred and fiftie men. As they went disperfed in dyuers companies about the villages of the countrey, the Barbarians met with one of theyr bandes, and put them to great distresse: But when theyr felowes, being not farre from them, heard the noyse of theyr alarome, they came with al possible haste to theyr rescue. The gouernour on the other syde, placing his ordinaunce in the byggantines & shippe boates, approached to the shore, with

Turky Hens,

A conflict.

the



## Of the west Indies

the residue of his souldiers . The Barbarians lykewylse,  
 beyng redy furnyshed to the battayle, came runnyng to the  
 sea syde, to disturbe them, that they shoulde not come alande,  
 and with theyr arrowes wounded many a farre of vnprepared.  
 The gouernoure discharged about .xx. peeces of ordinaunce  
 agaynst them : With the slaughter and terrible thunder wher-  
 of, and with the flame of the fyre, and smell of the brimstone,  
 they were so astonied, and put to such feare, that they fled and dis-  
 parceled lyke wilde beastes: whom our men pursuing, entred in-  
 to the towne, which inhabitants forsooke in maner for feare of  
 their owne men, whō they sawe so dismaide. On the banke of this  
 ryuer there is a towne of such portentous biggnes as I dare not  
 speake, but *Alanimus* the pilot, sayth that it contayneth in  
 circuite fyue hundred myles, and that it consisteth of .xxv. thou-  
 sande houses: Some make it somewhat lesse, but they all agree  
 that it is exceedyng great and notable . The houses are diuided  
 with gardens, and are buylded of lyme and stone, very  
 artificiall, and of cunnyng woorkmanship . To theyr haules,  
 chambers, parlors, or other places of habitation, they ascend by  
 tenne or twelue stappes, and haue certayne spaces betwene  
 euery house: so that it is not lawfull for any to lade his neygh-  
 bours wales with rafters or beames . Theyr houses are sepa-  
 rate one from an other by the space of thre houses, and are for  
 the most parte couered with reede and thatche, and many al-  
 so with slate or other stone . The Barbarians them selues con-  
 fessed that they were that day fourtie thousande men at the bat-  
 taye, which were banquished of a fewe, by reason of the newe  
 and vnknown kynde of seyghth with gunnes and horses . For the  
 gouernour had unbarked .xvi. horses, which were also at the bat-  
 taye, and so spercely assayled the Barbarians on the backehalfe,  
 that they brake theyr array, and scattered them as it had ben  
 flockes of sheepe, ouerthrowing, wounding, & killing them on eue-  
 ry syde: Which thing the seely wretches so imputed to a miracle,  
 that they had not y power to occupie their weapones. For wher-  
 as before they had neuer seene any horses, they thought that yman  
 on horsebacke and the horse had ben all one beaste, as the  
 antiquitie dyd fable of the monster *Centaurus* . Our men possessed  
 the towne .xxii. dayes, where they made good cheare vnder couert,  
 whyle

The Barbari-  
 ans are put to  
 flight.

The great  
 towne of Pos-  
 tauchana of  
 Victoria.  
 A towne of  
 xxv. thousande  
 houses.

Gunnes and  
 horses.

The men and  
 the horse.  
 thought to be  
 one beast.

whyle the owners of the houses lay vnder the fyrmament, and durst not assaile our men, who had placed them selues in the stroungest part of the towne, where some kept contynual watch (lest the Barbarians shoulde sodenly inuade them) whyle other gaue them selues to rest and sleepe. The inhabitauntes call this towne *Potanchana*: but our men for the victorie which they obteyned here, named it *Vittoria*. It is a marueilous thyng to consider, the greatnesse, magnificence, & finenesse of the building of certayne palaces they haue in the countrey, to the which they resort somtymes for theyr solace and pastyme. These are curiously builded with many pleasaunt diuises, as galleries, solars turrettes, portals, gutters, with chambers boorded after the maner of our waynescot, and well floored. Foure of our Spaniards went into one of them, of such greatnesse, that they wandered in the same for the space of foure houres before they coulde fynde the way out. At the length by the interpretours, and certayne capitues, our men sent for the kyng, and suche rulers as were next vnder hym in aucthoritie, wyllyng them to submyt them selues, and to come into the towne vnarmed: geuyng the messengers further in commaundement, to certifie them that in theyr so doyng, they woulde commune with them as concerning conditions of peace, and restore them theyr towne. They came gladly, and entred euery man into his owne house, vpon condition, that they shoulde euer thereafter absteyne from such ceremonies and horrible sacrifices of mans fleshe, to deuils, the mortal enemies to mankind, whose Images they honoured, & to direct the eyes of theyr myndes to Christ our God, y maker of heauen and earth, who was bozne into this worlde of a virgin, and suffered death on the crosse for the redemption of mankynde, and finally to professethem selues subiectes to the Christian kyng of Spayne. They promised both, and were instructed as farre as the shortnesse of tyme woulde permit. Beyng thus restored, they recompensed our men with many rewarde, supposyng suche men to be sent from heauen, whiche beyng so fewe in number, durst attempt battayle agaynst so great a multitude. They gaue our men also certayne golde, and twentie slaues. Departyng therefore from hence, and coasting styll along by the same thore, they came agayne to the gulf which *Alaminus* the pilot

Palaces of  
maruelous  
bygnes and  
well buidied,

They receiue  
our religion.

## Of the west Indies

pilot founde before vnder *Grisalua*. This they named *Bian Sancti Iohannis*, that is, *Saint Iohns gulfe*, for *Bian* in the Spanishe tongue signifieth a gulfe. Where the inhabitantes resorted to them peaceably. About a myle from the shore, was a towne of a thousand and fyue hundred houses situate vpon a hyll. They profered our men halfe the towne, if they would dwel with them for euer. This perhaps they dyd the rather, eyther fearyng the example of the inhabitantes of *Potanchana*, the same whereof myght haue come to theyr eares, or els hoppyng that vnder the shadowe of suche valiaunt men, they myght obteyne ayde and succour agaynst theyr enemies and borderers. For (as I haue sayde before) they destroy one an other with continuall warre, for the desire to enlarge theyr dominions. Our men refused perpetuall habitation, and accepted theyr friendly proffer for a tyme. As they came alande, the people folowed them on euerye syde with bowes in theyr handes, whiche they helde ouer our mens heades, to defend them from the rayne, as though they had walked in a continuall arbour. Where they encamped. And lest the residue left in the shypps shoulde in the meane tyme ware slouthfull with Idleness, the gouernour gaue commaundement to *Alaminus* the pilot, and *Francis Montegius*, to searche the West partes of that land, while he releued the weered souldiers, and healed such as were wounded. To them that went forward on this viage, he assigned two brigantines with fyfte men. Vnto this gulfe, the course of the water was gentle enough and moderate: but when they had sailed a litle further toward the West, they founde the sea running with so swift a course, as if it were a great riuer falling from the toppes of hygh mountaynes, insomuch that in a short space of tyme it caried them fiftie myles from theyr felowes. When they were now entred into this violent streame of water, they saw on their left hande a large plaine sea, which met with the course of the other waters falling from the West. And lyke as two great riuers that runne contrarie waies, make a vehement conflict where they meete: so seemed the waters comming from the South, to resist these waters, as enemies that had entred into the ryght or possession of an other. On the contrary part, they sawe the lande reachyng farre both on the left hande and on the ryght. In this stryfe be-  
twene

A towne of a thousand and fyue hundred houses.

Another voyage of two brigantines and fyfte men.

Where the sea runneth swiftest from the East to the West.

A conflict betwene the waters comming from the West and from the South.

twene the waters, they were so tossed on both sydes, and entangled with whirlepoles, that they long wrestled without hope of lyfe. At the length, with muche difficultie turnyng the stemmes or forpartes of theyr shippes agaynst the streame from whence they came, and labouryng all that they myght with theyr ores and sayles, they coulde scarcely ouercome the rage of the water, insomuche that where as they thought that they had in one nyght sayled two myles, they founde that they were dyuen backe foure myles: Yet at the length with gods helpe, they ouercame this daungerous consspycte. They spent xxi. dayes in this litle space of sea: And when they were nowe returned to theyr felowes, declared vnto them that that ende was the lande of *Coluacana*, which they adiudged to be part of the supposed continent. The lande whiche they sawe a farre of before theyr face, they suppose eyther to be annexed to our continent, or to be ioyned to the large North regions called *Baccalaos*, whereof we haue made mention in our *Decades*, in the voiage of Sebastian Cabote. This matter is yet doubtfull: but we trust it shall once be better knowne. While *Alaminus* and *Montegius* searched these secretes, the kyng of the prouince (whose name was *Multoxumam*) sent our men, by one of his chiefe officers (beyng also his Lieutenaut of the sayde towne) many ryche and goodly presentes of golde, syluer, and precious stones, set and wrought after a marueylous straunge deuice, and with no lesse cunnyng woorkemanshype. Heere they determined to sende messengers to our newe Emperour, to knowe his pleasure, that they myght in this prouince plant a newe colonie or habitation: and this dyd they without the aduise of *Diegus Velasquez* the gouernour of the Island of *Cuba*, or *Fernandina*, who fyrst sent them forth, with commaundement to returne agayne after they had searched these regions, and obtayned plentie of golde. While they consulted herof, they were of diuers opinions: but the most part alleaged that in this case it was not requisite to make the gouernour of theyr counsaile, soasmuch as y<sup>e</sup> matter shoulde be referred to a higher Iudge, as to the king of Spaine hym self. When they were thus agreed, they receyued vittayles of the gentle king of the prouince, and assigned the place of their colonie twelue myles from the saide towne, in a fruitfull & holssome soile.

A dangerous  
and payneful  
vpage.

The lande of  
*Coluacana*.

The lande of  
*Baccalaos* or  
*Baccalaearum*.

Ryche presentes  
of golde and  
precious  
stones.

A newe colonia  
nie.



## Of the west Indies

For theyr generall gouernoure, they elected *Cortezus* the gouernour of the nauie, agaynst his wyll as some saye. For other magistrates to gouerne the citie which they intended to builde, he chose *Portucarerius* and *Montegius*, of whom we haue made mention before: They chose also certayne messengers to sende to the kyng by the conduction of *Alaminus* the pilot: Furthermore, foure of the princes of this prouince, offered them selues wyllingly to go with our men into Spayne, to thintent to see our landes, and that kyng whose power is so great, and whose auctoritie reacheth so farre: They brought lykewyse two women with them, whiche serued and obeyed them in all thinges, after the manner of their countrey. The people of this nation is of browne or yelowyshe colour. Both the men and the women haue pendants of gold & pretious stoncs hanging at their eares: The men also bore theyr neather lippes full of holes, from the vppermost part of the lippe, euen vnto the neathermost part of the gumme. At these they hang certayne rynges, and plates of golde and syluer, fastned to a smal and thynne plate, lying within betwene the lip & the gumme. At the biggest hole in the midst of the lippe, there hangeth a rounde plate of syluer, as brode as the coyne called a *Carolyn*, & as thicke as a mans finger. I do not remember that euer I saue any thyng that seemed more fylthy in myne eye: Yet do they thynke that there is nothyng more comly vnder the circle of the moone, whereby we may see howe vainely mankynde wandereth in his owne blyndnesse. The *Ethiopian* thincketh the blacke colour to be fayer then the white, and the white man thinketh oherwise. They that are powled, thynke that moze decent then to weare a bushe, and they that weare beardes, iudge it a deformitie to be shauen. As appetite therfore moueth, and not as reason perswadeth, men runne after vanities, and euery prouince is ruled by theyr owne sense, as writeth saint *Jerome*. From whence they haue their gold, we haue spoken sufficiently before. But as our men marueyled where they had theyr syluer, they shewed them certayne high mountaines, which are continually couered w<sup>th</sup> snowe, sauing that at certayne times of the yee the only toppes are scene bare, bicause the snow is there molten, by reason of y<sup>e</sup> thicke and warme cloudes. The plaines therfore, of milde, softe, & pleasant meuntaynes,

This Cortezus hath written a booke of these thynges.

They weare rynges and plates at theyr lippes.

The dyuers phantasies of men.

Syluer.

taines, seeme to bring forth golde, and the rough craggie mountaynes with theyr colde valleyes, are the places where syluer is engendred. They haue also Laton, whereof they make such Hales and Hammers as are vsed in the warres, dygging Dattockes also, and Spades: for they haue neyther Iron nor Steele. But let vs nowe speake of the presentes sent into Spayne to the kyng: and first of the bookes. These procuratours therefore of the newe colonie of the prouince of *Coluacana*, among other their presentes, brought also a great number of bookes, the leaues whereof are made of the inner ryndes or barkes of trees, thinner then eyther that of the Elme or of y<sup>e</sup> Salowe: these they sincere or anoynt with the pitche of molten *Bitumen*, and whyle they be soft, extend them to what forme them lysteth: When they bee cold and harde, they rubbe them ouer with a certayne playster. It is to be thought, that they beate the playster into fyne flour, and so temperyng it with some hyndyng moysture, to make a crust therewith vpon the leaues, whereon they wyte with anye sharpe instrument, and blot the same agayne with a sponge or some suche other thyng, as marchaunt men and noble mens stewards are accustomed to do with their wyriting tables made of the woodde of figge trees. The leaues of theyr bookes are not set in order after the maner of ours, but are extended many cubittes in length. The matters whiche they wyte, are conteyned in square tables, not lose, but so bound togeather with the tough & flexible clay called *Bitumen*, that they seeme lyke wooden tables whiche had been vnder the handes of cunying Bookbinder. Which way so euer the booke lieth open, there are two leaues scene, and two sydes wytten, with as many lying vnder them, except the booke be unfoulded in length. For vnder one leafe there are many leaues ioynd togeather. The fourmes of theyr letters are nothyng lyke vnto ours, but are muche more crooked and entangled, lyke vnto fyshhookes, knottes, snares, starres, syles, dyse, and suche other, muche lyke vnto the Egyptian letters, and wytten in lines lyke vnto ours. Heere and there betweene the lines, are picured the shapen of men, and diuers beastes, and especially the Images of kynges, and other noble men: Whereby it is to be thought, that in such bookes, the factes of theyr kinges are contained, as we see the lyke among vs, how our printers expresse the summe

Note where golde and syluer are engendred.

I thinke this Laton to be some kynde of pure Copper, or els Copper that holdeth golde. For Laton is an artificial metall, and hath no natural myne.

Their bookes,

Their letters.

why it is conteyned in theyr bookes.

## Of the west Indies

of histories in pictures, that men may thereby be the more assured to bye suche bookes. The couerings of theyr bookes are also artificially wrought, and paynted. When they are shut, they seeme to differ nothing from ours in forme. In these bookes are furthermore comprehended theyr lawes, rytes of ceremonies and sacrifices, annotations of Astronomie, accomptes, computations of tymes, with the maner of graffynge, sowing, and other thynges parteynnyng to husbandry. They begyn the yeere from the goyng downe of the seauen starres, called *Vergilia*, or *Pleiades*, and count theyr monethes accordyng to the mones. They name a moneth, *Tona*, of the Doone, for in theyr language they call the Doone *Tona*. They reckon the dayes by the sonnes: therefore as many dayes as they name, they saye, so many sonnes, the Sonne in theyr tongue, is called *Tonatico*. They distribute the yeere (without any reason why) into twentie monethes, and the moneth into as many dayes. The temples whiche they frequent, they adourne with golden hangynges, and other ornaments of golde and syluer, with precious stones intermyxt. At the spryng of the day, they perfume theyr temples with frankensence, and make theyr prayers before they take in hand any other busynesse. But oh horrible crueltie: for the inhabitantes of al these tractes also, do sacrifice chyldren to their Idoles, in lyke maner as we haue sayde before. At suche tyme as the seedes lye in the ground, and when the corne begynneth to shewe forth the eare, they destinate to theyr *Zemes* suche bondmen as they haue bought, or such captiues as they haue taken in the warres, which they sacrifice after that they haue made them great cheare, and decked them in precious apparell. Also before they sacrifice these poore wretches, they leade them about the towne, whyle al the people salute them humbly and reuerently, affyrmyng that in short space they shalbe receyued into the company of the gods. They honour theyr *Zemes*, with another sharpe kynde of deuotion: for they let them selues blood, eyther in the tongue, lips, eares, legges, thyghes, or brest, which they take in theyr handes, and hurle it vp towards heauen, so that with the fall thereof the pauement of the temple is all sparckled with blood, whereby they thynke that theyr goddes are well pleased. From the newe colonie (called *Villa Ricca*) niene myles

Temples  
richely adoured.

Prayer.

They sacrifice  
chyldren and  
captiues.

A wrong way  
to heauen.

Bloody gods.

*Villa Ricca*.

mples distant, there is a towne of .xv. thousande houses, whiche  
 the inhabitants call *Cemobal*, but our men named it *Siuilla*. The  
 kyng of this towne had syue men which he reserued to be sacrificy-  
 ced, whom when our men would haue deliuered, the kyng made  
 humble request to them, saying that if they tooke away such men  
 as hee had consecrated to bee offered to the goddess, they should  
 bring bitter destruction to him and all his kyngdome : For if  
 our sacrifices (sayde hee) doe cease, our *Zemes* will take such  
 displeasure with vs, that they will suffer our corne, grasse,  
 and fruites, to bee consumed of wormes, scorched with drought,  
 destroyed with flooddes, or blasted with lychtning . Our  
 men perceyving his earnestnesse heerein, thought it best to  
 choose the least euill, perceyving that it was yet no tyme to  
 disquiet theyr myndes, and therefore suffered them to exercise  
 their accustomed ceremonies . And although theyr priestes  
 promise them immortall glorie, eternall felicity, and perpe-  
 tuall conuersation with the goddess after the stormie dayes of  
 this lyfe, yet doe they with heauy countenances giue care to  
 their promises, and had rather bee set at libertie. Their priestes  
 are named *Quines*, in the plurall number, and *Quin* in the sin-  
 gular : they leade a pure and chaste lyfe, and are honoured of the  
 people with feare and reuerence . They make faggottes of the  
 bones of their enemies which they haue taken in the warres, and  
 hang by the same at the feete of theyr *Zemes*, as tokens of the  
 victories obteyned by their fauour. To these they adde certaine  
 titles and superscriptions, as testimonies of the same . This is  
 straunge and woorthy to be noted, that when their children are  
 a yere olde, the priestes in their temples with deuout ceremo-  
 nies and murmuring wordes, putte water in forme of a crosse  
 vpon their heades with a cruet, whereby they seeme to baptise  
 them : Neether doe they, as the Jewes and Turkes, thinke  
 their temples polluted if any of a straunge religion bee present  
 at their sacrifices and other solemnities . We haue now spoken  
 sufficiently of theyr bookes, temples, and superstitions : Let  
 vs nowe therefore come to the other presentes which were  
 brought to the kyng . Among these, there were two boade  
 and rounde plates (whiche some haue named the Images of  
 the Sunne and Moone) the one of siluer, and the other of golde,

*Siuilla Noua.*

The force of an  
older error.

Their priests  
pure chaste.

Faggottes of  
bones.

A figure of  
baptisme.

The presentes  
sent into  
Spayne to the  
king.  
Two Images  
of golde and  
siluer.



in largenesse and roundnesse muche lyke to the stones of handemylles : yet but thynne, and in maner both of one circumference, that is. xxviii. spannes in circuite . That of golde is of the weyght of thre thousande and viii. hundred Castellanes, where as we haue sayd befoze þ a Castellane is a coyne of golde which weygheth moze then a Ducate by a trident, that is, the thyrde parte of a pounde . In the center of this, was the Image of a kyng of halfe a cubite long, sytting in a trone, and apparelled to the knee lyke vnto a maiemet, with suche countenaunce as our paynters are wont to paynte fayries or spytes : about the Image, were the shapen of trees and floures, so that it seemed to sitte as though it had been in a feelde . The other of syluer, was made to the same similitude, beyng also in maner of the same weyght, and both of pure mettall . They brought lyke wyse certayne graynes of rude golde (that is, suche as was neuer molten) about the bygnesse of Fythes, or the pulle called Linels, in token of plentie of natie golde : Also two cheynes of golde, whereof the one conteyned. viii. lynkes, in the which were set two hundred, threescore, and two fayre and cleare redde stones, and yet no rubies, furthermoze a hundred fourescore and thre greene stones, and yet no emerodes : Neuerthelesse, these are in lyke estimation with them, as the other are with vs . At the edge of this cheyne, there hang. xvii. golden belles, haupng betweene euery of them foure iewels of precious stones inclosed in golde, at euery of the which in lyke maner hang certayne spangles of golde . The other cheyne consisteth onely of foure golden lynkes, beset rounde about with a hundred and two redde stones, and a hundred threescore & twelue greene stones, with. xvi. golden belles, curiously wrought and placed in comely order . In the very myddest of the cheyne, are ten great precious stones inclosed in gold, at the which also hang a hundred golden pendauntes, of cunning woorkemanshypppe. They brought furthermoze twelue paire of lether buskymmes of diuers colours, some imbrodered with golde, and some with siluer, with plates and iewels of golde and precious stones inclosed, and at euery of them certayne golden belles : Also certayne myters, beset with precious stones of dyuers colours, among the whiche some are blewe lyke vnto Saphires . Of

Two cheynes  
of golde mar-  
ueylously beset  
with precious  
stones and  
jewelles.

Buskymms.

Myters.

treffes, girdles, and fannes made of feathers, I wot not what I  
 shoul'd say : but surely, if euer the wytes and inuentions of men  
 haue deserued honour or commendation in suche artes, these  
 seeme most woorthy to bee had in admiration . I doe not mar-  
 uelle at golde and precious stones , but am in maner astonysht  
 to see the woorkemanshyy excell the substance : For I haue  
 with woonderyng eyes behelde a thousande fourmes and simili-  
 tudes, of the whiche I am not able to wyte, and in my iudge-  
 ment I neuer sawe any thyng whose beautie myght so allure  
 the eyes of men . As they marueyled at the naturall beautie of  
 the feathers of our peacockes and pheasantes, so dyd we no lesse  
 marueyle at the artificiall beautie of suche thinges as they make  
 of fethers and quilles, impaled with golde : For I sawe in many  
 of theyy workes, all maner of natieue colours, euen in the quilles,  
 whereof they make such instrumentes . They brought also two  
 helmes, garnysht with precious stones of a whitish blew  
 colour : One of these is edged with belles and plates of golde,  
 and vnder euery bell two knobbes of golde : the other, besyde  
 the stones wherewith it is coterred, is lykewyse edged with xvj.  
 golden belles and knobbes, and hath on the crest a greene bird,  
 with the feete, byll, and eyes, of golde : Also foure speares, much  
 lyke vnto troute speares, or peece speares, the wood whereof is  
 all couered with quilles of diuers colours, marueylously weat-  
 hed with golden wyers, and plates intermyrte : Euery of these  
 speares haue thre pikes, whose edges or teeth are all of precious  
 stones, made fast with wyers of golde . Of lyke woorkemanship  
 they brought a great scepter, beset with precious stones & belles  
 of golde : also a braselet of golde, and shooes made of a hartes  
 skynne, sowd and imbrodered with golden wyers, with a white  
 sole beneath : Furthermore a glasse of a bygght blew stone, and  
 an other of white, both enclosed in golde : Lykewyse a precious  
 stone, of the kynde of them that are called *Sphinges*, inclosed in  
 gold : Furthermore the head of a great Lisarte, two great shelles,  
 two Duckes, the shapen of diuers other birds, foules, and fyllhes,  
 and all of massie golde : Furthermore, xliiii. rounde and square  
 targettes, sheldes, and buckelers of golde, and fyue of syluer : Al-  
 so a triple crowne of plates and wyers of golde, marueylously  
 weathed with quilles and feathers of diuers colours, hauyng

How can we  
 then call them  
 beastly or Bar-  
 barous?

If they had  
 chaunged the  
 golde for our  
 Iron, they had  
 not so soone  
 been subdued.

Quylls.

Helmets.

A byrd.

Speares.

A scepter.

A braselet.  
 Shooes.

Glasse.

Byrds, foules,  
 and fyllhes, of  
 golde.  
 A crowne of  
 golde.

on the front a plate of golde, on the which is grauen the Image of the Idole *Zemes*. About this Image, hang foure other plates, lyke crosse of golde, in the which are grauen the heades of diuers beastes, as Lions, Tigers, Woolues, and suche other. They brought also the similitudes of certayne beastes, made some of roddes or twygges, and some of woodde, with the beastes owne skynnes thereon, and garnished with coliers of laton belles: Lykewyle diuers sheetes, weaued of gossampyne cotton of sundry colours, whereof two are ryche lynged with golde and precious stones, and three other with quilles and feathers intermyxte with gossampine cotton of sundry colours, and checkered lyke the panes of a chest boorde: Some are on the one side, of blacke, white, and redde colours, and on the other syde plaine, without any varietie: Other some are wrought in lyke maner with variable colours, with a wheele or circle of blacke in the myddest, intermyxte with shynning fethers, and sparkes of golde lyke starres: They brought also cloth of Aras or Verdure, of marueylous workemanshpype: Lykewyle a souldiers cloake, such as their princes weare in the warres, with certayne priuie coates of fence, and sundry tirements parteynyng to their heads, with also many such other thinges, moze beautiful to the eye then ryche or precious, whereof to entreate particulerly, it shoulde be moze tedious then profitable. I let passe heere also to speake of many particuler nauigations, and of the trauailes and daungers which they susteyned in the same, with the monsters and secretes of nature they sawe, which are all conteyned in the registers of our Senate of the assayres of India, out of the which I haue selected these fewe annotations, such as seemed to mee most meete to bee published. Notwithstandyng these ryche and goodly presentes, yet were they that brought them, and also *Corisus* the gouernour of the naue, and auchour of erecting their newe colonie in those remote regions, adiudged by the Senate to haue done agaynst ryght and equitie, in that they attempted the same without the aduice of the gouernour of the Island of *Cuba*, who sent them forth by the kyngs auctoritie, whereas they dyd other thinges beside their commission, yea although they went to the kyng, not first knowing his pleasure whom the kyng had substitute his

Images of  
beastes.

Sheetes.

Cloth of Aras

A souldiers  
cloake.

Registers of  
challanyes of  
India.

Auctoritie  
of the Lieutenants.

Lieut.

Lieutenante in that Ilande: insomuch that by his procuratour, he accused them before the Senate as fugitiue theeves and traytours. They on the other part alleaged, that they had done the kyng better service then he, & that they had shewed sufficient obedience, in appealyng to the kyng as the hygher Iudge. But the gouernour required by the vertue of his commission, & the kinges letters pattentes, that they myght be beheaded for their disobedience against him, whom they knewe to bee aucthorised by the kyng. They agayne replied, that they had not offended the kyng, but rather deserved rewarde for their great daungers and trauailes. Both the reward and punishment were deferred, and a day appointed when both parties should be heard. Let vs nowe therefore come to the Spanyardenes of *Dariena*, inhabitants of the gulfe of *Vraba*, in the supposed continent. Wee haue sayde before, that *Dariena* is a ryuer runnyng towarde the West syde of the gulfe of *Vraba*: On the banke of this ryuer, the Spanyardenes planted their first colonie or habitation, after they had vanquished kyng *Chemaccus*: this colonie they named *Sancta Maria Antiqua*, by reason of a howe which they made to the virgine *Marie* in the tyme of the battaile against *Chemaccus*. To these (as wee haue made mention in the ende of our *Decades*) was *Petrus Arias* sent with a thousand and two hundred men, at the request of *Vaschus Nunnez Balboa*, who was then the gouernour of *Dariena*, and the first that found and discouered the large South sea heretofore unknowne. Wee haue also declared, how at the arrivall of *Petrus Arias* the newe gouernour, hee diuided his armie into Centurions, that is, captaines ouer hundreds, whom hee sent forth dyuers wayes. What tragedies folowed heereof, I will absolue in fewe wordes, bycause all are horrible and vnpleasunt: For since we synished our *Decades*, there hath beene none other then kyngs, sleying, murderynge, and accusing. The kyng made *Vaschus* gouernour but durynge his pleasure. His courage was such, and his factes so notorizous, that hee could not long abyde the haughtynesse of *Petrus Arias*. To bee breefe, their falling out and discorde, confounded all thinges. *Iohn Cacedus* the pulpit fryer of the order of *Saint Frances*, dyd his vttermost endeitour to make them friends, promysing vnto *Vaschus*, the daughter of *Petrus Arias* to wyfe. But no meanes could be founde how these

The Spanyardenes of *Dariena*.

*Sancta Maria Antiqua*.

*Petrus Arias* whom the Spanyardenes name *Pedias Arias*.

This sea the Spanyardenes call *Mar del Sur*.

Contention betwene *Vaschus* and *Petrus Arias*.



*Petrus Arias*  
commaundeth  
that *Vaschus*  
be put to death.

*Vaschus* is  
accused,

*Vaschus* is put  
to death.

*Petrus Arias.*

*Lupus Sofa.*

two, whiche bore the chiefe rule, myght bee brought to agree-  
ment. At the length the matter grew to such extremitie, that *Petrus Arias* fyndyng occasion of quarelluyng agaynst *Vaschus*, sent  
processe to the iudges of the towne, whereby he commaun-  
ded them to strangle *Vaschus*, and fyue other which were chiefe  
captaines vnder him, alleagyng that they and their confederates  
conspired to rebell in the South sea, and that *Vaschus* him selfe  
for that intent had buydded and furnished foure shippes, to searcho  
the south coastes of the supposed continent: also, that to his three  
hundred souldiers and companions which hee had with him, he  
should speake wordes of this effecte as foloweth. My friends,  
and felowes of my long paynes and trauayles, howe long shall  
wee bee subiecte to the commaundement of other, syth we haue  
bydden the hunte, and ouercome thinterpryse for the whiche  
this newe gouernour was sent with so great a multitude? Who  
can any longer abyde his pryde and insolencie? Let vs there-  
fore folowe these coastes whither so euer fortune shall dyue vs,  
and among these so many pleasaunt and fruitfull prouinces of  
this large lande, let vs choose one, in the whiche wee maye  
with libertie spende that portion of our lyues which yet remay-  
neth. Who can fynde vs, or shalbe able to profer vs violence?  
When these or the lyke wordes were declared to *Petrus Arias*,  
hee sent to the South partes for *Vaschus*, wplyng him by the  
vertue of his commission to repayre to him forthwith. *Vaschus*  
obeyed, and at his comyng was cast in pryson: yet constantly  
denying that euer hee intended any such thyng. Witness were  
brought agaynst him, and his wordes rehearsed from the begyn-  
nyng: To conclude, hee was iudged woorthy death, and was  
put to execution. And this is the rewarde wherewith the blynde  
goddesse oftentymes recompenseth such as haue susteyned great  
trauayles and daungers, to bee hyghly in her fauour. *Petrus Arias*  
leauyng hys wyfe in *Dariena*, embarked him selfe in  
the shippes left of *Vaschus*, to thintent to searcho those coastes:  
But whether hee bee returned or not, wee haue yet no certayne  
knowledge. He hath also his fortune. Yet is there an other go-  
uernour assigned, whose name is *Lupus Sofa*, the viceroie of  
the Ilandes of Canarie. What shall make *Petrus Arias* may haue  
if he returne, let good men iudge. There was nothing done vnder  
him

him woorthy glorie. Some thynke that hee was at the begin-  
 uping to slacke and negligent in his office, and not seuer in cor-  
 recting errors and misorders. But we will leaue him, and re-  
 hearse somewhat whereof we haue been lately informed, as tou-  
 ching the great and deepe ryuer of *Dabaiba*, the whiche for the  
 greatnesse and largenesse thereof, our men named *Grandis*, that  
 is, great, as we haue noted in our *Decades*. This ryuer falleth  
 into the furthest corner of the guite of *Praba* by seuen portes or  
 mouthes, as doth the ryuer of *Nilus* into the Egyptian sea, whose  
 large description you may also reade in our *Decades*. That the  
 mountaynes on euery syde about this ryuer are ryche in golde,  
 wee haue learned by thinformacion of th inhabitants, of whom  
 wee made diligent inquisition. *Vaschus*, and besyde him other  
 gouernours and Lieutenantes, haue fouretymes entred into  
 this ryuer with theyr armie in battayle array, and with dy-  
 ners kyndes of shippes, fyrst for the space of fourtie myles, then  
 fyftie, and at the last fourescore, and at an other tyme also ouer-  
 thwarte the ryuer. Oh shamefull chaunce, and detestable coward-  
 nesse of our men. A naked nation encountring with them that  
 had apparell, the armed against the vnarmed, had the ouerthrow  
 in maner in all conflictes, and were either all slayne or wounded.  
 They vse inuenomed arrowes, and are such experte archers, that  
 if they espy any place of theyr enemie bare or vnarmed, they will  
 not lyghly fayle to stryke him there. They vse also many dartes,  
 which in the tyme of the battayle they hurle so thicke a farre of,  
 that they take the lyght of the sunne from theyr enemies as it  
 were with a cloude. They haue lykewise brode & long swoordes,  
 made of a heauy and harde kyme of wood, wherewith they fight  
 fiercely neare at hand. *Vaschus* him selfe receiued many woundes  
 in encountring with them. And thus by reason of the fierce-  
 nesse of these Barbarians, the ryuer of *Dabaiba* is yet left vn-  
 searched. Wee will now speake somewhat moze of the Ilande  
 of *Hispaniola* (which the Spanyardes call *Spagnuola*) the mo-  
 ther and chiefe of all other landes or Ilandes wherof we entended  
 to write. In it the Senate is now restored, and fyue Iudges as-  
 signed to giue lawes to all th inhabitants of those tractes. But  
 in short tyme, they shall cease geathering of gold, although there  
 be great plentie, by reason they shall lacke labourers and my-  
 ners,

The great ry-  
uer of Daba-  
iba or Grandis.

The gulfe of  
Praba.

The ryche  
mountaynes  
of Dabaiba.

Fierce & war-  
like people.

Dartes.

Swoordes of  
heauy wood.

Hispaniola.  
Guliedus wy-  
teth that there  
are now fyue  
monasteries.

ners, forasmuch as the inhabitants whose helpe they used beere in, are brought to a small number, consumed partly by warre, and many more by famine that yeere that they dygged vp the rootes whereof they made theyr best bread, and lesse of sowynge their grayne of *Maiizium*, which is their common foode, suppling hereby to haue dyuened our men out of the Islande, who had victayles sent them from Spayne. A great number of them also dyed of new and straunge diseases, which in the yeere of Christ a thousande fyue hundred and eightiene, consumed them lyke rotten sheepe. And (to say the trueth) our mens vnfaciable desyre of golde, so oppressed these pooze wretches with extreme labour and toyle, where as before they lyued pleasantly and at libertie, gyuen onely to playes and pastymes, as daunsyng, fshyng, soulyng, and huntynge of little Cunnies, that many of them perished euen for very angryshe of mynde, the which (with theyr vnaccustomed labour) are thinges of them selues sufficient to engender many newe diseases. But the kyng and the Senate haue nowe determyned, that they bee reduced to a people, and to gyue them selues onely to increase, and tyllage of the grounde: and that onely suche as are bought or taken out of other regions, be appoynted to labour in the gold mynes. But it shall suffice to haue sayde thus muche of the pestiferous hunger of golde: therfore I wil speake of other matters. It is a marueylous thyng to consider how all thinges increase and prosper in this Islande. There are nowe .xxviii. suger presses, where with great plentie of suger is made. The canes or reedes wherein the suger groweth, are hygger and hygger then in any other place, and are as hygge as a mans arme in the brawne, and hygger then the stature of a man, by the halfe. This is moze wonderfull, that where as in Valentia in Spayne (where a great quantitie of suger is made. yeerely) where so euer they applye them selues to the great increase thereof, yet doeth euery roote byng sooth not past fyue, or syxe, or at the most seuen of those reedes: whereas in *Hispaniola* one roote beareth twentie, and oftentimes thirtie. Foure footed beastes and cataple, are marueylously increased in this Islande. And albeitt that the rauenyng hunger of golde hath hitherto greatly hyndered our men from tyllage of the grounde, yet is there great plentie

newe and  
straunge diseases.

The suger of  
*Hispaniola*.

Suger of Valentia.

20 token of  
marueylous  
fruitfulness.

type of wheate, whiche prospereth so well, that it yeeldeth some  
 tyme a hundred folde, and this especially on the hylles or <sup>wheat.</sup>  
 rydges of the mountaynes prospectyng toward the North:  
 Vines doo also encrease here with no lesse fruitefulness. What <sup>vines.</sup>  
 shoulde I speake of the trees that beare *Cassia fistula*, brought <sup>Cassia Fis-</sup>  
 fyrst into this Islande from the other Islandes neere vnto the <sup>tula.</sup>  
 supposed Continent, as we haue noted in our Decades: There  
 is nowe suche plentie hereof, that after a fewe yeeres we shall  
 haue a pounce of the pryce that we paye nowe for an ounce.

Of the Brasyle, and Piobalane trees, with other innume-  
 rable prerogatiues and benefytes which nature hath plen-  
 tifully geuen to this blessed Islande, we haue spoken  
 sufficiently in our Decades. Yet haue I thought good  
 to repeate parte of the same, because I thynke  
 that the wittes of many readers haue diuer-  
 ted from the weight of great affaires,  
 to the recordation of such pleasaunt  
 thynges: And yet do not such thin-  
 ges as are sauerie, engender  
 tediousnesse, so that a pre-  
 cious matter be adour-  
 ned with a pretious  
 besture.

Brasyle.  
 Piobalanes.

(.)



# A breefe rehearſal of the contentes

of the bookes of the fyrſt Decade, and ſo folowynge  
of all the other Decades.  
Folio .8.

**I**N the fyrſt booke is declared howe Chriſtophorus Colonus, otherwyſe called Columbus, perſuaded Fernando and Elizabeth princes of Spayne, to further his attempt in ſearchynge newe and unknowen landes in the Weſt Ocean. Alſo of the vii. Ilandes of Canaria, by whom they were found and conquered.

Howe Colonus founde the Ilandes of Hiſpaniola, and Cuba, and of the fierce people called Canibales or Caribes, which are accustomed to eate mans fleſhe.

Of the rootes called Ages, Iucca, and the grayne Maizium, whereof the people of the Ilandes made theyr bread.

Of the golde found in the landes of ryuers, & of the Serpents which are without hurt: alſo of turtle doves, ducks, & poppingaies.

Of Baſtir, and Aloe, with dyuers fruites and trees unknowne to vs, and of the fruitefulneſſe of the Ilande of Hiſpaniola, which the Spanyardes call Spagnuola.

Of the ſeconde viage of Colonus into theſe regions, and howe he was furniſhed with .xvii. myppes, and a thouſande and two hundred ſouldiers, with all kynde of artillarie, artificers, and grayne to ſowe: and of the tree from the which water droppeth continually into a trench made by mans hande.

*The contentes of the ſeconde booke. Fol. 12.*

**H**OWE Colonus departing from the Ilandes of Canarie, ſayled viii. hundred & twentie leagues in .xvi. daies, & came to Dominica an Iland of the Canibales: & of the fragrant ſauoure of ſpices whiche proceeded from the Ilandes.

Of the Ilandes of Galanta or Galana and Guadalupea, and of the trees which beare that kynde of cotton which the Italians call Bombaſine, and the Spanyardes Algodon.

Of dyuers kyndes of Poppingaies, and of the Ilande of Matinino or Madanino, beyng inhabited onely with women: alſo of dyuers other fruitfull Ilandes, and of a conflict whiche the Spanyardes had with the Canibales.

Of

Of certayne Ilandes in the whiche are seene the mynes of metals and precious stones, and of the fruitfull and populous Island called *Buribena*, or *Boriquen*, or *Insula. S. Iohannis*,

Howe all the Admirals men whiche at his fyrst viage he left in *Hispaniola*, were slaine in his absence by the rebellion of *Guacacanarillus*, kyng of the region of *Xamana*: and of the free kynde of lye whiche they leade that haue not the vse of money.

Of the seuen maydens which swam thre miles in the sea, and of the maner of geathering of gold in the sands of riuers.

*The contentes of the thyrd booke. Fol. 17.*

**A** Particuler discription of the Island of *Hispaniola*, whiche *Colonus* thynketh to be *Ophir*, from whence kyng *Salomon* had his great ryches of golde.

Of the marueylous fruitfulnessse of *Hispaniola*, and of the sugar canes growyng there.

Of the golden regions of *Cipanga* or *Cibana*, & of the ryuers in whose sandes is founde great plentie of golde.

Of certayne graynes of gold of exceeding great quantitie.

Of wilde vines of plesaunt taste, and of grasse which in foure dayes groweth as hygh as wheate.

Of the Ilande of *Iohanna* or *Cuba*, being the end of the East and the West, and of the fruitfull & populous Island of *Iamaica*.

Howe the Admirall thought that he had sayled about the lowest Hemisphere or half circle of the earth, and of a secrete of *Astronomie* touching the same matter.

Howe the Admirall gaue names to seuen hundred Ilandes, and passed by thre thousand vnnamed.

Of certayne serpentes like vnto *Crocodiles* of eight foote long, whose flesh is delicate to be eaten, and of certayne trees whiche beare *Gourdes*,

Of the riuer whose water is very hote, and of the huntynge fysh which taketh other fyshes.

Of great abundaunce of *Toxoples* as bygge as targets, and of a fruitfull mountayne well iuhabited.

Of dogges of deformed shape and dumbe, and of white and thicke water.

Of woods of *Date trees*, and *Pyneapple trees*, and of certayne people apparelled lyke whyte fryers.

**Of**

## The contentes of the bookes

Of certaine trees which beare spices, and of Cranes of exceeding hygnesse.

Of stocke doves of more pleasaunt taste then partriches.

An oration of a barbarous governour as touching the immortallitie of the soule: Also of the rewarde of vertue, and punishment of vice.

A similitude of the golden worlde, and of prouision without care.

Howe the Admirall fell sicke by reason of to muche watching, and of a sedition whiche rose among the Spaniards in the Ilande of Hispaniola.

*The Contentes of the fourth booke. Fol. 25.*

**H**OW the kynges of the Ilande of Hispaniola, were by the Spaniards misbehauour prouoked to rebellion, and howe the Admirall sent for them.

Howe kyng Counaboa the Lorde of the house of gold, that is, of the mountaines of Cibaua, conspired the Admirals death, and how he with his familie were taken prisoners.

Of a great famine that chaunced in the Ilande of Hispaniola, and howe the Admirall builded certayne fortresses.

Of a peece of rude gold wagghing twentie vnces, and of the myne of the rich metall called *Electrum*.

Of the mountayne in the whiche is founde great plentie of Amber and Orpement: and of the woodes of Brasyle trees.

Howe the inhabitantes are put to theyr tribute, and how the nature of y<sup>e</sup> Region disposeth the maners of the people.

How the brother of kyng Caunaboa came agaynst the Admirall with an armie of syue thousand naked men, and howe he was taken, and his armie put to flight.

Of the fruitfull vale *Magona*, in the sandes of whose ryuers is founde great plentie of golde: and of certayne whirlwindes and tempests.

Howe the Admirall sent forth his brother Bartholomeus Columbus with an armie of men to searche the golde mynes, and of the flosses which he founde to haue been dygged in old tyme.

*The Contentes of the .v. booke. Fol. 27. for 29.*

**H**OWE the Lieutenante builded a fortress in the golde mines, and prepared instrumentes for the purging and firing

nyng of the golde.

Howe certayne thypes laden with vittayles, came from Spayne : And howe the Lieuetenannt sent the kynges whiche rebelled, with thre hundred captiues into Spayne.

Howe the Liefetenaunt remoued his habitation, and buyded a fortreffe whiche he called saint Dominickes towre, also howe he passed ouer the ryuer Maiba, and entred into the wooddes of Brasyle trees.

Howe the great kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, frendelye entertayned the Lieuetenannt, and brought hym to his pallace, where the kynges wyues and concubines receyued hym honozably with pompes and triumphes.

Of the fortresses whiche were erected in Hispaniola, and howe the Lieuetenannt exacted tribute of the kynges whiche rebelled agayne.

Howe the Lieuetenannt set vppon the kynges vnwares in the nyght season, and tooke .xiii. of them prysoners.

Howe kyng *Guarionexius*, captayne of the conspiracie, was pardoned, and howe he perswaded the people to obedience.

Howe kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, sent messengers to the Lieuetenannt to repayre to his pallace, where he founde .xxii. kyngs redy with theyr tributes: And howe the queene *Anacaona* entyled hym to eate of the Serpentes fleshe.

Howe the Serpentes fleshe is prepared to be eaten, and howe delicate meate theyr egges are if they be sodden.

Howe queene *Anacauchoa*, syster to kyng *Beuchius Anacauchoa*, entertained þe Liefetenannt, & gaue him much household stuffe, and many vessels of Hebene wodd artificially wrought & carued.

Howe kyng *Anacauchoa* and the queene his syster went a boorde the Lieuetenantes thyppe, and howe greatly they were amased to beholde the furniture therof.

Howe *Roldanus Xeminus* a Spanyarde, rebelled in the Lieuetenantes absence, by whose mysdemeanour also kyng *Guarionexius* was prouoked to a newe conspiracie, and with hym *Maïobanexius* the kyng of the mountaynes.

*The contentes of the syxt booke. Foli. 35.*

**T**He thyrd biage of Colonus, & howe he diuerced from his accustomed rase by the Islandes of Canarie to the Island of *Maderag.*



## The contentes of the bookes

*Madera*, for feare of certayne frenche pirates and routers.

Of the .xiii. Ilandes whiche in olde tyme were called *Hesperides*, and are now called the Ilandes of *Caput Viride*, or *Caboverde*. Also of the Coxtoples of the Ilande of *Bonauiſta*, where with the leper is healed.

Howe the Admiral found contagious ayre and extreme heate neere the Equinoctial, where the north pole was eleuate onely fyue degrees, and howe ſaylyng from thence weſtwarde, he founde the ſtarres placed in other order, and the ſea rylyng as it were the backe of a mountayne.

Howe the Admiral ſaylyng weſtwarde, and neuer paſſyng out of the clyme or paralels of *Ethiophe*, founde a temperate Region, and people of goodly corpozature: and what difference is betwene the natures of Regions beyng vnder one paralele and one eleuation of the pole.

Of the Ilandes of *Putā* and *Margarita*, and of the ſwyfte courſe or fall of the Ocean from the Eaſt to the Weſt.

Of the gulfe called *Oſ Draconis*, and of the conflict betwene the freſhe water and the ſalte.

Of a ſea of freſhe water, and a mountayne inhabited onely with *Honkpes* and *Harmalettes*.

Of the ſayre, ryche, and large region of *Paria*, and howe friendly inhabitants entreated the Admirall and his men.

Also of pleaſaunt wyne made of dyuers frutes, and of great abundaunce of pearles and golde.

Of the regions of *Cumana*, *Manacapana*, & *Curiana*, being regions of ſ large prouince of *Paria*, & of ſ ſea of hearbes or weeds.

A certayne ſecrete as touchyng the pole ſtarres, and the eleuation of the ſame, alſo of the roundneſſe of the earth.

Of the mountaynes of *Paria*, in the toppes wherof *Colonus* earneſtly affirmeth the earthly paradife to be ſituate, and whether *Paria* be parte of the firme land or continent of *India*.

*The contentes of the .vii. booke. Fol. 39.*

**H**owe *Roldanus Xeminus* with his confederates, accuſed the Admirall to the kyng, and howe he poured hym ſelfe, and accuſed them.

Howe kyng *Guarionexius* rebelled agayne, and with hym kyng *Maiobannexius*: alſo howe they with other kynges came

came agaynst the Lieutenantaunt with an armie of epght thousande naked and paynted *Ciguanians* : also two rare examples of frendshyp and faythfulnesse in barbarous princes.

Howe *Colonus* the Admirall and the Lieutenan his brother were sent bound into Spayne. and newe officers appoynted in theyr places.

*The contentes of the eight booke. Fol. 43.*

**T**He nauigation of *Petrus Alphonsus* from Spayne to *Paria*, where in the region of *Curiana*, he had in short space .xv. ounces of pearles, & great plenty of victuals, for haukes belles, pinnes, loking glasses, and such other tryfles.

Of certayne coniectures whereby *Paria* is thought to be part of the fyne land, & of the golden region of *Cauchieta*, where in the moneth of Nouember the ayre is temperate and not colde.

How *Alphonsus* had a conflict with the *Canibales*, and how they are accustomed to inuade other countreys.

Of great abundaunce of salt in the region of *Haraia*, and how the dead bodies of theyr princes are dyed, reserved, and religiously honoured.

Howe *Alphonsus* at his returne to Spayne from *Curiana*, brought with him threescore & sixteene pounce weyght of pearles, whiche he bought for our tryfles, amountyng only to the value of fyue shillinges.

*The contentes of the nienth booke. Fol. 47.*

**T**He nauigation of *Vincentius Pinzonus* and *Aries Pinzonus*, and howe they sayled beyond the Equinoctiall line, lost the syght of the north starre, and founde the starres in other order.

Howe *Vincentius* passing the Equinoctial toward the South pole, founde fierce and warlyke people of great stature, and of the sea of freshe water.

Howe *Vincentius* directing his course towarde the North-west from the Equinoctiall, recovered the syght of the North-pole, and by the regions of *Mariatambal*, *Camomorus*, and *Pericora*, came to the fayre and ryche prouince of *Paria*, and to the regions of *Os draconis*, *Cumana*, *Manacapana*, *Curiana*. &c.

A coniecture that *Paria* (wherby is ment that mayne lande nowe called *America*) shoulde be part of the fyne lande or continens

## The contentes of the bookes

timent of India, beyonde the riuer of *Ganges* & no Island, and of the exceeding great riuer *Marignonus* replenished with Islandes.

Of *Boriostomea* and *Spiriostomea*, the mouches of the famous ryuer of *Dunabius* called in old tyme *Ister*, and of the commodities of the regions and Islandes about *Paria*: also of the woods of *Bzasilie* trees.

Of many fruitfull Islandes wasted and left desolate by reason of the *Canibales* crueltie, and of the trees of *Cassia Fistula*: also of other trees of exceeding bygnesse.

The discription of a certayne monstrous beast, and howe *Vincentius* lost two of his shypps by tempest.

Howe *Vincentius* at his returne to Spaine, brought with hym *Cinamome*, *Ginger*, and certayne precious stones called *Copales*: And of the nauigations of certayne other inhabitants of the towne of *Palos*.

Of the precious medicine called *Anima Album*, and of the diuers superstitions of the inhabitauntes of *Hispniola*: also of theyr *Idolatrie*, and howe they honour the Images of deuylles, whiche they call *Zemes*.

*The Contentes of the tenth booke. Fol. 54.*

Of great plentie of gold, pearles, and frankensence, founde in the regions of *Paria*, and of innumerable beastes in shape differing from ours.

Howe the Spaniardes proffered them selues to conquere the new founde landes, beyng in largenesse thyrse as great as *Europe*, belyde the South landes parteynyng to the *Portingales*, and howe the nature of the place altereth the fourmes and qualities of thynges.

Of the Islande of *Cuba*, and of the golde mynes of the Islande of *Sancti Iohannis*, otherwyle called *Burichena*, or *Euchena*. Also of the ryche gold mynes of *Hispantiola*, and of the order of workyng in the same.

Of the two chiefe golde mynes of *Hispantiola*, and of a peece of golde weighing thre thousande thre hundred and ten pounde weyght.

Howe the gold is fined and distributed, and howe that only in the melting shoppes of the two golden mines of *Hispantiola*, is molten peerelely aboue thre hundred thousand pounde weight of gold.

Howe

Howe the enterpysses of the Spanyardes are not inferiour to thactes of *Saturnus* or *Hercules*, and howe the Admirall discovered the lande ouer agaynst the West corner of *Cuba*, and the Ilande of *Guanassa*.

The Contentes of the bookes of  
the seconde Decade.

*The contentes of the fyrst booke. Fol. 57.*

**H**OW after the death of *Colonus* the Admirall, the kyng gaue free lycence to all such as would attempt any vyages, and of the nauigations of *Diego Nicuesa*, and *Alphonfus Fogeda*.

Of the Ilande *Codego* and the region of *Caramairi*, and of certayne sweete apples which turne into woozmes when they are eaten, whose trees are also contagious.

How *Alphonfus Fogeda*, the Lieuutenaut of *Vraba*, encoûtring with the Barbarians, had the ouerthrowe, and howe in this conflict e sytie of his men were slayne, with *Iobannes de la Cossa* their captayne.

Howe *Fogeda*, and *Nicuesa* the Lieuutenaut of *Beragua*, reuenged the death of theyr companyons, and howe *Fogeda* came to the Ilande *Fortis* and the region of *Caribana*, where he was repulled from the golde mynes by the fiercenesse of the Barbarians, blyng arrowes infected with poyson.

Howe *Fogeda* was wounded in the thygh with a venemous arrowe, and his men almost consumed with fainyne.

Howe a Brigantyne was drowned with the stroke of a Fythe : and of the nauigation of *Ancifus* from *Hispaniola* to *Vraba*.

Of the lamentable shipwracke of *Ancifus*, and of the Date trees and wylde Bozes which he founde.

Of the fruites or apples of the trees called *Cedars* of *Libane*, which beare olde fruites and new all the yecre.

Howe onely three of the Caniballes with their bowes and inueniomed arrowes assailed *Ancifus* with a hundred of his men, in which conflict they wounded and slue many; also, of their swiftnesse of foote.



## The contentes of the booke

Of the great ryuer of *Dariena*, and howe *Ancifus* encountered with fyue hundred of chynhabitauntes of the gulse of *Vraba*, and put them to flyght: also, how he founde great plentie of wroughthe golde and houtholde stuffe in a thycket of reedes.

*The contentes of the second booke. Fol. 63.*

**H**Owe *Nicuesa* lost his felowes in the darke nyght, and went past the mouth of the ryuer *Beragua* which he sought, & howe the captaynes of the other thypyes consulted howe to fynde him: also, of the ryuer *Lagartos* in the which great *Lisartes* are found, much lyke vnto the *Crocodiles* of *Nilus*.

Howe the captaynes forsooke theyr thypyes, that the soulyers myght bee without hope of departure, and of the miserable chaunce of *Petrus de Vmbria* and his felowes.

By what chaunce *Nicuesa* was founde, and of the calamities which he and his company susteyned: also, of the region of *Gracia Dei* or *Cerabaro*, and of the ryuer of *Sancti Matthei*.

Howe *Nicuesa* caused them to remoue theyr habitation from *Beragua* to point *Marmor*, where he buylded a fortreffe, and how his men by warre and famyne, were consumed from seuen hundred and odde, to scarcely one hundred.

Howe one *Vaschus Nunnez* vsurped chaucthoritie of the *Lieutenanthypp* of *Vraba* in thablence of *Fogeda*, and of the nauigation of *Rodericus Colmenaris* from *Hispaniola* to *Vraba*.

Of the ryuer *Baira* descendyng from the toppe of a high mountayne couered with snow, and how *Rodericus Colmenaris* in a conflict agaynst the Barbarians, lost xlvii. of his men, by reason of theyr inuenomed arrowes.

Of the force of the popson wherewith the Barbarians infecte theyr arrowes, and a remedie for the same: also, howe *Colmenaris* by gunthet and kyndlyng fyers on the high toppes of the rockes, came to the *Spanyardes*, left desolate in *Dariena*.

*The contentes of the thyrde booke. Fol. 67.*

**H**Owe *Nicuesa* was sought forth to acquiet the contentions of *Vraba*, and howe he was agayne reiected.

Howe *Vaschus Nunnez* inuaded, tooke prysoners, and spoiled the kynges bordering about the region of *Vraba*, and howe  
*Ancifus*

*Ancifus* *Lieuetenant* for *Fogeda* was cast in pryson, and afterwarde set at libertie.

Howe *Ancifus* tooke his biage from *Vraba* to *Spayne*, to accuse *Vaschus*, who also at the same tyme sent *Valdiuia*, aswell to speake in his defence, as also to certifie the kyng of their doyngs.

Howe kyng *Careta* conspired with the *Spanyardes* agaynst kyng *Poncha*, whom they put to flyght, and spoyled his village.

Howe kyng *Comogrus* friendly enterterped the *Spanyardes*, and brought them to his pallace, where he shewed them the dyed carkases of his auncestours reserued, and sumptuously apparelled, and how the kynges elder sonne gaue *Vaschus* and *Colmenaris* foure thousande ounces of wrought golde, and fystie slaues: also, a wyttie oration which he made to the *Spanyardes*, wherein he certified them of a countrey exceedyng rych in golde. &c.

*The contentes of the fourth booke. Fol. 72.*

**O**F horryble thunder & lyghtnyng in the moneth of *November*, and of grayne which waxeth rypp thyse a yeere: also, howe digestion is strengthened by outwarde colde.

Howe *Valdiuia* is sent agayne into *Hispaniola*, to moue the gouernour and counsayle there to sende into *Spayne* to the kyng for a supplic of a thousande souluyers, to make way to the golden mountaynes, and howe he carped with him the kynges portion, that is, the fyst part of golde and other thinges.

Howe *Vaschus* invaded the kynges inhabytyng the regions about the guife of *Vraba*, and howe he put kyng *Dabaiba* to flyght, in whose village hee founde wrought golde, amountyng to the weyght of seuen thousande *Castellians*.

Of Battes as byg as *Turtle* dooues, which sometyme bite men in the nyght in theyr sleepe, whose byting is also venomous, but is healed with water of the sea, or by cauterization, as are also the woundes of venomous arrowes.

Of the *Ilande* of *Cannassitula*, and a towne of fyue hundred houses, whose kyng *Abenamachei* was taken, and his arme cutte of in the flyght.

Of trees of exceedyng bygnesse and heyght, and howe kyng *Abibeiba* had his pallace in the toppe of a tree, from the which he was inforced to descend and entreate of peace.

## The contentes of the bookes

*The contentes of the fyfth booke. Fol. 75.*

**H**Owe kyng *Abraiba* slue a captayne of the Spanyardes, and caused the kynges to rebell: also, how they were put to flight, and many of theyr men slayne.

Of fyue kynges which attempted a newe conspiracie with a hundred great Canoas, and fyue thousande men, and howe theyr intent was belwaped by a woman, and pvented: also, howe *Rodericus Colmenaris* sacked the village of *Ticbiri*, & hung the kyng thereof, with foure of his chiefe rulers, and commaunded them to be shotte through with arrowes.

*The contentes of the sixt booke. Fol. 77.*

**H**Owe *Vaschus* with his confederates, sent *Iohannes Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* from *Dariena* to *Hispaniola*, and from thence to Spayne to the kyng, for a thousand men to passe ouer the mountaynes to the golden regions, and what miseries they susteyned in that viage: also of the death of *Valdiuia*, *Zamudus*, and *Fogeda*.

Of the prosperous viage of *Ancifus*, and howe God wrought miracles by the simple sayth of a mariner: also, how God respecteth thinsancie of sayth for zeales sake, and howe one religion turned into another, holdeth styll many thinges of the fyrst.

Howe many of the Barbarians were baptised by reason of the miracles, and howe they rewarded the priestes by whom they were baptised.

Howe *Ancifus* shortly after his arryual in Spayne, resorted to the court, and made his complaynt to the kyng of thinsolencie of *Vaschus*, wherevppon the kyng gaue sentence against him, and how apt the Barbarous nations are to embrace the Christian sayth.

*The contentes of the seuenth booke. Fol. 81.*

**H**Owe *Quicedus* and *Colmenaris* the procuratours of *Dariena*, were honourably enterternyed at the court, and brought to the kynges presence, and howe theyr complexion was chaunged by alteration of the ayre.

Howe *Petrus Arias*, a noble man, was elected gouernour and Lieuetenaunt of *Dariena*, and howe other of the court laboured for the same office: also, howe the bishop of *Burges* spake to the kyng in his behalfe.

Howe *Petrus Arias* had a thousande and two hundred soul-  
dyers

dyers appoynted him at the kynges charges, and of the kynges custome house in the citie of *Ciuite*, called the house of the contractes of *India*.

Howe a great number of *Spanyarden* profered them selues to goe at theyr owne charges, and of a restraint made that no stranger myght passe without the kyngs licence: also, how the authour repproueth *Aloisius Cadamustus*, a wytyer of the *Portugales viages*.

Howe *Petrus Arias* shortly after his departure from *Ciuite*, lost two of his shyppes, and was dyuen backe agayne by tempest, and howe beyng newly furnished, he passed the Ocean with more prosperous wyndes.

The thyrd viage of *Vincentius Pinzonus*, and howe he came to the regions of *Paria*, where encountring with thynhabitauntes, he put them fyrst to flyght, but after falling to intreatie of peace, they gaue him great plentie of golde, and abundaunce of masculine frankensence, with dyuers other princely presentes.

Of the great multitude of *Dopingiayes* whiche are in the region of *Paria*, and howe thynhabitours are apparelled: also, of the fyue kynges that made a league of friendship with *Vincentius*.

Howe *Vincentius* sayled Eastwarde by the tracte of the region of *Paria*, vntyl he came to the poynt of that long lande, which the authour suppoeth to be the great *Ilande Atlantike*, wherof the olde wytyers make mention.

Cap. 5. August.

The contentes of the .viii. booke. Fol. 86.

A Contention betweene the *Castilians* and *Portugales*, as concerning the diuision of the new founde landes, and howe the controuerisie was fynished by the bishop of *Rome*.

Howe *Don Christopher* the gouernour of the *Ilande of Sancti Iohannis*, was slayne by the *Caniballes*, and the bishop put to flyght: also, of the other bishops of the *Ilandes*.

Howe the *Caniballes* of the *Ilande of Sancta Crux*, slue and ate a kyng, with certayne of his men, beyng frendes to the *Christians*, and made saggottes of theyr bones, and howe quarelling with our men, they put them to shewce.

Aa.iii.

The



## The contentes of the bookes

*The contentes of the .ix. booke. Fol. 87.*

**O**f the marueplous fruitfulnessse of the regions of *Beragua*, *Vraba*, and *Dariena*, and of the diuers kyndes of trees and fruites : also, of the pleasaunt taste of swynes fleshe, beyng fedde with the fruites of *Mirobalane* trees.

Of *Lions* and *Tygers*, and other wyld beasts, and of a beast of straunge fourme.

Of the ryuers of the gulfes of *Vraba*, as the ryuer of *Dariena* and *Rio Grandis*, and howe the great serpentes called *Crocodiles*, are founde in other ryuers besyde *Nilus* in *Egypt* : also, howe thauichour of this booke was sent Ambassadour to the Soldane of *Alcayr* in *Egypt*.

Of the *Portugales* nauigations, and of the ryuer *Senega* founde by them to bee a chanell of *Nilus* : also, of the multitude of byrds and foules being in the maryshes of *Dariena*.

A phylosophicall discourse of thoriginall and generation of springes and ryuers, and of the breadth of the lande diuidyng the North and South Ocean.

Of the great ryuer *Maragnonus*, and of the earthly *Paradyse*, and how springes are engendred by couertion of ayre into water.

Of the often fall of rayne vnder the Equinoctiall line, and of the pores of the sea opened by the South wyndes.

Of the great ryuers of *Tanais*, *Ganges*, *Danubius*, and *Eridanus*, famous to the olde wyters, and howe certayne ryuers runnyng through the caues of the earth, breake forth into springes a farre of.

*The contentes of the .x. booke. Fol. 91.*

**H**owe the newe founde landes discovered by the *Spaniards* in the West Ocean, are eyght tymes bigger then *Italie*, besyde that which the *Portugales* possesse, and of the cardes of the sea drawen by *Colonus* and *Americus Vesputius*.

The order of measuryng the lande, and howe a league containeth foure myles by sea, and but thre by lande.

The Nauigation of *Iohannes Dias*, and of the sundry eleuations of the pole starre.

Of the *Ilande* of *Boinea* or *Agnaneo*, and of the spring whose water being drunke, causeth olde men to looke young.

How *Nicuesa* and his fouldoyers were so oppressed with famine,

mine, that they were dyuē to eate mangie dogges, Toades, and dead men, and howe a broth made of a dogge skynne, was solde for many peeces of golde.

The Contentes of the bookes of  
the thyrd Decade.

*The contentes of the fyrst booke. Fol. 94.*

**O**f the desperate aduenture and good fortune of *Vaschus*, and howe with a hundred fourescore and ten men, hee brought that to passe for the which *Petrus Arias* was sent with a thousand and two hundred freshe souldoyers.

Howe Iron serueth for moze necessary vles then golde, and howe superfluities hynder libertie.

Howe *Vaschus* in one conflictē slue sixe hundred Barbarians with theyr kynges, and howe he founde the house of kyng *Quarequa* infected with vnnaturall lechery, commaundyng that the kyng and fourtie such as he kept for that purpose, should bee gyuen for a pray to his dogges which he vsed to serue in the warres agaynst these naked people.

Of a region of blacke Hoopes, and howe *Vaschus* came to the toppes of the mountaynes, where gyuyng thanks to God, hee behelde the newe South Ocean, neuer before scene nor knowne to men of our world.

Howe *Vaschus* put kyng *Chiapes* to flyght, and after made a league of friendship with him, and how the kyng gaue him.iiii. hundred poundes weyght of wrought golde.

Howe kyng *Coquera* was put to flyght, who also being receyued to friendship, gaue *Vaschus* sixe hundred and fyftie poundes weyght of wrought golde.

Of the gulse called *Sinus. S. Michaelis*, beyng full of inhabited Ilandes, and of the manly courage and godly zeale of *Vaschus*: also, of the rysyng and fallynge of the South sea.

Howe kyng *Tumacchus* beyng dyuē to flyght and afterwarde reconciled, gaue *Vaschus* sixe hundred and fourtiene peeces of golde, and two hundred and fourtie of the greatest and fayrest pearles, and howe the kyng caused his men to fysh for pearles.

## The contentes of the bookes

Of the Ilande called *Margarita Diues*, and of the abundance of sayre and great pearles founde therein.

Of habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall line, and of the Portugales navigations to the *Antipodes*, inhabityng the syue and sytrie degree of the South pole: also, a declaration of *Antipodes*, and of the starres about the South pole.

*The contentes of the seconde booke. Fol. 101.*

Of the maner of fyshyng for pearles, and of the thre kyndes thereof: also, dyuers other questions concernyng pearles.

Of the multitude of the shell fyshes wherein pearles are ingendred and founde in maner in all places in the South sea, and of abundaunce of golde founde almost in euery house: also, howe the treasure of nature is in those coastes, and of the golde mynes of *Dariena*.

Howe kyng *Teaocha* gaue *Vaschus*.xx. poundes weyght of wrought golde, and two hundred pearles: also, of desartes full of wyld beasts, and howe *Vaschus* was troubled with great heate in the moneth of *November*.

Howe a dogge *Cyger* was taken, and his whelpes tyed in cheynes and tozne in peeces: also, how *Vaschus* gaue.iiii. kynges to his dogges to be deuoured.

Of the vse of dogges in theyr warres, and of the fiercenesse of the *Caniballes*.

How kyng *Bononiana* sauoured the Christians, & gaue *Vaschus*.xx. pound weyght of wrought golde: also, his oration to *Vaschus*.

A similitude prouyng great plentie of golde in the regions of the South sea, and of the treauayles which olde seouyers are able to susteyne.

*The contentes of the thyrde booke. Fol. 105.*

Howe kyng *Buchibuea* submitted hym selfe to *Vaschus*, & sent hym certayne vesselles of golde: also, how kyng *Chiorisus* sent hym. xxx. dyshes of pure golde.

Howe Iron serueth for more necessary vses then golde: also, an example of the lyfe of our fyrst parentes.

Howe kyng *Pocchorrosa* submitted hym selfe, and gaue *Vaschus* fyftiene pounde weyght of wrought golde: also, how *Tumanama*, the great kyng, of the golden regions towarde the South sea, is taken prisoner: ykewyle howe he gaue *Vaschus*

*abus* .xxx. pounce weyght of pure and wrought golde, and his noble men .lx. pounds weyght of golde.

Of the cause of vehement wyndes neere vnto the Equinoctiall lyne, and of the coloure of the earth of the golden mynes.

Of the large and fruitefull playne of *Zauana*, and of the ryuer *Comogrus*; also howe kyng *Comogrus*, baptised by the name of *Charles*, gaue *Vaschus* .xx. pounce weyght of wrought golde.

Of the good fortune of *Vaschus*, and howe he was turned from *Goliath* to *Elizeus*, & from *Anteus* to *Hercules*, & with what facilitie the Spaniardes shall hereafter obtayne great plentie of golde and pearles.

Of the Spaniardes conquestes, and fiercenesse of the *Canibales*; also an exhortation to Christian princes to set forwarde Christes religion.

*The contentes of the fourth booke .Fol. 110.*

**T**He fourth viage of *Colonus* the Admiral from Spayne to *Hispaniola*, and to the other Ilandes and coastes of the firme lande: also of the flopyshyng Ilande *Guanassa*.

Of the seuen kyndes of Date trees, wyld vines, and *Mirobalanes*: also of byrdes and foules.

Of people of goodly stature whiche vse to paynt theyr bodyes, and of the swyfte course of the sea from the east to the west: also of freshe water in the sea.

Of the large regions of *Paria*, *Os Draconis*, and *Quiriquetana*, and of great *Coxtoyres* and reedes: also of the foure fruitefull Ilands called *Quatuor Tempora*, and .xii. Ilands called *Limonaies*.

Of sweete sauoures and holsome ayre, and of the region *Quicuri*, and the haven *Cariac* or *Mirobalanis*: also of certayne ciuill people.

Of trees growyng in the sea after a straunge sort, and of a straunge kynde of *Houkys*, whiche invade men, and seyghe with wyld *Wojes*.

Of the great gulf of *Cerabaro* replenished with many fruitefull Ilandes, and of the people whiche weare cheynes of golde made of onches, wrought to the similitude of dyuers wyld beasts and foules.

Of fyne villages whose inhabitantes geue them selues onely to geatheryng of golde, and are paynted, vsing to weare garlandes



## The contentes of the booke

Garlandes of Lions and Tygers clawes : also of seven ryuers, in al the which is founde great plentie of golde, and where the plentie of gold ceaseth.

Of certayne people whiche paynt theyr bodyes, and couer theyr priue members with shelles, haupng also plates of gold hangyng at theyr nolethpylles.

Of certayne woozmes, whiche beyng engendred in the seas neere about the Equinoctial, eate holes in the shyppes, and howe the Admirals shyppes were destroyed by them.

Howe the king of *Beragua* entertayned the Lieutenaut, and of the great plentie of golde in the ryuer of *Duraba*, and in al the regions there about, also in rootes of trees and stones, and in maner in al ryuers.

Howe the Lieutenaut and his company woulde haue erected a colonie belyde the ryuer of *Beragua*, & was repulled by th inhabitantes.

Howe the Admiral fel into the handes of the Barbarians of the Island of *Iamaica*, where he liued miserably the space of tenne monethes, and by what chaunce he was saued and came to the Islande of *Hispaniola*.

Of hollome regions, temperate ayre, and continual spyng al the whole yeere : also of certayne people which honour golde religiously, duryng theyr golden haruest.

Of the mountaynes of *Beragua*, beyng syttie myles in length, and higher then the cloudes : also the discription of other mountaynes and regions thereabout, comparng the same to Italy.

*Colonus* his opinion as touchyng the supposed continent and ioynyng of the north and south Ocean : also of the breadyth of the layde continent of firme lande.

Of the regions of *Vraba* & *Beragua*, and the great ryuer *Mavagnonus* and the ryuer of *Dabaiba* or *Sancti Iohannis* : also of certayne maryshes and desolate wayes, and of Dragons and Crocodiles engendred in the same.

Of .xx. golden ryuers about *Dariena*, and of certayne precious stones, especially a Diamonde of marueylous byggnesse bought in the prouince of *Paria*.

Of the heroical factes of the Spanyardes, and howe they contemne effeminate pleasures : also a similitude prouing great plentie

plentie of golde and precious stones.

*The contentes of the fift booke. Fol. 119.*

**T**he nauigation of *Petrus Arias* from Spayne to *Hispaniola* and *Dariena*, and of the *Ilandes* of *Canarie*: also of the *Ilands* of *Madanino*, *Guadalupea*, and *Galanta*.

Of the sea of hearbes, & mountaynes couered with snow: also of the swyft course of the sea towards the West.

Of the ryuer *Gaira*, the region *Caramairi*, and the poze *Cartbago*, and *Sancta Mariba*: also of *Americus Vespusius*, and his expert cunnyng in the knowledge of the carde, compasse, and quadrant.

How the *Canibales* assayled *Petrus Arias* with his whole nauie, and shot of theyr venomous arrowes euen in the sea, also of theyr houses and houtholde stufte.

How *Gonsalus Oniedus* founde a Saphire bygger then a goos egg: also *Emerodes*, *Calcidonies*, *Jaspers*, and *Amber* of the mountaynes.

Of woods of *Brasyle* trees, plentie of gold, and marches of metels, founde in the regions of *Caramairi*, *Gaira*, and *Saturma*: also of a straunge kynde of marchaundies exercised among the people of *Zana*.

That the region of *Caramairi* is lyke to an earthy *Paradise*, & of the fruitfull mountaynes and pleasaunt gardens of the same.

Of many goodly countreys made desolate by the fiercenesse of the *Canibales*, and of diuers kyndes of bread made of rootes: also of the maner of plantyng the roote of *Iucca*, whole iuile is deadly popson in the *Ilandes*, and without hurt in the continent or fyrre lande.

Of certayne golden ryuers, *Hartes*, wyld Boozes, foules, gossampine, whyte marble, and holsonne apze: also of the great ryuer: *Maragonus*, disceding from the mountaynes couered with snowe, called *Serra Neuata*.

How *Petrus Arias* wailed certaine *Ilands* of the *Canibales*, & how by the swyft course of the sea, his shypys were caried in one night fourtie leagues beyonde the estimation of the best pilotes.

*The contentes of the sixt booke. Fol. 124.*

**O**f sundry opinions why the sea runneth with so swyft a course from the East to the West, and of the great gulfe of the

the North part of the fyne lande.

The viage of *Sebastian Cabot*, from England to the frozen sea, and howe beyng repulled with Ice in the moneth of July, he sayled sacre Westwarde.

Of people apparelled with beastes skinnes, and how Beares take fyshes in the sea, and eate them.

How *Sebastian Cabot*, after that he had discovered the lande of *Baccallaos* or *Baccallearum*, was called out of Englande into Spayne, where he was made one of the assistance of the counsaile of the affayres of India, and of his second viage.

Of the Island *Fortis*, and howe a great foule as bygge as a Storke lyghted in the gouernours shyp: also howe he arryued at *Dariena* with the kinges nauie.

Howe *Vaschus* receyued the new gouernour, and of habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall.

How *Petrus Arias* the new gouernour distributed his armie to conquere the South regions ryche in golde, and to erect new coloniez in the same.

Of the ryche golde mynes of *Dabaiba*, and of the expedition agaynst the kynge of that region.

Of the violent course of the sea from the East to the West, and of the difficult saylyng agaynst the same.

Of the pestiferous and unhollome ayre of *Santa Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, and how the Spaniardes were of necessitie enforced to plant theyr fyrst colonie and habitation there.

The cause of the varietie of regions lying all vnder one degree or paralel, and by what meanes the Sonne beames are cause of seruent heate.

Of toades and flees engendred of droppes of water, and of a house set on fyre with lyghtnyng.

Of a Dogge deuoured of a Crocodile, and of venenous biting of great Bats: also of Lions, Tigers, & other wilde beastes.

How in these regions all foure footed beastes growe to a bigger quantitie then they which were of y<sup>e</sup> fyrst broode: also of certayne trees of whose planckes if shypps be made, they are safe from the wormes called *Broma* or *Bissas*.

Of a tree whose wood is present popson yf it be only borne about, and of an hearbe that is a preservative agaynst the same.

Of

Of the ryche Ilandes of the south sea, and of certayne expeditiōs agaynst the Canibales.

*The contentes of the .vii. booke .Fol. 130.*

**T**He particuler description of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, and of the ryche Iland called *Margaritea Diues*, lying in the South sea: also of the great abundaunce of bygge pearles founde in the same.

Howe the auctoure compareth *Hispaniola* to the earthly *Paradys*, and howe it farre excelleth *Italy* in fertilitie and temperate ayre.

Of the fyrst inhabitours of *Hispaniola*, and of the Ilandes of *Canarie*.

Howe th inhabitantes of *Hispaniola* in theyr songues and rhymes had certayne propheties that apparelled men shoulde come to theyr countrey, and bying them into seruitude, and of theyr familiaritie with spirites: also howe those spirites haue no more appeared to them since they were baptised.

Of theyr expertenesse in swymmyng, and of theyr delicate Serpentes, byzdes, foules, and Poppingays.

Of the fourme and situation of *Hispaniola* neere the Equinoctiall, and howe colde is in some place thereof accidentall, and not by the situation of the region.

Of the Oren and Swyne of exceedyng bygnesse, and of eares of wheat as bygge as a mans arme in the bzawne: also howe the Swyne are fedde with *Pirobalanes*. &c.

Of plentie of golde, Brasyle, Mastix, Gossampyne, *Eletturum*, & of thyncommodities of intemperate regions.

Of dyuers languages in the Ilande, and howe the prouinces are diuided into regions.

Howe *Andreas Moralis* sapled into a daungerous and darke caue within the recke of a mountayne, and of whole ryuers deuoured of suche caues: also of the conflict of the waters.

Of a standyng poole in the toppe of an hygh mountayne: & how fearene and bramble bushes growe onely in colde regions.

*The Contentes of the .viii. booke .Fol. 135.*

**O**F a great lake or standyng poole of sowe and salte water, and of the sea fshes in the same in the myd lande of the Ilande: also of deuouryng fshes called *Tiburoni*.



## The contentes of the bookes

Of the ryuers falling into the lakes, and of .CC. springes in the space of a furlong.

A marueylous hystorie of a kyng stryken dumbe and lame by a myracle, and of the Indian language.

Howe suche as are drowned in the lake, are neuer cast by agayne, and of the Islande *Guarizacca* in the myddest of a standing lake: also of a lake of freshe water, and an other of salte and freshe water.

Of a large playne of two hundred myles in length, and another of an hundred and twentie.

Of the marueilous fysh or monster of the sea, called *Manati*, or *Matum*, fedde with mans handes, and howe the caryeth men ouer the lake.

Of the mountaynes, vales, hylles, playnes, and ryuers of *Hispaniola*, and howe golde is founde in all mountaynes, and golde and fysh in all ryuers.

Of salte bayes, and howe the ryuers haue theyr increase from the caues of the mountaynes: also howe there is no hurtfull beast in the Islande.

Of the pleasures of *Hispaniola*, and of the region of *Cotobi* wel inhabited, & situate in a plaine in the toppes of mountaynes reachyng to the cloudes.

Of moderate colde in the mountaynes, and of fearene of marueylous bygnesse.

Howe pure and masse golde is founde in the region of *Cotoy* or *Cotobi*, and that the vaine of gold is a lpyng tree: also of the rootes, branches, and floures of the same, and howe certayne caues are susteyned with pylers of golde.

What gold is brought peerelely from *Hispaniola* into Spaine, and of the salte of the mountaines, being as hard as stones, and cleare as crytall: also springes of salte, freshe, & lowe water.

Of certayne wyld men, lpyng in caues and denmes without any certayne language, and of their marueylous swiftnes a foote.

Of pytche of the rocke, and two kyndes of trees, and of the leafe of a tree vled in the steede of paper: also howe the inhabitants thynke that the Chyistians can make those leaues speake and disclose all secretes.

Of a strong coloure made of the iuice of a certayne apple,  
and

and of the hearbe whose smoke is popson.

*The contentes of the nienth booke. Fol. 142.*

Of the kindes of fruites wherewith the inhabitauntes of *Hispaniola* lyued fyrst, and how they came to the knowledge of *Iucca*: also how *Ceres* fyrst founde Wheate and Barley in *Egypt*.

Why they kynges are called by diuers names, and by what names they salute the kynges chyldren when they are bozne.

How they make theyr testamentes, and how certayne of the kynges wyues and concubines are buried with them.

Of the variable motions of the elementes in *Hispaniola*, and where it rayneth but litle, and where muche.

Of the colonies and villages that the Spaniardes haue builded in *Hispaniola*, and of the other Ilandes about the same.

Of a spyng, whiche runnyng vnder the sea from *Hispaniola*, breaketh forth in the Iland of *Arethusa*: also of the habitable regions vnder the Equinoctiall, and of the ryche golde mynes of the Ilande of *Cuba*.

Of the Gumme called *Anima Album*, and of the *Canibales*, also wherby it was thought that there were Ilandes of women.

Of hony founde in trees and rockes, and of the generation of great Toxtoples, and of theyr egges.

*The contentes of the tenth booke. Fol. 146.*

Of the expedition agaynst the kyng of the Ilande *Dites*, in the South sea, and howe after foure conflictes, submitting hym selfe, he gaue our men an hundred & ten pounce weyght of great pearles: also howe he agreed to paye yeerely a hundred pounce weyght of pearles for a tribute.

Howe apes and hatchettes are more esteemed then golde, or pearles, and of great plentie of Hartes and Cunnies: also howe the kyng of *Dites* and his familie were baptised.

Of pearles of great pryse, and howe *Paule* the Bishop of Rome bought a pearle for foure and fortie thousand ducades.

Diuers opinions of the generation of pearles, and of a hundred pearles founde in one shel fythe: also of the birth of pearles.

Of the regions of the East syde of the gulfe of *Yraba*, and of the originall of the *Canibales*.

## The contentes of the bookes

Of certayne circuncised people which haue the knoweledge of letters and vse of bookes, and what chaunced of the captaynes which *Petrus Arias* sent forth diuers wayes : also howe *Iohn Solisus* was slayne of the *Canibales*, and of theyr fiercenesse.

Howe *Iohn Pontius* was repulled of the *Canibales*, and of the lewde behauiour of *Iohn Arora*.

Of the variable fortune of *Gonsalus Badauius*, and howe after he had geathered great ryches of gold, he had the ouerthrow, and was spoyled of all.

Of the golden region of *Coiba Dites*, and how theyr slaues are marked in the face.

Of the Ilandes of the South sea, and of the regions from whence the *Portingales* fetche theyr spyes.

Of a straunge kynde of sowlyng, and of the trees that beare Gourdes.

Of the later opinions as touching the swift course of the Ocean towarde the West, and of the continent of fyrry lande : also of the viage from the newe landes to Spayne.

Of the golde mynes of *Dariena*, and of the maner of geathering of golde in the same : also of the dropsie of couetousnesse which is not satisfied with ryches.

For the contentes of the booke of the Ilandes of the West Indies seas, reade the margent notes of the same.

FINIS.

(:)

R. E. To the Reader.



Lthoug among dyuers which haue written of the Ocean and VVest Indies, there is none to be compared to Peter Martyr of Angleria, in declaryng by philosophicall discourses the secrete causes of naturall affectes, both as touchyng the lande, the sea, the starres, and other straunge workes of nature: yet foras much as of later dayes those countreys haue been better knowne and searched, and dyuers such particuler and notable thinges founde, as are conteyned in the histories of later writers, among the number of whom, Conzalus Ferdinandus Ouiedus (whom learned Cardanus compareth to the ancient writers) is doubtlesse the chiefe, I haue therefore thought good to ioyne to the Decades of Peter Martyr, certayne notable thinges which I haue geathered out of his booke, intituled the Summarie or abridgement of his generall hystorie of the west Indies, written in the firme lande of the same, in the citie of Sancta Maria Antiqua in Dariena (where he dwelt & was gouernor many yeeres) and dedicated to Themperours maiestie, as may appeare by the Epistle folowyng,

Bb.i.

To



To the most hygh and myghtie prince Charles, the fyft of  
that name, Emperour of Rome, Kynge of Spaine, & of the two  
Cicilies, of both the sydes of the streyght of *Faro*, Kynge of  
*Hierusalem* and *Hungarie*, Duke of *Burgonie*, and Earle of  
*Flaunders*, Lord and inheritor of the firme lande  
and Ilandes of the VVest Ocean. &c. *Gon-*

*Zalus Ferdinandus Ouiedus*, his most  
humble seruaunt, wyssheth  
health and perpetu-  
all felicitie.



Ther things which principally pre-  
serue and mayntayne the workes of  
nature in the memories of men, are  
hystories and bookes composed of  
the same: among the whiche certes  
those are esteemed most true and au-  
tenthyke, which haue been wyrtten by  
wyrtie and expert men, well trauey-  
led in the world, as saythfull witnes-  
ses of such things as they haue partly seene, and been partly in-  
formed by credible persons. Of this mynde and opinion was  
*Plinie*, who better then any other aucthor hath wyrtten in. xxxvii.  
bookes all that pertaineth to the naturall historie, conteyned all  
in one volume, dedicated to *Vespasian* The Emperour: Wherin, as  
a prudent historiographer, he declareth such things as hee had  
heard, attributing the second authoritie to such as he had redde in  
aucthous that wrote before him: And thysdly toynd to the same  
hystorie, such things as he him selfe had seene, as most certayne  
testimonie. Whose example I folowynge, will in this my bryefe  
summarie, reduce and represent to your maiesties memorie such  
things as I haue seene in your Emperre of the West Indies,  
as well in the Ilandes as in the firme lande of the Ocean sea,  
where I haue serued now more then twelue yeeres in the place  
of surueyer of the golde mynes, by the commaundement of the  
Catholyke kynge *Don Fernando*, the fyft of that name, and graund-  
father unto your maiestie, to whom God gaue great fame and  
glozie: Since whose death also I haue lykewyse serued, and  
trust

trust whyle the rest of my lyfe yet remayneth, to serue your maiestie, as shall please you to commaunde . As touchyng whiche thinges, and suche other lyke, I haue moze largely wytten in an hystorie begunn alldoone as my age was ripe to take such matters in hande : Wherein furthermoze I haue made mention of suche thinges as haue chaunced in Spayne, from the yeere .1494. vnto this tyme : addyng also therevnto suche thinges woorthy memorie, as I haue obserued in other realmes and prouinces where I haue trauelyed, and haue lykewyse particularly wytten the lyues and woorthy actes of the catholyke Princes of famous memorie *Don Ferdinando*, and Lady *Elizabeth* his wyfe, to theyr last dayes . After whose fruition of heauenly Paradyse, I haue noted such thinges as haue chaunced in your most fortunate succession : not omittynge particularly to wypte a large booke of suche thinges as haue seemed most woorthy to bee noted, as touchyng your maiesties Indies . But forasmuch as that volume remayneth in the citie of *San. Dominico*, in the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, where I dwell, and am placed in houlholde, with wyfe, chyldren, and familye, I haue brought na moze with me of that my wytyng, then I beare in memorie, determinynge (notwithstandyng) for your maiesties recreation, to make a breefe rehearsall of certayne notable thinges, wherof I haue moze largely entreated in my sayd generall hystorie, and such as may seeme most woorthy to be redde of your maiestie : Of the which, although a great parte haue been wytten by other, who haue also seene the same, yet perhappes they are not so exactly and particularly described as of mee, forasmuche as in maner all that trauelye into these Indies haue greater respect to laker and gaynes, then diligently to search the woorkes of nature, wherunto I haue ben euer naturally inclined, & haue therfore with all possible endeuour applyed myne eyes & intelligence to synde the same . And this present Summarie shall not be contrary or dyuers from my larger hystorie, wherein (as I haue sayde) I haue moze amply declared these thinges: but shal onely moze breiefely expresse the effect thereof, vntyl such tyme as God shall restore me to myne owne house, where I may accomplishe and synpse my sayde generall hystorie. Wherevnto to gyue the fyrst principle, I say, that *Don Christopher Colonns* (as it is well knowen) beyng the fyrst Admirall of

this India, discovered the same in the dayes of the Catholyke  
 kyng Don Ferdinando, and the lady Elizabeth his wyfe, graund  
 father and graundmother vnto your maiestie, in the yeere. 1491.  
 and came to *Barzalona* in the yeere. 1492. with the fyrst Indians,  
 and other shewes and proofes of the great riches and notice of  
 this west Empire: The which gyft and benefite was suche, that  
 it is vnto this day one of the greatest that euer any subiecte or  
 seruauant hath done for his prince or countrey, as is manifest  
 to the whole worlde. And to say the trueth, this shall doubtesse  
 bee so commodious and profytable vnto the whole realme of  
 Spayne, that I repute him no good Castilian or Spanyarde  
 that doeth not recognise the same. And (as I haue sayde be-  
 fore) forasmuche as in my sayde generall historie I haue more  
 largely intreated of these thinges, I intende at this present on-  
 ly brievely to rehearse certayne especiall thinges, the whiche  
 surely are very fewe in respecte of the thousandes that myght be  
 sayde in this behalfe. Fyrst therefore I will speake somewhat  
 of the nauigation into these parties, then of the generation of  
 the nations which are founde in the same, with theyr rytes, cu-  
 stomes, and ceremonies: also of beastes, foules, byrdes, wooz-  
 mes, fyshes, seas, ryuers, springes, trees, plantes, hearbes,  
 and dyuers other thinges, whiche are engendered both on the  
 lande and in the water. And forasmuche as I am one of thorder  
 and company of them that are appoynted to returne into these  
 regions to serue your maiestie, if therefore the thinges contey-  
 ned in this booke shall not be distincte in suche order as I promi-  
 sed to perfourme in my greater wooke, I desyre your maiestie  
 to haue no respect herevnto, but rather to consider the noueltie of  
 such straunge thinges as I haue herein declared, whiche is the  
 chiefe ende that moued mee to wyte: Protestyng, that in this  
 Summarie I haue wrytten the trueth of suche thinges as came  
 to my remembraunce, whereof not onely I my selfe can testifie,  
 but also dyuers other worthy and credible men, which haue been  
 in those regions, and are now present in your maiesties courte.  
 And thus it shall suffice to haue sayde thus much vnto your ma-  
 iestie, in maner of a prohemie vnto this present worke, whiche I  
 most humbly desyre your maiestie as thankefully to accept, as I  
 haue wrytten it faythfully.

Of the ordinary nauigation from Spayne  
to the west Indies.



The nauigation which is commonly made from Spayne to the west India, is from *Sinile*, where your maiestie haue your house of contraction for those partes, with also your officers thereunto parteypng, of whom the captaynes take theyr passeporte and lycence. The patrones of suche shippes as are appoynted to these viages, imbarke them selues at *San Luca di Barameda*, where the riuer *Cuadalchiber* entreteth into the Ocean sea, and from hence they folow their course toward the Ilands of Canarie. Of these seuen Ilandes, they commonly touche two, that is, eyther *Grancanaria* or *Gomera*: and here the shippes are furnyshed with freshe water, fuell, chcese, beefe, and suche other thinges, which may seeme requisite to bee added to suche as they hyng with them out of Spayne. From Spayne to these Ilandes, is commonly eyght dayes sayling, or little more or lesse, and when they are arryued there, they haue sayled two hundred and fystie leagues, whiche make a thousand myles, accompting foure myles to a league, as is their maner to recken by sea. Departing from the sayd Ilands to folow their course, the shippes tary .xxv. dayes, or a little more or lesse, before they see the fyrst lande of the Ilandes that lye before that whiche they call *La Spagnuola* or *Hispaniola*, and the lande that is commonly fyrst seene, is one of these Ilandes which they call *Ogni sancti Marigalante* (or *Galanta*) *La Deseada* (otherwise called *Desiderata*) *Matanino*, *Dominica*, *Guadalupea*, *San Christoual*, or some other of the Ilandes, wherof there are a great multitude lying about these aforesayde. Yet it sometymes so chaunceth, that the shippes passe without the sight of any of the sayd Ilandes, or any other that are within that course, vntill they come to the Ilande of *Sancti Iohannis*, or *Hispaniola*, or *Iamaica*, or *Cuba*, which are before the other. It may also chaunce that they ouerpasse all these lykewyse, vntyll they fall vppon the coastes



1300  
of the firme lande. But this chaunceth when the pilot is not well practised in this nauigation, or not perfect in the true carde. But making this viage with experte maryners (whereof there is nowe great plentie) one of the sayde fyrst Ilandes shall euer bee knowne. And from the Ilandes of Canarie to one of the fyrst of these, the distaunce is niene hundred leagues by sayling, or more, and from hence to the citie of saint Dominike, which is in the Island of *Hispaniola*, is a hundred and fytie leagues: so that from *Spayne* hitherto, is a thousande and thre hundred leagues. Yet forasmuche as sometymes the nauigation proceedeth not so directly, but that it chaunceth to wander euer on the one syde or on the other, we may well say that they haue now sayled a thousand and fyue hundred leagues, and more. And if the nauigation bee slow, by reason of some hynderaunce, it commonly chaunceth to be fynished in xxxv. or xl. dayes: and this happeneth for the most parte, not accomptyng the extremes, that is, eyther of them that haue slowe passage, or of them that arryue in very shote tyme: for we ought to consyder that which chaunceth most commonly. The returne from those partes to *Spayne*, is not fynished with out longer tyme, as in the space of fiftie dayes, or a litle more or lesse. Neuerthelesse in this present peere of. 1525. there came foure shippes from the Islande of *San Dominico*, to saint *Luca* in *Spayne*, in xxv. dayes: But (as I haue sayde) we ought not to iudge of that which chaunceth seldome, but of that which happeneth most ordinarily. This nauigation is very safe, and much bled, euen vnto the sayde Island. And from this to the firme land, the shippes trauesse diuers wayes for the space of fyue, sixe, or seuen dayes sayling, or more, accordyng to the partes or coastes whither they directe theyr viages, forasmuch as the sayde fyrmie lande is very great and large, and many nauigations and viages are directed to dyuers partes of the same: Yet to the firme land, which is nearest to this Islande, and lyeth directly agaynst *San Dominico*, the passage is finished in the tyme aforesayde. But it shalbe much better to remit all this to the carde of these nauigations, and the new Cosinographie, of the whiche no parte was knowne to *Ptolome*, or any other of the olde wyters.

Of two notable things as touching the west Indies, and of the great rychesse brought from thence into Spayne.



After my vniuersall discription of the historie of the Indies, there commeth to my remembraunce two thinges chiefly to be noted as touchyng The empire of these West Indies, pertaining to the dominion of your maiestie: and these, belyde the other particulars whereof I haue sufficiently spoken, are to be considered as thinges of great importaunce. Whereof, the one is the shortnesse of the way, & with what expedition your maiesties shippes may passe beyonde the mayne firme lande of these Indies, into the new South sea, called *Mar del Sur*, lying beyond the same, & this to thintent to come to the Ilandes where the spices grow, beside the other innumerable rychesse of y<sup>e</sup> kingdomes & seigniories which confine with the said sea, where are so many people & nations of dyuers tongues & manners. The other thing, is to consider howe innumerable treasures are entred into Spayne by these Indies, as well that which commeth dayly from thence, as also that is continually to be looked for, both of gold & pearle, & other marchaundies, which are first brought into this your realme of Spayne before they are seene of other nations, or traded into other realmes: Whereby not onely this your realme is greatly enriched, but also the benefite thereof redoundeth to the great profite of other countreys which are neare therevnto. A testimonie of this, are the double ducades which your maiestie haue caused to bee coyned, and are dispearled throughout the whole worlde: But after they are once passed out of this your realme, they neuer retorne againe, because they are the best currant money of the worlde. And therefore, if after they haue been in the handes of straungers, they chaunce to bee returned agayne into Spayne, they come disguised in an other habite, and are diminished of the goodnesse of theyr golde, with the stampe of your maiestie chaunged: So that if it were not for theyr suche descapnges in other realmes for the cause aforesayde, there should not bee founde so great quantitie of fyne golde of the coyne

of any prince in the world as of your maiesties : and the cause of all this, are your Indies.

Of the mynes of golde, and the manner of working in them.



This particuler of the mynes of gold, is a thing greatly to bee noted, and I may much better speake hereof the any other man, forasmuch as there are nowe. xii. peeres past since I serued in the place of the surueier of y<sup>e</sup> melting shops partepning to the gold mynes of y<sup>e</sup> firme land, and was the gouernour of the mynes of the Catholike kyng Don Ferdinando, after whose departure from this lyfe, I serued long in the same roome in the name of your maiestie : By reason wherof, I haue had great occasion to know how gold is found and wrought out of the mynes, and doe know ryght well y<sup>e</sup> this land is exceeding ryche, hauing by my accompt, and by the labour of my Indians & slaues, geathered and syned a great portion of the same, & may therfore the better affyrme this by testimony of sight. For I am well assured, that in no part of *Castilia del oro*, that is, golden Castile (otherwise called *Beragua*) no man coulde aske mee of the mynes of golde, but that I durst haue bounde my selfe to haue discovered them in the space of ten leagues of the countrey where it should haue been demaunded me, and the same to be very ryche: for I was allowed all maner of charges to make search for the same. And although gold be found in maner euery where in these regions of golden Castile, yet ought we not in euery place to bestow the trauel & charge to geate it out, because it is of lesse quantitie and goodnesse in some place then in some. And the myne or beyne which ought to be folowed, ought to be in a place which may stand to saue much of y<sup>e</sup> charges of the labourers, and for the administration of other necessary thinges, that the charges may be recompenced w<sup>th</sup> gaynes: for there is no doubt but that gold shalbe found more or lesse in euery place. And the golde whiche is founde in golden Castile, is very good, & of .xxii. caraces or better in synesse. Furthermore, belyde this great quantitie of gold, which I haue sayd to be found in the mynes,

mynes, there is also from day to day found, or otherwyle gotten, great treasure of such wrought gold as hath ben in þe custodie of the subdued Indians & theyr kynges, aswel of such as they haue geuen for theyr fyne and raunsome, or otherwyle, as frendes to the Christians, belyde that whiche hath ben violently taken from the rebelles : but the greatestt parte of the wrought golde whiche the Indians haue, is base, and holdeith somewhat of copper, of this they make brassettes and chaynes, and in the same they close theyr iewels whiche theyr women are accustomed to weare, & esteemed more then al the richesse of the worlde. The maner howe golde is geathered, is this, eyther of suche as is founde in *Zauana*, that is to saye in the playnes and ryuers of the champion countrey being without trees, whether the earth be with grasse or without, or of suche as is sometymes founde on the land without the ryuers in places where trees growe, so that to come by the same, it shalbe requisite to cut downe many and great trees. But after which so euer of these two maners it be founde, eyther in the ryuers or breaches of waters, or els in the earth, I wyl shewe howe it is founde in both these places, and howe it is separate and pouged. Therefore when the myne or myne is discovered, this chaunceth by searchoyng and prouyng in such places as by certayne signes and tokens do appeare to skilful men apte for the generation of golde, and to holde golde : and when they haue found it, they folowe the myne, and labour it, whether it be in the ryuer, or in the playne, as I haue sayde. And if it be founde on the playne, fyrst they make the place very cleane where they entende to dygge, then they dygge eyght or tenne foote in length, and as muche in breadth : but they goe no deeper then a sparne or two, or more, as shal seeme best to the maister of the myne, dyggyng equally, then they walke all the earth whiche they haue taken out of the sayde space, and if herein they fynde any golde, they folowe it, and if not, they dygge a sparne deeper, and walke the earth as they dyd before : and if then also they fynde nothyng, they continue in diggyng and washyng þe earth as before, untyl they come to the harde rocke or stone : and if in fine they fynde no golde there, they folowe no further to seeke golde in that place, but goe to an other part. And it is to be vnderstoode, that when they haue

founde



founde the myne, they folowe it in dyggyng, in the same mea-  
 ſure in leuell and deapth, vntyll they haue made an ende of all  
 the myne whiche that place conteyneth, if it appeare to be riche.  
 This myne ought to conſiſt of certayne ſeete or pales in length  
 or breadth, accordyng to certayne orders determined, and with-  
 in that compaſſie of earth, it is not lawefull for any other to digge  
 for golde: And where as endeth the myne of hym that fyrſte  
 founde the golde, immediatly it is lawfull for any other man that  
 wyll, with a ſtaffe to aſſigne hym ſelfe a place by the ſyde of the  
 ſame, incloſing it with ſtokes or pales as his owne. Theſe mines  
 of *Zauana* (that is, ſuch as are found in the plaines) ought euer to  
 be ſought neare to ſome ruer or brooke, or ſpring of water, or  
 dyke, or ſtandynge poole, to thende that the golde may be waſhed,  
 for the which purpoſe they uſe the labour of certayne Indians,  
 as they do other in dyggyng of the myne. And when they haue  
 dygged out the myne, they ſyll certayne trapes with that earth,  
 whiche other Indians haue the charge immediatly to receyue  
 at theyr handes, and to cary thoſe trapes of earth to the water,  
 where it may bee waſhed: Yet do not they that byng it,  
 waſhe it, but deſpuer it to other, puttyng it out of theyr owne  
 trapes into theyrs, whiche they haue redy in theyr handes to re-  
 ceyue it. Theſe waſhers for the moſt part are the Indian wo-  
 men, becauſe this woork is of leſſe paine and traueple then any  
 other. Theſe women when they waſhe, are accuſtomed to ſyt  
 by the water ſyde, with theyr legges in the water euen vp to the  
 knees, or leſſe, as the place ſerueth theyr purpoſe: and thus hold-  
 yng the trapes with earth in theyr handes by y handles thereof,  
 and puttyng the ſame into the water, they moue them rounde  
 about, after the maner of ſpſtyng, with a certayne aptneſſe,  
 in ſuche ſoyte that there entreth no moze water into the trays  
 then ſerueth theyr turne, and with the ſelfe ſame apte mouyng  
 of theyr trays in the water, they euer auoyde the foule water  
 with the earth out of the one ſyde of the veſſell, and receyue  
 in cleane water on the other ſyde thereof, ſo that by this meanes  
 by litle and litle, the water waſheth the earth as the lyghter  
 ſubſtance of the trays, and the golde as the heauyer mat-  
 ter reſteth in the bottome of the ſame, beyng rounde and  
 holowe in the myddelt lyke vnto a barbars baſen: And when

all the earth is auoyded, and the gold geathered togeather in the bottome of the tray, they put it a part, and returne to take more earth, whiche they washe continually as before. And thus they that labour in this wooke, do geather dayly suche portion of golde as shall please God to graunt to the Patrones of these Indians, and suche other as trauaile in the same. Furthermore it is to be noted, that for euery two Indians that walhe, it is requisite that two other serue them to bypnyng earth from the myne, and other two to breake the same small, and fyl theyr trayes therewith. Also besyde these labourers, it is necessarye that there be other people in the place where they wooke & rest in the night: these are suche as make theyr bread, and prouide for victuals, and other necessaries. So that to conclude, there are in al, syue persons ordinarilie assigned to euery tray of washers. There is an other manner of workyng the mynes, in ryuers or brookes of runnyng waters: and this is, that in auoydnyng the water of his course, after that the beddes of the ryuers are dype and utterly emptied, they fynde golde among the breaches, clystes, and ryftes of stones, and among all that is in the bottome of the chanell, and where naturally the ryuer runneth of greatest force: So that it chaunceth sometyme, that when the hedde of the ryuer is good and ryche, they fynde in it great quantitie of gold. And therefore your Maiestie ought to vnderstand for a general rule, as it appeareth in fact, that all golde is engendred in the toppes and hyghest places of the mountaynes, and in continuance of tyme is by litle and litle brought downe to the bales and playnes by shewes of rapne, and the falles of springes, ryuers, and brookes, haupng theyr originall in the mountaynes, and discending from the same, notwithstanding it is oftentymes founde in the playnes farre from the mountaynes. But when it chaunceth to be founde in great quantitie, it is for the most part among the mountaynes, and in the ryuers, or theyr braunches, more then in any other part of the playne: and in these two maners it is commonly founde most abundantly. And for the better prooofe that golde is engendred on hygh, and is brought downe into the lowe places, I haue one great token therof, whiche causeth me to beleeue it for certayne: and this is, to consyder that coles neuer puerisse nor

corrupt vnder the ground, if they be made of strong woodde. Wherby it chaunceth, that dyggyng the earth by the foudes or indented places of the mountaynes, or on the spdes, & breakyng a myne in the earth where it had been broken before, and hauing nowe dygged one or two or thre Holes in measure, the myners founde certayne coles of wood vnder the same leuel where they founde golde, and this I say in the earth whiche was taken for a Virgin, that is to saye, such as had not before been opened for any myne: the whiche coles coude not naturally be engendred there, or enter in by any meanes, but when the superficiall part of the earth was equal with the leuel where the coles were founde, it is like that the coles were left there by some occasion of fyre, and that they fastened there in tyme, and that afterwarde in long continuance of tyme, they were by litle and litle couered with the earth, whiche the often shewes of rayne washed from the mountaynes, so that by the course of yeeres the earth ouergrewe the coles vnto the sayd leuell & measure, which had before tyme been the superficial part of the earth, where the coles and golde were found togeather: whereby it may appeare that the golde was no more engendred there then were the coles, but brought thither from the mountaynes by the falles of waters as we haue sayd, forasmuch as the mountaynes are the Matrices and bowels of all ryche metals. Further and besyde this, I say that in howe muche more the golde is gone farre from the naturall place of his generation to the place where it is founde, it is so much the more purified and fined, and of a better caract, and the nearer that it is founde to his proper myne or beyne where it is engendred, it is so much the baser, sculer, and more crude, and of a baser alay and caract, and doth wast so muche the more in meltynge, and remayneth more brickle. Sometymes there are founde graines of golde of great quantitie, and of great weyght aboute the earth, and sometymes also vnder the earth: And the greatest of all other that was founde to this day in the Indies, was that whiche was lost in the sea about the Ilande Beata, whiche weyghed three thousande and two hundred Castellans of gold, which are in value foure thousand a hundred thyrtye and eyght ducades of golde, whiche weigh one *Arrova* and seuen pounce, or thyrtye and two pounce, after twelue ounces

res to the pounce, whiche make threescore and foure markes of golde. And I sawe in the yeere .1515. in the handes of *Mychel Passamonte* treasurer to your maiestie, two graines, of the whiche one wayed seuen poundes, which are .xliii. markes, and are in value about threescore and fyue ducades of golde euery marke: the other was of .x. markes, whiche are fyue poundes of lyke value, and of very good golde of .xxii. caractes, and better: There are also founde many other great graynes, although not equall vnto these in bygnesse. And forasmuch as I haue spoken of gold, I haue thought good to declare somewhat howe the Indians can very excellently gylte suche vesselles of copper and base golde as they make: for they can geue them so fayre and shynnyng a coloure, that al the masse which they gylt, appeareth as though it were golde of .xxii. caractes, and better. This coloure they geue with a certayne hearbe, as though it were wrought by the art of any goldsmith of Spayne or Italle, and woulde of them bee esteemed as a thyng of great rychez, and a secrete maner of gyldeing. And for as muche as I haue spoken sufficiently of the mynes of golde, I wyl nowe speake somewhat of copper, because I haue made mention thereof. This metal is founde in many of the Ilandes of the Indies, and also in the firme lande, and is founde dayly in great quantitie, holdyng somewhat of golde. But for the desyre that our men haue to golde, they nothyng esteeme the copper, although there myght great commoditie and profyt be had thereby, and also by other metals, whiche they nothyng regarde, except syluer, which is founde abundantly in that parte of the firme lande whiche is called newe Spaine. But of this it shal suffice to haue saide thus muche, because I haue more particularly entreated of these thynges in my generall history of India.

A marke, is a pounce of viii. ounces summa .xvi. li. weyght .viii. ounces, after xii. ounces to the li.

#### Of the maner of fyshyng for pearles.



The Indians exercise this kynde of fyshyng for the most part in the coastes of the North in *Cubagua* and *Cumana*, and many of them which dwell in the houses of certayne particular lordes in the Ilandes of *San Dominico* and *Santi Iohannis*, resort to the Ilande of *Cubagua*.



*Cubagua*, for this purpose. Theyr custome is to go fyue, syxe, or seuen, or more in one of theyr *Canoas* or barkes, earely in the mornynge to some place in the sea thereabout, where it appeareth vnto them that there shoulde be great plentie of those shell fyshes (which some call *Dulseles*, and some *Dysters*) wherein pearles are engendred, & there they plunge them selues vnder the water, euen vnto the bottome, sayng one that remayneth in the *Canoa* or boate, which he keepeth still in one place as neare as he can, looking for theyr returne out of the water: And when one of them hath ben a good whyle vnder the water, he ryleth vp, and commeth swimmyng to the boate, entryng into the same, and leauyng there al the *Dysters* which he hath taken and brought with hym (for in these are the pearles found) and when he hath there rested hym selfe a whyle, and eaten part of the *Dysters*, he returneth agayne to the water, where he remayneth as long as he can endure, and then ryleth agayne, and swimmeth to the boate with his pray, where he resteth hym as before, and thus continueth courle by course, as do all the other in lyke maner, being al most expert swimmers and dyuers: and when the night draweth neare, they returne to the *Ilande* to theyr houses, and present all the *Dysters* to the maister or steward of the house of theyr lord, who hath the charge of the sayde *Indians*, and when he hath geuen them somewhat to eate, he layeth vp the *Dysters* in safe custodie, vntyll he haue a great quantitie therof, then he causeth the same fysher men to open them, and they fynd in euery of them pearles, other great or small, two, or thre, or foure, and sometymes fyue or syxe, and many small graines, accordyng to the liberalitie of nature. They saue the pearles both smal and great whiche they haue founde, and eyther eate the *Dysters* if they wyl, or cast them away, hauyng so great quantitie thereof, that they in maner abhorre them. These *Dysters* are of harde fleshe, and not so pleasaunt in eatyng as are ours of *Spayne*. This *Iland* of *Cubagua* where this maner of fyshing is exercised, is in the North coaste, and is no bygger then the *Ilande* of *Zeland*. Oftentimes the sea increaseth greatly, and much more then þe fishers for pearles would, because where as the place is very deepe, a man can not naturally rest at the bottome,

by reason of the abundaunce of ayyr substance whiche is in hym, as I haue oftentimes prooued . For although he may by violence and force discende to the bottome, yet are his feete lysted by agayne, so that he can contynue no tyme there : and therefoze where the sea is very deepe, these Indian fyshers vse to tye two great stones about them with a coryd, on euery syde one, by the weyght whereof they discende to the bottome, and remaine there vntyll them lysteth to ryse agayne, at whiche tyme they bulose the stones, and ryse by at theyr pleasure. But this theyr aptenesse and agilitie in swimmyng, is not the thyng that causeth men most to marueyle : but rather to consyder howe many of them can stande in the botome of the water for the space of one whole houre, and some more or lesse, accordyng as one is more apt heereunto then another . An other thyng there is whiche seemeth to me very straunge : and this is, that where as I haue oftentimes demaunded of some of these Lordes of the Indians, yf the place where they are accustomed to fysh for pearles, beyng but litle and narrowe, wyll not in short tyme be utterly without Dysters, yf they consume them so fast. They all answered me, that although they be consumed in one part, yet if they goe a fyshyng in an other part, or an other coaste of the Islande, or at an other contrary wynde, and contynue fyshyng there also vntyll the Dysters be lykewyle consumed, and then retorne agayne to the first place, or any other place where they fished befoze, and emptied the same in lyke maner, they finde them agayne as full of Dysters as though they had neuer been fyshed. Wherby we may iudge, that these Dysters epyther remoue from one place to an other, as do other fishes, or els that they are engendryed and encrease in certaine ordinarie places. This Island of *Cumana* & *Cubagua*, where they fysh for these pearles, is in the twelue degree of the part of the said coast which inclineth toward the North. Likewise pearles are founde and geathered in the South sea, called *Mare del Sur*, & the pearles of this sea are very big, yet not so big as they of the Island of pearles, called *de las perlas*, or *Margaritea*, which the Indians cal *Terarequi*, lying in the gulfe of *Sainct Michael*, where greater pearles are founde, and of greater pryce, then in any other coast of the North sea.

Of this reade  
more largely in  
the decades.

in *Cumana*, or any other part. I speake this as a trewe testimonie of syght, hauing been long in that South sea, and making curious inquisition to be certaynely enfourmed of al that parteyneth to the fyshyng of pearles. From this Ilande of *Terarequi*, there was brought a pearle of the fashyon of a *Peare*, weighing thyrtye and one *Caractes*, which *Petrus Arias* had among a thousand and so many poundes weyght of other pearles, whiche he had when captayne *Gaspar Morales* (before *Petrus Arias*) passed to the sayde Ilande in the yeere. 1515. whiche pearle was of great pryce. From the sayde Ilande also, came a great and very rounde pearle, which I brought out of the sea, this was as bygge as a smal pellet of a *Stonebowe*, and of the weyght of twentie and syx *Caractes*: I bought it in the citie of *Panama*, in the sea of *Sur*, and payde for it syx hundred and fytie tymes the weyght therof of good golde, and had it thre yeeres in my custodie, and after my returne into *Spayne*, sold it to the Earle of *Nansao* *Marquesse* of *Zenete*, great Chamberlayne to your Maiestie, who gaue it to the *Marquesse* his wyfe, the Lady *Mentia* of *Mendoza*. I thynke verply that this pearle was the greatest, fayrest, and roundest that hath been seene in those partes. For your maiestie ought to vnderstand, that in the coaste of the sea of *Sur*, there are founde a hundred great pearles rounde after the fashyon of a *Peare*, to one that is perfectly rounde and great. This Ilande of *Terarequi*, which the Chyistians call the Ilande of pearles, and other call it the Ilande of *Flowres*, is founde in the eight degree on the South syde of the fyyme land, in the prouince of golden Castyle, or *Beragua*, and these are the coastes of the fyyme lande, where pearles are founde euen vnto this day: I vnderstande also that there are pearles founde in the prouince and Ilandes of *Cartagenia*. And since your maiestie appoynted me a gouernour and captayne, I haue made further searche, and am aduertyled that pearles are founde in diuers other places, as about the Ilande of *Codego*, whiche lyeth agaynst the mouth of that port of the Ilande of *Cartagenia*, which the Indians cal *Coro*, the which Ilande and port are on the North syde, in the tenth degree of the coastes of the fyyme lande.

By the computation of Venice, foure granes make a *Caract*.

Of the familiaritie which certayne of the Indians  
haue with the deuyl, and howe they receyue  
answere of him of thinges to come.



When the Indians begyn theyr battayle, or  
goe to any combat, or attempt any other  
great matter, they haue certayne elect men,  
whem they reuerently esteeme, & call them  
*Tequinas*, which in theyr tounge is as much  
to say as maisters : notwithstanding that  
they call euery man, that is cummyng in any  
science, by the same name, as fyshers, fowlers, hunters, or ma-  
kers of nettes. These *Tequinas* therefore, they call the maisters  
of theyr aunswers, because they speake with *Tuyra*, that is, the  
deuyl, and bying them aunswere what he saith, eyther as tou-  
chyng such thinges as they haue to doe, or shall chaunce to them  
the day folowynge, or many dayes to come. For the deuyl, beyng  
so auncient an Astronomer, knoweth the tymes of thinges, and  
seeth howe they are naturally directed and inclyned, and ma-  
keth them beleue that they come so to passe by his ordinaunce,  
as though he were the Lorde and mouer of all that is and shalbe,  
and that hee gyueth the day lyght, and rayne, causeth tempest,  
and ruleth the stations of tymes, gyuyng lyfe, or takynge away  
lyfe, at his pleasure : By reason whereof, the Indians be-  
yng deceyued of hym, and sleepng also suche effectes to come  
certaynely to passe as hee hath tolde them before, beleue hym  
in all other thinges, and honour him in many places with sa-  
crifyces of the blood and lyues of men, and odoriferous spices :  
And when God disposeth the contrary to that whiche the deuyl  
hath spoken in oracle, whereby he is proued a lyer, he causeth the  
*Tequinas* to perswade the people that hee hath chaunged his  
mynd and sentence for some of their synnes, or deuileth some such  
lye as lyketh him best, beyng a skilful maister in such subtilite and  
craftie deuises, to deceyue the simple and ignorant people, which  
hath small defence agaynst so mightie and craftie an aduersarie.  
And as they call the deuyl *Tuyra*, so doe they in many places  
call the Christians by the same name, thynkyng that they great-  
ly honour them thereby, as in deede it is a name very fite and



agreeable to many of them, hauyng layde aparte all honestie and vertue, lyuyng more lyke Dragons then men, among these symple people.

Before th inhabitantes of the Ilande of *Hispaniola* had receiued the Christian fayth, there was among them a secte of men, whiche liued solitarily in the desertes and woods, & led theyr lyfe in silence and abstinence, more straitly then euer dyd the philosophers of *Pythagoras* secte, absteinyng in lyke maner from the eatyng of all thynges that lyue by blood, contented onely with such frutes, hearbes, and rootes, as the desertes and woods mynistred vnto them to eate: The professours of this secte were called *Piaces*. They gaue them selues to the knowledge of naturall thynges, and vsed certayne secrete magicall operations and superstitions, whereby they had familiaritie with spirites, which they assured into theyr owne bodyes at such tynes as they would take vppon them to tell of thynges to come, whiche they dyd in manner as foloweth. When any of the kynges had occasion to call any of them out of the desertes for this purpose, theyr custome was to sende them a portion of theyr fyne bread of *Cazabbi* or *Maizium*, and with humble request and suite to desyre them to tell them of suche thynges as they woulde demaunde. After the request graunted, and the place and day appoynted, the *Piaces* commeth, with two of his disciples waytyng on hym, whereof the one byngeth with him a vessell of a secrete water, and the other a litle syluer bell. When he commeth to the place, he sitteth downe on a rounde seate made for hym of purpose, where hauyng his disciples, the one standyng on the one hande, and the other on the other, euen in the presence of the kyng and certayne of his nobles (for the common people are not admitted to these mysteries) and turnyng his face towarde the desarte, he begynneth his inchauntment, and calleth the spirite with loude voyce by certayne names, whiche no man vnderstandeth but hee and his disciples. After he hath done thus a whyle, if the spirite yet deferre his commyng, hee dynketh of the layde water, and therewith waxeth hotte and furious, and inuerceth and turneth his inchauntment, and letteth him selfe blood with a thorne, maruellously turmoilyng him selfe, as wee reade of the furious *Sybilles*, not ceassyng vntyl the spirit be come: who at his commyng entreteth

entreteth into him, and ouerthroweth him, as it were a greyhound should ouerturne a Squerrell, then for a space, hee seemeth to lye as though hee were in great payne, or in a rapt, woonderfully tormentyng him selfe, duryng whiche agonie, the other disciple shaketh the siluer bell continually. Thus when the agonie is past, and he lyeth quietly (yet without any sense or feelyng) the kyng, or some other in his stead, demaundeth of him what he desireth to know: and the spirit answereth by the mouth of the rapt *Places*, with a directe and perfecte answer to all poyntes: Insomuche that on a tyme certayne Spanyarde beyng present at these mysteries with one of the kynges, and in the Spanyshe tounge demaunding the *Places* of their shyppes which they looked for out of Spayne, the spirit answered in the Indian tounge, and tolde them what day and houre the shyppes departed from Spayne, how many they were, and what they brought, without sayling in any poynte. If he be also demaunded of the eclipse of the Sunne or Moone (which they greatly feare and abhorre) he giueth a perfect answer, and the lyke of tempestes, famine, plentie, warre or peace, and such other thinges. When all the demaundes are finished, his disciples call him aloud, ryngyng the siluer bell at his eare, and blowyng a certayne powder into his noethrilles, whereby he is rayled as it were from a dead sleape, beyng yet somewhat heauy headed and faynte a good while after. Thus beyng agayne rewarded of the kyng with more bread, hee departeth agayne to the desertes with his disciples. But since the Christian faith hath been dispeared throughout the Ilande, these deuillye practises haue ceased, and they of the members of the deuyll, are made the members of Christ by baptisme, forsakynge the deuyll and his workes, with the vayne curiositie of desyre of knowledge of thinges to come, whereof for the most parte it is better to be ignorant, then with vexation to know that which can not be auoyded.

Furthermore, in many places of the firme lande, when any of the kynges dye, all his houleholde seruantes, as well women as men whiche haue continually serued him, kyl them selues, beleeuyng as they are taught by the deuyll *Tygra*, that they whiche kyl them selues when the kyng dyeth, goe with him to heauen, and serue him in the same place and office as

Cc.ii.

they

they dyd before on the earth whyle hee lyued : and that all that refuse so to doe, when after they dye by theyr naturall death or otherwysse, theyr soules to dye with theyr bodyes, and to bee dissolued into ayre, and become nothyng, as doe the soules of Dogges, Wydes, Fythes, or other brute beastes : and that only the other may enioy the priuiledge of immortalitie for euer, to serue the kyng in heauen . And of this false opinion commeth it, that they which sowe corne, or set rootes for the kynges bread, and geather the same, are accustomed to kyll them selues, that they may enioy this priuiledge in heauen, and for the same purpose, cause a portion of the graine of *Maizium*, and a bundle of *Iucca* (whereof theyr bread is made) to be buried with them in their graues, that the same may serue them in heauen, if perhappes there should lacke seedes to sow, and therefore they take this with them, to begyn withall, vntil *Tuyra* (who maketh them all these fayre promises) proude them of greater quantitie. This haue I my selfe scene in the toppe of the mountaynes of *Guaturo*, where hauing in pyson the kyng of that prouince (who rebelled from thobedience of your maiestie) and demaundying of him to whom perteyned those sepultures or graues which I sawe in his house : hee answered, that they were of certayne Indians which slue them selues at the death of his father . And because they are oftentimes accustomed to bury great quantities of wrought gold with them, I caused twoo graues to be opened, wherein was nothyng founde but a vessell full of the graine of *Maizium*, & a bundle of *Iucca*, as I haue sayde . And demaundying the cause hereof, of the kyng and the other Indians : they answered, that they that were buried there, were the labourers of the grounde, and men skylfull in sowying of seedes, and makying of bread, and seruantes to the kynges father, and to the ende that their soules should not dye with theyr bodyes, they slue them selues at the death of the kyng theyr maister, to lyue with hym in heauen, and to the intent that they myght serue him there in the same offyce, they reserued that *Maizium* and *Iucca*, to sow it in heauen . Wherevnto I answered them in this maner, Beholde howe your *Tuyra* deceyueth you, and howe all that hee teacheth you is false. You see howe in so long a tyme since they are dead, they haue not yet taken away this *Maizium* and *Iucca*, which

which is now putrified and woorth nothing, and not lyke to bee sowne in heauen. To this the kyng replied, saying, in that they haue not taken it away, nor sowne it in heauen, the cause is, that they chaunced to fynde enough there, by reason whereof they had no neede of this. To this errour many thinges were sayd, which seemed of litle force to remoue him from his false opinion, and especially any such as at that age are occupped of the deuyl, whom they paynt of the selfe same fourme and colour, as hee appeareth vnto them in dyuers shapen and fourmes. They make also Images of golde, copper, and wood, to the same similitudes, in terrible shapen, and so variable, as the paynters are accustomed to paynt them at the feete of saint Michaell tharchangell, or in any other place, where they paynte them of most horrible portiture. Likewyse when the deuyl greatly intendeth to feare them, hee threatneth to sende them great tempestes, whiche they call *Furacanas*, or *Haurachanas*, and are so vehement, that they ouerthrow many houses, and great trees. And I haue seene in mountaynes, full of many and great trees, that for the space of thre quarters of a league the mountayne hath been subuerted, and the trees ouerthrowen, and plucked out of the earth with the rootes: a thing doubtesse so fearefull and terrible to beholde, that it may verily appeare to bee done by the hande of the deuyl. And in this case the Chyistian men ought to consider with good reason, that in all places where the holy sacrament is reserued, the sayde tempestes are no more so outragious, or so perillous as they were wont to bee.

Doctrine not  
worth for a  
chistian man.

Of the temperature of the regions vnder or neare to the burnt lyne, called *Torrida Zona*, or the Equinoctiall, and of the dyuers seasons of the yere.



The landes and regions that are neare about the clymes of the Equinoctiall lyne, are naturally hot, although they be otherwise temperate by the diuine prouidence: & therefore such fleshe or fysh as is taken and kylled in these regions, can not be preserued from putrefaction, except it be rosted, scolden, or perboyld, the same day that it is kylld. And wheras I haue sayd, that

Ec. ili.

such



Such regions are naturally hotte, and yet temperate by the prouidence of God, it is so in deede :: and therefore not without cause the auncient authorours were of opinion, that the burnt lyne, or *Torrida Zona*, where passeth the lyne of the Equinoctiall, shoulde be inhabitable, by reason the Sun hath greater dominion in that place, then in any other of the sphere, remaynyng continually betweene the two troppes of Cancer and Capricorne : For when in these regions the earth is opened or dygged from the superficiall parte thereof to the deapth of a mans heyght, it is founde temperate, and within this space the trees and plants fasten and spread their rootes, and no deeper, extendyng the same as farre in breadth in the ground as doe they braunches in the ayre, and enter no deeper into the ground then I haue sayde, because that beneath the deapth of the sayde space of a mans heyght the earth is very hotte, the vpper part beyng temperate and very moyst, as well by reason of the abundaunce of water whiche falleth from heauen vpon that earth at certayne ordinarie seasons of the yeere, as also for the multitude of great ryuers, brookes, springes, and marishes, whereby the myghtie and supreme Lord which made these landes, hath most prudently provided for the preservation of the same.

There are also many rough and hygh mountaynes, with temperate ayre, and pleasaunt, cleare, and moderate nyghtes : of the which particullaritie the auncient wyters hauyng no certayne knowledge, affirmed the said burnt line or *Torrida Zona*, or Equinoctiall, to be naturally inhabitable. As touching which thing I am able to witnesse the contrary by testimonie of syght and feeling, as by most certayne senses, hauyng lyued many peeres in these regions, by reason whereof better credite ought to be giuen to me, then to such as haue grounded their opinion onely vpon coniectures. And to speake further of the situation of these regions, you shall vnderstand that the coaste of the North sea, beyng in the gulf of *Vraba*, and in the porte of *Dariena*, where the Rhypps arryue whiche come out of *Spayne*, is in the thre degree and a halfe, and in the seuen, and from sixe and a halfe, vnto eyght, except a small poynt which entrench into the sea toward the North. That poynt which of this lande and new parte of the worlde lyeth most toward the East, is the cape of saint Augustine, which

is in the eyght degree. So that the sayd gulfe of *Uraba*, is distant from the Equinoctiall lyne, from a hundred & twentie, to a hundred and thirtie leagues, and three quarters of a league, after that accompte of .xvii. leagues and a halfe for euery degree from pole to pole: and thus for a litle more or lesse, goeth all the coast. By reason whereof, in the citie of *Sancta Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, and in all that course of the foresayde gulfe of *Uraba*, at all tymes of the yeere the dayes and nyghtes are in maner of equall length: and if there bee any difference betweene them by reason of this small distance from the Equinoctiall, it is so litle, that in .xxiii. houres, makynge a naturall day, it can not bee perceyued but by the iudgement of speculatiue men, and suche as vnderstande the sphere: From hence the North starre is seene very lowe. And when the starres, whiche are called the guardens of the North starre, are vnder the Chariot, it can not be seene, because it is vnder the horizontall. And whereas I haue sayde before that it rayneth in these regions at certayne ordinarie tymes, it is so in deed: For it is wynter and summer there at contrary tymes to that which is in Spayne, where the greatest colde of frost and rayne is in December and Ianuary, and the greatest heate of sommer about saint Johns day at Hydsummer, or in the moneth of Iuly: But in golden Castile or *Beragua*, it is contrary, for the sommer and tyme of greatest drought & without rayne, is at Christmas, and a moneth before, and a moneth after, & the tyme when it rayneth most, is about Hydsummer, and a moneth before, and a moneth after. And this season which they call wynter, is not for that it is any colder then, then at any other tyme of the yeere, or hotter at Christmas then at other seasons, the tyme in these regions being euere after one maner: but for that, that, in this tyme whiche they call wynter, the Sunne is hydde from theyr sightes, by reason of cloudes and rayne, more then at other times. Yet forasmuche as for the most part of the yeere they lyue in a cleare, open, and temperate ayre, they somewhat shyynke and feele a litle colde durynge the tyme of the sayde moyst and cloudy ayre, although it be not colde in deede, or at the least such colde as hath any sensible sharpenesse.

Of dyuers particuler thinges, as woormes, serpentes, beastes, foules, trees. &c.



Any other thinges might be sayd, and much differnyng from these wherof I haue spoken. But to lette passe the multitude of thinges whiche are as variable as the power of nature is infinite, and to speake of such thinges as come chiefly to my remembraunce, as most worthy to be noted, I will first speake of certayne litle and troublous beastes, whiche may seeme to bee engendred of nature to molest & vex men, to shewe them & giue them to vnderstand, how small and vyle a thing may offende and disquiet them, to thende that they may remember the principall end for the whiche they were created, that is, to know their maker and procurer of their saluation by the way whiche is open to all Christian men, and all other whiche will open the eyes of theyr vnderstandyng. And although the thinges whereof wee entende now to speake, may seeme vyle and litle to be esteemed, yet are they worthy to bee noted and considered, to vnderstande the difference and variable woorkes of nature. So it is therefore, that whereas in many partes of the firme lande, by the whiche as well the Christians as Indians doe trauayle, there are suche maryshes and waters in the way, that they are sayne to go without breeches among the hearbes and weedes, by reason whereof, certayne smal beasts or woormes (whiche they cal *Garapates*) much lyke vnto tykes, cleaue fast to their legges. These woormes are as litle as the powder of beaten salt, and cleaue so fast, that they can by no meanes bee taken away, except the place bee noynted with oyle: and after that the legges be noynted a whyle with oyle, or the other partes where these litle tykes are fastened, they scrape the place with a knyfe, and so take them away. But the Indians whiche haue no oyle, smoke them, and burne them with fyre, and abyde great paynes in takyng them away by this meanes. Of other litle beastes whiche trouble men, and are engendred in theyr heades or other partes of theyr bodyes, I say that the Christian men which travayle into these partes, haue them but seloome tymes, and that not past one or two, & this al-

so very seldome : For passing by the lyne of the Diameter where the compasse maketh difference of saylyng by the wynde called *Greco*, (that is, Northeast) and *Magistral* (that is, southwest) whiche is in the course of the *Ilandes of Azori*, they sayle but a litle way folowynge our blage by the west, but that all the yse whiche the *Christians* carry with them, or are engendred in theyr heades, or other places of theyr bodyes, dye and utterly consume by litle and litle, and are not engendred in *India*, except in the heades of litle chyldren in those partes, aswell among the chyldren of the *Christians* whiche are bozne there, as also among the naturall *Indians*, who haue them commonly in theyr heades, and sometymes in other partes of theyr bodyes, and especially they of the prouince of *Cuenca*, whiche is a region contaynyng more then a hundred leagues in length, and embraseth the one and the other coast of the *North sea*, and of the *East*. When these *Indians* are infected with this fylthynesse, they dresse and cleanse one an other : And they that exercyse this, are for the most part women, who eate all that they take, and haue herein suche dexteritie by reason of theyr exercise, that our men can not lyghtly attayne therunto. There is also another thyng greatly to be consydered: and this is, howe the *Christian* men, beyng there cleane from this fylthynesse of *India*, aswell in theyr heades as the rest of theyr bodyes, yet when they returne to come agayne into *Europe*, and begyn to arryue in that place of the *Ocean sea* where we sayde before that these yse dyed and forsoke them, sodenly in theyr repassing by the same clype (as though these yse had carryed for them in that place) they can by no meanes auoyde them for the space of certayne dayes, although they change theyr shertes two or thre times in a day: These lise are at y<sup>e</sup> first as litle as nittes, and growe by litle and litle, vntyl they be of the byggenesse that they are in *Spayne*. This haue I oftentymes proued, hauynge nowe foure tymes passed the *Ocean sea* by this blage. Besyde these wormes and vermyns wherof we haue spoken, there is another litle myschenous worme, whiche we may number among the kyndes of fleas, this pestilence the *Indians* call *Nigua*, and is muche lesse then a flea: it pearfeth the fleshe of a man, and so lameth or cutteth the same (whyte



Vipers.

in the meane tynie it can neyther be seene nor taken) that from  
 some it hath cut of theyr handes, and from other theyr feete,  
 buttill the remedy was founde to annoynt the place with oyle,  
 and scrape it with a rasor. In the firme lande in golden  
 Castyle or *Beragua*, there are many vipers lyke vnto them of  
 Spayne: they that are bytten of them, dye in short space,  
 for fewe lyue to the fourth day, except present remedy. Of  
 these, some are of lesse kynde then other, and haue theyr tayle  
 somewhat rounde, and leape in the ayre to assaile men, and  
 for this cause, some call this kynde of vipers *Tro*: theyr byt-  
 tyng is most venomous, and for the most parte incurable.  
 One of them chaunced to bite an Indian mayde whiche serued  
 me in my house, to whom I caused the Surgians to mynister  
 theyr ordinary cure, but they coulde do her no good, nor yet  
 great one droppe of blood out of her, but onely a yelow water,  
 so that she dyed the thyrde day for lacke of remedy, as the lyke  
 hath chaunced to dyuers other: This mayde was of the age  
 of .xiiii. yeeres, and spake the Spanyshe tongue as if she had  
 been borne in Castyle: she sayde that the viper whiche byt her on  
 the foote, was two spannes long, or litle lesse, and that to bite  
 her, she lept in the ayre for the space of more then fyre pales, as  
 I haue hearde the lyke of other credible persons. I haue also  
 seene in the firme lande a kynde of adders, very small, and of  
 seuen or eyght foote long: these are so redde, that in the nyght  
 they appeare lyke burnyng cooles, and in the day seeme as  
 redde as bloodde, these are also venomous, but not so muche as  
 the vipers. There are other muche lesse, and shorter, and black-  
 ker: these come out of the ryuers, and wander sometymes farre  
 on the lande, and are lykewysse venomous. There are also o-  
 ther adders of a russet colour: these are somewhat bygger then  
 the viper, and are hurtful and venomous. There are lykewysse  
 an other sort of many colours, and very long: of these I sawe  
 one in the yere of Christ .1515. in the Island of *Hispaniola*, neere  
 vnto the sea coastes, at the foote of the mountaynes called *Peder-  
 nales*, when this adder was slayne, I measure her, and founde  
 her to be more then .xx. foote long, & somewhat more then a mans  
 fyft in byggnesse: and although she had thre or foure deadly  
 woundes with a sworde, yet dyed she not, nor shooke the  
 same

Adders.

same daye, insonmuche that her blood continued warme all that  
 tyme. There are also in the Marshes and desartes of the fyrme  
 lande many other kyndes of Lysartes, Dragons, and other Dragons.  
 diuers kyndes of Serpentes, whereof I entende not heere to  
 speake muche, because I haue moze particularly entreated of  
 these thynges in my generall hystorie of the West Indies.  
 There are also Spydres of maruclous byggnesse, and I Spiders  
 haue seene some with the bodye and legges bygger then a  
 mans hande extended euery waye, and I once sawe one of  
 synche byggnesse, that only her bodye was as bygge as a Spar-  
 rowe, and full of that Laune whereof they make theyr webbes:  
 this was of a darke russet coloure, with eyes greater then the  
 eyes of a Sparowe, they are venomous, and of terrible shape  
 to beholde. There are also Scorpions, and dyuers other such  
 venomous woymes. Whereby we may see, that where as na-  
 turall causes and influence of the planettes are of strongest acti-  
 uitie, they ceasse not to engender and byng forth both good  
 and badde, accordyng to the disposition of the matter, whiche  
 they also doo partly dispose, as the philosphers asseyne. Fur-  
 thermoze in the fyrme lande, there are many Toades, beyng ve-  
 ry noyous and hurtfull by reason of theyr great multitude, they  
 are not venomous, they are scene in great abundaunce in *Darie-*  
*na*, where they are so bygge that when they dye in the tyme  
 of drouth, the bones of some of them (and especially the rybbes)  
 are of suche greatnesse, that they appeare to be the bones of  
 Cattes, or of some other beastes of the same byggnesse. But as  
 the waters diminishe, and the moysture consumeth in the tyme of  
 drouth (as I haue sayde) they also consume therewith, vntyl the  
 yeere next folowynge when the rayne and moysture encrease, at  
 whiche tyme they are scene agayne.ouerthelesse, at this pre-  
 sent there is no such quantitie of them, as was wont to be, by rea-  
 son that as the lande is better cultured by the Christians, aswell  
 by the fellyng of wooddes and shrubbes, as also by the pasture of  
 Kynne, Horses, and other beastes, so is it apparent that this pop-  
 son diminissheth daylye, whereby that region becommeth moze  
 holosome and pleasaunt: these Toades lyng after thre or foure  
 sortes, for some of them lyng pleasauntly, other lyke ours of  
 Spayne, some also whistle, and other some make an  
other

Other maner of noyle: they are lyke wyse of diuers coloures, as some greene, some russet or gray, and some almost blacke, but of all sortes they are great and fylthy, and noyous by reason of theyr great multitude, yet are they not venomous as I haue sayde. There are also a straunge kynde of Crabbes, whiche come forth of certayne holes of the earth, that they them selues make: the head and bodie of these make one rounde thyng, muche lyke vnto the hood of a Fauikon, hauing foure feete commyng out of the one syde, & as many out of the other: they haue also two mouthes, like vnto a payre of small Pincers, the one bygger then the other, wherewith they byte, but doo no great hurt, because they are not venomous: theyr skynne and bodie is smooth, and thynne, as is the skynne of a man, sayng that it is somewhat harder, theyr coloure is russet, or whyte, or blewe, and walke sydelong, they are very good to be eaten, insomuche that the Christians trauaylsing by the fyre lande, haue been greatly nourysed by them, because they are founde in maner euery where: in shape and fourme they are muche like vnto the Crabbe whiche we paynt for the signe Cancer, and like vnto those whiche are founde in Spayne in *Andalusia* in the ryuer *Guadalchiber*, where it entreth into the sea, and in the sea coastes there about, sayng that these are of the water, and the other of the lande: they are sometymes hurtfull, so that they that eate of them dye, but this chaunceth only when they haue eaten any venomous thyng, or of the venomous apples wherewith the Canible archers popson theyr arrowes, whereof I wyll speake hereafter, and for this cause the Christians take heede how they eate of these Crabbes, yf they fynde them neare vnto the sayd apple trees. Furthermore in these Indies, as wel in the fyre lande, as in the Ilandes, there is founde a kynde of Serpentes, whiche they call *X. V. anas*, whiche some cal *Iuanas*, these are terrible and feareful to syght, and yet not hurtful, they are very delicate to be eaten, and it is not yet knowen whether they be beastes of the lande, or fylshes, because they lyue in the water, and wander in the wooddes, and on the lande: they haue foure feete, and are commonly bygger then Connies, and in some places bygger then Otters, with tayles lyke *Lysartes* or *Cutes*: theyr skynne is spotted, and of the same kynd

Crabbes.

Serpentes cal-  
led Iuanas.

kynde of *inochnesse* or *barenesse*, although of dyuers colours: upon the rydge of theyr backes, they haue many long prickes, theyr teeth are very sharpe, and especially theyr fanges or dogge teeth, theyr thyotes are long and large, reaching from theyr beardes to theyr breastes, of the lyke skynne to the resydue of theyr bodyes: they are dunbe, and haue no voyce, or make any noyse, or crye, although they bee kept tyed to the foote of a chesse, or any other thyng, for the space of .xx. or .xxv. dayes, without any thyng to eate or drynke, except they geue them nowe and then a litle of the bread of *Cazabbi*, or some suche other thyng: they haue foure feete, and theyr fore feete as long as a mans synger, with clawes lyke the clawes of a byrde, but weaker, and suche as can not grasple or take holde of any thyng: they are muche better to bee eaten then to beholde, for fewe that see them, wyll haue desyre to eate of them, by reason of theyr horrible shape, except suche as haue ben accustomed to the bestes of these regions, whiche are more horrible and feareful, as this is not, but onely in apparence: theyr fleshe is of muche better tast then the fleshe of *Connies*, and more holosome, for it hurteth none but onely suche as haue had the frenche poxe, insomuche that if they haue been touched of that infirmitie, although they haue ben whole of long tyme, neuerthelesse they feele hurte, and complayne of the eatyng of these *Iuannas*, as hath been oftentimes prooued by experience. There are founde in the fyrie lande certayne byrdes, so litle, that the whole body of one of them is no bygger then the toppe of the byggeſt synger of a mans hande, and yet is the bare body without the feathers not halfe so bygge: This byrde, besyde her litle nesse, is of suche velocitie and swyftnesse in slepyng, that who so seeth her slepyng in the ayre, can not see her flap or beate her winges after any other sort then do the *Doxes*, or humble bees, or *Beetels*: so that there is no man that seeth her flee, that would thynke her to be any other then a *Doxe*: they make their nestes accordyng to the proportion of their bygnes, and I haue seene that one of these byrdes with her nest put in a payre of golde weights, altogether hath waide no more then .2. *Tomini*, which are in poise. 24. graines, with the feathers, without the which she shoulde haue wayed somewhat lesse. And doubtlesse when I con-

sider



sider the fynenesse of the clawes & feete of these byzdes, I knowe  
 not whereunto I may bester lyken them, then to the litle byzdes  
 whiche the lymmers of bookes are accustomed to paynte on the  
 margent of churche bookes, and other bookes of diuine seruice.  
 Theyr feathers are of many sayre colours, as golden, yelowie,  
 and greene, besyde other variable colours, theyr beake is very  
 long for the proportion of theyr bodies, and as fyne and subtile as  
 a sawynge neale: they are very hardy, so that when they see a  
 man clyme y tree where they haue their nests, they flee at his face,  
 & stryke hym in the eyes, commyng, goyng, and returnyng with  
 such swyftnes, that no man woulde lyghly beleue it, that hath  
 not seene it: and certaynly these byzdes are so litle, that I durst  
 not haue made mention hereof, if it were not that diuers other  
 which haue scene them as wel as I can beare witnes of my say-  
 ing; they make their nestes of flocks and beare of cotton, wherof  
 there is great plentie in these regions, and serueth wel for theyr  
 purpose. But as touchyng the byzdes, foules, and beastes of  
 these Indies, because they are innumerable, both litle and great,  
 I intende not to speake muche heere, because I haue spoken  
 moze largely hereof in my generall hystoixe of the Indies.  
 There is an other kynde of beastes scene in the firme lande,  
 whiche seemeth very strange and marueylous to the Chyristian  
 men to beholde, and much differyng from al other beastes whi-  
 che haue ben scene in other partes of the world: these beastes are  
 called *Bardati*, and are foure footed, haupyng their tayle and al the  
 rest of theyr bodyes couered onely with a skynne lyke the coper-  
 ture of a barbed hoise, or the checkered skinne of a *Lisarte* or *Tro-*  
*codile*, of coloure betwene white and russet, inclynyng somewhat  
 moze to whyte. This beast is of fourme and shape muche lyke  
 to a barbed hoise, with his barbes and flankets in al poynts, and  
 from vnder that which is the barbe and coperture, the taile com-  
 meth forth, and the feete in theyr place, the necke also & the eares  
 in theyr parties, and in fyne al thynges in lyke sorte as in a bar-  
 bed courser: they are of the bygnesse of one of these common  
 dogges, they are nothurfyll, they are flythy, and haue theyr  
 habitation in certaine hillockes of earth, where dygging with  
 their feete, they make theyr dens very deepe, & the holes thereof,  
 in like maner as do *Connies*, they are very excellent to be eaten, &

are taken with nettes, and some also kyled with Crossbowes : they are likewise taken oftentimes when the husbandmen burne the stubble in sowynge tyme, or to renue the herbage for Kynie and other beastes. I haue oftentimes eaten of theyr flesh, which seemeth to me of better taile then Kyddes fleshe, and holosome to be eaten. And if these beastes had euer been seene in these partes of the worlde, where the fyrst barbed horyes had theyr originall, no man woulde iudge but that the fourme and fashyon of the co-  
 perture of horyes furnyshed for the warres, was fyrst deuised by the syght of these beastes. There is also in the syrie lande another beast, called *Orso Formigaro*, that is, the Ante beare. This  
 beast in heare and coloure, is much lyke to the Beare of Spaine, and in maner of the same makynge, saue that he hath a muche longer snout, and is of euyll syght : they are oftentimes taken on-  
 ly with stauess, without any other weapon, and are not hurtful, they are also taken with dogges, because they are not naturally armed, although they bite somewhat, they are founde for the  
 most part about and neare to the hyllockes where are great abundaunce of Antes. For in these regions is engendred a cer-  
 tayne kynde of Antes, very litle and blacke, in the feedes and playnes where as growe no trees, where by the instinct of na-  
 ture these Antes separate them selues to engender farre from the wooddes for feare of these Beares, the whiche because they are  
 fearefull, vyle, and unarmed (as I haue sayde) they keepe euer in places full of trees, vntyll very famine and necessitie, or the  
 great desire that they haue to fede on these Antes, cause them to come out of the wooddes to hunt for them : these Antes make a hyl-  
 locke of earth to the heyghe of a man, or somewhat more or lesse, and as byg as a great chest, & sometymes as byg as a Butte  
 or a Doghead, & as hard as a stone, so that they seeme as though they were stones, set by to limit the endes & confines of certayne  
 lands. Within these hyllocks, made of most harde earth, are innum-  
 erable and infinite litle Antes, the whiche may be gathered by bushelles when the hyllocke is broken : the whiche when  
 it is sometymes moysted by rayne, and then dyed agayne by the heate of the Sonne, it breaketh, and hath certayne small  
 ryftes, as litle and subtile as the edge of a knyfe, and it seemeth that nature hath geuen sense to these Antes to fynde  
 suche

Beares.

Antes.

suche a matter of earth, wherewith they may make the sayde hyl-  
 locke of suche hardnesse, that it may seeme a strong pauement  
 made of lime and stone : and whereas I haue proued and cau-  
 sed some of them to be broken, I haue founde them of such hard-  
 nesse, as yf I had not seene I could not haue beleueed, insomuch  
 that they coulde scarcely be broken with pykes of Iron, so strong  
 fortresses doo these litle beastes make for theyr sauegard against  
 theyr aduersarie the Beare, who is chiefly nourished by them,  
 and geuen them as an enimie, accordyng to the common pro-  
 uerbe whiche sayeth, *Non e alcuna persona si libera, a chimanchi il*  
*suo Bargello*, that is, there is no man so free, that hath not his per-  
 secutor or priuie enimie. And here when I consyder the mar-  
 uellous prouidence whiche nature hath geuen to these litle bo-  
 dies, I cal to remembrance the wittie sentence of Plinie, where  
 speakyng of such litle beastes, he sayeth thus, Why do we mar-  
 uelle at the Towrebearyng shoulders of Elephantes, and not  
 rather where nature hath placed so many senses & such industrye  
 in such litle bodies? Where is hearing, sinelling, seeing, and fee-  
 lyng, yea, where are the baynes and arteries (without which no  
 beast can lyue or moue) in these so litle bodies, whereof some are  
 so small that theyr whole bodies can scarcely be seene of our eyes:  
 What shall we then saye of the partes of the same? Yet euen a-  
 mong these there are many of such sagasitie and industry, as the  
 like is not seene in beastes of greater quantitie, no nor yet in  
 man, &c. But to returne to the history. This enimie whiche na-  
 ture hath geuen to these litle beastes, vseth this maner to assaile  
 them: When he resorteth to the hyllocke where the Antes lie hid  
 as in theyr fortress, he putteth his tongue to one of the ryftes  
 whereof we haue spoken, being as subtile as the edge of a sword,  
 and therewith continuall lickyng, maketh the place moyst, the  
 fume and froth of his mouth beynge of suche propertie, that by  
 continuall lickyng the place, it enlargeth the ryft in such sort by  
 litle and litle, that at the length he easely putteth in his tongue,  
 whiche he hath very long and thynne, and muche disproportion-  
 ate to his bodie, and when he hath thus made free passage for  
 his tongue into the hyllocke, to put it easely in and out at his  
 pleasure, then he thrusteth it into the hole as farre as he can  
 reache, and so letteth it rest a good space, untill a great quan-  
 titie

titie of the Antes (whose nature reioycest in heate and moyster) haue laden his tongue, and as many as he can conteyne in the hollownesse thereof, at which tyme hee sodenly draweth it into his mouth, and eateth them, and returneth agayne to the same practise immediatly, vntill he haue eaten as many as him lysteth, or as long as he can reache any with his tongue. The fleshe of this beast, is filthy and vsfauery, but by reason of the extreme thystles and necessitie that the Christian men were put to at theyr fyrst commynge into these partes, they were inforced to proue all thinges, and so fell to the eatyng of these beasts: but when they had found moze delycate meates, they fel into hatred with this. These Antes haue thappearance of the place of theyr entraunce into the hyllocke, vnder the grounde, and this at so litle a hole, that it coulde hardely be founde, if certayne of them were not seene to passe in and out: but by this way the Beares could haue no suche power to hurte them as aboue at the sayde ryftes, as I haue sayde. There is an other strange beast, whiche by a name of contrary effecte, the Spanyardes call *Cagnuolo leggiero*, that is, the lyght dogge, whereas it is one of the slowest beastes in the world, and so heauy and dull in mouyng, that it can scarcely goe fyfte pases in a whole day: these beastes are in the firme lande, and are very strange to beholde for the disproportion that they haue to all other beastes, they are about two spannes in length when they are growne to theyr full bygggenesse, but when they are very young, they are somewhat moze grosse then long: they haue foure subtile feete, and in euery of them foure clawes lyke vnto byrdes, and ioyned togeather, yet are nother theyr clawes or their feete able to susteyne theyr bodyes from the grounde, by reason whereof, and by the heauynesse of theyr bodyes, they drawe theyr bellies on the grounde: theyr neckes are hygh and streyght, and all equall lyke the pestle of a mortar, which is altogether equall euen vnto the toppe, without making any proportion or similitude of a head, or any dyfference except in the noddle, and in the toppes of theyr neckes: they haue very rounde faces muche lyke vnto Dwles, and haue a marke of theyr owne heare after the maner of a cyrcle, which maketh theyr faces seeme somewhat moze long then large: they haue small eyes and rounde, and nostrylles lyke vnto Dunkeys:

A strange  
beast which  
seemeth a kind  
of Camelion.



they haue litle mouthes, and moue theyr neckes from one syde to an other, as though they were astonysht: theyr chiefe desyre and delyghte is to cleaue and stricke fast vnto trees, or some other thyng whereby they may clyme aloft, and therefore for the most parte, these beastes are founde vppon trees, wherevnto cleauyng fast, they mount by by litle and litle, staying them selues by theyr long clawes: the colour of theyr heare, is betwene russet and whyte, and of the proper colour of the heare of a Mesele: they haue no tayles, and theyr voyce is much differing from other beastes, for they syng onely in the nyght, and that continually from tyme to tyme, syngyng euer syxe notes one hygher then an other, so fallyng with the same, that the first note is the hyghest, and the other in a baser tune, as if a man shoulde say *La, sol, fa, mi, re, vt*, so this beast sayeth, *Ha, ha, ba, ba, ba, ba*. And doubtlesse, it seemeth vnto mee, that as I haue sayde in the Chapter of the beast called *Bardati*, that those beastes myght bee the original and document to imbarbe horses: euen so, the fyrst inuention of musycke myght secme by the hearyng of this beast, to haue the fyrst principles of that science, rather then by any other thyng in the worlde. But now to retorne to the hystorie. I say that in a shORTE space after this beast hath song, and hath paused a whyle, shee returneth agayne to the selfe same song, and doeth this onely in the nyght, and not in the day: By reason whereof, and also because of her euyl sight, I thynke her to bee a nyght beast, and the friende of darkenesse. Sometymes the Chyristian men fynde these beastes, and byyng them home to theyr houses, where also they creepe all about with theyr naturall slownesse, insomuch that nother for threatyng or pryckyng they will moue any faster then theyr naturall and accustomed pace. And if they fynde any trees, they creepe thither immediatly, and mount to the toppe of the hyghest braunche thereof, where they remayne continually for the space of eyght, or tenne, or twentie dayes, without catyng of any thyng, as farre as any man can iudge. And whercas I my selfe haue kept them in my house, I coulde neuer perceyue other but that they lyue onely of ayre, and of the same opinion are in maner all men of those regions, because they haue neuer seene them eate any thyng, but euer turne theyr heades and mouthes towardes that

that parte where the wynde bloweth most, whereby may be considered that they take most pleasure in the ayre. They byte not, nor yet can byte, hauyng very litle mouthes: they are not venomous or noyous any way, but altogether brutyshe, and viterly vnprofitable, and without commoditie yet knowen to men, sayyng onely to moue theyr myndes to contemplate the infynite power of God, who delyghteth in the varietie of creatures, whereby appeareth the power of his incomprehenible wysedome and maiestie, so farre to exceede the capacitie of mans vnderstanding.

In these regions there are lykelysse founde certayne foules or byrdes, which the Indians call *Alcatraz*: these are muche bigger then Geese, the greatest parte of theyr feathers are of russet colour, and in some partes yelow, theyr bylles or beakes are of two spannes in length, and very large neare to the head, and growyng small toward the poynte, they haue great and large throttes, and are muche lyke to a foule which I sawe in Flaunders in Brusselles in your maiesties pallasce, whiche the Flemynges call *Haina*: And I remember that when your maiestie dyed one day in your great hall, there was brought to your maiesties presence a Cauderne of water with certayne fyshes alyue, whiche the sayde foule dyd eate by whole, and I thynke verily that that foule was a foule of the sea, because shee had feete lyke foules of the water, as haue also these *Alcatrazi*, which are lykelysse foules of the sea, and of suche greatnesse, that I haue seene a whole coate of a man put into the throttes of one of them in *Panama*, in the yere. 1521. And forasmuche as in that coast of *Panama*, there passeth and fleeth a great multitude of these *Alcatrazi*, beyng a thyng very notable, I wyll declare the maner heereof, as not onely I, but also dyuers other now present in your maiesties courte haue often tymes seene. Your maiestie shall therefore vnderstande, that in this place (as I haue sayde before) the sea of Sur ryseth and falleth two leagues and moze from syxe houres to syxe houres: so that when it increaseth, the water of the sea arryueh so neare to the houses of *Panama*, as doeth our sea (called *Mare Mediterraneum*) in *Barzalona*, or in  *Naples*: and when the sayd increasing of the sea commeth, there commeth also therewith suche a multitude of the smal fyshes called *Sardines*, that it is so marueilous a thyng to behold,

beholde, that no man would beleue it that hath not seene it. In-  
 somuch that the *Cacique* (that is) the kyng of that lande, at such  
 tyme as I dwelt there, was bounde dayly, as he was commaun-  
 ded by your maiesties gouernour, to byng ordinarily thre ca-  
 noas or barkes full of the sayde *Sardynes*, and to vnlade the  
 same in the market place, whiche were afterwarde by the ru-  
 ler of the citie diuided among the Christian men, without any  
 coste or charge to any of them : Insomuche that if the people  
 had been a much greater multitude then they were, and as ma-  
 ny as are at this present in *Toledo*, or more, and had none other  
 thyng to lyue by, they myght haue been sufficiently susteyned  
 by these *Sardynes*, belyde the ouerplus which should haue re-  
 mayned . But to retorne to the foules, whereof we haue spo-  
 ken . As the sea commeth, and the *Sardynes* with the same,  
 euen so lykewyse come the sayde *Alcatrazzi* therewith, and flee  
 continually ouer it, in such a multytude, that they appeare to co-  
 uer the vpper parte or floore of the water, and thus continue in  
 mountyng and fallyng from the ayre to the water, and from the  
 water to the ayre, dur yng all the tyme of their fishing: and as soone  
 as they haue taken any of these *Sardines*, they flee aboue the wa-  
 ters, and eate them incontynently, and sodeynly retorne agayne  
 to the water for more, continuing thus course by course without  
 ceas yng: in lyke maner when the sea falleth, they folowe theyr fy-  
 shyng as I haue sayde . There goeth also in the company of these  
 foules, an other kynde of foules, called *Coda inforcata*, (that is)  
 the forked tayle, whereof I haue made mention before, & as soone  
 as the *Alcatraz* mounteth from the water with her pray of the  
*Sardynes*, sodeynly this *Coda inforcata* gyueth her so many  
 strokes, and so persecuteth her, that she causeth her to let fall the  
*Sardynes* which she hath in her mouth : the which as soone as  
 they are faine, and before they yet touche the water, the *Coda*  
*inforcata* catcheth them euen in the fall, in suche sorte, that it is  
 a great pleasure to beholde the combat betweene them all the  
 day long . The number of these *Alcatrazzi* is suche, that the  
 Christian men are accustomed to sende to certayne Ilandes and  
 rockes which are neare about *Panama*, with theyr boates or bar-  
 kes to take these *Alcatrazzi*, whyle they are yet young, and can  
 not flee, and kyll as many of them with stauces as they will, vntyll  
 they

they haue therewith laden theyr Barkes or Canoas: these young ones are so fat and well fedde, that they can not bee eaten, and are taken for none other intent, but onely to make grease for candles to burne in the nyght, for the whiche purpose it serueth very well, and gyueth a cleare lyght, and burneth easily. After this maner, and for this purpose, innumerable of them are kyld: & yet it seemeth that the number of them that fythe for Sardynes doe dayly increase. There are other foules call'd *Passere sem-  
pie*, that is, simple sparowes: these are somewhat lesse then *Passere sem-  
pie*. Seamewes, and haue theyr feete lyke vnto great Galarde, and stande in the water sometymes, and when the shyppes sayle fyftie or a hundred leagues about the Isles, these foules beholdyng the shyppes commyng towarde them, breake theyr flyght, and fall downe vpon the sayle yardes, mastes, and cables thereof, and are so simple and folysh, that they tary vntyll they may easily bee taken with mens handes, and were therefore called of the maryners simple sparowes: they are blacke, and vppon theyr blacke, haue theyr head and shoulbers of feathers of a darke russet colour: they are not good to bee eaten, although the maryners haue sometymes been inforced to eate them. There is an other kynde of byrdes in the firme land, which the Christians call *Picuti*, because they haue very great beakes, in respecte of the lidenesse of theyr bodyes, for theyr beakes are very heauy, and weye more then theyr whole bodyes besyde: these byrdes are no bygger then Quayles, but haue a muche greater busshment of feathers, insomuche that theyr feathers are more then theyr bodyes: theyr feathers are very fayre, and of many variable coloures, theyr beakes are a quarter of a yarde in length or more, and bendyng downe toward the earth, and thzee fynghers brode neare vnto the head: theyr tongues are very quylles, wherewith they make a great hyssyng: they make holes in trees with theyr beakes, in the which they make their neastes. And surely these byrdes are marueylous to beholde, for the great dyfference whiche they haue from all other byrdes that I haue scene, as well for theyr tongues (which are quylles as I haue sayd) as also for the strangenesse of their sight, & disproportion of their great beakes, in respect of the rest of their bodies. There are no byrdes found that prouide better for the safegard of



Folpthe Spar  
rowes,

theyr young in the tyme of theyr breedynge, to be without daunger of wyld cattles, that they enter not into theyr neastes to destroy their egges or young, and this as well by the strange maner of buyldynge their nestes, as also by theyr owne defence: and therefore when they perceyue that the cattles appoche towarde them, they enter into theyr nestes, and holdynge theyr beakes towarde the entraunce of the same, stande at theyr defence, and so bere the cattles, that they cause them to leaue their enterpryse. There are also other byrdes or sparowes, which the Christians by contrary effecte call *Matti*, that is fooles: Whereas neuerthelesse there is no byrde that sheweth moze wyt and crafte in defendynge her young from peryl. These byrdes are litle, & in maner blacke, and somewhat bygger then our Thrushes, they haue certayne whyte feathers in theyr neckes, and the lyke sagalitie or sharpenesse of sense as haue the byrdes or Iyes called *Gazzule*, they sildometymes lyght vppon the earth: they make theyr nestes in trees separated from other, because the wyld cattles (called *Mammoni*) are accustomed to leape from tree to tree, not descendynge to the grounde for feare of other beastes, except when they are enforced by thirst to come downe to drinke, at such times as they are sure not to bee molested, and for this cause doe not these byrdes make theyr nestes but in trees farre diuided from other, they make them of a cubite in length, or moze, after the maner of bagges or litle sackes, large at the bottome, and growynge narrower and narrower towarde the mouth, whereby they are fastened, haupng the hole whereat they enter into the sacke, of suche byggenesse as may onely suffyce to receyue them. And to the ende that the cattles may not deuour theyr young, if they chaunce to mount vppon the trees where they haue theyr nestes, they vse an other craft, which is, to make theyr nestes in thicke bryanches of trees, and to defende the same with sharpe and strong thornes, implicate and set in suche order, that no man is able to make the lyke, so that the cattles can by no meanes put theyr legges into the hole of the neaste to take out the young byrdes, as well for the sharpenesse of the thornes, as also for the deapth of the nestes, in the bottome wherof, the young birds rest without daunger of their enimie: for some of theyr nestes beyng  
three

three or foure spanmes in length, the legges of the catte can not reache to the bottome thereof. They vse also an other pollicie, which is, to make many of theyr neastes in one tree, the which they doe for one of these two causes: that is, that eyther of theyr owne naturall disposition they are accustomed to goe in great multitudes, and reioyce in the company of theyr owne generation, as doe the byrdes whiche wee call Stares, or els to the intent that if it should so chaunce that the cattles shoulde clymbe the trees where they make theyr neastes, they myght bee a greater company to resyst and molest the cattles, at whose appoach they make a fearefull and terrible crye, whereby the cattles are put to flight. Furthermore, in the fyrry lande, and in the Ilandes, there are certayne byrdes called *Piche*, or *GazZuole*, somewhat lyke unto those which we call Woodwalles, or Woodpeckes, beyng lesse then ours of Spayne: these are altogether blacke, and ge hopping and leapping, theyr beakes are also blacke, and of the same fashon as are the Hopingtrays beakes, they haue long rayles, and are somewhat bygger then Stares. There are other byrdes called *Pintadelli*, which are lyke unto certayne greene byrdes, which the Italyans call *Fringuelli*, and are of seuen colours: these byrdes for feare of the cattles, are euer wont to make theyr neastes ouer the bankes of ryuers, or the sea, where the bzaunches of trees so reache ouer the water that with a litle weyght they may bowe downe to the water: theyr neastes are made so neare the toppes of the bzaunches, that when the cattles come thereon, the bzaunches bende towarde the water, and the cattles turne backe agayne for feare of falling: For although no beast in the worlde bee more malicious then this, yet whereas the most parte of beastes are naturallie inclyned to swymme, this catte hath no maner of aptenesse thereunto, and is therefore soone drowned or strangled in the water, and by a priuie sense of nature feareth the danger which he can not escape. These byrdes make their nestes in such sort, that although they be wette and filled with water, yet doe they so sodeynly ryse by agayne, that the young byrdes are not thereby hurt or drowned. There are also many Myghtyngales, and other byrdes which syng marueylouslye with great melodie and dyfference in

spynnyng: these byrdes are of marueplous dyuers coloures the one from the other, some are altogether yelow, and some other of so excellent, delectable, and hygh a colour, as it were a Rubye, other are also of dyuers and variable coloures, some of fewe coloures, and other some all of one colour, beyng all so fayre and beautifull, that in byghnesse and shynnyng they excell all that are seene in Spayne, or Italy, or other prouinces of Europe: Many of these are taken with nettes, lyme twygges, and spynnynges of dyuers sortes. Dyuers other sortes of great fowles lyke vnto Eagles, and suche other as lyue of pray, are founde in the firme lande, of suche diuersitie, that it is in maner impossible to describe them all particularly: and forasmuche as I haue more largely intreated hereof in my generall hystorie of the Indies, I thynke it not requysite heere to make anye further mention of the same.

Great fowles.

## Of trees, fruites, and plantes.



Cocus.

Here is both in the firme lande and the Islands, a certayne tree called *Cocus*, beyng a kynde of Date trees, & hauyng their leaues of the selfe same greatnesse as haue the date trees which beare dates, but dyffer much in their growing, for the leaues of this *Cocus* growe out of the trunckes of the tree, as doe the fingers out of the hand, wreathing them selues one within an other, & so spreding abroad: these trees are hygh, & are founde in great plentie in the coast of the sea of *Sur*, in the prouince of *Cacique Chimán*. These date trees bring forth a fruit after this sorte: being altogether white as it groweth on the tree, it is of greater circumference then the head of a man, & from the superficial part to the midst, which is the fruit, it is inuolued & couered with many webs much lyke vnto those birds of tow which they vse in *Andalusia*. Of this tow or web, the East Indians make a certayne kynd of cloth, of three or foure sortes, and cordes for the sayles of shippes; but in these Indies of your maiestie, they passe not for these cordes, or this cloth that may be made of the fruite of *Cocus*, by reason of the great plentie that they haue of the bombage

of cotton of the gossampine trees. The fruite which is in the myddest of the sayde towre, is (as I haue sayde) as bygge as a mans fyft, and sometymes twyse as bygge, and more: It is in fourme lyke vnto a walnutte, or some other rounde thyng, somewhat more long then large, and very harde, the rynde or barke hereof, is as thicke as the cyrcle of letters of a ryall of plate, and within, there cleaueth fast to the rynde of the nutte a carnositie or substance of coornel, of the thickenesse of halfe a synger, or of the least synger of the hande, and is very whyte, lyke vnto a fayre Almonde, and of better taste and more pleasaunt. When this fruite is chelwed, there remaine certayne crummes, as do the lyke of Almondes: Yet if it be swallowed downe, it is not vnpleasaunt. For although that after the iuice or moysture be gone downe the throte before the saide crummes be swallowed, the rest whiche is eaten, seeme somewhat sharpe or sower, yet doth it not so greatly offende y<sup>e</sup> tast, as to be cast away. Whyle this *Cocus* is yet freshe and newly taken from the tree, they vse not to eate of the said carnositie & fruite, but fyrst beating it very muche, and then straynyng it, they drawe a mylke thereof, much better and sweeter then is the mylke of beastes, and of much substance, the whiche the Chritian men of those regions put in the toxtes or cakes which they make of the graine of *Mai-zium* wherof they make theyr bread, or in other bread as we put bread in porrage: so that by reason of the sayde mylke of *Cocus*, the toxtes are more excellent to be eaten without offence to the stomake: they are so pleasaunt to the taste, and leaue it aswell satysfied as though it had been delyted with many delycate dyshes. But to proceede further, your maiestie shal vnderstande, that in the place of the stone or coornell, there is in the myddest of the sayde carnositie a voyde place, which neuerthelesse is full of a most cleare and excellent water, in suche quantitie as may fyll a great egge shell, or more, or lesse, accordyng to the byggenesse of the *Cacus*, the whiche water suerly, is the most substantiall, excellent, and precious to be drunke, that may be founde in the worlde: insomuch that in the moment when it passeth the palate of the mouth, and begynneth to go downe the throte, it seemeth that from the sole of the foote, to the crowne of the head, there is no parte of the bodie but that feelleth great

I haue seene  
one of these  
frutes opened,  
the whiche  
when it was  
whole, if it  
were shaken  
the water was  
harde thogge  
therein as it  
were in a bot-  
tle, but in tyme  
it consumed  
and was parts  
ly congeled in  
to a sa te subs-  
tance.

comfote



comforze thereby : as it is doubtlesse one of the most excellent thynges that may be tasted bypon the earth, and suche as I am not able by wytyng or tongue to expresse . And to proceede yet further, I say that when the meate of this fruite is taken from the vessell thereof, the vessell remaineth as fayre and neate as though it were pullyshed, and is without of colour inclynnyng towarde blacke, and shyneth or glystereth very fayre, and is within of no lesse dilicatenesse . Suche as haue accustomed to dzyinke in these vesselles, and haue been troubled with the disease called the frettyng of the guttes, say that they haue by experience founde it a matueylous remedie agaynst that disease, and that it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh brine. This fruite was called *Cocus*, for this cause, that when it is taken from the place where it cleaueth fast to the tree, there are seene two holes, and aboue them two other natural holes, whiche altogether do represent the gesture and figure of the cattes called *Mammoni*, that is, *Dunkeys*, when they crye, which crye the Indians call *Coca*, but in very deede, this tree is a kinde of *Date* trees, and hath the same effecte to heale frettyng of the guttes, that *Plinie* describeth all kynds of *Date* trees to haue . There are furthermoze in the firme lande, trees of suche byggenesse that I dare not speake therof, but in place where I haue so many wytnesses whiche haue seene the same as well as I . I saye therefore, that a league from *Dariena* or the citie of *Santa Maria Antiqua*, there passeth a ryuer very large and deepe, which is called *Cuti*, ouer the which the Indians had layde a great tree, so trauerling the same, that it was in the steade of a bydge, the whiche I my selfe with dyuers other that are at this present in your maiesties court, haue oftentimes passed ouer . And forasmuche as the said tree had line long there, and by y great weight therof was so shynke downewarde, and partly couered with water, that none coulde passe ouer it, but were wette to the knee, I beyng then in the yere . 1522. the official or Iustice in that citie at your maiesties appoyntment, caused an other great tree to be layde in that place, whiche in lyke maner trauerled the ryuer, and reached moze then fyftie foote ouer the further syde : This tree was exceeding great, and rested aboue the water moze then two cubytes, in the fall, it cast downe all such other trees as were

Great trees.

were within the reache thereof, and discouered certayne bynes, whiche were so laden with blacke grapes of pleasaunt taste, that they satysfied more then fyfey persons whiche ate theyr fyl thereof. This tree in the thickest part thereof, was more then syttee spannes thicke, and was neuerthelesse but litle in respect of many other trees whiche are founde in this prouince. For the Indians of the coaste and prouince of *Cartagenia*, make barkes or boates thereof (whiche they call *Canoas*,) of suche byggenesse, being all one whole tree, that some conteyne a hundred men, some a hundred and thirtie, and some more, hauyng neuerthelesse such voyde space within the same, that there is left sufficient roome to passe to and fro throughtout all the *Canoas*. Some of these are so large, besyde the length, that they conteyne more then ten or twelue spannes in bzeadth, and sayle with two sayles, as with the maister sayle and the tryncket, whiche they make of very good cotton. The greatest trees that I haue seene in these partes, or in any other regions, was in the prouince of *Guaturo*, the kyng wherof rebellyng from the obedience of your maiestie, was pursued by me, and taken prisioner: at whiche tyme I with myr companie, passed ouer a very hygh mountayne, full of great trees, in the top whereof, we founde one tree, whiche had three rootes, or rather diuisions of the roote aboue the earth, in foure me of a tryangle, or trenet. so that betweene euery foote of this triangle or three feete, there was a space of twentie foote betweene euery foote, and this of such heygth aboue the earth, that a laden Cart of those wherewith they are accustomed to hying home corne in the tyme of harnest in the kyngdome of *Toledo* in Spayne, myght easely haue passed throught euery of those partitions or wyndowes which were betweene the three feete of the sayd tree. From the earth bywarde to the trunk of the tree, the open places of the diuisions betweene these three feete, were of suche heygth from the ground, that a footeman with a Flanelin was not able to reache the place where the sayde feete ioyned togeather in the trunk or bodie of the tree, whiche grewe of great heygth in one peece, and one whole bodie, or euery it spread in bzaunches, whiche it did not befoze it excedded in heygth the Towne of *Sainct Romane* in the citie of *Toledo*: from whiche heygth and byward, it spread very great and strong bzaunches.

A marneplous tree.

Among

Among certayne Spaniards whiche clymed this tree, I my selfe was one, and when I was ascended to the place where it beganne to spreade the braunches, it was a marueilous thyng to beholde a great countrey of suche trees towarde the prouince of Abrayme. This tree was easy to clyme, by reason of certayne *Besuchi*, (whereof I haue spoken befoze) which grew wreathed about the tree, in suche sort that they seemed to make a scalpyng Ladder. Euery of the fozsayd thzee feete whiche boze the bodie of the tree, was twentie spannes in thickenesse, and where they ioyned all togeather aboute the Trunke or bodie of the tree, the principall Trunke was moze then fourtie and syue spannes in circuite. I named the mountayne where these trees growe, the mountayne of thzee footed trees. And this whiche I haue now declared, was srene of all the companie that was there with me when (as I haue sayde befoze) I tooke kyng *Guaturo* prysoner in the peere. 1522. Many thynges moze myght beere be spoken as touching this matter, as also howe there are many other excellent trees founde of diuers sortes and dyfference, as sweete Cedar trees, blacke Date trees, and many other, of the whiche some are so heauye that they cannot floote aboute the water, but syncke immediately to the bottome, and other agayne as lyght as a Cork. As touchyng all which thynges I haue wrytten moze largely in my generall historie of the Indies. And fozasmuche as at this present I haue entred to entreat of trees, befoze I passe any further to other thynges, I wyll declare the maner howe the Indians kinde fyze, only with wood and without fire, the maner wherof is this. They take a peece of wood, of two spannes in length, as bygge as the least synger of a mans hand, or as an arrowe well pulpyshed, and of a strong kynde of wood which they keepe only foz this purpose: and where they entend to kyndle any fire, they take two other peeces of wood, of the dyrest and lyghtest that they can fynde, and bynde them fast togeather one with an other, as close as two syngers ioyned: in the myddest or betweene these, they put the poynt of the fyrst litle staffe made of harde and strong woodde, whiche they hold in theyr handes by the toppe thereof, and turne or rubbe it rounde about continually in one place betweene the two peeces of woodde which lye bounde togeather bypon the earth,

whiche

Kindling of  
fire without  
fire.

whiche by that vncessant rubbing and chafyng, are in shorte space kyndeled, and take fyre. I haue also thought good heare to speake somewhat of suche thynges as come to my remembraunce of certayne trees whiche are founde in this lande, and sometyme also the lyke haue been seene in Spayne. These are certayne putrified trunks, whiche haue lyne so long rottyng on the earth, that they are very whyte, and shyne in the nyght lyke burnyng fyrebrandes, and when the Spaniards fynde any of this woodde, and intende priuily in the nyght to make warre and inuade any prouince, when case so requyrez that it shalbe necessary to goe in the nyght, in such places where they knowe not the way, the foremost Christian man whiche guydeth the way, associate with an Indian to directe hym therein, taketh a litle starre of the sayde woodde, whiche he putteth in his cappe, hangyng behynde on his shoulders, by the lyght whereof he that foloweth next to hym, directeth his iourney, who also in lyke maner beareth an other starre behynde hym, by the shynyng whereof the thyrd foloweth the same way, and in lyke maner do al the rest, so that by this meanes none are losse or stragle out of the way. And forasmuch as this lyght is not seene very farre, it is the better policie for the Christians, because they are not therby disclosed before they inuade theyr enimies. Furthermoze as touchyng the natures of trees, one particuler thyng seemeth woorthy to be noted, *Plinie*, whereof *Plinie* maketh mention in his naturall hystorpe, where he sayth that there are certayne trees whiche contynue euer greene, and neuer lose theyr leaues, as the Bay tree, the Cedar, the Orange tree, & the Oliue tree, with such other, of the whiche in altogether he nameth not past fyue or fyxe. To this purpose, I say, that in the Ilandes of these Indies, and also in the fyne lande, it is a thyng of muche difficultie to fynde two trees that lose or cast theyr leaues at any tyme: For although I haue diligently searched to knowe the trueth hereof, yet haue I not seene any that lose theyr leaues, eyther of them whiche we haue brought out of Spayne into these regions, as Orange trees, Limons, Cedars, Palmes, or Date trees, and Pomegranate trees, or of any other in these regions, except onely *Cassia*, whiche loseth his leaues, and hath a greater

Putrified  
woodde shyn-  
yng in the  
nyght.

Trees whiche  
contynue euer  
greene.

*Cassia*.

thyng



thyng appropriate to it selfe onely : whiche is, that whereas all other trees and plantes of India spreade theyr rootes no deeper in the earth then the deapth of a mans heygth, or somewhat more, not descendencyng any further into the grounde, by reason of the great heate whiche is founde beneath that deapth, yet dooth *Cassia* pearse further into the ground, vntyll it fynd water: whiche by the Philosophers opinion shoulde be the cause of a thynne and watery radicall moysture to suche thynges as drawe theyr nourishment thereof, as fat and vinctuous groundes with temperate heate, yelde a fast and firme moysture to suche thynges as growe in them, whiche is the cause that suche trees lose not theyr leaues, as the sayde thynne and watery moysture is cause of the contrarie, as appeareth by the sayde effecte whiche is seene onely in *Cassia*, and none other tree or plant in all these parties.

A secrete  
thyng.

Radycall  
moysture.

Of Reedes or Canes.



I haue not thought it comenient in the cha-  
piture before, to speake of that wherof I in-  
tend nowe to intreate, of reedes or canes, to  
thintent that I woulde not myngle them  
with plantes or trees, being thinges of them  
selues woorthy to be particularly obserued.  
So it is therfore, that in the firme land there  
are many sorts of reedes, so that in many places they make their  
houses thereof, coueryng them with the toppes of the same, and  
makynge theyr walles of them in lyke maner, as I haue sayde be-  
fore: and among these kyndes of reedes, there is one so great,  
that the canes therof are as bigge as a mans legge in y knee, and  
three spanns in length from ioynt to ioynt, or more, insonmuch that  
euery of them is of capacitie to contayne a little bucket of water.  
In this kynde, there are founde some greater, and some lesse, of  
the whiche some they vse to make quyuers for arrowes. There  
is founde an other kynde, whiche suerly is marueylous, beyng  
litle bygger then a Iauelyn, the canes whereof are longer then  
two spannes: these reedes growe one farre from an other, as  
some tymes twentie or thirtie pases, and sometymes also two  
or three leagues: they growe in maner in all prouinces in the  
Indies,

Indies, and growe neere to very hyghe trees, whereunto they leane, and creepe by to the toppes of theyr branches, whiche they imbrace, and discende agayne downe to the earth. Theyr canes are full of most cleare water, without any maner of tast or sauour, eyther of the canes, or of any other thying. and suche as yf it were taken out of the freshest spyng in the worlde, nor yet is it knowen that euer it hurt any that drunke therof. For it hath oftentimes so chaunced, that as the Christian men haue tra- uayled in these regions in desolate wayes, where for lacke of wa- ter they haue been in great daunger to die for thirst, they haue es- caped that peryl by reason that they founde the sayd reedes, of the water of whose canes they haue drunke a great quantitie, with- out any hurt thereof ensuing. Therfore when they fynde these in any place, they make water vessels of the canes thereof, and carry as many of them full of water as may suffice for one dayes iorney: and sometime they cary so many, that they take for euery man two or threer quartes of water, which may serue them for many dayes, because it doth not corrupt, but remayneth styll freshe and good.

There are also certayne plantes, whiche the Christians call *Platani*. These are as hygh as trees, and become as byg in the trunke as the knee of a man, or more. From the foote to the toppe, they beare certayne long and large leaues, beyng more then threer spannes in largenesse, & about ten or twelue in length: the whiche when they are broken of the wynde, the stalke remaineth whole in the myddest. In the myddest of this plant, in the highest part therof, there groweth a cluster with fourtie or fyftie platans about it, euery of them beyng a spanne and a halfe in length, and as byg as a mans arme in the small, or more, or lesse, accordyng to the goodnesse of the soyle where they growe: they haue a rynde not very thicke, and easie to be broken, beyng within altogether full of a substance lyke vnto the mary of the bone of an Dre, as it appeareth when y rinde or barke is taken from the same. This cluster ought to be taken from the plant, when any one of the platans begin to appeare yelow, at which tyme they take it, and hang it in theyr houses, where all the cluster waxeth rype, with all his platans. This cluster is a very good fruite, and when it is opened, and the rynde taken

*Platani.*

Figges.

of, there are founde within it many good dyce Fygges, whiche beyng roasted, or stewed in an Ouen, in a close pot, or some suche other thyng, are of pleasaunt tast, much lyke to the conserue of Hony: they putrifie not on the sea so soone as some other fruites do, but contynue fyfteeue dayes and more, yf they be geathered somewhat Greene: they seeme more delicate on the sea then on the land, not for that they any thing encrease in goodnesse on the sea, but because that whereas on the sea other thynges are lacking, whereof is plentie on the land, those meates seeme of better tast, whiche satisfie present necessitie. This trunke or spryng which byngeth forth the sayd cluster, is a whole yeere in growing and bynnging forth fruite, in which tyme it hath put forth rounde about it ten or twelue sprynges, as bygge as the fyrst or principall, and multiplieth no lesse then the principall in bynnging forth of clusters, with fruites lykwyle at theyr tyme, and also in bynnging forth other and many sprynges, as is sayde before. From the whiche sprynges or trunks, as soone as the cluster of the fruite is taken away, the plant beginneth to dye and wyther, whiche then they take out of the grounde, because it doth none other then occupie it in bayne, and without profyte. They are so many, and do so marueylously encrease and multiplie, that it is a thyng in maner incredible. They are exceeding moyst, insomuch that when they are plucked up from the place where they grow, there isshueth forth a great quantitie of water, aswel out of the plant, as out of the place where it grewe, in suche sort, that al the moysture of the earth farre about, myght seeme to be geathered togeather about the truncke or blocke of the sayd plant, with the fruites whereof, the Antes are so farre in loue, that they are leene in great multitudes in the byanches of the plantes: so that for the multitude thereof, it sometyme so chaunceth, that men are enforced to take away the plantes from theyr possession: these fruites are founde at all tymes of the yeere. There is also an other kinde of wilde plants that groweth in the feeldes, whiche I haue not seene but in the Islande of Hispaniola, although they be founde in other Mandes of the Indies: these they call *Tunas*. They growe of a Thistle full of thornes, and bynng forth a fruite muche lyke vnto great Figges, whiche haue a crowne lyke Hedlers, and are within

Tunas.

with in of a hygh colour, with graynes and the rynde lke unto a  
 fygge: they are of good taste, and grow abundantly in the fieldes  
 in many places: They worke a strange effecte in suche as eat  
 them, for if a man eat two, or thre, or more, they cause his vyne  
 to bee of the very colour of blood, which thyng chaunced once to  
 my selfe. For on a tyme as I made water, and sawe the colour  
 of my vyne, I entred into a great suspition of my lyfe, being so  
 astonyshe for feare, that I thought the same had chaunced to  
 mee vpon some other cause, insomuche that surely my imagina-  
 tion myght haue done mee hurte, but that they which were with  
 mee dyd comfote mee immediately, declaryng the cause thereof,  
 as they knew by experience, being auncient inhabitours in those  
 regions. There groweth also an other plant, which the people  
 of the countrey call *Bibaos*: this putteth forth certayne streight  
 branches, and very brode leaues, which the Indians vse for dy-  
 uers purposes: For in some places they couer theyr houses with  
 the leaues thereof, couched and layde after the maner of thetche,  
 wherevnto it serueth very well: Sometymes also when it ray-  
 neth, they cast these ouer theyr heades, to defende them from the  
 water. They make also certayne chestes, which they call *Hauas*,  
 weaued after a strange softe, and intermpt with the leaues  
 of this *Bibaos*. These chestes are wrought in such softe, that al-  
 though it rayne vpon them, or they chaunce to fall into the water,  
 yet are not suche thinges wet as are within them: they are made  
 of the branches of the sayde *Bibaos*, with the leaues weaued to-  
 geather therewith: In these they keepe salte, and other subtile  
 thinges. They vse them also for an other purpose, which is this:  
 that fyndyng them in the fieldes at such tyme as they haue scarfe-  
 nesse of vittayles, they dyg vp the rootes of these plantes while  
 they are yet young, or eat the plant it selfe, in that parte where  
 it is most tender, which is from a foote vnder the grounde, where  
 it is as tender and whyte as a reede or bulrush. And forasmuche  
 as wee are now come to the ende of this narration, it comyneth  
 to my remembraunce to make mention of an other thyng, which  
 is not farre from my purpose: and this is, howe the Indians  
 doe stayne or dye cloath of bombage cotton, or any other thyng  
 whiche they intende to dye, of dyuers colours, as blacke, tawny,  
 greene, blew, yelow, and redde, which they doe with the barkes,

*Bibaos.**Hauas.*

Dying of cotton.



oz ryndes, and leaues of certayne trees, which they know by experience to be good for this practise: and by this arte they make colours in suche perfection and excellencie, that no better can bee deuysed. But this seemeth a strange thyng, that they doe all this in one selfe same vessell: So that when they haue caused the sayde ryndes and leaues to boyle togeather, they make in the same vessell without any chaunge (as I haue sayde) as many colours as them lysteth: Whiche thing I suppose to come to passe, by the disposition of the colour which they haue fyrst gyuen to the thyng that they intende to dye oz colour, whether it bee threed, webbe, oz cloth, oz any thing that they intende to colour.

A strange  
thyng.

Of venomous Apples, wherewith they  
poyson theyr arrowes,



The Apples wherewith the Indian Caniballes inuenome theyr arrowes, growe on certaine trees couered with many branches and leaues, being very greene, and growing thicke. They are laden with abundance of these euill fruites, and haue their leaues lyke the leaues of a peare tree, but that they are lesse and rounder: the fruit is much lyke the muscadel peares of the Islande of Sicilie oz Naples in fourme and bygnesse, and are in some partes steyned with redde spottes, and of very sweet sauour: these trees for the most part, growe euer by the sea coastes, and neere vnto the water, and are so fayre and of pleasant sauour, that there is no man that seeth them, but will desyre to eate thereof, insomuche that if it may bee spoken of any fruitte yet growyng on the earth, I woulde say that this was the unhappye fruitte whereof our fyrst parentes Adam and Eue tasted, whereby they both lost theyr felicitie, and procured death to them and theyr posteritie. Of these fruites, and of the great Antes whose byring causeth swellynge, (whereof I haue spoken elsewhere) and of the Eutes, oz Wylartes, and bypers, and such other venomous thynges, the Canibals which are the cheefe archers

Note.

Caniballes are  
archers.

Wherewith  
they inuenome  
they arrows.

archers among the Indians, are accustomed to poyson they  
arrows, wherewith they kyll all that they wounde: These ve-  
nomes they mingle togeather, and make thereof a blacke masse  
or composition, whiche appeareth lyke vnto very blacke pyrch.  
Of this poyson I caused a great quantitie to be burnt, in *Santa*  
*Maria Antiqua*, in a place two leagues and more within the  
lande, with a great multitude of they inuenomed arrows and  
other munition, with also the house wherein they were referued:  
This was in the yere. 1514. at suche tyme as the army arri-  
ued there with captayne *Pedarias da villa*, at the commaunde-  
ment of the Catholike kyng *Don Fernando*. But to returne to  
the hystory. These Apples (as I haue sayde) growe neare vnto  
the sea. And whereas the Christians whiche serue your maies-  
tie in these parties, suppose that there is no remedy so profyta-  
ble for such as are wounded with these arrows, as is the water  
of the sea, if the wound be much washed therewith, by which mea-  
nes some haue escaped, although but fewe: yet to say the trueth,  
albeit the water of the sea haue a certaine caustike quality against  
poyson, it is not a sufficient remedy in this case, nor yet to this  
day haue the Christians perceyued that of fyfte that haue been  
wounded, thre haue recovered. But that your maiestie may the  
better consider the force of the venome of these trees, you shal fur-  
ther vnderstand, that if a man doe but repose him selfe to sleepe a  
litle whyle vnder the shadow of the same, he hath his head & eyes  
so swolne when he wakeneth, that the eye lyddes are ioyned with the  
cheekes, and if it chaunce one droppe or more of the deaw of the  
sayde tree to fall into the eye, it vtterly destroyeth the syght. The  
pestilent nature of this tree is suche, that it can not be declared in  
fewe wordes. Of these, there groweth great plentie in the gulfe  
of *Uraba*, toward the North coast, on the West and East syde.

*Petrus Arias.*

The water of  
the sea.

The gulfe of  
*Uraba*.

Among other trees whiche are in these Indies, as well in  
the Ilandes, as in the firme lande, there is an other kynde  
whiche they call *Xagua*, whereof there is great plentie: they  
are very hygh, and streyght, and sayre to beholde. Of these  
they vse to make pykes, and Hawelyns of dyuers lengthes and  
byg-

bygnesse : they are of a fayre colour, betweene russet and whyte : this tree byngeth forth a great fruit as bygge as Papauer or Poppie, and muche lyke therevnto, it is very good to bee eaten when it is ripe. Out of this they get a very cleare water, wherewith they walthe their legges, and sometymes all theyr bodies, when they feele theyr fleshe weery, saynt, or loose: the which water, besyde that it hath a byndyng qualitte, it hath also this propertie, that whatsoeuer it toucheth, it steyneth it blacke by litle and litle, vntyll it bee as blacke as gete, which colour can not bee taken away in lesse space then tenne or twelue dayes: And if the nayle bee but touched therewith, it is so steyned that it can by no meanes bee taken away, vntyll it eyther fall of, or grow out, and bee clippyd away by litle & litle, as I my selfe haue oftentimes seene by experience.

*Hobi.*

Some thinke  
these to be mis-  
robalaues.

There is another kynde of trees which they call *Hobi*: these are very great and fayre, and cause hole some ayre where they growe, and a pleasaunt shadowe, and are founde in great abundance: theyr fruit is very good, and of good tast and saour, and much lyke vnto certayne damsons or prunes beyng litle and yelowe, but theyr stone is very great, by reason whereof they haue but litle meate: theyr barke or rinde boyled in water, maketh a hole some bathe for the legges, because it byndeth and stayeth the loosenesse of the fleshe, so sensibly that it is a marueyle to consider. It is surely a hole some and excellent bathe agaynst such sayntnesse, and is the best tree that may be founde in those parties to sleepe vnder: For it causeth no heauinesse of the head, as doe diuers other trees, which thyng I speake, because the Christians are muche accustomed in those regions to lye in the fieldes. It is therefore a common practise among them, that wheresoeuer they fynde these trees, there they spreade theyr mattresses and beddes wherein they sleepe.

*Date trees.*

There are also a kynde of hygh Date trees, and full of thornes: the woodde of these is most excellent, beyng very blacke, and shynyng, and so heauye that no parte thereof can swymme aboue the water, but synketh immediatly to the bottome. Of this woodde they make theyr arrowes and darts, also Jaielyns, speares, and pykes: and I say pykes, because that in the coastes of the sea of *Sur*, beyonde *Esquegua*

Thinhabis  
rauites of the  
sea of Sur.

and

and *Vracha*, the Indians vse great and long pykes, made of the wood of these Date trees. Of the same lykewyse they make clubbes, and swoordes, and dyuers other weapons: Also vesselles and houtholbe stufte of dyuers sortes, very sayre and commodious. Furthermoze of this wood the Christians vse to make dyuers muscicall instrumentes, as Claricymballes, Lutes, Gitterns, and suche other, the which belyde theyr sayre shynnyng colour lyke vnto gete, are also of a good sounde, and very durable, by reason of the hardnesse of the wood.

After that I haue sayde thus much of trees and plants, I haue thought good also to speake somewhat of hearbes. You shal therefore vnderstand, that in these Indies there is an hearbe much like vnto a yelow Lillie, about whose leaues there growe and creepe certayne cordes or lases, as the lyke is partly seene in the hearbe which we call lased sauery, but these of the Indies are much bigger, and longer, and so strong that they tye theyr hangyng beds thereby, whiche they call *Hamacas*, whereof we haue spoken elsewhere: these cordes they call *Cabuia*, and *Henequen*, whiche are all one thyng, sayyng that *Henequen* is lesse and of a fyner substance, as it were line, and the other is grosser, lyke the weeke or twyst of hempe, and is imperfect in comparison to the other: they are of colour betweene whyte and yelow, lyke vnto abarne, and some also whyte. With *Henequen*, whiche is the most subtile and fyne threed, the Indians sawe in sunder setters, chepnies, or barres of Iron, in this maner: They moue the threed of *Henequen* vppon the Iron which they intende to sawe or cutte, drawyng the one hande after the other as doe they that sawe, puttyng euer nowe and then a portion of fyne sande vppon the threed, or on the place or parte of the Iron, where they continuie rubbyng the sayde threed, so that if the threed be woꝛne, they take an other, and continue in theyr woꝛke as befoze, vntyll they haue cutte in sunder the Iron, although it be neuer so bygge, and cut it as if it were a tender thyng, and easy to be sawne.

An hearbe that beareth cordes.

*Cabuia* and *Henequen*.

A strange thyng.

And forasmuche as the leaues of trees may bee counted among hearbes, I will heere speake somewhat of the qualitie of the leaues of certayne trees whiche are founde in the *Ilande of Hispaniola*. These trees are so full of thornes, that there is no tree or plant that seemeth moze wyld and deformed: so that

Leaues.



I can not well determyne whether they be trees, or plantes: they haue certayne branches full of large and deformed leaues, which branches were fyrst leaues lyke vnto the other. As the branches made of these leaues grow forth in length, there cometh other leaues of them: so that in fine it is a difficult thing to describe the fourme of these trees, except the same should be done by a paynter, wherby the eye might conceyue that wherem the tongue sayeth in this behalfe. The leaues of this tree are of suche vertue, that beyng well beaten and spred vppon a cloth, after the maner of a playster, and so layde to a legge or arme that is broken in many peeces, it healeth it in fyftiene dayes, & maketh it as whole as though it had neuer been broken: Durynge the tyme of this operation, it cleaueth so fast to the fleshe, that it can not without much difficultie be taken away, but assoone as it hath healed the soze, and wrought his operation, it looseth it selfe from the place where it was layde, as I my selfe, and dyuers other which haue proued it, know by experience.

A leafe of great  
vertue.

Of fyshes, and of the maner  
of fyshyng,



In the sea coastes of the firme lande, there are dyuers & sundry kyndes of fishes, muche differing in shape & fourme. And although it be impossible to speake of all, yet will I make mention of some. And first to begin at Sardines, you shall vnderstand that there is found a kinde of these fishes very large and with red tayles, being a very delicate fysh. The best kyndes of other fishes are these, *Moxarre*, *Diabace*, *Brettes*, *Dabaos*, *Chornebackes*, & *Salmons*: All these, and dyuers other which I doe not now remember, are taken in great quantitie in ryuers. There are likewise taken very good *Cruyshes*. There are also found in the sea, certayne other fishes, as *Soles*, *Hackerels*, *Turbuts*, *Palamite*, *Lizze*, *Polpi*, *Chieppe*, *Xaibas*, *Locusties*, *Dylsters*, exceedingng great *Toxtoyfes*, & *Tiburoni* of marueilous bygnesse: also *Manates*, and *Murene*, and many other fyshes, which haue no names in our language, and these of suche diuersitie and quantitie, as can not

*Tiburons*,  
*Manates*.

not be expressed without large wytyng and long tyme. But to let passe to increate particularly of the multitude of fshes, I intende to speake chiefly, and somewhat largely, of three sortes of most notable fshes: whereof the fyrst is, the great Tortoyles, the seconde is called *Tiburon*; and the thyrd *Manate*. And to begin at the fyrst, I say that in the Ilande of *Cuba*, are found great Tortoyles (which are certayne shell fshes) of suche byggenesse that tenne or fyftee men are scarcely able to lyfte one of them out of the water, as I haue been inffourmed of credible persons dwelling in the same Iland. But of that which I my selfe haue seene, I can testifie, that in the fyne lande, in the village of *Acla*, there are of this sort some taken and kylled of suche byggenesse, that fyve men with muche difficultie coulde scarcely drawe them out of the water, and commonly the least sort of them are as much as two men may carry at a burden: that whiche I sawe lyfted by fyve men, had her shell a yarde and a quarter in length, and in breadth more then fyve yardes. The maner of takyng them, is this: At sometymes chaunceth that in theyr great nettes (whiche they call shoote nettes) there are founde certayne Tortoyles of the common sort, in great quantities, and when they come out of the sea, and byyng forth theyr egges, and goe together by companyes from the sea, to feede on the lande, the Chyistians or Indians folowe theyr steppes which they fynde in the lande, and soone ouertake them, because they are very heauy and slowe in goyng, although they make all the hast they can to returne to the sea, as soone as they espie any bodie. When they that pursue them haue ouertaken them, they put a stake or staffe vnder theyr legges, and ouerturne them on theyr backs as they are yet rummyng, so that they can goe no further, nor yet ryle a gayne or turne, and thus they suffer them to lye styll whyle they folowe after the rest, which they ouerturne in lyke maner: and by this meanes take very many, at suche tymes as they come forth of the sea as I haue sayde: This fsh is very excellent and hol-some to be eaten, and of good tast. The seconde of the three fshes wherof I haue spoken, is the *Tiburon*: this is a very great fsh, and very quicke and swyft in the water, and a cruell deuourer: these are oftentimes taken, as well when the shippes are vnder sayle in the Ocean, as also when they lye at anker, or at

Great Tortoyles.

*Tiburons.*

any other tyme, and especially the leaste kynde of these fyshes. When the shypes are vnder sayle, the byggest sorte are taken after this maner. When the *Tiburou* seeth the shyppe saylyng, he foloweth it swymmyng behynde, the whiche thinges the mariners seeyng, cast forth all the fylth of the shyppe into the sea for the fysh to eate, who neuerthelesse foloweth them with equall pafe, although they make neuer suche haste with full wynde and sayles, and waloweth on euery syde and about the shyp, and thus foloweth it sometyme for the space of a hundred & fyftie leagues, and more, and when the mariners are disposed to take them, they cast downe by the sterne of the shyppe a hooke of Iron, as bygge as the byggest fynger of a mans hande, of thre spannes in length, and crooked lyke a fyshhook, with beades accordyng to the bygnesse thereof, and fastened to an Iron cheyne of fyue or syxe lynkes neare vnto the ende, and from thence tyed with a great rope, fastnyng also on the hooke for a bayte, a peece of some fysh, or hogges fleshe, or some other flesh, or the bowels and intralles of an other *Tiburou* which they haue taken before, whiche may easily be done, for I haue seene niene taken in one day, and if they would haue taken more, they myght also. Thus when the *Tiburou* hath pleasauntly folowed the shyppe a long viage, at the length he swaloweth the bayte with the hooke, and as well by his stryuyng to flee or escape, as also by the swyft passage of the shyppe, the hooke ouerthwarteth and catcheth holde of his chappes: the whiche fysh when it is taken, it is of such huge byggenesse, that twelue or fyftee men are scarcely able to drawe it out of the water, and lyft it into the shyppe, where one of the mariners gyueth it many knockes on the head with a club or beetle, vntyll hee haue slayne it: they are sometyms founde of tenne or twelue foote long, and of fyue, syxe, or seuen spannes in breadth, where they are broadest: they haue very great and wyde mouthes, to the proportion of the rest of theyr bodies, and haue two rowes of teeth, the one somewhat separate from the other, of cruell shape, and standyng very thicke. When they haue slayne this fysh, they cut the body thereof in small peeces, and put it to dype, hangyng it thre or foure dayes at the cordes of the sayle clothes to dype in the wynde, and then eate it: It is doubtesse a good fysh, and of great commoditie to serue the

the shypes for vitalles for many dayes : the leaste of these  
 fyshes are most holesome and tender, it hath a skynne muche  
 lyke to the skynne of a Sole whereunto the sayd *Tiburon* is like  
 in shape : Whiche I saye, because Plinie hath made mention  
 of none of these three fyshes, among the number of them wher- Plinie.  
 of he writeth in his natural hystorie. These *Tiburons* come  
 forth of the sea, and enter into the ryuers, where they are no  
 lesse peryllous then great *Lisartes* or *Crocodiles*, wherof I haue Crocodiles.  
 spoken largely before : For they deuoure men, kyne, and hoxses,  
 euen as do the *Crocodiles* : they are very daingerous in cer-  
 tayne washyng places or pooles by the ryuers sydes, and where  
 they haue deuoured at other tymes. Dyuers other fyshes both  
 great and small, of sundry sortes and kyndes, are accustomed  
 to folowe the shypes goyng vnder sayle, of the whiche I wyll  
 speake somewhat when I haue written of *Manate*, whiche is the Manates.  
 chyld of the three wherof I haue promised to entreate. *Manate*  
 therefore, is a fysh of the sea, of the byggest sorte, and muche  
 greater then the *Tiburon* in length and breadth, and is very  
 brutish and vyle, so that it appeareth in fourme lyke vnto  
 one of those great vesselles made of goates skynnes, wherin they  
 vse to cary newe wyne in *Medina de Campo*, or in *Arenalo* : the  
 head of this beast is lyke the head of an Oxe, with also like eyes,  
 and hath in the place of armes, two great stumps wherewith he  
 swymmeth : It is a very gentle and tame beast, and commeth of-  
 tentimes out of the water to the next shore, where if he fynd any  
 hearbes or grasse, he feedeth therof. Our men are accustomed to  
 kyl many of these, and diuers other good fyshes, with their crof-  
 bowes, pursuing them in barkes or Canoas, because they swim  
 in maner aboue the water : the which thyng when they see, they  
 drawe them with a hooke tyde at a small corde, but somewhat  
 strong : As the fysh fleeth away, the archer letteth go, and pro-  
 longeth the corde by litle and litle, vntyll he haue let it go many  
 fathams : at the ende of the corde, there is tyde a corke, or a  
 peece of lpyght woodde, and when the fysh is gone a litle way,  
 and hath coloured the water with his blood, and feeleth hym  
 selfe to faynt and drawe towarde the ende of his lyfe, he reso-  
 teth to the shore, and the archer foloweth, geatheryng vp his  
 corde, wherof whyle there yet remayne syxe or eyght fathams, or  
 some



somewhat more or lesse, he draweth it towards the lande, and draweth the fische therewith by litle and litle, as the waues of the sea helpe hym to do it the more easly: then, with the helpe of the rest of his companie, he lyftech this great beast out of the water to the lande, beyng of suche byggenesse, that to conuey it from thence to the citie, it shalbe requisite to haue a carte with a good yoke of Oxen, and sometymes more, accordyng as these fishes are of byggenesse, some being much greater then other some in the same kinde, as is seene of other beastes: Sometymes they lyft these fishes into the Canoa or barke, without drawyng them to the lande as before, for as soone as they are slayne, they flote aboue the water: And I beleue verily that this fische is one of the best in the worlde to the tast, and the lyke-est vnto fleshe, especially so lyke vnto beefe, that who so hath not seene it whole, can iudge it to be none other when he seeth it in peeces then very beefe or beale, and is certaynly so lyke vnto fleshe, that all the men in the worlde may herein be deceyued: the tast likewise, is like vnto the tast of very good beale, and lastely long, yf it be powdred: so that in fine, the Base of these parts, is by no meanes lyke vnto this. This *Manate* hath a certayne stone, or rather bone in his head within the brayne, whiche is of qualitie greatly appropiate agaynst the diseale of the stone, if it be burnt and grounde into small powder, and taken fastyng in the morning when the paine is felte, in such quantitie as may lye vpon a peny, with a draught of good whyte wyne: For being thus taken thre or foure mornings, it acquieteth the greefe, as dyuers haue tolde me whiche haue proued it true, and I my selfe by testimonie of syght, do wytnesse that I haue seene this stone sought of dyuers for this effecte.

There are also dyuers other fishes as bygge as this *Manate*, among the whiche there is one called *Vibuella*. This fische beareth in the toppe of his head a swoorde, beyng on euery syde full of many sharpe teeth, this swoorde is naturally very harde and strong, of foure or fyue spannes in length, and of proportion accordyng to the same byggenesse: and for this cause is this fische called *Spada*, that is, the swoorde fische. Of this kynde some are founde as litle as *Sardines*, and other so great, that two yokes of Oxen are scarcely able to drawe them

The fische  
*Manate*.

A remedy ag-  
gainst the  
stone.

The swoorde  
fische.

them on a Cart. But whereas before I haue promised to speake of other fshes, whiche are taken in these seas whyle the shyppes are vnder sayle, I wyll not forgeat to speake of the Tunnye, whiche is a great and good fsh, and is oftentimes taken and kylde with trout speares, and hookes, cast in the water, when they play and swim about the shyppes. In lyke maner also are taken many Turbut, whiche are very good fshes as are lyghely in all the sea. And here is to be noted, that in the great Ocean sea, there is a strange thyng to be considered, whiche all that haue been in the Indies affirme to be true: And this is, that lyke as on the lande there are some prouinces fertile and fruitfull, and some barren, euen so doth the lyke chaunce in the sea: So that at some wyndes the shyppes sayle systie, or a hundred, or two hundred leagues and moze, without takyng or seeyng of one fsh: and agayne, in the selfe same Ocean in some places, all the water is scene tremble by the mouyng of the fshes, where they are taken abundantly. It commeth further to my remembraunce to speake somewhat of the sleepeyng of fshes, whiche is doubtlesse a strange thyng to beholde, and is after this maner. When the shyppes sayle by the great Ocean, folowyng theyr viage, there ryse sometymes on the one syde or on the other, many companies of certayne litle fshes, of the whiche the byggest is no greater then a Sardyne, and so diminishe lesse and lesse from that quantitie, that some of them are very litle: these are called *Volatori*, that is, sleepeyng fshes: they ryse by great companies and flockes, in suche multitudes that it is an astonysment to behold them: Sometimes they ryse but litle from the water, & (as it chaunceth) continue one flyght for the space of an hundred paces, and sometimes moze, or lesse, before they fall agayne into the sea, sometymes also they fall into the shyppes. And I remember, that on an euening when al the company in the shyp were on theyr knees, syngyng *Salue regina* in the hyghest part of the Castell of the poupe, and sayled with a full wynde, there passed by vs a flocke of these sleepeyng fshes, and came so neare vs, that many of them fell into the shyppe, among the whiche, two or thre fel hard by me, whiche I tooke alque in my hand, so that I myght well perceyue that they were as bygge as Sardines, and of the same quantitie,

quantitie, hauing two wynges or quilles growing out of theyr  
 synnes, lyke vnto those wherewith all fyshes swim in ryuers :  
 these wynges are as long as the fyshes them selues. As long  
 as theyr wynges are moyst, they beare them by in the ayre,  
 but assoone as they are drye, they can contynue theyr flyghe  
 no further then as I haue sayde before. but fall immediatlye  
 into the sea. and so ryse agayne, and flee as befoze from place  
 to place. In the yeere a thousand, fyue hundred, and fyfteene,  
 when I came fyrst to enfourme your Maiestie of the state of the  
 thynges in India, and was the yeere folowynge in Flaun-  
 ders in the tyme of your most fortunate successe in these your  
 kyngdomes of Aragonie and Castyle, whereas at that tyme  
 I sayled about the *Ilande Bermuda*, otherwylse called *Garza*,  
 beyng the furthest of all the *Ilandes* that are founde at this  
 daye in the worlde, and arryuyng there at the deapth of eyght  
 pades of water, and distaunt from the lande as farre as the  
 shotte of a peece of Ordnance, I determynd to sende some of  
 the shyp to lande, aswell to make searche of suche thynges as  
 were there, as also to leaue in the *Iland* certayne Hogges for en-  
 crease. But the tyme not seruing my purpouse by reason of con-  
 trary wynde, I coulde byng my shyppes no nearer the *Ilande*,  
 beyng twelue leagues in length, and fyve in breadth, and about  
 thyrtye in circuite, lying in the thre and thyrtyeth degree of the  
 North lyde. Whyle I remayned heere, I saw a stryfe and com-  
 bat betweene these fleeing fyshes, and the fyshes named *Gylt*  
*heades*, & the foules called *Seamewes*, and *Comozantes*, which  
 surely seemed vnto me a thyng of as great pleasure and solace as  
 coulde be deuised, while the *Gylt* heades swam on the hymme  
 of the water, and sometymes lysted theyr shoulders aboue the  
 same, to rayse the sleeing fyshes out of the water to dryue them  
 to flyghe, and folowe them swimmyng to the place where  
 they fall, to take and eate them sodenly. Againe on the other side,  
 the *Seamewes* and *Comozantes*, take many of these flee-  
 yng fyshes. so that by this meanes they are neyther safe in the  
 ayre, nor in the water. In the selfe same peryll and danger doo  
 men lyue in this mortall lyfe, wherein is no certayne securitie,  
 neyther in hyghe estate, nor in lowe. Which thyng surely ought  
 to put vs in remembraunce of that blessed and safe resting  
 place

The Iland of  
 Bermuda

Not to be for  
 the Dye, nor to  
 lowe for the  
 Crowne.

place whiche God hath prepared for suche as leue hym, who shall acquiete and synishe the trauailes of this troublous worlde, wherein are so many dangers, and byng them to that eternall lyfe where they shall synde eternall securitie and rest. But to returne to the hystoꝛy: these byrdes and foules whiche I sawe, were of the Ilande of *Bermuda*, neere vnto the whiche I sawe these sleepeing fyshes: for they coulde be of no other lande, forasmuche as they are not accustomed to wander farre from the coastes where they are bredde.

Of thincrease and decrease (that is) rysing  
and fallng of our Ocean sea, and  
South sea, called the sea of *Sur*.



Will nowe speake of certayne thynges whiche are seene in the Province, or at the least in the citie of golden Castyle, otherwyle called *Beragua*, and in the coastes of the North sea, & of the South sea, called the sea of *Sur*, not omitting to note one synguler and marueplous thyng whiche I haue consydered of the Ocean sea, wherof hitherto no Cosinographer, Pilot, or Baryner, or any other, haue satisfied me. I say therefore, as it is well knowen to your maiestie, and all such as haue knowledge of the Ocean sea, that this great Ocean casteth from it selfe the sea *Mediterraneum* by the mouth of the straght of *Gibilterra*, in the which the water, from thend & furthest part of that sea, euen vnto the mouth of the sayde straght, eyther in the East toward the coaste commonly called *Leuante*, or in any other part of the sayde sea *Mediterraneum*, the sea doth not so fall nor increase, as reason woulde iudge for so great a sea, but increaseth very litle, and a small space: Neuerthelesse, without the mouth of the straght in the mayne Ocean, it increaseth and falleth very muche, and a great space of grounde, from fyre houres to fyre houres, as in all the coastes of Spayne, Britanie, Flaunders, Garmanie, and England. The selfe same Ocean sea in the firme lande newly founde, in the coastes of the same lying towarde the North, doth neyther rylse nor fall, nor lykewyle in the Ilandes of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, and al the o-

*Beragua*

The west  
Ocean.  
The sea *Mes-  
diterraneum*

*Hispaniola*  
*Cuba*

ther



ther Ilandes of the same lying towarde the north, for the space of three thousande leagues, but onely in lyke maner as dooth the sea *Mediterraneum* in Italy, which is in maner nothyng, in respecte to that increase and decrease whiche the sayde Ocean hath in the coastes of Spayne and Flaunders. But this is yet a greater thyng, that also the selfe same Ocean in the coastes of the sayde fyyme lande lying towarde the South, in the citie of *Panama*, and also in the coast of that lande whiche lyeth towarde the East and West from that citie, as in the Ilande of pearles or *Margaritea*, whiche the Indians call *Tarrarequi*, and also in *Taboga* and *Otoque*, and in all other Ilandes of the south sea of *Sur*, the water ryseth and falleth so muche, that when it falleth, it goeth in maner out of syght, whiche thyng I my selfe haue seene oftentymes. And here your maiestie may note another thing, that from the north sea to the south sea, being of such difference the one from the other in rysyng and fallyng, yet is the lande that deuidenth them not past eyghteene or twentie leagues in breadyth from coaste to coaste: So that both the sayde seas, beyng all one Ocean, this strange effecte is a thyng worthy greatly to be consydered of all suche as haue inclination and desyre to knowe the secrete woorkes of nature, wherein the infinite power and wysedome of God is seene to be suche, as may allure al good natures to reuerence and loue so diuine a maiestie. And wheras by þ demonstracions of learned men I am not satisfied of the naturall cause hereof, I content my selfe to knowe and beleue, that he whiche hath made these thynges, dooth knowe this and many other, which he hath not graunted to the reason of man to comprehend, muche lesse to so base a wyt as myne is. They therefore that are of greater vnderstandyng, shall search the cause hereof for them and for me, forasmuch as I haue onely put the matter in question, as a wytnesse that haue seene the experience of the thyng.

The South  
sea.

The power  
and wysedome  
of God is seene  
in his crea-  
tures.

Of

Of the strayght or narrowe passage of the land lying  
betweene the North and South sea, by the which  
spyces may much sooner and easlyer be brought  
from the Ilandes of *Molucca* into Spaine by  
the VVest Ocean, then by that way  
whereby the Portugales sayle  
into the East India.



**I**t hath been an opinion among the Cosmo-  
graphers and Pilottes of late tyme, and o-  
ther whiche haue had practyse in thynges  
touchyng the sea, that there shoulde be a  
strayght of water passing from the North  
sea of the fyne, into the South sea of *Sur*,  
which neuerthelesse hath not been scene nor  
founde to this day. And surely yf there be any such strayght, we  
that inhabite those partes do thynke the same shoulde be rather of  
land then of water. For the fyne land in some partes thereof is  
so strayght and narrowe, that the Indians say that from the  
mountaynes of the prouince of *Esquegua* or *Vrraca* (which are  
betweene the one sea and the other) if a man ascend to the top of  
the mountaynes, and looke toward the North, he may see the wa-  
ter of the North sea of the prouince of *Beragua*: & againe looking  
the contrary way, may on the other syde (towards the South)  
see the sea of *Sur*, and the prouinces which confine with it, as do  
the territories of the two Lordes or kynges of the sayde prouin-  
ces of *Vrraca* and *Esquegua*. And I beleue, that yf it be as the  
Indians say, of all that is hytherto knowen, this is the narrow-  
est strayght of the fyne land, whiche some affirme to be full of  
rough mountaynes. Yet do I take it for a better way, or so  
short as is that whiche is made from the port called *Nomen Dei*  
(whiche is in the North sea) vnto the newe cite of *Panama*, be-  
yng in the coast and on the bancke of the sea of *Sur*, whiche  
way is lykelyse very rough, full of thicke wooddes, mountay-  
nes, ryuers, balleyes, and very difficult to passe through, and  
can not be done without great labour & trauaile. Some measure  
this way in this part, to be from sea to sea eighteene leagues,  
whiche I suppose to be rather twentie, not for that it is any moze  
by measure, but because it is rough and difficult, as I haue  
sayde,

*Esquegua and  
Vrraca.*

*Nomen Dei,  
Panama.*

sayde, and as I haue founde it by experience, hauyng now twise passed that way by foote, countyng from the port and village of *Nomen Dei*, vnto the dominion of the *Cacique* of *Iuanaga*, otherwylse called *Capira*, eyght leagues, and from thence to the ryuer of *Chagre*, other eyght leagues. So that at this riuer, beyng sixteene leagues from the sayde port, endeth the roughnesse of the way: then from hence to the marueilous bypdge are two leagues, and beyonde that, other two, vnto the port of *Panama*: So that altogether, in my iudgement, make twentie leagues. And yf therfore this nauigation may be founde in the South sea for the trade of spyes (as we trust in God) to be brought from thence to the sayde port of *Panama* (as is possible enough) they maye afterwarde easely passe to the North sea, notwithstanding the difficultie of the way of the twentie leagues aforesayde. Which thynge I affirme, as a man wel trauayled in these regions, hauyng twise on my feete passed ouer this strayght in the yeere 1521. as I haue said. It is furthermore to be vnderstoode, that it is a marueilous facilitie to bypng spices by this way which I will now declare. From *Panama* to the ryuer of *Chagre*, are foure leagues of good and saye way, by the which cartes may passe at pleasure, by reason that the mountaines are but few and litle, and that the greatest part of these foure leagues is a plaync grounde boyde of trees: and when the cartes are come to the sayde ryuer, the spyes may be caried in Barkes and pynnelles. For this riuer entreth into the North sea spue or spye leagues lower then the port of *Nomen Dei*, and emptieth it selfe in the sea neere vnto an Island called *Bastimento*, where is a verie good and safe port. Your maiestie may now therfore consider, howe great a thynge, and what commoditie it may be to conuey spices this way, forasmuch as y<sup>e</sup> riuer of *Chagre*, hauing his originall only two leagues from the South sea, continueth his course, and emptieth it selfe into the other North sea. This riuer runneth fast, and is verie great, and so commodious for this purpose as may be thought or desired: the marueplous bypdge made by the worke of nature, beyng two leagues beyond the sayde ryuer, & other two leagues on this syde the port of *Panama*, so lying in the mydde waye betweene them both, as framed naturallly in suche sort, that none which passe by this viage doth see any such bypdge, or thinke that

The ryuer of  
*Chagre*.

The Islande  
*Bastimento*.

The maruep-  
lous bypdge.

there

there is any such buyldyng in that place, but yll they be in the top thereof, in the way towarde *Panama* : But as soone as they are on the bypoge, lookyng towarde the ryght hande, they see a litle ryuer vnder them, whiche hath his chanell distant from the feete of them that waike ouer it, the spate of two speares length or moze. The water of this ryuer is very shalowe, not passyng the deapth of a mans legge to the knee, and is in breadth betweene thyrtye and fourtie pases, and falleth into the ryuer of *Chagre* Towarde the ryght hand, standyng on this bypoge, there is nothing scene but great trees. The largenesse of the bypoge conteyneth fyftee pases, and the length thereof about threescore or fourescore pases : The arche is so made of most harde stone, that no man can beholde it without admiration, beynge made by the hygh and omnipotent creatour of all thinges. But to returne to speake somewhat moze of the conueying of spices, I say, that when it shall please almyghtie God that this nauigation aforesayde shall be founde by the good fortune of your maiestie, and that the spices of the *Ilandes* of the South sea (whiche may also be otherwyse called the Ocean of the East India, in the which are the *Ilandes* of *Molucca*) shalbe brought to the sayd coast and the port of *Panama*, and be conueyed from thence (as we haue sayde) by the fyne lande with cartes vnto the ryuer of *Chagre*, and from thence into this our other sea of the North, from whence they may afterwarde be brought into *Spayne*, I say that by this meannes the viage shalbe shortned moze then seuen thousand leagues, with muche lesse daunger then is by the viage nowe vsed by the way of *Commendator* of *Aysa*, captayne vnder your maiestie, who this present yeere attempted a viage to the place of the sayd spices : and not only the way is thus muche shortned, but also a thyrde parte of the tyme is abbreuiate. To conclude therefore, if any had hitherto attempted this viage by the sea of *Sur*, to seeke the *Ilandes* of spices, I am of firme opinion, that they shoulde haue been founde long since, as doubtlesse they may bee by the reasons of *Cosinographie*,

The *Ilandes*  
of *Molucca*.

The commodities  
of this  
viage.



Howe thinges that are of one kynde, dyffer in fourme  
and qualitie, accordyng to the nature of the place  
where they are engendred or grow, and of the  
beastes called Tygers.



In the firme lande are founde many terrible  
beastes, which some thinke to bee Tygers.  
Whiche thing neuerthelesse I dare not as-  
 firme, considering what aucthours do wypte  
of the lyghtnesse and agilitie of the Tyger,  
wheras this beast, being otherwyle in shape  
very like vnto a Tiger, is notwithstanding  
very slowe. Yet true it is, that according to the marueiles of the  
worlde, and differences which naturall thinges haue in dyuers  
regions vnder heauen, and dyuers constellations of the same,  
vnder the which they are created, we see that some suche plantes  
and hearbes as are hurtfull in one countrey, are harmelesse and  
holsome in other regions. And byrdes whiche in one prouince  
are of good taste, are in other so vnlauiery that they may not bee  
eaten. Ven lykewyse whiche in some countreys are blacke, are  
in other places whyte: and yet are both these and they men.  
Euen so may it bee, that Tygers are lyght in some region, as  
they wypte, and may neuerthelesse be slow and heauy in these In-  
dies of your maiestie, wherof we speake. The sheepe of Arabie  
drawe their tayles long and bigge on the ground, and the Bulles  
of Egypt haue theyr heare growyng towarde theyr heades: yet  
are those sheepe, and these bulles. Ven in some countreys are  
hardy and of good courage, and in other naturallly fearefull and  
brulyshe. All these thinges, and many moze, whiche may bee  
sayde to this purpose, are ealie to bee proued, and woorthy to bee  
belieued, of suche as haue read of the lyke in aucthours, or tra-  
ueyled the worlde, whereby theyr owne sight may teache them  
the experience of these thinges wherof I speake. It is also ma-  
nifest that *Iucca*, wherof they make theyr bread in the *Ilande of*  
*Hispaniola*, is deadly poyson if it bee eaten greene with the iuise:  
and yet hath it no such propertie in the firme lande, where I haue  
eaten it many tyme, and found it to be a good fruit. The Bats of  
*Spaine*, although they bite, yet are they not venomous: but in the  
firme

Tigers.

Plantes and  
hearbes.

Birdes.

Ven.

Sheepe.

Bulles.

*Iucca*.

Battes.

firme land, many dye that are bitten of them. And in this sournie  
 may so many thinges be sayd, that tyme shall not suffice to write,  
 whereas my intent is only to procue that this beast may bee  
 a Tyger, or of þe kynd of Tygers, although it be not of such light-  
 nesse and swiftnesse as are they wherof Plinie & other aucthours write.  
 speake, describyng it to bee one of the swyftest beastes of the  
 lande, and that the ryuer of *Tigris* for the swyft course therof  
 was called by that name. The fyrst Spanyardes whiche sawe  
 this Tyger in the firme lande, dyd so name it. Of the kynde of  
 these was that which *Don Diego Columbo* the Admirall sent pour  
 maiestie out of newe Spayne to *Toledo*. Theyr heades are  
 lyke to the heades of Lions, or Lionesses, but greater: the rest  
 of all theyr bodyes, and theyr legges, are full of blacke spottes  
 one neere unto an other, and diuided with a circumference or  
 fryndge of redde colour, shewyng as it were a fayre woozke  
 and correspondent picture, about their croopes or hynder partes,  
 they haue these spottes byggest, and lesse and lesse towarde theyr  
 bellies, legges, and heades. That which was brought to *Toledo*,  
 was young, and but litle, and by my estimation of the age of  
 threer peeres: but in the firme lande there are many founde of  
 greater quantitie, for I haue scene some of threer spans in height,  
 and more then fise in length. They are beastes of great force,  
 with strong legges, and well armed with nayles and fanges,  
 which wee call dogge teeth: they are so fierce, that in my iudge-  
 ment no reall Lion of the byggest sort is so strong or fierce. Of  
 these, there are many found in the firme lande, which deuour ma-  
 ny of the Indians, & doe much hurt otherwyse: but since the com-  
 ming of the Christians, many haue been kylld with Crossebowes  
 after this maner. Assoone as the archer hath knowledge of the  
 haunt of any of these Tigers, he goeth searching their trale, with  
 his crossebow & with a litle hound or begle, and not with a grey-  
 hounde, because this beast would soone kyll any dog that would  
 venter on him: When the hounde hath founde the Tyger, he  
 runneth about him bayng continually, and approcheth so neare  
 him, snappyng and grymmyng, with so quicke slepyng and re-  
 turnyng, that he heereby so molested this fierce beast, that hee  
 driueth him to take the next tree, at the foote wherof he remaineth

The hunting  
 of Tigers.

Appl bayng, and the Tyger grynnyng and shewyng his teethe, whyle in the meane tyme the archer cometh neare, and, xii. or xiiii. paces of, stryketh him with the querell of his crossebowe in the best, and sleeth incontinent, leauyng the Tyger in his tra- uaple for lyfe and death, bytyng the tree and eatyng earth for fiercenesse: then within the space of two or thre houres, or the day folowynge, the archer returneth thither, and with his dogge fyndeth the place where he lyeth dead. In the yeere. 1522. I with the other rulers and magistrates of the cite of *Sancta Ma- ria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, tooke order in our counsaile, a rewarde of foure or fyue peeces of golde to bee giuen to euery man that kylld any of these Tygers: by reason whereof many were kylld in shorte space, both with crossebowes, and also with dyuers snares and ingens. But to conclude, I will not obstinately stand in opinion whether these beastes be Tygers or Panthers, or of the number of any other suche beastes of spotted beare, or also peraduenture some other newe beast vnknowen to the olde wy- ters, as were many other whereof I haue spoken in this booke: Of whiche thyng I doe not greatly marueyle, forasmuche as vnto our tyme this great part of the worlde was vnknowen to the antiquitie, insomuche that none of the wyters of that age, nor yet *Ptolome* in his *Cosmographie*, or any other since him, haue made any mention heereof, vntyll the fyrst Admyrall *Don Christopher Colonus* discouered the same: A thing doubtlesse with- out comparyson muche greater then that which is sayde of *Her- cules*, that he fyrst gaue the entrance of the sea *Mediterraneum* into the Ocean, whiche the Grekes coulde neuer doe before him. And heereof ysleth the fable that the mountaynes of *Cal- pe* and *Abila* (whiche are directly one agaynst an other in the straght of *Gibilterra*, the one beyng in *Spainne*, and the other in *Affryke*) were ioyned togeather before they were opened by *Hercules*, who erected those his pillers which your maiestie giue in token of prehemynence and lyke enterpysses, with likewise these his wordes *Plus Vltra*, wordes doubtlesse woorthy for so great and vnpuersall an Emperour, and not conuenient for any other Prince: forasmuche as your holy Catholyke ma- iestie haue spredde them in so strange and remote regions, so many thousand leagues further then euer dyd *Hercules*. And cer- teynly

A rewarde for  
kyllyng of Ty-  
gers.

Colonus com-  
pared to Her-  
cules.

The pillers of  
*Hercules*.  
The straghtes  
of *Gibilterra*.

Note.

*Plus Vltra*.  
Howe farre the  
Emperours  
maiestie excele-  
thy *Hercules*.

teply say, if there had been an Image of gold made in the praise and fame of *Colonus*, he had as well deserued it, as any of those men to whom for theyr noble enterpryse the antiquitie gaue diuine honour, if he had been in theyr tyme. But to returne to the matter whereof I began to speake: I neede say no more of the fourme of this beast, forasmuch as your Maiestie haue seene that whiche is yet alpye in *Toledo*. And surely the keeper of your maiesties Lions, who hath taken bypon him the charge to tame this beast, myght better haue bestowed his paynes in an other thing that myght haue been more profpytable for the safegarde of his lyfe, because this Tyger beyng yet but young, will dayly be stronger and fiercer, and increase in malyce. The Indians (and especially they of the firme lande in the prouince whiche the Catholyke Kyng *Don Ferdinando* commaunded to be called golden Castyle) call this beast *Ochi*. This thing is strange that chaunced of late: that whereas the Tiger wherof we haue made mention before, would haue kylde his keeper that then kept him in a cage, was in fewe dayes after made so tame, that he ledde her tyed only with a small corde, and playde with her so familiarly, that I marueyled greatly to see it, yet not without certayne beleefe that this friendship wil not last long, without danger of life to the keeper, forasmuche as surely these beastes are not meete to bee among men, for theyr fiercenesse and cruell nature that can not bee tamed.

A Tyger made tame.

Of the maners and customes of the Indians of the firme lande, and of theyr women.



The maners & customes of these Indians, are dyuers in diuers prouinces. Some of them take as many wyues as them list, and other lyue with one wyfe, whom they forsake not without consent of both parties, which chaunceth especially when they haue no chyldren. The nobilitie as well men as

The Indian women.

women, repute it infamous to ioyne with any of base parétage or strangers, except Christians, whom they count noble men, by reason of their valiantnesse, although they put a difference betweene the common sort & the other to whom they shewe obedience, counting it for a great matter & an honozable thyng, if they



bee beloued of any of them : insomuche that if they knowe any Christian man carnally, they keepe their sayth to him, so that hee bee not long absent farre from them, for theyr intent is not to be widowes, or to liue chaste lyke religious women. Many of them haue this custome, that when they perceiue that they are with chylde, they take an hearbe wherewith they destroy that is conceived : for they say that only well aged women should beare chyl- dzen, and that they wil not forbeare their pleasures, and defourme their bodies with bearyng of children, whereby theyr teates be- come loose & hanging, which thing they greatly dispraise. When they are deliuered of theyr children, they goe to the ryuer & washe them, whiche done, theyr blood and purgation ceaseth im- mediately : And when after this they haue a fewe dayes abstey- ned from the company of men, they become so strayght, as they say which haue had carnall familiaritie with them, that such as vse them, can not without much difficultie satisfie theyr appetite : They also whiche neuer had chylzen, are euer as virgins. In some partes they weare certayne litle apernes rounde about them before and behynde, as low as to theyr knees and hammes, wherewith they couer theyr priuie partes, and are naked all their bodie besyde. The principall men beare theyr priuities in a ho- low pype of golde, but the common sorte haue them inclosed in the shelles of certayne great weikes, and are besyde bitterly na- ked : For they thinke it no more shame to haue theyr coddges seene, then any other parte of theyr bodies : and in many prouin- ces both the men and women go bitterly naked, without any such couerture at all. In the prouince of *Cueua* they call a man *Chuy*, and a woman *Ira*, whiche name is not greatly disagreeable to many both of theyr women and of ours. These Indians gyue great honour and reuerence to theyr *Cacique* (that is) theyr kynges and rulers. The principall *Cacique*, hath twelue of his most strong Indians appointed to beare him, when he remoueth to any place, or goeth abrode for his pleasure. Two of them cary him sitting vppon a long peece of wood, which is naturally as lyght as they can fynde, the other tenne folow next vnto him as footmen : they keepe continually a trottyng pale with him on their shoulders. When the two that cary him are weery, other two come in their places, without any disturbance or staye. And thus

The men of  
India.

The kyng is  
borne on mens  
backes.

thus if the way bee playne, they cary him in this maner for the space of .xv. or .xx. leagues in one day. The Indians that are assigned to this office, are for the most parte slaues, or *Naboriti*, that is, suche as are bounde to continuall seruice. I haue also noted that when the Indians perceyue them selues to be troubled with to much blood, they let them selues blood in the caises of theyr legges, and brawnes of theyr armes: this doe they with a very sharpe stone, and sometymes with the final tooth of a *Uiper*, or with a sharpe reede or thorne. All the Indians are commonly without beardes, insomuch that it is in maner a maruella to see any of them epyther men or women to haue any downe or heare on theyr faces, or other partes of theyr bodies: Albeit I sawe the *Cacique* of the prouince of *Catarapa*, who had heare on his face and other partes of his bodie, as had also his wyfe in such places as women are accustomed to haue. This *Cacique* had a great part of his body paynted with a blacke colour, which neuer fadeth, and is much lyke vnto that wherewith the *Hoxes* paynt them selues in Barbarie in token of nobilitie. But the *Hoxes* are paynted specially on their visage and throte, and certayne other partes. Lykewyse the principall Indians vse these payntinges on theyr armes and brestes, but not on theyr visages, because among them the slaues are so marked. When the Indians of certayne prouinces goe to the battayle (especially the *Caniball* archers) they cary certayne shelles of great welkes of the sea, which they blow, and make therewith great sound, much lyke the noyse of hornes: they cary also certayne *Tymbrels*, which they vse in the stead of *Drummes*: also very fayre plumes of feathers, and certayne armure of golde, especially great and rounde peeces on theyr brestes, and splintes on their armes. Lykewyse other peeces, which they put on theyr heades and other partes of theyr bodies: For they esteeme nothyng so muche as to appeare galant in the warres, and to goe in most comely order that they can deuise, glystering with precious stones, Jewels, golde, and feathers. Of the least of these welkes or perewincies, they make certayne litle beades, of dyuers sortes and colours: they make also litle bracelets, which they myngle with gaudies of golde, these they rowe about theyr armes from the elbowe to the wrist of the hande. The lyke also doe they on theyr legges

Letting of blood.

They haue no beardes.

They paynte their bodies.

The *Canibals*.

Armure of golde.

Their galantesie in the warres.

Their *Juelles*.

from the knee to the soles of theyr feete, in token of nobilitie, especially theyr noble women in dyuers prouinces are accustomed to weare suche Jewelles, and haue theyr neckes in maner laden therewith: these beades and Jewelles, and suche other trynkets, they call *Caquiras*. Besyde these also, they weare certayne rynges of golde at theyr eares and nostrilles, whiche they bore full of holes on both sydes, so that the rynges hang vppon theyr lippes. Some of these Indians are poulde and rounded: albeit commonly both the men and women take it for a decent thyng to weare long heare, whiche the women weare to the myddest of theyr shoulders, & cut it equally, especially aboute their browes: this doe they with certayne harde stones, whiche they keepe for the same purpose. The pyncipall women, when theyr teates fall, or become loose, beare them vp with barres of gold, of the length of a spanne and a halfe, well wrought, and of suche byggenesse that some of them weygh more then twoo hundred Castellans or Ducades of golde: these barres haue holes at both the endes, whereat they tye two small cordes made of cotton at euery ende of the barres: One of these cordes goeth ouer the shoulder, and the other vnder the arme holes, where they tye both togeather, so that by this meanes the barre beareth vppon theyr teates. Some of these chiefe women goe to the battayle with theyr husbandes, or when they them selues are regentes in any prouinces, in the whiche they haue all thinges at commaundement, and execute the office of generall capitaines, and cause them selues to bee caried on mens backs, in lyke maner as doe the Caciques of whom I haue spoken before.

These Indians of the firme lande are muche of the same stature and colour as are they of the Ilande: they are for the most part of the colour of an olyue, if there be any other difference, it is more in bignesse then otherwise, & especially they that are called *Coronati*, are stronger and bygger then any other that I haue seene in these parties, except those of the Ilande of *Giantes*, which are on the South side of the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, neare vnto the coastes of the firme land, and likewise certaine other which they call *Iucatos*, which are on the North syde. All which chiefly, although they bee no *Giantes*, yet are they doubtlesse the byggest of the Indians that are knowen to this day, & commonly bygger then the

Howe the women beare vppon theyr teates, with barres of golde.

The stature & colour of the Indians.  
The Indians called *Coronati*.

The Ilande of *Giantes*.

*Iucatos*.

the Flemmynges: and especially many of them, aswell women as men, are of very hygh stature, and are all archers both men and women. These *Coronati* inhabite thyrre leagues in length by these coastes, from the poynt of *Canoa* to the great ryuer which they call *Guadalchiber*, neere vnto *Sancta Maria de gratia*. As I trauersed by those coastes, I fylled a butte of freshe water of that ryuer, fyre leagues in the sea from the mouth thereof where it falleth into the sea. They are called *Coronati* (that is crowned) because theyr heare is cutte rounde by theyr eares, and poulde lower a great compasse about the crowne, much lyke the fryers of saint Augustines order. And because I haue spoken of theyr maner of wearyng theyr heare, heere cometh to my remembraunce a thyng which I haue oftentimes noted in these Indians: and this is, that they haue the bones of the sculles of theyr heades foure tymes thicker, and much stronger then ours, so that in commyng to handstrokes wiche them, it shalbe requisite not to strike them on the heads with swoordes, for so haue many swoordes been broken on theyr heades, with litle hurte doone. And to haue sayde thus much of theyr customes and maners, it shall suffice for this tyme, because I haue more largely intreated herof in my general historie of the Indies: Yet haue I neyther there nor here spoken muche of that part of the firme lande whiche is called *Noua Hispania* (that is, newe Spayne, whereof the Island of *Incatana* is part) forasmuche as *Ferdinando Cortesie* hath writtten a large booke therof. Of the houses of these Indies, I haue spoken sufficiently els where: Yet haue I thought good to informe your maiestie of y<sup>e</sup> building and houses which the Christians haue made in diuers places in the firme lande. They buylde them nowe therefore with two solars or loftes, and with loopes and wyndowes to open and shutte: also with strong tymber, and very sayre boordes, in suche sorte, that any noble man may well and pleasauntly be lodged in some of them. And among other, I my selfe caused one to be builded in the citie of *Sancta Maria Antiqua* in *Dariena*, which cost me more then a thousand and fye hundred Castellans, beyng of such sort that I may well entertayne and commodiously lodge any Lord or noble man, reseruing also part for my selfe and my familye: for in this may many householde be kept, both aboue

The sculles of  
the Indians  
heades.

Newe Spaine.

The houses of  
the Christians  
in India.

*Dariena*.

and



Gardens.

and beneath. It hath also a fayre garden, with many Orange trees, both sweete and sowre: Cedars also, and Limons, of the which there is nowe great plentie in the houses of the Christians. On one syde of the garden, there runneth a fayre riuer. The situation is very pleasaunt, with a good and holsonie ayre, and a fayre prospecte about the ryuer. In fine, our trust is that in fewe peeres al thinges in these regions shal growe to a better state, accorpyng to the holy intention of your maiestie.

Of the chiefe Ilandes *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*.

The Indians which at this present inhabite the Ilande of *Hispaniola*, are but fewe in number, and the Christians not so many as they ought to be, forasmuche as many of them that were in this Iland, are gone to other Ilandes, and to the fyne lande. For beyng for the most parte young men unmarried, and desirous daily to see newe things, wherein mans nature deliceth, they were not willing to continue long in one place, especially seeing daily other newe landes discovered, where they thought they might sooner fill their purses, by being present at the fyrst spoyle: Wherin neuerthelesse their hope deceiued many of them, and especialy such as had houses & habitations in this Ilande: For I certainly beleue, confyrming my selfe herein with the iudgement of many other, that if any one Prince had no more seignories then only this Ilande, it shoulde in short tyme be such, as not to geue place either to *Sicilie* or *England*, wheras euen at this present there is nothyng wherefore it shoulde malice they prosperitie, not beyng inferiour to them in any felicitie, that in maner the heauens can graunt to any lande: beyng furthermore suche as may inryche many prouinces and kyngdomes, by reason of many ryche golde mynes that are in it, of the beste golde that is founde to this day in the worlde, and in greatest quantitie. In this Iland, nature of her selfe byngeth forth suche abundance of cotton, that if it were wrought and mayntayned, there shoulde be more and better then in any part of the worlde. There is so great plentie of excellent *Cassia*, that a great quantitie is brought from thence into *Spaine*, from whence it is carped

Men are desirous of newe thynges.

The commodities of *Hispaniola*, *Enga* lande, and *Sicilie*.

Golde mynes.

Cotton.

*Cassia*.

caried to diuers partes of the worlde . It encreaseſh ſo muche, that it is a marueylous thyng to conſider. In this are many ryche ſhoppes where Sugar is wrought, and that of ſuche perfectneſſe and goodneſſe, and in ſuch quantitie, that ſhypps come laden therewith yeerely into Spayne. All ſuch ſeedes, ſettes, or plantes, as are brought out of Spayne and planted in this Iſlande, becomee muche better, bygger, and of greater encrease then they are in any part of our Europe . And yf it chaunce otherwyſe that ſometymes they proſper not ſo well, the cauſe is that they which ſhould tyl and huſband the ground, & ſowe and plant in due ſeaſons, haue no reſpect heereunto, beyng impatient whyle the wheat and vines waite tyme, beyng geuen to wanderyng and other affayres of preſent gaynes (as I haue ſayde) as ſearchyng the golde mynes, ſyſhyng for pearles, and occupying marchaundies, with ſuche other trades. for the greedy ſolowynge whereof, they neglect and contempne both ſowynge and plantynge . Suche fruites as are brought out of Spayne, into this Iſland, proſper marueylouſly, and waite tyme all tymes of the yeeare, as hearbes of al ſortes very good and pleaſaunt to be eaten. Alſo many Pomgranates of the beſt kynde, and Oranges both ſweete and ſowre: Lykewyſe many ſaype Limons and Cedars, and a great quantitie of all ſuch as are of ſharpe, ſowre, and bytter taſt. There are alſo many Fygge trees, which byynge foozth theyr fruites all the whole yeeare. Lykewyſe thoſe kynde of Date trees that beare Dates, and diuers other trees and plantes, which were brought out of Spayne thither. Beastes do alſo encrease in lyke abundaunce, & eſpecially the heardeſ of Kynne are ſo augmented both in quantitie and number, that there are now many patrons of cattaille that haue more then two thouſand heades of Meate, and ſome thre or foure thouſande, and ſome more. Beſyde theſe, there are very many that haue heardeſ of foure or fyue hundred. And trueth it is, that this Iſland hath better paſture for ſuche cattayle then any other countrey in the worlde : alſo holſome and cleare water, and temperate ayre, by reaſon whereof the heardeſ of ſuch beaſtes are much bygger, faſter, and alſo of better taſt then ours in Spayne, becauſe of the ranke paſture, whole moiſture is better digeſted in the hearbe or graſſe by the continuall & temperate heate of the Sonne, wherby

beyng

Sugar.

Plantes and  
hearbes.Great thynges  
hindyed by reſpect  
of preſent  
gaynes.Oranges.  
Pomegranates.Fygges all the  
yeere.  
Dates.

Beaſtes.

Great heardeſ  
of cattayle.

Good paſture.

The effect of  
continuall and  
moderate  
heate.

beþng made moze fat and vinctuous, it is of better and moze ſted-  
faſt nouryſhment. For contynuall and temperate heate, doth  
not only drawe much moyſture out of the earth, to the nouryſh-  
ment of ſuch thynges as growe and are engendred in that clime,  
but doth alſo by moderation preſerue the ſame from reſolution  
and putrifaction, digeſting alſo and condenſatþng oꝝ thyckþng  
the ſayde moyſt nouryſhment into a gummie and vinctuous ſub-  
ſtaunce, as is ſeene in all ſuche thynges as growe in thoſe regi-  
ons: and this is the only naturall cauſe aſwell that certayne  
great beaſtes and of long lyfe (as the Elephant & Rhinoceros,  
with ſuche other) are engendred only in the regions neare vnto  
the Equinoctiall, as alſo that the leaues of ſuche trees as growe  
there, do not wyther oꝝ fall, vntyil they be thruſt out by other,  
accorþng to the verſe of the poet whiche ſayeth, *Et nata pira pi-  
ris, et ficus in ſarabus extant*, this is in effect, Peares growing vpon  
Peares, and Fygges vpon Fygges. Plinie alſo wytteth,  
that ſuche trees are neuer infected with the diſeaſe of trees that  
the Latines call *Caries*, whiche we may call the woꝝme oꝝ can-  
ker, beþng but a certayne putrifaction, by reaſon of a watryſhe  
nouryſhment not well consolidate. The ſame thyng hath been  
the cauſe that certayne Philoſophers, conſidering aſwell that  
man is the hotteſt and moyſteſt beaſt that is (whiche is the beſt  
complexion) as alſo that men lyue longeſt in certayne partes of  
India neare the Equinoctiall (where yet to this day ſome liue to  
the age of an hundred and fyftie yeeres) were of opinion that yf  
mankynde had any beginning on the earth, that place ought by  
good reaſon to be vnder oꝝ not farre from y Equinoctiall line, for  
the cauſes aforeſayde. Soine of the Diuines alſo vpon lyke con-  
ſideration, haue thought it agreeable that theyꝝ Paradife ſhoulde  
be about the ſame, within y precinct of thoſe riuers which are na-  
med in the booke of Genetiſis. But to let paſſe theſe thyngs, & to  
returne to the hiltorie. In this Iland furthermoze are manye  
Sheepe, and a great number of Hogges, of the which (as  
alſo of the Kyne) many are become wylde, and lykelwyſe ma-  
ny Dogges and Cattes, of thoſe whiche were brought out of  
Spayne: Theſe (and eſpecially the Dogges) do much hurt a-  
mong the cattayle, by reaſon of the negligence of the heardmen.

There

The cauſe of  
fat nouryſh-  
ment.

Beaſtes of long  
lyfe in regions  
about the E-  
quinoctiall line.  
Trees whoſe  
leaues do not  
wyther.

The canker of  
the tree.

Long lyued  
men in India.

Paradiſe neare  
the Equinocti-  
all line.

Sheepe and  
Hogges.

Dogges and  
Cattes become  
wylde.

There are also many Horses, Mares, and Mules, and such other beastes as serue the vse of men in Spayne, and are muche greater then they of the fyrst broode brought thither out of Spayne. Some places of the Ilande are inhabited, although not so many as were requisite: Of the which I wyl say no more, but that al the regions of the Ilande are so well situate, that in the course of tyme all thynges shall come to greater perfection, by reason of the rychnesse & pleasauntnesse of the countrey, and fertilitie of the soyle. But nowe to speake somewhat of the principall and chiefe place of the Ilande, whiche is the citie of *San Domenico*: I saye, that as touchyng the buildinges, there is no citie in Spayne, so much for so much (no not *Barsalona*, which I haue oftentimes seene) that is to be preferred before this, generally: For the houses of *San Domenico*, are for the most parte of stone, as are they of *Barsalona*, or of so strong & wel wrought earth, that it maketh a singuler and strong bynding. The situation is much better then that of *Barsalona*, by reason that the strectes are much larger and plainer, and (without comparision) more directe and streyght forth: For being builded nowe in our tyme, besyde the commoditie of the place of the fundation, the strectes were also directed with corde, compase, and measure, wherin it excelleth al the cities that I haue seene. It hath the sea so nere, that of one syde there is no more space betwene the sea and the citie then the walles, and this is about fiftie pases, where it is furthest of. On this syde, the waters of the sea beate vpon the natural stones and sayre coast: On the other part, hard by the side and at the foote of the houses, passeth the riuer *Ozama*, which is a marueilous port, wherein laden shippes rise very nere to the land, and in maner vnder the house windowes, and no further from the mouth of the riuer where it entreth into the sea, then is from the foote of the hil of *Monyuia*, to the monastery of saint *Fraunces*, or to the lodge of *Barsalona*. In the myddest of this space in the citie, is the fortresse and castle, vnder the which, and twentie pases distant from the same, passe the shippes to arrysse somewhat further in the same riuer. From the entraunce of the shippes vntyl they cast anker, they sayle no further from the houses of the citie then thyrtye or fourtie pases, because of this side of the citie the habitation is nere to the riuer. The port or hauen al-

The situation  
of Hispaniola.

The citi of San  
Domenico.

The ryuer  
Ozama.

The Haueu,



so is so fayre and commodious to defraight of unlade shippes, as the like is founde but in fewe places of the worlde. The chymneis that are in this citie, are about fyre hundred in number, and such houses as I haue spoken of before: Of the which some are so fayre & large, that they may well receiue and lodge any lord or noble man of Spaine with his traine & familie, and especially that which *Don Diego Colon*, viceroy vnder your maiestie, hath in this citie, is such that I knowe no man in Spayne that hath the lyke by a quarter in goodnesse, consydering all the commodities of the same. lykewyse the situation thereof, as beyng aboue the sayde porte, and altogether of stone, and hauyng many fayre and large roomes, with as goodly a prospect of the lande and sea as may be deuised, seemeth vnto me so magnificall and princelyke, that your maiestie may be as well lodged therin, as in any of the most exquisite buylded houses of Spayne. There is also a Cathedral church builded of late, where aswel y<sup>e</sup> Bishop accordyng to his dignitie, as also the Canons are wel endewed. This church is wel builded of stone and lime, and of good woorkmanshyy. There are furthermoze thre monasteries, bearyng the name of saint Dominike, saint Fraunces, and saint Marie of Hercedes, the which are all well buylded, although not so curiously as they of Spaine. But speakyng without preiudice of any other religious monasterie, your maiestie may be wel assured, that in these thre monasteries god is as wel serued, as in any other religious house, with men of holy lyuyng & vertuous example. There is also a very good hospitall for the ayde and succour of pooze people, which was founde by *Michael Passamont*, treasurer to your maiestie. To conclude, this citie from day to day increaseth in wealth and good order, aswel for that the saide Admiral & viceroy, with the lord Chauncelour and counsaile appointed there by your maiestie, haue theyr continuall abydyng heere, as also that the rycheest men of the Ilande resort hyther for theyr most commodious habitation, and trade of suche marchaundies as are eyther brought out of Spayne, or sent thither from this Ilande, whiche now so aboundeth in many thynges, that it serueth Spayne with many commodities, as it were with vsurp requitynge suche benefytes as it fyrst receyued from thence. The people of this Ilande are commonly of somewhat lesse

A cathedrall  
churche and  
monasteris in  
Hispaniola.

An Hospitall

lesse stature then are the Spaniardes, and of a thynnyng or cleare  
 browne colour: they haue wyues of theyr owne, and absteyne  
 from theyr daughters, sisters, and mothers: they haue large  
 foreheades, long blacke heare, and no beardes or heare in anye  
 other partes of theyr bodies, aswell men as women, except very  
 fewe, as perhaps scarfly one among a thousand. They goe as  
 naked as they were borne, except that on the partes whiche may  
 not with honestie be seene, they weare a certayne lease as brode  
 as a mans hande, whiche neuerthelesse is not kept close with such  
 diligence, but that sometymes a man may see that they thynke  
 sufficiently hyd. In this Island are certayne Glowormes, that  
 thynne in the nyght as do ours, but are much bygger, and geue a  
 greater lyght: Insomuch that when the men of the Islande goe  
 any iorneyes in the night, they beare some of these wormes made  
 fast about theyr feete and head, in such sort that he that should see  
 them a farre, & ignorant of the thing, would be greatly astonished  
 thereat. By the lyght of these also, the women worke in theyr  
 houses in the nyght. These wormes they cal *Cienas*. Their light  
 lasteth for the space of thre dayes, and diminisheth as they be-  
 gin to dye by. There is also a kynde of Crowses, whose breath  
 synketh in the moynyng, and is sweete in the after noone: the  
 excrement which they auoyde, is a lpyng worme. As touching  
 other thynges of this Island, whereof Peter Martyr hath more  
 largely intreated in his Decades, I haue thought it superfluous  
 to repete the same agayne out of this historie of *Gonzalus Fer-*  
*dinandus*, but haue heere gathered only such thynges as eyther  
 are not touched of Peter Martyr, or not so largely declared, as  
 I haue done the lyke in all other notable thynges, which I haue  
 collected out of this Summarie of *Gonzalus*.

The people.

Glowormes.

Crowses synke  
pnyng & sweete.

## Of the Islande of Cuba, and other.



If the Islande of *Cuba*, and other, as the I-  
 landes of *Sancti Iohannis*, and *Iamaica*, the  
 same may be sayde in maner in all thynges  
 as before of *Hispaniola*, although not so  
 largely. Yet in lesse quantitie do they bring  
 forth the lyke thynges, as goide, copper,  
 cattayle, trees, plantes, fyshes, and suche  
 other, of the whiche we haue spoken there.

Saint Iohn  
his Islande.  
Iamaica.

Partriches.

In *Cuba*, is a certayne kynde of Partriches, beyng verpe litle, with theyr feathers muche of the coloure of Turtle Doones, but are of muche better tast to be eaten : they are taken in great number, and beyng brought wyde into the houses, they become as tame within the space of thre or foure dayes as though they had been hatched there : they become exceedyng fat in short space, and are doubtlesse the most delicate and pleasaunt meate that euer I haue eaten . But to let passe many other thynges that myght be heere sayd, and to speake of two marueylous thynges whiche are in this Ilande of *Cuba* : whereof the one is, that a valley conteynyng two or thre leagues in length betweene two mountaynes, is full of a kynde of verpe harde stones, of suche perfect roundenesse, and lyke vnto Pelletes of Gunnes, that no art can make better or more exactly pullished. Of these, some are as small as Pelletes for Handgunnes, and other so encreasyng bygger and bygger from that quantitie, that they maye serue for all sortes of Artyllarie, although they bee of byggenesse to receyue one or two or more Quintales of ponder, euery Quintale conteynyng one hundred weyght, or of what other quantitie so euer they be . These Pelletes are founde throughtout al the valley within the earth, as in a mine, whiche they dygge, and take out suche as they neede of al sortes. The other marueylous thyng of this Ilande is this : That farre from the sea, there ishereth out of a mountayne a certayne lycour, muche lyke the Cley of Babylon, called *Bitumen*, or lyke vnto pytche, in great quantitie, and suche as is very commodious for the calkyng of shyppes : this falleth continually from the rocke, and runneth into sea, in suche aboundaunce that it is seene flotyng aboute the water on euerye syde of the sea there about, as it is dyuen from place to place by the wynde or course of the water . *Quintus Cursus* wyrteth in his historie, that great Alexander came to the cite of *Memi*, where is a great Caue or Denne, in the whiche is a spyng or fountayne that continually auoydeth a great quantitie of *Bitumen*, in suche sorte, that it is an easy thyng to beleue that the stones of the walles of Babylon might be laid therewith, according as the said auctour writeth . I haue seene this myne of *Bitumen*, not only in the Ilande of *Cuba*, but also such an other in new Spaine, whiche was founde

Pelletes for  
Gunnes  
wrought by nature.A fountayne of  
the pytche of  
*Bitumen**Quintus Cursus*.*Bitumen* of  
Babylon.

founde of late in the prouince of *Panuco*, where it is much better then the other of *Cuba*, as I haue seene by experience in calkynge *Panuco* of thyppes.

Of the lande of *Baccalaos*, called *Terra Baccalarum*, situate on the North syde of the firme lande.



Shortly after that your maiestie came to the citie of *Toledo*, there arriued in the moneth of *November*, *Steuens Gomes* the pilot, who the yeere befoze of .1524. by the commaundement of your maiestie, sailed to y<sup>e</sup> North partes, and founde a great part of lande continuat from that which is called *Bac-*

*calaos*, discourlyng toward the West to the .xl. and .xli. degree, *Baccalaos*. from whence he brought certayne *Indians* (for so call we all the nations of the newe found landes) of the which he brought some *Indians*. with him from thence, who are yet in *Toledo* at this present, and of greater stature then other of the firme lande, as they are commonly: theyr coloure is muche lyke the other of the firme lande: they are great archers, and go coucred with the skinner of diuers beastes, both wylde and tame. In this lande are many excellent furies, as *Parterns*, *Sables*, and such other ryche furies, of the which the sayd pilot brought some with him into *Spayne*: they haue *spluer*, and copper, & certayne other metals: they are *Idolaters*, and honour the *Sonne* and *Moone*, and are seduced with such superstition and errours as are they of the firme. And to haue wyten thus much it may suffice, of suche thynges as haue seemed to me most worthy to be noted in the Summarie of *Gonzalus Ferdinandus*, wytten to *Themperours* maiestie.

ryche furies  
and spluer,

Idolaters.

Particularly of newe *Spayne*, called  
*Noua Hispania*, or *Mexico*.



Two *Spayne*, is that part of the continent or firme lande that lyeth West and South from the land of *Florida*: this was subdued to the empire of *Castile* by the ryght noble gentelman *Ferdinando Cortese* y<sup>e</sup> marquisse of the vale of *Quaraca*. In this lande are many prouinces, conteynyng in them in

Gi maner



## Notable thynges

maner innumerable cities, among which, that is the chiefe whiche the Indians cal *Mexico*, or *Temixtitlan*, consysting of more then five hundred thousand inhabitants: It standeth in the middelt of a lake of salte water, as doth *Aenece* in the sea, the lake conteyneth fourtie Persian miles, called *Parasange*, euery one consyting of .xxx. furlonges, and more, as some say. In these regions is found great plentie of gold, syluer, & pretious stones, with innumerable other thynges, both necessary for the lyfe of man, & pleasant, as *Silke*, *Bombasine cotton*, *Alame*, *Safferne*, *Clowd*, with diuers other thinges, wherewith cloth and *Silke* is dyed. There is also such abundaunce of suger, that certayne Spanishe shippes are yeerely freighted therewith, and bying the same into *Spaine*, from whence it is carped in maner to al partes of *Christendome*. The inhabitants of *Mexico* are subtile people, and vse much craft in theyr bargaining: they haue not the vse of gold and syluer mony, but vse in the steade thereof the halfe shelles of *Almonds*, which kind of Barbarous mony they cal *Cocoa*, or *Cacanguate*. In maner al kinds of coorne are there very good cheape, especially barley and wheate. They haue great plentie of *Hartes*, *wylde Bores*, *Lions*, *Leopardes*, and *Tigers*, whiche beastes wander in maner in euery place. The region is most commodious for haukyng and huntynge, for the great abundaunce it hath of beastes and foules: But the people exercise al theyr cummyng in makynge the images of their idolatry, and in painting. Theyr women are valiant, and sumptuous in theyr apparell, and other tyementes: for they so richely frynge and beset the same with pearles, pretious stones, and golde, that nothyng can be more excellent: they haue a kynde of paper greatly differynge from ours, in this they expresse their mindes by certayne figures, for they haue not otherwyle thuse of letters. The nation is desirous of warre, and doth not long keepe the conditions of peace vniuolated: but delyteth rather in ciuile and most cruell battayle among them selues, then to liue in peace and quietnesse. Such as in the warres fal by any meanes into the handes of theyr enemies, eyther by subynssion or otherwyle, are partly sacryfised to the Idoles, and the resydue geuen to the souldiers to be eaten, in lyke maner as we rewarde dogges and haukes with part of theyr pray. They haue innumerable Idoles, whiche euery one maketh

The cite of  
*Mexico*, or *Te-  
mixtitlan*.

Golde and  
syluer.

*Silke*.  
Cotton.  
*Alame*.  
Woode.  
Suger.

Shelles for  
mony.

Coorne.  
Beastes.

Haukyng and  
huntynge.

Payntynge.

Wome sumptuous  
apparell.

A warlike na-  
tion.

Captiues sa-  
crificed to I-  
doles.

maketh for his particuler god, after the phantasie of his owne  
 hayne, and geueth therto diuine honour, albeit at this day they  
 do by litle and litle leaue of theyr barbarous fycercenesse, & with  
 our religion imbrace better maners: For they nowe professe  
 the fapth of Christ, and in his name pray vnto God the Father.

## Of Peru.



The prouince called Peru, was also named  
*Nona Castilia*, by them that fyrst founde it.  
 This region is the West part of *America*,  
 and is situate in the longitude of .290. de-  
 grees, proceeding from the West to the  
 East, and Southward begynneth fyue de-  
 grees beyonde the Equinocciall line, and  
 is extended very farre into the South. This is taken to be the  
 rycheft land in golde, siluer, pearles, precious stones, and spices,  
 that euer was founde yet to this day. For gold is there in suche  
 plentie that they make ppsots therof, and other vessels applied  
 to fytthly vses. But this is moze to be marueyled at, that in a cite  
 called *Colla* was founde a house al couered with massie plates of  
 gold. In theyr warres also theyr harnesse is of gold and siluer.  
 Theyr weapons are bowes, arrowes, flyngs, dartes, and pykes.  
 The inhabitauntes are warrellyke people, and of great agilicie.  
 They haue citie defended with lawres and armes. The region  
 is exceeding fruitfull, and yeldeth corne twyse in the yeere. It is  
 so flozpyshyng with many fayre woods, mountaynes, ryuers, and  
 other both pleasaunt & necessarie commodities, that it seemeth in  
 a maner an earthly Paradise: it hath diuers kynds of beastes, and  
 yet none hurtful, or of rauenyng kynde. Theyr sheepe are of  
 suche heygth, that they vse them in steepe of Hoxes: some write  
 that they are as bygge as the young Foles of Camelles, and  
 that theyr wooll is verpe softe and fyne: also that the Twes  
 byyng fourth Lambes twyse a yeere. The people are wyttie,  
 and of gentle behauiour, cunnyng also in artes, fapthfull of pro-  
 mise, and of maners not greatly to be discommended, saue only  
 that they are ignorant of Christ, who neuerthelesse is now know-  
 en vnto them in many places, as our hope is he shalbe daylie

Peru is the  
 rycheft land  
 that is know-  
 en.

A house coue-  
 red with golde.

Harnesse of  
 golde.

A fruitfull  
 region.

Great sheepe.

The dutie of  
 Christian  
 Princes.

## Notable thynges

more and more, yf all Princes wyl hereyn put theyr helpynge handes to the plowe of our Lorde, and send labourers into his vineparde.

Of the great ryuer called *Rio de la Plata*  
(that is) the ryuer of siluer.



This ryuer reacheth very farre in length & breadth, and is called *Vruai*, in the Indian tongue. Into this falleth an other riuer named *Paraue*. The first that sayled into the riuer of *Plata*, was *Iohn Dias Solis*, whom the ryght noble kyng of Spaine *Ferdinandus* made Admirall of these seas. In the ryuer lyeth an Ilande whiche *Iohn Dias* named *Martinus Gracias*, because a pilot of his, so called, was buried there. This Ilande is situate in the myddest of the ryuer, and is distant from the mouth of the same about fourtie leagues. As the sayde Admirall attempted to expugne the Ilande, he was sodenly oppressed and slayne of the Indians that priuyply assayled hym. Therewith neuerthelesse theyr barbarous crueltie was not satisfised vntyll they had toyne hym in peeces, and deuoured hym: But many peeres after, the Emperours Maiestie, and Kyng of Spayne *Charles* the syfte, sent forth *Sebastian Cabot* (a man of great courage & skylpful in *Cosmographie*, and of no lesse experience as concernyng the *Starres* of the sea) with commaundement to discouer and subdue the Indians of *Tharsis*, *Ophir*, *Cipango*, and *Coi Cathai*. Recepyng therfore his commission, and procedyng forwarde on his viage, he arriued by chaunce at this Ilande: the cause whereof was, that the principall vessell was lost by shypwracke, and the men that saued theyr lyues by swimmyng were receyued into our shyppes. Percepyng therfore that by reason of this chaunce he coulde by no meanes perfourme his viage attempted, he entended to expugne the sayde Ilande, and thereupon to conueygh his victuals to land, to prepare his souldiers to the inuasion, to plant colonies, & to erect fortresses by the riuers side, wherby the Spaniards might be defended from the violence of the Barbarians. But before he attempted this, he was aduertised that the Ilande was rich in gold & siluer. Which thing did so encorage him, that  
without

*Paraue.*

*Iohn Dias Solis.*  
*The Iland Martinus Gracias.*

*The viage of Sebastian Cabot to the riuer of Plata.*  
*Tharsis.*  
*Ophir.*  
*Cipango.*  
*Cathay.*

without respect of perill he thought best to expugne it by one meanes or other, wherein his boldenesse tooke good effecte, as often tymes chaunceth in great assayes. Furthermoze as touchyng the ryuer, *Sebastian Cabote* made relation, that he neuer sawe any comparable vnto this in breadth and deapth: For whereas it falleth into the sea, it conteyneth .xxv. leagues in breadth. From the mouth of the ryuer, *Cabote* sailed by the same into the lande for the space of thre hundred and fiftie leagues, as he wyrteth in his owne carde. That it is of great deapth, may hereby be considered, that many great ryuers fall into it, so that the chanell can not be shalowe that conteyneth such abundance of water, and suche plentie of good and great fyshes: For there is in maner no fysh in the sea, that is not founde in this ryuer. Assoone as the Spanyardees were set alande, they made a pproofe if the soyle were fruitefull to beare coyne. Takyng therefore fytie graynes of wheate, and committynge the same to the earth in the moneth of September, they gathered thereof two thousand and fiftie at December next folowynge: (wherin some being deceyued and mistakynge the thyng, haue wrytten in the steade of two thousande and fiftie, fiftie thousande and two:) the lyke fertilitytie is there of all other grayne and pulse. Furthermoze chinhabitantes declared, that not farre from that place, there are great and hygh mountaynes, in the which is founde great plentie of golde: and no great distance from the same, to be other mountaynes no lesse fruitefull of syluer, and many other thinges, long to rehearse. The inhabitantes are paynesfull men, and tyll the grounde diligently, wherein they take great pleasure, and haue therefore great plentie of bread of Maizium. There are sheepe of such byggenesse, that they compare them to young Camels or Asses, as some say: theyr wooll is very fine, and nearest vnto the fynnesse of sylke. There are also beastes of diuers kyndes. Among men there is this difference, that such as liue in the mountaynes, are whyte, and for the most part lyke vnto the men of our regions: but they that dwell aboute the ryuer (as though they tooke theyr colour thereof) are blackyshe, or purple, of the colour of fine Iron or Steele. This also chaunceth to many of them, that theyr feete and legges are lyke the legges and feete of the foule called the Dystreche.

The ryuer of Plata.

Marneplons fruitefulness.

Mountaynes conteynyng golde and syluer.

Great sheepe.

Theyr colour.

Men with deformed legges.



## Notable thynges

Of the landes of *Laborador* and *Baccalaos*, lying west and northwest from England, and being part of the firme lande of the *VVest Indies*.



The way to the Ilandes of *Molucca* by the north sea.

The Spaniards.

*Gasper Cortesreales*.

*Insula Cortesreales*.  
Snowe and  
Ile.

*Furres*.

*Fishes*.

*Grasses*.  
*Beares*.

Any haue traueyled to search the coaste of the lande of *Laborador*, aswell to thintent to knowe howe farre or whyther it reacheth, as also whether there be any passage by sea through the same into the sea of *Sur* and the Ilandes of *Molucca*, whiche are vnder the Equinotciall lyne, thynkyng that the way thither should greatly be shortened by this viage. The Spaniards, as to whose ryght the sayde Ilandes of spices parteyne, dyd fyist seeke to fynde the same by this way. The *Portugales* also hauyng the trade of spices in theyr handes, dyd trauayle to fynde the same, although hitherto neyther any suche passage is founde, or the ende of that lande. In the yere a thousande and five hundredeth, *Gasper Cortesreales*, made a viage thither with two *Carauelles*, but found not the streight or passage he sought. At his being there, he named the Ilands that lye in the mouth of y gulfe *Quadrado*, after his name *Cortesreales*, lying in the fyftie degree, and more, & brought from that land about threescore men for slaues: He greatly marueyled to behold the huge quantitie of snowe & Ile, for the sea is there frozen exceedingly. *Chinhabitantes* are men of good corporature, although tawny lyke the *Indies*, and laborious: They paynt theyr bodies, and weare braselettes and hoopess of syluer and copper: theyr apparell is made of the skynnes of *Barternes*, & dyuers other beastes, whiche they weare with the heare inward in winter, and outward in sommer. This apparell they gyrd to theyr bodies with gyrdels made of cotton, or the synewes of fyshes and beastes. They eate fysh more then any other thyng, and especially *Salmons*, although they haue foules and fruite. They make theyr houses of tymber, whereof they haue great plentie: and in the steade of tiles, couer them with the skynnes of fyshes and beastes. It is sayde also that there are *Gryffes* in this lande, and that the *Beares* and many other beastes and foules are whyte. To this

and

and the Ilandes about the same, the Britons are accustomed to resort, as men of nature agreeable vnto them, and boynе vnder the same altitude and temperature. The Nozwayes also sayled thither with the pilot called Iohn Scoluo, and the Englyshe men with Sebastian Cabot.

The Britons.

Sebastian Cabot.

The coaste of the lande of Baccallaos, is a great tract, and the greatest altitude thereof is xlviii. degrees and a halfe. Sebastian Cabot was the first that brought any knowlidge of this land. For beyng in England in the dayes of kyng Henry the seuench, he furnished two shypes at his owne charges, or (as some say) at the kynges, whom he perswaded that a passage myght be founde to Cathay by the North seas, and that spyes myght be brought from thence sooner by that way then by the viage the Portugales vse by the sea of Sur. He went also to knowe what maner of landes those Indies were to inhabite. He had with hym three hundred men, and directed his course by the tract of Islande, vpon the Cape of Laborador at fyftee and eight degrees, affirming that in the moneth of July there was such cold, & heapes of Ice, that he durst passe no further: also that the daies were very long, and in maner without nyght, and the nyghtes very cleare. Certayne it is, that at the threescore degrees, the longest day is of eighteene houres. But considering the cold, and the strangenesse of the vnknownen lande, he turned his course from thence to the West, folowing the coast of the land of Baccallaos vnto the thirtie & eight degrees, from whence he returned to Englande. To conclude, the Britons and Danes, haue sayled to the Baccallaos, and Iaques Cartier a french man was there twise with three Galeons: as one in the yeere. xxiiii. and the other in the. xxv. and chose the land to inhabite from the. xlv. degrees to the. li. beyng as good a land as Fraunce, and all thynges therin commune to suche as fyrst possesse the same. Of these landes, Iacobus Gastaldus wyrteth thus. The new land of Baccallaos, is a colde region, whose inhabitauntes are Idolatours, and praye to the Sonne and Moone, and dyuers Idoles: they are whyte people, and very rusticall, for they eate fleshe and fysh and all other thynges rawe. Sometymes also they eate mans fleshe priuile, so that they Cacique haue no knoweledge thereof. The apparrel of both the men and women, is made of Beares skynnes, although they

The lande of Baccallaos.

The viage of Cabot in the dayes of king Henry the seuenth.

Ice in July.

Baccallaos.

Britons. Danes. Iaques Cartier.

The people of Baccallaos.

## Notable thynges

haue *Sables* and *Parternes*, not greatly esteemed, because they are litle. Some of them go naked in sommer, and weare apparrell only in winter. The *Britons* and *Frenchmen* are accustomed to take fysh in the coastes of these landes, where is founde great plentie of *Tunnies*, which the inhabitants cal *Baccallaos*, wherof the land was so named. Northward from the region of *Baccallaos*, is the lande of *Laborador*, all full of mountaynes and great woods, in which are many *Beares* & wild *Boyes*. The inhabitants are *Idolators*, and warlike people, apparelled as are they of *Baccallaos*. In al this new land, is neyther cite or castell, but they lyue in companies like heardees of beastes.

Fishing for  
Tunnies.  
Laborador,

### The discovering of the land of *Florida*.

John Ponce.  
Water of great  
vertue, of this  
reade in the  
Perades.



He gouernour of the *Ilande* of *Boriquena*, *John Ponce* of *Leon*, beyng discharged of his office, and very ryche, furnished & sent forth two *Carauels* to seeke the *Ilands* of *Boiuea*, in the which the *Indians* affirmed to be a fountayne or spring whose water is of vertue to make old men young. Whyle

Bemini,

he trauayled fyre monethes, with outragious desire among many *Ilandes* to fynde that he sought, and coulde fynde no token of any suche fountayne, he entred into *Bemini*, and discovered the lande of *Florida*, in the yeere 1512. on Easter day, whiche the *Spaniards* cal the sorrowful day of *Pascha*, wherby they named that lande *Florida*. And supposyng that great riches myght be brought from thence, he returned into *Spayne*, and couenanted with king *Ferdinando*, as touchyng the trade: and by the intercession of *Nicolas de Ouando*, and *Peter Nunnez de Gusman*, the kyng dyd not only make hym gouernour of *Bemini* and *Florida*, but also sent forth with hym three shippes from *Sciuit* towards his second viage, in the yeere 1515. He touched in the *Ilande* of *Guaccana*, otherwyse called *Guadalupea*, and sent so lande certayne of his men with the *Laundresses* of the shippes: whom the *Canibales* (lying in ambushe) assailed with theyr venomous arrowes, and slaying the most part, caried away the women. With this euill beginning, *John Ponce* departed from hence to *Boriquen*, and from thence to *Florida*, where he went alande

Guaccana.

The Canibales.

Boriquen.

alande with his souldyers, to eisie a place most commodious to inhabite and plant a colome: But the Indians commyng forth agaynst him to defende the entrance, assailed the Spanyardes fiercely, and slue and wounded many of them. At whiche conflict also hee him selfe, beyng wounded with an arrowe, dyed shortly after in the Ilande of *Cuba*: and so endyng his lyfe, consumed a great parte of the rycheesse hee had before gotten at sainte Iohans of *Boriquen*. This *John Ponce* had before sayled with *Christopher Colen* to the Ilande of *Hispaniola* in the yeere 1493. Hee was a gentle souldyer in the warres of this Ilande, and captayne of the prouince of *Higuei* for *Nicolas de Ovando* that conquested the same. The region of *Florida* is a poynt or cape of lande reachyng into the sea lyke vnto a tongue, beyng a famous and noxious place among the Indians, by reason of many Spanyardes that haue been slayne there. But whereas by fame this *Florida* was esteemed a ryche lande, many valiant and noble men desyred the conquest thereof, among whom *Ferdinando de Soto* (who had before been a captayne in *Peru*, and greatly iryched by the imprisonment of kyng *Atabaliba*) attempted a viage thither with a good bande of men, and spent fyue yeeres in seeking of golde mynes, supposyng that this land had been lyke vnto *Peru*. In fine, hee dyed there, and was the destruction and bindyng of all that went with him, without inhabytyng that lande, in the whiche the conquestours had hitherto neuer good successe, forasmuche as these Indians are valiant archers, and strong & hardy men. But the valiant myndes of the Spanyardes not discouraged by these misadventures, after the death of *Ferdinando Soto*, many woorthie gentlemen desyred this conquest in the yeere 1544. among whom was *Iulian Samano*, and *Peter de Abumada*, beyng bretherne, and men of sufficient abillitie for such an enterpryse. But neyther the Emperour beyng then in *Germanie*, neyther the prince *Don Philip* his son, who gouerned all the kyngdomes of *Castile* and *Aragonie*, neyther yet the counsaile of the Indies, would in any case agree to the conquest. Neuerthelesse, not vicerly contemnyng the matter, which they were partly perswaded myght otherwyle be brought to passe, they sent thither Fryer *Luis*, Cancell of *Baluastro*, with other Fryers of the order of sainte *Dominike*, who offered them

The death of  
*John Ponce*.

The lande of  
*Florida*.

*Ferdinando*  
de *Soto*.

The valiant  
myndes of the  
Spanyardes.

The thyrd at-  
tempt of the  
conquest of  
*Florida*.

Certaine Fry-  
ers attempt the  
conquest onely  
with wordes,  
but with euill  
successe.

selues



## Notable thynges

selues to conuert the nations of that lande from theyr gentilitie to the sayth of Christ, and obedience to the Emperour, onely with wordes. The Fryer therefore going forwarde on his viage at the kynges charges, in the yere. 1549. went aland with foure other Fryers which he tooke with him, and certayne maryners, without harnesse or weapons: vnto whom as he began his preaching, many of the Indians of the sayde *Florida* resorted to the sea syde, where without gpyng audience to his wordes, they carryed him away, with three other of his companions, and dyd eate them, whereby they suffred martyrdome for the sayth of Christ: the residue that escaped, made hast to the shyppe, and kept them selues for confessours, as some say. Many that fauour the intent of the Fryers, doe nowe consider that by that meanes the Indians could not be brought to our friendshyp and religion: neuerthelesse, that if it could so haue been brought to passe, it had been better. There came of late from that shyppe, one that had been the page of *Ferdinando de Soto*, who declared that the Indians hanged by the skynnes, with the heades and crownes of the sayd Fryers in one of theyr Temples.

The Fryers  
are slayne and  
eaten.

the kynde  
of dysgracyng.

FOR. M. CAP. FVR BY-  
 SHERS PASSAGE BY THE  
 NORTHVEST.

OF CHINA IN CATHAYO, SITVATED  
 IN THE EAST SYDE OF  
 GREAT ASY.

OF THE ILAND GIAPAN, AND OTHER  
 LITTLE ILES IN TTE EAST OCEAN, BY  
 THE VVAY FROM CATHAYO  
 TO THE MOLVCCAES.

BY RICHARDE WILLES.

For. M. Capayne Furbishers passage by the Northwest.  
To the ryght honourable and vertuous Ladie, the  
Lady Anne, Countesse of VVarwyke.



Dure famous wayes there be spoken of to those fruitfull and wealthie Ilandes, we doe vsually call *Moluccaes*, continually haunted for gayne, and dayly traueyled for ryches therein growyng. These Ilandes although they stand East from our Meridian, distant almost halfe the length of the world, in extreme heate, vnder the Equinoctial lyne, possessed of Inhabelles and Barbares : yet by our neyghbours great aboundaunce of wealth there is paynefully sought, in respect of the voyage deere-ly bought, and from thence daungerously brought home vnto vs. Our neyghbours I call the Portugalles in comparison of the *Moluccians* for neerenesse vnto vs, for lyke situation westwarde as we haue, for theyr vsuall trade with vs, for that the farre South. assterlynges doe know this parte of Europe by no other name then Portugall, not greatly acquaynted as yet with the other nations thereof . Theyr voyage is well vnderstoode of all men, and the Southeasterne way rounde about Affrike by the cape of Good hope, more spoken of, better knowne & traueyled than that it may seeme needefull to discourse thereof any further.

The seconde way lyeth Southwest, betwixt the West Indie or South America, and the South continent, through that narrow streight where *Magellanus* first of all men that euer wee doe reade of, passed these later yeeres, leauyng therevnto therfore his name . This way no doubt the Spanyardes would commodiofly take, for that it lyeth neare vnto their dominions there, could the Easterne currant and leuant wyndes as easily suffer them to returne, as speedily therewith they may be carryed thither : for the which difficultie or rather impossibilitie of struiuing agaynst the force both of wynde and streame, this passage is little or nothyng bled, although it be very well knowne.

The thyrd way by the Northeast, beyonde all Europe and *Asie*, that woorthie and renowned knight sir *Hugh Willoughby* sought

1. By the south,  
east.

2. By the south,  
west.

3. By the north,  
east.

sought to his perill, enforced there to ende his lyfe for colde, congealed and frozen to death. And truly this way consisteth rather in the imagination of Geographers, than allowable either in reason, or approued by experience, as wel it may appeare by the dangerous trending of the Scythish Cape set by *Ortelius* vnder the eight degree North, by the vnlykely saylyng in that Northerne sea alwayes cladde with Ice and Snow, or at the least continually pestred therewith, if happely it be at any tyme dissolved: besides bayes & shelles, the water waxyng more shallow towardes the East, that we say nothyng of the foule mystes and darke fogs in the colde clime, of the litle power of the Sunne to cleare the ayre, of the vncomfortable nyghtes, so neare the Pole, syue moethes long.

*Ortel, tab.  
Asia. 3.*

A fourth way to goe vnto these aforesayde happy Ilandes *Moluccæ*, Syr *Humfrey Gilberte*, a learned and valiant Knyght, discourseth of at large in his new passage to *Cathayo*, and was attempted the last yeere by your Ho. seruauant. *Cap. Furbisher*, presently takyng vpon him with his company fully to discouer the same, and is now, if I be not deceyued, ready for his voyage. The enterpryse of it selfe beyng vertuous, the facte must doubtlesse deserue hygh prayse, and whansoever it shall be finished, the fruites thereof can not be small: where vertue is guyde, there is fame a follower, and fortune a Companion. But the way is dangerous, the passage doubtfull, the voyage not thoroughly knowen, and therfore gaynesayde by many, after this maner.

4. By the North-west.

First, who can assure vs of any passage rather by the North-west, than by the Northeast? doe not both wayes lye in equall distance from the North pole? stande not the North capes of cyther continent vnder lyke eleuation? Is not the Ocean sea beyond *America* farther distant from our Meridian by 30, or 40. degrees West, than the extreame pointes of *Cathayo* Eastward, if *Ortelius* generall Carde of the world be true? In the Northeast that noble Knyght sic *Hugh Willoughby* perished for colde: and can you than promyse a passenger any better hap by the North-west? who hath gone for triall sake, at any tyme, this way out of *Europe* to *Cathayo*?

Ob. 1.

In Theatro.

If you seeke the aduysle heerein of such as make profession in *Cosmographie*, *Ptolome*, the father of *Geographie*, and his el-

Ob. 2.

dest



best chilozen, will answere by theyr Pappes with a negative, concludynge moſte of the ſea within the land, and makynge an end of the world northward, neare the. 36. degree. The ſame opinion, whan learnynge chiefly floriſhed, was receiued in the Romanes tyme, as by their Poetes wyptynges it may appeare: *Et te colet vltima Tbulæ*, ſayd *Virgile*, being of opinion, that Iſeland was the extreme parte of the world habitable towarde the North. *Ioſeph Moletius* an Italian, and *Mercator* a Germane, for knowledge men able to be compared with the beſt Geographers of our time, the one in his halfe Spheares of the whole worlde, the other in ſome of his great Globes, haue continued the Weſt Indiſhe lande, euen to the North Pole, and conſequently, cut of all paſſage by ſea that way.

The ſame Doctors, *Mercator* in other of his Globes and Pappes, *Moletius* in his ſea carde, neuertheleſſe doubting of ſo great continuance of the former continent, haue opened a goulph betwixt the Weſt Indies and the extreme northerne lande: but ſuche a one, that ether is not to be traueyled for the cauſes in the firſt Obiection alleaged, or cleane ſhut vp from vs in Europe by *Groenland*: the South ende whereof *Moletius* maketh firme lande with America, the north parte continent with *Lapponlande* and *Norway*.

Chyrdly, the greateſt fauourers of this voyage, can not deny but that if any ſuch paſſage be, it lyeth ſubiect vnto Ice and ſnow for the moſt parte of the yeere, whereas it ſtandeth in the edge of the froſtie Zone. Before the Sunne hath warmed the ayre, and diſſolued the Ice, eche one well knoweth that there can bee no ſaylynge: the Ice once broken through the continuall abode, the Sunne maketh a certayne ſeaſon in thoſe partes: how ſhall it be poſſible for ſo weake a veſſell as a ſhypp is, to holde out amyd whole Ilandes, as it were, of Ice continually beatynge on eche ſyde, and at the mouth of that goulphe, iſſuyng downe furriouſly from the North, ſafely to paſſe, whan whole mountaynes of Ice and ſnow ſhalbe combed downe vpon her.

Wel, graunt the weſt Indies not to continue continent vnto the Pole, graunt there be a paſſage betwixt theſe two landes, let the goulph lye neare vs than commonly in cardes we fynde it ſet, namely, betwixt the. 61. & 64. degrees north, as *Gemma Friſius* in his

his Happes and Globes imagineeth it, and so left by our countryman *Sebastian Cabote*, in his table, the which my good Lorde your father hath at Cheynies, and so tryed this last yeere by your Honours seruauant as hee reported, and his carde and compasse doe witnesse. Let the way bee voyde of all difficulties, yet doeth it not folowe that we haue free passage to *Cathayo*. For examples sake. You may trende all *Norway*, *Finmarke*, and *Lapponlande*, and than bow Southwarde to *sainct Nicolas* in *Moscouia*: you may lykewyse in the *Mediterranean* sea fetch *Constantinople*, and the mouth of *Tanaïs*: yet is there no passage by sea through *Mosconia*, into *Pont Euxine*, now called *Mare Maggiore*. Agayne, in the aforesayde *Mediterranean* sea, we sayle to *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, the *Barbares* hyng theyr pearle and spices from the *Moluccaes* by the read sea and *Arabian* goulph to *Sues*, scarcely three dayes iourney from the aforesayde haueu: yet haue we no way by sea, from *Alexandria* to the *Moluccaes*, for that *Isthmos* or litle streicte of lande betwixt the two seas. In lyke maner, althoughe the northerne passage bee free at 61. degrees latitude, and the *West Ocean* beyonde *America*, vsually called *Mar del Zur*, knowen to be open at 40. degrees eleuation, for the *Ilande Giapan*, yea, 300. leagues northerly aboute *Giapan*: yet may there bee lande to hynder the throughe passage that way by sea, as in the examples aforesayde it falleth out, *Asia* and *America* there beyng ioyned together in one continent. We can this opinion seeme altogether frivolous vnto any one that diligently peruseth our *Cosmographers* doynges. *Iosephus Moletius* is of that mynde, not onely in his playne hemispheres of the worlde, but also in his sea carde. The French *Geographers* in lyke maner, bee of the same opinion, as by their *Happe* cut out in forme of a harte you may perceyue: as though the *West Indyes* were parte of *Asie*. Whiche sentence well agreeth with that olde conclusion in the scholes. *Quidquid præter Africam et Europam est, Asia est.* Whatsoever land doeth neyther appertayne vnto *Afrike* nor to *Europe*, is parte of *Asie*.

Further.

5. Ob.

Furthermore it were to small purpose to make so long, so paynesfull, so doubtfull a voyage by such a new founde way, if in *Cathayo* you should neyther be suffered to lande for silkes and siluer, nor able to fetch the *Molucca* spices and pearle for piracye in those seas. Of a lawe denying all Aliens to enter into *China*, and forbidding all the inhabitants vnder a great penaltie to let in any stranger into that countreys, shall you reade in the report of *Galeotto Perera* there imprisoned with other *Portugall*es: as also in the *Siapony*the letters, howe for that cause the woorthie trauepler *Xauierus* bargayned with a Barbarian Marchaunt for a great sum of *Pepper* to be brought into *Cantan*, a porte in *Cathayo*. The great and daingerous piracie vsed in that seas, no man can be ignorant of, that listeth to reade the *Siapony*the and *East Indian* historie.

Ob. 6.

Finally, all this great labour would bee lost, all these charges spent in vayne, if in the ende our traueplers myght not be able to returne agayne, and bying safely home into theyr owne natyue countrey, that wealth and ryches, they in forreyne regions with aduenture of goodes, and daunger of theyr lyues, haue sought for. By the *Northeast* there is no way, the *Southeast* passage the *Portugall*es doe hold, as *Lordes* of that seas. At the *Southwest* *Magellanus* experience hath partly taught vs, and partly we are perswaded by reason, howe the *Easterne* currant stryketh so furiously on that streight, and falleth with such force into that narrow goulphe, that hardely any shyppe can returne that way, into our *West Ocean*, out of *Mar del Zur*. The which, if it be true, as truly it is, than may we say, that the aforesayde *Easterne* currant or leuant course of waters continually folowynge after the heauenly motions, looseth not altogether his force, but is doubled rather by an other currant from out the *Northeast*, in the passage betwixt *America* and the *North* lande, whyther it is of necessitie carryed: hauyng none other way to maintaine it selfe in circular motion, and consequently the force and fury thereof to be no lesse in the streight of *Anian*, where it striketh South into *Mar del Zur*, beyond *America* (if any such streight of sea there be) than in *Magellane* frete both streictes beyng of lyke breadth: as in *Belog-nine Zalterius* table of new *France*, and in *Don Diego Hermano di Toledo* his carde for nauigation in that region we doe synde precisely

cisely set downe.

Neuerthelesse to approue that there lyeth a way to Cathayo at the Northwest, from out of Europe, we haue experyence, namely of three brethren that went that iourney, as *Gemma Frisius* recoyrdeth, and left a name vnto that streicte, whereby nowe it is called *Fretum trium Fratrum*. We do reade againe of a Portugal that passed this streicte, of whom *M. Furbisher* speaketh, that was imprisoned therefore many yeeres in *Lesbona*, to verifie the olde Spanyshe prouerbe, I suffer for doing wel. Likewise *An. Vrdaneta* a siper of Mexico came out of *Mar del Zur* this way into Germanie: his Carde, for he was a great discoverer, made by his owne experyence and trauayle in that boyage, hath been seene by gentlemen of good credite.

Now yt the obseruation and remembrance of thyngs breedeth experyence, and of experyence proceedeth art, and the certeine knowledge we haue in al faculties, as y best Philosophers that euer were do affyrme: truly the boyage of these aforesayd trauailers that haue gone out of Europe into *Mar del Zur*, and returned thence at the Northwest, doo mosse evidently conclude that way to be nauigable, and that passage free. So much the more we are so to thynke, for that the fyrste principle and chiefe grounde in all Geographie, as great *Ptolome* sayth, is the historie of trauel, that is, reportes made by trauaylers skilfull in Geometrie & Astronomie, of al suche thinges in their iourney as to Geographie do belong. It only then remaineth, that we now answer to those argumentes that seemed to make against this former conclusion.

The fyrste obiection is of no force, that generall table of the worlde set forth by *Ortelius* or *Mercator*, for it greatly skilleth not, being vnskilfully drawen for that poynt: as manifestly it may appeare vnto any one that conferreth the same with *Gemma Frisius* vniuersal mappe, with his round quartered carde, with his globe, with *Sobastian Cabota* his table, and *Ortelius* generall Mappe alone, worthily preferred in this case before all *Mercator* and *Ortelius* other doinges: for that *Cabota* was not only a skilfull sea man, but a long trauailer, & such a one as entred personally that streicte, sent by king Henry the seuench to make this aforesayd discovery, as in his owne discourse of navigation

*Cic. i. de orat.*

*Arist. pri.*

*Metaph.*

*Lib. i. Geog.*

*Cap. 2.*

*Sol. i.*



you may reade in his carde drawen with his owne hande, the mouth of the northwestern streit lieth neare the. 318. Meridian, betwixt .61. and .64. degrees in eleuation, continuing the same breadth about. 10 degrees west, where it openeth southerly more and more, vntill it come vnder the tropike of Cancer, and so runneth into *Mar del Zur*, at the least .18. degrees more in breadth there, then it was where it fyrst began : otherwys I coulde as well imagine this passage to be more vnlykely then the voyage to *Mosconia*, and more impossible then it for the farre situation and continuance thereof in y<sup>e</sup> frosty climate: as nowe I can asseure it to be very possible and most lykely in comparison thereof, for that it nether coasteth so farre north as the *Mosconian* passage doth, nether is this streite so long as that, before it bowe betwene southerly towards the Sonne agayne.

Sol. 2.

The seconde argument concludeth nothing. *Tolome* knewe not what was aboue .16. degrees south beyonde the equinoctiall lyne, he was ignorant of all passages northwarde from the eleuation of .63. he knewe no Ocean lea beyonde *Asia*, yet haue the *Portugales* trended y<sup>e</sup> Cape of good hope at the south poynte of *Afrike*, and traauyled to *Giapan* an Ilande in the east Ocean, betwixt *Asia* & *America*: our marchants in y<sup>e</sup> time of king Edward the fyrst discovered the *Mosconian* passage farther north then *Tibule*, and shewed *Groenlande* not to be continent with *Lapponlande*, and *Norway*: the lyke our northwestern traauylers haue done, declaring, by theyr nauigation that way, the ignorance of all Cosmographers that ether do ioyne *Groenlande* with *America*, or continue the west Indies with that frosty region vnder the north pole. As for *Virgil* he sauge accordingly to y<sup>e</sup> knowledge of men in his time, as an other Poete dyd of the hotte Zone.

Oued. 1. Meta.

*Quarum quæ media est, non est habitabilis æstu.* Imaginypng, as most men then dyd, *Zonam torridam*, the hot Zone, to be altogether dishabited for heat, though presently we knowe many famous and worthy kingdomes and ciities in that part of the earth, and the Iland of saint Thomas neare *Aethiopia*, and the welthy Ilands for the which chiefly al these voyages are taken in hande, to be inhabited euen vnder the equinoctial lyne.

Sol. 3.

To answer the thirde objection, besides *Cabota* & al other traauylers nauigations, y<sup>e</sup> only credit of *M. Furbisher* may suffice, who lately

lately through all these Islands of Ise, and mountaine of snowe, passed that way, euen beyond the gulphe that tumbleth downe from the North, and in some places though he drew one ynche thick Ise, as he returning in August dyd, came home safelye agayne.

The fourth argument is altogether frivolous & vayne, for Sol. 4. neyther is there any isthmus or streict of land betwixt America and Asia, ne can these two landes ioyntly be one continent. The first part of my answer is manifestly allowed of by Homer, Lib. Geog. whom that excellent Geographer Strabo foloweth, yeldyng hym in this facultie the praise. The authour of that booke ykewyse περικοσμου to Alexander, attributed vnto Aristotle, is of y same opinion, that Homer and Strabo be of, in two or thre places. Dionysius in οικυμένων περιήγησι hath this verse. ὥτως ὠκεανὸς περιέλειπον καὶ ἅπαντα. So dooth the Ocean sea runne rounde about the worlde: speakyng only of Europe, Africke, and Asie, as then Asie was trauayled & knowen. With these Doctoures may you ioyne Pomponius Mela, Cap. 2. lib. 1. Plinius lib. 2. Cap. 67, and Pius. 2. Cap. 2. in his description of Asie. All the whiche wyters do no lesse confirme the whole Easterne side of Asie to be compassed about with sea, then Plato doth affirme in Timæo, vnder the name Atlantide, the West Indies to be an Islande, as in a speciall discourse thereof. R. Eden writeth, agreable vnto the sentence of Proclus, Marsilius Ficinus, and others. Out of Plato it is gathered that America is an Islande. Homer, Strabo, Aristotle, Dionysius, Mela, Plinie, Pius 2. affirme the continent of Asie, Afrike, and Europe, to be enuironned with the Ocean. I may therefore boldly say, though later intelligences therof had we none at all, that Asie and the West Indies, be not tied together by any isthmus or streict of land, contrary to the opinion of some new Cosinographers, by whom doubtfully this matter hath been brought in controuerfie. And thus muche for the first part of my answer vnto the fourth obiection.

The second part, namely that America & Asie cannot be one Lib. 2. continent, may thus be proued, κατα τηρ της γης κοιλότητα Meteor. ῥέει καὶ τῶν ποταμῶν το πλῆθος. The most riuers take downe Cap. 1. that way their course, where the earth is most holowe & deepe, Ph. ii. wyrteth

wyseth Aristotle: and the sea, sayth he in the same place, as it goeth farther, so is it founde deeper. Into what goulphe do the Scythian ryuers *Onega, Duina, Oby,* and *Rha*, powre out their streames? Northwarde out of *Moscouia* into the sea. Whiche way dooth that sea stryke? The South is mayne lande, the Easterne coast waxeth more and more shalowe: from the North, ether naturally, because that part of the earth is higher *Aristot. 2. met. c. 1.* of necessitie, for that the forcible influence of some Northerne Starres causeth the earth there to shake of the sea, as some Philosophers do thynke: or finally for the great stoze of waters engendred in that frostie and cold clyme, that the bankes are not able to holde them. *Alber. in 2. Meteo. Cap. 6.* From the North I say, continually falleth downe great abundance of water. So that this Northeasterne currant must at the length abruptly bowe toward vs South on the West syde of *Fynmarke* and *Norwaye*: or els stryke downe Southwest about *Groneland*, or betwixt *Groneland* and *Iseland*, into the Northwest streict we speake of, as of congruence it doth, yf you marke the situation of that region, and by the report of *M. Furbisher*, experience teacheth vs. And *M. Furbisher* the further he traauailed in the former passage, as he tolde me, the deeper alwayes he founde sea. Lay you now the sum hereof togeather. The riuers runne where the Channels are most hollow, the sea in taking his course waxeth deeper, the sea waters fall continuallye from the North Southward, the Northeasterne currant striketh downe into the streict we speake of, & is there augmented with whole mountains of ice & snow, falling downe furiously out from y<sup>e</sup> land vnder y<sup>e</sup> North Pole. Where stoze of water is, there is it a thing impossible to want sea, where sea not only doth not want, but waxeth deeper, ther can be discovered no land. Finally, whence I pray you came the contrary tyde, that *M. Furbisher* met withal after that he had sayled no small way in that passage, if there be any isthmus or streict of land betwixt the aforesaid Northwest-sterne gulfe and *Mar del Zur*, to ioyne *Asia* and *America* togeather? That conclusion frequented in scholes *Quidquid preter &c.* was ment of the partes of the worlde then knowen, and so is it of ryght to be vnderstoode.

The fiftie obiection requireth for answer, wysdome, and pollicie,

*Plin. lib. 2.  
Cap. 67.*

*Sol. 5.*

licie, in the trauailer, to wyn the Barbares fauour by some good meanes: and so to arme & strengthen him selfe, that when he shal haue the repulse in one coast, he may safely trauaile to an other, commodiously taking his conuenient times, & discretely making choyse of them with whom he wyl thoroughly deale. To force a violent entrie, would for vs Englishe men be very hard, considering the strength and valeour of so great a nation, farre distant from vs, and the attempt thereof myght bee most perilous vnto the doers, vnlesse theyr part were verie good. Touchyng theyr lawes agaynst strangers, you shall reade neuertheless in the same relations of *Galeotto Perera*, that the *Cathayan* kyng is woont to graunt free accesse vnto all foireiners that trade into his countrey for marchandysse, and a place of libertie for them to remaine in: as the *Portes* had, vntyll such time as they had brought the *Loutea* or Lieutenannt of that coaste to be a circumcised *Saracene*: wherefore some of them were put to the sword, the rest were scattred abrode: at *Fuquien*, a great citie in *China*, certayne of them are yet this day to be seen. As for the *Giapans*, they be most desirous to be acquaynted with strangers. The *Portugals* though they were straightly handled there at the fyrst, yet in the ende they founde great fauoure at the prince his hands, insomuch that the *Loutea* or president that misused them, was therefore put to death. The rude *Indish Canoa* halleth that seas, the *Portugalles*, the *Saracenes*, & *Portes* traueil continually by & downe that reache from *Giapan* to *China*, from *China* to *Malacca*, from *Malacca* to the *Moluccaes*: and shal an *Englishmā*, better appointed then any of them al (that I say no more of our naute) feare to saile in that Ocean? What seas at al doo want piracie? what nauigation is there boyde of perill? To the last argument. Our traueylers neede not to seeke their returne by the northeast, ne shall they be constraind, except

Sol. 6.

they lyst, ether to attempte *Magellane* streite at the South-west, or to be in daunger of the *Portugalles* for the Southeast: they may returne by the north-west, that same way they do go forth, as experience hath shewed. The reason alleaged for prooffe of the contrary, may be disproued after this maner. And fyrst, it may be called in controuersie, whether any currant continually be forced by the motion of *Primum mobile*, rounde about

Whither

the



the worlde, or no: for learned men do diuersely handle that question. The naturall course of all waters is downewarde, wherefore of congruence they fall that way where they fynde the earth most lowe and deepe: in respecte whereof, it was erst sayde, the seas to strike from the Northren landes Southerly. Violently the seas are tossed and troubled diuerse wayes with the wyndes, encreased and diminished by the course of the Moone, hoysed up and downe through the sundry operations of the Sonne and the Starres: finally some be of opinion, that the seas be carried in part violently about y<sup>e</sup> world after the daily motion of the highest mouable heauen, in lyke maner as y<sup>e</sup> elementes of ayre and fyre, with the rest of the heauenly spheres are, from the east vnto the west. And this they do call they<sup>r</sup> easterne currant, or leuant streame. Some suche currant may not be denied to be of great force in the hote Zone, for the nearenes thereof vnto the centre of the Sonne and blastyng easterne wyndes violently dryuing the seas westwarde: howbeit in the temperate climes, the Sonne beyng farther off, and the wyndes more diuerse, blowyng as muche from the north, the west, and south, as from the east, this rule doth not effectually withholde vs from traueyllyng eastwarde, ne be we kepte euer backe by the aforesayde Leuante wyndes and streame. But in *Magellane* streict we are violently driuen backe westwarde: Ergo through the North-westerne streiete or *Anian* fret shall we not be able to returne eastwarde: it foloweth not. The first, for that the northwestern streict hath more sea romie at the least by one hundred Englyshe myles, then *Magellane* fret hath, the onely want whereof causeth all narrowe passages generally to be most violent. So woulde I say in *Anian* gulfe, if it were so narrowe as *Don Diego* and *Zalterius* haue paynted it out, any returne that way to be full of difficulties, in respect of such streictnes therof, not for the nearenes of the Sonne, or easterne wyndes, violently forcing that way any leuant streame. But in that place there is more sea romie by many degrees, if the cardes of *Cabota*, and *Gemma Frisius*, and that whiche *Tramezine* imprinted, be true.

And hitherto reason see I none at all, but that I may as well geue credyt vnto they<sup>r</sup> doynge, as to any of the rest. It must be *Peregrinationis historia*, that is, true reportes of skilful trauailers,

*Luc. lib. 1.*

*Phar. sal.*

*What the  
easterne cur-  
rant is.*

as *Prothome* writeth, that in suche controuersies of Geographie must put vs out of doubte. *Ortelius* in his vniuersall tables, in his particuler Mappes of the west Indies, of all *Asia*, of the northren kyngdomes, of the easte Indies, *Mercator* in some of his globes, and generall mappes of the worlde, *Moletius* in his vniuersall table of the Globe diuided, in his sea carde, and particuler tables of the East Indies, *Zalterius*, and *Don Diego*, with *Fernando Bertely*, and others, do so much dyffer both from *Gemma Frisus* and *Cabota*, among them selues, & in diuers places from them selues, concerning the diuers situation and sundrye limites of *America*, that one may not so rashly, as truelye surmise, these men either to be ignorant in those pointes touching the aforesayd region, or that the mappes they haue geuen out vnto the worlde, were collected only by them, & neuer of their owne drawyng. M. Furbishers prosperous voyage, and happye returne, wyl absolutely decide these controuersies, and certaynely determine where the whole passage lieth, how long it is, what breadth it carieth, how perilous, how prosperous the forney is, and what commodities the paynfull trauayler can reape therby, what gaine the venterous marchant may looke for, what wealth, what honour, what fame wyl to our Englyshe nation thereof ensue.

Thus muche, right honorable, my verye good Lady, of your question concernyng your seruantes voyage. If not so skylfully as I would, and was desirous fully to do, at the least as I could, & leasure suffered me, for the litle knowledge God hath lent me, yf it be any at all, in Cosinographie and Philosophie, and the small experience I haue in trauaile. Chosing rather in the cleare iudgement of your Ho. mynde to appeare rude and ignorant, and so to be scene vnto the multitude, then to be sounde vnthankfull and carelesse in any thing your Ho. shoulde commaunde me. God preferue your Honour. At the Court the .xx. of Marche.

Your Ho. most humbly at  
commaundement.

*Richard Willes.*

(.)

Wh. iiii.

To the

Lib. 1. Geog.  
Cap. 2.

# To the right wor- shipfull, my singuler good

Mystres, M. Elizabeth  
Morisyn.



*O*ur Indian readings, our Asian lectures, our Geographical description of the whole world, wyll I end with certayne reportes of the province China in Cathayo, and some intelligences of the worthy Islands lying therby in the East Ocean. The relation whereof, though at the first myght seeme briefly to be passed ouer, and in a fewe substantiall poyntes only to be touched, as in the rest of our discourses concerning this facultie we haue done: Yet the worthynesse of matter herein conteyned, the order of ciuile gouernment, the maners & fashions of the inhabitants, the description of that countrey, so wel gathered the noueltie thereof in our language, haue effectually moued me to doo the whole discourse into Englysh. Needlesse I graunt the labour is for you, that perfectly in so fewe Monethes, so fewe weekes, so fewe dayes, learned the Italian tongue, out of the whiche language this translation is made. The singular care you euer haue had of my well dooing, and the speciall fauour I haue founde among your Honorable friends for your sake, wvould not only not let me to play the negligent Poete in the fift Act, but compelled me to handle euen the last Scene more abundantly: as wel to acknowledge your good skill both in Cosmographie and in forreine languages, as also to testifie vnto the world, the great benefites the which I haue receyued for vschering, as it were herein, so good, so wyse, so vertuous, so worshipfull a mystres. Nowe after all these learned exercises of your younger yeeres, God

Almyghtie send you great good succeffe in your present affaires.

With encrease of prosperitie and muche honour,

as you dayly shall grow elder.

At London the 21. of Feburary. 1576.

Your seruauent euer.

R. Willes.

Certayne reportes of the prouince *China*, learned through the Portugalles there imprisoned, and chiefly by the relation of *Galeotto Perera*, a gentleman of good credit, that lay prisoner in that countrey many yeeres. Done out of Italian into Englyshe, by

R. W.



This land of *China* is parted into. 13. shyes, the which sometymes were eche one a kyngdome by it selfe, but these many yeeres they haue been all subiect vnto one Kyng. *Fuquien* *Fuquien.* is made by the Portugalles the first shyre, bycause there their troubles began, and had occasion thereby to know the rest. In this shyre be viii.

cities, but one principally moze famous than others, called *Fuquieo*, the other seuen are reasonably great, the best knowen wher- of vnto the Portugalles is *Cinceo*, in respect of a certayne haueu *Cinceo.* ioyning ther vnto, whyther in tyme past they were wont for merchandise to resorte.

*Cantan* is the second shyre, not so great in quantitie, as well *Cantan.* accounted of, both by the Kyng thereof, and also by the Portugalles, for that it lyeth nearer vnto *Malacca* than any other part of *China*, and was fyrst discryed by the Portugalles before any other shyre in that prouince: this shyre hath in it seuen cities.

*Chequeam* is the third shyre, the chiefest citie therein is *Don-* *Chequeam.* *chion*, therein also standeth *Liampo*, with other thirtiene or fouertiene Borroughes: countrey townes therein to to many to be spoken of.

The fourth shyre is called *Xutiamfu*, the principall citie ther- *Xutiamfu.* of is great *Pachin*, where the Kyng is alwayes resident. In it are fyftiene other very great cities: of other townes therein, and Borroughes well walled and trenched about, I will say nothing.

The fyft shyre hath name *Chelim*: the great citie *Nanguin*, *Chelim.* chiefe of other fyftiene cities was herein of auncient tyme, the  
roya'l



royall seate of the *Chinisch* kynges . From this shyre, and from that aforesayde *Chequeam* forwarde, bare rule the other kynges, vntyll the whole region became one kyngdome.

*Quianci.*

rather *Quinzi*

The sixt shyre beareth name *Quianci*, as also the principall citie thereof, wherein the fine claye to make vesselles is wrought. The *Portugalles* beyng ignorant of this countrey, and fyndyng great aboundaunce of that fine claye to be solde at *Liampo*, and that very good cheape, thought at the first that it had been made there, howbeit in fine, they perceiued that the standing of *Quinzi* moze neare vnto *Liampo* than to *Cinceo* or *Cantan*, was the cause of so muche fine claye at *Liampo*: within the compasse of *Quinci* shyre be other . 12. cities.

The seuench shyre is *Quicin*, the eight *Quansi*, the niench *Confu*, the tenth *Vrnan*, the eleuenth *Sichina*. In the first hereof there be . 16. cities, in the next fyftiene: howe many townes the other thre haue, we are ignorant as yet, as also of the proper names of the . 12. and . 13. shyres, and the townes therein.

This finally may be generally sayde heereof, that the greater shyres in *China* prouince, may be compared with mightie kyngdomes.

In eche one of these shyres be set *Ponchiassini* and *Anchiasini*, before whom are handled the matters of other cities. There is also placed in eche one a *Tutan*, as you would say a gouernor, and a *Chian*, that is a visiter, as it were: whose office is to goe in circuit, and to see iustice exactly done . By these meanes so vpryghtly thinges are ordered there, that it may bee worthely accounted one of the best gouerned prouinces in all the world.

*Pachin.al.*

*Pochang.*

The Kyng maketh alwayes his abode in the great citie *Pachin*, as muche to say in our language as by the name thereof I am aduertised, the towne of the kyngdome . This kyngdome is so large, that vnder fyue monethes you are not able to traueyle from the townes by the sea syde to the Court and backe agayne, no not vnder thre monethes in poste at your vrgent businesse . The *Posthorses* in this countrey are litle of bodie, but swifte of foote . Many doe traueyle the greater parte of this iourney by water in certayne lyght barkes, for the multitude of ryuers commodious for passage from one citie to an other.

The

The kyng, notwithstanding the hugeness of his kyngdome, hath such a care thereof, that euery Boone (by the Boones they reckon their monethes) he is aduertised fully of whatsoeuer thing happeneth therein, by these meanes folowynge.

The whole prouince beyng diuided into shyes, and eche shyre haupng in it one chiefe and principall citie, whereunto the matters of all the oher cities, townes, and Boroughes, are brought : there are drawen, in euery chiefe citie aforesayde, intelligences of suche thinges as doe monethly fall out, and be sent in writing to the Court . If happely in one moneth euery post is not able to goe so long a way, yet doeth there notwithstanding once euery moneth arryue one poste out of the shyre . Who so commeth before the newe Boone, stayeth for the deliuey of his letters vntyll the Boone be chaunged . Then lykewyse are dispatched other postes, backe into all the . 13 . shyres agayne.

Before that we doe come to Cinceo we haue to passe through many places, and some of great importance. For this countrey is so well inhabited neare the sea syde, that you can not go one myle but you shall see some towne, Borough, or Hasty, the which are so abundantly prouided of all thinges, that in the cities & townes they liue ciuilly. Neuertheles such as dwel abrode are very pooer, for the multitude of them euery where so great, that out of a tree you shal see many tymes swarme a number of chidren, where a man would not haue thought to haue founde any one at all.

From these places in number infinite, you shall come vnto two cities very populose, and beyng compared with Cinceo, not possibly to be discerned which is the greater of them . These cities are as well walled as any cities in all the worlde . As you come in to eyther of them, standeth so great and mightie a bydge, that the lyke thereof I haue neuer scene in Portugall nor els where. I heard one of my felowes say, that he told in one bydge. 40. arches. The occasion wherfore these bydges are made so great, is for that the countrey is toward the sea very plaine and low, & ouerwhelmed euer as y sea water encrease. The breadth of the bydges, although it bee well proportioned vnto the length thereof, yet are they equally buylt, no higher in the middle than at eyther end, in such wyse that you may directly see from y one end to the other, the sydes are wonderfully well engraued after the

maner

maner of Rome workes. But that wee did most marueyle at, was therewithall the hugeness of y<sup>e</sup> stones, the lyke wherof as we came in to the citie, we dyd see many set vp in places dishabited by the way, to no small charges of theyrs, howbeit to litle purpose, whereas no body seeth them but such as doe come bye. The arches are not made after our fashon, bauted with sundry stones set togeather: but paued, as it were, whole stones reaching from one pillar to an other, in suche wyse that they lye both for the arches heades, and galantly serue also for the hygh waye. I haue been astunned to beholde the hugeness of these aforesayde stones, some of them are .xii. pases long and vpwarde, the least a .xi. good pases long, and an halfe.

The wayes echewhere are galantly paued with fouresquare stone, except it be where for want of stone they vse to laye brycke: in this voyage wee traueyled ouer certayne hilles, where the wayes were pitched, and in many places no worse paued than in the playne grounde. This causeth vs to thinke, that in all the worlde there be no better workemen for buildinges, than the inhabitantes of *China*.

The countrey is so well inhabited, that no one foote of ground is left vntilled: small store of cattell haue we seene this way, we sawe onely certayne Oxen wherewithall the countrymen doe plough theyr grounde. One Ox draweth the plough alone, not onely in this shyre, but in other places also, wherein is greater store of cattell. These countrymen by arte doe that in tyllage, which we are constrainned to doe by force. Here be solde the voydinges of close stooles, although there wanteth not the dunge of beastes: & the excrements of man are good marchandise throught out all *China*. The dungfermers seeke in euery streete by exchange to buye this durty ware for hearbes and wood. The custome is very good for keepyng the citie cleane. There is great aboundance of Hennes, Geese, Duckes, Swyne, and Goates, Wethers haue they none: the Hennes are solde by weight, and so are all other thinges. Two pounce of Hennes fleshe, Goose, or Ducke, is woorth two For of their money, that is, d. ob. sterling. Swines fleshe is solde at a peny the pounce. Beefe beareth the same pryce, for the scarcitie thereof, howbeit Northwarde from *Fuquieo*, & farther of from the sea coast, there is Beefe more plenty,

tie and solde better cheape, Beefe onely excepted, great abundance of all these viandes we haue had in all the cities we passed through. And if this countrey were lyke vnto India, the inhabitants whereof eate neyther Henne, beefe, nor porke, but keepe that onely for the Portugalles and Moores, they would be solde here for nothyng. But it so fallynge out, that the *Chineans* are the greatest eaters in all the world, they doe feede vppon all thinges, specially on porke, the fatter that is, vnto them the lesse lothsome. The highest price of these thinges aforesayde, I haue set downe, better cheape shall you sometymes buye them for the great plenty thereof in this countrey. Frogges are solde at the same price that is made of Hennes, and are good meate amongst them, as also Dogges, Cattes, Rattes, Snakes, and all other vncleane meates.

The cities be very gallant, specially neare vnto the gates, the which are marueylously great, & couered with Iron. The gate-houses buylt on hygh with Towers, the lower parte thereof, is made of bricke and stone, proportionally with the walles, from the walles vppward, the buyldynge is of tymber, and many stories in it one aboue the other. The strength of theyr towne is in the mightie walles and ditches, artillerie haue they none.

The streetes in *Cinco*, and in all the rest of the cities we haue seene are very sayre, so large and so streight, that it is wonderfull to beholde. Theyr houses are buylte with tymber, the foundations onely excepted, the which are layde with stone, in eche syde of the streetes are paynteses or continuall porches for the marchantes to walke vnder: the breadyth of the streete is neuertheless suche, that in them, xv. men may ryde commodiously syde by side. As they ryde they must needes passe vnder many hygh arches of triumph that crosse ouer the streetes made of tymber, and carued diuersely, couered with tyle of fine claye: vnder these arches the Mercers doe vtter theyr smaller wares, and such as lyst to stande there, are defended from rayne and the heate of the Sunne. The greater gentlemen haue these arches at their doores: although some of them be not so myghtyly buylt as the rest.

I shall haue occasion to speake of a certayne order of gentlemen that are called *Loutea*, I will first therefore expounde what this worde signifieth. *Loutea* is as muche to say in our language as

*Loutea.*



## Reportes of

as *Syz*, and whan any of them calleth his name, he answereth *Syz*: and as we doe say, that the kyng hath made some gentleman, so say they, that there is made a *Loutea*. And for that amongest them the degrees are diuers both in name and office, I will tell you onely of some principalles, beyng not able to aduertise you of all.

The maner howe gentlemen are created *Louteas*, and doe come to that honour and title, is by the gpyng of a broad gyrdle not like to the rest, & a cap, at the commaundement of the kyng. The name *Loutea* is more generall and common vnto moe, than equalitie of honour therby signified, agreeth withall. Such *Louteas* that doe serue their prince in weightie matters for iustice, are created after triall made of their learning: but the oither whiche serue in smaller affayres, as Capitaynes, Constables, Sergeantes by lande and sea, Recepuers, and such lyke, wherof there be in eucry citie, as also in this, very many, are made for fauour: the chiefe *Louteas* are serued kneeling.

The whole prouince *China* is diuided, as I haue sayde, into thirtiene *Syys*, in eucry *Syys* at the least is one gouernour called there *Tutan*, in some *Syys* there be two.

Chiefe in office nexte vnto them be certayne other named *Chians*, that is, hygh Commissioners as you would say, or visitors, with full aucthoritie in suche wyse, that they doe call vnto an accompt the *Tutanes* them selues, but their aucthoritie lasteth not in any *Syys* longer than one yeere. Neuerthelesse in eucry *Syys* beyng at the least seuen cities, yea, in some of them fyftiene or sixtiene, beside other Bozoughes & townes not well to be numbred, these visitors, where they come, are so honoured and feared, as though they were some great princes. At the peeres ende their circuit done, they come vnto that citie which is chiefe of others in the *Syys*, to doe iustice there: finally busying them selues in the searching out of such as are to receyue the order of *Louteas*, wherof more shall be sayde in an other place.

Ouer and besydes these officers, in the chiefe citie of eche one of these aforesayde thirtiene prouinces, is resident one *Ponchiaffi*, Capitayne thereof, and Treasurer of all the kynges reuenues. This Magistrate maketh his abode in one of the foure greatest

*Chian, al.*  
*Chaen.*

*Ponchiaffi.*

test houses that be in all these head cities. And although the principall parte of his function be, to be Capitayne, to be Treasurer of the reuenues in that prouince, to sende these reuenues at appoynted tymes to the Court: yet hath he notwithstanding by his office also to meddle with matters apperteynyng vnto iustyce.

In the seconde great house dwelleth an other Magistrate called *Anchiafsi*, a great offycer also, for he hath dealynges in all matters of iustice. Who although hee bee somewhat inferior in dignitie vnto the *Ponchiafsi*, yet for his great dealynges and generall charge of iustice, whosoever seeth the assayes of the one house and the other, myght iudge this *Anchiafsi* to be the greater. *Anchiafsi.*  
*al.Hexafi.*

*Tuzi*, an other officer so called, lyeth in the thyrde house, a magistrate of importance, specially in thinges belongyng vnto warfare, for thereof hath he charge. *Tuzi.*

There is resident in the fourth house a fourth officer, bearyng name *Taiffu*. In this house is the principall pryson of all the citie. Eche one of these Magistrates aforesayde may both laye euyll doers in pryson, and deliuer them out agayne, except the facte be heynous and of importance: in suche a case they can doe nothing, except they doe meete altogether. And if the deede deserue death, all they togeather can not determine thereof, without recourse made vnto the *Chian* wheresoever he bee, or to the *Tutan*: and estones it falleth out, that the case be referred vnto hygher power. In all cities, not onely chiefe in eche thyr, but in the rest also, are meanes founde to make *Louteas*. Many of them doe studie at the prince his charges, wherfore at the peeres ende they resort vnto the head cities, whyther the *Chians* doe come, as it hath been earst sayde, as well to gyue these degrees, as to sit in iudgement ouer the prysoners. *Taiffu.*

The *Chians* goe in circuit euery peere, but suche as are to be chosen to the greatest offices, meete not but from thre peeres to thre peeres, and that in certayne large halles appoynted for them to be examined in. Many thynges are asked them, wherunto if they doe aunswere accordingly, and be found sufficient to take their degree, the *Chian* by and by graunteth it them: but the Cappe & gyrdle wherby they are knowen to be *Louteas*, they weare *Licentiates.*

## Reportes of

Doctors.

Dutch Ipke.

weare not before that they be confirmed by the kyng. They examina-  
tion done, and tryall made of them, such as haue taken their  
degree wont to be giuen them with all cerimonies, vse to banket  
and feast many dayes together (as the *Chineans* fashon is to end  
all their pleasures with eatyng and drynkyng) and so remayne  
chosen to doe the kyng seruice in matters of learnyng. The o-  
ther examinares founde insufficient to procede, are sent backe to  
their studie againe. Whose ignorance is perceiued to come of  
negligence & default, such a one is whipped, and sometymes sent  
to prysen, where wee lying that peere whan this kynde of acte  
was, we found many thus punished, and demaundynge the cause  
therof, they sayde it was for that they knew not howe to answere  
vnto certayne thinges asked them. It is a woorde to see howe  
these *Louteas* are serued and feared, in suche wise, that in publyke  
assemblies at one shyfte they gyue, all the seruitors belongyng  
vnto iustice, tremble thereat. At their being in these places, whan  
they lyst to moue, be it but euen to the gate, these seruitors do take  
them vp, and carry them in seates of beaten golde. After this sort  
are they bozne whan they goe in the citie, eyther for their owne  
busynesse abrode, or to see eche other at home. For the dignitie  
they haue, and office they doe beare, they be al accompanied: the  
very meanest of them all that goeth in these seates is vshered by  
two men at the least, that cry vnto the people to gyue place, how-  
beit, they neede it not, for that reuerence the common people hath  
vnto them. They haue also in theyr company certayne Serge-  
antes, with their *Daces* eyther siluered, or altogether siluer,  
some two, some foure, other six, other eight, conueniently for eche  
one his degree. The more principall and chiefe *Louteas* haue go-  
ing orderly before these Sergeantes, many other with staues,  
and a great many catchpoules with roddees of Indische canes,  
dragged on the grounde, so that the streetes beyng paued, you  
may heare a farre of as well the noyse of the roddees, as the voyce  
of the cryers. These felowes serue also to apprehende others, and  
the better to be knowen they weare liuery redde girdles, and in  
their cappes *Pecoakes* feathers. Behynde these *Louteas* come  
such as doe beare certayne tables hanged at staues endes, where-  
in is wrytten in siluer letters the name, degree, and office of that  
*Loutea*, whom they folowe. In lyke maner they haue bozne after  
them

them hattes agreeable vnto theyr tytles: if the *Loutea* be meane, then hath he brought after hym but one hatte, and that may not be yealow: but if he be of the better sorte, then may he haue two, three, or foure: the principall and chiefe *Louteas*, may haue all theyr hattes yealow, the which among them is accounted great honour. The *Loutea* for warres, although he be but meane, may notwithstanding haue yealow hattes. The *Tutanes* and *Chians*, when they goe abrode, haue besydes all this before them ledde .3. or .4. horses with theyr garde in armor. Further more the *Louteas*, yea and all the people of *China*, are woonte to eate theyr meat syttyng on stooles at hygh tables as we do, and that very cleanly, although they vse nether table clothes nor napkins. Whatsoeuer is set downe vpon the boorde, is first carued, before that it be brought in: they feede with two styckes, refraynyng from touchyng theyr meate with theyr handes, euen as we do with forkes, for y<sup>e</sup> which respect, they lesse do neede any table clothes. He is the nation onely ciuil at meate, but also in conuersation, and in courtesie they seeme to exceede all other. Likewise in theyr dealynges, after their maner, they are so ready, that they farre passe all other Gentyles and Moones: the greater states are so bayne, that they lyne theyr clothes with the best sylke that may be founde. The *Louteas*, are an idle generation, without all maner of exercises and pastymes, excepte it be eatyng and drynkyng. Somtymes they walke abrode in the fieldes, to make the souldyars shoot at pyckes with theyr bowes, but theyr eatyng passeth: they wyl stande eatyng euen when the other do drawe to shoote. The pycke is a great blanke spread on certayne long poles, he that stryketh it, hath of the best man there standyng a peece of crymson taffata, the whiche is knyt about his head: in this sorte the wyntners honoured, and the *Louteas* with theyr bellies full, retorne home agayne. The inhabitantes of *China*, be very great Idolaters, all generally do worshyppe the heauens: and as we are woont to saye, God knoweth it: so saye they at euery worde, *Tien Tantee*, that is to saye, The heauens do knowe it. Some do worshyp the Sonne, and some the Moone, as they thynke good, for none are bounde more to one then to an other. In their temples, the which they do cal *Meani*, they haue a great altar in y<sup>e</sup> same place

We, that is  
the Italians  
and Spaniards.



After the  
Dutch nation.

Pithigorian  
lyke.

as we haue, true it is that one may goe rounde about it. There  
set they vp the Image of a certayne *Loutea* of that countrey,  
whom they haue in great reuerence for certaine notable thinges  
he dyd. At the ryght hande standeth the deuyl, muche moze bglie  
paynted then we do vse to set hym out, whereunto great homage  
is done by suche as come into the temple to aske counsell, or to  
drawe lottes: this opinion they haue of hym, that he is malicious  
and able to do euyl. If you aske them what they do thynke of the  
soules departed, they wil answere, that they be immortall, and  
that as soone as any one departeth out of this life, he becommeth  
a deuyl if he haue liued well in this worlde, if otherwysse, that  
the same deuyl chaungeth hym into a busse, or, or dogge. Other-  
foze to this deuyl do they muche honour, to hym do they sacrifice,  
praying hym that he wyll make them lyke vnto hym selfe, and  
not lyke other beastes. They haue moreouer an other sorte of  
temples, wherein both vppon the altars and also on the walles  
do stande many Idoles well proportioned, but bare headed:  
These beare name *Omithoson*, accompted of them spirites, but  
suche as in heauen do nether good nor euyl, thought to be  
suche men and women, as haue chastlye lyued in this worlde  
in abstinence from fyshe and fleshe, fedde only with ryse & salates.  
Of that deuyl they make some accompte, for these spirites they  
care litle or nothyng at all. Agayne they holde opinion that if  
a man do well in this lyfe, the heauens wyll geue hym many  
temporall blessinges, but if he do euyl, then shall he haue infirmi-  
ties, diseases, troubles, and penurie, and all this without  
any knowledge of God. Finally, this people knoweth no other  
thing then to liue & die, yet because they be reasonable creatures,  
al seemed good vnto them we spake in our language, though it  
were not very sufficient: our maner of praying especially pleased  
them, and truely they are wel ynough disposed to receiue the  
knowledge of the trueth. Our lord graunte for his mercie all  
thynges so to be disposed, that it may some tyme be brought to  
passe, that so great a nation as this is, peryshe not for wante of  
helpe.

Our manner of praying so well lyked them, that in  
pylson importunately they besoughte vs to wyte for them  
some.

somewhat as concernyng heauen, the whiche we dyd to theyr contentation with suche reasons as we knewe, howbeit not very cunnynghly. As they do theyr Idolatry they laugh at them selues. If at any tyme this countrey myght be ioined in league with the kyngdome of Portugale, in such wyse that free accesle were had to deale with the people there, they might al be soone conuerted. The greatest fault we do fynd in them is Sodomie, a vice very common in the meaner sort, & nothing strange amongst the best. This tyme were it left of them, in all other thynges so well disposed they be, that a good interpreter in a short space myght do there great good, yf, as I sayde, the countrey were ioined in league with vs.

Furthermore the *Louteas*, with al the people of *China*, are wont to solemnize the dayes of the newe and full Moones in visiting one eache other, and makyng great bankettes, for to that end, as I earst sayd, do tend all theyr pastymes, and spendyng theyr daies in pleasure. They are wont also to solemnize eache one his byrth daye, whereunto theyr kyndred and frendes do resorte of custome, with presentes of Iuelles or money, receyuyng a gayne for theyr rewarde good cheare. They keepe in lyke maner a general feast with great bankets that day theyr kyng was bozne. But theyr most principall and greatest feast of al, and best cheare, is the fyrst day of theyr newe yeere, namely the fyrst day of the newe Moone of Februarie, so that theyr fyrst moneth is Marche, and they reckon the tymes accordynglye, respect beyng had vnto the reigne of theyr Prynces: as when anye deede is wytten, they date it thus, Made suche a daye of suche a Moone, and such a yeere of the reigne of suche a Kyng. And theyr auncient wytynges beare date of the yeeres of this or that Kyng.

Nowe wyl I speake of the maner the whiche the *Chi-neans* doo obserue in dooyng Iustice, that it maye be knowne how farre these Gentyles doo herein exceede manye Christians, that be moze bounden then they to deale iustly and in trueth. Because the Chynische Kyng maketh his abode contynually in the Citie *Pachyn*, his kyngdome so great, the shyres so many, as tofore it hath been sayde: in it therefore the Gouvernours and Rulers, muche lyke vnto our Shyryffes, be so appoynted

II.ii. lodenly,

soberly and speedely discharged agayne, that they haue no tyme to growe naught. Furthermoze to keepe the state in moze securitie, the *Louteas* that gouerne one shyre, are chosen out of some other shyre distaunt farre of, where they must leaue theyr wyues, chyldren, and goodes, carryeng nothyng with them but them selues. True it is, that at theyr commyng thither they do fynde in a redinesse all thynges necessarie, theyr house, furniture, seruantes, and all other thynges in suche perfection and plentie, that they want nothyng. Thus the kyng is well serued without all feare of treason.

In the principall citie of the shyres be foure cheefe *Louteas*, befoze whom are brought all matters of the inferiour towne, throughtout the whole realme. Diuers other *Louteas* haue the maneagynge of iustice, and receyving of rentes, bounde to peeld an accompte thereof vnto the greater officers. Other doo see that there be no euill rule kept in the citie: each one as it be- boueth hym. Generally al these do impprison malefactours, cause them to be whynned & racked, hysing them vp & downe by the armes with a corde, a thyng very vsuall there, and accompted no shame. These *Louteas* do vse great diligence in y<sup>e</sup> appprehending of the cues, so that it is a wonder to see a theefe escape away in any towne, citie, or village. Upon the sea nere vnto the shore many are taken, and looke euen as they are taken, so be they fyrst whynned, and afterward layd in prision, where shortly after they all dye for hunger and colde. At that tyme, when we were in prision, there died of them about threescore and ten. If happely any one, hauyng the meanes to geat foode, do escape, he is set with the condemned persones, and prouided for as they be by the kyng, in such wyse as hereafter it shalbe sayde.

Theyr whynns be certayne peces of canes, cleft in the middle, in such sort that they seeme rather playne then sharpe. He that is to be whynned lieth groueloug on the ground. Upon his thighes the Hangman layeth on blowes myghtely with these canes, that the standers by tremble at theyr crueltie. Ten strypes drawe a great deale of blood, twentie or thyrty spoyle the fleshe altogether, fyftie or threescore wyll require long tyme to be healed, and yf they come to the number of one hundred, then are they incurable.

The

The Italians  
call it the strasse  
pado.

The *Louteas* obserue mozeouer this: when any man is brought before them to be examined, they aske hym openly in the hearing of as many as be present, be y<sup>e</sup> offence neuer so great. Thus did they also behaue them selues with vs. For this cause amongst them can there be no false witnes, as dayly amongst vs it falleth out. This good commeth therof, that many being alwaies about the iudge to heare the euidence, and beare witnesse, the processe can not be falsified, as it happeneth sometymes with vs. The *Portes*, *Gentiles*, & *Jewes*, haue al their sundry othes, y<sup>e</sup> *Portes* doo sweare by theyr *Mossafos*, the *Brachmans* by theyr *Fili*, the rest likewise by the thynges they do worshyppe. The *Chineans* though they be wonte to sweare by heauen, by the Moone, by the Sunne, and by all theyr *Idolles*, in iudgement neuerthelesse they sweare not at all. If for some offence an othe be bled of any one, by and by with the least euidence he is tormented, so be the wytnesses he bypnyeth, if they tell not the truth, or do in any poynt disagree, except they be men of worshyppe and credyte, who are beleued without any farther matter: the rest are made to confesse the trueth by force of tormentes and whyppes. Besydes this order obserued of them in examinations, they do feare so muche theyr kyng, and he where he maketh his abode keepeth them so lowe, that they dare not once styre. Agayne, these *Louteas* as great as they be, notwithstanding the multitude of *Notaries* they haue, not trusting any others, do write al great processees and matters of importance them selues. Mozeouer one vertue they haue worthy of great prayse, and that is, being men so well regarded and accompted of as though they were princes, they be patient aboue measure in geuyng audience. The poore straungers brought before them myght saye what we woulde, as all to be lyes and falaces that they byd wyte, ne byd we stande before them with the vsuall cerimonies of that countrey, yet byd they beare with vs so patiently, that they caused vs to wonder, knowyng specially howe litle any aduocate or iudge is wonte in our countrey to beare with vs. For where so euer in any towne of *Christendome* shoulde be accused brenken men as we were, I knowe not what ende the very innocentes cattle woulde haue: but we in a *Heathen* countrey, hauyng our great ennemies two of the chiefeest men in a whole



colone, wantyng an interpreter, ignorant of that countrey language, dyd in the ende see our great aduersaryes cast into prysen for our sake, and depryued of theyr offices and honoure for not doyng iustice, yea not to escape deatch, for as the rumour goeth, they shalbe beheaded. Somewhat is nowe to be sayde of the lawes that I haue been hable to knowe in this countrey, and fyrst, no thefte or murther, is at any tyme pardoned: adulterers are put in prysen, and the facte once proued, condemned to dye, the womans husbände must accuse them: this order is keapt with men and women found in that fault, but theues and murderers are imprysoned as I haue sayd, where they shortly dye for hunger and colde. If any one happely escape by bypnyng the gayler to geue hym meate, his processe goeth farther, and cometh to the courte where he is condemned to dye. Sentence beyng geuen, the prysoner is brought in publyke with a terrible bande of men that laye hym in Irons hande and foote, with a boorde at his necke one handefull broade, in length reachyng downe to his knees, cleft in two partes, and with a hole one handefull downewarde in the table fyt for his necke, the whiche they enclose by therein, naylyng the boorde fast togeather. one handefull of the boorde standeth by behynde in the necke: the sentence and cause wherefore the feilon was condemned to dye, is wyten in that parte of the table that standeth before.

This cerimonie ended, he is laid in a great prysen in the companie of some other condemned persons, the which are found by the king as long as they do liue. The boord aforesaid so made, tormenteth the prysoners very much, keeping them both from rest, & eke lettynge them to eate commodously, theyr handes beyng manacled in Irons vnder that boord, so y<sup>n</sup> in fine there is no remedy but deatch. In y<sup>e</sup> chiefe cities of euery shire, as we haue erst said, there be foure pryncipal houses, in ech of them a prysen: but in one of them where the *Taissu* maketh his abode, there is a greater & a more pryncipal prysen the in any of y<sup>e</sup> rest: & although in euery cite there be many, neuerthelesse in thre of them remaine onely such as be condemned to die. Their deatch is much prolonged, for that ordinarily there is no execution doone but once a yeere, though many die for hunger and colde, as we haue seene in this prysen. Execution is done in this maner. The *Chian*, to wyt the

high

A pyllep  
boorde.

hygh commissioner or Lord cheefe Iustice, at the peeres ende goeth to the head citie, where he heareth agayne the causes of suche as be condemned. Many tymes he deliuereth some of them, declaring that boord to haue been wrongfully put about theyr neckes: the visitation ended, he chooseth out seuen or .viii. not many more or lesse, of the greatest malefactours, the whiche, to feare and keepe in awe the people, are brought into a great market place, where al the great *Louteas* meete togeather, and after many cerimonies and superstitions, as the vse of the countrey is, are beheaded. This is done once a yeere: who so escapeth that day, may be sure that he shal not be put to death al that yeere following, also remayneth at the kynges charges in the greater prison. In that prison where we lay were al waies one hundred & moe of these condemned persons, besides them that lay in other prisons.

These prisons wherin the condemned captiues do remayne are so strong, that it hath not been hard, that any prisoner in al *China* hath escaped out of prison, for in deed it is a thyng impossible. The prisons are thus builded. First al the place is myghtely walled about, the walles be very strong and hygh, the gate of no lesse force: within it thre other gates, before you come where the prisoners do lye, there many great lodgings are to be seene of the *Louteas*, *Notaries*, *Parthions*, that is, such as do there kepe watch and ward day and nyght, the court large and paved, on the one syde wherof standeth a prison, with two rayghtie gates, wherin are kept such prisoners as haue committed enomyious offences. This prison is so great, that in it are streates and Market places wherein al thyngs necessarie are sold. Wea some prisoners liue by that kynde of trade, buyeng and selling, and letting out beds to hyre: some are dayly sent to prison, some dayly deliuered, wherfore this place is neuer voyde of seuen or eyght hundred men that go at libertie.

Into one other prison of condemned persons shall you goe at thre prison gates, the court paved and baulted rounde about, & open aboue as it were a cloister. In this cloister be eight roomes with prison doores, and in each of them a large Gallerie, wherein euery night the prisoners do lie at length, their feete in the stocks, theyr bodies hampered in huge wooden grates that kepe them fro sitting, so that they lie as it were in a cage, sleepe if they can: in the morning they are sold againe, that they may go into y court.

Notwithstanding the strength of this pyson, it is ke pt with a garrison of men, part whereof watche within the house, part of them in the Court, some keepe about the pyson with lanterns and watchebelles answeryng one an other fyue tymes euerye nyght, and geuing warning so lowde, that the *Loutea* resting in a chamber not neare thereunto, may heere them. In these pysons of condemned persons remaine some .15. other 20. yeres imprisoned, not executed, for the loue of theyr honorable frendes that seeke to prolong theyr lyues. Many of these pysoners be shomakers, and haue from the king a certayne allowance of rise: some of them worke for the keeper, who suffereth them to goe at libertie without fetters and boordes, the better to worke. Howbeit when the *Loutea* calleth his checke rolle, & with the keeper vieweth them, they al weare theyr lyueres, that is, boords at theyr neckes, yronned hand and foote. When any of these pysoners dieth, he is to be seene of the *Loutea* and *Notaries*, brought out at a gate so narrow, that there can but one be drawen out there at once. The pysoner beyng brought forth, one of the aforesayde *Parthians* stryketh hym thysle on the head with an yron sledge, that doone, he is deliuered vnto his frendes, yf he haue any, otherwys the kyng hyreth men to cary hym to his buriall in the fieldes.

Thus adulterers and theenes are vsed. Such as be imprisoned for debt once knowen, lye there vntyl it be payed. The *Taissy* or *Loutea* calleth them many tymes before him by the vertue of his office, who vnderstanding the cause wherefore they doo not pay theyr debtes, appointeth them a certayne tyme to doe it, wthin the compasse wherof if they discharge not theyr debtes beyng debtors in deede, then they be whipped & condemned to perpetual imprisonment: yf the creditours be many, & one is to be payd before an other, they do, contrary to our maner, pay him fyyst, of whom they last borrowed, and so ozdinarily the rest, in suche sort that the fyyst lender be the last receyuer. The same order is kept in paying legacies: the last named, receyueth his portion first. They accompt it nothyng to shew fauour to such a one as can doo the lyke agayne: but to doo good to them that haue litle or nothing. That is worth thanks, therfore pay they the last before the first, for that their entent seemeth rather to be vertuous then gainful.

Of like the first  
lenders be the  
more welcbier.

When

When I sayde that suche as bee committed to pryson for theft & murder, were iudged by the Court, I ment not them that were apprehended in the deed doyng, for they need no tryall, but are brought immediatly before the *Tutan*, who out of hand giueth sentence. Other not taken so openly, and doe neede tryall, are the malefactorz put to execution once a yeere in the chiefe cities, to keepe in awe the people: or condemned, doe remaine in pryson, lokyng for theyr day. Theeues being taken, are carryed to pryson from one place to an other in a chest vpon mens shoulbers, hyed therfore by the kyng, the Chest is fire handfyller hygh, the prisoner sitteth therein vpon a benche, the couer of the chest is two boordes, amyd them both a pillerlyke hole, for the prisoner his necke, there sitteth he with his head without the chest, & the rest of his body within, not able to moue or turne his head this way or that way, nor to plucke it in: the necessities of nature he voydeth at a hole in the bottome of the chest, the meat hee eateth is put into his mouth by others. There abydeth he day and nyght duryng his whole iourney: if happely his porters stumble, or the chest doe iogge, or be set downe carelesly, it turneth to his great paynes that sitteth therein, all such motions beyng vnto him hanging as it were. Thus were our companyons carryed from *Cinco*. seuen dayes iourney, neuer takyng any rest as afterwarde they told vs, & theyr greatestt griefe was to stape by the way: as soone as they came, beyng taken out of the chests, they were not able to stande on theyr feete, and two of them dyed shortly after.

When we laye in pryson at *Fuquico*, we came many tymes abroad, and were brought to the pallaces of noble men, to be seene of them and theyr wyues, for that they had neuer seene any Portugall before. Many thinges they asked vs of our countrey, and our fashions, and dyd wyte euery thyng, for they be curious in nouelties aboue measure. The gentlemen shewe great curtesie vnto straungers, and so dyd we finde at their handes, and bycause that many tymes we were brought abroad into the citie, somewhat will I say of such thinges as I dyd see therein, beyng a gallant citie, and chiefe in one of the thirtiene shyres aforesayde.

The citie *Fuquico*, is very great, and mightily walled with square stone both within and without, and as it may seeme by the breadth thereof, filled vp in the middle with earth, layde ouer  
with



with hycke and couered with tyle, after the maner of porches or galeries, that one myght dwell therein. The steyers they vse, are so easily made, that one may go them vp and down a horsebacke, as eftsoones they doe: the streetes are paved, as already it hath been sayde: there be a great number of Merchantes, euery one hath written in a great table at his doore such thinges as he hath to sell. In lyke maner euery artillane paynteth out his craft: the market places be large, great aboundance of all thinges there be to be solde. The citie standeth vppon water, many streames run through it, the bankes pitched, and so broade that they serue for streetes to the cities vse. Ouer the streames are sundry byddges both of tymbre & stone, that beyng made leuell with the streetes, hynder not the passage of the Barges to and fro, the chanelles are so deepe. Where the streames come in and goe out of the citie, bee certayne arches in the wall, there goe in and out theyr *Parai*, that is a kynde of Barges they haue, and this onely the day tyme: at nyght these arches are closed vp with gates, so doe they shut vp all the gates of the citie. These streames and Barges doe ennoble the very muche the citie, and make it as it were to seeme an other Venice. The buyldinges are euen, well made, hygh, not lofted, except it be some wherein merchandise is layde. It is a worlde to see howe great these cities are, and the cause is, for that the houses are buylt euen, as I haue sayde, and doe take a great deale of roome. One thyng we sawe in this citie that made vs all to wonder, and is woorthy to bee noted: Namely, ouer a porche at the comynge in to one of the aforesayde foure houses, the whiche the kyng hath in euery thyr for his gouernours as I haue erst sayde, standeth a Colonne buylt vppon fourtie pylles, eche one whereof is but one stone, eche one fourtie handfulls or spannes long: in breadth or compasse twelue, as many of vs dyd measure them. Besydes this, theyr greatnesse suche in one peece, that it myght seeme impossible to worke them: they bee mozeouer cornerde, and in colour, length, and breadth so lyke, that the one nothyng dyffereth from the other. This thyng made vs all to wonder verie muche.

*Parai.*

Wee are wont to call this countrey *China*, and the people *Chineans*, but as long as we were prisoners, not hearing amongst them at any tyme that name, I determined to learne howe they were called: and asked sometymes by them thereof, for that they vnderstoode vs not whan wee called them *Chineans*, I answered them that all the inhabitantes of India named them *Chineans*, wherefore I prayed them that they would tell mee, for what occasion they are so called, whether peradventure any citie of theys bare that name. Wherevnto they alwayes answered mee, to haue no suche name, nor euer to haue had. Than dyd I aske them what name the whole countrey beareth, and what they would answer beyng asked of other nations what countrymen they were: It was tolde me that of auncient tyme in this countrey had been many kynges, and though presently it were all vnder one, eche kyngdome neuerthelesse enioyed that name it fyrst had, these kyngdomes are the prouinces I spake of before. In conclusion they sayde, that the whole countrey is called *Tamen*, and the inhabitantes *Tamegines*, so that this name *China* or *Chineans*, is not hearde of in that countrey. I doe thinke that the nearenesse of an other prouince thereabout called *Cochinchina*, and the inhabitantes thereof *Cochinesses*, fyrst discovered before that *China* was, lying not farre from *Malacca*, dyd gyue occasion both to the one nation and to the other of that name *Chineans*, as also the whole countrey to be named *China*. But their proper name is that aforesayde.

*Tamen* the  
proper name of  
*China*.

I haue hearde mozeouer that in the citie *Nanquin* remaineth a table of golde, and in it wrytten a kyng his name, as a memory of that residence the kyngs were wont to keepe there. This table standeth in a great pallace, couered alwayes, except it bee in some of theys festiuall dayes, at what tyme they are wont to let it be seene: couered neuerthelesse as it is, all the nobilitie of the citie goeth of due tie to doe it euery day reuerence. The lyke is done in the head citie of all the other thynges in the pallaces of the *Ponchiafimi*, wherein these aforesayde tables doe stande with the kyng his name wrytten in them, although no reuerence be done thervnto but in solempne feastes.

I haue

Pochang. al.

I haue lykewyse vnderstoode that the citie *Pachin*, where the kynge maketh his abode, is so great, that to goe from one syde to the other, besydes the *Subarbes*, the which are greater than the citie it selfe, it requyrez one whole day a horsebacke, going backe nye pale. In the *Subarbes* be many wealthy marchantes of all sortes. They tolde me furthermore that it was noted about, and in the *Notes* great store of fysh, wherof the kynge maketh great gaynes.

Thei enemies

It was also tolde mee that the kynge of *China* had no kynge to wage battayle withall, besides the *Tartares*, with whom he had concluded a peace more than fourescore yeres agoe. Neuertheless thei friendship was not so great, that the one nation might marry with the other. And demaunding with whom they married, they sayde, that in olde tyme the *Chinish* kynges, whan they would marry thei daughters, accustomed to make a solempne feast, wherunto came all sorts of men. The daughter that was to be married, stode in a place where shee myght see them all, and looke whom shee lyked best, him did shee chuse to husbnde, and if happely he were of a base condition, hee became by and by a gentleman: but this custome hath been left long since. Nowe a dayes the kynge marryeth his daughters at his owne pleasure, with great men of the same kyngdome: the lyke order he obserueth in the maryage of his sonnes.

Maryage of  
the kynges  
childien.

They haue moreouer one thing very good, and that whiche made vs all to marueyle at them beynge Gentiles: namely, that there be hospitalles in all thei cities, alwayes full of people, we neuer sawe any poore body begger. We therefore asked the cause of this: answered it was, that in euery citie there is a great circuit, wherein be many houses for poore people, for blinde, lame, old folke, not able to traueyle for age, nor hauing any other meanes to lyue. These folke haue in the aforesayde houses, euery plenty of rice durynge thei lyues, but nothyng els. Such as be receyued into these houses, come in after this maner. Whan one is sicke, blinde, or lame, he maketh a supplication to the *Ponchiaffi*, and prouynge that to be true he wytteth, he remaineth in the aforesayde great lodgyng as long as he lyueth: besides this they keepe in these places *Swyne* and *Hennes*, whereby the poore be releued without goyng a beggyng.

I sayde

We speaketh  
not here of all  
*China*, but of  
the cities, for in  
other places  
there be beg-  
gers, as you  
haue seene al-  
ready, swar-  
myng out of  
trees.

I sayd before that *China* was full of ryuers, but now I mynde to confyrme the same anetwe: for the farther we went into the countrey, the greater we found the ryuers. Sometymes we were so farre of from the sea, that where we came no sea fyshe had been seene, and salt was there very deere, of freshe water fyshe yet was there great aboundance, & that fyshe very good: they keepe it good after this maner. Where the ryuers doe meete, and so passe into the sea, there lyeth great store of Boates, specially where no salte water commeth, and that in *Marche* and *Apryll*. These Boates are so many that it seemeth wonderfull, ne serue they for other than to take small fyshe. By the ryuers sydes they make leynes of fine and strong nettes, that lye thre handfulls vnder water, and one aboue, to keepe and nourysh their fyshe in, vntyll suche tyme as other fshers doe come with Boates, byngpyng for that purpose certayne great chestes lnyed with paper, able to holde water, wherein they carry theyr fyshe vp and downe the ryuer, euery day renuyng the chest with freshe water, and sellyng theyr fyshe in euery cite, towne, and village, where they passe, vnto the people as they neede it: most of them haue nette leynes to keepe fyshe in alwayes for theyr prouision. Where the greater Boates can not passe any farther forwarde, they take lesser, and bycause the whole countrey is very well watred, there is so great plentie of dyuers sortes of fyshe, that it is wonderfull to see: assuredly we were amazed to beholde the maner of their prouision. Theyr fyshe is chieflv nourished with the dung of *Buffles* and *Oxen*, that greatly fattereth it. Although I sayde theyr fshyng to be in *March* and *Aprill* at what tyme we sawe them doe it, neuertheless they tolde vs that they fshed at all tymes, for that vsually they dee feede on fyshe, wherfore it behoueth them to make theyr prouision continually. When we had passed *Fuquien*, we went into *Quicin* shyre, where the fine claye vessell is made, as I sayde before: and we came to a cite, the one syde whercof is built vppon the foote of a hyll, wherby passeth a ryuer nauigable: there we tooke Boate, and went by water toward the sea: on ech syde of the ryuer we found many cities, townes, and villages, wherein we sawe great store of marchandise, but specially of fine clay: there byd wee lande by the way to buye victualles and other necessaries. Goyng downe this ryuer Southwarde, we were glad that

He speaketh of  
Fuquien shyre.



## Reportes of

that we byelwe neare vnto a warmer countrey, from whence wee had been farre distant: this countrey we passed through in eyghe dayes, for our iourney laye downe the streame. Before that I doe say any thyng of that shyre we came into, I will fyrst speake of the great citie of *Quicin*, wherin alwayes remaineth a *Tutan*, that is a gouernour, as you haue seene, though some *Tutans* doe gouerne two or thre shyres.

That *Tutan* that was condemned for our cause, of whom I spake befoze, was bozne in this countrey, but he gouerned *Foquien* shyre: nothing it auayled him to bee so great an officer. This countrey is so great, that in many places where we went, there had ben as yet no talke of his death, although he were executed a whole yeere befoze. At the citie *Quanche* whyther we came, the riuer was so great that it seemed a sea, though it were so litle where we tooke water, that we needed smal boates. One day about .ix. of y<sup>e</sup> clocke, beginning to row neare the walles with the streame, we came at noone to a brydge made of many barges, ouerlinked all togeather with two mighty cheyns. There stayed we vntill it was late, but we saw not one go either by theron or downe, except two *Louteas* y<sup>e</sup> about the going downe of y<sup>e</sup> sun, came & set them downe there, the one in one side, the other in the other side. Than was the brydge opened in many places, & barges both great & smal to the number of .600. began to passe: those that went by the streame, at one place, such as came downe, at an other. *Whā* al had thus shot the brydge, than was it shut by againe. We heare say that euery day they take this order in all principall places of merchandys, for paying of y<sup>e</sup> custome vnto the king, specially for salt, wherof the greatest reuenews are made that the king hath in this countrey. The passages of the brydge where it is opened, bee so neare the shore, that nothing can passe without touching the same. To stay the barges at their pleasure, that they go no farther forward, are vsed certayne pyon instrumentes. The brydge consisteth of .112. barges, there stayed wee vntyll the euenyng that they were opened, lothsomely oppressed by the multitude of people that came to see vs, so many in number, that we were enforced to goe asyde from the banke vntyll such tyme as the brydge was opened: howbeit we were neuerthelesse thronged about w<sup>th</sup> many boates full of people. And though in other cities and places where wee  
went,

*Alis Censhi.*

The kynges  
reuenues.

went, the people came so importunate vpon vs, that it was needfull to withdraw our selues: yet were we heere much more molested for the number of people, and this bridge, the principal way out of the citie vnto an other place so well inhabited, that were it walled about, it myght bee compared to the citie. When we had shot the bridge, we kept along the citie vntill that it was nyght, than met we with an other ryuer that ioyned with this, we rowed by that by the walles vntyll we came to an other bridge gallantly made of barges, but lesser a great deale than that other bridge ouer the greater streame: heere stayed we that nyght, and other two dayes with more quiet, being out of the pteale of the people. These riuers do meet without at one corner point of the citie. In either of them were so many barges great and small, that we all thought them at the least to be aboue three thousande: the greater number therof was in the lesser ryuer, where we were. Amongst the rest here lay certayne greater vessels, called in their language *Parai*, that serue for the *Tutan*. When he taketh his voyage by other ryuers that ioynie with this, towards *Pachin*, where the king maketh his abode. For, as many tymes I haue erit sayd, all this countrey is full of riuers. Desirous to see those *Parai* we got into some of them, where we found some chambers set foorth with gilded beds very richly, other furnished with tables and seates, & all other thinges so neate and in perfection, that it was wonderfull.

*Parai.*

*Quiacim* thye, as farre as I can perceiue, lyeth vpon the south. On that syde we kept at our first entry therinto, trauepling not far from the high mountaynes we saw there. As king what people dwelleth beyond those mountaynes, it was told me that they be theeves, & men of a strange language. And bycause that vnto sundry places neare this riuer, & mountaynes do approach, whence the people issuing downe do many tymes great harme, this order is taken at y entry into *Quiacim* thye. To gard this riuer whereon continually go to & fro *Parai* great & small fraught with sale, fish poudred with pepper, and other necessities for that countrey: they do lay in diuers places certain *Parai*, & great barges armed, wherin watch & warde is kept day & night in both sides of the riuer, for the safetie of the passage, & securitie of suche *Parai* as doe remayne there, though the traueplers neuer go but many in company. In euery rode there be at the least thirue, in some two hundred men, as the passage requyeth.

This

This garde is kept vsually vntyll you come to the citie *Onchio*, where continually the *Tutan* of this shyre, and eke of *Cantan*, maketh his abode. From that citie bywarde, where the ryuer wareth moze narrow, and the passage moze daungerous, there be alwayes armed one hundred and fiftie *Parai*, to accompany o- ther vesselles fraught with marchandise, and all this at the king his charges. This seemed vnto me one of the strangest thinges I dyd see in this countrey.

Whan we laye at *Enquien*, we dyd see eertayne *Doozes*, who knewe so litle of theyr secte, that they could say nothyng els but that *Dachomet* was a *Doore*, my father was a *Doore*, and I am a *Doore*, with some other wordes of theyr *Alcorane*, wherewithall, in abstinence from *Swynes* fleshe, they lyue vntyll the deuyll take them all. This whan I sawe, & beyng sure that in many *Chinish* cities the reliques of *Dachomet* are kept, as soone as we came to the citie where these felowes be, I enfourmed my selfe of them, and learned the tructh.

These *Doozes*, as they tolde me, in tymes past came in great shippes fraught with marchandise from *Pachin* ward, to a *Porte* graunted vnto them by the kyng, as hee is wont to all them that traffike into this countrey, where they beyng arriued at a litle towne standyng in the hauens mouth, in tyme conuerted vnto their secte the greatest *Loutea* there. Whan that *Loutea* with all his family was become *Doozyth*, the rest began lykewyse to doe the same. In this part of *China* the people be at libertie, euery one to worshyp and folow what him lyketh best. Wherefore no body tooke heede thereto, vntyll such tyme as the *Doozes* percepyng that many folowed them in superstition, and that the *Loutea* fauoured them, they began to forbyd wholy the eatyng of *Swines* flesh. But all this countrymen and women, chosing rather to forsake father and mother, than to leaue of eatyng of porke, by no meanes would yelde to that proclamation. For besides the great desyre they all haue to eate that kynde of meate, many of them doe lyue thereby: and therefore the people complayned vnto the *Magistrates*, accusing the *Doozes* of a conspiracy pretended betwixt them and the *Loutea* agaynst theyr kyng. In this countrey, as no suspicion, no not one trayterous worde is long borne with- all: so was the kyng speedily aduertised thereof, who gaue com-  
maun-

commaundement out of hande that the aforesayde *Loute* should be put to death, and with hym the *Hoores* of most importance: the other to be layde fyrst in pysson, and afterwarde to be sent abrode into certayne cities, where they remayned perpetuall slaues vnto the kyng. To this citie came by happe men and women threescore and odde, who at this day are brought to fye men and foure women, for it is nowe twentie yeeres agoe this happened. Theyr offsprynge passeth the number of .200. and they in this citie, as the rest in other cities, whyther they were sent, haue theyr *Moscheas*, wherunto they al resorte euery fryday to kepe theyr holydaye. But, as I thynke, that wyl no longer endure, then whiles they do lyue, that came from thence, for theyr posteritie is so confuled, that they haue nothing of a *Hoor*e in them but abstinence from *Swynes* fleshe, and yet many of them do eate thereof pziuilte. They tell me that theyr natieue countrey hath name *Camarian*, a fyme lande, wherein be many kynges, and the *Indische* countrey well knowen vnto them. It may so be: for as sone as they dyd see our seruantes (our seruantes were *Preuzaret*s) they iudged them to be *Indians*: many of theyr woordes sounded vppon the *Perlike* tongue, but none of vs coulde vnderstand them. I asked them whether they conuerted any of the *Chinische* nation vnto theyr secter: they answered me, that with much a do they conuerted the women with whom they do marry, yeldyng me no other cause thereof, but the difficultie they find in them to be brought from eating *Swines* fleshe and drynking of wine. I am perswaded therfore, that if this countrey were in league with vs, forbyddyng them neyther of both, it would be an easy matter to draw them to our religion, from theyr superstition, wherat they them selues do laugh when they do their *Idolatrie*. I haue learned mozeouer that the sea wherby these *Hoores* that came to *China*, were woont to traualle, is a very great gulfe, that falleth into this countrey out from *Tartaria* and *Persia*, leauing on the other syde all the countrey of *China*, and lande of the *Mogorites*, drawyng alwayes towarde the south: and of all lykelyhood it is euen so, because that these *Hoores*, the whiche we haue scene, be rather browne then white, wherby they shewe them selues to come from some warmer countrey then *China* is, neere to *Pachin*, where the

That is theyr  
temples.

It shoulde  
seeme by their  
voyage to be  
*Cardandan* in  
*Ortelius*.

It seemeth they  
came by the ris-  
uer from the  
*Caspian* sea.

At *racan*,



## Reportes of

ryuers are frozen in the wynter for colde, and many of them so vehemently, that cartes may passe ouer them.

M. Huons  
Tartares.

We dyd see in this citie many *Tartares*, *Mogorites*, *Bremes*, and *Laoynes*, both men & women. The *Tartares* are men very white, good horsemen and archers, consynnyng with *China* on that side where *Pachin* standeth, separated from thence by great mountaynes that are betwixt these kingdomes.ouer them be certayne wayes to passe, and for both sydes, Castelles continually keapte with souldiers: in tyme past the *Tartares* were woont alwayes to haue warrs with the *Chineans*, but these fourescore yeeres past they were quiete, butyll the seconde yeere of our imprysment.

Mounte  
Dont.

Mogorites.

The *Mogorites* be in lyke maner whyte, and heathen, we are aduertised that of one syde they border bypon these *Tartares*, and confine with the *Persike Tartares* on the other syde, whereof we sawe in them some tokens, as theyr maner of clothes, and that kynde of hat the *Saracenes* do weare. The *Doozes* affirmed, that where the kyng lyeth, there be many *Tartares* and *Mogorites*, that brought into *China* certayne blewes of great valewe: al we thought it to be *Vanil* of *Cambaia* woont to be sold at *Ormus*. So that this is the true situation of that countrey, not in the Northpartes, as many tymes I haue harde saye, consynnyng with *Germanie*.

Bremes.

As for the *Bremes* we haue seene in this citie *Chenchi* certayne men & women, amongst whom there was one that came not long since, haupng as yet her heare tyed by after the *Pegues* fashyon: this woman, and other moe with whom a blacke *Dooze* damsell in our compaigny had conference, and dyd vnderstande them well ynough, had dwelte in *Peghu*. This newe come woman, imaginynge that we ment to make our abode in that citie, byd vs to be of good comforte, for that her countrey was not distant from thence aboue fye dayes iourney, and that out of her countrey there laye a hygh way for vs home into our owne. Beyng asked the way, she answered that the fyrst thre dayes the way lyeth ouer certayne great mountaynes and wyldernesse, afterwarde people to be mette withall agayne. Thence two  
dayes

dayes iorney more to the Beames countrey. Wherefore I doo conclude, that *Chenchi* is one of the confynes of this kyngdome, seperated by certayne huge mountaynes, as it hath been already sayd, that lye out towards the South. In the residue of these mountaynes standeth the prouince *Sian*, the *Laoyns* countrey, *Auouins*. *Cambalia*, *Chinapa*, and *Cochinchina*. Southwards from *Chenchi* to the sea.

This citie, cheefe of other syxteene, is situated in a pleasaunt playne, aboundyng in thynges necessarie, sea fysh only excepted, for it standeth farre from the sea: of freshe fysh so muche store, that the market places are neuer cymptie. The walles of this citie are very strong and hygh: one day dyd I see the *Louteas* thereof go vpon the walles, to take the viewe thereof, bozne in theyr seates I spake of before, accompanied with a troupe of hoxslemen, that went two and two: It was tolde me they myght haue gone thre and thre. We haue seene mozeouer, that with in this aforesayde citie the kyng hath moe than a thousand of his kynne lodged in great pallaces, in diuers partes of the citie: theyr gates be redde, and the entyre into theyr houses, that they may be knowen, for that is the kyng his colour. These gentlemen, accordyng to theyr nearenesse in blood vnto the kyng, as soone as they be maried, receiue theyr place in honour: this place neither encreaseth nor diminisbeth in any respect, as long as the kyng lyueth, the kyng appoynteth them theyr wyues and familie, allowyng them by the Doneth al thynges necessarie abundantly, as he doth to his gouernours of shypes and cities, howbeit, not one of these hath as long as he lyueth, any charge or gouernment at al. They geue them selues to eatyng and drynkyng, and be for the most part burly men of bodie, insomuche that espyng any one of them, whom we had not seene before, we myght knowe hym to be the kyng his colyn. They be neuertheless very pleasaunt, courteous, and sayre conditioned: ne dyd we finde, al the tyme we were in that citie, so much honour and good entertaynement any where, as at theyr handes. They byd vs to theyr houses, to eate and drynke, and when they sounde vs not, or were not wyllyng to go with them, they byd our seruantes, & slaues, causing them to lye down with the first. Notwithstanding the good lodging these gentlemen haue so commodious that they want

want nothyng, yet are they in this bondage, that durynge lyfe they neuer goe abrode. The cause, as I dyd vnderstand, wherefoze the kyng so vseth his cousynes, is that none of them at anye tyme may rebell agaynst hym: and thus he shutteth them by in thre or foure other cities. Most of them can play on the Lute: and to make that kynde of pastyme peculier vnto them only, all other in the cities where they do lyue be forbydden that instrument, the Curtisians and blynde folke only excepted, who be mutations, and can play.

This king furthermoze for the greater securitie of his realme, and the auoydng of tumultes, letteth not one in al his countrey to be called Lord, except he be of his blood. Many great estates and gouernours there be, that durynge theyr office are lodged Lordlyke, and do beare the port of myghtie Princes: but they be so many tymes displaced, and other placed a newe, that they haue not the whyle to become corrupt. True it is that durynge theyr office they be well prouided for, as after warde also lodged at the kynges charges, and in pension as long as they liue: payde them Monthly in the cities where they dwel, by certaine officers appoynted for that purpose. The kyng then is a Lorde only, not one besydes hym as you haue seene, except it be suche as be of his blood. A Nephewe lykewylse of the kyng, the kyng his systers sonne, lyeth continually within the walles of the citie, in a strong pallace built Castellwylse, euen as his other cousins do, remainyng alwayes within doores, serued by Eunuches, neuer dealyng with any matters. Their festiuall dayes, newe Moones, and full Moones the magistrates make great bankets, & so do such as be of the king his blood. The king his Nephewe hath name *Vanfuli*, his pallace is walled about, the wall is not high, but foure square, and in circuit nothing inferiour to the walles of Goa, the outside is painted red, in euery square a gate, & ouer each gate a tower, made of timber excellently wel wrought: before the principlal gate of the foure, that openeth into the high streat, no *Lourea*, be he neuer so great, may passe on horsebacke, or carried in his seat. Amydde this quadrangle standeth the pallace where that gentleman lieth, doubtesse worth the sight, although we came not in to see it. By report the roofes of the towers and house, are glased greene, the greater part of the quadrangle

Goa is a citie  
of the Portu-  
gales in East  
Indie.

*Quadrangle* set with sauage trees, as *Okes*, *Chestnuttes*,  
*Cypres*, *Pineapples*, *Cedars*, and other suche lyke that we do  
wante, after the maner of a wood, wherein are keapt *Staggess*,  
*Oxen*, and other beastes, for that *Lorde* his recreation neuer go-  
yng abrode, as I haue sayde. One preheminance this citie  
hath aboue the reste where we haue been, and it of ryght as we  
do thynke, that helpdes the multitude of market places, wherein  
all thynges are to be solde, through euery strate continually  
are cryed all thynges necessarie, as fleshe of all sortes, freshe-  
fyshe, hearbes, oyle, vineger, meale, rise, in summa, al thinges  
so plentifully, that many houses neede no seruantes, euery thing  
beyng brought to theyr doores. Most part of the merchantes  
remayne in the suburbes, for that þ cities are shut by euery night  
as I haue sayde. The merchantes therefore the better to attende  
theyr businesse, do chuse rather to make theyr abode without in  
the suburbes, then within the citie. I haue seene in this ryuer  
a pretie kynde of fshyng, not to be omitted in my opynion, and  
therefore wyl I set it downe. The kyng hath in many ryuers  
good stoe of barges full of sea crows, that breede, are fedde,  
and do bye therein, in certayne cages, allowed monethly a cer-  
tayne prouision of ryle. These barges the kyng bestoweth by-  
pon his greatest magistrates, geuyng to some two, to some  
three of them, as he thynketh good, to fsh the therewithall after  
this maner. At the houre appoynted to fsh, all the barges  
are brought togeather in a circle, where the ryuer is  
shalowe, and the crows, tyed togeather vnder the wynges, are  
let leape downe into the water, some vnder, some aboue, worth  
the lookyng vppon: eche one as he hath filled his bagge, goeth  
to his owne barge and emptyeth it, whiche done, he retourneth  
to fsh agayne. Thus hauyng taken good stoe offsh, they  
set the crows at libertie, and do suffer them to fsh for theyr  
owne pleasure. There were in that citie, where I was, twentie  
barges at the least of these aforesayde crows. I wente almost  
euery day to see them, yet coulde I neuer be thoroughly satisfied  
to see so straunge a kynde offshyng.

Rk.iii.

Of

Finis,



# ¶ Of the Ilande Giapan, and

other litle Isles in the East Ocean.

By R. Wylles.



The extreme part of the knowen worlde bnto bz, is the noble Ilande Giapan, written otherwysse Iapon and Iapan. This Iland standeth in the East Ocean, beyonde all Asie, betwixte Cathayo & the West Indies 36. degrees Northwarde from the equinoctial line, in the same clime with the South part of Spayne and Portugall, distant from thence by sea. 6000. leagues: the trauayle thither, both for ciuile discord, great piracie, and often shiwrackes, very dangerous. This countrey is hilly, and pestred with snowe, wherefore it is nether so warme as Portugall, & yet very poore, as farre as we can learne, wantyng oyle, butter, cheese, mylke, egges, suger, hompy, by neger, saffarne, cynamome, and pepper. Barly byanne the Ilanders do vse in steede of salte: medicinable thinges holsome for the body haue they none at al. Neuerthelesse in that Iland sundry frutes do grow, not much unlike the frutes of Spayne: & great store of Syluer mynes are therein to be seene. The people tractable, ciuile, wyttie, courteous, without deceyte, in vertue and honest conuersation exceedyng all other nations lately discovered, but so muche standyng vppon theyr reputation, that theyr chiefe Idole may be thought honour. The contempte therof causeth among them much discord and debate, manslaughter and murther: euen for theyr reputation they do honour theyr parentes, keepe theyr promises, abstayne from adultery and robberyes, punishing by death the least robbery done, holdyng for a prynciple, that whosoener stealeth a tryfle, wyll if he see occasion steale a greater thing. It may be theste is so seuerely punished of them, for that the nation is oppressed with scarcitie of al thynges necessarye, and so poore, that euen for miserie they strangle theyr owne chyldren, preferring death before want. These felowes do nether eate nor kyll any foule. They lyue chiefly by fythe, hearbes, and frutes, so healthfully, that they dye very olde. Of Ryce and Wheate there is no great store.

No man is ashamed there of his pouertie, ne be they gentle-  
 men therfore lesse honored of the meaner people, ne wyl the poo-  
 rest gentleman there. matche his chylde with the baser sort for a-  
 ny gayne, so muche they do make moze accompt of gentry then  
 of wealth. The greatest delyght they haue, is in armorie, each  
 boy at fourteene peeres of age, be he bozne gentle or otherwyle,  
 hath his swoorde and dagger: very good archers they be, con-  
 temptyng all other nations in comparisn of theyr manhood  
 and prowesse, puttyng not by one iniurie, be it neuer so small  
 in worde or deede, among them selues. They feede moderately,  
 but they drynke largely. The vse of vines they knowe not, they  
 drynke they make of Ryce, vtterly they do abhorre dysse, and all  
 games, accomptyng nothyng moze byle in a man, then to geue  
 hym selfe vnto those thynges, that make vs greedie and desirous  
 to get other mens goodes. If at any time they do sweare, for that  
 seldome they are wont to do, they sweare by the Sunne: many of  
 them are taught good letters, wherfore they may so much the soo-  
 ner be brought vnto Chyristianitie. Eche one is contented with  
 one wyfe: they be all desirous to learne, and naturally enclined  
 vnto honestie and curtesie: godly talke they lysten vnto wylling-  
 lye, especially when they vnderstand it throughe. Theyr go-  
 uernment consisteth of thre estates. The fyrst place is due vnto  
 the hygh priest, by whose lawes and decrees, al publique and  
 priuate matters, apparteynyng vnto religion, are decided. The  
 sectes of theyr cleargie men, whom they do call *Bonzi*, be of no  
 estimation or auctoritie, except the high priest by letters patent  
 do confyrme the same: he confyrmeth and alloweth of theyr *Tun-*  
*di*, who be as it were Bishops, although in many places they  
 are nominated by sundry Princes. These *Tundi*, are greatly  
 honoured of all sortes: they do geue benefices vnto inferiour mi-  
 nisters, and doo graunt licences for many thynges, as to cate-  
 fleshe bypon those daies they go in Pilgrimage to theyr *Idoles*,  
 with suche lyke priuileges. Finallye, this hygh priest, wont  
 to be chosen in *China*, for his wysdome and learnyng: made in  
*Giapan*, for his gentry and byrth: hath so large a Dominion,  
 and reuenues so great, that clysnes he beareth the pety  
 Kinges, and Princes there.

Theyr go-  
uernement.

*Tundi.*

Theyr seconde principall Magistrate, in theyr language *Vo*, is the cheefe *Herehaught*, made by succession and byrth, honoured as a God. This gentleman neuer toucheth the grounde with his foote without forsaytyng of his office, he neuer goeth abrode out of his house, nor is at all tymes to be seene. At home he is eyther carried about in a lytter, or els he goeth in wooden *Choppines* a foote hygh from the ground: commonly he sitteth in his *Chaype* with a swoord in one syde, and a bowe and arrowes in the other, next his body he weareth blacke, his outwarde garment is redde, all shadowed ouer with *Cypresse*, at his cap hang certayne *Lambeaux* much lyke vnto a Bishops *Myter*, his forehead is paynted whyte and red, he eateth his meate in earthen *Dishes*. This *Herehaught* determineth in all *Giapan* the diuers tytles of honour, whereof in that Iland is great plentie, each one perticularly knowen by his badge, commonly seene in sealyng by theyr letters, and dayly altered accordyng to theyr degrees. About this *Vo* euery noble man hath his *Soliciter*, for the nation is so desirous of prayse and honour, that they stryue among them selues who may byrbe hym best. By these meanes the *Herehaught* groweth so ryche, that although he haue neyther lande nor any reuenewes otherwyle, yet may he be accompted the wealchpest man in al *Giapan*. For thre causes this great Magistrate may loose his office: first, if he touch the ground with his foote, as it hath been already sayd: next, if he kyl anye body: thyrde, yf he be founde an enemye vnto peace and quietnesse, howbeit neyther of these aforesayde causes is sufficient to put hym to death.

Theyr thyrde cheefe officer is a Iudge, his office is to take by a to end matters in controuerisie, to determine of warres & peace, that which he thynketh ryght, to punythe rebelles, wherin he may commaunde the noble men to assyst hym vpon paine of forfettyng theyr goodes: neuerthelesse at all tymes he is not obeyed, for that many matters are ended rather by might and armes, than determined by law. Other controuerxies are decided either in the *Tempozal Court*, as it seemeth good vnto the Princes, or in the *Spiritual consistorie* before the *Tundi*.

Rebelles are executed in this maner, especially yf they be noble men, or officers. The kyng, looke what daye he giveth sentence

sentence agaynst any one, the same day the partie, wheresoeuer he be, is aduertised thereof, and the day tolde him of his execution. The condemned person asketh of the messenger where that it may be lawfull for him to kyll him selfe: the which thing when the kyng doeth graunt, the partie takyng it for an honour, putteth on his best apparell, and launcyng his body a crosse from the brest downe all the belly, murthereth him selfe. This kynde of death they take to be without infamy, ne doe their chyldren, for theyr fathers crime so punished, lose theyr goods. But if the king referue them to be executed by the Hangman, than flocketh hee togeather his chyldren, his seruantes, and friendes home to his house, to preserue his lyfe by force. The kyng committeth the fetching of him out vnto his chiefe Iudge, who first setteth vppon him with bow and arrowes, & afterward with pykes & swoords, vntyll the rebell and all his family be slayne, to theyr perpetuall ignominie and shame.

The Indysh wyriters make mention of sundry great cities in this Island, as *Cangoxima* a Hauen towne in the South partie thereof, and *Meaco* distant from thence 300 leagues northward; the royall seat of the kyng, and most wealthy of all other townes in that Islande. The people thereabout is very noble, and theyr language the best *Laponishe*. In *Meaco* are sayde to be nienerie thousande houses inhabited and bywarde, a famous Uniuersitie, and in it fyue principall Colledges, besydes closes and cloysters of *Bongzi*, *Leguixil*, and *Hamacata*, that is, Priestes, Monkes, and Nunnes. Other fyue notable Uniuersities there be in *Giapan*, namely, *Coia*, *Negru*, *Homi*, *Frenoi*, and *Bandu*. The fyft foure haue in them at the least 3500. schollers: in the fyft are many moe. For *Bandu* prouince is very great, and possessed by sixe princes, fyue whereof are vassalles vnto the sixt, yet he him selfe subiecte vnto the *Laponishe* kyng, usually called the great king of *Meaco*: lesser scholes there be many in diuers places of this Islande. And thus muche specially concernyng this glorious Islande, among so many barbarous nations and rude regions, haue I greathered together in one summe, out of sundry letters wrytten from thence into *Europe*, by no lesse faithfull reporters thā famous traueylers. For confirmation whereof, as also for the knowledg of other thinges not conteyned in the premisses, the curious rea-



## Of the Ilande

ders may peruse these foure volumes of Indische matters written long agoe in Italian, and of late compendiously made latin, by *Petrus Maffei* my olde acquaynted friend, entitulyng the same, *De rebus Iaponicis*. One whole letter out of the fyft booke thereof, specially entreatyng of that countrey, haue I done into Englyshe word for word, in suche wyle as foloweth.

*Aloisius Froes*, to his companyons in Iesus Christ,  
that remayne in China and Indie.

**T**he last yeere, deare brethzen, I wrote vnto you from *Firando*, howe *Cosmus Turrianus* had appoynted me to traueyle to *Meaco*, to help *Gaspar Vilela*, for that there the haruest was great, the labourers fewe, and that I should haue for myr companyon in that iourney *Aloisius Almeida*. It seemeth now my parte, hauing by the helpe of God ended so long a voyage, to signifie vnto you by letter suche thinges specially as I myght thinke you woulde most delyght to knowe. And because at the begynnyng *Almeida* and I so parted the whole labour of wytyng letters betwixt vs, that he should speake of our voyage, and suche thinges as happened therein, I should make relation of the *Meachians* estate, and wyte what I could well learne of the *Giapans* maners and conditions: settyng asyde all discourses of our voyage, that whiche standeth me vppon I wil discharge in this Epistle, that you considering howe artificially, how cunningly, vnder the pretexte of religion that craftie aduersary of mankynde, leadeth and draweth vnto perdition the *Giaponish* myndes, blynded with many superstitions and cerimonies, may the more pitie this nation.

The inhabiteurs of *Giapan*, as men that neuer had greatly to doe with other nations, in their Geography diuided the whole world into three partes, *Giapan*, *Sian*, and *China*. And albeit the *Giapans* receyued out of *Sian* and *China*, their superstitions and cerimonies, yet doe they neuerthelesse contemne all other nations in comparison of them selues, & standyng in their owne conceite doe far preferre them selues before all other sortes of people in wisdom and policie.

Touching the situation of the countrey, & nature of the soyle, vnto the thinges elswheres erst written, this one thing will I adde: in these Ilandes the summer to be most hot, the winter extreame colde. In the kyngdome of *Canga*, as we call it, falleth so muche snow,

snow, that the houses being buried in it, the inhabitants keepe with-  
 in doores certaine moneths of the yeere, hauing no way to come  
 forth except they breake vp the tiles. Whirlwyndes most ve-  
 hement, Earthquakes so common, that the *Giapans* dreade suche  
 kinde of feares litle or nothing at all. The countrey is full of sil-  
 uer mines, otherwyle barren, not so much by fault of nature, as  
 through the slouthfulnes of the inhabitants: howbeit Oren they  
 keepe, & that for tillage sake onely. The ayre is wholsome, & wa-  
 ters good, the people very fayre & well bodied: bare headed com-  
 monly they go, procuring baldnes with sorow & teares, eschewes  
 rooting vp the pinners al the heare of their heads as it groweth, ex-  
 cept it be a litle behind, the which they knot and keepe with al di-  
 ligence. Euen from their chyldehood they weare daggers and  
 swoords, the which they vse to lay vnder their pillows whan they  
 goe to bedde: in shew curteous and affable: in deede haughty and  
 proude. They delight most in warlike affayres, and their grea-  
 test studie is armes. Hennes apparell dyuersly coloured, is  
 woyned downe halfe the legges, and to the elbowes: womens at-  
 tyre made handsomely, lyke vnto a bayle, is somewhat longer:  
 all manner of dysling and chese they doe eschue. The merchant,  
 although he bee wealthy, is not accompted of. Gentlemen, be  
 they neuer so poore, retayne their place: most precisely they  
 stande vpon their honour and worthynesse, certeniously  
 stryuing among them selues in curtesies and fayre speeches.  
 Wherein if any one happely bee lesse carefull than hee should  
 bee, euen for a trifle many tymes hee getteth vppill will. Ane,  
 though it trouble most of them, so muche they doe deteste, that  
 poore men cruelly taking pietie of the infants newly borne,  
 especially gyales, doe many tymes with their owne feete stran-  
 gle them. Noble men, and other lykewyle of meainer calling, ge-  
 nerally haue but one wyfe a peece, by whom although they haue  
 issue, yet for a trifle they diuorse themselves from their wiues, and  
 the wiues also sometimes from their husbonds, to marry with o-  
 thers. After the seconde degree, coosins may there lawfully marry.  
 Adoption of other mens chyldren is much vled among them. In  
 great townes most men and women can write and reade.

This nation feedeth sparsely, theyn vsuall meate is ryse and  
 salattes, and neare the sea syde fysh. They eat one an  
 other

other many tymes, wherein they vse great diligence, especially in drinckynge one to an other, insomuch that the better sorte, least they myght rudely commit some fault therin, doe vse to reade certayne bookes wrytten of tucties and cerimonies apperteynyng vnto bankettes. To be delicate and fine, they put theyr meat into thes mouthes with litle forks, accompting it great rudenes to touch it with theyr fingers: wynter and sommer they drynke water as hot as they may possible abyde it. Theyr houles are in daunger of fyre, but finely made, and cleane, layde all ouer with straw pallettes, wherevpon they doe both sit in steede of stools, and lye in theyr clothes, with billets vnder theyr heades. For feare of desityng these pallettes, they goe epyther barefoote within doores, or weare strawe pantofles on theyr buskynnes whan they come abroad, the which they laye asyde at theyr returne home agayne. Gentlemen for the most parte doe passe the nyght in banketting, musike, and bayne discourses, they sleepe the day tyme. In *Meaco* and *Sacajo* there is good store of beddes, but they be very litle, and may be compared vnto our puzes.

In byrnyng up theyr chyldren they vse wordes onely to rebuke them, admonishyng as diligently and aduisedly boyes of six or seuen peeres age, as though they were olde men. They are giuen very much to entertayne strangers, of whom most curiously they loue to aske euen in trifles what forreyne nations doe, and theyr fashions. Suche argumentes and reasons as be manifest, and are made playne with examples, doe greatly persuade them. They detest all kynde of theft, whosoever is taken in that faulte may be slayne freely of any body. No publike prylons, no common gayles, no ordinary Iusticers: pryuately eche householder hath the hearyng of matters at home in his owne house, and the punyshyng of greater crymes that deserue death without delaye. Thus vsually the people is kept in awe and feare.

About foure hundred peeres agoe (as in theyr olde recordes we fynde) all *Giapan* was subiecte vnto one Emperour, whose royall seate was *Meaco*. in the *Giaponishe* language called *Cubucama*. But the nobilitie rebellyng agaynst him, by litle and litle haue taken away the greatest parte of his dominton, howbeit his title continually remayneth, and the residue in some respect doe make great accompt of him stil, acknowledging him for theyr superior.

Thus

Thus the Emperre of *Giapan*, in tymes past but one alone, is now diuided into sixtie sixe kyngdomes, the onely cause of ciuile warres continually in that Island, to no small hynderaunce of the Gospell, whylest the kynges that dwell neare togeather inuade one an other, eche one couetyng to make his kyngdome greater. Furthermore in the citie *Meaco* is the pallace of the high priest, whom that nation honoureth as a God, he hath in his house, 366. Idolles, one whereof by course is euery nyght set by his syde for a watchman. He is thought of the common people so holy, that it may not be lawfull for him to goe vppon the earth: if happely he doe set one foote to the grounde, he loseth his office. He is not serued very sumptuously, he is maynteyned by almes. The heads and beards of his ministers are shauen, they haue name *Cangues*, and theyr aucthoritie is great throughtout all *Giapan*. The *Cubucama* bleseth them for Embassadours to decide controuerxies betwixte princes, and to ende theyr warres, whereof they are wont to make very great gayne. It is now two yeeres since, or there about, that one of them came to *Bungo*, to entreat of peace betwixt the kyng thereof, and the kyng of *Amanguzzo*. This Agent fauouring the kyng of *Bungo* his cause more than the other, brought to passe that the foresayde kyng of *Bungo* should keepe two kyngdomes, the which he had taken in warres from the kyng of *Amanguzzo*. Wherefore he had for his rewarde of the kyng of *Bungo* aboue thirtie thousande Ducattes. And thus farre heereof.

But his almes  
are very good.

I come now to other superstitions and ceremonies, that you may see, deare brethren, that whiche I sayde in the beginnyng, howe sulpe the deuyll hath deceyued the *Giaponishe* nation, and howe diligent and ready they be to obey and worshyp him. And first, all remembrance and knowledge not onely of Christ our redeemer, but also of that one God the maker of all thinges, is cleane extinguisht, & utterly abolished out of the *Giapans* hartes. Moreover theyr superstitious sectes are many, whereas it is lawfull for eche one to folow that which lyketh him best: but the principall sectes are two, namely the *Amidans* and *Xacaians*. Wherefore in this countrey shall you see many monasteryes, not onely of *Bonzii* men, but also of *Bonzie* women diuersly attyred, for some doe weare whyte vnder, and blacke upper garments, other goe apparelled in ashe colour, & theyr Idole hath name *Denichiz*  
from



## Of the Ilande

from these the *Amidanes* differ very muche. Agayne the men *Bonzii* for the most parte dwell in sumptuous houses, and haue great reuenues. These felowes are chaste by commaundement, marry they may not vnder payne of death. In the myddst of theyr Temple is erected an Altar, whereon standeth a wodden Idole of *Amida*, naked from the gyzle vpwarde, with holes in his eares, after the maner of Italian Gentlewomen, sitting on a wodden rose, goodly to beholde. They haue great libraries, and halles for them all to dyne and suppe togeather, and belles wherewith they are certayne houres called to prayers. In the euening the Superintendent gyueth eche one a theame for meditation. After mydnyght before the Altar in theyr Temple they doe say *Pattens* as it were out of *Xaca* his last booke, one quier one verse, the other quier an other. Early in the mornynge eche one gyueth him selfe to meditation one houre: they shaue theyr heades and beardes. Theyr Cloysters be very large, and within the precinct thereof, Chappelles of the *Fotoquiens*, for by that name some of the *Giapanish* Saintes are called: theyr holydayes yeerely be very many. Most of these *Bonzii* be Gentlemen, for that the *Giaponish* nobilitie, charged with many chyldren, vse to make most of them *Bonzii*, not being able to leaue for eche one a patrymony good ynough. The *Bonzii* most couetously bent, know all the wayes howe to come by money. They sell vnto the people many scroles of paper, by the helpe whereof the common people thinketh it selfe warranted from all power of the deuylles. They borowe lyke wyse money to bee repayde with great vsury in an other world, gyping by Obligation vnto the lender an assuraunce thereof, the whiche departyng out of this lyfe hee may carry with him to hell.

*Иамбухи.*

There is an other great company of suche as are called *I-nambuxu*, with curbe and staryng heare. They make profession to fynde out agayne thinges either lost or stolen, after this sorte. They set before them a chylde, whom the deuyl inuadeth, called vpon thither by charmes: of that chylde than doe they aske that which they are desirous to know.

These mens prayers both good and bad are thought greatly to preuaile, insomuch that both their blessings and theyr curses they

they sell vnto the people . The Nouices of this order, before they be admitted, goe togeather two or thre thousande in a company, by a certayne high mountayne to do pennance there, thre score dayes voluntarily punishyng them selues . In this tyme the deuyl sheweth him selfe vnto them in sundry shapes: and they, lyke yong graduates, admitted as it were felowes into some certayne company, are set forth with whyte casselles hanging about theyr neckes, and blacke Bonettes that scarcely couer any more than the crowne of theyr heades . Thus attyzed they range abrode in all *Giapan*, to set out them selues and their cun-nyng to sale, eche one beatyng his basen hee carryeth alwayes about with him, to gyue notice of theyr conuynge in all townes where they passe.

There is also another sorte called *Genguis*, that make pro-  
 fession to shewe by southsaying where stolen thinges are, and  
 who were the theeues. These dwel in the toppe of an high moun-  
 tayne, blacke in face for the continuall heate of the sunne, for the  
 colde, wyndes, and raynes they doe continually endure . They  
 marry but in theyr owne tribe and lyne: the reporte goeth that  
 they bee horned beastes . They clyme by most hygh rockes  
 and hylles, and goe ouer very great ryuers by the onely arte  
 of the deuyl, who to byyng those wretches the more into errour,  
 byddeth them to goe by a certayne hygh mountayne, where  
 they stande mysferably gazing and earnestly lookyng for him  
 as long as the deuyl appoynteth them . At the length at noone-  
 tyme, or in the euenyng, commeth that deuyl, whom they call *Ami-  
 da*, among them to shewe him selfe vnto them: this shew breedeth  
 in the braynes and hartes of men suche a kynde of superstition,  
 that it can by no meanes be rooted out of them afterwarde.

*Genguis.*

The deuyl was wont also in another mountaine to shewe him  
 selfe vnto the *Giaponish* nation. Who so was more desirous than  
 other, to go to heauen and to enioy *Paradyse*, thither went he to  
 see that syght, and hauyng seene the deuyl, folowed hym, so by  
 the deuyl perswaded, into a denne vntyll hee came to a deepe  
 pytte . Into this pytte the deuyl was wont to leape, & to take  
 with him his worshypper whom he there murdered. This deceit  
 was thus perceyued . An olde man blynded with this superstiti-  
 on, was by his sonne dissuaded from thence, but all in vayne.

Wherefore

Wherefore his sonne folowed him priuely into that denne with his bowe and arrowes, where the deuyl gallantly appeared vnto him in the shape of a man. Whilest the olde man falleth downe to worshyp the deuyl, his sonne speedily shootyng an arrow at the spirite so appearyng, stroke a Fore in steede of a man, so so deynly was that shape altered. This old man his sonne trackyng the Fore so runnyng away, came to that pit wherof I spake, and in the bottome thereof he founde many bones of dead men, deceyued by the deuyl after that sorte in tyme past. Thus deliuered hee his father from present death, and all other from so pestilent an opinton.

There is furthermore a place bearyng name *Coia*, very famous for the multitude of Abbeyes the *Bonzii* haue therin. The beginner and founder whereof is thought to be one *Combendaxis* a suttile craftie felowe, that gotte the name of holynesse by cunnynge speache, although the lawes and ordinances he made were altogether deuillike: he is sayde to haue founde out the *Giapanische* letters vled at this day. In his later peeres this *Sim* suttile buryed him selfe in a fouresquare graue, foure cubites deepe, seuerely forbyddyng it to be opened, for that than he dyed not, but rested his body, wearyed with continuall businesse, vntyll many thousandes of peeres were passed, after the whiche tyme a great learned man named *Mirozu* should come into *Giapan*, and than would he ryse vp out of his graue agayne. About his tombe many lampes are lyghted, sent thither out of dyuers prouinces, for that the people is perswaded, that whosoever is liberall and beneficiall towarde the beautifyng of that monument, shall not onely encrease in wealch in this worlde, but in the lyfe to come be safe through *Combendaxis* helpe. Suche as gyue them selues to worshyp him, liue in those Monasteries or Abbeyes, with shauen heads, as though they had forsaken all secular matters, wheras in deede they wallow in all sortes of wickednesse and lust. In these houses, the which are many (as I sayde) in number, doe remaine 6000. *Bonzii*, or thereabout, besydes the multitude of laye men: women be restrayned from thence vppon payne of death. Another company of *Bonzii* dwelleth at *Fatonochaiti*. They teache a great multitude of chyldren all trickes and sleightes of gypse and theft: whom they doe fynde to be of great towardnesse, those doe

doe they instruct in all the petigrines of princes, and fashions of the nobilitie, in chivalry, & eloquence, and so send them abroad into other prouinces, attyred lyke young princes, to this ende, that saynyng them selues to be nobly borne, they may with great summes of money, borrowed vnder the colour and pretence of nobilitie, retorne agayne. Wherefore this place is so infamous in all *Giapan*, that if any schollar of that order bee happely taken abroad, hee incontynently dyeth for it. Neuerthelesse these counsyners leaue not dayly to vse theyr wonted wickednesse and knauery.

North from *Giapan*, three hundred leagues out of *Meaco*, lyeth a great countrey of sauage men, clothed in beastes skynnes, rough bodied, with huge beardes, and monstrous muchaches, the which they hold by with litle forkes as they drynke. These people are great drynkers of wyne, fierce in warres, and much feared of the *Giapans*: beyng hurte in sight, they washe theyr woundes with salte water, other surgery haue they none. In theyr brestes they are sayde to carry looking glasses: their swordes they tye to theyr heades, in suche wyse, that the handle doe rest vppon their shoulders. Seruice and cerimonies haue they none at all, onely they are wont to woozshyppe heauen. To *Aquita*, a great towne in that *Giaponishe* kyngdome, we call *Germano*, they muche resort for merchandysse, and the *Aquitanes* lyke wyse doe traueyle into theyr countrey, howbeit not often, for that there many of them are slayne by the inhabiteurs.

Muche more concernyng this matter I had to wypte, but to auoyde tediousnesse, I will come to speake of the *Giapans* maner of burying, who most desirous of bayne glory, doe thynke than specially to geat immortall fame, whan they procure them selues to bee most sumptuously and solempnely buried. theyr burpalles and obsequies in the citie *Meaco*, are done after this maner. About one houre before the dead body be brought forth, a great multitude of his friendes, apparellled in theyr best aray, go before vnto the pyre, with them goe theyr kyns women, and such as bee of theyr acquayntaunce, clothed in whyte (for that is the mournyng colour there) with a chaungeable coloured bayle on theyr heades. Eche woman hath with her also, accordyng to her abilitie, all her famely trymmed by in whyte lilke moc-

The *Giapans*  
nys Funerals.



## Of the Ilande

cado: the better foyle and wealthier women goe in litters of *Cad-  
 dar*, artificially wrought, and richly dyed. In the seconde place  
 marcheth a great company of footemen sumptuously apparelled.  
 Than a far of cometh one of these *Bonzii*, maister of the cerimo-  
 nies for that superstition, brauely clad in silkes & golde, in a large  
 & high lytter excellently wel wrought, accompanied with 30. o-  
 ther *Bonzii*, or thereabout, wearing hattes, linnen albes, and syne  
 blacke bypper garments. Than attired in ashe colour (for this co-  
 lour also is mourning) with a long torch of pineaple, sheweth the  
 dead body the way vnto the fyre, least it either stumble, or igno-  
 rantly goe out of the way. *Melneare*. 200. *Bonzii* folow him sin-  
 ging the name of that deuill the which the partie deceased chiefly  
 did woozship by his life tyme, and therewithall a very great bafen  
 is beaten, euen to the place of fire, in steed of a bel. Than folow two  
 great paper baskets hanged open at staues endes, full of paper  
 roses diuersly coloured: such as beare them, doe march but slow-  
 ly, shaking euer now & than their staues, that the aforesaid floures  
 may fall downe by litle & litle, as it were droppes of rayne, and  
 be whirled about with the wynd. This shoure say they is an argu-  
 ment that the soule of the dead man is gone to Paradyse. After  
 all this, eight bearded *Bonzii* orderly two and two dragge after  
 them on the ground long speares, the pointes backward, with  
 flagges of one cubite a peece, wherein the name also of that Idole  
 is wrytten. Than be there carried ten Lanternes trimmed with  
 the former inscription, ouercast with a fine bayle, and candelles  
 burning in them. Besides this, two yong men clothed in ashe co-  
 lour, beare pineaple torches, not lighted, of thre foote length, the  
 which torches serue to kindle the fyre wherein the dead corpes is  
 to be burnt. In the same colour folow many other that weare on  
 the crownes of their heades sayre, litle, threesquare, blacke lychen  
 caps, tied fast vnder their chyne (for y is honorable amongst them)  
 with papers on their heads, wherein the name of y deuill, I spake  
 of, is wrytten. And to make it the more solemne, after cometh  
 a man with a table one cubite long, one foote broad, couered with  
 a very fine whyte bayle, in both sides wherof is wrytten in golden  
 letters the aforesaid name. At the length by foure men is brought  
 forth the corpes sitting in a gorgeous lytter, clothed in whyte,  
 hanging downe his head, and holding his handes together lyke  
one.

one that prayed : to the rest of his apparell may you adde an vpper gowne of paper, written full of that booke the which his God is sayd to haue made, whan he liued in the world, by whose helpe and merites commonly they doe thinke to bee saued . The dead man his children come next after him most gallantly set forth, the yongest wherof carrieth lykewys a pineaple torch to kyndle the fyre . Last of all foloweth a great number of people in suche cappes as I erst spake of.

Whan they are all come to the place appointed for the obsequie, all the *Bonzii* with the whole multitude, for the space of one hour, beating pannes & basens with great clamors, cal vpon the name of that deuill, the which being ended, the obsequie is done in this maner. In the midst of a great quadrangle, rayled about, hanged with course linnen, and agreeably vnto the soure partes of the world, made with soure gates to goe in and out at, is digged a hole : in the hole is layde good store of wood, whereon is rayled gallantly a waued roofe, before that stande two tables furnished with diuers kyndes of meates, especially dry figges, *Pomegranates*, and tartes good store, but neyther fysh nor fleshe: vpon one of them standeth also a chaffre with coles, and in it sweete wood to make perfumes. Whan all this is ready, the corde wherewith the lytter was carried, is thowen by a long rope into the fyre: as many as are present stryue to take the rope in their handes, vsing theyr aforesayd clamors, which done, they goe in procession as it were rounde about the quadrangle thysle. Than setting the lytter on the wood bupte by ready for the fyre, that *Bonzius* who than is maister of the cerimonies, sayeth a verse that no bodie there vnderstandeth, whyrling thysle about ouer his head a torch lighted, to signifie thereby that the soule of the dead man had neyther any begynnyng, ne shall haue at any tyme an ende, and throweth away the torch . Two of the dead man his children, or of his neare kynne, take it vp agayne, and standyng one at the East syde of the lytter, the other at the West, doe for honour and reuerence, reache it to eche other thysle ouer the dead corpes, and so cast it into the pile of wood : by and by they throwe in oyle, sweete wood, and other perfumes, accordyngly as they haue plentie, and so with a great flame byng the corpes to ashes : his chyldren in the meane

## Of the Ilande

whyle puttyng sweete wood into the Chaffer at the table, with odors, doe solemnely and religiously woozshyp their father as a Saint: which being done, the *Bonzii* are payde eche one in his degree. The maister of the ceremonies hath for his part fyue ducates, sometimes ten, sometimes .xx. the rest haue ten *Julies* a peece, or els a certayne number of other presentes called *Caxe*. The meate that was ordeyned, as soone as the dead corpes friendes and all the *Bonzii* are gone, is left for such as serued at the obsequie, for the poore, and impotent lazares.

The next day returne to the place of obsequie the dead man his children, his kynread, and friendes, who geatheryng by his ashes, bones, and teeth, doe put them in a gylded pottle, and so carry them home, to be set by in the same pot couered with cloth, in the myddst of theyr houses. Many *Bonzii* returne lykewise to these priuate funeralles, and so doe they agayne the seuenth day, than carry they out the ashes to bee buryed in a place appointed, laying therebpon a fouresquare stone, wherein is written in great letters, drawen all the length of the stone ouer, the name of that deuyll the which the dead man woozshypped by his lyfe tyme. Euery day afterwarde his children resorte vnto that graue, with roses and warme water, that the deade corpes thirst not. Nor the seuenth day onely, but the seuenth moneth, and yeere, within theyr owne houses they renew this obsequie, to no small commodities and gayne of the *Bonzii*: great ryche men doe spende in these theyr funeralles. 3000. ducates, or there about, the meaner sorte two or thre hundred. Suche as for pouertie be not able to go to that charges, are in the nyght tyme, darkeloug without all pompe & ceremonies, buryed in a dunghil.

They haue an other kynde of buriall, especially neare the sea syde, for them that bee not yet deade. These felowes are such, as haupyng religiously with much deuotion worshipped *Amida*, now desirous to see him, doe slaye them selues. And first they go certaine dayes begging almes, the which they thrust into theyr sleeues, than preache they in publyke a sermon vnto the people, declaring what they mynd to doe, with the great good lyknyng of all suche as doe heare them: for euery body wondreth at such a kynd of holynesse. Than take they hookes to cut downe  
bypers

byers and thornes that myght hinder them in theyr way to heauen, and so imbarke them selues in a newe vessell, tying great stones about their neckes, armes, loynes, thighes, and feete: thus they launchyng out into the mayne sea, be eyther drowned there, theyr shyppe bouged for that purpose, or els doe cast them selues ouer boorde headlong into the sea. The emptie barke is out of hande set a fyre, for honour sake, by theyr friendes that folowe them in an other boate of their owne, thynkyng it blasphemie that any mortal creature should afterward once touche the barke that had been so religiously halowed.

Truely whan we went to *Meaco*, eyght dayes before we came to the Isle of *Hiu*, at *Fore* towne, sixe men and two women so dyed. To all suche as dye so, the people erecteth a Chappell, and to eche of them a pyllar and a pole made of pinaple, for a perpetuall monument: hangyng by many shredde of paper in stickes all the roofo ouer, with many verses set downe in the walles, in commendation of that blessed company. Wherefore vnto this place both day and nyght many come very superstitiously in pylgrimage. It happened euen then as *Aloisius Almeida* & I went to Christen a chyld, we traueyled that way, at what time foure or fise olde women came forth out of the aforesaide Chappel with beades in theyr handes (for in this pointe also the deuyl counterfayteth Christianitie) who partly scorned at vs for folly, partly frowned and taunted at our small deuotion, for passing by that holy monument, without any reuerence or woorthyp done there vnto at all.

It remaineth nowe we speake two or thre woordes of those Sermons the *Bonzii* are wont to make, not so many as ours in number, but assuredly very wel prouided for. The Pulpit is erected in a great Temple with a silke Canapie ouer it, therein standeth a costly seate, before the seate a table with a bel & a booke. At the houre of sermon, eche secte of the *Giapans* resorteth to theyr owne doctours in diuers Temples. Up goeth the doctoz into the Pulpit, and beyng set downe, after that he hath Lordlyke looked him about, signifieth silence with his bell, and so readeth a fewe woordes out of that booke we spake of, the which he expoundeth afterwarde moze at large. These preachers be for the most parte eloquent, and apte to drawe with their speech the myndes of their



## Of the Ilande

hearers. Wherefore to this ende chiefly, such is theyr greedy-  
 nesse, tendeth all theyr talke, that the people be brought vnder the  
 colour of godlinesse to enryche theyr monasteries, promysing to  
 eche one so much the more happinesse in the lyfe to come, howe  
 much the greater costes & charges they be at in church matters &  
 obseques: notwithstanding this multitude of superstitious sects  
 and companyes, and the diuersities therof amongst them selues:  
 yet in this principally all theyr superintendentes doe traueyle, so  
 to perswade theyr Nouices in their owne tales and lyes, that they  
 thinke nothing els trueth, nothing els sure to come by euerlasting  
 saluation, nothing els woorth the hearyng. Wherunto they adde  
 other subtilties, as in going, grauitie: in countenance, apparel,  
 and in all other outward shewe, comelynesse. Wherby the *Gia-*  
*panes* myndes are so nouised in wicked opinions, and doe con-  
 cepue thereby such trust and hope of euerlasting saluation, that  
 not onely at home, but also abrode in euery corner of the towne,  
 continually almost they runne ouer their beades, humbly asking  
 of *Amida* and *Xaca* wealth, honour, good health, and euerlastyng  
 ioyes. Thus than, deare brethren, may you thinke howe greatly  
 they neede the helpe of God, that eyther doe bryng the Gospel in-  
 to this countrey, or receiuing it brought vnto them, do forsake *I-*  
*dolatry*, & ioyne them selues with Christ, being assailed by so ma-  
 ny snares of the deuyl, troubled with the dayly dissuasions of their  
*Bonzii*, and finally so iniuriously, so hardely, so sharpely vexed of  
 their kindred and friendes, that except the grace of God obtey-  
 ned by the sacrifices and prayers of the Catholike church do help  
 vs, it can not be chosen, but that the fayth and constancie of many,  
 if not of all, in these first beginninges of our churches, will great-  
 ly be put in ieopardie. So much the more it standeth you vpon,  
 that so earnestly long for the health of soules, to commend specially  
 these *Giaponish* flocks vnto our Lorde.

Wee came to *Sacaio*, the xxviii. of Ianuary. *Aloy-*  
*fus Almeida* first for businesse, but afterwarde let by sicknesse,  
 stayed there some whyle, but I parting the next day from thence,  
 came thirtiene leagues of, to *Meaco* the last of Ianuary. Of my  
 commyng all the Christians tooke great comfort, but specially  
*Gasper Vilela*, who in six yeeres had scene none of our company at  
*Meaco*: his yeeres are not yet fourtie, but his gray heares shewe  
 him

him to bee seuentie, so behemently is his litle body afflicted and worne with extreme colde. He speaketh *Giapanish* so skilfully after the phrase of *Meaco* (the which for the renowne of this people, and royall seat of the kyng is best accompted of) that he doth both confesse & preach in that language. Certayne goodly bookes also he hath done into that speech, not omitting to translate other as leasure suffreth him. To make an end, our Lord for his goodnesse vouchsafe to preferue vs all continually, and to giue vs ayde both ryghtly to interpret his wil, and well to do the same. From *Meaco* the .xix. of February. 1565.

Other suche lyke matter is handled both in other his letters, and also in the Epistles written by his companions, to be seene at large in the aforesayde volume. Amongst the rest this seemed in my iudgement one of the principall, and therefore the rather I tooke bypon me to doe it into Englyshe.

Of the Isles beyond Giapan, in the way from  
China to the Moluccaes.



Amongst other Isles in the Asian sea, betwixt *Cantan* a *Chinishe* haven in *Cathayo*, and the *Moluccaes*, muche spoken of in the *Indisch* histories, & paynted out in *Happes*, *Ainan* and *Santlianium*, are very famous.

*Ainan* standeth nienetiene degrees on this syde of the Equinoctial lyne neare *China*, from whence the *Chinishe* nation haue theyr prouision for shyping and other necessaryes requisite for theyr *India*. There stayed *Balthasar Gagus*, a great trauepler, fūe monethes, who describeth that place after this maner. *Ainan* is a goodly countrey, full of *Indische* fruites, and all kynde of victualles, besydes great store of *Iuelles* and pearle, well inhabited, the townes buylte of stone, the people rude in conditions, apparelled in diuersly coloured rugges, with two Oxe hornes, as it were, made of fyne cypres hangyng downe about theyr eares,

De reb.  
Iap. li. 4.

Liiii, and

## Of the Ilande

and a payre of sharpe cyzers at theyr forehēades.

The cause wherefore they goe in suche attyre, I could not vnderstande, except it be for that they doe counterfaite the deuyll in the fourme of a brute beast, offering to him by them selues.

*Santianum.*

*Santianum*, is an Isle neare vnto the hauen *Cantan*, in the confines lyke wyle of *China*, famous for the death of that woorthie traueyler, and godly professour, and paynesfull doctoz of the *Indy*the nation, in matters concernyng religion, *Francis Xauier*, who after great labours, many iniuries, and calamities infinite suffred with much patience, singular ioye and gladnesse of mynd, departed in a cabben made of bowes and rushes bypon a desarte mountayne, no lesse voyde of all worldly commodities, than endued with all spirituall blessings, out of this lyfe, the seconde day of December, the yeere of our Lorde. 1552. after that many thousandes of these Easterlynges were brought by him to the knowledge of Christ. Of this holy man, his perticular vertues, and specially traueyle, and wonderfull workes in that region. of other many litle Isles, yet not so litle but that they may ryght well be written of at leasure, all the later histories of the *Indy*the regions are full.

FINIS.

# Of the Northeast frostie Seas, and

kyngdoms lying that way, declared by the Duke of Moscouia his ambassadour, to a learned Gentleman of Italie, named Galeatius Butrigarius: likewise of the viages of that worthie old man Sebastian Cabote, sometymes gouernour of the companie of the Merchantes of Cathay, in the Citie of London.



**L**is doubtlesse a marueilous thyng to consider what changes and alterations were caused in all the Romane Emppyre by the Gothes and Vandales, and other Barbarians into Italy. For by their inuasions were extinguyshed all artes and sciences, and all trades of Merchandies that were vsed in diuers partes of the worlde. The desolation and ignorance whiche ensued hereof, continued as it were a cloude of perpetuall darkenesse among men for the space of foure hundred yeeres and moze, insomuche that none durst aduenture to goe any whyther out of theyr owne native countreys: whereas before the incursions of the sayde Barbarians, when the Romane Emppyre flozysed, they myght safely passe the seas to all partes of East India, whiche was at that tyme as well knowen and frequented, as it is now by the navigations of the Portugales. And that this is true, it is manifest by that whiche Strabo wytteth, who was in the tyme of Augustus and Tiberius. For speakyng of the greatnesse and ryches of the citie of Alexandria in Egypt (gouerned then as a prouince of the Romanes) he wytteth thus. This onely place of Egypt, is apte to receyue all thynges that come by sea, by reason of the commoditie of the hauen; and lykewyse all suche thynges as are brought by lande, by reason of the ryuer of Nilus, whereby they may bee easily conueyed to Alexandria, beyng

The Romane Emppyre.

4. hundred yeeres of ignorance.

East India well knowen in olde tyme.

Strabo.

The great ryche of Egypt.

The citie of Alexandria.



## Of the Northeast frosty sea

by these commodities the rycheſt citie of merchauntes that is in the worlde . The reuenues of Egypt are ſo great, that *Marcus Tullius* ſayth in one of his orations, that kyng *Ptolemy*, ſurnamed *Auleta*, the father of queene *Cleopatra*, had of reuenues twelue thouſande and fyue hundred talentes, whiche are ſeuē millions and a halfe of golde . If therefore this kyng had ſo great reuenues when Egypt was gouerned of ſo fewe and ſo negligently, what myght it then be woorth to the Romanes, by whom it was gouerned with great diligence, and theyr trade of merchandies greatly increaſed by the traffike of *Trogloditica* and *India* : wheras in tyme paſt there coulde hardly be founde. xx. ſhyppes togeather that durſt enter into the gulfe of *Arabie*, or ſhewe theyr prowelle without the mouth of the ſame. But at this preſent, great nauies ſayle togeather into *India*, and to the furtheſt partes of *Ethiope*, from whence are brought many rich and pretious merchandies into Egypt, and are caried from thence into other countreys . And by this meanes are the cuſtomes redoubled, aſwel by ſuch thynges as are brought thither, as alſo by ſuche as are caried from thence, forasmuche as great cuſtomes aryle of thinges of great value . And that by this voya-ge infinite and pretious merchandies were brought from the redde ſea and *India*, and thoſe of dyuers other ſortes then are knowne in our tyme, it appeareth by the fourth volume of the ciuile lawe, wherein is deſcribed the commiſſion of *Thempe- rours*, *Marcus* and *Commodus*, with the rehearſall of al ſuch ſtuſſe and merchandies, wherof cuſtome ſhoulde be payde in the redde ſea, by ſuche as had the ſame in fee farme, as were payde the cuſtomes of all other prouinces partaynyng to the *Romane Emperre* : and they are theſe folowynge.

*Cinamome.*

*Long pepper.*

*Whyte pepper.*

*Cloues.*

*Coſtus.*

*Cancomio.*

*Spikenarde.*

*Cassia.*

*Sweete perfumes*

*Nilocassia.*

*Oyr.*

*Amome.*

*Ginger.*

*Malabattrum.*

*Ammoniac.*

*Galbane.*

*Laffer.*

*Agarike.*

*Gumme*

*Marneplous  
rycheſſe.*

*The gouer-  
nauice and  
reuenues of the  
Romanes.  
Trogloditica.  
and India.  
The gulfe of  
Arabia.*

*Ethiope.*

*Arch cuſtoms.*

*The rycheſſe  
whiche were  
brought in  
olde tyme from  
India and the  
redde ſea.*

*The commiſ-  
ſion of Thempe-  
rours Marcus  
and Comos-  
bus.*

Gumme of Arabie.

Cardamome.

Fillocinamome.

Carpesio.

Sylkes of diuers sortes.

Lynnen cloth.

Skyppes and Furre of Par-  
thia and Babylon.

Tuorie.

Wood of Heben.

Precious stones.

Pearles.

Jewelless of Sardonica.

Ceraunia.

Calamus Aromaticus.

Berille.

Cilindro.

Slaués.

Cloth of Sarmatia.

The sylke called Metara.

Vestures of sylke.

Died cloth, and sylke.

Carbalei.

Sylke theede.

Selued men.

Hoppingayes.

Lions of India.

Leopardes.

Panthers.

Purple.

Also that iuyce or lyquour whiche is gathered of wooll, and of  
the heare of the Indians.

By these woordes it doeth appeare, that in olde tyme the said  
nauigation by the way of the red sea, was wel knowen, & muche  
frequented, & perhaps moze then it is at this present: Insomuch  
that the ancient kynges of Egypt, consydering the great profite  
of the customes they had by the viages of the red sea, and wylling  
to make the same moze easie & conuinodious, attempted to make  
a fosse or chanel, which shoulde begin in the last part of the said sea,  
where was a citie named *Arfinoe* (which perhappes is that that  
is now called *Sues*) and shoulde haue reached to a branch of the  
riuer of *Nilus*, named *Pelufio*, whiche emptieth it selfe in our sea  
toward the East, about the citie of *Damiata*. They determined  
also to make three causeys or hygh wayes by land, which shoulde  
passe from the sayd branch to the citie of *Arfinoe*: but they founde  
this too difficult to byng to passe. In fine, king *Ptolomeus* surna-  
named *Philadelphus*, ordeyned another way, as to sayle byppon  
*Nilus*, agaynst the course of the riuer, vnto the citie of *Copto*,  
and from thence to passe by a desert countrey, vntyl they come a-  
boue the red sea, to a citie named *Berenice*, or *Mioformo*, where  
they imbarcked al their merchandise and wares for *India*, *Ethiope*,  
and *Arabie*, as appeareth by the wyptyng first of *Strabo* (who  
wypteth that he was in Egypt) and then by *Plinie*, who was in  
the

The great ri-  
ches the kings  
of Egypt had  
by customes.

The noble en-  
terpryses of the  
kings of Egypt  
*Arfinoe*.  
*Damiata*.  
*Pelufio*.

*Nilus*.  
*Copto*.

*Berenice*.

A nauigable  
trench made  
from Egypt to  
the red sea.  
*Lacus amari.*

King Sesoſtre.

King Psammis-  
ticus.  
King Darius.

King Ptolom-  
eus.

The citie  
Heroun.

What Plinie  
writeth of the  
nauigable  
trench.

The largeneſſe  
and length of  
the trench.

the tyme of Domitian. *Strabo* alſo, ſpeaking of the ſaide ſoſſe or trench whiche was made towarde the redde ſea, wryteth thus, There is a trench that goeth towarde the red ſea, & the gulfe of *Arabie*, and to the citie of *Arsinoe*, whiche ſome call *Cleopatriada*, and paſſeth by the lakes named *Amari* (that is) bytter, becauſe in deede they were ſyſte bytter: but after that this trench was made, and the ryuer entred in, they became ſweete, and are at this preſent ful of foules of the water, by reaſon of their pleaſantneſſe. This trench was ſyſte begunne by king *Sefoſtre*, beſore the battaile of *Troy*. Some ſay that it was begunne by king *Psammiticus*, while he was a childe, and that by reaſon of his death it was left imperfect: alſo, that afterwarde, king *Darius* ſucceeded in the ſame enterpriſe, who woulde haue finiſhed it, but yet brought it not to the ende, becauſe he was enſourmed that the redde ſea was higher then *Egypt*, and that if this lande (diuiding both the ſeas) were opened, all *Egypt* ſhoulde be drowned thereby. King *Ptolomeus* woulde in deede haue finiſhed it, but yet left it ſhut at the head, that he myght, when he woulde, ſayle to the other ſea, and retorne without peryll. Here is the citie of *Arsinoe*, and neare vnto that, the citie called *Heroun*, in the vttermoſt parte of the gulfe of *Arabie*, towarde *Egypt*, with many portes and habitations. *Plinie* likewiſe, ſpeaking of this trench, ſayth, In the furtheſt part of the gulfe of *Arabie*, is a porte called *Danco*, from whence they determined to bypnyng a nauigable trench vnto the riuer of *Nilus*, whereas is the firſte *Delta*. Betweene the ſaide ſea and *Nilus*, there is a ſtreict of lande of the length of .lxii. miles. The firſte that attempted this thing, was *Sefoſtre* king of *Egypt*, & after him *Darius* king of the *Persians*, whom *Ptolomeus* folowed, who made a trench a hundred foote large, and thirtie foote deepe, being .CCC. miles in length, vnto the lakes named *Amari*, and durſt proceede no further for feare of inundation, hauing knowledge that the red ſea was higher by three cubites then all the countrey of *Egypt*. Other ſay that this was not the cauſe: but, that he doubted that yf he ſhoulde haue let the ſea come any further, all the water of *Nilus* ſhoulde haue been thereby corrupted, whiche onely miniſtreth drynke to all *Egypt*. But notwithstanding, all theſe thinges aforeſayde, all this viage is frequented by lande  
from

from Egypt to the redde sea, in whiche passage are three Causeyes or hygh wayes. The fyrst begynneth at the mouth of Nilus, named *Pelutio*: All whiche way is by the sandes, inso-  
 muche that if there were not certayne hygh Reedes fyrst in the earth, to shew the yght way, the Causey could not be found, by reason the wynde euer couereth it with sand. The seconde Causey is two myles from the mountayne *Cassius*: And this also in the ende of threescore myles, commeth bypon the way of Causey of *Pelusius*, inhabited with certayne Arabians, called *Antei*. The thyrde begynneth at *Gerro*, named *Adipson*: and passeth by the same Arabians, for the space of threescore miles, somewhat shorter, but full of rough mountaynes, and great scarcenelle of water. All these Causeyes, leade the way to the cite of *Arsinoe*, builded by *Ptolomeus Philadelphus* in the gulfie *Carandra* by the redde sea. This *Ptolomeus* was the fyrst that searched all that part of the red sea, whiche is called *Trogloditica*. Of this trench, described of *Strabo* and *Plinie*, there are seene certeyne tokens remaynyng at this present, as they do affirme whiche haue been at *Sues* beyonde the cite of *Alcayr*, otherwysse called *Babylon* in Egypt. But the merchauntes that of later dayes trauallye this viage by lande, ryde through the drye and barren desertes, on Camels, both by day and by nyght, directyng theyr waye by the starres and compasse, as do mariners on the sea, and caryng with them water sufficient for many dayes forneys. The places of *Arabie*, and *India*, named of *Strabo* and *Plinie*, are the selfe same where the *Portugales* practive theyr trade at this day, as the maners and customes of the *Indians* doo yet declare: for euen at this present their women vse to burne them selues alyue with the dead bodyes of their hus bandes. Whiche thyng (as wyrteth *Strabo* in his .xv. booke) they dyd in olde tyme by a lawe, for this consyderation, that sometyne being in loue with other, they forlooke or poysoned their hus bandes. And for as muche as accorpyng to this custome, the olde Poet. *Propertius* (who lyued about an hundred yeres before the incarnation of *Christ*) hath in his booke made mention of the contention that was among the *Indian* women, whiche of them shoulde be burned alyue with theyr hus bandes. I haue thought good to subscribe his verses, whiche are these.

The viage by land from Egypt to the red sea.

What kyng *Ptolomeus* discovered,

*Alcayr*.

The viage to East India frequented in olde tyme.  
 The customes and maners of the *Indians*.



## Of the northest frosty sea.

*Felix Eois lex funeris vna maritis,  
Quos aurora suis rubra colorat equis.  
Namque vbi mortifero iacta est fax vltima lecto,  
Vxorum fufis stat pia turba comis,  
Et certamen habent letbi, quæ vna sequatur  
Coniugium, pudor est non licuisse mori.  
Ardent victrices, & flammæ pectora præbent.  
Imponuntque suis ora perusta viris.*

As touchyng these viages both by sea and by lande to East India and Cathay, many thinges are wyrtten very largely by diuers autours, which I omit, because they parteyne not so much vnto vs as doth the viage attempted to Cathay by the north seas, and the coastes of Moscouia, discovered in our tynie by the viage of that excellent young man Rycharde Chaunceller, no lesse learned in al mathematicall sciences, then an expert pilotte, in the yeere of our Lorde .1554. As concernyng this viage, I haue thought good to declare & communication which was betwene the sayd learned man Galeatius Butrigarius, and that great philosopher and noble gentleman of Italie named Hieronimus Fracastor, as I fynd wyrtten in the Italian histories of nauigations. As they were therefore conferrynge in matters of learnyng, and reasoning of the science of Cosmographie, the saide learned man, havyng in his hand an instrument of Astronomie, declared with a large oration howe much the worlde was bound to the kinges of Portugale, rehearsing the noble factes done by them in India, and what landes and Ilandes they had discovered, and howe by theyr nauigations they made the whole worlde to hang in the apper. He further declared of what partes of the ball, the earth remayned yet vndiscovered: and sayde, that of the landes of the inferior hemispherie, or halfe compasse of the ball towarde the pole Antartike, there was nothyng knowen but that litle of the coaste of Brasilia, vnto the streyght of Magellanus: also a parte of Peru: also a litle aboue Affrike towarde the cape of Bona Speranza. Also that he marueyled without measure, that this thyng was no better consydered of Christian Princes, to whom God hath deputed this charge, havyng euer on theyr counsaile men of great learning, which may informe them of this thing, being so marueplous and noble, wherby they may obtayne glorie

The voyaget  
to Cathay.

Rycharde  
Chaunceller.

A learned des-  
cription of dy-  
uers voyages.

The voyages  
of the Portu-  
gales.  
The worlde  
hangyng in  
the apper.  
What is kno-  
wen of the so-  
uer hemispherie.  
The lande of  
Basilie.  
Peru.  
The charge and  
dutie of Chris-  
tian princes.  
Note.

glozy and fame by vertue, and be imputed among men as gods, by better demerites then euer were *Hercules* & great *Alexander*, who traueyled onely into *India*: and that by makynge the men of this our Hemispherie knowen to them of the other halfe compasse of the ball beneathe vs, they myght by the tytle of this enterpryse, without comparison, farre excell all the noble factes that euer were doone by *Iulius Caesar*, or any other of the *Romane* Emperours. Whiche thyng they myght easily byng to passe, by assigning colonies to inhabite diuers places of that Hemispherie, in lyke maner as dyd the *Romanes* in prouinces newly subdued: whereby they myght not onely attayne great riches, but also enlarge the *Christian* fayth and Empire, to the glozy of God, and confusion of infidels. After this, he spake of the *Ilande* of *Saint Laurence*, called in olde tyme *Madagascar*, whiche is greater then the realme of *Castile* and *Portugale*, and reacheth from the .xii. degree towarde the *Pole* *Antarctike*, vnto the .xvi. degree and a halfe, lying *North-east* from the cape of *Bona Speranza*, and partly vnder the lyne of *Tropicus Capricorni*, beyng wel inhabited, and of temperate ayre, with abundance of all thynges necessary for the lyfe of man, and one of the mosse excellent *Ilandes* that is founde this day in the worlde: And that neuerthelesse there is nothing knowen thereof, except onely a fewe small Hauens by the sea syde, as the lyke ignorance remaineth of the greatest part of the *Ilandes* of *Taprobana*, *Giaua*, the more and the lesse, and infinite other. Then begynnyng to speake of the partes of our *Pole*, he caused the booke of *Plinie* to be brought hym, where diligently pondering the .lxvii. Chapter of the seconde booke, he founde where he rehearseth the historie of *Cornelius Nepos*, by these wordes: That in his tyme one *Eudorus* escappynge the handes of kynge *Labyro*, departed from the gulfe of *Arabie*, and came by sea to the *Ilande* of *Calesc*: Declaryng further, that whereas this narration was manye yeeres reputed for a fable, was now in our tyme, by the vertue of the *Portugales*, knowen to be true: And that lyke wyse the same *Cornelius Nepos* reciteth, that at the tyme when *Quintus Metellus Celer* was *Proconsul* or *Lieutenant* for the *Romanes* in *Fraunce*, the kynge of *Suenia* graue hym certayne *Indians*, whiche sayling out of *India* for mercha-

*Hercules* and  
*Alexander*.

The colonies of  
the *Romanes*  
in regions sub-  
dued.

The great *I-*  
lande of *Sapnct*  
*Laurence* or  
*Madagascar*.

The *Ilands* of  
*Taprobana* or  
*Giaua*.  
*Plinie*.

The historie of  
*Cornelius Nes-*  
*pos*.

Shypps of *Ind-*  
*ia* brum into  
the sea of *Gere-*  
*manie*.

dise,

dies, were by tempest dyuen to the coastes of Germanie. When he had redde these wordes, he proceeded, saying that the same thyng myght be verified nowe in our tyme, if the princes which confine vppon that sea woulde endeuoure theyr industry and diligence to byng it to passe : and that there coulde not any nauigation be imagined so commodious and profitable to all Christians as this way might be, if by this voyage shoulde be found open to India, to come to the ryche countrey of Cathay, whiche was discovered nowe two hundred yeeres since by Marcus Paulus . Then takyng the globe in his hande, he made demonstration that this voyage shoulde bee very shorte, in respect of that which the Portugales nowe folowe, and also of that which the Spanyardes may attempt, to the Ilandes of Molucca. He declared furthermore, that the citie of *Lubyke*, beyng ryche and of great power, and situate vppon the sea of Germanie, and also accustomed with continual nauigations to trauayle the sea of Norway and Gothlande, and lykewyse the ryght noble kyng of Polonie, whose dominions, with his realme of Lithuania, extende to the saide sea, shoulde be apte to discover this secreete: But that aboue al other, the Duke of Moscouia, should perfourme the same, with greater commoditie, & more facilitie then any other Prince . And here stayng a while, he began to speake againe, and said. Nowe, forasmuch as we are come to this passe, me thinke it should seeme a great discourtesie if I should not shew you al that I knowe as touching this viage, whereof I greatly mused with my selfe many yeeres by occasion of the wordes of Polinie . Whereas therfore, beyng a young man, I was in Germanie in the citie of *Augsta*, it so chaunced that in those dayes there came thither an ambassadour of the Duke of Moscouia, a man singularly learned both in the Greeke tongue & the Latine, and of good experience in worldely thynges, hauing been sent to dyuers places by the sayde Prince, and one of his counsaile . Of whose learnyng beyng aduertised, I sought his acquayntaunce, and talkyng with hym one daye of these Indians, dyuen by fortune to the coastes of Germanie, and of the viage that myght be discovered by the North sea to the Ilandes of spices, I perceyued that at the fyrst he marueyled exceedyngly, as at a thyng that he coulde neuer haue imagined . But restyng a while

An enterpryse  
wherby Princes  
may ob-  
taine true  
fame and  
glory.  
Cathay discovered by Marcus Paulus.

The citie of  
Lubyke.

The kyng of  
Polonie.

The Duke of  
Moscouia.

An ambassa-  
dour from the  
Duke of Mos-  
couia.

whyle in maner astonyshe in his secrete phantasie, hee tooke great pleasure therein, and sayde: forasmuch as the Portugales haue now compassed about all the South partes, supposed in old tyme to bee inaccessible by reason of great heate, why should we not certaynely thynke that the lyke may bee done about this parte of the North, without feare of colde, especially to men borne and brought vp in that climate: Yet proceeding further, he sayde, that if his Prince and maister had men that would animate him to discover this vyage, there was no Prince in Christendome that myght doe it with more facilitie. Then calling for a Mappe, in which was the description of Moscouia, and the prouinces subiect to the same, hee declared that from the citie of Moscouia or Mosca, goyng towarde the Northeast for the space of .lx. myles, they come to the ryuer of Volochda, and afterwarde by that, and folowynge the course thereof, to the citie of Vsting, so called, bycause the ryuer of Iug falleth into the ryuer of Succana, where they lose theyr owne names, and make the great ryuer Diina, and by that, leaueing on the ryght hande the citie of Colmogor, they sayle vnto the North Ocean. The which way, although it bee a long tracte, as more then .800. myles, neuerthelesse he sayd that in sommer it myght commodiously be sayled. And that whereas it falleth into the sea, there are infinite woods of goodly trees, apte to make shyppes, and the place so conuenient for this purpose, that shypwryghtes and other skylfull woorkemen for all thinges heerevnto apperteynyng, may easily come out of Germanie: also, that the men which are vsed to traueyle the sea of Germanie about the coastes of Gothlande, should bee best and most apte to attempt this enterpryse, bycause they are indurate to abyde colde, hunger, and labour. He sayde furthermore, that in the court of his Prince, they haue muche knowledge of the great Cam of Cathay, by reason of the continuall warres they haue with the Tartars, of whom the greatest parte gyue obedience to the sayd great Cam, as to theyr chiefe Emperour. He made also demonstration in the sayde carde by the Northeast, that being past the prouince of Permia, and the ryuer Pescora (which falleth into the North sea) & certeine mountaines named Catena Mundi, there is the entrance into the prouince of Obdora, whereas is Vecchiadoro, and the ryuer Obo, whiche also

The woordes  
of the Amba-  
sador of  
Moscouia.

The way from  
Moscouia to  
the North O-  
cean & Cathay

Molochda,  
Vsting.  
Iug.  
Succana.  
Diina.  
Colmogor.  
The North  
Ocean.

Great woods,

Gothlande,

The Moscos-  
uites haue  
knowledge of  
the great Cam  
of Cathay.  
Permia.  
Pescora.  
Catena mundi  
Obdora,  
Vecchiadoro,  
Obo.



The lake Chet-  
shap.  
The Tartars.

The citie of  
Cambalu.

Arte this ses-  
crete.

Difficultie tra-  
uepyng in  
Moscouia.

Commendati-  
on of the Spa-  
nyardes and  
Portugales.

The hystorie of  
Paulus Cen-  
turio.

Of this reade  
more at large  
in the booke of  
Paulus Jos-  
tius.

Malice may  
doe more wick-  
edly then  
vertue.

The Caspian  
sea.  
Riga.  
Liunia.

falleth into the sayde sea, and it is the furthest border of  
Themppye of the Prince of Moscouia. The sayde ryuer hath his  
originall in a great lake called *Chetbai*, which is the fyrst habita-  
cion of the *Tartars*, that paye tribute to the great Cane. And  
from this lake for the space of two moneths byage (as they were  
credyibly informed by certayne *Tartares* taken in the warres) is  
the most noble citie of *Cambalu*, beyng one of the chiefeest in the  
dominion of the great Cane, whom some call the great Cham.  
He also affyrmed, that if theyppes should be made on the coastes  
of the sayde sea, and sayle on the backe halfe of the coast thereof  
(which he knew by many relations made to his Prince, to reach  
infinitely towarde the Northeast) they should doubtesse in fo-  
lowyng the same, easily discouer that countrey. Unto these  
woordes he added, that although there were great difficultie in  
Moscouia, by reason that the way to the sayde sea is full of thicke  
woods and waters, whiche in the sommer make great mary-  
shes, and impossible to be traueyled, as well for lacke of victuals,  
whiche can not there be founde, not for certayne dayes, but for  
the space of certayne monethes, the place beyng desolate with-  
out inhabitauntes: neuerthelesse he sayde, that if there were with  
his Prince, onely two Spanyardes or Portugales, to whom  
the charge of this viage should be committed, he no wayes doub-  
ted but that they would folowe it, and fynde it, forasmuch as with  
great ingeniousnesse and inestimable pacience, these nations  
haue ouercome much greater difficulties then are these, whiche  
are but litle in comparison to those that they haue ouerpasse, and  
doe ouerpasse in all their viages to India. He proceeded, decla-  
ryng that not many yeeres since, there came to the court of his  
Prince, an Ambassadour from pope Leo. named maister *Paulo*  
*Centurione*, a Genuese, vnder dyuers pretences. But the princy-  
pall occasion of his commyng, was, because hee had conceived  
great indignation and hatred agaynst the Portugales: And ther-  
fore intended to proue if he could open any byage by land, wher-  
by spyces myght be brought from India by the lande of *Tar-  
taria*, or by the sea *Caspium* (otherwys called *Hircanum*): to *Mos-  
couia*, and from thence to be brought in theyppes by the ryuer  
*Riga*, which runnyng by the countrey of *Liunia*, falleth into the  
sea of *Germanie*: And that his Prince gaue eare vnto him, and  
caused

caused the sayde vyage to be attempted by certaine noble men of Lorde, of the Tartars continuing next unto him. But the warres which were then betwene them, and the great desartes which they should of necessitie ouerpasse, made them leaue of theyr enterpryse: whiche if it had ben purposed by the coastes of this our North sea, it might haue been easily synysed. The sayde Ambassadour continued his narration, saying that no man ought to doubt of that sea, but that it may be sayled sixe monethes in the yere, forasmuche as the dayes are then very long in that clime, and hot, by reason of continuall reuerberation of the beames of the Sunne, and shorthe nyghtes: And that this thing were as well woorthie to bee pꝛoued, as anye other navigation, whereby many parties of the worlde, heeretofore vnknewen, haue beene discovered and brought to ciuilitie. And heere making an ende of this talke, he sayde: Let vs now omit this parte of Discouita with his colde, and speake somewhat of that parte of the newe worlde, in whiche is the lande of Brytons, called *Terra Britonum*, and *Baccalos*, or *Terra Baccalarum*, where in the yere. 1534. and. 1535. Iaques Cartier, in two vyages made with thre great French Gallies, founde the great and large countreys named *Canada*, *Ochelaga*, and *Sanguenai*: which reach from the. xlv. to the. 51. degree, beyng well inhabited, and pleasaunt countreys, and named by him *Noua Francia*. And here staying a while, and lyfing by his handes, he sayde, Oh what doe the Christian princes meane, that in suche landes discovered, they doe not assigne certayne colonies to inhabite the same, to bying those people (whom God hath so blessed with naturall giftes) to better ciuilitie, and to embꝛase our religion, then the whiche, nothing can bee more acceptable to God: The sayd regions also, beyng so fayre and fruitfull, with plentie of all sortes of corne, hearbes, fruites, wood, fyshes, beastes, metals, and ryuers of suche greatnesse that shippes may sayle more then. 180. myles vpon one of them, beyng on both sydes infinitely inhabited: And to cause the gouernours of the sayde colonies to searche whether that lande toward the North, named *Terra de Laborador*, doe ioyn as one firme lande with Norway: Or whether there bee any streight or open place of sea, as is most lyke there should be, forasmuche as it is to bee thought that the sayde Indians, or yuen by fortune

The Tartars of Laldo,

Desartes.  
The vyage by the North sea.

The woorthinesse of this vyage.

The vyages of the Frenchmen to the lande of Baccalos.

Pleasaunt countreys.  
New France.  
Apostrophe to the Christian Princes.

Great ryuers.

Althynge woorthie to be searched.

## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

The way to Cathay and the Ilandes of Molucca by the North-west. A notable enterpryse. The noble enterpryse of Antonie di Mendosa, viceroy of Mexico.

The discovering of the North-west partes.

Shippes sayling from Cathay by the North Hyperborean sea, to the coastes of the North-west parte of the lande of Sacaleas. Cathay.

The sea from newe Fraunce or Terra Virconum to Cathay.

A notable booke.

about the coastes of Norway, came by that streight of sea, to the coastes of Germanie, and by the sayde streight to sayle north-west, to discover the landes and countreys of Cathay, and from thence to sayle to the Ilandes of Molucca, and these surely should bee enterpryses able to make men immortall. The which thing, that ryght woorthie Gentleman maister *Antony di Mendoza* considering, by the singular vertue and magnanimitie that is in him, attempted to put this thyng in practyse. For being viceroy of the countrey of Mexico (so named of the great citie Mexico, otherwysse called *Temistitan*, now called new Spayne, beyng in the .xx. degree aboute the Equinoctiall, and parte of the sayde firme lande) he sent certeyne of his Captaines by lande, and also a nauie of shippes by sea, to search this secrete. And I remember that when I was in Flaunders in Theemperours court, I saw his letter wyrtten in the yere. 1541. and dated from Mexico: wherein was declared howe towarde the North-west, he had founde the kyngdome of *Sette Citta* (that is) seven Cities, whereas is that, called *Ciuola*, by the reuerende father *Marco da Niza*: and howe beyonde the sayde kyngdome yet further towarde the North-west, Captayne *Francesco Vasques* of Coronado, hauing ouerpasse great desertes, came to the sea syde, where he founde certayne shippes which sayled by that sea with merchandies, and had in theyr banner vypon the podes of theyr shippes, certayne foules made of golde and siluer, which they of Mexico call *Alcatrazzi*, and that theyr mariners shewed by signes that they were xxx. dayes saylyng, in comyng to that hauen: whereby he vnderstoode that these shippes could be of none other countrey then of Cathay, forasmuch as it is situate on the contrary parte of the sayde lande discovered. The sayd maister Antonie wrote furthermore, that by the opinion of men well practised, there was discovered so great a space of that countrey vnto the sayde sea, that it passed 950. leagues, whiche make 2850. myles. And doubtlesse if the Frenche men, in this theyr newe Fraunce, would haue passed by lande toward the sayd North-west and by North, they should also haue founde the sea whereby they myght haue sayled to Cathay. But aboute all thynges, this seemed vnto me most woorthie of commendation, that the sayde maister Antonie wrote in his letter, that he had made a booke of al the naturall

and marueplous thinges whiche they founde in searchyng those countreys, with also the measures of landes, and altitudes of degrees: A worke doubtesse which sheweth a princely and magnificall mynd, wherby we may conceiue that if God had giuen him the charge of the other hemispherie, he would or now haue made it better knowen to vs. The which thing I suppose no man doth greatly esteeme at this tyme: beyng neuerthelesse the greatest and most glortous enterpryse that may be imagined.

As great and glorious enterpryse.

And heere making a certayne pause, and turnyng him selfe towardes vs, hee sayde, Doe you not vnderstande to this purpose, howe to passe to India towardes the Northwest wynde, as dyd of late a citizen of Venece, so baliant a man, and so well practised in all thinges perteynyng to nauigations, and the science of Cosmographie, that at this present hee hath not his lyke in Spayne, insonnuche that for his vertues hee is preferred aboue all other pylottes that sayle to the West Indies, who may not passe thither without his lycence, and is therefore called *Piloto Maggiore* (that is) the graunde pylote. And when we sayde that wee knewe him not, hee proceeded, saying, that beyng certayne peeres in the citie of Smile, and desirous to haue some knowledge of the nauigations of the Spanyarde, it was tolde him that there was in the citie a baliant man, a Veneccian boyne, named *Sebastian Cabote*, who had the charge of those thinges, beyng an expert man in that science, and one that could make cardes for the sea with his owne hande: and that by this repozte, seekyng his acquayntaunce, hee founde him a very gentle person, who enterteined him friendly, and shewed him many thinges, and among other a large Mappe of the worlde, with certayne perticular nauigations, as well of the Portugales as of the Spanyarde: and that hee spake further vnto him, in this effecte. When my father departed from Venece, many peeres since, to dwell in Englande, to folowe the trade of merchandyses, hee tooke mee with him to the citie of London, whyle I was very young, yet hauing neuerthelesse some knowledge of letters of humanitie, and of the sphere. And when my father dyed, in that tyme when newes were brought that *Don Christopher Colon*us Genuese, had discovered the coasts of India, wherof was great talke in all the court of kyng Henry the seuenth,

Sebastian Cabote the grand pylot of the West Indies.

Commentation of Sebastian Cabote. Sebastian Cabote tolde me that he was boyne in Wyndesore, & that at .iiii. peeres olde he was carryed with his father to Venice, and so returned as gayne into England with his father after certayne peeres: wherby he was thought to haue ben boyne in Venice.



who then reigned : inſomuche that all men with great admiration affirmed it to be a thing moze diuine then humane, to ſayle by the Weſt into the Eaſt where ſpyces growe, by a way that was neuer knowne before . By which ſame and report, there increaſed in my harte a great flame of deſyre to attempte ſome notable thyng . And vnderſtandynge by reaſon of the ſphere, that if I ſhould ſayle by the way of the Northweſt wynde, I ſhould by a ſhorter tracte come to India, I therevppon cauſed the kyng to bee aduertified of my diuiſe : who immediately commaunded two Carauels to be furnyſhed with all thinges aperteynyng to the vyage, which was as farre as I remember, in the yere. 1496. in the begynnyng of ſommer. Beginning therefoze to ſayle toward Northweſt, not thinking to fynde any other lande then that of Cathay, and from thence to turne toward India . But after certayne dayes, I founde that the lande ranne towarde the North, which was to me a great diſpleaſure . Neuertheleſſe, ſaylyng along by the coaſt, to ſee if I could fynde any gulfe that turned, I founde the lande ſtyll continent to the, 56. degree vnder our pole : And ſeepeyng that there the coaſt turned toward the Eaſt, diſpaynyng to fynde the paſſage, I turned backe agayne, and ſayled downe by the coaſt of that lande towarde the Equinoctiall (euer with intent to fynde the ſayde paſſage to India) and came to that parte of this firme lande whiche is nowe called Florida . Where, my victualles ſaylyng, I departed from thence, and returned into Englande, where I founde great tumultes among the people, and preparance for warres in Scotlande : by reaſon whereof, there was no moze conſideration had to this vyage. Wherevppon I went into Spayne, to the Catholyke kyng, and queene Elizabeth : who beyng aduertified what I had done, enterteyned mee, and at theyr charges furnyſhed certayne ſhyppes wherewith they cauſed mee to ſayle to diſcouer the coaſtes of Braſile, where I founde an exceedyng great and large ryuer, named at this preſent Rio della Plata (that is) the ryuer of ſiluer, into the whiche I ſayled, and folowed it into the firme lande moze then ſixe hundred leagues, ſyndyng it euery where very fayre and inhabited with infinite people, whiche with admiration came runnyng dayly to our ſhyppes . Into this ryuer, runne ſomany other riuers, that it is in maner incredible.

After

The fyrſt vyage of Sebaſtian Cabote.

The lande of Florida.

The ſeconde vyage of Cabote to the land of Braſile, and Rio della Plata,

Cabote tolde me that in a region within this ryuer he founde 50. grannes of

After this, I made many other byages, whiche I now permyt. And weyryng olde, I gyue my selfe to rest from suche traueyles, bycause there are nowe many young and lusty Wylotes and mariners of good experience, by whose forwardnesse I doe reioyce in the frutes of my labours, and rest with the charge of this office as you see. And this is as muche as I haue vnderstoode of maister Sebastian Cabote, as I haue geathered out of dyuers nauigations wrytten in the Italian tongue.

Wheate in September, and geathered thereof, 50. thousande in December, as wryteth also Francisco Lopez.

And whereas I haue before made mention howe Moscouia was in our tyme discovered by Richard Chancellor in his viage towarde Cathay, by the direction and information of the sayd maister Sebastian, who long before had this secreete in his mynd, I shall not neede heere to describe that viage, forasmuch as the same is largely and saythfully wrytten in the Latine tongue by that learned young man Clement Adams, schoolemaister to the Queenes Vnshemen, as he receyued it at the mouth of the sayd Richard Chancellor. Neuerthelesse, I haue thought good heere to speake somewhat of Moscouia, as I haue redde in the booke of Iohn Faber, wrytten in the Latine tongue, to the ryght noble Prince Ferdinando, Archduke of Austria, and Infant of Spaine, of the maners and religion of the Moscouites, as he was partly instructed by the Ambassadors of the Duke of Moscouie, sent into Spayne to Theimperours maiestie, in the yeere, 1525. He wryteth therefore as foloweth.

The viage to Moscouia.

The hystory of Moscouia.

I thynke it fyrst conuenient to speake somewhat of the name of this region whereby it is called at this day, and howe it was called in olde tyme. Conferryng therefore the moste auncient of the Greeke and Latine monumentes with the histories of later tyme, I perceyue it to bee a thyng whiche requirith no small iudgement, of wytte and learning. For we see in howe shorte tyme the names of thinges are chaunged, as are also the maners of men. I fynde therefore that those people whom at this day wee commonly call Moscouites, were in tyme past (as wyneffeth Plinie) called *Roxolani*, whom neuerthelesse by chaungyng one letter, Plolome in his eyght table of Europe, calleth *Rosolanos*, as doeth also Strabo. They were also many yeeres called *Rutheni*, and are that people whiche sometyme fought manfully agaynst the Captaynes

The dyuers names of Moscouia.

*Roxolani*,  
*Rosolani*,  
*Rutheni*,

## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

The ryuer  
Mosca.

of *Metbridates*, as *Strabo* writeth. They were called *Moscovites*, of the chiefe citie of all the prouince, named *Moscouia* or *Mosca*: or (as *Volaterane* sayeth) of the ryuer *Mosco*. They were sometime gouerned by Duke *John*, whose wyfe was *Helena*, of the lynage of *The* Emperours of *Constantinople*, of the noble familie of the *Paleologi*. Beyond these *Roxolanos*, *Strabo* sayeth there is no lande inhabited. The *Ruthenians* therfore or *Moscovites*, are people of the Northeast parte of the worlde from vs, and

The ryuer Bo-  
rithenes.

The Emperour  
of Cathay.

The frozen sea.

Lacus Cro-  
nicus.  
Saturnus.

Amaltheum.

The dominion  
of the Duke of  
Moscouia.

The citie of  
Moscouia.  
The chiefe ci-  
ties of Mos-  
couia.

are determined with the limittes of the great ryuer *Boristhenes* of *Scythia*; on the one syde with the *Lituanians* and *Polonians*, and on the other syde with the *Tartars*, who ceasse not to beere them with continuall warres and incursions: Especially the great Emperour *Cham* of *Cathay*, the chiefe Prince of the *Tartars*, resydent by the sea syde in *Taurico Chersoneso*, molesteeth them with sore warres. They are towarde the North syde inclosed with the frozen sea, the lande of whose coastes be- yng very large, perteyneth in maner all to the dominion of the Duke of *Moscouie*. The sea is it whiche the olde wynters call *Lacus Cronicus*, so named of the Greeke woord *Cronos*, which the Latines call *Saturnus*, whom they sayne to be an olde man, of complexion colde and slowe, and thereby name all suche thinges as are colde and slowe, *Cronica*, as by lyke reason they byd this North sea, which beyng in maner euer frozen, is slow and cold, and in maner immoueable. And for lyke consideration (as sayth *Plinie*) *Heathens* nameth it in the *Scythian* tongue, *Amaltheum*, which woord signifieth as much as congealed or frozen. But that I wander not farre from my purpose: The myppe and do- minion of the Duke of *Moscouie*, reacheth so farre, that it com- prehendeth certayne partes of *Asia*, and also of *Europe*. The citie of *Moscouia* or *Mosco*, is counted twofe as byg as *Colonia Agrippina*, as they saythfully repute which know both. Unto this they haue also an other, not vnequall in bygnesse, called *Fladimer*. Also *Blescouia*, *Novogradia*, *Smolne*, and *Otifer*, all which, they Ambassadors affyrme to be of princely and magnificall buyldynges, and strongly defended with walles both of bricke and square stone. Of these, *Blescouia* is strongest, and emui- roned with thre walles. Other whiche they haue innumera- ble, are not so famous as are these wherof this Duke of *Moscouie*

and

and Emperoure of Russia taketh this inscription of his title. For  
 euen at this present, when so euer, eyther by his ambassadours  
 or his letters, he doth signifie hym selfe to be Emperour of  
 Moscouie, he is accustomed to vse this title, *Basilus* by the  
 grace of God Emperour of al Russia, and great Duke of *Flada-*  
*mer, Moscouie, Nouigrade, Blasconia, Smolne, and Otifer.* &c.  
 And this is the tytle whereby the sayde ambassadours saluted  
 your maiestie in the name of great *Basilus* when they began  
 theyr oration. This prince of Moscouie, hath under hym  
 pynces of many prouinces, and those of great power: Of the  
 whiche, that olde whyte bearded man, whom this Emperour of  
 the *Ruthians*, sent for his ambassadeure to Theemperours ma-  
 iestie into Spaine, is not one of the least. For euen he, when ne-  
 cessitie of warre requireth, is accustomed to make for his Em-  
 perour a bande of .xxx. thousand horsemen. But this is to their  
 singular commendation, that they are so obedient to theyr prince  
 in all thynges, that beyng sommoned by hym by neuer so meane  
 an heralde, they obey incontinent, as if it were to god, thynke-  
 ing nothing more glorious then to die in y<sup>e</sup> quarrel of theyr prince.  
 By reason of which obedience, they are able, in short tyme, to as-  
 semble an army of two or three hundred thousand men against  
 theyr enemies, eyther the *Tartares*, or the great *Cham*:  
 And haue hereby obtayned great victories and triumphes, aswell  
 agaynst the *Turks*, as the *Tartars*, by the exceeding multitude of  
 theyr horsemen, and continual experience in warres. At such time  
 as Theemperour *Maximilian* made a league with them, they kept  
 warre against the kyng of *Molonie*. They vse not onely bowes  
 and dartes, after the maner of the *Parthians*, but haue also the  
 vse of gunnes as we haue. And to be bryefe, only the *Moscouites*.  
 may seeme that nation which hath not felte the commodities of  
 peace: Insomuch that if theyr region were not strongly defen-  
 ded by the nature of the place, beyng impregnable, it had or now  
 been oftentimes conquered. Theyr language agreeth muche  
 with the tongue of y<sup>e</sup> *Bobemians, Croatians, and Sclauons*: so that  
 the *Sclauon* doth playnely vnderstande the *Moscouite*, although  
 the *Moscouian* tongue be a more rude and hard phrase of speech.  
 The historiographers wyte that the *Sclauons* tongue tooke  
 the name of the confusion whiche was in *Babell* in the tyme  
 of

The Duke of  
 Moscouia &  
 Emperour of  
 Russia.  
 The duke of  
 Moscouia his  
 tytle.

Duke *Basilus*.

Theyr power.

Theyr obedis-  
 ence to theyr  
 pynce.

Theyr warres  
 & conquestes.

Gunnes.  
 Only the *Mos-*  
*couites* haue  
 not felte the  
 commodities  
 of peace.

Theyr lan-  
 guage.



## Of the Northeast frosty sea

of that stoute hunter *Nemroth*, of whom mention is made in the *Genesis*. But I can not enough marueyle at this thyng, that whereas betweene *Dalmatia* (nowe called *Sclauonia*) and *Mosconia*, both the *Pannonies* are situate, yet this notwithstanding, the *Hungarians* tongue nothyng agreeth with the *Mosconites*. Whereby we may coniecture that these nations were sometymes diuided by legions, and that they came out of *Dalmatia* thither: whiche thyng also *Volateranus* affirmeth, saying that the language of the *Ruthenians* (whiche are the *Mosconites*) is *Semidalmatica* (that is, halfe *Sclauone*) How so euer it be, this is certaine, that the *Bobemians*, *Croatians*, *Sclauons*, & *Moscouites*, agree in language, as we perceiued by thinterpretours whiche your maiestie had then in your court. For whereas the sayd interpretours were bozne among the *Croatians* & *Sclauons*, and none of them had euer been in *Mosconia*, or before that tyme had any conuersation with them, yet dyd they well vnderstande the ambassadours woordes. There are in *Mosconia*, wooddes of exceedyng byggenesse, in the whiche blacke woolues and whyte beares are hunted. The cause whereof may bee the extreme colde of the North, whiche doth greatly alter the complexions of beastes, and is the mother of whitenesse, as the Philosophers affirme. They haue also great plentie of Bees, wherby they haue such abundaunce of hony and ware, that it is with them of smale price. When the commoditie of theyr countrey is neglected by reason of long warres, their chiefe aduantage wherby they haue all thynges necessarie towarde theyr lyuyng, is the gaynes whiche they haue by theyr ryche furrez, as *Sables*, *Parternes*, *Luzernes*, most white *Armingz*, and such other, whiche they sell to merchauntes of dyuers countreys. They bye and sell with simple sayth of woordes, exchaungyng ware for ware, without any curious bondes or cautels. And albeit they haue the vse of both golde and syluer mynes, yet do they for the moste part exchaunge theyr furrez for frutes, and other things necessarie to mainteine their life. There are also some people vnder the dominion of this Emperour, which haue neither wyne nor wheate, but lyue only by fleshe and mylke, as do the wylde *Tartars* theyr borderers, which dwell in woods by the coastes of the frosen sea. These people are bytische,

and

*Dalmatia.*

*Pannonia.*  
*Hungarie.*

Their original.

The Sclauion  
tongue reach  
eth farre.

Great woods,  
white beares  
and blacke  
woolues.  
Abundaunce of  
hony and  
ware.

Furche furrez.

Their maner  
of bargayning.

Finde & wylde  
people.

*Tartares.*

and lyue in maner lyke wyld beasts. But they of the citie of *Mosca* and *Nonigrade*, and other cities, are ciuile people, and agree with vs in eatyng of fysh and fleshe, although theyr maner of coquerpe is in many thynges differyng from ours. Volaterane wyrteth that the *Ruthenians* vse money vncoyned. And enquiryng further, I was informed that the money of *Hungary* is much currant with them. But this is cheeflye to be considered, that they embrace the Chistian faith, whiche they affirme to haue been preached to them fyrst by Sainct Andzewe the Apostle, and bzyther to Simon Peter. Suche doctrine also as vnder *Constantine* the great, in the yeeere. CCC. xlii. was concluded in the fyrst generall counsaile holden in the citie of *Nicene* in *Beethynia*, and there determined by. CCC. xlii. Bysshops, and also liche as hath been wyrtten and taught by the Greeke Doctors *Basilus Magnus* and *Chisostomus*, they beleue to be so holy, fyne, and sincere, that they thynke it no moze lawfull one heare to transgresse or go backe from the same, then from the Gospell of Christ. For theyr constancie and modestie is suche, that no man dare call those thynges into question whiche haue once been decised by holy fathers in theyr general counsailes. They do therfore with a moze constant mynde perseuer in theyr first faith, whiche they receiued of Sainct Andzewe thapostle, and his successoure and holy fathers, then do many of vs, beyng diuided into seismes and sectes, whiche thing neuer chaunceth a nong them. But if any difficultie chaunce to rise as touching the faith or custome of religion, all is referred to the Archebysshop and other bysshops, as to be defined by theyr spirite: not permittynge any iudgement to the inconstant and ignoraunt people. Their Archbysshop is resident in the citie of *Mosca*, where also the Emperour keepeth his court. They haue lykewyse diuers other Bysshops: as one in *Nonigradia*, where also *Isodorus* was Bysshop vnder pope *Eugenius*. They haue an other in *Roscina*, an other in *Sustali*, an other in *Otiferi*: also in *Smolne*, in *Resan*, in *Colmum*, and in *Volat*, all whiche haue theyr Dioces. They acknowledge theyr Archebysshop as the cheefe. Before the patriarke of *Constantinople* was oppressed by the tiramy of the *Turkes*, this Archebysshop recognised hym as his superiour: Insomuche that this Duke of *Mosconia*, and Empe-

Ciuile people  
in ciues.

Theyr money.

They embrace  
the Chistian  
faith which  
they receiued of  
the Apostles.

The counsaile  
of *Nicene*.  
*Basilus*  
*Magnus*.  
*Chisostomus*.

Their constan-  
cie in theyr res-  
ligion.

The bysshops de-  
fine controuer-  
sies in religion.

Theyr bysshops.

The Archbis-  
shop.  
The patriarke  
of *Constantinople*.

## Of the Northeast frosty sea

perour of *Russia*, not vnnyndefail hereof, but a diligent obseruer of his accustomed religion, doth at this daye yeerely sende a certayne stypend, in maner of almes, to the Patriarche of *Constantinople*, that he may with more quiet mynde looke for the ende of this his *Egyptian* seruitude, vntyl it shal please almightie God to restore hym to his former church and auctoritie. For he iudgeth it much impietie, if he shoulde nowe forsake hym whose preedicessours haue ruled and gouerned so many churches, and of whom the fayth and religion of so many regions and prouinces haue depended.

But to speake briesly of theyr religion, they agree in manye thynges with vs, and in some thynges folow the *Greekes*. They haue *Punkes* and religious men. Not farre from the citie of *Mosca*, they haue a great *Monasterie*, in the whiche are three hundred *Punkes*, lpyng vnder the rule of *Basilus Magnus*, in the which is also the sepulchre of *S. Sergius* the Abbot. They obserue theyr vowe of chastitie, whiche none may breake that haue once professed. Yet such as haue married *Virgins* of good fame, may be admitted to thorder of priesthood, but may neuer be a *Punke*. The priestes and *Bishops* whiche are admitted to orders vnmarried, may neuer after be married: nor yet such as haue wiues, marry agayne when they are dead, but liue in perpetual chastitie. Such as commit adulterie or fornication, are greuously punished by the *Bishops*, and depriued of the benefices. They celebrate masse after the maner of the *Greekes*, whiche differeth from ours in diuers thyngs, as in fermented bread, after the maner of the *Greekes*. They put in the Chalice as much water as red wine, which water they vse to heate, because (not without a great mysterie) there issued forth of the syde of our Lord, both blood and water, which we ought by good reason to thynke was not without heat: for els shoulde it scarcely haue been iudged for a miracle. In fine, they affirme that al theyr customes and rites are according to the institutions of the primitive church, and the doctrine of *Basilus Magnus*, and *Chrysostomus*. In this thyng they differ greatly from vs, that they minister the communion to young chyldren of three yeeres of age, which they do with fermented bread dypt in a sponesfull of wine, and geue it to them for the bodye and blood of *Christ*.

A brieue

A notable example of a Christian Prince.

Theyr religion.

A monasterie of ecc. Punkes.

Priesters.

Mass.

A misterie.

The primitive church.

A strange custom.

A bricfe description of Moscouia, after the  
later writers, as Sebastian Munster,  
and Iacobus Gastaldus.



The prouince of Moscouia, is also named of the ryuer Mosco, whiche passeth by the metropolitane citie of Moscouia, called Mosca by the name of the ryuer Mosco. This prouince was called of the olde writers, *Sarmatia Asiatica*. The borderers or confines to the Moscouians on the one syde towarde the East, are the *Tartars*, called *Nogai*, and the *Scianbanians*, with the *Zagatians*. Towarde the West, the prouinces of *Liuania* and *Lituania*. Towarde the South, the ryuer of *Tanais*, and the people confining with the riuer of *Volga*, called of the olde wyriters *Rha*. And towarde the North, the Ocean sea, called the *Scythian sea*, and the region of *Lapponia*, Moscouia is in maner all playne, and full of marlyshes, wooddes, and many very great ryuers, whereof the ryuer of *Volga* is the principall. Some call this *Ledil*, as the olde authours named it *Rha*. It begynneth at the great lake called *Lacus Albus* (that is) the white lake, and runneth into the sea of *Bachau*, named of the auncient wyriters, the sea *Caspium* or *Hircanum*. Under the dominion of Moscouia, are certayne regions and Dukedomes: as *Alba Russia* (that is) whyte Russia). Also *Colmogora*, *Plescouia*, *Basrida*, *Nouogradia*, with also manie places of the *Tartars*, whiche are subiecte to the Duke of Moscouia. The chiefe cities of Moscouia, are *Mosca*, *Plescouia*, *Nouogradia*, *Colmogora*, *Otogeria*, *Viatra*, *Smolenser*, *Percaslania*, *Cologna*, *Volodemaria*, *Roslania*, and *Cassam*. The people of Moscouia are Christians, and haue great abundaunce of hony and waxe: also ryche furre, as *Sables*, *Barternes*, *Fopnes*, and dyuers other. All the *Tartars* whiche inhabite towarde the East beyonde the ryuer of *Volga*, haue no dwelling places, nor yet cities or Castles, but cary about with them certayne carres or wagens covered with beastes hydes, vnder the whiche they rest, as we do in our houses.

*Sarmatia Asiatica.*

The *Scythian Ocean.*

The ryuer of *Volga.*  
*Lacus albus.*

The *Caspian sea.*

The chiefe cities.

The wyldes *Tartars.*

The



**Hordas.**

They remoue togeather in great companyes, whiche they call *Hordas*. They are warlyke people, and good horsemen, and are all *Macometistes*.

**The bygges of  
the cite of  
Moscouia.**

*Sebastian Munster* in his booke of *Uniuersall Cosinographie*, wyrteth that the cite of *Mosca* or *Moscouia* conteyneth in circuite .xliii. myles, and that it is twyse as bygge as the cite of *Praga* in *Bohemie*. Of the countrey of *Moscouia*, belyde other prouinces subiecte to the same, he wyrteth thus: It extendeth in largenesse foure hundred myles, and is ryche in spyuer. It is lawfull for no man to go out of the realme, or come in, without the

**Spyuer.  
The region of  
Moscouia.**

Dukes letters. It is playne without mountaynes, and full of woodds and marishes. The beastes there, by reason of the colde,

**Beastes.**

are lesse then in other countreys more southwarde. In the middest of the cite of *Mosca*, beyng situate in a playne, there is a

**A fayre and  
stronge castel  
in the cite of  
Mosca.**

Castell with .xlii. towres, and three bulwarkes, so strong & fayre, that the lyke are scarcely seene in any other place. There are

**The Dukes  
pallaice.  
Thei dyynke.**

also in the Castell .xvi. churches, and three very large courtes, in the whiche the noble men of the courte haue thei lodgynge.

**They are ges  
nen to dyun  
kennele.**

The Dukes pallaice is buyded after the maner of the Italian buyldyng, and very fayre, but not great. Thei dyynke is mede

**Cozne and  
grapne.**

and beere, as is the maner of the most part of the people that inhabite the North partes of the woozde. They are exceedyngly

**Stoues.**

geuen to dyonkennele. Yet (as some saye) the prynces of the lande are prohibit on payne of death to absteyne from suche

**The famous  
rpuer of Ta  
nais.**

stronge drynkes as are of force to inebriate, except at certayne times when licence is graunted them, as twise or thise in the

yeere. They plowe the ground with horses, and plowes of wood. They cozne and other grapne, by reason of long colde, do sel-

dome ware rype on the ground, by reason wherof they are sometimes inforced to rype & dnye them in their stoues and hot houses, and then grynd them. They lacke wyne and oyle. *Moscouia*

is extended vnto *Iurham* and *Corelia* which are in *Scythia*. The famous rpuer of *Tanais*, the *Moscouites* call *Don*, haupyng

his spynges and originall in *Moscouia* in the Dukedome of *Rezense*. It rplyeth out of a ground that is playne, baren, muddy,

full of maryshes and wooddes. And where it procedeth toward the East to the mountaynes of *Scythia* and *Tartarie*, it bendeth to the south: and commyng to the maryshes of *Meotis*.

it falleth into them. The riuer of *Volga* (sometyme called *Rha*, and now called of the *Tartars Edel*) runneth towards the North certaine myles, to whom is ioyned the riuer *Occa* or *Ocha*, flowing out of *Moscouia*, and then bendyng into the South, and encreased with many other riuers, falleth into the sea *Euxinum*, which diuideth *Europe* and *Asia*.

The marshes of *Meotis*.  
*Volga*.  
*Ocha*.

The sea *Euxinum*.

The forest of *Hircania*.

*Uri*.  
*Alces*.

The trauipling in winter on sleades.

Causeys of timber.

Trees and fruites.

Corne and grapes.

Hony in woods and trees.

The wood or forest called *Hircania silua*, occupieth a small portion of *Moscouia*: Yet is it somewhere inhabited, and by the long labour of men, made thynner and barer of trees. In that part that lieth toward *Prussia*, is a kinde of great & fierce *Balles*, called *Vri* or *Bisonts*, as writeth *Paulus Iouius*. There are also *Alces*, much lyke vnto *Hartes*, with long snowtes of flesh, and long legges without any bowyng of theyr houp or pasternes. These beastes the *Mosconites* call *Lozzi*, and the *Almaines*, *Helenes*. The ioiney that is betweene *Vlna* of *Lituania* by *Smolence* to *Mosca*, is trauipled in winter on sleades, by the snow congeled by long frost, and made very slipperie and compact lyke *Ise*, by reason of much wearyng and treadyng, by meanes whereof this viage is perfourmed with incredible celeritie. But in the Sommer, the playne countreyes can not be overcome without difficult labour: For when the snow beginneth to be disolued by contynual heate, it causeth marshes and quampyes inextricable and dangerous both for horse and man, were it not for certaine Causeys made of timber with in maner infinite labour. The region of *Moscouia* (as I haue said) beareth neither *Vines* nor *Olive* trees, nor yet any other trees that beare any apples or fruites of very pleasant and sweete sauour or tast, except *Cherry* trees, forasmuch as al tender fruites and trees, are burnt of the cold blasts of the North wynde. Yet do the fieldes beare al kyndes of corne, as wheate, and the grayne called *Siliga*, whereof the fynest kynde of breade is made: also *Oyle*, and *Wanycke*, whiche the *Italians* call *Melica*: Lykewylse al kyndes of puiſe, as *Beanes*, *Peason*, *Tares*, and such other. But theyr cheefe haruest consisteth of *Honye* and *Waxe*, forasmuch as the whole region is replenished with fruitfull *Bees*, which make most sweete *Hony*, not in the husband mens hyues, but euen in hollow trees. And hereby commeth it to passe, that both in the wooddes and shadowed launes, are secne many swarmes of *Bees* hangyng on the

## Of the northeft frosty sea.

the bowes of trees, so that it shall not be necessarie to call them together, or charme them with the sound of Balsens. There are oftentimes founde great masses of Honey combes, conserued in trees of the olde Honey forsaken of bees, so farinuche as the husbandinen can not seeke euery tree in so great and large woods: Insomuche that in the stocks or bodies of exceedyng great and hollowe trees, are sometymes founde great pooles or lakes of Honey. *Demetrius* chambassadour of the Duke of *Moscovia*, whom he sent to the Bishop of Rome not many yeres since, made relation that a husbandinman of the countrey, not farre from the place where he remayned, seekyng in the woods for Honey, descended into a great hollowe tree full of Honey, into the which he slypt by to the breast, and lyued there only with Honey for the space of two dayes, calling in vaine for helpe in that desert of woodds: and that in fine dispaynyng of helpe, he escaped by a marueylous chaunce, beyng drawn out by a great Beare that descended into the tree, with her loynes downewarde after the maner of men. For when the man (as present necessitie and oportunitie serued) perceued the Beare to be within his reach, he suddenly clasped her about the loynes with his armes, and with a terrible crye prouoked the beast to enforce her strength to leape out of the tree, and therewith to drawe hym out, as it chaunced in deede. These regions abounde with Beares, whiche euery where seeke both Honey and Bees, not only herewith to fylle theyr bellies, but also to helpe theyr syght: For theyr eyes are oftentimes dulled, and theyr mouthes wounded of the Bees: both which greefes are eased by eatyng of Honey. They haue weakest heades, as Lions haue strongest: Insomuche that when (beyng thereto enforced) they cast them selues downe headlong from any rockes, they couer theyr heades with theyr feete, and lye for a tyme astonysed, and halfe deade with knockes. They walke sometymes on two feete, and spoyle trees, backward. Sometime also they inuade Bulles, and so hang on them with all theyr feete, that they weerpe them with weight. The Beare (as sayeth *Plinie*) bringeth forth her byrth the thirtie day, and often tymes two. Theyr birth is a certayne white masse of flesh without fourme, and litle bigger then a mouse, without eyes, and without hære, with only the Naples or clawes

Lakes or pooles  
of Honey.

A man almost  
drownd in  
hony.

A merueylous  
chaunce.

Beares feede of  
hony & bees.

Beares inuade  
Bulles.

The Beares  
byrth.

clawes comynge forth: but the damme with continuall lye-  
kyng, by litle and litle figureth the insoyne byrth. When she en-  
treth into the denne which shee hath chosen, shee creepeth thither  
with her belly bywarde, least the place should be founde by  
the steppes of her feete. And being there deliuered of her byrth,  
remaineth in the same place for the space of .xiiii. dayes, immoue-  
able as wyterh Aristotle. They lyue without meat .xl. dayes,  
and for that tyme susteyne them selues only by lyckynge and suc-  
kyng theyr ryght foote. At the length chauncing to finde meate,  
they fill them selues so full, that they remedy that surfeyte by  
vompte, which they prouoke by eatynge of Antes. Theyr byrth  
is oppressed with so heauy a sleepe for the space of .xiiii. dayes,  
that it can not be raysed eyther with prickynge or woundes, and  
in the meane tyme growe exceedynge fatte. After fourtiene dayes  
they wake from sleepe, and begyn to lycke and sucke the soles of  
theyr fore feete, and lyue thereby for a space: Nor yet is it  
apparent that they lyue by any other meate, vntyll the spring  
tyme of the yeere. At whiche tyme begynnynge to runne a-  
bode, they feede of the tender buddes and young sprygges or  
bryanches of trees, and other hearbes correspondente to theyr  
types.

The Beares  
denne.

Beares lyue  
without meate  
xl. dayes.

The sleepe of  
Beares.

Before five hundred yeeres, the Moscouites honoured the  
Goddess of the Gentyles: And then fyrst receyued the Christian  
fayth when the Bishoppes of Grecia began to dissent from the  
church of the Latines: and therefore receyued the rites of the  
Greekes. They minister the sacrament with fermented breade  
vnder both kyndes: And thinke that the soules of dead men are  
not helped with the suffragies of priestes, nor yet by the deuo-  
tion of theyr friends or kynnsfolke: Also that the place of Pur-  
gatorie is a fable. In the tyme of the diuine seruice, the hys-  
torie of the myracles of Christ, and the Epistles of sainte Paule  
are rehearsed out of the Pulpitte. Beyond Moscouia, are  
many people which they call Scythians, and are partly sub-  
iecte to the Prince of Moscouia. These are they which Duke  
Iuan subdued, as are the people of Perm, Bas kird, Ceziremis-  
sa, Iubra, Corela, and Permska. These people were Idolatours  
before the Duke compelled them to baptisme, & appointed a by-  
shop ouer them named Steuen, whom the Barbarians after the  
Musi.

The religion of  
the Mosco-  
uites.

The Scythians  
subject to the  
Duke of Mos-  
couia.

departure



departure of the Duke, slayed alpue, and slue. But the Duke returnyng shortly after, afflicted them sore, and assigned them a newe byshop.

It is here also to be noted, that the olde Cosmographers sayned, that in these regions toward the North pole, there should be certayne great mountaynes, which they called *Ripheos* and *Hyperboreos*, which neuerthelesse are not founde in nature. It is also a fable, that the ryuers of *Tanais* & *Volham* doe spring out of hygh mountaynes, whereas it is apparent that both these ryuers, and many other, haue theyr originall in the playnes.

Next to *Doscouia*, is the fruitfull region of *Colmogora*, through the whiche runneth the ryuer of *Diuidna*, beyng the greatest that is knowen in the North partes of the worlde. This ryuer increaseth at certayne tymes of the yeere, as doeth the ryuer of *Nilus* in Egypt, ouerfloweth the fieldes rounde about, and with aboundaunce of fatte moysture, resisteth the coldnesse of the ayre. Wheate sowne in the grounde, groweth abundantly without ploughyng: and fearyng the newe iniurie of the proude ryuer, springeth, groweth, and rypeth, with wonderfull celeritie of hastyng nature.

Into the ryuer of *Diuidna* runneth the ryuer of *Iuga*: And in the very angle or corner where they meete, is a famous marte towne named *Vstuga*, beyng a hundred and fyfte myles distant from the chiefe cite of *Dosca*. To this marte towne, from the higher countreys, are sent the precious furies of *Marternes*, *Sables*, *Woolues*, & such other, which are exchaunged for dyuers other kyndes of wares & marchandies. Hytherto *Munsterus*.

And forasmuche as many doe marueyle that such plentie of hony should bee in so coole a countrey, I haue thought good to declare the reason and naturall cause heereof. It is therefore to be considered, that lyke as spices, gums, and odoriferous fruites are engendred in hotte regions, by continuall heate durynge all the whole yeere, without impression of the mortifying qualitie, of colde, whereby all thynges are contrayned as they are dilated by heate, euen so in colde and moyst regions (whose moysture is thynner and more waterye then in hot regions) are flowers engendred more abundantly, as caused by impression of lesse and saynter heate, woorkyng in thynne matter of

It was then an opinion that all ryuers spring out of mountaynes. The fruitfull region of *Colmogora*. The great ryuer *Diuidna*.

Wheate without ploughyng.

The ryuer of *Iuga*. *Vstuga*.

Furies.

The naturall cause of much hony in colde regions. Summers and spices in hotte countreys.

Floures in colde regions.

waterish

water & the moysture, lesse concocte then the matter of gummes and spyces, and other visciduous fruites and trees growyng in hot regions. For although (as *Hunster* sayeth here before) the region of *Afconia* beareth neither vines or Oliues, or any other fruites of sweete sauour, by reason of the coldnesse thereof, neuertheless, forasmuch as floures (wherof honny is chiefly gathered) may in sommer season growe abundantly in the playnes, *marp* *thes*, & woodes, not onely on the ground, but also on trees in colde regions, it is agreable to good reason, that great plentie of honny should be in suche regions as abound with floures, which are brought forth with the fyrst degree of heate, and fyrst approach of the sunne, as appeareth in the spryng tyme, not only by the spryngyng of floures in fieldes and Gardeynes, but also of blossomes of trees spryngyng before the leaues or fruite, as the lyghter and thynner matter fyrst drawne out with the lowest and least degree of heate: as the lyke is scene in the arte of styllyng, whereby all thynne and lyght moystures are lyfted by the fyrst degree of the fyre: and the heauyest and thickest moystures are drawne out with more behement fyre. As we may therefore in this case compare the generation of floures to the heat of *May*, the generation of gummes to the heat of *June*, and spyces to the heate of *July*: Euen so, in suche colde regions whose summer agreeth rather with the temperate heate & moysture of *May*, then with the extreme heate of the other monethes, that heate is more apte to bring forth abundance of floures, as thinges caused by moderate heate, as playnly appeareth by their tast and sauour, in which is no sharpe qualitie of heate, eyther byting the tongue, or offendyng the head, as is in spices, gums, and fruites of horte regions. And as in colde and playne regions, moderate heate, with abundance of moysture, are causes of the generation of floures (as I haue sayde) so lykewyse the length of the dapes and shortnesse and warinenesse of the nyghtes in sommer season, in such colde regions, is a great helpe heerevnto. *Cardanus* writeth in his booke *De Plantis*, that *hyamble* & *fearne* growe not but in colde regions, as doeth wheate in temperate regions: and that spices and hot seedes, can not growe in colde regions, forasmuch as beyng of thynne substance, they should soone be moystified & extinct by excessive colde. For (as he sayeth) nothing

floures of trees.

Blossomes of trees.

An example of the degrees of heate.

The generation of floures by moderate heate.

Long dapes and short nyghtes.

Hyamble and fearne.

Spices.

can

## Of the Northeast frostie sea.

can concocte, rype, and attenuate the substance of fruites without the helpe of ayre, agreeable to the natures of such thinges as are brought forth in the same, although it may doe this in rootes. But in maner all floures are of sweete sauour, forasmuch as the moysture that is in them, being thyme and but litle, is by meane heate soone and easily concocte or made rype. Suche also as are soone rype, are soone rotten, accordyng to the prouerbe.

The sauour of  
floures.

What Plinie  
wryteth of  
hony.

Plinie, although in the. xi. booke of his naturall hystorie. Cap. viii. he wryteth that hony is geathered of the floures of all trees and settes or plantes, except sozell and the hearbe called *Chenopode* (which some call Goose foote) yet he affirmeth that it descendeth from the ayre: for in the. xii. Chapter of the same booke, he wryteth thus.

Sirius is o-  
therwyle called  
Canicula,  
that is, the  
Dogge, of  
whom the ca-  
nicular dayes  
haue theyr  
name.

This commeth from the ayre at the rysing of certayne starres, and especially at the rysing of *Sirius*, and not before the rysing of *Vergilie* (which are the seuen starres called *Pleades*) in the spryng of the day. For then at the mornynge spryng, the leaues of trees are founde moist with a fatte dewe: Inso- muche that suche as haue been abrode vnder the firmament at that tyme, haue theyr apparell annoynted with lyquour, and the heare of theyr head clammy. And whether this bee the swette of heauen, or as it were a certayne spectyll of the starres, eyther the insle of the ayre purgynge it selfe, I woulde it were pure, liquide, & simple of his owne nature, as it first falleth from aboue. But now descendyng so farre, and infected, not only with suche vncleane vapours and exhalations, as it meeteth with by the way, but afterwarde also corrupted by the leaues of trees, hearbes, and floures of sundry tastes and qualities, and lykwyle as well in stomackes of the bees (for they vomite it at their mowthes) as also by long reseruyng the same in Hiuies, it neuerthelesse reteyneth a great partie of the heauenly nature &c. Agayne in the. xiii. Chapter of the same booke he wryteth, that in certayne regions towarde the North, as in some places of Germanie, hony is founde in suche quantitie, that there haue been seene hony combes of eyght foote long, and blacke in the holow parte. By the which wordes of Plinie, and by the principles of naturall philosophy, it doeth appeare that aboundaunce of hony should chiefly be engendred in suche regions, where the heate of sommer

What is hony.

Holwe hony is  
corrupted.

Hony of great  
quantitie in  
North regions

sommer is temperate and continuall, as well by nyght as by day,  
 as it is not in hot regions, where the nyghtes be long and colde,  
 as is declared in the Decades. For lyke as suche thinges as are  
 fynyed by continuall heate, mouyng, and circulation, are hynde-  
 red by refrigeration or colde (as appeareth in the arte of stylling  
 and hatchyng of egges) euen so by the action of temperate and  
 continuall heate, without interposition of contrarie and moztify-  
 ing qualitie, crude thinges are in shorthe tyme made rypp, sower  
 made sweete, thicke made thynne, heauie made lycht, grosse  
 made subtile, harde made soft, dead made luyng, and in fine,  
 bodys made spirites, as manifestly appeareth in the maruey-  
 lous woork of dygestion of luyng bestes, whereby the finest  
 parte of theyr nourishment is turned into blood, and the finest of  
 that blood conuerted into spirites, as the lyke is also seene in the  
 nourishment of trees, plantes, and hearbes, & all other thinges  
 that growe on the ground, all which are moued, digested, sub-  
 tiliate, attemiate, ryped, and made sweete by the action of this  
 continuall heate whereof I haue spoken. To concludre therefore,  
 if hony be eyther the sweete of the starres, or the iuice of the ayre  
 purgyng it selfe (as Iolinie wytteth) or otherwyle engendred of  
 subtile and fine vapours rysing from the earth, and concocte or  
 digested in the ayre by the sayde continuall and moderate heate,  
 it may seeme by good reason that the same should be engendred  
 in sommer season more aboundantly in colde regions then in hot,  
 for the causes aforesayde. And that it may by aucthoritie and rea-  
 son more manifestly appeare, both that the heate of sommer in  
 colde regions is continuall (as I haue sayde) and also that the  
 colde in wynter is not there so intollerable to inhabitants of  
 those regions as other doe thynke, I haue thought good for the  
 better declaration hereof, to adde herevnto what I haue geathe-  
 red out of the booke of Zigelrus, wyttten of the Nozthe regi-  
 ons.

Hot nyghtes  
 in colde re-  
 gions.  
 A similitude.

Natural heat  
 doeth subtile  
 and digest all  
 thinges.

Subtile va-  
 pours digested  
 by heate.

Colde regions.

Zigelrus.



Of the Northeaft frostie sea,

Of the North regions, and of the moderate and continual heate in colde regions, as well in the nyght as in the day in sommer season: Also howe those regions are habitable to thinhabitauntes of the same, contrary to the opinion of the olde wyters.

Ziglerus.



If this matter, Ziglerus in his booke of the North regions in the description of *Scondia*, wyrteth as foloweth.

We will intreate of this matter, not as putting the same in question as did the olde wyters, nor geathering iudgement deducted of reasons in way of argument, for as much as we are already more certayne by hystorie that these cold regions are inhabited. We will first therfore shew by natural reason, and by consideration of the sphere, declare howe by the helpe of man and arte, colde regions are inhabited without domage or destruction of lpyng beastes: And will first speake of the qualitie of sommer, declaring howe it is there augmented. Yet intend I not to comprehend all that may be sayde in this matter, but only rehearse suche reasons and similitudes as are most apparent and easie to be vnderstoode.

The qualitie of sommer in colde regions.

The course of the Sunne.

Vapours.

Short and warme nyghts

Gothlande.

In such regions therfore, as are extended from the burnt lyne or Equinoctiall toward the North, as much as the sunne rylteth higher ouer them, so much are they the more burnt with heat, as *Africa*, bycause it rylteth highest ouer them, as they are nearest to the Equinoctiall: & taryng with them so much the shorter tyme, causeth shorter dayes, with longer & colder nyghtes, to restore the domage of the day past, by reason of the moisture confirmed by vapour. But in such regions ouer the which the sun rylteth lower (as in *Sarmatia*) it remaineth there the longer in the day, and causeth so much the shorter and warmer nyghtes, as receyving warme vapours of the day past, which vapours helpe the woork of the day. I speake as I haue founde by experience, sayth *Vp'salis*: For I haue felte the sommer nyghtes scarcely tollerable for heate in Gothlande, whereas I felte them colde in Rome. This benefite of the increase of the day doeth augment so much the more in colde regions, as they are nearer the poles: and

ceaseth

ceaseth not vntyll it come directly ouer the center or poynte of the axes or arceltree of the worlde, where the sunne beyng, at the hyghest in sommer, is eleuate about. xliiij. degrees: In which regions, one continuall day consisteth of. vi. monethes from the spring tyme, by the standyng of the sunne (called *Solstitium*) in the signe of Cancer, to Autumne. The Sunne therfore, without any offence of the nyght, gyueth his influence vppon those landes with heate that neuer ceaseth duryng that tyme, which maketh to the great increase of sommer, by reason of continuance. We haue now therfore thought good to geather, by a certayne coniecture, howe greatly we thynke the sommer to be increased heereby.

One day of. vi. monethes.

Howe the sommer is increased in colde regions.

Rome.

Colde nyghtes in hot regions.

The Romans wynter.

We haue before declared howe hygh the sunne is eleuate ouer the regions that are vnder the poles at the staye of the sunne: And so many partes is it eleuate in Rome at the staye of the sunne in wynter (that is) at the shorrest day in the yeere. But here, in the myd wynter, the sunne at noonetyde is beneficiall, and byngeth forth floures, Roses, and Ieli floures. I haue geathered some in winter in the moneth of December, not procured at home by humane arte, but growyng in open Gardens in maner in euery bed vnder the bare heauen, brought forth only by the sunne. But this benignitie of the sunne, continueth not past syue houres in the naturall day, forasmuch as the operation thereof is extinct by the coldenesse of the nyght folowynge. But if this benefite myght be receyued without hinderance of the nyght, as it is vnder the poles, and so continue many monethes in hot regions vnto wynter, it should surely bring forth many wonderful thinges, if nature fayled not. And by this condition thus propounded, we may well conceyue that the Romane wynter, although it be not hotte, yet to be equall in heate to the full spring tyme in the same citie, during the tyme of the sayd syue houres. And thus by a similitude of the height of the sunne vnder both places, and of the knowen qualitie of the Romane heauen, and by the acceste of the sunne to such places where the longest day continueth certayne monethes, we may geather that sommer, in places vnder the pole, is lyke vnto and equall with the full Romane spring.

But the more difficult question, is of the tyme of the. vi. monethes in the whiche the Sunne leaueyth those regions,

One night of. vi. monethes.

Obiections.

and goeth by the contrary or ouerthwarte circle toward the south in wynter . For they say that at that tyme, those regions are deformed with horrible darkenesse, and nyghtes not increased, whiche may be the cause that beastes can not seeke theyr foode: And that also the colde should then bee intollerable . By which double euyls all thynges constrayned should dye, so that no beast were able to abyde the inturpes of wynter and fanyne insuyng thereof : but that all beastes should perperhe before the semmer folowynge, when they should byrre forth theyr broode or succession : and that for these causes, the sayde colde clyme should bee perpetually desolate and uninhabitable . To all which obiections, we answered in this maner.

The twy  
lightes.

As touchyng the nyghtes not increased, I say, that it was not conuenient to assume that for any reason . For not as the Sunne falleth, so sodeynly cometh the darke nyght: but that the euening doeth substitute and prolong the day long after, as also the day spyryng or dawnyng of the day, gyueth a certayne lyght before the rysing of the Sunne : After the which, the residue of the nyght that receyuech no lyght by the sayde euening and moornyng twilightes, is accomplished by the lyght of the Moone, so that the nyghtes are sildome braugmented . Let this bee an example produced by our temperate regions, whereby we may vnderstande the condition of the nyght vnder the pole: Therefore euen there also the twilightes helpe the nyght a long tyme, as we will moze presently demonstrate . It is approued by the Astronomers, that the Sunne descendyng from the highest halfe sphere by eightiene paralels of the vnder horizon, maketh an ende of the twilight, so that at the length the darke night succeedeth : And that the Sunne appoehyng, and rysing aboue the hyghest halfe sphere by as many paralels, doeth diminish the nyght and increase the twylyght . Agayne, by the position or placynge of the sphere vnder the pole, the same is the horizontall that is the Equinoctiall . Those paralelles therefore that are paralelles to the horizontall lyne, are also paralelles to the Equinoctiall . So that the Sunne descendyng there vnder the horizon, doeth not byrre darke nyghtes to those regions, vntyll it come to the paralels distant, xviij. partes from the Equinoctiall.

The lyght of  
the Moone.

The nyght  
vnder the pole.

As demonstra  
tion.

Duryng

During the tyme of these sayde fyre monethes of darknesse vnder the pole, the nyght is destitute of the benefite of the Sunne and the sayde twylghtes, onely for the space of thre monethes, in the whiche the Sunne goeth and returneth by the position of the ouerthwarte circle. But yet neyther this tyme of thre monethes is without remedy from heauen. For the Moone with her full globe increased in lyght, hath accesse at that tyme, and illuminateth the monethes lackyng lyght, euery one by them selues, halfe the cours of the moneth: by whose benefite it commeth to passe that the nyght, named as vnaugmented, possesseth those regions no longer then one moneth and a halfe, neyther that continually or all at one tyme: but this also diuided into thre sortes of shorter nyghtes, of the whiche euery one endureth for the space of two weekes, and are illuminate of the Moone accordyngly. And this is the reason conceyued of the power of the sphere, whereby we testifie that the sommers and nyghtes vnder the pole are tollerable to lyuyng beastes. But we wyll now declare by other remedies of nature and arte, that this colde so greatly feared, is more remitte and tollerable then our opinion: so that, compared to the nature of suche beastes as lyue there, it may be abydden. And there is no doubt but there are autours of more antiquitie then that age in the whiche any thyng was exactly known or discovered of the North regions. The olde wynters therefore perswaded onely by naked coniecture, dyd geather what they myght determyne of those places: Or rather, by the estimation of heauen, the whiche, because they felte it to bee hardely tollerable to them selues, and lesse to men bozne in the chymre of Egypt and Grecia, tooke thereby an argument of the whole habitable earth. The hystorie of Strabo is knowen, that a pottle of brasse, whiche was broken in sinder with frosen water, was brought from Pontus, and shewed in Delphis in token of a greuous wynter. Here therefore, they that so greatly feared the wynter (suche as chaunceth to the earth vnder the xliiii. paralele) and therefore consecrated that broken pottle to the temple of Appollo: what coulde suche men truly define vpon regions so farre without that paralele, whether they were

The Moone.

Remedies of nature & art.

The olde wynters perswaded by coniecture.

A brassen pottle broken with frost.



## Of the Northeast frosty sea,

were inhabited or not? But suche as folowed these, beyng contented with chiuentions of the olde autours, and bozne in manner vnder the same qualitie of heauen, persysted wplyngly in the same opinion, with more confidence then consideration of the thynges whereof we now intreate: so lyghtly was that opinion receyued as touchyng the uninhabitable cline vnder the poles. But we with better confidence and saith (forasmuche as we are not instructed with conieccures) intend to stande against the sentence of the olde autours, affirmyng the North regions within the colde cline to be inhabited with herrynge, coddess, haddockes, and brettess, tunnyes, and other great fyshes, with chynfinite number whercof, tables are furnished through a great parte of Europe: All whiche are taken in the North sea extended beyonde our knowelledge. This sea at certayne tymes of the peere, poureth forth his plentifulnes, or rather driueth forth his increas to seeke newe mansions, and are here taken in theyr passage. Furthermore also, euen the mouthes of the riuer of Tyber receiued a fysh as a newe gest sent from the north sea: this swamme twise through Fraunce, and twise through Spayne, ouerpasse the *Ligurion* and *Tuscan* sea, to communicate herselfe to the citie of Rome. The lakes also and ryuers of those regions are replenished with fysh: insomuch that no power of colde is able to extinguysh the increas of the peere folowing, and the succession reparable so many hundred peeres. And I plainly thinke, that if it should of necessitie folowe, that one of these two elementes, the earth and the water, should be destruetiue to lyuyng creatures, the water should chiefly haue wrought this effecte. But this is founde so tractable, that in the depe wynter, both that increas is brought forth, and fyshing is also exercised. The lande is lykewise inhabited with like plentifulnesse. But that we wander not to farre, let the sayth hereof rest in the exposition folowing, wherein we intend to declare howe by the power of nature and industry of man, this commoditie may come to passe. Therefore as touchyng nature, we suppose that the diuine prouidence hath made nothyng uncommunicable, but to haue geuen suche order to all thynges, whereby euery thyng may be tollerable to the next. The extremities of the elementes consent with theyr next. The ayre is grosse about the earth and

water:

Fyshes of  
the North  
seas.

The North  
sea.

The qualitie of  
water.

The land.

The diuine  
prouidence in  
moderatynge  
the elementes.

water: but thynne and hot about the fyre. By this providence of nature, the bittermost sea is very salt. And salt (as witnesseth *Plinie*) yeldeith the saltnesse of *Dyle*. But *Dyle*, by a certayne natyue heate, is of propertie agreeable to fyre. The sea then, beyng al of such qualitie, powzeth forth it selfe farre vpon the treeine landes, whereby by reason of the saltnesse thereof, it mo- ueth and stirreth by generative heate, as by saltnesse it no- zisheth the fecunditie of thynges generate. It geueth this fruite- fulnesse to the earth at certayne floods, although the earth also it selfe haue in his inner bowels the same lyuely and nozish- ing heate, wherby not only the *Dennes*, *Caues*, and hollow pla- ces, but also springes of water are made warine: & this so much the more, in how much the wynter is more becheuent. This thyng doth more appeare by this example, that the mountaines of *Norway* and *Sweetblande* are fruitfull of metales, in the which, siluer and copper are concoct and molten into beines, which can scarcely be done in fornaeces. By this reason also, the vapoures and hot exhalations pearcyng the earth and the waters, and through both those natures bycatchyng forth into the ayre, tem- perateth the qualitie of heauen, & maketh it tollerable to beasts, as witnesseth the huge bygnesse of the *Whales* in those seas, with the strength of body, and long lyfe of such beastes as lyue on the land: which thyng coulde not be, except all thyngs were there commodiously nozished by the benefite of the heauen and the ayre. For nothyng that in the tyme of encrease is hyndred by any iniurie, or that is euyl fedde at the tyme it lyueth, can pro- sper wel. Neither are such thynges as liue there, offended with theyr natural wynter, as though an *Egyptian* or *Ethiopian* were sodenly conueighed into those cold regions. For they were in long tyme, by litle and litle, brought fyrst acquainted with the nature of that heauen, as maye be proued both by the lyfe of man, and by the hystorie of holy scripture. They that were led from *Mesopotamia*, and that famous *Tower of Babilon* towards the North partes of the worlde, in the fyrst dispercion of nati- ons, did not immediately passe to the extreme boundes, but plan- ted theyr habitations first vnder a myddle heauen, between both, as in *Thracia*, and *Pontus*, where theyr posteritie was accu- stomed the better to susteyne the rigour of *Scythia* and *Tar-*

The nature of the sea.

Salt.

Generative heate.

Outward colds is cause of inward heate.

Metals.

Vapours and exhalations.

Whales.

Beastes.

Hereby may be considered the cause of the death of our men that saile directly to *Gumee*.

No passage from one extre- mite, to an o- ther, but by a meane.

Tars

## Of the Northeast frosty sea,

nais, as he that commeth from winter to sommer, may the better after abyde yse and snow, beyng fyrst hardened thereto by the frostes of Autumne. In lyke maner mortal men, accustomed to beare the hardnesse of places next vnto them, were thereby ac the length more confirmed to sustayne the extremitiees. And here also, if any sharpnesse remaine that may seeme intollerable, nature hath so prouided for the same, with other remedies. For the land and sea, hath geuen vnto beastes, deepe and large Caves, Denmes, and other hollowe places, and secreete corners in mountaynes and rockes, both on the land and by sea bankes, in the which are euer conteyned warme vapoures, so muche the more intent and vehement, in how much they are the more constrained by extreeme cold. Nature hath also geuen balleyes, diuerted and defended from the North windes. She hath lykewyse couered beastes with heare, so muche the thyecker, in how much the behemencie of cold is greater: by reason wherof the best and richest furies are brought from those regions, as Sables, whose pryce is growne to great excelle, next vnto gold and precious stones, and are esteemed princely ornaments. The beastes that beare these furies, are hunted cheefelye in winter (whiche thyng is more strange) because their heare is then thicker and cleaueth faster to the skin. How greuous then shal we thinke the wynter to be there, where this litle beast liueth so wel, and where the hunters may search the Denmes and hauntes of such beastes through the woods and snow? But such beastes, the condition of whose bodies is so tender that they are not able to abide thiniurie of the cold, either lye hyd in winter, or change their habitacion, as do certaine beasts also in our climate. Nature hath furthermore geuen remedie to man, both by art and industry to defende him selfe both abrode and at home. Abrode with a thicke vesture, and the same well dowbeled. At home, with large fyers on Harthes, Chymneyes, and in Stoues for the dape, with close Chaumbers, and Couches, soft and warme Beddes for the nyght: by whiche remedies they mitigate the wynters, which seeme rigorous to straungers, although they are to inhabitants more tollerable then our opinion, as in deede by the fyrst naturall mixture or composition of theyr bodies, such thyngs are agreeable to them, as seeme very hard to other. The Lion in Affrik

and

Caves and  
Denmes.

Balleys.

The best  
furies.  
Sables.

Beastes that  
lye hyd in  
wynter.

All beasts haue  
the nature of  
the place where  
they are engend-  
red.

and the beare in *Sarmatia*, are fierce, as in theyr present strength and vigoure: but translated into a contrary heauen, are of lesse strength and courage. The foule called *Ciconia* (which some thynke to be the *Storke*) doth not tary the wynter: yet do the Cranes come at that tyme. The *Scythian* wyll accuse the *Romane* heauen as inducynge feuers, whereas neuerthelesse there is none more hollesome. Such as haue been tenderly brought vp, if they come suddely into the campe, can not away with hunger, watchynge, heate, passages through ryuers, battayles, sieges, and assaultes: But the olde souldier, exercised in the warres, vseth these as meditations of the fildes, as hardened therto by long experience. He that hath been accustomed to the shadowe of the citie, and wyll attempte the saying of the poet *Virgil*, *Nudus ara, sero nudus*, that is, naked and bare, without house and home, shal to his peryl make an end of the verse, *Habe-bis frigora febram* (that is) he shal haue the colde ague. Suche thynges therfore as seeme hard vnto vs, beyng accustomed by litle and litle, become more tollerable: Insomuch that this exercise of sufferance by such degrees, doth oftentimes growe to prodigious effectes, farre beyond our expectation. And thus we seeme to haue made sufficient demonstration, by heauen, nature, and art, wherby it may appeare, that no part of the land or sea is denied to liuing creatures. The reader may also perceiue howe large matter of reasons and examples may be opened for the declaring of our opinion, wherein we rest. Let therfore chaucortitie of the auncient auctours geue place, and the consent of the newe wyters agree to this history, not as now we at the length comprehended (wheras before many hundred yeeres *Germanie* and *Scandia* had entercoure of merchandies not seuered by the large gulfe of *Gothia*) but as now we by our commentaries brought to lycht and haupng sayde thus muche in maner of a peface, we wyll now proceede to wypte of the North regions.

What exercises map do.

Use maketh maisteries.

*Scandia.*

### *Schondia.*

**S**Condia, *Schondania*, or *Schondenmarchia*, is as muche to saye as sayre *Dania*, or sayre *Denmarke*. *Plinie* in one place, nameith it *Scandia*, and in an other *Scandinania*, if there be no faute in the examples.

Scone is sayre in the duche tongue,



## Of the northeft frosty sea.

The fertilitie of  
Schondia.

He meaneth  
Diadozhus  
Siculus

Thinuassions  
of the Gothes.

Transluania.

It was named *Schondia*, by reason of the fayrenesse and fruite-  
fulnesse thereof. And this aswell for that in beneficiall heauen,  
fertilitie of grounde, commoditie of hauens and marie townes,  
abundaunce of ryuers and fysh, plentie of beastes, great quan-  
tity of metall, as golde, syluer, copper, and leade, diligent cul-  
turyng the grounde, with townes and cities well inhabited and  
gouerned by ciuile lawes, it geueth place to none other fortunate  
region. This was in maner vnknownen to the olde Greekes  
and Latins, as may appeare by this argument, that with one  
consent they affirmed, that in these north regions the colde Zone  
or cline, was condemned to perpetuall snowe, intollerable to al  
lyuyng creatures. For fewe of them haue made mention here-  
of as to be inhabited, Among whom Plinie, as one of the chiefe,  
saith in his fourth booke, that *Schondania* is of vnknownen bigge-  
nesse: and onely that portyon thereof to be knownen, which is in-  
habited with the nation of the *Hilleuiones* in fiftie villages: Nei-  
ther yet is *Eningia* lesse in opinion. Other more auncient then  
Plinie, haue placed most fortunate regions, with men of long  
lyfe (which the Greekes call *Macrobios*) and of most innocent  
behauour vnder the tracte of those landes: and that there came  
from thence to *Delphos*, certayne religious virgines, with bowes  
and giftes consecrated to *Apollo*: And furthermore, that that na-  
tion obserued this institution, vntyll the saide virgins were viola-  
ted of them, of whom they were receiued as straungers. These  
are most cleare testimonies of Antiquitie, both of the greatnesse  
of *Schondia*, and the people that inhabite the same, although they  
were since vnknownen: as lykewyle the *Gothes* departyng from  
these North landes, although they obteyned Thempire of the  
regions about the maryshes of *Meotis*, and the coastes of the sea  
*Euxinus*, with the realme of *Denmarke* (wherof that is thought  
to be a portyon whiche is now called *Transluania*) and the  
bankes of the ryuer of *Danubius*, and in fine, inuaded the Ro-  
mane Empire, yet were not the regions well knownen from  
whence they tooke theyr originall. Therefore lyke as part of  
the olde wypters are vninsufficient witnesses, to testifie of our nar-  
rations as touchyng these landes vnknownen to them: Euen so  
the other parte whiche excluded the same as inhabitable, are  
to be conuincd, leaste theyr authoritie, beyng admitted, shoulde  
engender

engender opinions not agreeable or conuenient to the nature of places. *Sigismundus Liberus*, in his commentaries of *Moscovia*, writeth thus, *Scandia* or *Scondia*, is no Islande (as some haue thought) but part of the continent or firme land of *Suetia*, which by a long tract reacheth to *Cothland*: and that now the kyng of *Denmarke* possesseth a great part thereof. But whereas the writers of these thynges haue made *Scondia* greater then *Suetia*, and that the *Gothes* and *Lumbardes* came from thence, they seeme in my opinion to comprehend these three kyngdomes as it were in one bodie, only vnder the name of *Scondia*, forasmuch as then, that part of land that lyeth betweene the sea *Balticum* (which floweth by the coastes of *Finlandia*) and the frozen sea, was vnknewen: and that by reason of so manie marnes, innumerable riuers, and intemperateneesse of heauen, it is yet rude, vncultured, and litle knowen. Which thyng hath been the cause that some iudged al that was called by the name of *Scondia*, to be one great Island.

The Gothes & Lumbardes.

### Gronelande.



*Gronelande* is interpreted greene land, so called for the great encrease and fruitfulnessse of pasture. By reason whereof, what great plentie of cattail there is, it may hereby appere, that at such time as shippes may passe thither, they set forth great heapes of Cheese and Butter to be solde, whereby we

Fruitfull pasture.

conieecture that the lande is not rough with barren mountaynes. It hath two Cathedrall Churches vnder the Ordination of *Nidrosia*. To one of these, was of late yeres a Bishop appoynted, only by the title of a Suffragane, in consideration that while the Metropolitane doth neglect the direction of religion for the distance of the place, and difficult nauigation, the people is in manner false to gentilitie, being of them selues of moueable wittes, & geuen to magicall artes. For it is sayd that they (as also the people of *Laponia*) do raffe tempestes on the sea with magicall inchauntemes, and byng such shypps into daunger as they entend to soyle. They vse litle shypps made of Leather, and safe agaynst the brusling of the sea and rockes, and with them assaile other shypps. *Peter Martir of Angleria*, writeth in his *Decades*

Religion neglected.

Inchauntemes.

## Of the northeſt froſty ſea.

The biage of  
Sebastian Ca-  
bot to the fro-  
ſen ſea.

Gronelande.

Wardhus.

Lapponia and  
Gronelande.

Schoeni.

Cabot tolde me  
that this iſe is  
of freſh water &  
not of the ſea.

A commixtion  
of ſalt water &  
freſh.

The ſea be-  
tween Norway  
and Island.

Terra Viridis.

of the Spaniſh navigations that Sebastian Cabot, ſaylyng from England continually towarde the North, ſollowed that courſe ſo farre, that he chaunced vpon great flakes of yſe in the Moneth of July: and that diuerting from thence, he ſollowed the coaſt by the ſhore bendyng toward the South, vntill he came to the clyme of the Iſland of *Hiſpaniola*, aboue *Cuba*, an Iſlande of the *Canibales*. Which narration hath geuen me occaſion to ex-  
tende *Groneland* beyond the promontorie or cape of *Huitſarch*, to the contynent or ſpyne lande of *Lapponia*, aboue the caſtell of *Wardhus*: whiche thyng I dyd the rather, for that the reuerende Archebiſhop of *Nidroſia*, conſtantly affirmed that the ſea bendeth there into the fourme of a crooked Elbowe. It agreeth herewith alſo, that the *Lapones* conſent with them in the lyke Pa-  
gicall practiſes, and do n epyther embrace the Chriſtian religion, nor reſuſe it: wherby I haue thought this lykenelle of cuſtomes to be betweene them, becauſe they ioyne togeather in one con-  
tinent. The diſtance lykewyſe, ſeemeth not to diſagree. For be-  
tweene both theſe people, the diſtance is not full two hundred *Schoeni*, euery one beyng a ſpace of ground containyng threſcore furlonges, which make ſeauen myles, & a halfe. It furthermore agreeth with this coniecture that *Cabot* chaunced into ſuch yſe. And albeit, as touching the Moneth of July, I wyll contend it is not well rehearſed, no although he had ſailed vnder the poole, for ſuch reaſons as we haue declared beſore to the contrary: neuerthe-  
leſſe, that at ſome tyme he ſailed by yſe, this teſtifieth in that he ſayled not by the mayne ſea, but in places neare vnto the land, comprehendyng & embracing the ſea in fourme of a gulfe, where-  
as for the ſame cauſe the gulfe of *Gothland* is froſen, becauſe it is ſtreight and narrow: in the which alſo the litle quantitie of ſalte water is overcome by the abundance of freſh water of many and great ryuers that fall into the gulfe. But betweene *Norway* and *Iſland*, the ſea is not froſen, for the contrary cauſe, forasmuch as the power of freſhe water is there overcome of the abundance of the ſalte water. There is a ſame (but of vncertayne auctho-  
ritie) that the Spaniardes ſayle at this preſent to *Gronelande*, and to an other lande, which they call *Terra Viridis*, that is, the greene lande, byingyng from thence ſuche wares as are founde in *Gronelande*, Towards the North, it reacheth to the  
vknownen

Pigmet.

unknowen land vnder the pole, from whence also the theetes and robbers of the Pigmeti come into this lande. Which is an argument that the regions vnder the pole are inhabited, & almost enuironed with the sea, as are they whiche the Cosinographers call Cberssones, or Peninsula (that is) almost Ilandes.

The description of Gronlande.

The description of the East syde, which lyeth towarde Nor way.

|                       |     |     |     |
|-----------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| Wardhus Castle.       | 54. | 70. | 30. |
| Towarde the North.    | 53. | 30. | 71. |
| The fyrst extention.  | 40. | 71. | 40. |
| The second extention. | 28. | 72. |     |
| Quitsarch. promont.   | 22. | 67. |     |
| The extention.        | 5.  | 61. | 45. |

It is continued from thence by the coastes of the lande of Bac- callaog. 356. 60.

Bacallaog.

Towarde the West and North, it is terminated with an unknowen ende of landes and seas.

### Ilande.

**I**slande is interpreted the land of Ise, and is called of the olde wyrters *Thyle*. It is extended betweene the South and the North, almost two hundred schoenes in longitude. It is for the most parte full of mountaynes, and uncultured. But in the playnes it hath rich fruitfull pastures, that they are sayne some- tymes to dytue the beastes from theyr feedyng, least they should be suffocate with to much farnesse. This Ilande is famous by the strange myracles of nature, of the whiche Saxo Grammaticus in his hystorie of Denmarke, and Olanus Gothus, in his description of the North landes, doe make mention. There are in it three mountaynes of marueylous height, the toppes whereof are couered with perpetuall snowe: but the nether partes of them, are of lyke nature to the mountayne Etna, in the Ilande of Sicilie. boylpyng with continuall flames of fyre, and castyng forth byrmstone. One of these is named *Helga*, and the other *Mons Crucis* (that is) the mounte of the crosse. The thyrd is named *Hecla*, whose flames neyther consume flaxe or tow, matters most apte to take fyre, nor yet are quenched with water. And with

Islande called Thyle.

Schoene is lx. furlonges.

Myracles of nature in Ilande.

Three marueylous mountaynes.

Helga.

Hecla.



lyke force as the shot of great artillerie is diuened forth by violence of fyre, euen so by the commixtion and repugnance of fyre, colde, and bymestone, great stones are heere throwne into the ayre. Neare vnto these mountaynes are three chynkes or open places in the earth, of huge bygnesse, and such depth (especially at the mount *Hecla*) that no sight can attayne thereto. But to such as looke into them, there first appeare men as though they were drowned, and yet breathyng forth theyr soules: who beying exhorted by theyr friendes to resorte to theyr owne, they awere with mournyng voyce and greuous sighes, that they must departe from thence to the mount *Hecla*, and therewith sodaynely banyshe out of sight. The floweth about the Islande for the space of seuen or eight monethes, makyng by runnyng togeather a certayne miserable waylyng and gronyng noyse, not vnylyke the voyce of man. Thinhabitauntes thynke, that in this Isle and the mount *Hecla*, are the places where the euill soules of theyr people are tormented. If any man take a great porcion of this Isle, and keepe it as diligently as may be in a close vessel or cofer, the same doeth so banyshe at the tyme when the other Isle about the Islande dissolueth, that not so much as one droppe of water or Isle can thereof be founde.

Not farre from these mountaynes reachyng towarde the sea coastes, are foure springes of water, of most dyuers and contrary nature. The fyrst, by reason of his perpetuall and feruent heate, sodaynely turneth all bodyes, that are cast thercin, into stones, reseruyng neuerthelesse theyr fyrst forme and shape. The seconde, is of intollerable coldnesse. The thyrde, is sweeter then hony, and most pleasaunt to quench thyrst. The fourth, is playne popson, pestilent, and deadly. There is furthermore in these springes suche aboundaunce of bymestone, that a thousande pounde weight thereof is bought for litle, as for the tenth parte of a ducate. Theyr chiefe wares, are dyed fysh, as Soles, Raydens, Playces, Salpas, Stockefishes, and such other, whiche they exchange for wheat, and such other thinges as are brought thither from Lubecke, Hambowwe, and Amsterdam. For they haue oftentimes such scarfenesse of coyne, that they vse dyed fysh in the steade of bread, although in sommer the Islande so floorybeth with greene and fruitfull medowes, that they are sayne sometimes

Strauinge by-  
dons.

Isle.

A strauinge  
thyng.

Foure springes  
of contrarie  
nature.

Aboundaunce  
of bymestone.

Dyed fysh.

Scarfenesse of  
coyne.

to dyue they beastes from pasture, least they should suffocate for  
 to much sameness, as I haue sayde before. They make very good  
 butter, and apte to be vsed in matters of phisicke. There are found  
 diuers kindes of good Haukes, as Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, Lan-  
 ners, and Spethaukes: Also Hauens, Crowses, Beares, Hares,  
 and Foxes, both white and blacke. They haue most swift horses,  
 and such as run .xxx. miles continually without rest or baite. They  
 haue many churches: & houses builded of the bones of Whales  
 and other great fshes. The nauigation is not open to this Island  
 but in sommer season: and that only for the space of foure mo-  
 nethes, by reason of the colde and Ice whereby the passage is  
 stopped. If any stryfe or debate arysse on the sea among the mari-  
 ners for the commoditie of the haue, the gouernour of the place,  
 although he haue knowledge thereof, yet doeth he not punyssh  
 them, forasmuche as it apperteyneth not to his office to decerne  
 such thinges as are done on the sea, but only on the lande. Ships  
 are there oftentymes in great peryll, by reason of Whales, & such  
 other monsters of the sea, except the Mariners take good heede,  
 and keepe them far from the shypps with the nople of Drummes,  
 and emptie barreles cast into the sea. There are many Dynstrels  
 and other that play on instruments, with the sweete nople wher-  
 of, they vse to allure foules and fshes to their nettes and snares.  
 Many also, lye lurking in caues and denmes, to auoyd the sharp-  
 nesse of cold, as the Affricanes doe the lyke to defend them selues  
 from the heate. On the top of a certaine mountayne called *Weyf-  
 zarch*, (lying betweene Island and Grunland, or Greonland) is  
 erected a shypmans quadrant of marueylous bygnesse, made by  
 two Pirates, named Pinnigt and Bochozt, in fauour of suche as  
 sayle by those coastes, that they may thereby auoyde the daunge-  
 rous places lying towarde Greonland.

Haukes.

White Hae-  
 uens.

Houses of  
 Whales bones  
 The nauigatio-  
 on to Islande.

Whales.

One thing  
 seruyng for  
 contrary uses.

A shypmans  
 quadrant.

|                             |   |    |    |     |
|-----------------------------|---|----|----|-----|
| The myddest of the Islande. | 7 | 0  | 65 | 30. |
| The citie Harfol. &c.       | 7 | 40 | 60 | 42. |

### Laponia.

The region of *Laponia*, was so named of the people that  
 inhabite it. For the Germanes call all suche *La-  
 pones*, as are simple or vnapt to thinges. This  
 Do.ii. people

People of  
great agilitie.

people is of small stature, and of suche agilitie of bodie, that hauyng theyr quyuers of arrowes gerte to them, and theyr bowes in theyr handes, they can with a leape cast them selues through a circle or hope of the diameter of a cubite. They fight on foote, armed with bowes and arrowes after the manner of the *Tartars*. They are exercised in hurlyng the darre, and shootyng, from theyr yowth: insomuche that they gyue theyr chyldren no meate vntyll they hit the marke they shoote at, as dyd in olde tyme thynhabitauntes of the Ilandes called *Baleares*. They vse to make theyr apparell streight and close to theyr bodyes, that it hynder not theyr wooke. Theyr wynter vestures are made of the whole skynnes of Seales or Beares, artificially wrought, and made supple. These they tye with a knotte about theyr heads, leauyng onely two holes open to looke through, and haue all the residue of theyr bodyes couered, as though they were sowed in sackes, but that this beyng adopted to all partes of theyr bodyes, is so made for commoditie, and not for a punishment, as the Romanes were accustomed to sow paricides in sackes of leather with a Cocke, an Ape, and a Serpent, and so to hurle them alpyue altogether into the ryuer of *Tyber*. And heereby I thynke it came to passe, that in olde tyme it was rashly beleueed, that in these regions there were men with rough & heary bodyes like wylde beastes, as parte made relation through ignoraunce, parte also takyng pleasure in rehearsall of suche thinges as are straunge to the hearers. The *Lapones* defended by this arte and industry, goe abrode and withstand the sharpenesse of wynter and the North wyndes, with all the inturpes of heauen. They haue no houses, but certayne Tabernacles lyke tentes or hales, wherewith they passe from place to place, and chaunge their mansions. Some of them lyue after the maner of the people of *Sarmatia*, called in olde tyme *Amasobii*, which vsed waynes in the steade of houses. They are much giuen to huntynge, and haue suche plentie of wylde beastes, that they kyll them in maner in euery place. It is not lawfull for a woman to goe forth of the tent, at that doore by the which her husbände went out on huntynge the same day, nor yet to touche with her hande any parte of the beast that is taken, vntyll

A strange app-  
parell.

The cause of  
an olde errour.

So doe the  
Tartars.

Plentie of  
wylde beastes.

tyll her husbände reache her on the spytte suche a portion of  
 fleshe as he thynketh good . They tyll not the grounde . The No Serpents.  
 region nourysheth no kynde of Serpentes : yet are there great  
 and noysome Gnattes . They take fyshe in great plentie : Great Gnats.  
 by the commoditie whereof, they lyue after the maner of the  
 Ethiopians, called *Ichthiophagi* . For as these dyve they fyshe  
 with feruent heate, so doe they dyve them with colde, and  
 grynde or stampe them to powder as small as meale or floure.  
 They haue suche aboundaunce of these fyshes, that they hound Aboundaunce  
of fyshe.  
 great plentie thereof in certeyne store houses, to carry them  
 vnto other landes neare about them, as *Northbothnia*, and  
 whyte *Russia* . Theyr shyppes are not made with naples, but Shyppe with-  
out naples.  
 are tyde togeather and made fast with cordes and wythes. With  
 these they sayle by the swyft ryuers betweene the mountaynes  
 of *Laponia*, beyng naked in sommer that they may the better  
 swimme in the tyme of perill, and geather togeather such wa-  
 res as are in daunger to be lost by shypwracke . Parte of them  
 exerceyse handie craftes, as imboderyng and weauyng of  
 cloth, interlaced with golde and syluer . Suche as haue deu-  
 sed any necessary Arte, or doe increase and amende the inuenti-  
 ons of other, are openly honoured, and rewarded with a be- Science has  
honoured.  
 sture, in the which is imbodered an argument or token of the  
 thynge they deuised . And this remayneth to the posteritie of  
 theyr famelie, in token of theyr desartes . They frame shyppes,  
 buylde houses, and make dyuers sortes of houtholde stufte arti-  
 ficially, and transpoyte them to other places neare about . They  
 buye and sell both for exchaunge of wares, and for money . And  
 this only by consent of both parties, without communication: yet Bargenyng  
without  
woordes.  
 not for lacke of wytte, or for rudenesse of maners, but bycause  
 they haue a peculiar language vnknownen to theyr borderers . It  
 is a valiant nation, and lyued long free, and susteyned the warres  
 of *Norway* and *Suetia*, vntyll at the length they submitted them  
 selues, and payde ryche furies for theyr tribute . They chose them  
 selues a gouernour, whom they cal a kyng: But the kyng of *Sue-  
 tia*, gyueth him aucthoritie and administration . Neuerthelesse,  
 the people in theyr suites and doubtful causes, resorte to *Suetia* to  
 haue theyr matters decised.



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

In theſe iourneys, they goe not to any Inne, nor yet enter in-  
to any houſe, but lye all nyght vnder the firmament. They haue  
no horſes, but in the ſteade of them, they tame certayne wyld  
beaſtes which they call Keen, beyng of the ruſt bygneſſe of a  
Hyle, with rough heare lyke an Aſſe, clouen feete, and bꝛan-  
ched hornes lyke a Harte, but lower and with fewer antlettes.  
They will not abyde to be rydden. But when theſe peptrels  
or drawyng collers are put on them, and they ſo ioynd to the  
Chariotte or ſteade, they runne in the ſpace of .xxiii. houres, a  
hundred and fyftie myles, or .xxx. *Schenos*, the whiche ſpace  
they affyrme to chaunge the horizon thypſe, that is, thypſe to  
come to the furtheſt ſigne or marke that they ſee a far of. Which  
doubtleſſe is a token both of the marueylous ſwyftneſſe & great  
ſtrength of theſe beaſtes, beyng able to continue runnyng ſo  
great a ſpace, in the meane whyle alſo ſpendyng ſome tyme in  
feedyng. I ſuppoſe that this thyng was ſomewhat knowen  
to the olde wyters, although receyued in maner by an obſcure  
and doubtfull fame: For they alſo wyte that certayne Scythians  
doe ryde on Hartes.

They neyther ſolow the Chriſtian religion, nor yet reſuſe it,  
or are offended therewith as are the Jewes: but doe ſometymes  
receyue it fauourably, to gratifie the princes to whom they obey.  
And that no more of them imbrace the Chriſtian fayth, the faulte  
is ſomewhat to be imputed to the Biſhoppes and Prelates that  
haue eyther reiected this cure & charge of inſtructyng the nation,  
or ſuffered the fayth of Chriſt to bee ſuffocate, euen in the fyrſt  
ſpyng. For vnder the pretence of religion, they would haue  
aduanced theſe owne reuenues, and ouerburdened the people  
by an intollerable example, none otherwyſe here then in all Chri-  
ſtendome, which thyng is doubtleſſe the cauſe of moſt greuous  
defections. I heard John, a biſhop of Gothlande, ſay thus: We  
that gouerne the church of *Uſſalia*, and haue vnder our dio-  
ceſſe a great parte of that nation, lyke as it is not conuenient  
to declare many thinges of our vigilance and attendaunce o-  
uer the flocke committed to our charge, euen ſo abſteynyng  
from myſchecuous couetouſneſſe, whereby religion is abuſed  
for laker, we doe in all places our diligent endeour, that wee  
miniſter none occaſion, whereby this nation, as offended by our  
ſinnes

No horſes.  
A beaſt of mar-  
ueylous  
ſtrength and  
ſwyftneſſe.

What Schoe-  
mans is, looke in  
Gronlande.

The chaunge  
of the horizon.

The olde auc-  
thours called  
all the North  
people Scy-  
thians.

Erasmus la-  
menteth this  
in his fyrſt  
booke de rati-  
one contionan-  
tiæ where he  
ſpeaketh of  
the people, cal-  
led *Dilapui*.

sinnes, may be the lesse wyllyng to embrace the Christian faith. This is the state of the religion among the Laponers: although of theyr owne institution and custome receyued of theyr predecessours, they are Idolatours, honouryng that luyng thyng that they meete fyrst in the mornynge, for the God of that day, and diuinyng thereby theyr good lucke or euill. They also erecte Images of stone vppon the mountaynes, whiche they esteeme as Goddess, attributyng to them diuine honour. They solempne mariages, and begyn the same with fyre and slynt, as with a mysterie so aptely applyed to the Image of stone, as if it had been receyued from the myddest of Grecia. For in that they adhibite a mysterie to fyre, as they doe not this alone (forasmuch as the Romanes obserued the same custome) euen so are they herein partly to be commended, in that they vse the ceremonies of so noble a people. The mysterie of the flinte is no lesse to be praysed, both forasmuch as this is domesticall philosophie, and hath also a neare affinitie and signification to these solemnities. For as the slynt hath in it fyre lying hyd, whiche appeareth not but by mouyng & force: so is there a secrete lyfe in both kynds of man and woman, which by mutuall coniunction cometh forth to a luyng byrth. They are furthermore experte in chaunters. They tye three knottes on a stryng hanging at a whyp. When they lose one of these, they rayse tollerable wynds: When they lose an other, the wynde is more vehement: but by losyng the thyrde, they rayse playne tempestes, as in olde tyme they were accustomed to rayse thunder and lychtning. This arte doe they vse agaynst such as sayle by theyr coastes, and stape or moue the ryuers and seas more or lesse, as they lyst to shew fauour or displeasure. They make also of leade certayne shorte magicall dartes of the quantitie and length of a fynger. These they throwe agaynst such, of whom they desyre to bee reuenged, to places neuer so farre distant. They are sometimes so vexed with the canker on theyr armes or legges, that in the space of three dayes they dye throught the vehemencie of the payne. The Sunne falleth very lowe in these regions: and prolongeth one continuall nyght for the space of three monethes in wynter, buryng whiche tyme they haue none other lycht but lyke vnto the twilight of eueninges & morninges. This is very cleare, but con-

Idolatrie.

A mysterie of  
marriage in  
fyre and slynt.Experte in-  
chaunters.Magicall  
dartes.

The canker.

One nyght of  
three moneths.

## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

tinueth but fewe houres, and is lyke the bryght shynnyng of the Moone. Therefore that day that the Sunne returneth to the hemisphere, they keepe holy day, and make great myrth with salemne festiuitie. And these are the maners of this nation, not so brutyshe or saluage, as woorthy therfore to be called Lapones for they vnaptenesse or simplicitie, as when they lyued vnder theyr owne Empyre, and vsed no familiaritie or entercourse with other nations, & knew not the commoditie of their owne thinges, neyther the pryce and estimation of theyr furies in our regions, by reason whereof, they solde great plentie of them for some of our wares of small value.

Riche furies.

The boundes or limittes of *Laponia* (beyng the extreme land of *Scandia* knowen towarde the North pole) are extended towarde this parte of the North, to the world yet vnknewen to vs: And furthemoze towarde the same parte of the bittermost sea, according to this description.

|                         |    |     |
|-------------------------|----|-----|
| The fyrst coast.        | 70 | 72. |
| The coast folowynge.    | 80 | 7.  |
| That that yet foloweth. | 90 | 70. |

Plentie of sea  
fyshe.

From the fshynge places and store houses of this sea, they carry forth to *Nordbothnia*, and whyte *Russia*, landes confinnyng to them, great plentie of fshye. Whereby we may coniecture that this sea is extended on euery syde towarde the North. Towarde the West, it is limited with the most inwarde gulfe at the *Caule* of *Wardhus*, at the degree.

Wardhus.

|                                                                               |    |     |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|-----|-----|
|                                                                               | 54 | 70  | 30. |
| Towarde the South, it is limited by a lyne drawn from thence vnto the degree. | 90 | 69. |     |

*Norwegia, or Norway.*

**N**orway, is as muche to say, as the Northway. This was sometyne a flozshynge kyngdome, whose dominion comprehended *Denmarke*, *Friselande*, and the *Islandes* farre about, vniyll the domesticall Empyre was gouerned by the succession of inheritaunce. In the meane tyme whyle this gouernance ceased for lacke of due issue, it was instituted by consent of the nobilitie, that the kynges should be admitted by election: supposing that they would with more equitie execute that office, forasmuche as they were placed in  
the

the same by suche auctoritie, and not by obteynnyng the kyngdome by fortune and newe aduancement. But it came so to passe, that as euery of them excelleth in rycheffe, ambition, and fauoure by consanguinitie, so were they in greater hope to obtaine the kyngdome: and were by this meanes diuided into factions, attemptyng also occations to inuade fozaigne realmes, whereby they myght strenghten theyr parties. It is therefore at this present vnder the dominion of the Danes, who do not onely exact intollerable tributes, but also bypnyng al theyr ryches and commodities into Denmarke, constitutyng the continuance of theyr gouernance in thynfirmite and pouertie of the subiectes: whiche exemple, some other princes do folowe at this day in the Chyristian Empire. For after that the princes had forsaken such vertues as shoulde haue shyned in them, as to be *Patres patrie* (that is) the fathers of their countreys, and that in the place hereof, onely the proude countenance of dominion remayned, whiche opened licentiousnesse to thyniurie of the subiectes: this folowed there of, that whereas the Danes by this occasion had no further trust or ayde in the loue of the people, they prouided, for thyndempnytie of theyr owne estate, by forcible extenuatyng the goods and power of them whom they desired to keepe in subiection. This is the fortune of Norway, whose edefices, towne, and cities can not defende theyr aunient amplitude and dignitie: neyther is there any hope of repaynyng theyr state. For there are no consultations admitted for the redresse of the common welch: No man dare shewe his aduice, or attempte any thyng, vncertayne of the myndes and consent of other. To this difficultie is added the qualitie of the place: For the Danes haue in theyr power al the nauigations of Norway, wherby it may exercise no trade by sea, neyther cary forth wares to other places: So that in fine it may seeme most vnforsunate, as lackyng the fauoure of heauen, the sea, and the lande. From hence is brought into all Europe a sphe of the kyndes of them whiche we call haddockes or hakes, indurate and dyed with cold, and beaten with clubbes or stockes, by reason whereof the Germans call them stockespyhe. The takyng of these, is most commended in Ianuarie, that they may be sufficiently dyed and hardened with colde: For suche as are taken in the moze temperate monethes, do corrupt and

Kyngdomes  
destroyed by  
factions.

The Danes.

The default of  
princes.

An exemple of  
tyrannie.

The miserable  
state of  
Norway.

Stockespyhe.

putrifie,



# Of the Northeast frosty sea,

putrifie, and are not meete to be carped forth.

The description of the west coaste, with the part thereof lying most towarde the north.

*Wardbus* (that is) the watche house, or watche towre

|                                                       |                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----|
| 54.                                                   | 70.             | 30. |
| It is a stronge Castell or fortresse appoynted to the | <i>Lapones.</i> |     |
| The coaste folowpng,                                  | 48.             | 50. |
| <i>Matibkur. &amp;c.</i>                              | 70              |     |

All the coast from hence, and the places neere about vnto the degree. 45. 69. beyng sometyme lesse desolate by the sedition and destruction of *Norway*, the *Lapones* chose for their habitations, as conuining to a more beneficial heauen. From y<sup>e</sup> castell of *Wardbus*, vnto the degree. 40. 30. 64. 10. al the coast in the spring tyme is dangerous to passe, by reason of whales, of such huge byggnesse, that some of them growe to an hundred cubites: for these fythes at that tyme of the yere resorte together for generation. Such shypes as chaunce to fall eyther vppon theyr bodies, or into suche whyrlepooles as they make by theyr behement motions, are in great peryll. The remedie to auoyde this danger, is to powder into the sea *Castoreum* (that is) oyle made of the stones of the beaste called the *Beuor*, myngeled with water: For with this, the whole hearde of whales banysheth suddely to the bottome of the sea: They make a terrible roying, and haue two breathyng places in the hyghest part of theyr forheads, standyng foorth ryght a cubite in length, and are brode at the endes, beyng couered with a skynne, throughe the whiche they blowe waters lyke showers or stormes of raine. The prickes of theyr backs, are founde conteynyng thre els in circuite, and euery knotte betwene them of one ell. They are at the leaste of. 1<sup>y</sup>. cubites in length, and are salted and kept in store houses. The greatest are vnyprofitable to bee eaten, by reason of theyr ranke and vnlaury taste, whiche can not be qualified.

*Nidrosia* standyng vppon the south syde of the sea banke, was the chiefe citie and *Metropolitane* church throughout all *Norway*, *Islande*, *Gronlande*, and the *Ilandes* there about. This citie was noble at the fyrst vnder the storryng Empire of *Norway*, conteynyng in circuite. xxiii. paryshes, but

The *Lapones.*

Shypes in  
danger by  
reason of  
whales.

*Castoreum.*

The roying of  
whales.

Whales salted  
and reserved.

The citie of  
*Nidrosia.*

but it is now brought in maner to a village, and is called in the Germane tongue *Truthaim*, as the house of the *Dyides*. There remaineth at this day a Cathedral church in token of the auncient felicitie, beyng such that in bygnesse and workmanship of wrought stone, the lyke is not in all Christendome. The greefes or compasse about the Altar, was destroyed by fyre, and repaired at the same time that we wrote this historie. The charge of the reparation, was esteemed to be seuen thousand crownes: by which small portion, an estimate may be made of the excellencie of the whole Church.

a magnificentall church

The tract of all the sea coastes of *Norway* is very quiet and meeke, the sea is not frosen, the snowes endure not long. This lande hath also a peculiar pestilence, which they call *Leem* or *Lemmer*. This is a litle foure footed beaste, about the byggenesse of a Ratte, with a spotted skynne: these fall vpon the grounde at certayne tempestes and soddeyne showres, not yet knowen from whence they come, as whether they are brought by the wyndes from remote Ilandes, or otherwys engendred of thicke and feculent cloudes. But this is well knowen, that as soone as they fall downe, greene grasse and hearbes are found in theyr bowels not yet digested. They consume al greene thyngs, as do Locustes: and such as they only byte, wyther and dye. This pestilence lyueth as long as it doth not tast of the grasse newly sproong. They come togeather by flockes, as do Swallows: and at an ordinarie time, either die by heapes, with great infection of the land (as by whose corruption y<sup>e</sup> aire is made pestiferous, and molested the *Norwegians* with swymmyng in the head and the Jaundies) or are consumed of other beastes named *Lefrat*. Towards the East, it is included within the lyne that is drawen by the mountaynes, whose endes or uttermoste boundes, they are, that lye toward the South, about the mouthes of the riuer *Trolbetta*: but that part that lieth toward the North, passeth by the castel of *Wardhus*, and is extended to the vnknowen lande of the *Lapones*.

Some beastes of vns knowen generation.

Wardhus. The vnkowen land of the Lapones.

The Lake called *Mos*, and the Ilande of *Hoffuen* in the myddest therof, is in the degree. 45 30 61.

In this Lake appeareth a straunge monster: whiche is, a serpent of huge byggenesse. And as to all other places of the

A serpent of huge bignesse.

## Of the Northeast frosty sea.

the worlde, blasing starres do portend thalutation and chaunge of thynges: so doth this to *Norway*. It was seene of late (in the yeere of Christ. 1522, appearyng farre aboue the water, rowlyng lyke a great pyller, and was, by coniecture farre of, esteemed to be of spacie cubites in length). Shortly after folowed the relectyng of *Christiernus* kyng of *Denmarke*. Suche other monstrous thyngs are sayd to be seene in diuers places of the world. And doubtlesse except we should thynke that the diuine prouidence, haupng mercy vpon mortall men, and hereby warnyng them of theyr offences, doth send such strange thynges (as also blasing starres, and armies fyghtyng in the ayre, with suche other portentous monsters, whereof no causes can be founde by naturall thynges) we myght els suspect that such fyghtes were but imaginations of the sense of man deceyued.

On the East syde, are exceedyng rough mountaynes, which admit no passage to *Suetia*. The sea betweene *Norway* and the *Ilandes*, is called *Tialleslund*, *Euripus*, or the streyghtes. The *Iland* of *Lofoth*, whose middest.

|                                  |    |    |    |     |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|-----|
| <i>Langanas</i> , whose middest. | 41 | 67 |    | 10. |
| <i>Vastrall</i> , whose middest. | 41 | 30 | 67 | 30. |

The sea betweene these three *Ilands*, is called *Muscstrom* (that is) boplyng. At the flowing of the sea, it is swallowed into the *Caues*, and is blowne out agayne at the reflowing, with no lesse violence then the streames of ryuers fall from mountaines. This sea is nauigable, untill it be lower then the mouthes of the rockes. Such as chaunce into it out of due time, are caried headlong into *Whypooles*. The fragmentes of the lost shypes, are seloome cast vp agayne. But when they are cast vp, they are so brused and fretted against the rockes, that they seeme to be ouergrowne with hoare. This is the power of nature, passing the fabillous *Simpleiades* & the fearful *Malea*, with the dangerous places of *Silla* and *Caribdis*, and all other miracles that nature hath wrought in any other sea hitherto knowen to man.

The *Ilands* about *Norway*, are of such fruitfull pasture, that they bypnyng not theyr beastes into the stables before the moneth of *November*, and do in many places wynter them abrode.

*Suetia*

God warneth  
vs by signes of  
thyngs to  
come.

The streightes  
or boplyng sea.

Dangerous  
places in the  
sea.

Fruitfull  
Ilands about  
*Norway*.

Suecia, or Suethlande.

**S**uecia, is a kyngdome ryche in Golde, Syluer, Copper, Leade, Iron, fruite, cattayle, and exceeding increale of fysh, of the ryuers, lakes, and the sea, and hath no lesse plentie of such wylde beastes as are taken with huntynge.

Golde and syluer.

Towarde the West, it is ended with the mountaynes of Norway from the Castell of Wardhus vnto thende. 51. 63. 40

Wardhus castell.

Towarde the South, with the line from this ende vnto the degrees 53. 30. 61. And from thence vnto the degrees.

61. 60. 30. Aboue the gulse of Suecia, towarde the north, with the south end of Lapponia from the castell of Wardhus vnto the ende. 62. 70.

The gulse of Suecia.

Towarde the East, it is ended with the line from this ende vnto the degree. 63. 62. &c. Stokholme the chiefe citie. 64. 61.

The citie of Stokholme.

This is the chiefe mart towne of Suecia, and is strongly defended by art and nature. It is situate in marshes, after the maner of Venice: and was therfore called Stokholme, forasmuch as being placed in the water, the fundacion is fortified with stockes or piles. The sea entreth into it with two armes or branches, of such largenesse and depth, that shypes of great burden and with maine sayles may enter by the same with theyrful freight. This suffered of late peeres greuous spoile and destruction, to the singular exemple of cruel hostilitie: and such, as the lyke hath not been lyghly shewed to any other citie, receiued by league and composition. In al the tract from Stokholme to the lake aboue the ryuer of Dalekarle, whiche is in the degree. 56. 30. 63. 50. are mountaynes fruiteful of good syluer, copper, and lead. They get great ryches by the salmons and plentie of other fyshes whiche they take in certayne great lakes.

Golde in colde regions. & fysh.

The dukedome of Agermannia occupieth the north syde to the confines of Laponia. This tract is ful of woods, in the which they hunt the beastes called Vros or Bisontes, which in theyr tongue they call Elg, (that is) wylde Asses. These are of such heyghe, that the hyghest part of theyr backes are equal with the measure of a man, holdyng by his armes as hygh as he may reach &c. Upsalia the chiefe citie. 62. 62. 30. here is buried the body of saint Henricus kyng and martyr.

The beaste called Vros or Elg.

Upsalia.

Copperdalia (that is) the copper valley, is a Dukedome south,

Copperdalia.



Of the northeft frosty sea.

Southwarde from the Dukedom of Iemptia . Under this, is the valyant nation of the people called Dalekarly.

Oplandia.

Oplandia, is a Dukedome and the nauil or myddest of Scandia.

The citie of Pircho, on the North syde of the lake of Meler, was once a great citie, and able to arme .xiii. thousande men to the warres : but is nowe brought to a bylage.

All the tracte of Oplandia, hath mynes of Syluer, Copper, and Steele.

Of the Ilandes and rockes that lye about Suecia, the myddest is. 67. 30. 61. 30.

Bydes.

These were called of the olde wyters Done, the reason of which name remayneth vnto this daye : For there are in these innumerable multitudes of bydes, insomuch that thynhabitaunces of the next coast, sayle thither in the moneth of May, whyle the bydes lye on theyr egges : which they steale, and reserue them in salt for a long tyme.

Egges reserved in salte.

Bothnia.

Precious fures.

Fishes.

**B**othnia is so named of the pretious fures of all sortes that are carped from thence into foraigne regions : For by these and theyr fishyng, they haue great commoditie . Salmones of the best sort are taken in these seas, & are great riches among these nations . Bothnia is diuided into two partes, as Northbothnia, & South Bothnia, called Ostrobothnia. Northbothnia, is terminated with the South ende of the Lapones, vnto the ende. 78. 30. 69

Towarde the East, it is terminated with this ende, and vnto the degree. 78. 30. 68. 20.

Towarde the West, with the line terminyng the East syde of Suecia . And towarde the South, with the residue of the gulfes of Suecia, from thence that hath degrees. 63. 69.

Ostrobothnia, towarde the East is terminated from the sayde ende of the most East coast . And towarde the South, with a line extended by the mountaynes from this ende vnto the degree. 71. 66

Towarde the North and West, with part of the gulfes of Suecia, &c.

Gothia

## Gothia or Gothlande.

**G**othia, is by interpretation good. For the holy name of God, is in the Germane tongue *Gotb* (that is) Good. At what tyme the *Gothes* vpon a generall consent sent forth theyr offspring of succession to seeke new seates of countreys to inhabite, and when they possessed the coastes of *Meotis* and *Asia*, none of the olde wyters haue made mention as farre as I know. But they haue been knowen since the tyme that the *Romanes* dilated theyr Empire by *Illirium* (now called *Slauonie*) vnto the ryuer of *Danubius*, and were also famous from the time of *Cesar Dictator*, and *Octauianus Augustus*, by reason of their great warres at *Danubius*, being the vtermoost bound of the Empire. Neuerthelesse, in that renowne what *Gothia* was, vnder what part of heauen it was situate, or of whom the *Gothes* tooke their original, it hath been unknowen almost to this age. This is termined toward the North, with the South ende of *Suetia*, and towarde the West, with the other mountaynes of *Norway*, whiche continue from the boundes of *Suetia*, to the mouthes of the ryuers of *Trolbeta*. &c.

Continuations of  
the *Gothes*.

The warre of  
the *gothes* as  
gainst the *Ros-  
manes*.

The boundes  
of *gothland*.

It hath many goodly Townes, Cities, Castles, Mines, &c. The citie of *Visba*, being in the degree, 61. 30. 54. 15. was an ancient and famous mart Towne, as is *Genua* in *Italie* at this day: but afterward being afflicted by & incursions of the Pirates of the *Danes* and *Moscouites*, it was left desolate. There remaine to this day certayne ruines, whiche testifie the auncient nobilitie. In this place were the firste stations of the *Gothes* that possessed *Meotis*. It is at this day offruitful soyle, and famous by many goodly and strong Castles & Monasteries. There is (among other) a Monasterie of the order of *Saint Benedict*, in the whiche is a librarie of about two thousande bookes of old auctors.

The citie of  
*Visba*.

*Danes* and  
*Moscouites*.

A librarie of  
two thousand  
bookes.

About the yeere of *Cypiste* fourescore and eyght, the *Gothes*, vnto whom resorted a great multitude of other people of these North partes of the worlde, as from *Linonia*, *Prussia*, *Russia*, and *Tartaria*, with diuers other countreys, making them diuers Kynges and Captaynes, byd depopulate and bying in subiection the moze part of *Europe*, inuaded *Italie*, destroyed *Rome*, inhabited that parte of *Italie* now called *Lumbardie*, and lykewyse subdued the Realmes of *Castile* and *Aragonie*. Their warres continued about thre hundred yeeres.

The *gothes* in-  
uaded *Europe*,  
and destroyed  
*Rome*.

Finland,

**F**inlandia, is as much to saye as a sayre land, or tyne lande, so named for the fertilitie of the grounde. Plinie seemeth to call it *Finmonia*: for he saith, that about the coastes of Finland, are many Islands without names, of the which there lyeth one befoze *Scithia* called *Pannonia*. The gulfe called *Sinus Finmonicus*, is so named at this day of the land of *Finmonia*. *Finmonia* consisteth with *Scithia*, and runneth without all *Tanaïs*, (that is to say) without the lymittes of *Europe* to the confines of *Asia*. But that the name of *Finlande* seemeth not to agree hercunto, the cause is, that this place of *Plinie* is corrupted, as are many other in this aucthour. So that from the name of *Finmonia*, or *Phinmonia*, it was a lykely errour to call it *Pannonia*, forasimuche as these wordes doo not greatly differ in wyptyng and sounde: so that the counterfect name was soone put in the place of the true name, by hym that knew *Pannonia* and read that name befoze, be- yng also ignorant of *Phinmonia*.

*Pannonia*  
fallis taken for  
*Finmonia*.

*Eningia*.

*Eningia* had in olde tyme the tytle of a kyngdome, it is of such largenesse, but hath now only the title of an inferiour gouernour, beyng vnder the dominion of the *Slauons*, and vsyng the same tongue. In religion, it obserued the rytes of the *Greekes* of late peceres, when it was vnder the gouernance of the *Moscouites*: But it is at this present vnder the kyng of *Sweden* obserueth the institutions of the Occidentall church. *Spanyshe* wyues are brought thither in great plencie, which the people vse merly and cheerefully. It is terminated on the North side by the South lyne of *Ostrobothnia*, and is extended by the mountaynes. Toward the West, it is terminated with the sea of *Finmonia*, accordyng to this description, and hath degrees. 71 66. &c.

*Spanyshe*  
wyues.

Of the difference of regions, and causes of great cities, after the description of Hieronimus

Cardanus. Liber. xi. De Subtilitate.

**T**here is an other difference of regions caused of cold and heate. For suche as are neare vnto the poles, are vexed with to muche colde: and suche as are vnder the line where the Sunne is of greatest force, are oppressed with heate. Suche as are in the middelt betweene both, are nearest vnto temperatenesse. Under the pole, it is impossible

that

that there should be populous cities, because the lande is barren, and the carpage or conueyaunce of fruites, victualles, and other necessaries, is incommodious. By reason whereof, it is necessarie that the inhabitants of such regions lyue euer in continuall wanderyng from place to place, or els in small byllages. Suche as inhabite temperate regions, haue meane cities, as well for that they haue more commodious conueyaunce for necessaries, as also that they may dwel better and more safely togeather then in byllages, by reason of fortifying their towne with walles, and exercysing of artes and occupations, wherby the one may the better helpe the other. Yet that olde Rome (beyng in a temperate region) was of such incredible bygnesse, the cause was, that it obteyned the Emperre of the worlde, by reason whereof, all nations had confluence thither, and not the greatnesse of the walles. But it is necessarie that the greatest cities be in hotte regions: fyrst, for that in such regions, part of the soyle is either barren if it lacke water, or els most fruitfull if it abounde with water. And for this inequalitye, when they fynde any place meete to susteyne a multitude, it foloweth of necessitie that great cities be builded in such places, by reason of great concourse of people resortyng to the same. An other great cause is, that whereas in such regions, marchauntes come very farre to such commodious places, they passe through many desarte and perillous regions: So that it shalbe necessary for theyr better securitie, to come in great companyes, as it were great armiees. And therefore whereas such a societie is once knyt togeather in a commodious place, it should bee great hynderance as well to the inhabitants as to marchauntes, if they should wander in incommodious places. And by this confluence, both of such as dwell neare to such places, and also of strangers and such as dwell farre of, it is necessary that in continuance of tyme, small townes become great cities, as are these: *Quinsai*, *Singui*, *Cambalu*, *Memphis*, *Cairus*, or *Alcair*, otherwyle called *Babilon* in Egypt. But if here any will obiecte Constantinople (in olde tyme called *Bizantium*) beyng in a temperate region, although it be not to be compared to such cities as are more then lx. myles in circuite, yet doe we answere hereunto, that the Turkes Emperre is the cause of the greatnesse hereof, as we sayde before of Rome.



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

The historie written in the latine tongue by *Paulus Ionius*,  
byshop of *Nuceria* in *Italie*, of the legation or ambassade  
of great *Basilus* Prince of *Moscouia*, to Pope Clement  
the .vij. of that name: In which is conteyned the de-  
scription of *Moscouia*, with the regions con-  
finyng about the same, euen vnto  
the great and rych Empire  
of *Catbay*.



Intend first brievely to describe the situation of the region which we plainly see to haue ben little knowen to *Strabo* & *Ptoleme*, & then to proceede in rehearsing the maners, customes, & religion of the people: and this in maner in the like simple stile and phrase of speech, as the same was declared vnto vs by

*Demetrius*  
the ambassa-  
dour of *Mos-*  
*couia*,

*Demetrius* the Ambassadour, a man not ignorant in the latin tongue, as from his youth brought vp in *Liuania*, where he learned the first rudiments of letters, and being growne to mans age, executed thoffice of an Ambassadour into diuers Christian prouinces. For whereas by reason of his approued faithfulness & industrie, he had befoze ben sent as Oratour to the kynges of *Suecia* and *Denmarke*, & the great maister of *Prussia*, hee was at the last sent to *Themperour Maximilian*, in whose court (being replenished with all sortes of men) while he was conuersant, if any thing of barbarous maners yet remayned in so docible & quiet a nature, the same was put away by framing him selfe to better ciuilitie.

*Paulus Cens-*  
*turio*.

The cause of his legacie or ambassade, was giuen by *Paulus Centurio* a *Genuese*, who when he had receiued letters commendatory of pope *Leo* the tenth, & came to *Moscouia* for the trade of marchandies, of his owne mynde conferred with the familiars of *Duke Basilus*, as touching the conformation of the rites of both churches. He furthermore of great magnanimitie, and in maner outrageous desire, sought how by a new and incredibleiage, spices might be brought from *India*. For while befoze hee had exercised the trade of marchandies in *Syria*, *Egypt*, & *Pontus*, he knewe by fame that spices myght be conueighed from the further *India* by the riuer *Indus*, against the course of the same, and from thence  
by

Spices  
brought from  
*India* in  
*Indolcontia*.

The river  
*Indus*.

by a small byage by land passing euer the mountaines of *Paropamisus*, to be caried to the ryuer *Oxus* in *Bactria*, which hauing his originall almost from the same mountaynes from whence *Indus* doeth spryng, and violently carpyng with it many other ryuers, fallerth into the sea *Hircanum* or *Caspium*, at the porte called *Stratana*. And he earnestly affirmed that from *Stratana*, is an easie & safe nauigation vnto the marie towne of *Citrachan* or *Asirachan*, and the mouth of the ryuer *Volga*, and from thence euer agaynst the course of the ryuers, as *Volga*, *Occha*, and *Moscho*, vnto the citie *Moscha*, and from thence by lande to *Riga*, and into the sea of *Sarmatia*, and all the West regions. For he was vehemently, and more then of equitie, accended and prouoked by the iniuries of the *Portugales*, who hauyng by force of armes subdued a great parte of *India*, and possessed all the marie townes, takyng wholly into theyr handes all the trade of spyes to byyng the same into *Spayne*, and neuerthelesse to sell them at a more greuous and intollerable price to the people of *Europe* then euer was heard of before: And furthermore keppe the coastes of the *Indian* sea so straightly with continuall nauies, that those trades are thereby left of, which were before exercised by the gulfe of *Persia*, and towarde the ryuer of *Euphrates*, and also by the streightes of the sea of *Arabia*, and the ryuer *Nilus*, and in fine by our sea: by which trade all *Asia* and *Europe* was abundantly supplied, and better cheape then hath been since the *Portugales* had the trade in theyr handes, with so many incommodities of such long viages, whereby the spyes are so corrupted by chynification of the pompe and other filthinesse of the shyppes, that theyr naturall sauour, taste, and qualitie, as well heereby, as by theyr long reseruyng in the shoppes, sellers, and warehouses in *Lutheburne*, banysheth and resolueith, so that reseruyng euer the freshest and newest, they sell only the woorst and most corrupted. But *Paulus*, although in all places he earnestly and vehemently argued of these thinges, and styred great malice and hatred agaynst the *Portugales*, affyrmyng that not only thereby the customes and reuenues of princes shoulde be much greater, if that byage might be discovered, but also that spyes myght bee better cheape bought at the handes of the *Moscouites*: yet could he nothyng auayle in this suite, forasmuche as Duke *Basilus*

*Oxus* or *Hortiana*, a ryuer of *Asia* runneth through the desertes of *Syria*.

The sea *Hircanum*, is now called *mare No- barche*, or *mare de Sals*.

*Citrachan* or *Asirachan*, *Sarmatia* is that great countrey wherein is comprehended *Scythia*, *Lyoznia*, and *Tartaria*, and the North and East parte of *Polonia*. Agaynst the *Portugales*, The trade of spyes in olde tyme.

*Spices corrupted*.

thought it not good to make open, or disclose unto a straunger and unknowen man, those regions which gyue enterance to the sea *Caspium*, and the kyngdomes of *Persia*. Paulus therefore excludyng all hope of further traueple, and become nowe of a marchaunte an Ambassadour, brough *Basilus* letters (Hape Leo beyng now departed) to Adrian his succellour, in the which he declared, with honourable and reuerende woordes, his good will and fauourable mynde towarde the Bpshoppe of Rome. For a fewe yeeres before, *Basilus* (then keepyng warres agaynst the Polones, at suche tyme as the generall counsaile was celebrate at *Laterane*) requyred by John, Kyng of Denmarke (the father of *Christierne*, who was of late expelled from his kyngdome) that safe passage myght be graunted to the Ambassadors of *Mosconia*, to goe to Rome. But whereas it so chaunced, that kyng John and Hape Julius dyed both in one day, whereby he lacked a conuenient sequester or solicitour, he omitted his consultation as touchyng that legacie. After this, the warre waxed hotte betweene him and *Sigismunde* the kyng of *Polonie*: who obtepyng the victorie agaynst the *Moscouites* at *Boristhene*, supplications were decreed in Rome for the ouerthrowe and banquythyng the enemyes of the Christian faith, whiche thyng greatly elienated both kyng *Basilus* him selfe, and all that nation from the Bpshoppe of Rome. But when Adrian the .vi. departed from this lyfe, and lest *Paulus* now readie to his seconde vyage, his succellour *Clement* the .viii. percepyng that *Paulus* styll furiously reuolued and tossed in his unquyet mynde that vyage towarde the East, sent him agayne with letters to *Mosconia*, by the whiche with propense and friendly persuations, he exhorted *Basilus* to acknowledge the maiestie of the *Romane* church, and to make a perpetuall league and agreement in matters of religion, which thyng shoulde bee not only for the health of his soule, but also greatly to the increase of his honour: And further promysed, that by the holy auctoritie of his office, he would make him a kyng, and gyue him kyngly ornamentes, if reiectyng the doctrine of the Greekes, hee would confourme himselfe to the auctoritie of the *Romane* church.

But

The Caspian sea.

*Basilus* voye to Hape *Adrian*.

Warre betweene the Polones and *Moscouites*.

The seconde vyage of *Paulus* to *Moscouia*.

The Hape perswade *Basilus* to acknowledge the *Romane* church.

But Paulus, who with more prosperous iourneyes then great bauntage, had from his youth traueyled a great parte of the worlde, although hee were nowe aged, and soze vexed with the strangurie, came with a prosperous and speedy iourney to Moscouia, where he was gentelly receyued of *Basilus*, and remayned in his Courte for the space of twoo monethes. But in fine, mistrustynge his owne strength, and deterred by the difficultie of so great a iourney, when he had betterly put away all his imaginatons and hope of this trade to India, returned to Rome with *Demetrius* the Ambassadour of *Basilus*, befoze we yet thought that he had been in Moscouia. The Bysshoppe commaunded that *Demetrius* should bee lodged in the most magnificent and princely parte of the houses of *Vaticane*, the rooffes of whose edities are gylded and embowed, and the chambers richly furnyshed with silken beddes and cloth of Arresse: Wyllynge furthermore that he should be honourably receyued, and bestured with silke. He also assigned *Franciscus Cheregatus*, the Bysshoppe of *Aprutium* (a man that had often tymes been Ambassadour to dyuers regions) to accompany him, and shewe him the order and rytes of our religion, with the monumentes and maners of the citie. Furthermore, when *Demetrius* had certayne dayes rested and recreated him selfe, washing away the fylth he had gathered by reason of the long viage, then apparelled with a fayre vesture, after the maner of his countrey, he was brought to the byshops presence, whom he honoured kneelyng, with great humilitie and reuerence (as is the maner) and therewith presented vnto his holinesse certeyne furies of *Sables* in his owne name, and in the name of his prince, and also deliuered the letters of *Basilus*, which they befoze, and then the *Illyrian* or *Slauon* interpretour, *Nicolaus Siccensis*, translated into the Latine tongue, in this effecte as foloweth.

*Demetrius* is  
certaynement  
at Rome.

*Demetrius* is  
brought to the  
Popes pres-  
ence,



*Basilius let-  
ters to Pope  
Clement.*

To Pope Clement, shep<sup>ard</sup> and teacher of the Romane church, great *Basilius* by the grace of God, lord, Emperour, and dominatour of all *Russia*, and great Duke of *Volodemia*, *Moscouia*, *Nonogradia*, *Plescouia*, *Smolenta*, *Ifferia*, *Iugoria*, *Perinnia*, *I'etcha*, *Bolgaria*, &c. Dominator & great prince of *Nonogradia*, in the lower countrey: also of *Cernigouia*, *Razania*, *Volotchbia*, *Rexenia*, *Belchia*, *Rostonia*, *Iarostania*, *Belozeria*, *Vdoria*, *Obdoria*, & *Condiuia*, &c. You sent vnto vs *Paulus Centurio*, a citizen of *Genua*, with letters, whereby you doe exhort vs to ioyne in power & counsayle with you, & other Princes of Christendome, against the enemies of the christian fayth: & that a free passage & redy way may bee opened for both your Ambassadours & ours, to come & go to & fro, whereby by mutual dutie and indeuour on both parties, we may haue knowledge of the state of thinges parteynyng to the wealth of vs both. VVe certes, as we haue hytherto happily by the ayde and helpe of almightie God constantly and earnestly resisted the cruell & wicked enemies of the christian faith, so are we determined to doe hereafter: and are likewise redy to consent with other christian princes, & to graunt free passage into our dominions. In consideration wherof, we haue sent vnto you our faithful seruant *Demetrius Erasmus*, with these our letters: & with him haue remitted *Paulus Centurio*, desiring you also shortly to dismisse *Demetrius*, with safegard and indemnitie vnto the borders of our dominions. And we wil likewise do the same, if you send your Ambassadour with *Demetrius*, whereby both by communication and letters, we may be better certified of thorder and administration of such things as you require: so that being aduertised of the mindes and intent of all other christian princes, we may also consult what is best to be done herein. Thus fare ye wel. Giuen in our dominiō in our citie of *Mosconia*, in the yeere from the creation of the world. vii. thousand and. 300. the third day of Aprill.

But *Demetrius*, as he is experte in diuine and humane thinges, and especially of holy scripture, seemed to haue secrete commaundement of greater matters, whiche we thinke he will shortly declare to the senate in priuate consultations. For he is now deliue-  
red

red of the feuer, into the which he fell by change of ayre, and hath so recovered his strength & natie colour, that being a man of lx. yeeres of age, he was not onely present at the Popes masse, celebrated with great solemnitie in the honour of *S. Cosmus & Damian*, but came also into the Senate, at such tyme as Cardinal Campegius, commyng first from the legacie of *Pannonia*, was receiued of the Pope & all the nobilitie of the court: And furthermore also viewed the Temples of the holy citie, with the ruines of the Roman magnificence, and with woondring eyes beheld the lamentable decay of the auncient buildinges. So that we thinke that shortly after he hath declared his message, he shal return to *Mosconia*, with the byshop of *Scarense* the Popes legate, not vnrecompensed with iust rewardes at the handes of his holinesse.

Cardinall.  
Campegius.

The ruynes  
of Rome.

The name of the *Moscouites* is nowe newe, although the Poete *Lucane* maketh mention of the *Moschos* conspyng with the *Sarmatians*: and *Plinie* also placeth the *Moschos* at the springes of the great ryuer of *Phasis*, in the region of *Colchos*, aboue the sea *Euxinus*, towarde the East. Theyr region hath very large boundes, and is extened from the Aultars of great Alexander about the springes of *Tanais*, to the extreme landes and North Ocean, in maner vnder the North starres, called charles wayne, or the great Beare, beyng for the most parte playne, & of fruitfull pasture, but in sommer in many places full of marishes. For whereas all that lande is replenished with many and great ryuers, which are greatly increased by the wynter, shoue, and Ice, resolved by the heate of the sunne, the playnes and fieldes are thereby ouerflown with marishes, and all iourneys incombred with continuall waters and myrie slabbynesse, buttill by the benefite of the newe wynter the ryuers and marishes be frosen agayne, and giue safe passage to the sleades that are accustomed to iourney by the same. The wood or focest of *Hercynia* (and not *Hyrkania*, as is red in some false copies) occuppeth a great parte of *Mosconia*, and is heere and there inhabited, with houses builded therein, and so made thinner by the long labour of men, that it doeth not now shewe that honour of thicke & impencurable woods and landes, as many thinke it to haue. But beyng replenished with many wylde beastes, is so far extended throughe *Mosconia*, with a continuall tract betweene

The descripti-  
on of Mos-  
conia.

The Aultars  
of great Alex-  
ander.

Marishes in  
sommer.

The focest of  
Hercynia.

Wylde beastes.

The Scythian  
Ocean.

The beastes  
called *Vri*, or  
*Bisontes*.

*Yelenes*.

Of the Scy-  
thians and  
Tartars.  
*Amarouij*.

*Horda*.

The large do-  
minion of the  
Tartars.  
*Cathay*.

The Tartars  
of Europe.

The Tartars  
of Asia are sub-  
iecte to the  
Duke of Mos-  
couia.

the East and the North, towarde the Scythian Ocean, that by the infinite greatnesse thereof, it hath deluded the hope of such as haue curiously searched the ende of the same. In that parte that reacheth towarde *Prussia*, are founde the great and fierce beastes called *Vri*, or *Bisontes*, of the kynde of Bulles: Also, *Alces* lyke vnto *Hartes*, which the *Moscouites* call *Lozzi*, and are called of the *Germanes* *Yelenes*.

On the East syde of *Moscouia* are the *Scythians*, which are at this day called *Tartars*, a wandring nation, and at all ages famous in warres. In the stead of houses they vse wagons, couered with beastes hydes, wherby they were in olde tyme called *Amaxouii*. For cities and townes, they vse great tentes and paulions, not defended with trenches or walles of tymber or stone, but inclosed with an innumerable multitude of archers on horse backe. The *Tartars* are diuided by companyes, which they call *Hordas*, which worde in theyr tongue signifieth a consentynge company of people, geathered together in forme of a citie. Euery *Horda* is gouerned by an Emperour, whom eyther his parentage or warlike prowes hath promoted to that dignitie. For they oftentimes keepe warre with theyr borderers, and contend ambicionly and fiercely for dominion. It doeth hereby appeare, that they consist of innumerable *Hordas*, in that the *Tartars* possesse the most large desartes, euen vnto the famous citie of *Cathay*, in the furdest Ocean in the East. They also that are nearest to the *Moscouites*, are knowen by theyr trade of marchaundies, and often incurSIONS. In Europe, neare vnto the place called *Dromon Achillis*, in *Taurica Chersoneso*, are the *Tartars* called *Precopites*, the daughter of whose prince, *Selymus* the Emperour of the *Turkes* tooke to wyfe. These are most infect to the *Polones*, and waste the regions on euery syde, betweene the ryuers of *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*. They that in the same *Taurica* possesse *Cassam*, a colonie of the *Ligurians* (called in olde tyme *Theodosia*) doe both in religion and all other thinges agree with the *Turkes*. But the *Tartars* that inhabite the regions of *Asia*, betweene *Tanais* and *Volga*, are subiect to *Basilus* the kyng of the *Moscouites*, and choose them a gouernour at his assignement. Among these, the *Cremii* afflicted with ciuile seditions, where as hetheretofore they were ryche and of great power, haue of late yeeres lost theyr domi-

dominion and dignitie. The *Tartars* that are beyonde the riuer of *Volga*, do religiously obserue the friendship of the *Moscouites*, and professe them selues to be theyr subiectes. Beyond the *Cassanites*, towarde the North, are the *Sciambani*, ryche in herdes of cattayle, and consistyng of a great multitude of men. After these, are *Nogai*, whiche obteyne at this day the chiefe fame of ryches and warly affayres. Theyr *Horda*, although it be most ample, yet hath it no Emperour, but is gouerned by the wysedome and vertue of the most auncient & valiant men, after the maner of the common wealth of *Venece*. Beyonde the *Nogais*, somewhat toward the South & the *Caspian* sea, the noblest nation of the *Tartars*, called *Zagathai*, inhabite townes buylded of stone, and haue an exceedyng great and fayre citie, called *Samarcanda*, whiche *Iaxartes*, the great ryuer of *Sogdiana*, runneth through, and passyng from thence about a hundred myles, falleth into the *Caspian* sea. With these people in our dayes, *Ismael* the *Sophi* and kyng of *Persia*, hath ostentymes kepte warre, with doubtfull successe. Insomuche that fearyng the greatnesse of theyr power, whiche he resysted with all that he myght, he lefte *Armenia* and *Taurisum* the chiefe citie of the kyngdome, for a praye to *Selimus* the victourer of one wyng of the battayle. From the citie of *Samarcanda*, descended *Tamburlanes* the myghty Emperour of the *Tartars*, whom some call *Tanberlanis*; But *Demetrius* sayth that he shoulde be called *Themircuthlu*. This is he that about the yere of *Christ*. M. CCC. xlviii. subdued almost all the East partes of the worlde: And lastly, with an innumerable multitude of men, inuaded the *Turkes* dominions, with whom *Baiafetes Ottomanus* theyr kyng, (and father to the great grandfather of this *Solyman* that nowe lyueth) meetyng at *Ancira* in the confines or marches of *Galatia* and *Bythinia*, gaue hym a foze battayle, in the whiche fell on the *Turkes* part. 20000 men, and *Baiafetes* hym selfe was taken prisoner, whom *Tamburlanes* caused to be locked in an Iron cage, and so caried hym about with hym through all *Asia*, which he also conquered with a terryble army. He conquered all the landes betwene *Tanais* and *Nilus*, and in fine vanquished in battayle the great *Soltane* of *Egypte*, whom he chased beyonde *Nilus*, and tooke also the citie of *Damascus*.

The *Tartars* beyonde the riuer of *Volga*.

*Nogai*.  
*Sigismundus* calleth them *Nogaptri*.

The noblest nation of the *Tartars*.  
The ryuer *Iaxartes*.

*Ismael* the *Sophi* kyng of *Persia*.

The citie of *Samarcanda*.

*Tamburlanes*, the myghtie Emperour of the *Tartars*.  
The conqueror of *Tanbur*lanes.

*Baiafetes*.



## Of the Northeast frosty sea,

From the region of these *Tartars* called *Zagathai*, is brought great plentie of sylken apparell to the *Moscouites*. But the *Tartares* that inhabite the mydlande or inner regions, byng none other wares then trucks or dyoues of swift rummyng hozles, and clokes made of whyte feltes: also hales or tentes, to withstande the iniuries of colde and rayne. These they make very artificially, & apt for the purpose. Thei receiue agained of the *Moscouites*, coates of cloth, and Syluer monie, conteynyng all other bodyply ornamentes, and the furnytüre of superfluous household stuffe. For beyng defended agaynst the violence of weather and tempestes, onely with such apparel and couerture whereof we haue spoken, they trust onely to theyr arrowes, which they shoote aswell backwarde flyng, as when they assaile theyr enemies face to face: Albeit, when they determined to inuade Europe, theyr princes and captaynes had helmets, coates of fence, and hooked swoordes, whiche they bought of the *Persians*. Towarde the South, the boundes of *Moscouia* are terminated by the same *Tartars* whiche possesse the playne regions neere vnto the *Caspian* sea, aboute the maryshes of *Meotis* in *Asia*, and about the ryuers of *Boristhenes* and *Tanais* in part of Europe. The people called *Roxolani*, *Gete*, and *Bastarne*, inhabited these regions in olde tyme, of whom I thynke the name of *Russia* tooke originall. For they call part of *Lituania*, *Russia* the lower, whereas *Moscouia* it selfe is called whyte *Russia*. *Lituania* therefore, lyeth on the Northwest syde of *Moscouia*. But toward the full West, the mayne landes of *Prussia* and *Liuania* are ioyned to the confines or marches of *Moscouia*, wher the *Sarmatian* sea breakyng forth of the streightes of *Cimbrica Chersonesus* (nowe called *Denmarke*) is bended with a crooked gulse toward the North. But in the furthest bankes of that Ocean, where the large kyngdomes of *Norway* and *Suecia* are ioyned to the continent, and almost enuironed with the sea, are the people called *Lapones*: a nation exceedyng rude, suspitious, and fearefull, flyng and astonyshe at the syght of all straungers and shyppes. They knowe neyther frutes nor apples, nor yet any benignitie eyther of heauen or earth. They prouide them meate onely with shootyng, and are appareled with l kynnes of wyld beastes. They dwell in caues fylled with dye leaues, and in holowe

This apparell they haue of the *Persians*.

The *Tartars* trafficke with the *Moscouites*.

The *Tartars* of the South syde of *Moscouia*.

*Gete* and *Roxolani*.  
*Russia*.

*Moscouia* called whyte *Russia*.  
*Lituania*.  
*Prussia*.  
*Liuania*.  
*Denmarke*.  
*Norway*.  
*Suecia*.  
The people of *Laponia*.

holow trees, consumed withiſe either by fyre, or rotten for age. Such as dwell neare the ſea ſyde, ſylke moze luckelye then cunnynge, and in the ſtead of fruites, reſerue in ſtoze ſylkes dyed with ſmoke. They are of ſmall ſtature of bodie, with flat viſa-gies, pale and wannie coloure, and very ſwyfte of foote. They wyttes or diſpoſitions, are not knownen to the *Moscouites* they borderers, who thynke it therefore a madneſſe to aſſaile them with a ſmal power, and iudge it neyther profitable nor glorious, with great armies to invade a poore & beggerly nation. They exchange the moſt white furs, which we cal *Armelines*, for other wares, of diuers ſortes: Yet ſo, that they ſteale the ſyght and companye of all merchantes. For comparynge and laying they wares togeather, and leauynge they furs in a mydde place, they bargain with ſimplye ſayth, with abſent and vnknownen men. Some men of great credite and aucthoritie, do teſtifie that in a region beyond the *Lapones*, betwene the Weſt and the North, oppreſſed with perpetuall darkneſſe, is the nation of the people called *Pigmei*, who being growen to they ſul grought, do ſcarce-ly excede the ſtature of our chyldezen of ten yeeres of age. It is a fearefull kynde of men, and expreſſe they wordes in ſuche chattering ſort, that they ſeeme to be ſo muche the moze lyke vnto Apes, in howe muche they differ in ſenſe and ſtature from men of iuſt heygth.

*Armeline furs.*

*Bargayning without wordes.*

*The dark region by this dark region and pigmei, is the way to Charhap by the North ſea.*

Toward the North, innumerable people are ſubiect to the Empire of the *Moscouites*. They regions extend to the *Scythian Ocean* for the ſpace of almoſt three monethes iorney.

*The Scythian Ocean.*

Next vnto *Moscouia*, is the region of *Colmogora*, aboundynge with fruites. Through this runneth the ryuer of *Diudna*, beyng one of the greateſt that is knownen in the North partes, and gaue the name to an other leſſer ryuer, which beareth ſooth into the ſea *Balticum*. This encreaſynge at certain tymes of the yeere, as dooth the ryuer *Nilus*, ouerfloweth the ſeeldes and playnes, and with his ſatte and nouryſhyng moyſture, doth marueylouſlye reſiſt the iniuries of heauen, and the ſharp blaſtes of the North wynde. When it riſeth by reaſon of molten ſnow, and great ſhowres of rayne, it falleth into the Ocean by vnknownen nations, and with ſo large a Trench, lyke vnto a great ſea, that it can not be ſayled ouer

*The region of Colmogora. The ryuer of Diudna.*

## Of the Northeast frosty sea.

in one day with a prosperous wynde. But when the waters are fallen, they leaue here and there large and fruitfull Islands: For come there cast on the ground, groweth without anye helpe of the plowe, and with meruaylous celeritie of hasting nature, fearyng the newe iniurie of the proude ryuer, doth both spryng and rype in short space.

Into the riuer *Diuidna*, runneth the ryuer *Tuga*: and in the corner where they ioyne cogeather, is the famous Parte Towne called *Vstinga*, distant from the cheefe citie *Mosca*, vi. hundred myles.

Note that whereas *Paulus Iouius* wyrteth here that the ryuer of *Diuidna*, otherwyle called *Duina*, runneth through the region of *Colmogor*, it is to bee vnderstood that there are two ryuers of that name, the one on the Northeast side of *Mosconia*, toward the frozen sea, & the other on the Southwest syde, falling into the sea *Balthewm*, or the gulfes of *Finnonia*, by the citie of *Riga* in *Liunia*. And forasmuche as the true knowledge of these and certayne other is very necessarie for all such as shal trade into *Mosconia*, or other regions in those coastes by the North sea, I haue thought good to make further declaration hereof, as I haue founde in the historie of *Mosconia*, most faythfully and largely wyrtten by *Sigismundus Libernus*, who was twyle sent Embassadour into *Mosconia*, as fyrst by *Maximilian* the Emperour, and then agayne by *Ferdinando* kyng of *Hungarie* and *Boheme*. This haue I done the rather, for that in all the mappes that I haue seene of *Mosconia*, there is no mention made of the riuer of *Duina*, that runneth through the region of *Colmogor*, and by the citie of the same name, although the prouince of *Duina*, be in all cardes placed Northwarde from the ryuer of *Vsting* or *Succana*, which is the same *Duina*, wherof we now speake, and whereof *Paulus Iouius* wyrteth, although it be not so named but from the angle or corner, where ioyning with the ryuer of *Iug* and *Succana*, it runneth Northward: towards the citie of *Colmogor*: and from thence falleth into the North or frozen sea, as shall hereafter more playnely appeare by the wordes of *Sigismundus*, that the one of these be not taken for the other, beyng so farre distant, that great errour myght ensue by mistaking the same, especially because this whereof *Paulus Iouius* wyrteth, is not by name expressed in the cardes, but only in the other, wherby the errour myght be the greater. Of that therfore that runneth by the confines of *Liunia*, and the citie of *Riga*, *Sigismundus* wyrteth in this maner.

The Lake of *Duina*, is distant from the springes of *Borishenes*, almost ten myles, and as many from the marishe of *Fronouuo*. From it a ryuer of the same name toward the West, distant from *Vmna* twentie myles, runneth from thence toward the North, where by *Riga*, the cheefe citie of *Liunia*, it falleth into the Germane sea, whiche the Moscovites call *Vuareczkoie morie*. It runneth by *Vuitepso*, *Polotzo*, and *Duisenburg*, and not by *Plesconia*, as one hath wyrtten. This riuer, beyng for the mooste part nauigable, the *Liunians* call *Duina*.

Of the other *Duina*, whereof *Paulus Iouius* speaketh, he wyrteth as followeth.

The ryuer of  
*Tuga* or *Jug*.  
*Diuidna* or  
*Duina*.

The riuer of  
*Diuidna* or  
*Duina*.

The riuer of  
*Suchana*.

The frozen  
sea.

The

The province of *Duina* and the ryuer of the same name, is so named from the place where the ryuers of *Suchana* and *Iug* meetyng togeather, make one ryuer so called. For *Duina* in the *Mosconites* tongue, signifieth two. This ryuer by the space of two hundred myles, entrecheth into the North Ocean, on that part where the sayde sea runneth by the coastes of *Sucia* and *Norway*, and diuideth *Engreconland* from the vnknowen lande. This prouince situate in the full North, perteyned in tyme past to the signiorie of *Novogorode*. From *Mosconia* to the mouthes of *Duina*, are numbred .CCC. myles: Albeit as I haue sayde, in the regions that are beyonde *Volga*, the accompt of the iourney can not be wel obserued, by reason of many maryshes, ryuers, and very great wooddes that lye in the way. Yet are we led by conjecture to thynke it to be scarcely two hundred myles: forasmuch as from *Mosconia* to *Vuolochda*, from *Vuolochda* to *Vsiug* somewhat into the East, and laste of al, from *Vsiug* by the ryuer *Duina*, is the right passage to the North sea. This region, belyde the Castell of *Colmogor* and the citie of *Duina*, situate almost in the mydde way betwene the spynges and mouthes of the ryuer, and the Castell of *Pienega* standyng in the very mouthes of *Duina*, is bitterly without townes and Castels: Yet hath it many villages which are farre in sunder, by reason of the barennesse of the soyle. &c.

*Duina* and  
*Suchana*.

*Greonlande* or  
*Engreconland*.

*Vnderstande*  
myles of *Ser*  
many, that is  
leagues.

In an other place he wyrteth, that *Suchana* and *Iug*, after they are ioyned togeather in one, loofe theyr fyrrst names, and make the ryuer *Duina*. &c. But let vs nowe retorne to the hystorie of *Paulus Ionius*.

Unto *Vsiuga*, from the *Permians*, *Pecerrians*, *Inugrians*, *Vgolicans*, and *Pinnegians*, people inhabytyng the North and Northest prouinces, are brought the precious furies of *Partens* and *Sables*, also the calles of *Woulfes* and *Foxes* both whyte and blacke: And lyke wyse the skynnes of the beastes called *Cernarij Lupi* (that is) harte *Woolfes*, beyng engendred eyther of a *Woolfe* and a *Hynde*, or a *Hart* and a bitch *Woolfe*. These furies and skynnes, they exchange for dyuers other wares. The best kynde of *Sables*, and of the finest heare, wherewith nowe the vestures of princes are lynyed, and the tender neckes of delicate dames are couered, with the expresse similitude of the lypuyng beaſt, are brought by the *Permians* and *Pecerrians*, whiche they them selues also receyue at the handes of other that inhabite the regions neere vnto the North Ocean. The *Permians* and *Pecerrians*, a litle before our tyme, dyd sacrifice to *Idols*, after the maner of the *Gentyles*: but do nowe acknowledge *Christe* theyr God. The passage to the *Inugrians*, and *Vgolicans*, is by certayne rough mountaynes, whiche perhappes are they that in olde tyme were called

*Sych furies*.

*Lupi Cernarij*.

*Sables*.

The mountaynes  
called  
*Hyperboiei*.

*Hyperboiei*.



## Of the northeft frosty sea.

*Hiperborci* . In the toppes of these, are somde the best kyndes of *Falcons* : whereof one kynde (called *Herodium*) is white, with spotted fethers.

There are also *Ferfalcons*, *Sakers*, and *Peregrines*, whiche were vnknownen to the ancient princes in theyr excellent and nise pleasures.

Beyonde those people whom I last named (beyng all tributaries to the kynges of *Moscouia*) are other nations, the last of men, not knownen by any voyages of the *Moscouites*, so farre muche as none of them haue passed to the Ocean, and are therefore knownen onely by the fabulous narrations of merchants. Yet it is apparante that the ryuer *Duidna* or *Tuina*, drawyng with it innumerable other ryuers, runneth with a vehement course towarde the North, and that the sea is there exceeding large : so that saylyng by the coaste of the ryght hande, shippes may haue passage from thence to *Ca-bay*, as it is thought by most lykely coniecture, except there lye some lande in the way . For the region of *Cathay* perteyneth to the extreme and furthest partes of the Easte, situate almost in the parallel of *Thracia*, and knownen to the *Portugales* in *India* when they sayled neere thereunto by the regions of *Sinara* and *Malacca* to *Aurea Chersonesus*, and brought from thence certayne bestures made of *Sables skynnes*, by whiche onely argument it is apparence that the citie of *Cathay* is not farre from the coastes of *Scythia*.

But when *Demetrius* was demaunded whether epyther by the monuments of letters, or by fame lesse them of theyr predicessours, they had any knowledge of the *Gothes*. who nowe more then a thousande yeeres since, subuerted the Empire of the *Romane Emperours*, and defaced the citie of *Rome*: He answered, that both the nation of the *Gothes* of the name of king *Totilas* theyr chiefe captayne, was of famous mentioie among them: And that dyuers nations of the North regions conspired to that expedition, and especially the *Moscouites*: Also that that armie increased of the confluence of the *Barbarous Linons* and wanderyng *Tartars* : But that they were all called *Gothes*, so farre muche as the *Gothes* that inhabited *Scondania* and *Islande*, were the auctours of that inuasion.

And

Haukes of diuers kyndes.

The passage from *Moscouia* to *Cathay*.

*Cathay*.

Maister Eliot calleth *Cathay* the region of *Sinaram*.

The *Gothes* subuerted the *romane Empire*.

The north region conspired against the *Romans*.

*Moscouia*.

And with these boundes are the *Moscouites* inclosed on euery syde, whom we thinke to be those people that *Ptolome* called *Modocas*: but haue doubtlesse at this day theyr name of the ryuer *Mosco*, which runneth through the cheefe citie *Mosca*, named also after the same. This is the most famous citie in *Moscouia*, aswell for the situation thereof, being in maner in the myddest of the region, as also for the commodious oportunitie of riuers, multitude of houses, and strong fence of so fayre and goodly a Castell. For the citie is extended with a long tract of buildynges by the bankes of the ryuer for the space of fyue myles. The houses are made all of timber, and are diuided into parlours, Chambers, and Kytchyns, of large roomes: yet neyther of vnseemely heyght, or to lowe, but of decent measure and proportion. For they haue great trees apt for the purpose brought from the Forrest of *Hercinia*: Of the which, made perfectly round lyke þe masses of stypps, and so layd one vpon an other, that they ioyne at the endes in ryght angles, where being made very fast and sure, they frame theyr houses therof, of meruaylous strength with smal charges, and in verie short tyme. In maner all the houses haue pyuate gardens, aswell for pleasure as commoditie of hearbes, wherby the circuite of the dispersed citie appeareth very great. At the wardes or quarters of the citie, haue their peculiar Chappels. But in the cheefest and highest place therof, is the Church of our Lady, of ample and goodly workemanshyype, whiche *Aristoteles* of *Bononie*, a man of singular knowledg and experience in Architecture, builded moze then threescore yeeres since. At the very head of the citie, a litle ryuer, called *Neglmia* which tryueth many cozne myles, entereth into the ryuer *Moscos*, and maketh almost an Ilande, in whose end is the Castell, with many strong towers and bulwarkes, builded very fayre by the deuice of Italian Architecturs that are the maisters of the kynges workes. In the fieldes about the citie, is an incredible multitude of Hares, and Roe Buckes, the which, it is lawfull for no man to chase or pursue with dogges or nettes, except only certayne of the kyngs familiars, and straunge Ambassadors, to whom he geueth licence by speciall commaundement. Almost thre parties of the citie is incircled with two riuers, and the residue with a large Dote, that receiueth plentie of water from the sayde

The citie of  
*Mosca*.

Richard  
Chaunceler told  
me that these  
masses are timor  
what hollow  
on the one syde,  
that the whole  
syde of the next  
entereth into þe  
same, whereby  
they be very  
close.

The castell of  
*Mosca*.

White Hares  
and Roe huss  
kes.

## Of the northeft frosty sea.

sayde ryuers. The citie is also defended on the other syde with an other ryuer named *Iausa*, whiche falleth also into *Moscus* a litle beneath the citie. Furthermoze, *Moscus* runnyng towards the South, falleth into the riuer *Ocha* or *Occa*, muche greater then it selfe at the towne *Columna*; and not very farre from thence, *Ocha* it selfe, encreased with other ryuers, vnladeth his streames in the famous ryuer *Volga*, where at the place where they ioyne, is situate the citie of *Novogradia* the lesse, so named in respect of the greater citie of that name, from whence was brought the fyrst colonie of the lesse citie. *Volga*, called in olde tyme *Rha*, hath his originall of the great marishes, named the whyte Lakes. These are aboute *Moscouia*, betweene the North and the West, and send forth from them almost all the ryuers that are disperfed into diuers regions on euery syde, as we see of the Alpes, from whose toppes and springes descend the waters, of whose concourse the ryuers of *Rhene*, *Po*, and *Rodanum*, haue they encrease. For these marishes, in the shade of mountaines full of springes, minister abundant moysture, for as muche as no mountaynes are yet founde in that region by the long trauayles of men, insomuche that many that haue been studious of the old Cosmographie, suppose the *Riphean* and *Hiperborean*, mountaines so often mentioned of the auncient wyrters, to be fabulous. From these marishes therfore, the riuers of *Duina*, *Ocha*, *Moscus*, *Volga*, *Tanais*, and *Boristhenes*, haue they originall. The *Tartares* call *Volga* *Edel*: *Tanais* they call *Don*: And *Boristhenes*, is at this tyme called *Neper*. This, a litle beneath *Taurica*, runneth into the sea *Euxinus*. *Tanais* is receyued of the marishes of *Meotis* at the noble Parte Towne *Azoum*, But *Volga*, leauyng the citie of *Mosca* towardes the South, and runnyng with a large circuite, and great wyndynges, and Creekes fyrst towardes the East, then to the West, and lastlye to the South, falleth with a full streamie into the *Caspian* or *Hircan* sea. A boue the mouth of this, is a citie of the *Tartars* called *Citrachan*, whiche some call *Astrachan*, where *Hartes* are kept by the Merchantes of *Media*, *Armenia*, and *Persia*. On the further bancke of *Volga*, there is a towne of the *Tartars* called *Casan*, of the whiche the *Horda* of the *Casanite Tartars* tooke they name. It is distant from the mouth of *Volga*

and

The ryuer  
*Ocha*.

*Volga*.  
*Novogradia*.

*Rha*.

The white  
Lakes.

The *Riphean*  
& *Hiperborean*  
mountaynes.

*Tanais* and  
*Boristhenes*.

The sea *Euxi-*  
*nius*.

The *Caspian*  
sea.  
*Astrachan*.  
*Media*.  
*Armenia*.  
*Persia*.  
*Casan*.

and the *Caspian* sea. 500. myles. Aboue *Casan*. 150. myles, at the entraince of the ryuer *Sura*, *Basilius* that now reigneth, buylded a towne called *Surcium*, to thintent that in those desartes, the marchantes and traueyers which certifie the gouernours of the marches of the doings of the *Tartars*, and the maners of that vniquiet nation, may haue a safe mansion among theyr customers.

*Sura.*  
*Surcium.*

The Emperours of *Moscouia* at dyuers tymes, eyther moued thereto by occasion of thinges present, or for the desyre they had to nobilitate newe and obscure places, haue kepte the seat of theyr court and Emppye in dyuers citises. For *Nonogrodia*, which lyeth toward the West, and the *Lyon* sea, not many peeres past, was the head cite of *Moscouia*, and obteyned euer the chiefe dignitie, by reason of the incredible number of houses and edifies, with the oportunitie of the large lake replenyshed with fysh, and also for the fame of the most auncient & venerable Temple, which more then foure hundred peeres since, was dedicated to *Sancta Sophia*, Christ the sonne of God, accordyng to the custome of the Emperours of *Bizantium*, now called *Constantinople*. *Nonogrodia*, is oppressed in maner with continuall wynter, and darkenesse of long nyghtes. For it hath the pole Arctike eleuate aboue the Horizon threescore and foure degrees: and is further from the Equinoctiall then *Moscouia*, by almost six degrees. By which dyfference of heauen, it is sayde, that at the sommer stepe of the Sunne, it is burnt with continuall heate, by reason of the shorte nyghtes.

*Nonogrodia.*

The Temple  
of *Sancta*  
*Sophia.*

The elenation  
of the pole at  
*Nonogrodia*,  
& *Moscouia*.  
Heate by reason  
of shorte  
nyghtes.

The cite also of *Volodemaria*, beyng more then two hundred myles distant from *Mosca* toward the East, had the name of the chiefe cite and kynges towne, whyther the seate of the Emppye was translated by the valiaunt Emperours for necessarie consideration, that suche ayde, furniture, and requisites, as appertayne to the warres, myght be neare at hande, at suche tyme as they keepe continuall warre agaynst the *Tartars* theyr borderers. For it is situate without *Volga*, on the bankes of the ryuer *Clesma*, whiche falleth into *Volga*. But *Moscha*, as well for those gyftes and commodities whereof we haue spoken, as also that it is situate in the myddest of the most frequented place of all the region and Emppye, and defended with the ryuer and Castell, hath in compa-

The cite of *Volodemaria.*

The cite of  
*Moscha.*



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

ryson to other cities been thought most woorthie to be esteemed for the chiefe. *Moscha* is distant from *Nouogrodia* fyue hundred myles: and almost in the myd way is the citie of *Ottoferia* (otherwyse called *Orwer*, or *Tuwer*) bypon the ryuer of *Volga*. This ryuer, neare vnto the fountaynes and spynges of the same, not yet increased by receyving so many other ryuers, runneth but slowly and gentelly, and passeth from thence to *Nouogrodia*, through many woods and desolate playnes. Furthermoze from *Nouogrodia* to *Riga*, the nexte porte of the *Sarmatian* sea, is the iourney of a thousande myles, litle moze or lesse. This tract is thought to be moze commodious then the other, bycause it hath many townes, and the citie of *Plesconia* in the way, beyng imbrased with two ryuers. From *Riga* (perteynyng to the dominion of the great maister of the warres of the *Liuons*) to the citie of *Lubecke*, a porte of *Germanie*, in the gulse of *Cymbrica Cbersonesus* (now called *Denmarke*) are numbred about a thousande myles of daungerous saylyng.

From *Rome* to the citie of *Moscha*, the distance is knowne to bee two thousande and fyue hundred myles, by the nearest way, passyng by *Rauenna*, *Taruism*, the *Alpes* of *Carnica*: Also *Villacum*, *Noricum*, and *Vienna* of *Pannonie*: and from thence (passyng ouer the ryuer of *Danubius*) to *Olmuthum* of the *Maro-nians*, and to *Craconia* the chiefe citie of *Polonie*, are compted. xi. hundred myles. From *Craconia* to *Vilna*, the head citie of *Lithuania*, are compted fyue hundred myles: and as many from that citie to *Smolenzko*, situate beyonde *Boristhenes*, from whence to *Moscha*, are compted fyue hundred myles. The iourney from *Vilna* by *Smolenzko* to *Moscha*, is traueyled in wynter with expeditie shedges, and incredible celeritie bypon the snowes, hardened with long frost, and compacte lyke *Ile*, by reason of muche wearyng. But in sommer, the playnes can not bee ouerpassed but by difficulte and laborious traueyle. For when the snowes by the continuall heate of the *Sunne* begyn to melte and dissolue, they cause great marshes and quampyes, able to intangle both horse and man, were it not that wayes are made through the same, with bydges and causes of wood, and almost infinite labour.

In all the region of *Mosconia*, there is no bayne or mine  
of

*Ottoferia*,  
*Volga*.

*Riga*.

The citie of  
*Plesconia*.

The citie of  
*Lubecke*.

From *Rome*  
to *Mosconia*.

Wpnter tra-  
uapic by *Ile*  
and snow.

Marshes in  
sommer.

Other wyters  
denp this.

of golde or syluer, or any other common metall, except Iron, neyther yet is there any token of precious stones : and therefore they buye all those thinges of straungers. Neuerthelesse, this iniurie of nature is recompensed with aboundance of rich furies, whose price, by the wanton wysenesse of men, is growen to such excesse, that the furies parteynyng to one sorte of apparell, are now solde for a thousande crownes. But the tyme hath been that these haue been bought better cheape, when the furthest nations of the North, being ignorant of our wysle finenesse, and breathyng desyre toward effeminate and superfluous pleasures, exchanged the same with muche simplicitie, oftentimes for trifles and thinges of small value : Insomuche that commonly the Peremians and Pecerrians, were accustomed to giue so many skynnes of Sables for an Iron Axe or Hatchet, as being tyed harde togeather, the marchantes of Moscouia could drawe through the hole where the haffe or handle entereth into the same. But the Moscouites sende into all partes of Europe the best kynde of flaxe to make linnen cloth, and hempe for ropes : Also many Dre hydes, and exceeding great masses of ware.

furres.

The price of furies.

How many Sables skynnes for an Axe.

flaxe. Dre hydes. Ware.

But truely.

They abhoire the Jewes.

Theyr bookes and religion.

The Slauon tongue spread further then any other.

They proudly deny, that the Romane churche obteyneth the principate and preeminent auctoritie of all other. They so abhoire the nation of the Jewes, that they detest the memorie of them, and will in no condition admyt them to dwell within theyr dominions : esteemyng them as wycked and mischieuous people, that haue of late taught the Turkes to make gunnes. Beside the bookes that they haue of the ancient Greeke doctours, they haue also the commentaries and homelies of saint Ambrose, Augustine, Jerome, & Gregorie, translated into the Illyrian or Slauon tongue, which agreeth with theyr : For they vse both the Slauon tongue and letters, as doe also the Sclauons, Dalmates, Bohemes, Polones, and Lithuanes. This tongue is spreadde further then any other at this day : For it is familiar at Constantinople, in the court of the Emperours of the Turks, and was of late hearde in Egypte among the Mamalukes, in the court of the Soltane of Alcayre, otherwysle called Memphis, or Babilon in Egypt. A great number of bookes of holy scripture are translated into this tongue by the industrie of Sainct Jerome and Cyrillus. Furthermore, besyde the hystories of

## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

**Saint Jerome**  
was borne in  
**Dalmatia**, now  
called **Sclavonia**.

their owne countreys, they haue also bookes, conteyning the facts of great Alexander, and the Romane Emperours, and lykelys of *Marcus Antonius*, & *Cleopatra*. They haue no maner of knowledge of philosophie, Astronomie, or speculatiue phisicke, with other liberal sciences: But such are taken for Philosophers, as profess that they haue oftentimes obserued the vertue and qualitie of some vnknown hearbe.

**Howe they**  
**number the**  
**peeres.**

They number the peeres, not from the byrth of Christ, but from the begynnyng of the world. And this they begin to accompt, not from the moneth of Ianuary, but from September.

**Fewe and sim-**  
**ple lawes.**

They haue fewe and simple lawes throughout all the kyngdome, made by the equitie and conscience of theyr prynces, and approued by the consent of wyse and good men, and are therfore greatly for the wealch and quyetnesse of the people, forasmuche as it is not lawfull to peruerter them with any interpretations or cauillations of lawyers or Attorneys. They punyssh theccues, roblers, priuie pyckers, and murtherers. When they examyne malefactorrs, they powre a great quantitie of cold water vpon such as they suspecte, whiche they say to be an intollerable kynde of torment. But sometymes they manacle suche as are stubborne, and will not confesse apparent crymes.

**The exercise**  
**of youth.**

Theyr youth is exercised in dyuers kyndes of games and playes, resembling the warres, whereby they both practise policie, and increase theyr strength. They vse runnyng both on horsebacke and a foote. Also runnyng at the rylt, wrestlyng, and especially shootyng. For they gyue rewardes to such as excell therein.

**The corpora-**  
**ture of the**  
**Moscouites.**

The *Moscouites* are vniuersally of meane stature, yet beery square set, and myghtyly brawned. They haue all grey eyes, long beardes, shorthe legges, and bygge bellies. They ryde very shorthe, and shote backwarde very cunnyngly, euen as they flye. At home in theyr houses, theyr fare is rather plentifull then depntie: For theyr tables are furnyshed for a small pryce, with all suche kyndes of meates as may bee despyred of suche as are gyuen to most excessiue gluttony. Hennes and Duckes are bought for litle syluer pence the peece. There is incredible plentie of beastes and cattayle, both great and small. The fleshe of beefe that is kylled in the myddest of wynter,

**Theyr fare.**

wynter, is so consealed and frozen, that it putrifieeth not for the space of two monethes. They best and most delicate dyshes, are gotten by huntynge and haukynge, as with vs: For they take all sortes of wylde beastes with Houndes, and dyuers kyndes of nettes. And with Faulcons and Crens, or Eagles, of a marueylous kynde, which the region of *Pecerra* bynggeth forth vnto them, they take not onely *Fesantes* and wylde Duckes, but also Cranes and wylde Swannes. They take also a foule of darke colour, about the bygnesse of a Goose, with redde ouer browes, whose fleshe in taste passeth the pleasauntnesse of *Pheasant*: These in the *Mosconites* tongue are called *Tetrao*, whiche I suppose to be the same that *Plinie* calleth *Erythratao*, knowen to the people of the Alpes, and especially to the *Rhetians* which inhabite the landes about the springes of the ryuer *Abdua*. The ryuer of *Volga* ministreth vnto them great fyshes, and of pleasaunt taste, especially *Sturgions*, or rather a kynde of fysh lyke vnto *Sturgions*: which in the wynter season beyng inclosed in Ice, are long reserued freshe and vncorrupte. Of other kyndes of fyshes, they take in maner an incredible multitude in the whyte lakes whereof we haue spoken before. And whereas they utterly lacke natyue wyne, they vse such as are brought from other places. And this only in certeyne feastes and holy mysteryes, especially the pleasaunt *Maluastie* of the Ilande of *Creta*, now called *Candy*, are had in most honour: and vsed eyther as medicines, or for a shewe of excessive aboundaunce, forasmuch as it is in maner a miracle that wines brought from *Candy* by the streightes of *Hercules* pylers, and the Ilandes of *Gades*, and tossed with such fluddes of the inclosed Ocean, should be dronke among the *Scythian* snowes in theyr natyue puritie and pleasauntnesse.

The common people drinke meade, made of hony & hoppes sodden togeather, whiche they keepe long in pitched barrells, where the goodnesse increaseth with age. They vse also beere and ale, as doe the *Germanes* and *Polones*. They are accustomed for delicatenesse in sommer, to coole theyr beere and meade with putting Ice therein, which the noble men reserue in theyr cellars in great quantitie for the same purpose. Some there are that delight greatly in the iuice that is pressed out of *Cherries* before they

Fleshe preserued long, by reason of colde. Haukynge and huntynge.

Plentie of fysh.

Fysh long reserued in Ice.

Wyne.

Maluastie.

All the North parte of the bynie lande was called *Scythia*, and the people *Scythians*.

Drynke cooled with Ice.

Wyne of *Cherries*.



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

they be full rypp, which they affyrme to haue the colour of cleare and ruddy wyne, with a very pleasaunt taste.

**They women.**

They wyues & women, are not with them in such honour as they are in other nations: for they vse them in maner in the place of seruants. The noble women & gentelwomen, do diligently obserue their walkes, and haue an eye to their chastitie. They are sildome hydden footch to any feastes: neyther are permitted to resort to churches farre of, or to walke abroad without some great consideration. But the common sorte of women, are easily and for a small pryce assured to lechery, euen of straungers: by reason whereof, the Gentlemen doe litle or nothyng esteeme them.

**Thomas Paleologus.**

**The conquest  
of the Turkes  
in Grecia.**

John the father of kyng *Basilus*, dyed moze then. xx. yeeres since. He maryed *Sophia*, the daughter of *Thomas Paleologus*, who reigned far in *Peloponnesus* (now called *Morea*) & was brother to the Emperour of Constantinople: She was then at Rome when *Thomas* her father was dyuen out of *Grecia* by the *Turks*. Of her were five chyldren bozne, as *Basilus* him selfe, *George*, *Demetrius*, *Symeon*, and *Andreas*. *Basilus* tooke to wife *Salomonie*, the daughter of *George Soboronius*, a man of singuler fidelitie & wisdom, and one of his counsaile: the excellent vertues of whiche woman, only baremette obscured.

**Howe the  
princes  
choose they  
wyues.**

When the Princes of *Mosconia* deliberate to marry, their custome is to haue choyse of all the vyrgins in the realme, and to cause suche as are of most fayre and beautifull bylage and personage, with maners and vertues accordyng, to bee brought before them: Whiche afterwarde they commyt to certayne saythfull men, and graue matrones to be further biewed, inso- muche that they leaue no parte of them vnsearched. Of these, hee whom the Prince most lyketh, is pronounced woozthie to bee his wyfe, not without great and carefull expectation of theyr parentes, luyng for that tyme betweene hope and feare. The other vyrgins also whiche stooode in election, and contented in beautie and integritie of maners, are oftentymes the same day, to gratifie the Prince, maryed to his noble men, Gentlemen, and Captaynes: wherby it sometymes commeth to passe, that whyle the Princes contemne the lynage of royall descent, suche as are bozne of humble parentage, are exalted to the degree of princely estate, in lyke maner as the Emperours of the  
**Turkes**

Turkes were accustomed to be chosen, by comelynesse of personage, and warly prowesse.

*Basilius* was under the age of fourtie and seven yeeres, of comely personage, singular vertue, & princely qualities, by all meanes studious for the prosperitie & commodities of his subiectes: furthermoze, in beneuolence, liberalitie, and good successe in his doings, to be preferred before his progenitours. For when he had vi. yeeres kept warre with the Lyons, that moued lxvii. confederate cities to the cause of that warre, he obteyned the victorie, & departed w<sup>th</sup> few conditions of peace, rather giuen then accepted. Also at the beginning of his reigne, he put the Polones to flight, and tooke prisoner *Constantine*, the Captayne of the Rutbens, whom he brought to *Moscouia* tyed in chaynes: But shortly after, at the ryuer of *Boristhenes*, aboue the citie of *Orsa*, he him selfe was overcome in a great battayle, by the same *Constantine* whom he had dismissed: Yet so, that the towne of *Smolenzko*, which the *Moscouites* possessed before, and was newe woon by the Polones, should styll parteyne to the dominions of *Basilius*. But agaynst the Tartars, and especially the Tartars of Europe, called the *Precopites*, the *Moscouites* haue oftentymes kept warre with good successe, in reuenge of the iniuries done to them by theyr incursions.

Duke *Basilius*.

War betwene the Polones and *Moscouites*.

War betwene the *Moscouites* and Tartars.

*Basilius* is accustomed to hyng to the fielde more then a hundred and fiftie thousande horsemen, deuided into three bandes, and folowying the banners or ensignes of theyr Captaynes in order of battayle. On the banner of the kynges wyng, is figured the Image of *Iosue* the Captayne of the *Hebrues*, at whose prayer the Sunne prolonged the day, and stayed his course, as witnesse the hystories of holy scripture. Armies of footemen are in manner to no vse in these great wyldernes, as well for theyr apparel being loose and long, as also for the custome of theyr enemies, who in their warres trust rather to the swiftnesse of their light horses, then to trye the matter in a pyght fielde.

The *Moscouites* army.

Their banner.

Their horses are of lesse then meane stature: but very strong and swifte. Theyr horsemen are armed with pykes, Rpuettes, Pales of pike, and arrowes. Fewe haue hooked swoordes. Theyr bodies are defended with rounde Targets, Their armour, after the maner of the Turkes of Asia, or with bendyng and

Their horses and horsemen.

Their armour.

comarde Targettes after the maner of the Greekes : Also w<sup>th</sup> coates of mayle, Byggantines, and Sharpe Helmes, *Basilus* dyd furthermore instyrate a bande of Vargabulliers on horsebacke, and caused many great brasse peeces to be made by the worke-  
manhpy of certayne Italians : and the same with theyr stockes and wheelles to be placed in the Castle of *Mosca*.

Vargabulliers.

Gunnies.

The Prince by  
nerh openly.

Sigismundus  
sayth, that  
much of his  
is golde.

The custodie of  
of the citie.

The Dukes  
courte.

Souldyers wa-  
ges of the com-  
mon treasury.

The kyng him selfe with princely magnificence and singular familiaritie (wherewith neuerthelesse no parte of the maiestie of a kyng is violate) is accustomed to dyne openly with his noble men, & strange Ambassadors in his owne chamber of presence, where is seene a marueylous quantitie of siluer & gylt plate, standyng vpon two great and high cubbardes in the same chamber. He hath not about him any other garde for the custodie of his person, sauing only his accustomed familie. For watch and warde is diligently kept of the faithfull multitude of the citizens: Insomuch that euery warde or quarter of the citie is inclosed with gates, rayles, and barres : neyther is it lawfull for any man rashely to walke in the citie in the nyght, or without lyght. All the courte consisteth of noble men, Gentlemen, and choise souldyers, which are called out of euery region by theyr townes and byllages, and commaunded to wayte course by course at certayne monethes appoynted. Furthermore when warre is proclaymed, all the armie is collected both of the olde souldyers, and by musteryng of newe in all prouinces. For the Licutenantes and Captaynes of the army, are accustomed in al cities to muster the youth, & to admyt to the order of souldyers such as they thinke able to serue the turne. Theyr wages is payde them of the common treasury of euery prouince, whiche is geathered, and partly payde also, in the tyme of peace, although it be but litle. But such as are assigned to the warres, are free from all tributes, and inioye certayne other priuilegies, whereby they may the more gladly and cheerfully serue theyr kyng, and defende theyr countrey . For in the tyme of warre, occasion is mynistred to shewe true vertue and manhood, where in so great and necessarie an institution, euery man accorpyng to his approued actiuitie and ingenious forwarde- nesse, may obtayne the fortune epyther of perpetuall honour, or ignominie.

*Vix olim vlla fides referrentibus horrida regna  
Moschorum, & Pontis, res glacialis erat.  
Nunc Iouio autore, illa oculis lustramus, et vrbes,  
Et nemora, et montes cernimus et fluuios,  
Moschodiam, monumenta Ioui, tua culta renouens,  
Cæpi alios mundos credere Democriti,*

Other notable thinges as concerning Moscouia,  
geathered out of the bookes of Sigisimundus  
Liberus . Note that when he sayth  
myles, he meaneth leagues.



From whence *Russia* had the name, there *Russia*  
are diuers opinions . Some thinke that  
it was so named of one *Russus* the sonne of  
neuew of *Lech* the kyng of the Polons . O-  
ther affirme that it was so called of a cer-  
taine olde towne, named *Russus*, not farre  
from *Novogoroda* or *Novogradia* the more.

Some also thinke that it was so called of the browne colour of the nation . But the *Moscouians* confute all these opinions as *Russes*,  
vntrue, affirming that this nation was in olde tyme called  
*Rossieia*, as a nation disperfed, as the name it selfe doth declare. *Rossieia*.  
For *Rossieia* in the *Ruthens* tongue, doth signifie disperfed, or  
scattered . The whiche thyng to be true, diuers other people  
commixt with inhabitants, and diuers prouinces lying  
here and there betwene diuers parts of *Russia* do plainly declare.  
But whence soeuer they tooke theyr name, doubtlesse all the  
people that vse the *Slauon* tongue, and professe the fayth of  
Christ, after the maner of the Greekes (called in theyr common  
language *Russi*, and in the Latin tongue *Rutheni*) are increased  
to such a multitude, that they haue eyther expulsed all the nations  
that lye betwene them, or drawne them to theyr maner of lyuing,  
in so muche that they are now called all *Rutheni*, by one common  
name.

The *Slauon*  
tongue speakes  
of it farre.

Furthermore the *Slauon* tongue ( whiche at this daye is  
somewhat corruptly called *Sclauon*) runneth exceedyng farre,  
as vnto of the *Dalmates*, *Bosnuenser*, *Croatians*, *Istrians*,  
and



## Of the Northeast frosty sea,

and by a long tracte of the sea *Adriatike* vnto *Forum Iulij* : Of the *Caruians* also, whom the *Venetians* call *Charfos* : and lyke wyle of the *Carniolans* and *Carinthians*, vnto the ryuer *Drauu* : Furthermoze of the *Stirians* within *Gretzium*, and by *Mucra* vnto *Danubius*, and from thence of the *Misians*, *Seruians*, *Bulgarians*, and other inhabitynge, euen vnto *Constantinople* : Furthermoze of the *Bohemians*, *Lusacians*, *Silesians*, *Morauians*, and thynhabitauntes neere vnto the ryuer *Vagus* in the kyngdome of *Hungarie* : The *Polones* also, and the *Ruthemians*, whose Empire reacheth very farre : lykewyle the *Circasians* and *Quinquemontanians*, vnto *Pontus* : and is from thence vled in the North parties of *Germanie*, among the remnant of the *Vandales* inhabitynge here and there . All whiche nations, although they acknowledge them selues to bee *Sclauons*, yet the *Germanians* takynge the denomination onely of the *Vandales*, call all them that vse the *Slauon* tongue, *Vuenden*, or *Vuinden*, or *Vuindysh*.

*Vandales.*

The princes  
of *Russia*.

Of the Princes that now reigne in *Russia*, the chiefe is the great Duke of *Moscovia*, who possesseth the greatest part thereof . The seconde is the great Duke of *Lithuania* : and the thyrde the kyng of *Polonie*, who now obteyneth the dominion of *Polonie* and *Lithuania*.

The Duke of  
*Moscovia*.

In aucthoritie and dominion ouer his subiectes, the prince of *Moscovia* passeth all the monarkes of the worlde : For he depriveth all his noble men and gentelinen of all theyr holdes and munitions at his pleasure . He trusteth not his owne brethren, but oppresseth all with lyke seruitude : Insomuch that whom so euer he commaundeth either to remaine with him in the courte, or to go to the warres, or sendeth on ambassage, they are compelled to be at theyr owne charges, except the young gentelinen the sonnes of the *Boiarons*, that is, the noble men of the lowest degree . He vsurpeth this aucthoritie, aswell ouer the spiritualtie as the tempozaltie, constituting what him listeth of the goods and lyfe of all men . Of his counsellers there is not one that dare dissent from hym in any thyng . They openly confesse, that the wyl of theyr prince is the wyl of God : and therfore call hym the key beater and chamberlen of God, & beleue hym to be the executoz of Gods will . By reason wherof, the prince hym selfe, when any petition is made to hym for the deliuerie of any captiue, is accustomed

accustomed to answer, when God commaundeth, he shalbe deliuered. Lykelwse when any asketh a question of an vncertaine or doubtful thyng, theyr custome is to answer thus: God knoweth, and the great Prince. It is vncertayne whether the crueltie and spycenesse of the nation do require so tyrannous a Prince, or whether by the tyranny of the Prince, the nation is made so fierce and cruell.

*Basilus* the Sonne of *Iohn*, was the fyrst that tooke vppon hym the name and title of a kyng, in this maner. The great lord *Basilus*, by the grace of God, kyng and lord of all *Russia*, and the great Duke of *Vuolodimaria*, *Moscouia*, *Novogradia*, &c.

Furthermore, wheras now this Prince is called *Emperour*. I haue thought good to shewe the title and cause of this error. Note therfore that *Czar* in the *Ruthens* tongue, signifieth a kyng, whereas in the language of the *Slauons*, *Pollons*, *Bohemes*, and other, the same worde *Czar*, signifieth *Cesar*, by whiche name the Emperours haue been commonly called. For both they, and the *Slauons* that are vnder the kyngdome of *Hungarie*, call a kyng by an other name: as some *Crall*, other *Kyrall*, and some *Korall*: but thynke that only an Emperour is called *Czar*. Whereby it came to passe that the *Ruthene* or *Moscouite* interpreters, hearyng theyr Prince to be so called of strange nations, began them selues also to name hym an Emperour, & thynk the name of *Czar* to be more worthy then the name of a kyng, although they signifie all one thyng. But who so wyll reade all theyr histories and bookes of holy scripture, shall fynde that a kyng is called *Czar*, and an Emperour *Kessar*. By the lyke error the Emperour of the *Turkes* is called *Czar*, who neuertheless of antiquitie vsed no hygher tytle then the name of a kyng, expressed by this worde *Czar*. And hereof the *Turkes* of *Europe* that vse the *Slauon* tongue, call the citie of *Constantinople* *Czargard*, (that is) the kyngs citie.

Why the Duke of *Moscouia* was called an Emperour.

The great *Turke*.

Some call the Prince of *Moscouie* the whyte kyng, which I thynke to proceede of the whyte Cappes, or other tymentes they weare on theyr heades, lyke as they call the kyng of *Pertia* *Kisilpassa* (that is) redde head. We vse the tytle of a kyng when he wyrteth or sendeth to *Rome*, the Emperour, the Pope, the Kyng of *Suetia* and *Denmarke*, the great

The whyte kyng.

The Duke of *Moscouia* his tytle.

Of the Northeast frosty sea,

great maister of *Prusia* and *Liunia*, and also to the great *Turke*, as I haue been credibly enfourmed : but he is not called kyng of any of them, except perhaps of the *Liuns*. Yet by reason of his later conquestes, some haue thought hym worthy the name of a kyng, or rather of an Emperour, because he hath kyngs vnder his Empire.

To the kyng of *Polone*, he vseth this title : The great lord *Basilus* by the grace of God, lord of al *Russia*, and great Duke of *Vuolodimeria*, *Moscouia*, *Novogradia*. &c. leauyng out the title of a kyng. For none of them vouchsafeth to receiue the letters of the other augmented with any newe title, as I knewe by experience at my beyng in *Moscouia*, at which time *Sigismundus* the kyng of *Polone* sent hym his letters augmented with the title of the Duke of *Moscouia*, wherewith he was not a litle offended.

Russia baptised  
by Sainct An-  
drew the  
Apostle.

They glory in theyr histories that before *Vuolodimeria* and *Olha*, the land of *Russia* was baptised and blessed of Sainct *Andrew* the Apostle of Christ, affirmyng that he came from *Grecia* to the mouthes of the ryuer *Boristhenes* : and that he sayled by the ryuer to the mountaynes where as is now *Chionia* : and that there he blessed all the lande and placed his crosse, prophesyng also that the grace of God shoulde be great there, and that there shoulde be many churches of Christian men : Lyketwyle, that he afterward came to the springes of *Boristhenes*, vnto the great Lake *Vuolok*, and by the ryuer *Louat* descended into the Lake *Ilmer* : from whence by the ryuer *Vuolcon*, whiche runneth out of the same Lake, he came to *Novogradia* : and passed from thence by the same ryuer to the Lake *Ladoga*, and the ryuer *Hena*, and so vnto the sea whiche they call *Vuarezkoia*, beyng the same that we call the *Germane* sea, betweene *Vuinlandia* or *Finlandia* and *Liunia*, by the whiche he sayled to *Rome*, and was at the last crucified for Christ his Gospell in *Peloponnesus* by the tirranie of *Agus Antipater*, as theyr cronacles make mention.

The Mosco-  
uites warres.

The Prince every seconde or thyrde yere causeth a must-er to bee taken of the Sonnes of the *Boiorons*, and taketh an accompte booth of theyr number, and howe manye Horses and men every of them is able to make : and then appoynteth  
a certayne

a certayne stypende to suche as are able further to beare theyr owne charges in the warres. They haue seldome any rest or quietnesse: For they eyther keepe warre with the *Lithuanians*, *Liuonians*, *Suetians*, or *Tartars* of *Casan*. Or if it so chaunce that the prince keepe no warre, yet doth he peerelely appoynte garrisons of .xx. thousande men in places about *Tanaïs* and *Occa*, to repress the incursions and robberyes of the *European Tartars*, called *Precopites*.

As in other matters, euen so in the order of warrefare there is great diuersitie among men. For the *Moscouian* as soone as he beginneth to flye, thinketh of none other succoure, but putteth all his confidence therein. Beyng pursued or taken of his enimie, he neyther defendeth hym selfe, nor desireth pardon.

Dyuers manners of dyuers people in the warres.

The *Tartar* cast of from his horse, spoyled of all his armure and weapones, and also sore wounded, defendeth hym selfe with handes, feete, and teethe, and by all meanes he may, vntyll his strength and spirite fayle hym.

The *Turke*, when he seeth hym selfe destitute of all helpe and hope to escape, doth humbly desyre pardon, casting away his weapons and armure, and reaching forth to the victourer his handes ioyned togeather to be bounde, hoppyng by captiuitie to saue his lyfe.

The *Moscouites* in placeyng theyr armie, chuse them a large playne, where the best of them pitch theyr tentes, and the other make them certaine arbours of bowes fyt in the grounde, bending togeather the toppes thereof, which they couer with theyr clokes to defende them selues, theyr bowes, arrowes, saddels, and other theyr necessities from rayne. They put forth theyr horses to pasture, and for that cause haue theyr tentes so farre in sunder, which they fortifie neither with cartes or trenches, or any other impedymment, except perhappes the place be defended by nature, as with wooddes, ryuers, and marshes.

The Moscouites armie.

It may perhappes seeme straunge, howe he mayntayneth hym and his so longe with so small an armie as I haue sayde. I wyll nowe therefore brievely declare theyr sparyng and frugalitie. He that hath syxe or sometymes more horses, vseth one of them as a packe horse to beare all theyr necessaries,

Howe he mayntayneth his armie.



ryes . He hath also in a bagge of two or three spannes long, the flower or meale of the graine called mille, and viii. or x. pounds weyght of Swines flethe poudred . He hath lykewyle a bagge of salte, myxt with pepper, if he be ryche . Furthermoze euery man carpeeth with hym a hatchet, a fyre bore, and a brassen portesse that if they chaunce to come to any place where they can fynde no frutes, Garlyke, Onyons, or flethe, they kyndle a fyre, and fyll theyr pottes with water, whereunto they put a spoonefull of meale, with a quantitie of sale, and make pottage therof, wherewith the maister and all his seruantes lyue contented . But if the maister bee very hungrye, he eateth all alone, and the seruantes are sometymes enforced to fast for the space of two or three dayes . And if the maister intende to fare somewhat more delycately, then he addeth thereto a litle portion of Swynes flethe . I speake not this of the best of them, but of such as are of the meane sort . The gouernours and captaynes of the armie, do sometymes bydde the poozer sorte to theyr tables: where they feede them selues so well, that they fast two or three dayes after . When they haue frutes, Garlyke, and Onyons, they can well forbear all other meates , Proceedyng forwarde to the battayle, they put moze confidence in theyr multitude, and with what great armies they assaile theyr enimies, then eyther in the strength and valyauntnesse of theyr souldiers, or in well instructyng theyr armie, and fight better a farre of, then at hand: and therfore study howe to circumuent or inclose theyr enimies, and to assaile them on the backe halfe . They haue many trumpetters, the which while they blow al at once, after theyr maner, make a maruelous straunge noyse . They haue also another kynde of instrumentes which they call Szurna: these they blow without ceaslyng for the space of an houre togeather, so temperyng the same, and holdyng in the wynde whyle they draba more, that the noyse seemeth continually without intermission.

They vse all one maner of apparell: as longe coates without pleyghes, and with narrowe sleues, after the maner of the Hungarians . These the Christians vse to button on the ryght syde: and the Tartars (vseing the lyke) button them on the lefte syde . They weare redde and short buskyns that reache not to theyr knees, and haue the soles thereof de-

fended

Instrumentes  
of warre.

The Mosca-  
uites and  
Tartars appa-  
rell.

fenced with plates of Iron. In maner all theyr shyrtes are wrought with diuers coloures about the necke, and haue the Collars and Ruffes beset with litle round Baules like Beades, of Syluer, or gylted Copper, and some tyme Pearles also. They gyrd them selues beneath the bellie, euen as low as theyr pyuite members, that they may seeme moze burlye, which they greatly esteeme, as doo at this daye the Spanyardes, Italians, and Almanes.

The prouince of *Moscouia* is neyther very large nor fruitfull, forasmuch as the fertilitie is hindered with sandye ground, which either with to much drynesse or moysture killeth the cozne. Furthermore inmoderate and sharpe vntemperatenesse of the ayre, whyle the colde of the wynter ouercommeth the heate of the Sunne, sometymes doth not suffer the cozne to rypp. For the colde is there sometymes so extreame, that lyke as with vs in sommer by reason of heate, euen so there by extreame cold, the earth hath many great chynkes or breaches. Water also cast into the ayre, and spytte falling from ones mouth, are frozen before they touche the grounde. I my selfe, when I came thither in the yeres 1526, sawe the braunches of fruitfull trees wythered by the colde of the wynter before, whiche was so extreame, that many of theyr wagoners and carriers (whom they call *Gonez*) were found frozen to death in theyr sleades. There were some that at the same tyme leadyng and dypuing theyr cattayle from the next villages to *Moscouia*, died by the way with their beastes, through the extremitie of the colde. Furthermore the same yere many players that were accustomed to wander about the countrey with daunsing Beares, were found dead in the high wayes. Wilde Beares also, enforced thereto by famine, left the woods, and ran here and there into diuers villages and houses: at whose coming whyle the men of the countrey forsooke theyr houses and fledde into the felde, many of them perished through the vehemencie of the cold. Agayne it sometymes so chaunceth that in Sommer the heate is as extreame: as in the yere 1525, in the whiche almost all kyndes of pulle and grayne were scorched and burnt, and such a dearth of cozne folowed that drought, that that which before was bought for thre Dengas, was afterward solde for twentie or thyrtye. Furthermore also, ma-

The prouince  
of *Moscouia*.

Extreame  
colde.

Extreame  
heate in colde  
regions.

## Of the Northest frosty sea.

ny villages, woods, and stacks of corne, were set on fyre by the extreame heate: the smoke wherof so fylled the region, that the eyes of many were soze hurt therby. There arose also as it were a darke and thicke myst without smoke, whiche so molested the eyes, that many lost theyr syght therby. They saw and nouryshe the seedes of Melons with great diligence in certayne rapped beddes myst with dounge, wherby they fynde a remedie both agaynst extreame cold and heat. For if the heat exceede, they make certayne ryftes in the beds, as it were bzeathyng places, lest the seedes shoulde be suffocate with to much heate. And if the cold be extreame, it is tempered with the heate of the mucke or dounge.

**Little beastes.**

Theyr beastes are much lesse then ours, yet not all without hornes, as one hath wrytten: For I haue there seene Oxen, Kine, Goates, and Rammes, al with hornes.

**The citie of Moscouia or Mosca.**

Not farre from the citie of Mosca, are certayne monasteries, whiche a farre of, seeme lyke vnto a citie. They say that in this citie is an incredible number of houses: and that the fyrst peere before my commyng thither, the prince caused them to be numbred, and found them to be moze then one and fourtie thousand & fyue hundred houses. The citie is very large and wyde, and also very slabby and myrre: by reason wherof, it hath many bridges and causeyes.

**Hollsome ayre.**

The ayre of the region is so hollsome, that beyond the springes of Tanais, especially towards the North, and a great part also towards the East, the pestilence hath not been hearde of synce the memozye of man: Yet haue they sometymes a diseale in theyr bowelles and heades, not much vnylyke vnto the pestilence. This diseale they call a heate: wherwith such as are taken, dye within fewe dayes.

**A ryche spyle.**

Some write that Iohn the Duke of Mosconia, and Sonne of Basilius, vnder the pretence of religion, lacked & spoyled the citie of Nouogradia, and caried with hym from thence to Moscouia three hundred sleades laden with gold, syluer, and precious stones, of the gooddes of the Archbithop, the merchautes, citisins, and strangers. Solowki is an Islande situate in the North sea, eyght leagues from the continent betweene Duina and the prouince of Corela. Howe farre it is distaunt from Moscouia, can not be well knowen, by reason of many Fennes, Marshes, Woods,

**The Island of Solowki.**

wooddes, and desolate places lying in the way. Albeit, some say that it is not three hundred leagues from *Moscouia*, and two hundred from *Bieloiesero*. In this Islande is made great plentie of salte: and it hath in it a monasterie, into the which it is not lawfull for any woman or virgin to enter. There is also great fyshyng for herrynge. They say that heere the Sunne at the sommer Equinoctiall, shyneth continually except two houres.

*Bieloiesera.*

The length of the day.

*Demetriowe*, is a citie with a Castell, distante from *Moscouia* xii. leagues, declining from the West somewhat toward the north. By this runneth the river *Lachroma*, that runneth into the ryuer of *Sest*. *Sest* also receyueith the ryuer *Dubna*, which unladeth it selfe in *Volga*. And by the commoditie of thus many ryuers, many ryche marchaundies are brought without great labour or difficultie from the Caspian sea, by the ryuer *Volga* to *Moscouia*, and dyuers other prouinces and cities about the same.

The trade from *Moscouia* to the Caspian sea.

*Bieloiesero* of the whyte lakes.

*Bieloiesero*, a citie with a Castell, is situate at a lake of the same name. For *Bieloiesero* in the *Moscouites* tongue, signifieth a whyte lake. The citie standeth not in the lake, as some haue sayde. Yet is it so enuironed with maryshes, that it may seeme to be inerpugnable: In consideration wherof, the princes of *Moscouia* are accustomed to keepe theyr treasure there. *Bieloiesero* is from *Moscouia*, a hundred leagues, and as muche from *Novogradia* the great. The lake it selfe, is. xii. leagues in length, and as much in breadth, and hath (as they say) three hundred ryuers falling into it. The inhabitants of this place, haue a peculiar language, although now in maner all speake the *Moscouites* tongue. The longest day here in the sommer Equinoctiall, is sayd to consist of. xix. houres. A man of great name and credit tolde mee, that at the begynnyng of the spring, when the trees began now to bee greene, he went in poste from *Moscouia* to *Bieloiesero*: and passyng ouer the ryuer *Volga*, founde the region there so couered with Ice and snow, that hee was fayne to dispatche the residue of his iourney on sledes. And although the wynter be longer there, yet doe the frutes waxe ripe and are gathered euen at the same tyme that they are in *Moscouia*. Within an arrowe shotte of the lake, there is an other lake that bringeth forth hyymstone: which a certayne riuer running out of

Diversity of temperamēt in small distance.

A lake of hyymstone.



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

the same, carrieth with it in great quantitie, flotying aboute the water lyke a scomme, yet through the ignozaunce of the people, they haue no commoditie thereby.

Exchange of  
fures for other  
ware.

The people that inhabite the regions, lying farre North, and East from *Moscouia*, exchange their fures for apparel, Rniues, needles, Spooones, Hatchets, and such other necessary wares: for they haue not the vse of golde and syluer.

The description of the regions, people, and riuers, lying North and East from *Moscouia*: as the way from *Moscouia* to the riuier *Petzora*, and the prouince *Iugaria*, or *Iuhra*, and from thence to the riuier *Obi*. Likewise the description of other countreys and regions, euen vnto thempire of the great Chaim of Cathay.



The dominion  
of the duke of  
*Moscouia*.

**D**E dominion of the prince of *Moscouia*, reacheth farre towarde the East & North, vnto the places whiche we wyll nowe describe. As concerning whiche thyng, I translated a booke that was presented vnto me in the *Moscouites* tongue, & haue here made a breefe rehearsal of the same, I wyl first therfore describe the iourney from *Moscouia* to *Petzora*, and so to *Iugaria* and *Obi*. From *Moscouia* to the citie of *Vuolochda*, are numbred fyfte werstes, one werst conteynyng almoste the space of an Italian myle. From *Vuolochda* to *Vsting*, toward the ryght hande, descending with the course of the riuier of *Vuolochda* and *Suchana* with whom it ioyneth, are computed fyue hundred werstes, where within two werstes of the towne called *Strelze*, and hard by the citie of *Vsting*, *Suchana* ioyneth: Iug which runneth from the South, from whose mouth, vnto the spynges of the same, are numbred fyue hundred werstes.

*Vuolochda*.  
werste.  
Wsting.

Note that wheretas here befoze the aucthor numbreth but fyfte werstes from *Moscouia* to *Vuolochda*, it seemeth that the place is corrupted by the Printers mistakynge one woorde for an other, as, *Quinquaginta*, whiche is fyfte, for *Quingenta*, whiche is fyue hundred. For the distance is no lesse from *Moscouia* to *Vuolochda*, then is from *Vuolochda* to *Vsting*, whiche is fyue hundred werstes.

But

But *Suchana* and *Iug*, after they ioyne togeather, lose their first names, and make both one riuer, named *Dwina*, by the which, the passage to the citie of *Colmogor* containeth fyue hundred werstes, from whence in the space of fyve dayes iourney, *Dwina* entretch into the North Ocean at fyve mouthes: and the greatest parte of this iourney consisteth by Nauigation: for by lande from *Vuolochda* vnto *Colmogor*, passyng ouer the ryuer *Vuaga*, are a thousand werstes. Not farre from *Colmogor*, the riuer *Pienega*, runnyng from the East on the ryght hand, for the space of seuen hundred werstes, falleth into *Dwina*. From *Dwina* by the riuer *Piene-*  
*ga*, by the space of two hundred werstes, they come to a place called *Nicolai*, from whence within halfe a werst, they passe into the riuer *Kuluio*, whiche hath his originall from a lake of the same name towarde the North, from whose springes is eight dayes viage to the mouth of the same, where it entretch into the Ocean.

*Suchana.*  
*Iug.* So called of his swift and pleasant streams.

*Pienega.*

*Nicolai.*

*Kuluio.*

Sayling by the coastes of the ryght hande of the sea, they passe by the regions of *Stanuwische*, *Calunczcho*, and *Apnu*: And sayling about the promontorie or cape of *Chorogoski*, *NesZ*, *Stanuwische*, *Camenckb*, and *Tolstickb*, they come at the length into the riuer *Mezen*, and from thence in the space of fyve dayes, to a village of the same name, standing in the mouth of the riuer *Pieza*, by the whiche agayne ascendyng towarde the left hande and Sommer East, they come to the riuer *Piescoia*: from whence sayling for the space of fyue werstes, they come into two lakes, in the whiche are seene two wayes: whereof one on the ryght syde, goeth to the riuer *Rubicho*, by the whiche they passe to the riuer *Czircho*. Other, by an other and shorter way, byng their wayes from the lake directly into *Czircho*: from whence, excepte they be hyndered by tempest, they come in the space of three weekes to the riuer and mouth of *Czilma*, flowyng into the great riuer *Petzora*, whiche in that place is two werstes in breadth. Sayling from hence, they come in the space of fyve dayes to the Towne & castle of *Pustosero*, neare vnto the which, *Petzora* entretch into the North Ocean at fyve mouthes. The inhabitantes of this place, are men of simple wyt: they receyued the fayth of Christ, and were baptised in the yeere. M. D. xviii.

The regions by the North sea.

*Pieza.*

*Piescoia.*

*Rubicho.*

*Czircho.*

*Czilma.*

*Petzora.*

*Pustosero.*

# Of the Northeast frostie sea,

**Vssa.** From the mouth of *Czilma* vnto the mouth of the ryuer *Vssa*,  
gopng by *Petzora*, is one moneths vyage. *Vssa* hath his springes  
in the mountaine *Poyas Semnoi*, being on the left hand toward the  
**Cingulus** sommer East, & springeth out of a great stone of the same moun-  
**mundi.** tayne, called *Camen Bolschoi*. From the springes of *Vssa* to the  
mouthes of the same, are numbered more then a thousande  
*Merstes*. Furthermore, *Petzora* runneth from this south winter  
parte, from whence ascending from the mouthes of *Vssa*, vnto the  
mouthes of the ryuer *Stzuchogora*, is thre weekes vyage. They  
that described this vyage, sayde that they rested betweene the  
**Stzuchogora.** mouthes of the ryuers of *Stzuchogora* and *Potzscheriema*, and  
**Potzscheriema.** lest they victualles there whiche they brought with them from  
*Russia*. Beyond the ryuers of *Petzora* and *Stzuchogora* towarde  
**Camenipoiias.** the mountayne *Camenipoiias*, and the sea with the Ilandes there  
about, and the Castell of *Pustoofero*, are dyuers and innumerable  
**Samoged.** nationz, whiche by one cōmon name are called *Samoged* (that is)  
**Foules and** such as eate them selues. They haue great increafe of foules,  
**beastes.** byrdes, and dyuers kyndes of beastes: as *Sables*, *Harternes*,  
*Beuers*, *Oters*, *Hermelines*, *Squirrels*: and in the Ocean the  
beast called *Dors*: Also *Uesse*, whyte *Beares*, *Waloues*, *Hares*,  
*Equiwoduan*, great *Whales*, and fysh called *Semfi*, with dyuers  
**Wylde people.** other. The people of these nations come not to *Moscouia*: For  
they are wylde, and flee the company and societie of other men.

From the mouthes of *Stzuchogora*, saylpyng vp the ryuer  
**Poiassa.** vnto *Poiassa*, *Artawische*, *Cameni*, and *Poiassa* the greater,  
is thre weekes vyage. Furthermore, the ascendyng to the  
mounte *Camen*, is thre dayes iourney: from the which, des-  
**Camen.** cendyng, they come to the ryuer *Artawischa*, and from thence  
**Artawischa.** to the ryuer *Sibut*, from whence they passe to the Castell of  
**Sibut.** *Lepin*, and from *Lepin* to the ryuer *Sossa*. The people that  
**Lepin.** inhabite the region by this ryuer, are called *Vuogolici*. Lea-  
uyng *Sossa* on the ryght hande, they come to the great ry-  
**Sossa.** uer *Obi*, that springeth out of the lake *Kitaisko*, the whiche  
**Obi.** with all the haste they coulde make, they coulde scarcelye  
**Kitaisko.** passe ouer in one day, the ryuer being of suche breadth that it  
reacheth fourescore *Merstes*. The people also that dwell a-  
**Vuogolici.** bout this ryuer, are called *Vuogolici* and *Vgritzski*. From  
the

the Castle of *Obca*, ascendyng by the ryuer of *Oby*, unto the ryuer *Irtische*, into the which *Sossa* entereth, is thre monethes iourney. In these places are two Castles named *Ierom* and *Tumen*, kepte by certayne Lordes called *Knesi Iuhorski*, being tributaries to the great Duke of *Mosconia*, as they say. Here are dyuers kyndes of beastes and furre.

*Irtische.*  
*Ierom.*  
*Tumen.*

From the mouth of the ryuer *Irtische* to the Castle of *Grustina*, is two monethes iourney: from whence to the lake *Kitai*, by the ryuer *Oby* (which I sayde to haue his springes in this lake) is more then three monethes iourney. From this lake come many blacke men, lackyng the vse of common speech. They byyng with them dyuers wares, and especially pearles and precious stones, which they sell to the people called *Grustintzi* and *Serponowtzi*. These haue theyr name of the Castle *Serponow*, situate in the mountaynes of *Lucomorya*, beyonde the ryuer *Obi*. They say that to the men of *Lucomorya*, chaunceth a marueylous thing and incredible: For they asseyrme, that they dye peerely at the .xxvii. day of November, being the feast of Sainct George among the *Mosconites*: and that at the nexte spring about the .xxiii. day of Aprill, they reuiue agayne as doe Froggess. With these also, the people of *Grustintzi* and *Serponowtzi*, exercise a newe and straunge kynde of trade: For when the accustomed tyme of theyr dying, or rather of sleapyng, approacheth, they leaue theyr wares in certayne places appoynted, which the *Grustintzi* and *Serponowtzi* carry away, leauyng other wares of equall value in theyr places: which if the dead men at the tyme of theyr reuiuyng perceiue to be of vnequall pryce, they requyre theyr owne agayne: by reason whereof, much stryfe and fighting is betwene them.

Blacke men  
without speech.

*Serponow.*  
*Lucomorya.*

Men that  
peerely dye and  
reuiue.

A strange  
trade of mar-  
chaundies.

From the ryuer of *Obi* descendyng towarde the leste hande, are the people called *Calami*, whiche came thither from *Obiora* and *Pogosa*. Beneath *Obi*, about *Aurea Anus* (that is, the golden olde wyfe) are the ryuers *Sossa*, *Beres*, *Vua*, & *Danadin*, all which spring out of the mountaynes *Camen*, *Bolschega*, *Poiassa*, and the rockes ioynyng to the same. All the nations that inhabite from these ryuers to *Aurea Anus*, are subiecte to the prince of *Mosconia*.

*Obi.*  
*Calami.*

Ryuers.



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

*Aurea Anus.*  
*Obdora.*

*Aurea Anus.* called in the *Moscouites* tongue, *Slatá Baba*, is an idol, at the mouthes of *Obi* in the prouince of *Obdora*, standyng on the furthest banke towarde the sea. Along by the bankes of *Obi*, and the riuers neare there about, are here and there many castles and fortresses: all the lordes whereof, are subiect to the prince of *Moscouia*, as they say. They say also, or rather fable, that the idoll called *Aurea Anus*, is an image lyke vnto an olde wyfe, ha-uyng a chyld in her lappe, and that there is nowe seene another infant, whiche they say to be her nephewe: Also, that there are certayne instrumentes that make a continuall sounde lyke the noyse of *Trumpettes*, the whiche, yf it so be, I thynke it to be by reason of the wynde, blowing continually into the holowe places of those instrumentes.

*Cosfin.*

*Cassima.*

*Tachuin.*

The riuer *Cosfin* falleth out of the mountaynes into *Lucomoria*: In the mouth of this is a castle, whither from the springes of the great riuer *Cosfin*, is two monethes biage. Furthermore, from the springes of the same riuer, the riuer *Cassima* hath his original, whiche runnyng through *Lucomoria*, falleth into the great riuer *Tachuin*, beyonde the whiche (as is sayde) dwel men of prodigious shape, of whom, some are ouergrownen with heare lyke wilde beastes, other haue heades lyke dogges, and their faces in their bestes, without neckes, and with long handes also, and without feete. There is lyke wyfe in the ryuer *Tachuin*, a certayne fysh, with head, eyes, nose, mouth, handes, feete, and other members bitterly of humane shape, and yet without anye voyce, and pleasant to be eaten, as are other fyses.

People of monstrous shape.

As for the lyke  
a man.  
Whome wytheth  
of the lyke fysh.

All that I haue hitherto rehearsed, I haue translated out of the sayde iourney whiche was deliuered me in the *Moscouites* tongue: In the whiche, perhappes some thynges may seeme fabulous, and in maner incredible, as of the dombe men, and the dead, reuiuyng, the *Aurea Anus* also, and the monstrous shapes of men, with the fyshe of humane fourme: whercof, although I haue made diligent inquisition, yet coulde I knowe nothyng certayne of anye that had seene the same with their eyes: neuerthelesse, to geue further occasion to other to searche the trueth of these thynges, I haue thought good to make mention hereof.

*Noss* in the *Moscouites* tongue signifieth a *Nose*, and therefore they cal all capes or poyntes, that reach into the sea, by the  
same

same name.

The mountaynes about the riuer of *Petzora*, are called *Sem-  
noi Poyas*, or *Cingulus mundi*, that is, the gyrdle of the worlde, or  
of the earth. mountaynes.

*Kitchai* is a lake, of whom the great *Cane of Catbay*, whom the The grea  
Chane ol  
Catbay.  
*Moscouians* call *Ezar Kitchaiski*, hath his name: For *Chan* in the  
*Tartars* language signifieth, A King.

The places of *Lucomoria*, neare vnto the sea, are saluage, full of  
woods, and inhabited without anye houses. And albeit, that the  
aucthor of this iourney, sayde, that manye nations of *Lucomoria* Lucomoria.  
are subiecte to the prince of *Moscouia*, yet for as muche as the  
kyngdome of *Tumen* is neare therevnto, whose prince is a *Tar-  
tar*, and named in their tongue, *Tumenski Czar*, that is, a king in Tumen.  
*Tumen*, and hath of late doone great damage to the prince of  
*Moscouia*: it is moste lyke that these nations shoulde rather be  
subiect vnto hym.

Neare vnto the riuer *Petzora* (whereof mention is made in Petzora.  
Papin.  
this iourney) is the citie and castle of *Papin*, or *Papinowgorod*,  
whose inhabitantes are named *Papini*, and haue a priuate lan-  
guage, differing from the *Moscouites*. Beyond this ryuer are  
exceedyng hygh mountaynes, reachyng euen vnto the bankes,  
whose rydges or toppes, by reason of continuall wyndes, are in  
maner utterly barren without grasse or frutes. And although  
in diuers places they haue diuers names, yet are they common-  
lye called *Cingulus mundi*, that is, the worlde. In these moun-  
taynes doo *Ierfalcons* bzeede, whereof I haue spoken before.  
There growe also *Cedar* trees, among the whiche are founde  
the best and blackest kynde of *Sables*: and onely these moun-  
taynes are seene in all the dominions of the prince of *Moscouia*,  
whiche perhappes are the same that the olde wypters call  
*Rhipheos*, or *Hyperboreos*, so named of the Greeke woorde,  
*Hyper*, that is, Under, and *Boreas*, that is, the North: for by  
reason they are couered with continual snowe and frost, they can  
not without great difficultie be trauelyed, and reache so farre in-  
to the North, that they make the unknowen land of *Engreconland*.  
The Duke of *Moscouia*, *Basilus* the sonne of *John*, sent on a Engreconland.  
tyme two of his captaynes, named *Simeon Pheodorowit* & *Karb-  
ski*, and *Knes Peter Vschatoi*, to seache the places beyonde  
R.iii. thefe

## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

these mountaynes, and to subdue the nations thereabout. *Kurbjski* was yet alpye at my beyng in *Moscouia*, and declared vnto mee that he spent .xvii. dayes in ascending the mountayne, and yet could not come to the toppe therof, which in theyr tongue is called *Stolp* (that is) a yller. This mountayne is extended into the Ocean vnto the mouthes of the ryuers of *Dvina* and *PetZora*. But now hauyng spoken thus much of the sayde iourney, I will returne to the dominions of *Moscouia*, with other regions lying Eastwarde and South from the same, toward the myghtie Emppye of *Catbay*. But I will fyrst speake somewhat bryefly of the prouince of *Rezan*, and the famous ryuer of *Tanaïs*.

The prouince of *Rezan*, situate betweene the ryuers of *Occa* and *Tanaïs*, hath a citie buylded of wood, not far from the banke of *Occa*: there was in it a Castle named *Iaroslav*, whereof there now remaineth nothing but tokens of the olde ruine. Not farre from that citie, the ryuer *Occa* maketh an Ilande named *Strub*, which was somtyme a great Dukedome, whose prince was subiecte to none other. This prouince of *Rezan*, is more fruitful then any other of the prouinces of *Moscouia*: Insomuche that in this (as they say) euery grayne of wheate bringeth forth twoe, and sometymes more cares: whose stalkes or strawes grow so thicke that hoxles can scantly goe through them, or Quayles flee out of them. There is great plentie of hony, fyshes, foules, byrdes, and wyld beasts. The frutes also doe farre exceede the frutes of *Moscouia*. The people are bolde and warlyke men.

## Of the famous ryuer of Tanaïs.



From *Moscouia* vnto the Castle of *Iaroslav*, and beyonde for the space of almost .xxiiii. leagues, runneth the ryuer of *Tanaïs*, at a place called *Donco*, where the marchauntes that trade to *Asoph*, *Capha*, and *Constantinople*, fraight theyr shippes: and this for the most parte in Autumpe, beyng a rayney tyme of the yeere. For *Tanaïs* heere at other tymes of the yeere, doeth not so abounde with water, as to beare shippes

*Stol.*

*Catbay.*

The fruitfull  
prouince of  
*Rezan*.  
*Iaroslav*.

*Donoy.*

*Donco.*  
*Asoph.*  
*Capha.*  
*Constantinople.*

happes of any burden . This famous ryuer of *Tanais*, dy-  
 uydeth Europe from *Asia*, and hath his ovygynall oz spynges  
 almost .viij. leagues from the citie of *Tulla*, towarde the South,  
 inclynnyng somewhat towarde the East, and not out of the *Ri-*  
*phean* mountaynes, as some haue wryten: But out of a great  
 lake named *Iwanrofero* (that is) the lake of *John*, beyng in  
 length and bredth about .1500. *Merses*, in a wood which some  
 call *Okonitzkilles*, and other name it *Iepiphanoulies* . And out of  
 this lake, spyng the two great ryuers of *Schat* and *Tanais*.  
*Schat* towarde the West receyuyng into it the ryuer of *Vppa*,  
 runneth into the riuer of *Occa* betwene the West and the North:  
 But *Tanais* at the fyrst runneth directly East, and continueth  
 his course betwene the kyngdomes of *Casan* and *Astrachan* with-  
 in fyre oz seuen leagues of *Volga*, and from thence bendyng  
 towarde the South, maketh the fennes oz marshes of *Meotis*.  
 Furthermore, nexte vnto his spynges, is the citie of *Tulla*:  
 and bypon the banke of the ryuer, almost three leagues aboue  
 the mouthes of the same, is the citie of *Asoph*, whiche was  
 fyrst called *Tanais* . Foure dayes iorney aboue this, is a towne  
 called *Achas*, situate harde by the same ryuer, whiche the *Mos-*  
*couites* call *Don* . I can not sufficiently prayse this ryuer for  
 the exceedyng abundaunce of good fyshes, and fayrenesse of the  
 regions on both sydes the bankes, with plentie of holsome  
 hearbes and sweete rootes, besyde dyuers and many fruitefull  
 trees, growyng in such coonly order as though they had been  
 set of purpose in gardens oz orchardes . There is also in maner  
 euery where such plentie of wyld beastes, that they may easily  
 be slayne with arrowes: Insomuch that such as trauaile by those  
 regions, shall stande in neede of none other thyng to mayntayne  
 theyr lyfe, but only fyre and salte . In these partes, is no obserua-  
 tion of myles, but of dayes iorneys . But as farre as I coude  
 coniecture, from the fountaynes oz spynges of *Tanais*, vnto the  
 mouthes of the same, iorneying by lande, are almost fourescore  
 leagues . And sayling from *Donco* (from whence I sayde that  
*Tanais* was fyrst nauigable) in scarcely .xx. dayes voyage, they  
 come to the citie of *Asoph*, tributarie to the Turkes: which is (as  
 they say) fyue dayes iorney from the streight of *Taurica*, oier-  
 wyle called *Precop* . In this citie is a famous marte towne,  
 vnto

*Tanais* diuideth Europe from Asia.  
 The spynges of *Tanais*.

A great lake.

The ryuer  
*Schat*.

*Casan*.  
*Astrachan*.

*Meotis*.  
*Tulla*.

*Achas*.  
 fruitefull regions about  
*Tanais*.

Plentie of  
 wyld beastes.

Fyre and salt.

where *Tanais*  
 is fyrst nauigas-  
 ble.

*Asoph*.



## Of the Northeaft frosty sea,

The marte of  
Asoph.

unto the whiche resoꝛt many merchauntes of dyuers nations,  
and from dyuers partes of the worlde. For, that all nations  
may the gladlyer haue recourse thither, free lybertie of bying  
and selleng is graunted vnto all: and that without the cite eueꝛy  
man may freely vse his owne and accustomed maner of luyng,  
without punishment.

The alters of  
Alexander and  
Cesar.

Of the alters of great Alexander and Julius Cesar, whiche  
many wyꝛters make mention of in this place, oꝛ of theyꝛ ruines,  
I coulde haue no certayne knoweledge of thynhabitauntes oꝛ  
any other that had oftentymes trayuayled these places. Fur-  
thermoze, the souldyers whiche the pꝛince of *Moscouia* mayn-  
tayneth there peerely to oppresse thincursions of the *Tartars*, be-  
ing of me demaunded herof, answered y they neuer saw oꝛ heard  
of any such thing. Neuerthelesse they said, that about y mouthes  
of *Tanais* the lesse, foure dayes ioꝛney from *Asoph*, neere vnto a  
place called *Sewerski*, by the holy mountaynes, they sawe cer-  
tayne images of stone and marbyle. *Tanais* the lesse, hath his  
springes in the Dukedome of *Sewerski*, whereof it is called  
*Donet* & *Sewerski*, and falleth into *Tanais*, thꝛee dayes ioꝛney a-  
boue *Asoph*. But such as ioꝛney from *Moscouia* to *Asoph* by  
lande, they, passyng ouer *Tanais* about the olde and ruinate  
towne of *Donco*, do somwhat turne from the South to the East:  
In the which place, if a ryght line be drawne from the mouthes  
of *Tanais* to the springes of the same, *Moscouia* shalbe founde to  
be in *Asia*, and not in *Europe*.

The holy  
mountaynes.  
*Tanais* the  
lesse.

From *Moscouia*  
to *Asoph*.

*Moscouia* in  
*Asia* and not in  
*Europe*.

More directly from *Moscouia* to *Cathay*.

The pꝛouince of  
*Permia*.



The great and large pꝛouince of *Permia*, is  
distant from *Moscouia* two hundred and fyf-  
tie, oꝛ (as some say) thꝛee hundred leagues, di-  
rectly betwene the East and North: and  
hath a cite of the same name by the ryuer  
*Vischora*, which runneth .x. leagues beneth  
*Camam*. The ioꝛney by land can scarcely be  
trauailed thither but in winter, by reasoꝛ of many riuers, marishes,  
and fens. But in sommer, this ioꝛney is dispatched with moze fa-  
cilitie in boates oꝛ smal shyps by *Vuolochda Vsting*, and the ryuer  
*Vitzechda*

Marshes in  
sommer.

*Vitzebda*, which runneth into *Duina*. xii. leagues from *Vsting*. *Duina*.  
But they that go from *Permia* to *Vsting*, must sayle by the ryuer *Vsting*.  
*Vischora* agaynst the course of the streame: and passyng ouer  
certayne ryuers, sometymes also conueying theyr boates into  
other ryuers by land, they come at the length to *Vsting*, three  
hundred leagues distant from the citie of *Permia*.

There is smal vse of bread in this prouince. For theyr peerelely Tribute  
tribute, they pay to the Prince fures and horses. They haue a Fures and  
private language, and letters of theyr owne, which one Stephen Horses.  
a Bpshope (who confirmed them yet waueryng in the faith) did  
inuent. For before, beyng yet infantes in the faith of Christ, they  
slewe and slepde an other Bpshope that was appoynted to in-  
struct them. This Stephen afterward when *Demetrius* the sonne  
of *Iohn* reygned, was taken for a Sainct among the *Ruhens*.  
Of these people there yet remaine many Idolatours here and  
there in the woods, whom the Munkes and Heremites that go Munkes and  
thither, do not cease to conuert from theyr baine error. In the Heremites.  
winter they iorney to *Artach*, as they do in many places of *Rus-*  
*sia*. *Artach*, are certayne long patentees of wood of almost six hand- Patentee.  
fulles in length, which they make fast to theyr feete with Lat-  
chets, and therewith perfourme theyr iorneis with great celeritie.  
They vse for this purpose great Dogges in the steade of other  
beastes, with the which they carry theyr fardels on sleades, as o-  
ther do with Hattes in other places, as we wyl further declare  
hereafter. They say that the prouince toward the East confineth  
with the prouince called *Tumen*, parteinig to the Tartars.  
The situation of the prouince of *Iugaria*, is apparent by that  
which we haue sayd before. The *Moscouites* call it *Iubra* with  
an aspiration: and call the people *Iubrici*. *Iugaria*.

This is that *Iugaria* from whence the Hungarians came in  
tyrne past, possessed *Pannonia*, and vnder the conduct of *At-* *Hungaria*.  
*rila*, subdued many prouinces of Europe: wherein the *Mos-* *Pannonia*.  
*couites* doo greatly gloze, that a nation subiect to them, inua- *Attila*.  
ded and wasted a great part of Europe, *Georgius Paruus*,  
a Greeke bozne, and a man of reputation with the Prince of  
*Mosconia*, wyllyng to ascribe to the ryght of his Prince the  
great Dukedome of *Lithuania*, and the kyngdome of *Polo-*  
*nie*, with certayne other Dominions, tolde me that the *Iubga-*  
*rici* oz

## Of the Northeast frosty sea,

*rici* or *Iuhgarie*, beyng subiects to the great Duke of *Moscouia*, came soorth of theyr owne countrey, and fyrst inhabited the regions about the *Fennes* of *Meotis*, and then *Pannonie*. which was afterward called *Hungarie*, by the ryuer of *Danubius*: Also that in tyme they possessed the region of *Morania*, so named of the ryuer: and lykewyse *Polonie*, so called of *Polle*, whiche signifieth a playne. Furthermoze that *Buda* was so called after the name of the brother of *Attila*. They say also that the *Iuhgarie* vse the same tongue that do the *Hungarians*: the whiche whether it be true or not, I do not know. For although I haue made diligent inquisition to knowe the trueth hereof, yet could I fynde no man of that region with whom my seruante, beyng expert in the *Hungarian* tongue, might speake. They also pay furies for theyr tributes to the Prince of *Moscouia*. And albeit that pearles and precious stones, are brought from thence to *Moscouia*, yet are they not geathered in theyr Ocean, but in other places: especialy about the coast of the Ocean, neare vnto the mouthes of *Diina*.

The prouince of *Sibier*, confineth with *Permia*, and *Vuiatbka*: the whiche, whether it haue anye castels or cities, I do not yet certaynely knowe: In this, the ryuer *Iaick* hath his originall, and falleth into the *Caspian* sea. They say that this region is desart, because it lyeth so neare the *Tartars*: or that yf it be in any part inhabited, the same to be possessed of the *Tartar Schichmaimai*. The inhabitants haue a peculiar language: and haue theyr cheefe gaynes by the furies of *Harternes*, whiche in fairnesse and greatnesse, excel al the furies of that kynd that are found in any other prouinces. Yet could I haue no greate plentie of them in *Moscouia* at my beyng there.

Note that long after the wytyng of this hystorie, at *Richard Chaunceler* his tyme beyng in *Moscouia*, Duke *John Vasiluiche* that nowe reygneeth, subdued all the *Tartars* with theyr regions and prouinces, euen vnto the great citie and mart towne of *Astrachan* & the *Caspian* sea. At the same tyme also, there was in the Dukes Court an ambassadour that came from this prouince of *Sibier*, who declared that his father had been sent Ambassadour to the great *Chan* of *Cathay*, and that the great citie of *Cambala*, where the great *Chan* kepeth his Court in wynter, was in maner destroyed by *Magromancie* and *Magicall Artes*, wherein the *Cathayans* are very expert as wyrteth *Marcus Paulus Venetini*.

There was also at the same tyme thambassadour of the kyng of *Pertia* called the great *Sophie*. This Ambassadour was apparelled al in *Scarlet*, and spake muche to the Duke in the behalfe of our men, of whose kyngdome and trade he was not ignorant.

The hygher or  
superiour *Hun-*  
*garie*, is called  
*Austria*.  
*Polonie*.

*Buda*.

Furies.  
Pearles, & pre-  
cious stones.

*Sibier*.

*Aspreolos*,  
I thinke to bee  
*Harternes*: yet  
some thinke  
them to be  
*Squiers*, *Gel-*  
*neris* wyrteth  
that the kinges  
of the *Tartars*,  
haue their  
rentes covered  
without with  
the skynes of  
*Lions*: & with-  
in, with the  
skynnes of  
*Sables* and  
*Ermines*.

The

The people called *Czeremisse*, dwell in the wooddes beneth *Novogradia* the lower. They haue a peculiar language, and are of the secte of *Machumet*. They were sometyme subiecte to the kyng of *Casan*: but the greater part of them are nowe subiecte to the prince of *Mosconia*. Many of them at my beyng there, were brought to *Mosconia*, as suspected of rebellion. This nation doth inhabite a large region without houses from *Vuiatbka* and *Vuolochda*, to the ryuer of *Rama*. All the nation, as well women as men, are very swifte of foote, and expert archers: wherein they so delyght, that they bowes are in maner neuer out of their handes: and geue theyr chyldren no meate vntyll they hyt the marke they shoote at. Two leagues distaunt from *Novogradia* the lower, were many houses to the similitud of a citie or towne, where they were accustomed to make salte. These a few yeeres since beyng burnt of the *Tartars*, were restored by the commaundement of the prince.

Habitatten  
without hou-  
ses.

Salte,

*Mordwa*, are people inhabytyng by the ryuer of *Volga* on the south banke beneth *Novogradia* the lower, and are in all thinges lyke vnto the *Czeremisses*, but that they haue more houses. And here endeth The empire of the *Moscouites*.

Note here that *Matthias* of *Michon*, in his booke of *Sarmatia Asiatice*, wytteth that the dominion of the Duke of *Moscouia* reacheth from the north west to the southeast syde hundred myles of Germanie, whiche are more then leagues: For they affirme that a German myle is more then thre Englishe myles.

#### Of the Tartars.

**W**E will nowe adde hereunto somewhat of the people consynnyng with the *Moscouites* toward the East: of the which the *Tartars* of *Casan* are the fyrst. But before we speake of them peticularly, we will fyrst rehearse somewhat of theyr maners and customes in general.

The Tartars  
of Casan.

The *Tartars* are diuided into companies, which they cal *Hordas*, of the whiche the *Horda* of the *Sauolbenses* is the chiefe in fame and multitude: For it is sayde that the other *Hordas* had theyr offsprynge and originall of this. And albeit that euery *Horda* hath his peculiar name, as the *Sauolbenses*, *Precropenses*, and *Nabais*, with dyuers other, beyng all *Machumetans*, yet do they take it euill, and count it reproche to be called *Turkes*: but wyl they selues to be called *Besermani*, by the which name also the *Turkes* desyre to be called.

Horda.

Besermani.

And



## Of the Northeft frosty sea.

And as the *Tartares* inhabite many prouinces reachyng far on euery syde, euen so in maners and order of lyuyng do they not agree in all thynges. They are men of meane stature, with bryde and fatte faces, holowe eyde, with rough and thicke beardes, and poulde heades. Onely the noble men haue long heare, and that exceedyng blacke, whiche they wreath on both sydes theyr eares. They are strong of body, and stout of mind, prone to lecherie, and that vnnaturall. They eate the fleshe of Horses, Camelles, and other beastes, except Hogges, from whiche they absteyne by a lawe. They can so abyde fasting and hunger, that they sometyme forbear meate and sleepe for the space of foure dayes, occupied neuerthelesse about their necessary affayres. Agayne, when they get any thyng to deuoure, they ingorge them selues beyonde measure, and with that surfect in maner recompence theyr former abstinence. And beyng thus oppressed with labour and meate, they sleepe continually for the space of thre or foure dayes, without doyng any maner of worke or labour: duryng which tyme the *Liuous* and *Moscouites*, into whose dominions they are accustomed to make their incursions, assaile them vnwares, thus oppressed with meate and sleepe, lying scattered here and there out of order without watch or ward. Also if when they ryde, they be molested with hunger and thyrst, they vse to lette theyr horses blood, and with drynkyng the same, satysfie theyr present necessitie, and affirme theyr horses to be the better thereby. And because they all wander in vnknown places, they vse to direct theyr iorneyes by chaspect of the starres, and especially of the pole starre, which in theyr tongue they call *Selefnikoll*, (that is) an Iron nayle. They greatly delyght in Hares mylke, and beleue that it maketh men strong and fatte. They eate hearbes very much, and especyally such as growe about *Tanais*. Fewe of them vse salt. When theyr kynges distribute any bytayles among them, they are accustomed to geue one horse or cowe to fourtie men. Of the slayne beaste, the bowells and tripes are reserued for the chiefe men and captains. These they heate at the fyre, vntill they may shake out the doong, and then deuoure them greedily. They sucke and lycke, not only theyr fingers imbrued with fat, but also theyr kniues, & styckes wherwith they scrape the doong from the guttes.

The

The stature of  
the Tartars.

They absteyne  
from hogges  
fleshe.  
Abstinence.

Gluttonie.

So do the  
Turkes.

Pointing by the  
pole starre.

Hares milke.

Horse fleshe  
eaten.

Clenly.

The heades of horses are couered delicate dyshes with them, as are Boozes heades with vs, and are reserued only for the cheef men. They horses (whereof they haue great aboundance) are but small, and with short necks: but very strong, and such as can well away with labour and hunger. These they feede with the bzaunches and barks or ryndes of trees, and the rootes of herbes and weedes, wherby they accustom them to hard feedyng, and exercyse them to contynuall labour: by reason whereof (as say the *Moscouites*) they horses are swifter and more durable then any other: these kynde of horses, they call *Pachmat*. They haue none other saddels and styrops then of wood, except such as they epyther bye of the Christians, or take from them by violence. Lest they horse backs shoulde be hurt with theyr saddels, they vnderlay them with grasse and leaues of trees. They also passe ouer riuers on horse backe. But yf when they flee, they feare the pursuyng of theyr enemies, then castyng away theyr saddels, apparrell, and all other impedimentes, reseruyng only theyr armour and weapons, they flee amayne, and with great celeritie.

Horse heades  
deputie meates  
The Tartars  
horses.

Saddels and  
styrops of  
wood.

Their women vse the same kinde of apparrell that do the men, without any difference, except that they couer theyr heades with linnen bayles, & vse linnen hose much like vnto mariners slops. When theyr queenes come a brode, they are accustomed to couer theyr faces. The other multitude of the common sort that lyueth here and there in the fieldes, haue theyr apparrell made of sheepes skynnes, which they change not vntyll they be woyn & toyne in fytters. They carrie not long in one place, iudgyng it a great miserie so to do. Insomuch that when they are angry with their chyldren, the greatest curse that they can geue them, is that they may remayne perpetually in one place, & drawe the styntch of theyr owne spylthynesse as do the Christians. When they haue consumed the pasture in one place, they go to an other with their droues of cattaille, and theyr wyues and chyldren, whom they euer carry about with them in Wagons: albeit the Tartars that dwell in cities and townes, vse an other order of lyuynge.

The Tartars  
women.

The Tartars  
curse.

If they be inclosed with any daungerous warre, they place theyr wyues, chyldren, and olde folkes, in the safest places. There is no Iustice among them. For yf any man stande in  
need

No iustice  
among the  
Tartars.

## Of the Northeft frosty sea.

neade of any thyng, he may without punishment take it a waye from an other. If any complayne to the Iudge of the violence and wrong doone vnto hym, the offender denieth not the crime, but sayeth that he coulde not lacke that thyng. Then the Iudge is wont to geue this sentence: If thou also shalt haue neade of any thyng, do the lyke to other. Some say they do not steale: But whether they steale or not, let other iudge. They are surely a theeruythe kynde of people, and very poore, lyuyng only by robbying of other, and stealyng away other mens cattaple, and violently also carryng away the men them selues, whom eyther they sell to the Turkes, or proffer them to be redeemed by ransome, reseruyng only the young wenches. They seldeome assault cities or castels, but burne and waste townes and villages: Insomuch that they so please them selues herein, that they thynke they haue so muche the more enlarged theyr Empire, in howe muche they haue wasted and made desolate many prouinces. And although they be most impatient of rest and quietnesse, yet do they not kyll or destroy one an other, except theyr kynges be at dissention betwene them selues. If any man be slayne in any fray or quarrell, and the autchours of the mischefe be taken, only theyr horse, harnessse, weapons, and apparrell, are taken from them, and they dismissed. So that the murderer by the losse of a byle Horse or a Bowe, is discharged of the Iudge with these woordes: Get thee hence, and goe about thy businesse. They haue no vse of gold and syluer, except only a few merchauntes: but exerceyse exchaunge of ware for ware. And yf it so chaunce that by sell yng of suche thynges as they haue stolne, they get anye money of theyr borderers, they bye therewith certayne apparrell and other necessaries of the *Moscouites*. The regions of theyr habitations (the feelde *Tartars* I meane) are not lyimited with any boundes or borders. There was on a tyme a certayne fatte *Tarter* taken prysoner of the *Moscouites*: to whom, when the Prince sayde, howe art thou so fat thou dogge, sayth thou hast not to eate: the *Tartar* answered, Why should not I haue to eate, sayth I possesse so large a lande from the East to the West, whereby I may be abundantly nourished: But thou mayest rather seeme to lacke, sayth thou inhabyttest so small a portion of the woorld, and dooest daily

The Tartars  
are theues  
and poore.

They reioyce  
in spoyleing.

The feelde  
Tartars.

A meere tale.

dayly stryue for the same.

*Casan* is a kyngdome, also a citie and a castle of the same name, scituate by the riuer *Volga*, on the further banke, almoste threescore and tenne leagues beneath *Nouogradia* the lower. Along by the course of *Volga* towarde the East and South, it is terminated with desart fecides: towarde the Sommer East, it confineth with the *Tartars*, called *Schibanski*, and *Kosatzki*.

The kyng of this prouince is able to make an armie of thyrtye thousande men, especially footmen, of the which, the *Czeremisse* and *Czubaschi* are moste expert Archers. The *Czubaschi* are also cunning Hariners. The citie of *Casan* is threescore leagues distant from the principall castle *Vniatbka*. Furthermore, *Casan*

in the *Tartars* language, signifieth a brassen pot boyleng. These *Tartars* are more ciuill then the other, for they dwell in houses, tyl the grounde, and exercise the trade of marchandies: They were of late subdued by *Basilus* the great Duke of *Moscouia*, and had their Kyng assigned them at his arbitrement: But shortly after they rebelled agayne, and associate with other *Tartars*, invaded the region of *Moscouia*, spoyled and wasted many cities and townes, and ledde away innumerable captiues, euen from the citie of *Moscouia*, which they possessed for a tyme, and had utterly destroyed the same, yf it had not been for the valcauntnesse of the *Almaine Gunners*, whiche kept the castle with great ordinaunce. They also put Duke *Basilus* to flyght, and caused hym to make a letter of his owne hand to *Machmetgiri* the Kyng, to acknowledge hym selfe for a perpetuall tributarie to them: whereupon they dissolued the siege, and gaue the *Moscouites* free libertie to redceme their captiues & goods, and so departed. But *Basilus* not long able to abyde this contumelie and dishonour, after that he had put to death suche as by flying at the first encountring were the cause of this ouerthrow: assembled an armie of an hundred and fourescore thousande men shortly after, in the yeere. 1523. and sent forwarde his armie, vnder the conduct of his Lieutenant, and therewith an Heraide at armes to hydde battell to *Machmetgiri* the Kyng of *Casan*, with woordes in this effecte. The last yeere, lyke a theefe and robber, without hyddeng of battell, thougbdest pryncially oppresse

The kyng  
of *Casan*.

Archers.  
Hariners.

The towne  
of *Tartars*.

*Moscouia* in-  
uaded by the  
*Tartars*.

The prince of  
*Moscouia*  
tributary to  
the *Tartars*.

Duke *Basilus*  
armp agaynst  
the *Tartars*.



mee, wherefore I nowe chalenge thee, once agayne to proue the fortune of warre, if thou mystruste not thyne owne power. To this the Kyng answered, that there were manye wayes open for him to inuade *Mosconia*: and that the warres haue no lesse respecte to the commoditie of tyme and place, then of armure or strength: and that hee would take the aduantage thereof, when and where it should seeme best to him, and not to other. Whiche whiche woordes *Basilius* beyng greatly accensed, and burnyng with desyre of reuenge, inuaded the kingdome of *Casan*: whose Kyng beyng stryken with todayne feare at the appproche of so terrible an army, assigned the gouernance of his kyngdome to the yong Kyng of *Taurica* his Nephew, whyle he him selfe went to requyre ayde of the Emperour of the Turkes. But in fine, the Kyng of *Casan* submitted him selfe vpon certayne conditions of peace, which the *Moscouites* dyd the gladlyer accept for that tyme, because their victualles fayled them to mayneteyne so great a multitude. But whereas Duke *Basilius* him selfe was not present at this last expedition, hee greatly suspected *Palitzki* the Lieuutenant of the army to bee corrupted with bybys, to proceede no further. In this meane tyme, the Kyng of *Casan* sent Ambassadors to *Basilius* to intreate of peace, whom I sawe in the Dukes courte at my beyng there: but I coulde perceyue no hope of peace to be betweene them. For euen then, *Basilius* to endomage the *Casans*, translated the marte to *Novogradia*, whiche before was accustomed to be kepte in the Ilande of marchauntes, neare vnto the citie of *Casan*: Commaunding also vnder payne of greuous punishment, that none of his subiectes shoulde resorte to the Ilande of marchauntes: thynkyng that this translation of the marte shoulde greatly haue endomaged the *Casans*: and that only by takyng away their trade of salte (which they were accustomed to buye of the *Moscouites* at that marte) they shoulde haue been compelled to submission. But the *Moscouites* them selues felte no lesse inconuenience heereby then dyd the *Casans*, by reason of the dearth and scarfenesse that folowed heereof, of all suche thinges as the *Tartars* were accustomed to buyng thither by the ryuer of

Volga.

The kyng of  
Casan submit-  
teth hym  
selfe.

The Ilande of  
marchauntes

*Volga*, from the *Caspian* sea, the kyngdomes of *Persia* and *Armenia*, and the marie towne of *Astrachan*: especially the great number of most excellent fyshes that are taken in *Volga*, both on the hyther and further syde of *Casan*.

The *Caspian* sea.  
*Persia*.  
*Armenia*.  
*Astrachan*.

But haupng sayde thus muche of the warres betweene the prince of *Moscouia* and the *Tartars* of *Casan*, we will now proceede to speake somewhat of the other *Tartars*, inhabiting the regions towarde the Southeast, and the *Caspian* sea.

Next beyond the *Tartars* of *Casan*, are the *Tartars* called *Nagai* or *Nogai*, which inhabite the regions beyonde *Volga*, about the *Caspian* sea at the ryuer *Iaick*, runnyng out of the prouince of *Sibier*. These haue no kynges but Dukes. In our tyme, three brethren deuydyng the prouinces equally betweene them, possessed those Dukedomes. The first of them named *Schidack*, possesseth the citie of *Scharaitzick*, beyonde the ryuer of *Rha* or *Volga*, toward the East, with the region consynng with the ryuer *Iaick*. The seconde called *Cossum*, enioyeth all the lande that lyeth betwene the ryuers of *Kaman*, *Iaick*, and *Volga*. The third brother named *Schichmamai*, possesseth parte of the prouince of *Sibier*, and all the region about the same. *Schichmamai*, is as much to say by interpretation, as holy or myghtie. And in maner all these regions are ful of woods, except that that lieth toward *Scharaitz*, which consisteth of playnes and fieldes.

The *Tartars* neare to the *Caspian* sea.  
*Nogai*.

The possessor of three brethren.

Betweene the riuers of *Volga* and *Iaick*, about the *Caspian* sea, there sometimes inhabited the kinges called *Sawolbenes*. *Demetrius Danielis* (a man among these Barbarians of singular faith & grauitie) tolde vs of a marueylous & in maner incredible thing, that is seene among these *Tartars*. And that his father being sent by the prince of *Moscouia* to the kyng of *Sawolbenes*, saw while he was in that legacie, a certaine seede in that Island somewhat lesse & rounder then the seeds of *Melones*: Of the which being hyd in the ground, there groweth a fruite or plante very lyke a Lambe, of the height of five spannes: and is therefore called in theyr tongue *BoranetZ*, whiche signifieth a litle Lambe. For it hath the head, eyes, eares, and all other partes like vnto a Lambe newly epned: with also a very thyn skyn, wherewith dyuers of the inhabitauntes of those regions are accustomed to lyne theyr cappes and hattes, and other tyrements for theyr heades.

The kynges called *Sawolbenes*.

A maruelous fruite lyke a lambe.

Many also confirmed in our presence, that they had seene these skynnes. He saide furthermore, that that plant (yf it may be called a plant) hath blood, and no fleshe, but hath in the steade of fleshe, a certayne substaunce lyke vnto the fleshe of Creuishes. The hooftes also are not of horne, as are the Lambes, but couered with heare in the same fourme. The roote cleaueth to the nauyl or myddest of the belly: the plant or fruite lyueth vntill al the grasse & hearbes growing about it, being eaten, the roote wythereth for lacke of nourishment. They say that it is very sweete to be eaten, and is therfore greatly desyred, and sought for of the Woolues, and other rauenyng beastes. And albeit I esteeme all that is sayde of this plant to be fabulous, yet forasmuche as it hath been tolde me of credible persons, I haue thought good to make mention hereof.

**Mandeuile.**

Of this strange fruite *Mandeuile* maketh mention, where in the lxxviii. Chapter of his Booke, he wyrteth thus: Nowe shal I say of some landes, countreys, and Isles that are beyonde the lande of Cathay: therfore whoso goeth from Cathay to India the bygh and the lowe, he shall goe through a Kyngdome that men call *Cadissen*, and is a great lande. There groweth a manner of fruite, as it were Gourdes, and when it is ripe, men cut it asunder, and fynde therein a beast, as it were of fleshe, bone, and blood, as it were a litle Lambe, without wooll, and men eate that beast, and the fruite also, whiche is a great marueyle: neuerthelesse, I sayde vnto them, that I helde that for no marueyle, for I sayde, that in my countrey are trees that beare fruite, that become byrdes fleeing, which are good to be eaten, and that that falleth into the water, lyueth, and that that falleth on the earth, dyeth: And they had great marueyle of this. &c.

**Barackes of the Okeneps.**

From the prince of *Schidacke*, proceedinge twentye dayes iourney toward the East, are the people which the *Moscouites* call *Iurgenci*, whose prince is *Barack Soltan*, brother to the great *Chan* of Cathay. In tenne dayes iourney from *Barack Soltan*, they come to *Bebeid Chan*. And this is that great *Chan* of Cathay.

**Barack Soltan.**  
**Cathay.**

**Names**

Names of dignities among the *Tartars*, are these, *Chan*, signifieth a Kyng: *Soltan*, the sonne of a Kyng: *Bij*, a Duke: *Mursa*, the sonne of a Duke: *Olbound*, a noble man, or counsellor: *Olboadulu*, the sonne of a noble man: *Seid*, the hygh priest: *Ksi*, a private person.

The names of offices, are these, *Vlan*, the seconde dignitie to the Kyng: for the Kynges of the *Tartars* haue foure principal men, whose counsell they vse in all their weyghtie affayres: Of these, the firste is called *Schirni*: the seconde, *Barni*: the thyrde, *Gargni*: the fourth, *Tzipsan*. And to haue sayde thus muche of the *Tartars*, it shal suffice.

*Marcus Paulus* wytteth, that the great *Chan* is called *Chan Cublai*, that is, the great Kyng of Kynges, as the great Turcke wytteth hym selfe in lyke manner, as I sawe in a letter wytten by hym of late in the cite of *Ragusa*, in the whiche he vseth this subscription. *Soltan Soliman deselim Cham Signore de Signeri*  
*in sempiterno.*

### The Nauigation by the frosen Sea.



**A**t my beyng in *Moscouia*, when I was sent thither by king *Ferdinando*, my lord and maister, it so chaunced, that *Georgius Istoma*, the Duke of *Moscouia* his Interpreter, a man of great experience, who had before learned the latine tongue in the court of *Iohn* king of *Denmarke*, was there present at the same tyme. He, in the yeere of *Christe*. 1496. beyng sent of his prince with maister *David*, a Scotte bozne, and then Ambassadour for the kyng of *Denmarke* (whom also I knewe there at my firste legacie) made me a bryefe information of al the order of his iourney: the which,



## Of the Northeast frostie sea,

forasmuch as it may seeme difficult and laborious, as wel for the distance as dangerous places, I haue thought good to describe the same as I receiued it at his mouth.

Ifirst, he sayde that being sent of his prince with the sayde David, they came first to *Nouograda* the great. And whereas at that tyme the kyngdome of *Suecia* reuolted from the Kyng of Denmarke, & also the Duke of *Moscouia* was at discension with the *Suetians*, by reason whereof they could not passe by the most accustomed way, for the tumultes of warre, they attempted theyr iourney by an other way, longer, but safer, and came first from *Nouograda* to the mouthes of the ryuer of *Dwina* and *Potiwlo*, by a very difficult and paynfull iourney: For hee sayd that this iourney, which can not be to muche detested for such labours and traueyles, continueth for the space of three hundred leagues. In fine, taking foure small shippes or barkes at the mouthes of *Dwina*, they sayled by the coast on the right hand of the Ocean, where they sawe certayne hygh and rough mountaynes: and at the length saylyng, xvi. leagues, and passing a great gulfe, folowed the coast on the leste hande: and leauyng on the right hande the large sea whiche hath the name of the ryuer *Petzora* (as haue also the mountaynes adiacent to the same) they came to the people of *Finlappia*: who, although they dwell here & there in low cottages by the sea syde, and leade in maner a beastly lyfe, yet are they more meeke and tractable then the wyld *Lappians*. He sayde that these also are tributaries to the prince of *Moscouia*. Then leauing the lande of the *Lappians*, and saylyng fourescore leagues, they came to the region of *Nortpoden*, vnder the dominion of the kyng of *Suecia*. This the *Moscouites* call *Kaienska Semla*, and the people *Kaieni*. Departyng from hence, and saylyng along by the coast of a wyndyng and bendyng shoare reachyng toward the ryght hande, they came to a promontorie or cape, called the Holy nose, being a great stone reachyng farre into the sea, to the similitude of a nose: vnder the which is seene a caue with a whyrlepoole, which swaloweth the sea euery syre houres: and castyng forth the same agayne with terryble roaryng and violence, causeth the sayde whyrlepoole. Some call this the *Naue* of the sea: and other name it *Charibdis*. He affirmeth that

*Nouograda*.  
Suecia vnder  
the kyng of  
Denmarke.

*Dwina*.  
*Potiwlo*.

Hygh mountaynes  
neare  
the north  
Ocean.

*Finlappia*.

The wyld  
*Lappians*.

The region  
of *Nortpoden*

The cape  
called the Holy  
nose.  
A whyrlepoole  
or swallowing  
goulfe.

the

the violence of this swallowing gulfe is such, that it draweth into it, inuolueeth, and swalloweth by thynnes, & all other thinges that come neare it, and that they were neuer in greater danger. For the whirlepoole so sodenly and violently dwe vnto it the shyp or barke wherein they were carryed, that with the helpe of Dyes and great labour they hardly escaped. When they had thus ouerpassed the holy nose, they came to a certayne stony mountaine, which they should needes compasse about: but being there stayed with contrary windes for the space of certayne dayes, the pylot of the shyp spake vnto them in this effect: This stone (sayeth he) that you see, is called *Semes*: the whiche except wee please with some gyfte, we shall not passe by without great danger. But the pylot being repproued of *Istoma* for his bayne superstition, helde his peace. And when they had ben detained there by tempest for the space of foure dayes, at the length the tempest ceased, and they went forward on theyr viage with a prosperous wynde. Then the pylot spake vnto them agayne, saying: You despised my admonition of pleasing the *Semes*, and scorned the same as bayne and superstitious: but if I had not priuily in the night ascended a rocke and pleased the *Semes*, we should surely haue had no passage. Being demaunded what he offered to the *Semes*, hee sayde that he poured butter myxt with oremeale vpon the stone which we sawe reach forth into the sea. As they sayled further, they came to an other cape named *Motka*, whiche was almost enuironed with the sea, lyke an Ilande, in whose extreme pointe, is situate the Castell of *Barthus*, which some call *Wardhus*, (that is) a house of defence or fortress: For the kynges of Norway haue there a garrison of men to defend theyr marches. He sayde furthermore, that that cape reacheth so farre into the sea, that they could scarcely compasse it in eyght dayes. By which taryng leaste they should be hyndered, they carryed on theyr shoulbers with great labour, theyr barkes and fardelles ouer a streyght of lande conteynyng halfe a league in breadth. From hence they sayled to the region of the wyld *Lappones*, called *Dikillappones*, to a place named *Dront*, being 200. leagues distant from *Dvina*, toward the North. And thus far as he sayth, both the prince of *Mosconia* exacte tribute. Furthermore, leauing

Such whirle  
pooles, are  
cauled vipers

The stone  
called *Semes*.

Superstition

Sacrifice to the  
stone *Semes*.  
The cape  
*Motka*.  
The castell of  
*wardhus*.

The region  
of the wyld  
*Lappones*.  
*Dront*,

their Barkes here, they furnyshed the residue of their iourney on Sleades. He further declared, that there were heardes of Hartes, as are with vs of Oren, which in the Norwegians tongue are called *Rhen*, beyng somewhat bygger then our Hartes. These the *Lappones* vse in this maner: They ioynе them to Sleades made lyke fischer Boates, as we put horses to the Cart, the man in the Sleade is tyed fast by the fēete, lest he fal out by the swift course of the Hartes. In his least hande he holdeth a coller or reigne, wherewith he moderateth the course of the Hartes: and in the ryght hand a pyked staffe, wherewith he may susteyne the Sleade from fallng, yf it chaunce to decline too muche on anye parte. And he tolde me, that by this meanes he trauayled, .xx. leagues in one day, and then dismyssed the Hart, who by hym selfe returned to his owne maister and accustomed stable. This iourney thus finished, they came to *Berges* a citie of *Noruegia*, or *Norway*, situate directlye toward the North, betweene the mountaynes, and went from thence to *Denmarke* on horsebacke. At *Drontheim* and *Berges* the day is sayde to be, .xii. houres long in the Sommer Equinoctial. *Blasius*, an other of the prince of *Mosconia* his Interpreters, who a fewe yeeres before was sent of his prynce into Spayne to the Emperour, declared vnto vs an other and shorter way of his iourney: for he sayde, that when he was sent from *Mosconia* to *Iohn* the kyng of *Denmarke*, he came firste on foote vnto *Rostowe*, and takng hyppе there, came to *Pereaslau*: and from *Pereaslau*, by the riuer *Volga*, to *Castromow*: and that from thence, goyng seven werstes by lande, he came to a litle ryuer, saylyng by the whiche, when firste he came to *Vuolochda*, then to *Suchana*, and *Dwina*, and in fine, to the citie of *Berges* in *Norway*, ouerpassyng in this viage al the perylls and labours that *Istoma* rehearsed before, he came at length to *Hafnia* the cheefe citie of *Denmarke*, whiche the Germanes call *Koppenhagen*: but in their returnyng home, they both confesse that they came to *Mosconia* by *Liuania*, and that they were a yeere in this viage: albeit *Georgius Istoma* sayde, that halfe the parte of that tyme he was hyndered by tempestes, and inforced to carrye long in manye places by the way, yet they both lykewyse constantly affyrme, that in this iourney eyther of them trauayled a thousande, threescore, and ten werstes, that

Journeping  
on Sleades.

How the Harts  
draw Sleades.

Twentye leas-  
gues in one day

The citie of  
Berges in  
Norway.

A shorter  
iourney.  
Rostowe.  
Pereaslau.  
Castromow.

Vuolochda.  
Suchana.  
Dwina.  
Hafnia.  
Koppenhagen.

Liuania.

Werst is al-  
most an Ita-  
lian mple.

(that is) three hundred and fourtie leagues. Furthermore also Demetrius, who of late was sent ambassadour from the prince of Moscouia to the Bishop of Rome, (by whose relation also Paulus Iouius wrote his description of Moscouia) confirmed all these thynges to be true. All they beyng demaunded of me of the congeled or frosen sea, made none other answer, but that in places neere vnto that sea, they sawe many and great ryuers, by whose vehemente course and abundant flowyng, the seas are dryuen farre from the shore; and that the sayde water of the ryuers is frosen with the sea a good space from the lande, as in *Liunia* and other partes of *Suecia*. For although by the vehemencie of the wyndes, the Isle is broken in the sea, yet doth this chaunce seldome or neuer in ryuers, except by some inundation or fludde the Isle geathered togeather be lyfted vp and broken. For the flakes or pieces of Isle caried into the sea by force of the ryuers, do flote about the water in maner all the whole yere, and are agayne so vehemently frosen togeather, that a man may there sometymes see great heapes of the Isle of manie yeres, as doth appeare by suche pieces as are dryuen to the shore by the wynde. I haue also been credyblly informed by saythfull men, that the sea *Balticum* (otherwyle called the gulfe of *Liunia*) is oftentymes frosen in many places. They say furthermore, that in that region whiche is inhabited of the wyld *Lappones*, the Sunne in the sommer Equinoctiall doth not fall for the space of .xl. dayes: yet that the body thereof is so hydden with a darke myste or cloude three houres, that the beames do not appeare: neuerthelesse to geue such light during that time, that the darkness hyndereth not theyr woork. The *Moscouites* make theyr booke that these wyld *Lappones* are tributaries to theyr pryncce. Whereat I do not greatly marueyle, forasmuch as they haue none other neere vnto them, that may demaund tribute of them. Theyr tribute is onely fures and fyre, hauyng in maner none other thyng greatly commodious. And albeit they lacke bread, salte, and other intplementes of gluttony, and lyue onely with fysh and wyld beasts, yet are they exceedyng prone to lechery. They are suche expert archers, that if in theyr hunting they espye any beasts, whose skynnes they desyre to saue vnpershed, they will not lyghtly mysse to hytte hym

Paulus Iouius.

Ryuers fallyng into the frosen sea.

Wynde.  
Isle.

Isle of many yeres.

The sea *Balticum*.

Where the Sunne fallcth not iii. xl. dayes.

The wyld *Lappones* are tributaries to the *Moscouites*.  
Fures and fyre.

Expert archers

in



## Of the Northeast frosty sea,

in the noſethpylles . When they go forth on huntynge, they are accuſtomed to leaue at home with theyꝝ wyues ſuche merchauntes oꝝ ſtraungers as they haue receyued into theyꝝ houſes : So that if at theyꝝ returne, they perceyue theyꝝ wyues through the companye of the ſtraungers to be merier and moze iocunde then the were woonte to be , they geue the ſtraungers ſome preſent . But if they fynde it otherwyſe, they thruſt them forth of the doozes with woordes of reproche . But nowe by the companye they haue with ſtraungers that reſort thither for gaynes, they begyn to leaue theyꝝ native barbarouſnelle . They gladly admytte merchauntes, becauſe they bypynge them apparell of groſe cloth : alſo hatchettes, needels, ſpones, knyues, dꝛynkynge cuppes, earthen and bzafen pottes, with ſuch other neceſſarie wares: So that they uſe now to eate ſodden and roſted meate, and do embrace moze ciuile maners . Their owne apparell is made of the ſkinnes of diuers beaſtes ſowed together . And in this apparel they ſometimes come to *Mosconia*. Yet ſewe of them haue cappes oꝝ hoſen, which they uſe to make of hartes ſkynnes. They haue not the uſe of golde oꝝ ſyluer mony : but uſe only bartering of ware for ware . And being ignozant of other languages beſyde theyꝝ owne, they ſeeme among ſtraungers to be in maner dome . Theyꝝ cotages are couered onely with the barkes of trees . They haue no certaine reſting habitation: But when they haue conſumed the fiſhe and wild beaſtes in one place, they remoue to an other . Furthermoze alſo the ſaide ambadaours of the pꝛince of *Mosconia* declared, that in the ſaine partes they ſawe certayne hygh mountaynes, continually caſting forth flames of fyre, as doth the mountayne of *Etna* in the Iſlande of *Sicilia*: and that euen in *Norway* many mountaynes are fallen downe and burnt in maner to aſhes with ſuch continuall flames. Which thynge ſome conſiderynge, ſayne the fyre of *Purgatorie* to be there . And as concernynge theſe mountaynes of *Norway*, when I was ſent ambadaour to *Chriſtierne* king of *Denmarke*, I was enſourmed the lyke by the gouernours of *Norway*, who chaunced at that tyme to be preſent there.

About the mouthes of the ryuer *Petzora* that are towarde the ryght hande from the mouthes of *Duina*, are ſayde to be dyuers and great beaſtes in the Ocean ; and among other, a  
certayne

Good felowes  
they.

Necessary  
wares.

No use of  
money.

Their cottages.

Mountaynes  
continually  
burning.

The river  
Petzora.

certayne great beast as byg as an Oxe, which the inhabitauntes call Mos. This beast hath short feete lyke a Beuer or an Otter, with a brest somewhat hygh and brode, for the proportion of the residue of his body, and two long and great teeth growe-  
 yng out of the upper iawe. These beastes for rest and encrease, do sometymes leaue the Ocean, and by great hearde ascend the mountaynes: where, before they geue them selues to pprofunde sleepe (whereunto they are naturaly enclined) they appoynt one of theyr number as it were a watch man, as do Cranes for the securitie of the rest. Which yf he chaunce to sleepe, or to be slaine of the hunters, the residue may easily be taken. But yf the watch-  
 man geue warnyng with rooyng (as the maner is) immediat-  
 ly the whole hearde awakened thereby, sodaynely put theyr hin-  
 der feete to theyr teeth, and so fallyng from the mountaine with  
 great celeritie as it were on a sleade, they cast them selues head-  
 long into the Ocean: where also they rest and sleepe for a while  
 vpon the heapes of yse. The hunters pursue these beastes onely  
 for theyr teeth: Of the whiche the Moscouites, Tartars, and espe-  
 cially the Turkes, make hastes for swordes and daggers very ar-  
 tificially: and vse these rather for ornament, then to geue the  
 greater stroke for the weyght or heauynesse thereof, as some sa-  
 ble. Also among the Turkes, Moscouites, and Tartars, these  
 teeth are solde by weyght, and are called the teeth of ffishes.

The beast cal-  
 led Mos.

The promi-  
 sence of nas-  
 ture.

The frozen sea reacheth farre and wyde beyonde Duina, to  
 Petzcora, and vnto the mouthes of the great ryuer Obi: beyonde  
 the whiche they say to be the region of Engreonland, vnknow-  
 en and seperate from the trade and conuersation of our  
 men, by reason of hygh mountaynes couered,  
 and colde with perpetuall snow, and the  
 sea no lesse incumbred with continuall  
 yse, which hindereth nauigations,  
 and maketh them daunge-  
 rous, as they  
 say.

The frozen  
 sea.

Engreonland  
 or greoulant.

(.)

Exemplar

Of the Northeaft frosty sea,

## Exemplar Epistolę seu Literarum

Missiuarum, quas illustrissimus Princeps Eduardus, eius nominis Sextus, Anglię, Francię, et Hibernię Rex, misit ad Principes Septentrionalem, ac Orientalem, mundi plagam inhabitantes iuxta mare glaciale, nec non Indiam Orientalem. Anno Domini. 1553.

Regni sui Anno septimo, et vltimo.

**E**duardus sextus, Anglię, Francię, & Hibernię Rex. &c.  
Omnibus Regibus et principibus ac Dominis, et cunctis Iudicibus terrę, et Ducibus eius, quibuscunque est excellens aliqua dignitas in ea, cunctis in locis quę sunt sub vniuerso cęlo: Pax, tranquillitas, & honor vobis, terris, et regionibus vestris quę imperio vestro subiacent, cuiquę vestrum quemadmodum conuenit ei. Propterea quod indidit Deus Opt. Max. hominibus prę cunctis alijs viuentibus, cor & desiderium tale, vt appetat quisquę cum alijs societatem inire, amare, et vicissim amari, beneficij afficere, et mutua accipere beneficia studeat, ideo cuiquę pro facultate sua hoc desiderium in omnibus quidem hominibus beneficij fovere et conseruare conuenit, in illis autem maxime, qui hoc desiderio adducti, a remotis etiam regionibus ad eos veniunt. Quo enim longius iter, eius rei gratia ingressi sunt, eo ardentius in eis hoc desiderium fuisse declararunt. Insuper etiam ad hoc, nos patrum maiorumq; nostrorum exempla inuitant, qui semper humanissime susceperunt et benignissime tractauerunt illos, qui tum a locis propinquis, tum a remotis, eos amice adibant, eorum se protectioni commendantes. Quod si omnibus id prestare æquum est, certe mercatoribus imprimis prestari debet, qui per vniuersum orbem discurrunt, mare circumlustrantes et aridam, vt res bonas et vtilis quę Dei beneficio in regione eorum inueniuntur, ad remotissimas regiones et regna adferant, atquę inde viuissim referant, quod suę regioni vtile ibi reppererint: vt et populi ad quos eunt, non destituantur commodis, quę non profert illis terra eorum, & ipsi sint participes rerum, quibus illi abundant. Nam Deus cęli et terrę, humano generi maxime consulens, noluit vt omnia in quauis regione inuenirentur, quo regio ope alterius regionis indigeret, et gens ab alio gente commodum aliquod expectaret, ac ita stabiliretur amicitia

amicitia inter omnes, singulique omnibus benefacere querebant. Hoc itaque inuendæ ac stabiliendæ amicitiaë desiderio moti viri quidam regni nostri, iter in remotas maritimas regiones instituerunt, vt inter nostros et illos populos, viam mercibus inferendis et eferendis aperirent, nosque rogauerunt vt id illis concederemus. Qui petitioni illorum annuentes, concessimus viro honorabili et forti, Hugoni Wilibero, et alijs qui eom eo sunt seruis nostris fidis et charis, vt pro sua voluntate, in regiones eis prius incognitas eant, quesituri ea quibus nos caremus, et adducant illis ex nostris terris, id quod illi carent. Atque ita illis et nobis commodum inde accedat, sitque amicitia perpetua, et fœdus indissolubile inter illos et nos, dum permittent illi nos accipere de rebus, quibus superabundant in regnis suis, et nos concedemus illis ex regnis nostris res, quibus destituuntur. Rogamus itaque vos Reges et principes, et omnes quibus aliqua est potestas in terra, vt viris istis nostris, transitum permittatis per regiones vestras. Non enim tangent quicquam ex rebus vestris inuitis vobis. Cogitate quod homines et ipsi sunt. Et si qua re caruerint, oramus pro vestra beneficentia, eam vos illis tribuatis, accipientes vicissim ab eis, quod poterunt rependere vobis. Ita vos gerite erga eos, quemadmodum cuperetis vt nos, et subditi nostri, nos gereremus erga seruos vestros, si quando transferint per regiones nostras. Atque promittimus vobis per Deum omnium quæ cælo, terra et mari continentur, perque vitam nostrum, et tranquillitatem regnorum nostrorum, nos pari benignitate seruos vestros accepturos, si ad regna nostra aliquando venerint. Atque a nobis et subditis nostris, ac si nati fuisset in regnis nostris ita benignè tractabuntur, vt rependamus vobis benignitatem, quam nostris exhibueritis. Postquam vos Reges, Principes, &c. rogauiamus vt humanitate et beneficentia omni prosequamini seruos nostros nobis charos, oramus omnipotentem Deum nostrum, vt vobis diuturnam vitam largiatur, et pacem que nullam habeat finem. Scriptum Londini, quæ ciuitas est regni nostri. Anno .5515. a creato mundo, mense Iar, xiiii. die mensis, anno septimo regni nostri.



Of the Northeft frosty sea.

The copy of the letters missiue whiche the ryght noble prince Edwarde the .vi. sent to the Kynges, Princes, and other potentates inhabityng the Northeft partes of the worlde to warde the myghty Empire of Cathay, at such tyme as syr Hugh VVilloby knyght and Richard Chaunceler, with theyr company, attempted theyr voyage thither in the yeere of Christ. 1553. and the .vii. and last yeere of his reigne.



Edwarde the syxth by the grace of God, king of England, Fraunce and Ireland. &c. To all Kynges, Princes, Rulers, Judges, and Gouvernours of the earth, and all other hauyng any excellent dignitie on the same in all places vnder the vniuersall heauem: Peace, tranquillitie, and honour, be vnto you, and your landes and regions whiche are vnder your dominions, and to euery of you, as is conuenient.

Forasmuche as the great and almyghtie God hath geuen vnto mankynde, aboue all other lpyng creatures, such a hart and desyre, that euery man desyrez to ioyne frendeshyp with other, to loue and be loued, also to geue and receyue mutuall benefites: it is therefore the duetie of all men, accordyng to theyr power, to mayntayne and increase this desyre in euery man, with well deseruing to all men, and especially to shewe this good affection to such, as beyng moued with this desyre, come vnto them from farre countreis. For in howe much the longer boPAGE they haue attempted for this intent, so much the moze do they thereby declare that this desyre hath ben ardent in them. Furthermoze also, the examples of our fathers and pcedecessours do inuite vs herevnto, forasmuch as they haue euer gentelly and louyngly intreated such as of frendely mynde came to them, as well from countreys neere hand, as far remote, commending them selues to their protection. And if it be ryght and equitie to shewe such humanitie towarde all men, doubtlesse the same ought chiefly to be shewed to merchauntes, who wanderyng about the worlde, search both the lande and the sea, to cary suche good and profitable thynges as are founde in theyr countreys, to remote regions and kyngdomes.

domes, and agayne to byyng from the same, suche thynges as they fynde there commodious for theyr owne countreys: both aswell that the people, to whom they goe, may not be destitute of suche commodities as theyr countreys byyng not foorth to them, as that also they may be partakers of suche thynges wherof they abounde. For god of heauen and earth, greatly ppyty- byyng for mankynd, would not that al thinges should bee founde in one region, to thende that one should haue neede of an other, that by this meanes frendshyp myght be established among all men, and euery one seeke to gratifie all. For the establiishing and furtheraunce of whiche vniuersall amitie, certayne men of our realme, moued hereunto by the sayde desire, haue instituted and taken vpon them a viage by sea into farre countreys, to the intent that betweene our people and them, a way be opened to byyng in, and carry out merchandizes, desirynge vs to further theyr enterpryse. Who assentynge to theyr petition, haue licensed the ryght balaunt and worthy sir Hugh Wylloby Knyght, and other our trusty and faythful seruantes which are with him, accordyng to theyr desire, to go to countreys to them heretofore vnknewen, aswell to seeke suche thynges as we lacke, as also to carry vnto them from our regions, suche thynges as they lacke. So that hereby not only commoditie may ensue both to them and to vs, but also an indissoluble and perpetuall league of frendshyp be established betweene vs both, whyle they permit vs to take of theyr thyngs, such whereof they haue aboundaunce in theyr regions, and we agayne graunt them suche thynges of ours wherof they are destitute. We therfore desire you Kynge and Princes, and all other to whom there is any power on the earth, to permit vnto these our seruantes, free passage by your regions and dominions: for they shall not touche any thyng of yours vntwpylling vnto you. Consider you that they also are men. If therfore they shall stande in neede of any thyng, we desire you of all humanitie, and for the nobilitie whiche is in you, to ayde and helpe them with suche thynges as they lacke, recey- uynge agayne of them suche thynges as they shalbe able to geue you in recompence. Shew your selues so towards them, as you would that we and our subiectes should shew our selues towards your seruantes, if at any time they shall passe by our regions.

Thus.

## Of the Northeſt froſty ſea.

Thus doyng, we promiſe you by the God of all thyngs that are conteyned in heauen, earth, and the ſea, and by the lyfe and tranquillitie of our kyngdomes, that we wyll with lyke humanity accept your ſervantes if at any tyme they ſhall come to our kyngdomes, where they ſhall as frendly and gently be entertayned, as if they were bozne in our dominions, that we may hereby recompence the fauour and benignitie which you haue ſhewed to our men. Thus after we haue deſired you Kynges and Princes. &c. With all humanity and fauour, to entertayne our welbeloued ſervantes, we wyll pray our almyghthe God to graunte you long lyfe, & peace, which neuer ſhall haue end. Wrytten in London whiche is the cheefe citie of our kyngdome: in

the peere from the creation of the worlde  
5515. in the moneth of Iar, the fourteene day of the moneth, and ſeuenth peere of our reigne.

This letter was wrytten alſo in Greeke,  
and diuers other languages.

(.)

Other

Iar, I would  
reade Iar,  
that is in the  
Baraseni lan-  
guage, mixt of  
Turkiſh & Eg-  
yptian, Iebus-  
ar, interpreted  
by them the  
moneth to ſet  
ſhips to the  
ſea.

# The voyages of Persia, traueiled

by the merchauntes of London, of the company and felowshyp of *Moscouia*. In

the yeeres. 1561. 1567.

1568.



I shall not heere be needefull to wypte any thyng of the way from hence to *Moscouia* by sea, vnto the poynte of *Saincte Nicolas*, where our merchauntes haue a house of their trafique, for as muche as the same is already well knowen. And therefore it shall suffice for the description of this voyage, to shewe the way from *Saincte Nicolas* in *Moscouia* vnto *Persia*, as our men traueyled by the regions of *Moscouia* vnto the *Caspian* sea, and by that sea into *Media* and *Persia*, vnto the court of the great *Sophie* Kyng of *Persia*, and many other realmes and kyngdomes subiecte vnto the same, as hereafter shall bee more particularly declared, with suche breuitie as the tyme and matter now requireth. Forasmuch as many thynges myght bee wyritten touchyng this voyage, and the merchauntes trafique in these regions, whiche for many great considerations ought not to be published or put in print: and therefore touchyng only those thynges, it shall suffice to the reader to vnderstande the description of the regions, with the maners and customes of the people of those countreys, after the maner of a Geographicall historie, partely to delight and content the desyre of suche as take pleasure in the knowledge of straunge thynges and countreys, whereby the mynde of man increaseth in wisdom and knowledge, both in humane affayres, and also of the marueylous and manyfolde workes of god & nature, that thereby God may be glorified and sanctified in all his workes, in the spirites of all good and vertuous men which delight in the same. And whereas in the description of this voyage, I may seeme to haue kepte no due order of wyptyng, I shal desire the reader to haue me excused, for that I coulde not orderly haue any information of them that came from *Persia*: but was fayne to geather certayne notes

T. i.

only



## The vyage of the Moscouian merchantes

only by communication and conference with them at sundry tymes, with fewe woordes as occasion serued. But now to enter into the voyage.

From the merchauntes house at the porte of Saint Nicolas in Mosconia, they traueyle by the ryuers of Duina and Sachana, vntyll they come vnto the citie of Vologda, (where also the merchantes haue an other house) a thousande werstes or Rus myles, or myles of Russia, whiche may bee about seuen hundred Englyshe myles. Then from Vologda ouerlande, to the citie of Yeraslaue, which lyeth on the ryuer Volga, a hundred and fourescore Rus myles. At this citie of Yeraslaue, the merchantes lande theyr goods for Persia, and buydded theyr shyppes there vppon the sayde ryuer, at a place named Vstwicki Zelesnoy, about a hundred myles from Yeraslaue. So traueplyng from thence downe the ryuer Volga, vntyll they come to Astracan, a forte of the Emperour of Mosconia, lying threescore myles from the Caspian sea. Vppon Volga lyeth a great towne of merchandies, named Costum, and beyonde that a strong Castell of brycke, named His Nouogorod, standyng vppon a hyl. And from thence, vppon an arme of the same ryuer, lyeth a great fortreffe named Cazan, which the Moscouite woon from the Tartars, Nogais being their chiefe and principall holde: and therewith conquered the whole countrey of Cazan, or the Tartars Cazanites, conteynyng two thousande myles. From Cazan vpon the sayde ryuer, the Moscouite hath in his subiection the one syde of the ryuer, and the Tartars, called Crimes, haue the other syde. But they dare not passe ouer the ryuer, by reason that the Moscouite keepeh many Garisons on the ryuer, and in certayne Mandes of the ryuer from place to place, as occasion serueth: So that the ryuer is kept quietly, notwithstanding the conflict that happened to Vaniaster outward, by reason of the Turkes souldiers that would haue spoyled his shyppes: which neuerthelesse defended them selues manfully, and slue two hundred of the Turkes. For the Turke sent thither an armie of xl. thousande Turkes and Tartars, to recouer Astracan from the Moscouite: but they were enforced to bryake vp theyr Campe for lacke of victualles and other necessities, especially bycause the wynter dyne neare, and the Moscouite prepared a great army against them.

From

A werst is theyr  
myle, and is  
three quarters  
of an Englyshe  
myle.

From *Astracan*, downe the sayde ryuer, to the *Caspian* sea, is the distance of thre score myles . From the entrance into the *Caspian* sea, in two or thre dayes saylyng with a good wynde, crosse ouer that sea from the North to the South, they come to the realme of *Media*, arryuing at a porte named *Bilbil*, enterpyng into a small ryuer that falleth into the *Caspian* sea, and passing from thence by lande with Camels, in thre dayes iourney, they come to a citie of *Sharuan* or *Media*, named *Shamaki* . And from thence in .xliii. dayes iourney by Camelles, they come to the great and famous citie of *Tauris*, or *Teneris*, being the greatest citie of *Persia*, for trade of merchandies . This citie is esteemed almost twyse as byg as *London*, and for the most parte is buylded of rawe bricke, not burnt, but only dyled and hardened in the sunne: the doores of the houses be very lowe and litle. The *Sophie* in tyme paste remayned chiefly in this citie: But after that the region about this citie was inuaded by the *Turkes*, he went further into the countrey, and buylded a towne named *Casbia*, which before .xx. yeeres was but a village, where he now keepeth his courte, being .xlii. dayes iourney from *Shamaki*, by horse, and .xx. dayes by Camelles.

*Media* now  
called *Shars*  
*ian*.

Note, that neare vnto this syde of the *Caspian* sea, dwell the *Tartars* called *Nogais* and *Shalcauis*. Also certayne *Arabians*, and *Christians* named *Armenians* . The *Caspian* sea is otherwise called *Mare de Baccan*: and may seme so to be called, by reason of a towne by the sea syde, named *Bacco*.

*Armenians*,  
*Christians*.

# The vyage of the Moscouian merchantes

Certayne extractes of the voyage of maister Antony  
Ienkinson into Persia, in the  
yeere. 1561.



In the yeere. 1561. maister Antonie Ienkinson was sent as Ambassadour into Persia, with the Quenes maiesties letters, in the Latine, Italian, and Hebrue tongue, to the great Sophie or kyng of Persia, to entreate of commodities of merchaundies whiche myght bee betweene her maiesties merchantes and them, bypon certayne priuileges and free passage to bee graunted vnto her merchautes both by the Emperour of Moscouia and the Sophi of Persia, as hereafter shall appeare, where we will wyte of the sayde priuileges. Maister Ienkinson at his first comyng, founde some difficultie to obtayne the Emperours licence to goe into Persia: but at the length by friendshyp made, hee gaue him both licence to goe, and also gaue him letters commendatorie vnto the Sophie, and committed also to him certayne affayres of his to doe there. And after certayne banquettes, and honourable enterteynement, accompanied him with an Ambassadour of Persia, who had been long in his Courte. Therefore saylyng ouer the Caspian sea, they arriued on the West syde thereof. Not farre from thence is a towne named Darbent, where is a very strong Castell of stone made by Alexander Magnus, and a wall of the length of thirtiene dayes iourney, whiche he made when he keppe warres agaynst the Persians and Medians, that the inhabitantes of that countrey then newly conquered, shoulde neyther lpghtly flee, nor his enemyes inuade them. This Darbent, is now vnder the dominion of the Sophie, and in the latitude of .41. degrees. From Darbent to Bilbec, or Bilbil, the voyte and harborowe where they discharge theyr goods, is halfe a dayes saylyng.

And

20 maruepious  
long wall built  
ded by great  
Alexander.

And from thence to *Sharuan* is ten dayes iourney : This towne standeth in a valley, & is in the countrey of *Media* : in the whiche towne also, remaineth the *Soltan* or gouernour of *Media*, vnder the *Sophie*.

In the meane tyme, the *Kyng* of *Media*, named *Abdalica*, The magnificence of Abdalica king of Media. cosen vnto the *Sophie*, came thither, and honourably entertained maister *Jenkinson* and the Englyshe merchauntes which

were with him, and made them a great banquet, causyng maister *Jenkinson* (who was then richely apparellen in silke, veluet, and scarlet, as became an Ambassadour for the Queenes maiestie) to sit downe somewhat farre from him.

The *Kyng* him selfe dyd sitte in a very ryche *Paullion* wrought with silke and golde, of the length of sixtene satham, or thereabout, placed on a hylls syde, hauyng before him a goodly fountayne of fayre running water, wherof he and his nobilitie dronke. He was richly apparelled with long garments of silke, and cloth of golde, brodered with pearle and pretious stones. Vpon his head, he had a Cappe with a sharpe ende of halfe a yerde long, standyng vpryght, of ryche cloth of golde, wrapped about with a piece of Indian silke of twentie yardes long, wrought with golde. On the lefte syde of his *Tollepan* (so is the cappe called) was a plume of feathers set in a troonke of golde, richly inameled and set with precious stones. At his eares, he wore earerynge, with pendants of golde and stones a handfull long, with two great Rubies of great value in the endes therof. All the ground within his *Paullion*, was couered with Carpettes, and vnder him selfe was spred a square Carpet wrought with siluer and golde, and therevpon were layde two sutable Cushions. Thus the kyng and his noble men satte in his *Paullion* with theyr legges acrosse, as doe Taylers : Yet commaunded stooles to be gyuen to our men, bycause they coulde not sitte so: then caused meate to be sette before them, and made them a banquet of a hundred dyshe of meate, and as many of frutes and conserues. After the banquet, he caused them to goe with him a huntynge and hauking, in the which they killed certayne beastes and Cranes. Maister *Jenkinson* founde so much fauour with this kyng, that at his departyng, he commended him to the *Sophie* with his letters, and also wrote in his fauour to his sonne,

Haukyng and  
huntynge.



## The vyage of the Moscouian merchants

being then in the *Sophie* court. So that after his commynge thither, by his meanes, he came at the length to the presence and speache of the *Sophie*: whiche otherwyle he should haue done very hardly, by reason of the *Turkes* Ambassadors which then were there, and resisted his assayes, with many persuations to the *Sophie*, and other of his nobilitie, agaynst the Christians, as mortall enemies both to the *Turkes* and *Persians*, and theyr religion. And whereas a while before, a perpetuall peace and amitie was concluded betwene the *Turke* and the *Sophie*, the Ambassadors would persuade him that his friendship with the Christians, or contracte with them touchyng any affaires, and especially suche as myght be preiudiciall to the *Turke*, or any of his subiectes, myght engender newe suspicions and occasions of breach of the late concluded peace, with many suche other furnished accusations. Wherevpon the *Sophie* stayde, and proloaged the tyme, before he would admit maister *Jenkinson* to his speache. At the length when by the friendship and fauour of King *Abdalaca* and his sonne, with other friends made in the court, the tyme was appoynted that maister *Jenkinson* should be heard, there was one that came to him without the court gate, before he lyght from his horse on the ground, and gaue him a payre of shoes sent from the *Sophie*, suche as he him selfe was wonte to weare in the nyght when he ryseth to pray, wyllyng him to put them on his feete, for that it was not otherwyle lawfull for him beyng a *Gawar* or *Caffer* (that is a myf belceuer) to treade vpon that holy ground. When hee came to his presence, he demaunded of him of what countrey of *Frankes* he was, meanyng by *Frankes* Christians: For they call all Christians *Frankes* (that is *French* men) as we commonly call all *Pahumetans*, *Turkes*, although there bee many *Pahumetans* of other nations besyde *Turkes*. He answered, that he was a Christian of the best *Frankes* of the countrey of *Englande*: declaryng further vnto him, the cause of his commynge thither, to be for the great commoditie of him and his subiectes by the way of merchandies, as myght further appeare by the letters directed vnto his maiestie from the *Queene* of *Englande* his Prince, and the Emperour of *Moscovia*. Muche more talke had he with maister *Jenkinson*, not here

The Turkish  
Court  
of the  
Sophie.

Great holiness  
in shoes.

Christians call  
ed Frankes.

here to be written : but by reason of the Turkes Ambassa-  
dours, at this present, was no great thyng done heerein to the  
preferment of the merchantes affayres . Yet he commaunded  
that maister Jenkinson shoulde be honourably vsed, and sent  
him certayne ryche apparell . At this tyme was also in the  
Sophies courte the sonne of the Kyng of the Georgians, a Chri-  
stian Sissinatike as they are now called . The same tyme  
also, a sonne of the Turkes (who had before attempted some-  
what agaynst his father, and fledde to the Sophie) was  
by him at the Turkes request deteyned in prison:

The Turkes  
sonne behea-  
ded.

And vppon the late conclusion of peace, the  
Turke required the Sophie to send him  
his head : which hee graunted, and  
sent it him by the sayd Ambassa-  
dours. This boyage of mai-  
ster Jenkinson, was in  
the yeere,

1561.

## The vyage of the Moscouian merchants

Here foloweth such informations as was gyuen mee  
by maister Geferie Ducate, principall Agent of  
the merchantes, for the last voyage into *Persia*,  
in the yeere of our Lord 1568. beginning  
in the dominion of the Sophie, at the  
citie of *Shamaki* in *Media*, bycause  
the beginning of the voyage  
from *Moscouia* hytherto,  
is declared heere  
before.



*Hamaki* is the fayrest towne in all *Media*,  
and the chiefeft commoditie of that coun-  
trei is rawe silke, and the greatestt plentie  
thereof, is at a towne three dayes iourney  
from *Shamaki*, called *Arashe*: and within  
three dayes iourney of *Arashe*, is a countrey  
named *Groysme*, whose inhabitauntes are

Christians.  
Georgians.

Christians, & are thought to be they, which are otherwise called  
*Georgians*: there is also much silke to be solde. The chiefe towne  
of that countrey is called *Zeghawi*, from whence is carryed peere-  
ly into *Persia*, an incredible quantitie of hasell Nuttes, all of one  
softe and goodnesse, and as good and thyn shaled as are our *Spyl-*  
*berdes*. Of these are carped peerey the quantitie of 4000.  
Camelles laden.

Hasell Nuttes.

Of the name of the Sophie of *Persia*, and why he  
is called the *Sbaugh*, and of other  
customes.



The King of *Persia* (whom here we call the  
great *Sopbi*) is not there so called, but is cal-  
led the *Sbaugh*. It were there daunge-  
rous to call him by the name of *Sopbi*, by-  
cause that *Sopbi* in the *Persian* tongue, is a  
begger: and it were as much as to call him,  
the great begger.

He lyeth at a towne called *Casbin*, whiche is situat in a goodly *Casbin*, fertile valley, of thre or foure dayes iorney in length . The towne is but euill buyloed , and for the most part all of hycke, not hardened with fyre, but onely dyed at the Sunne, as is the most part of the buydyng of all *Persia* . The kyng hath not come out of the compasse of his owne house in .xxiii. or .xxiiii. yeeres, whereof the cause is not knowen , but as they saye, it is vppon a superstition of certayne prophesies, to whiche they are greatly addicted : he is nowe about fourescore yeeres of age, and very lustie . And to keepe hym the more lustye, he hath foure wyues alwayes, and about thre hundred concubynes . And once in the yeere, he hath all the fayre maydens and wyues, that may bee founde a great way about, brought vnto hym, whom he diligently peruseth, feelyng them in all partes , takyng suche as he lyketh, and puttyng away some of them which he hath kept before . And with them that he putteth away, he gratifieth some suche as hath doone hym the best seruice . And if he chaunce to take any mans wyfe, her husbände is very glad thereof, and in recompence of her, oftentimes he geueth the husbände one of his olde stoz, whom he thankfully receyueth . If any straunger, beyng a Christian, shall come before hym, he must put on a newe paype of ihowes made in that countrey , and from the place where he entereth, there is dygged as it were a causee all the way, vntyll he come to the place where he shall talke with the kyng , who standeth alwayes aboue in a gallerie when he talketh with any strangers : and when the stranger is departed, then is the causee cast downe, and the grounde made euen agayne.

The kynges  
Concubynes.

Holy straun-  
gers are used.

(.)

Of



# The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

## Of the religion of the Persians,



*Haly.*  
A goodly and  
well grounded  
religion.

They religion is all one with the  
Turkes, sayng that they dyffer  
who was the ryght successor of  
*Mahumet*. The Turkes saye  
that it was one *Homer* and his sonne  
*Vsman*. But the Persians saye, that  
it was one *Mortus Ali*, whiche they  
woulde proue in this maner. They  
say there was a counsayle called to  
decide the matter who shoulde be the successor: and after  
they had called bypon *Mahumet* to reuele vnto them his wyll  
and pleasure therein, there came among them a litle lizarde, who  
declared that it was *Mahumetes* pleasure that *Mortus Ali* shoulde  
be his successor. This *Martus Ali* was a valiant man, and  
slew *Homer* the Turkes prophet: He had a swoorde that he  
fought withall, with the whiche he conquered all his enemies,  
and kyled as many as he stroake. When *Mortus Ali* dyed,  
there came a holy prophet, who gaue them warnyng that shortly  
there woulde come a whyte Camell, bypon the which he char-  
ged them to lay the body and swoorde of *Mortus Ali*, and to  
suffer the Camell to carpe it whether he woulde. The whiche  
beyng perfourmed, the sayde whyte Camell carped the swoorde  
and body of *Mortus Ali* vnto the sea syde, and the Camell go-  
yng a good way into the sea, was with the swoorde and bodye  
of *Mortus Ali* taken vp into heauen, for whose retorne they haue  
long looked for in Persia. And for this cause, the kyng al-  
wayes keepeth a horse redye saddled for hym, and also of late  
kepte for hym one of his owne daughters to be his wyfe, but  
she dyed in the yere of our Lorde .1573. And saye further-  
more, that yf he come not shortly, they shalbe of our beleefe: much  
lyke the Jewes, lookyng for they Messias to come and reigne a-  
mong

mong them, lyke a worldly kyng for euer, and deliuer them from the captiuitie which they are nowe in among the Christians, Turkes, and Gentyles.

The *Saugh*, or Kyng of Persia, is nothyng in strength and power comparable vnto the Turke: for although he hath a great Dominion, yet is it nothyng to be compared with the Turkes: neyther hath he any great Ordinaunce of Gunnes, or Warkebuses. Notwithstanding, his eldest sonne *Ismael*, about twentie and fyue yeeres past, fought a great battayle with the Turke, and sleue of his armie about an hundred thousande men, who after his returne, was by his father cast into pryson, and there continueth vntyl this daye: for his father the *Sbaugh*, had hym in suspition that he would haue put hym downe, and haue taken the regiment vppon hym selfe.

Their opinion  
of Christ.

Their opinion of Christ, is that he was an holy man, and a great Prophet, but not lyke vnto Mahomet: saying that Mahomet was the last Prophet, by whom all thynges were finished, and was therefore the greatest. To proue that Christ was not Goddes sonne, they saye that God had neuer wyfe, and therefore coulde haue no sonne or chyldren. They goe on pylgrymage from the furthest part of Persia, vnto Mecha in Arabia, and by the way they visite also the sepulchre of Christ at Ierusalem, whiche they nowe call *Couche Kalye*.

The most part of Spices whiche cometh into Persia, is brought from the Island of Ormus, situate in the gulf of Persia, called *Sinus Persicus*, betweene the mayne lande of Persia and Arabia. &c. The Portugales touche at Ormus both in theyr voyage to East India, and homewarde agayne, and from thence bying all suche Spices as is occupied in Persia and the regions there about: for of Pepper they bying verie small quantitie, and that at a verie deare pryse. The Turkes oftentimes bying Pepper from Mecha in Arabia, whiche they sell as good cheape as that which is brought from Ormus. Sylkes are brought from noo place, but are wrought all in theyr owne countrey. Ormus, is within two myles of the mayne lande of Persia, and the Portugales fetch the fresh water there, for the whiche they paye tribute to the *Sbaugh* or kyng of Persia.

Within

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

**They money.**

Within *Persia*, they haue neyther golde nor syluer mynes, yet haue they coyned money, both of golde and syluer, and also other small moneys of Copper. There is brought into *Persia* an incredible summe of Duche Dolours, which for the most part is there employed in rawe sylke.

**They bookes and learnyng.**

They haue few bookes, and lesse learnyng, and are for the most part very brutyshe in all kynde of good sciences, sauing in some kynde of sylke workes, and in suche thynges as pertaine to the furniture of Houses, in the which they are passyng good.

**Such was the lawe of the Macedonians for Treason.**

They lawes are, as is they religion, wicked and detestable. And yf any man offend the Prince, he punisheth it extreamely, not only in the person that offendeth, but also in his chyldren, and in as many as are of his kynne. Theft and murder are often punished, yet none otherwyle then pleaseth hym that is ruler in the place where the offence is committed, and as the party offending is able to make frendes, or with money to redeeme his offence.

**Dissention for religion.**

There is often tymes great mutenye among the people in great townes, whiche of *Mortus Ali* sonnes was greatest: Insomuche that sometymes in the towne two or thre thousand people are togeather by the eares for the same, as I haue seene in the towne of *Shamaky* and *Ardaruill*, and also in the great citie of *Teueris*, where I haue seene a man conning from feightyng, in a bauerie byngyng in his hande foure or fyue mens heades, carrying them by the heare of the head: for although they haue they heades most commonly twyle a weeke, yet leaue they a tuft of heare vpon the crowne, about two foote long. I haue enquired why they leaue that tuft of heare vpon they heades. They answer, that thereby they may easlyer be carryed vp into heauen, when they are dead.

**Shauing.**

For they religion, they haue certayne priestes, who are apparelled lyke vnto other men. They vse euerye moornyng and afternoone, to go vp to the toppes of they churches, and tell there a great tale of *Hahumet* and *Mortus Ali*: and other preaching haue they none. Their Lent is after *Christmas*, not in abstinence from flesh only, but from al meates & drynkes, vntill the day be of the *Ascension*: but then they eate sometimes the whole night.

**They priestes, and preaching. Their Lent.**

And

And although it be against theyr religion to drynke wyne, yet at nyght they wyll take great exceſſe thereof, and bee dronken. Theyr lent begynneth at the newe Moone, and they do not enter into it vntyll they haue ſeene the ſame: Nether yet doth theyr lent ende, vntill they haue ſeene the next new Moone, although the ſame through cloſe weather ſhoulde not be ſeene in long tyme.

They haue among them certayne holy men, whom they call *Setes*, counted holy for that they or any of theyr auncestours haue been on pilgrimage at *Meccha* in *Arabia*, for whoſoeuer goeth thither on pilgrimage to viſite the ſepulchre of *Mahumet*, both he and all his poſteritie, are euer after called *Setes*, and counted for holy men, and haue no leſſe opinion of them ſelues. And if a man contrarie one of theſe, he wyll ſaye that he is a ſapnete, and therefore ought to be beloued: and that he can not lye, although he lye neuer ſo ſhamefully. Thus a man may be to holy, and no pryde is greater then ſpirituall pryde, of a mynde puffed vp with his owne opinion of holynelle. Theſe *Setes* do ble to ſhaue theyr headdes all ouer, ſaung on the ſpdes a litle aboute the temples, the whiche they leaue vnſhauen, and ble to brape the ſame as women do theyr heare, and weare it as long as it wyll growe.

Abſtinence fro  
wyne, but not  
from drunks  
kennes.

Theyr ſaintes  
and holy men.

Pilgrimage.

Theyr prayer  
and worſhipping  
of God and  
Mahumet,

Waſhing and  
outward clea  
leneſſe.

Euery moynyng they ble to worſhypppe God, *Mahumet*, and *Mortus Ali*, and in praying turne them ſelues towarde the South, becauſe *Meccha* lyeth that way from them. When they be in trauayle on the way, many of them wyll (as ſoone as the Sunne ryſeth) lyght from theyr horſes, turnyng themſelues to the South, and wyll laye theyr gownes before them, with theyr ſwoordes and beades, and ſo ſtandynge bypyght, worſhypp to the South: And many tymes in theyr prayers kneele downe and kyſſe theyr beades, or ſomewhat els that lyeth before them.

The men or womendo neuer go to make water, but they ble to take with them a pottle with a ſpout, and after they haue made water, they ſlaſhe ſome water vppon theyr pryue partes, and thus do the women aſwell as the men: and this is a matter of great religion among them, and in making of water, the men do coloze downe as well as the women.

When



## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

**Their swearing**

When they earnestly affirme a matter, they wyl sweare by God, *Mahumet*, or *Mortus Ali*, and sometymes by all at ones: as thus in theyr owne language, saying, *Olla Mahumet Ali*. But if he sweare by the *Shaughes* head, in saying *Shaugham basshe*, you may then beleue hym if you wyl.

**The kynges magnificence.**

The *Shaugh* keepeth a great magnificence in his courtes; and although sometymes in a moneth or syxe weekes, none of his nobilitie or counsaile can see hym, yet go they dayly to the courtes, and tary there a certayne tyme, vntyll they haue knowen his pleasure whether he wyl commaund them any thyng or not. He is watched euery nyght with a thousand of his men, whiche are called his *Turkes*, who are they that he vseth to sende into the countreys about his greatestt affayres. When he sendeth any of them (if it be to the greatestt of any of his nobilitie) he wyl obeye them, although the messenger shoulde beate any of them to death.

**Pursuantes.**

**The kynges companie with his wyues and concubines.**

The *Shaugh* occupieth hym selfe alwayes two dayes in the weeke in his Bathestone, and when he is disposed to go thither, he raketh with hym fyue or syxe of his concubines, more or lesse, and one day they consume in washyng, rubbyng, and bathyng hym, and the other day in paryng his nayles, and other matters. The greatestt part of his lyfe, he spendeth amongst his wyues and concubines. He hath nowe reigned about fyftie and foure yeeres, and is therefore counted a very holy man, as they euer esteeme theyr kynges, if they haue reigned fyftie yeeres or more: for they measure the fauoure of God by a mans prosperitie, or his displeasure by a mans misfortune or aduersitie. The great Turke hath this *Shaugh* in great reuerence, because he hath reigned kyng so long tyme.

**A herp Sar danapalus.**

**The succession of the kyngs dome.**

I haue sayde before that he hath foure wyues, and as many concubynes as hym lysteth: and if he chaunce to haue any chyldren by any of his concubines, and be mynded that any of those chyldren shall inherite after hym, then when one of his wyues dyeth, the concubine whom he so fauoureth, he maketh one of his wyues, and the chyldre whom he so loueth best, he ordayneth to be kyng after hym.

**Marriage.**

What I hearde of the maner of theyr marriages, for offending of

of honest consciences and chaste eares, I may not commit to wytyng: their fastyng I haue declared before: They vse Circumcision vnto chylde of seuen yeeres of age, as doo the Turkes.

Circumcision.

Their houses (as I haue sayde) are for the most part made of Wycke, not burned, but only dyed in the Sunne: In their houses they haue but little furniture of household stuffe, except it be their Carpets, and some Copper worke: for all their Kettles and Dyshes wherein they eate, are of Copper. They eate on the ground, sitting on Carpets crosse legged as do saylers. There is no man so symple but he lyteth on a Carpet better of wyse, and the whole house or roome wherein he lyteth, is wholly couered with Carpets. Their houses are all with flate roofes, couered with earth: and in the sommer tyme, they lye by on them all nyght.

Their houses &amp; manner of eating.

They haue many bonde seruantes both men and women. Bond men and bond women is one of the best kinde of merchandises that any man may byng. When they buye anye maydes or young women, they vse to feele them in all partes, as with vs men do horses: when one hath bought a young woman, if he lyke her, he wyl keepe her for his owne vse as long as hym lyfeth, and then selleth her to an other, who doth the like with her. So that one woman is sometymes solde in the space of foure or fyue yeeres, twelue, or twentie tymes. If a man keepe a bonde woman for his owne vse, and if he fynde her to be false to hym, and geue her body to any other, he may kyll her if he wyl.

Bond men &amp; bond women.

Women bought &amp; solde, and let to hire.

When a merchant or traualer cometh to any towne where he intendeth to tarry any tyme, he buyeth a woman, or sometymes two or thre during his abode there. And when he cometh to an other towne, he doth the lyke in the same aspe: for there they vse to put out their women to hire, as wee do here hackneye Horses.

There is a very great river, whiche runneth through the playne of Iauat, whiche falleth into the Caspian sea, by a towne called Backo, neare vnto whiche towne is a strange thyng to be holde. For there issueth out of the grounde a marueilous quantitie of Dyle, which Dyle they fetch from the uttermost boundes of al Persia: it serueth all the countrey to burne in their houses.

Abundance of Dyle issuing out of the ground.

This

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

**This** Dyle is blacke, and is called *Neste*: they vse to cary it throughtout all the countrey vpon Kyne and Asses, of which you shal oftentymes meete, with foure or fyue hundred in a company. There is also by the sayde towne of *Backo*, an other kinde of Dyle whiche is whyte and very precious: and is supposed to be the same that here is called *Petroleum*. There is also not farre from *Sbamaky*, a thyng lyke vnto Tarre, and ishueth out of the grounde, whereof we haue made the prooffe, that in our Shypps it serueth well in the steade of Tarre.

*Oleum Petro-*  
*leum.*

*Two sortes of*  
*Apus.*

In *Persia* are Kyne of two sortes, the one lyke vnto ours in these partes, the other are marueylous euil fauoured, with great bones, and very leane, and but little beare vpon them: theyr milk is walowish sweete: they are like vnto them which are spoken of in the scripture, which in the dreame of *Pharao* signified the seuen deare yeres: for a leaner or more euill fauoured beast, can no man see.

*Foxes in great*  
*plentie.*

In the countrey of *Sheruan* (sometyme called *Media*) if you chaunce to lye in the fieldes neare vnto any village, as sone as the twylyght begynneth, you shall haue about you two or thre hundred *foxes*, whiche make a marueylous wawelyng or howlyng: and yf you looke not well to your victuals, it shall scape them hardly but they wyl haue part with you.

The *Caspian* sea, doth neyther ebbe nor flowe, except sometymes by rage of wynde it swelleth vnder hygh: the water is very salt. Howbeit, the quantitie of water that falleth out of the great ryuer of *Volga*, maketh the water freshe at the least twentie leagues into the sea. The *Caspian* sea is marueylous full of fysh, but no kynde of monstrous fysh, as farre as I coulde vnderstande, yet hath it sundry sortes of fyshes whiche are not in these patties of the worlde.

The *Button* there is good, and the *Sheepe* great, hauyng verie great rumpes with much fat vpon them: *Ryse* and *Button*, is the cheefe victuale.

(.)

(.) (.)

(.)

Of the Empire of the Persians, and of  
theyr originall.



The kyngdome or Empire of the Persians, *Abraham*  
as it was in auncient tyme most famous, *Ortelius*.  
euen so is it at these dayes, mightie & glori-  
ous, comprehendynge many great & large  
regions. For all the tracte of Asia, which is  
betwene the riuer of *Tigris*, the gulfe of  
*Persia*, and the Indian sea (sometime called  
the sea *Indus*) and the ryuer *Iaxartes* (at this day called *Chefell*)  
euen vnto the *Caspian* sea, is at this day vnder the dominion of  
the *Sophies* of *Persia*.

Of the originall of the *Sophies*, thus writeth *Calius Curio* in  
his *Saracenicall* historie. In the yere of our Lord, 1369, was a  
certayne Prince among the *Persians*, who possessed the towne of  
*Ardenelim*, his name was *Sopki*: & glorified him selfe to discende  
of the rase and progenie of *Alis Muamedis*, by *Musan Cazin* his  
*Merie*. He, after the death of *Calyfa*, the *Soltan* of *Babylon*, and  
the contrary faction which the *Turkes* defended, suppressed also  
of the *Tartars*, began moze boldly and freely to professe his opi-  
nion and sentence of theyr religion. And bycause that *Ocemus* the  
sonne of *Alis*, (from whom he glorified him selfe to descend) had  
twelue childezen, willing to adde to them of his secte a certayne  
signe, whereby they myght be knowen from other, ordeyned that  
they that would embrace his secte and profession, should weare on  
their heads a high cappe of purple vnder a veile, wherewith all the  
*Turkes* inuolue theyr heades, and in theyr language call it *Tuli-*  
*bante*, hauing in the midst of it. xii. plumes or shappe toppes.  
After his death, succeeded his sonne *Guines*: who in all the East  
partes obtayned so great opinion of wisdom and holinesse, that  
most famous *Tamerlanes*, Emperour of the *Parthians* (who be-  
foze had taken *Bayazetes* kyng of the *Turkes*) made a iourney  
into *Persia*, to visit him as a most holy man, of whom *Guines* had  
so much fauour, that he obtayned of him the libertie of. xxx. thou-  
sande Captiues which he brought with him, whom also *Guines*  
addicted to his faction: and his sonne *Secaidar* vsed them in his  
warres.



## The vyage of the Moscotian merchantes

warres. For with these, after the death of *Guines*, he made warre to certayne people of *Scythia*, named *Georgians*, his borderers, beyng *Christians*, & afflicted them very greivously. Thus much of the originall of the *Sophie of Persia*: they keepe continually warres with the *Turkes* for the religion of *Mahomet*. For the *Sophians* or *Persians*, folowe one maner of interpretation of *Mahumettes* religion, and the *Turkes* an other: the which interpretations neuerthelesse are so differing one from the other, that the one of them esteemeth the other for heretikes. The *Persians* are of liberall nature, of much civilitie and curtesie, greatly esteeming artes and sciences: they acknowledge a certayne worthinesse or nobilitie among men, wherein they differ much from the *Turkes*, which make no difference betweene slaues and worthier men or Gentlemen.

*Georgians*  
*Christians*

Contention for  
religion be-  
twene *Turkes*  
and *Persians*.

*Persians*.

*Turkes*.

Of the Region of Persia, and the maners of the *Persians*: Marcus Paulus Venetus, writeth thus. Cap. xix. Lib. I.

Anno, 60. 1280.



**P**ersia is a great and large prouince, & was once noble and of great fame, but nowe debastate and ouerrun by the *Tartars*, it is of lesse dignitie, & the ancient renoume thereof greatly diminished, and the name deuised into the prouinces confine or adiacent vnto it. So that now the prouince of Persia (as it is diuided) conteyneth eight kingdomes: whereof the first is named *Chasum*, the seconde *Churdistan*, the third *Loc*, the fourth *Cielstan*, the fyft, *Instanich*, the sixte, *Zerazi*, the seuenth, *Socbam*, and the eight, *Timochaim*, in the confines of Persia. There are very fayre and goodly horses of great price, insomuch that sometymes one is solde for. 200. pounds of *Turon*. Merchants bring them to the cities of *Chisi* and *Curmosa*, situate on the sea side, and sell them into *India*. Also Asses be there very fayre and great, insomuch that sometymes one is solde for. xxx. pounde weight of siluer. The people is of euill disposition, quarellous, theues, and murderers: and robbe and kyll merchantes by the way, except they goe in great companyes. Yet in the cities, they are of bet-

ter

ter maners, and of more humanitie : also very excellent artificers in woorkes of gold, silke, Embroderie, needle woork, and suche lyke. They haue aboundance of bombasine, wheate, barlye, myll, wyne also, and fruites, but in religion, they are Mahumetans.

Of the kyngdome of the Persians, Haithon  
in his booke de Tartaris, Cap. vii.  
writeth as foloweth.



The kyngdome of the Persians, is diuided chiefly into two partes, whiche make one kyngdome, bicause they are both subiecte to the dominion of one kyng. The first parte of Persia, beginneth in the East, from the confines of the kingdome of Turquestan, and is extended toward the West, to the great ryuer of Phison, which is the chiefe among the foure floodes which run out of earthly Paradyse. Towarde the North, it is extended to the Caspian sea, and towarde the South, vnto the desertes of India. The region is in maner all playne : in the middelt whereof, are two very great and riche cities, the one is named Boctara, and the other Seonorgant. The Persians haue a language proper to them selues: they vse merchandies and tpyllage of the ground, and among them sekues lyue in peace : In tyme paste they were Idolatours, and honoured tpye chiefly for God. But after that the secte of the Mahumetans occupied the dominion of those landes, they became vniuersally Saracens, beleeuing the deuils doctrine of Mahumet. The other parte of Persia, beginneth from the riuer Phison, and is extended Westward vnto the confines of the kyngdomes of Media, and partely also of Armenia the greater. Toward the North, it is extended vnto the Caspian sea, on the South syde, it confineth with a certaine prouince of the kingdome of Media, and in this prouince are two great cities, one named Nesabor, and the other Sacben, whiche in secte and maners, are lyke vnto the other.

Phison is  
thought to be  
Ganges.

Saracens (that  
is) Mahumetans.

Of Persia, and of dyuers cities therof, & other notable thinges reade heereafter; the thirde booke of the voyage of *Lodowicus Vartomannus*: Also, the first booke of the same voyage. Cap. 12. of *Mahumet* and his fellowes: where you may see the difference in religion betweene the *Turkes* and *Persians*, beyng both *Mahumetans*.

The name of the *Sophie*, *Thomas Shaugh*, and why he is so called..



**T**he *Persians* doe not call theyr kyng by the name of *Sophie*, but this name *Sophie*, is giuen him by other nations: for of his owne people, he is called *Thomas Shaugh*, whiche is, *Thomas* the ruler, *Soltan*, or gouernour: for *Shaugh*, is not the name of a kyng, but of an office. For a kyng in theyr language, is called *Pachet*. but no Prince is called by this name, before hee haue reigned by seuen discentes: but he that nowe reygneeth, is but only of fyue discentes, and is therefore called only *Shaugh*, which is a name of office.

He hath foure wyues and .xii. sonnes, and hath kepte one of his somes in prison many yeeres, for a great ouerthrowe whiche he gaue the *Turke* in the warres, although he tooke the same for acceptall seruice, and a noble exployt. Yet forasmuch as by that facte, he obtayned great renoume of a valiant and warlyke man, he began him selfe to haue him in suspicion, least the glozie of that enterpryse myght encourage him to attempt somewhat agaynst his father, as oftentymes the *Turkes* sonnes haue rebelled agaynst theyr fathers yet liuyng, and displaced them of their dignitie.

Of the kyngdome of Ormus, confine to Persia, and  
of the trafique betweene them. Also of the  
citic and Ilande of Ormus or  
Armufium.



Ormus is a great kyngdome, and hath a pe- *Abraham*  
culiar Kyng, tributorie to the kyng of *Ortelius.*  
Portugale. This kyngdome conteyneth all the  
sea coastes of Arabia, in the gulf of Persia,  
from the mouth of the riuer of Euphrates, un-  
till the Cape of Razalguati, and also parte of  
the kingdome of Persia, whiche is adiacent

unto the streight of Bazora, called *Fretum Bazora*, and in maner  
all the Ilandes of the gulf of Persia, called *Sinus Persicus*. The  
*Metropolis* or chiefe citie of the kingdome of Ormus, is the citie of  
Ormus, situate in an Iland named *Geru*, being one of the famost  
martes of these partes of the world. The Iland is within the gulf  
of Persia, not far within the streight of Bazora. This streight of  
Bazora, other haue named the streight of Ormus, being betweene  
*Arabia Felix*, and the region of Persia. The region of Ormus is  
well peopled, & hath many goodly places & cities. The gulf is  
not euery where nauigable, by reason of many shelles and lowe  
places. Within foure dayes sayling of Ormus, are the Ilandes of  
*Baharen*, where are found the fayrest orientall pearls of the world.  
Ormus bseth trafique of merchandies with *Adem* & *Cambaia*, and  
with the kingdomes of *Decan* & *Goa*, & with the portes of *Narsin-*  
*ga* & *Malabar*. The chiefe merchandies brought from thence, are  
hoxles of Arabia & Persia, pearles, salt peter, brimstone, silke, *Tu-*  
*tia*, Alumne, also Alumne of *Alexandria* or *Bozace*, *Nitriol*, or *Cop-*  
*porose*, salt in great quantitie, silver, Huske, Ambar, wheate, ma-  
ny dyed frutes, Ryle, & many other prouisions of vittayles, and  
other thinges to be eaten. For these, they retorne pepper, cloues,  
Cinamon, Ginger, and diuers other sorts of spices and drugges,  
whiche are disperfed into sundry regions of Persia and Arabia, and  
also into *Aden* where there is great plentie. But if they be deare  
in Ormus, it is not possible that they should be carped to *Cair*, to  
come into *Italie*. They retorne, is with Ryle, as much as



## The vyage of the Moscouian merchants

they can haue, white cloth, & Iron. Theyr horses are of marueylous great price in the kyngdomes of Goa, Decan, and Narsinga, and therefore peerelely the merchantes of Ormus bying many thither, and yet sometyme one horse is there at the price of vii. hundred of those peeces of golde, which they call *Saiaffos*. The best are of *Arabia*, the seconde of *Persia*, and the woorst of *Cambaia*.

## Of the Sophie and kyngdome of Persia, after the later writers.



*Persia* is one of the greatest and most famous prouinces of the worlde. It toucheth not the sea, but at the gulf of *Ormus*. On the syde of *Cambaia*, it confineth with the people named *Motagues*, on the syde of *Arabia*, with the gulf of *Ormus*, on the syde of the firme lande, with the mountaynes of *Deli*, and

on the side of *Carmania*, and in maner by the confines of *Babylon*, it extendeth towarde *India*: it hath many kingdomes and cities subiecte vnto it. The people of *Persia*, are called *Azemini*. It containeth foure principall prouinces, which are these: *Coraconi*, *Ginali*, *Tauris*, *Xitarim*. In the which also are these foure most famous cities: That is *Tauris*, *Siras*, *Samarcante*, *Coraconi*: They are valiant and warlike men, & of great estimation. They of *Samarcante*, haue in auncient tyme been Christians. *Tauris* and *Siras*, are cities as famous among them, as is with vs *Paris* in France: they are men of great ciuilitie and curtesie. The women of *Siras*, are of commendable beautie and behauour, very neate and delicate, and thereof cometh a prouerbe among the *Bahumetans*, that *Bahumet* would neuer goe to *Siras*, least if he had tasted the pleasures of those women, he should neuer after his deatch haue gone to *Paradyse*. The kyng of *Persia* is called *Siech Ismael*, whom the Italians call *Gualizador*, or *Sophi*. His chiefe mansion place or court, is at *Tauris*, or *Teneris*, which is distant from *Ormus* fiftie dayes iourney with Camelles. He is called the great *Bahumetan* of the order of the red bonet (that is) of the secte of *Hali*, which our men that came late from *Persia*, call *Mortus Ali*, wherof we haue spoken moze before. The region of

*Babylon* of  
*Chaldea*, and  
not of *Egypt*.

*Tauris* or  
*Teneris*.

*Ismael*, they  
pronounce  
*Ismael*.

*Mortus Ali*.

*Persia*

*Persia*, hath all sortes of domesticall or tame beastes, such as are in our countreys. It hath furthermore, Lions, Onces, and Tigers, the people are muche giuen to pleasures and sportes, and are honourably apparelled, delighting greatly in perfumes and sweete sauiours: they haue many wyues, and commit the keeping or charge of them to enuches or gelded men: who for that seruice, are oftentimes preferred to great promotion, yet are they very ielous of theyr wyues. Notwithstanding, both the Persians, and also their neighbours of *Ormus*, are detestable Sodomites. In tyme past many great and valiant personages, as *Cyrus*, *Darius*, *Assuerus*, and great *Alexander*, haue inuaded *Persia*. It is not barren as some haue written, but hath aboundance of all sortes of victualles, and pleasures, and thinges necessarie for the lyfe of man.

Enukes or gelded men.

The trafique of Persia, with  
other countreys.



In the region of *Persia*, are many sortes of merchandies, wherewith they vse great trafique in the countreys of *Armenia*, *Turchia*, and in the citie of *Cair* or *Alcayr*. From the lande of *Siras*, is brought great aboundance of silke, whereof is made an infinite quantitie of all sortes of liken cloathes, and fine chamolettes of diuers colours: also great aboundance of roche Alume, Vitrioll, *Alcoffare*. Likewise many hoxes, victualles, Turques stones, wax, hony, butter, &c. Also great peeces of tapestry of diuers sortes & workes, clothes of sundry colours, beluets both high and lowe after theyr maner: Likewyse cloth of goide of sundry sortes: Hauillions, and great aboundance of armure. From the other syde of the mountaynes by the way of *Siam*, are brought Gulke, Aloes, Reubarbe, *Lignum aloes*, *Campbora*, &c. All these thinges, and many other, are carryed to *Ormus*: for the which, the retorne is, great quantitie of Pepper, and other spices and drugges: for the Persians vse much spices with their meats, and especially Pepper.

# The vyage of the Moscouian merchants

## Of the Gulfe of Persia, or Sinus Persicus.



The region and lande of *Persia*, is situate be-  
tweene two ryuers, whiche fall not into the  
Ocean sea, but into the gulfe of *Persia* : the  
which gulfe hath on euery syde many good-  
ly countreys well inhabited. The gulfe con-  
teyneth in largenesse, lx. myles, and is nauig-  
able with great Barkes, and is sometimes  
troubled with great tempestes. There is taken great abundance  
of fishe, which being salted or dyed, is carryed into all partes of  
*Persia*. The gulfe is also very long, and conteyneth from *Ormus*  
to the ende, lx. dayes iourney with Camelles.

1 Articles of the Priuileges whiche the Sophie of *Per-  
sia* graunted to the Englyshe merchantes.

These articles were sent vnto the company of merchants  
from *Mosko*, by maister Ienkinson, graunted in the  
names of these persons. Syr VVilliam Garret, Syr  
VVilliam Chester, gouernours. Syr Thomas Lodge,  
Maister Antonie Ienkinson, Maister Thomas Nicolls,  
and Arthur Edwardes, merchantes of London : as also  
in the names of the whole companie.

2 Fyrst, it is graunted that you shall paye no maner of cu-  
stomes or toiles any kynd of wayes, now nor in time com-  
myng vnto his heires after him. And that all Englyshe mer-  
chantes now present, or hereafter, may passe and repasse into all  
places of his dominions, and other countreys adioynning to him,  
in the trade of merchaundies, to buye and sell all maner of com-  
modities, with all maner of persons.

3 Item that in all places, where any of our merchantes shalbe  
chiefe gouernours, rulers, and Iustices, to take heede vnto the  
Englyshe merchantes, and be their ayde, and punish them  
that shall doe them any wrong or hurte.

4 Item that suche debtes as shalbe owyng by any maner of  
person, iustice to be done on the partie, and to see all Englyshe  
merchantes payde at the day.

5 Item

- 5 Item that no maner of person of what estate or degree they be of, so hardie to take any kynde of wares, or any gyftes, without the Englyshe merchantes good willes.
- 6 Item if by chaunce medley, any of the merchauntes or seruantes (as God forbyd) shoulde kyll any of his subiectes, no partes of theyr goods to be touched or medled withal, neither no person but the offender, and being any of the merchaunts, not to suffer without the princes knowledg & advice.
- 7 Item that all such debtes as shalbe oweyng, to be payde to any of the merchauntes in the absence of the other, be the partie dead or alyue.
- 8 Item that no person returne any kynde of wares backe agayne, beyng once bought or solde.
- 9 Item that when God shall sende the merchauntes goods to shope, presently his people to helpe them alande with them.

The prosperous vyage of Arthur Edwardes into Persia, and of the fauoure that he found with the Sophy, and also what conference he had with that prynce.



When he came fyrst to the *Sophies* presence, brynging his interpretour with hym, and standyng farre of, the *Sophie* (syttyng in a seate royall with a great number of his noble men about hym) badde him come neere, and that thise, vntyl he came so neere him that he myght haue touched hym with his hand. Then the fyrst deimaund that he asked hym, was from what countrey he came: he answered, that he came from Englande. Then asked he of his noble men, who knew any such countrey. But when Edwards sawe that none of them had any intelligence of that name, he named it *Ingbiltterra*, as the Italians call England. Then one of the noble men sayde *Londro*, meanyng therby London, which name is better knowen in far countreys out of Christendome, then is the name of Englande. When Edwards harde hym name *Londro*, he sayd that that was the name of the chiefe citie of Englande, as was *Teneris*, of the chiefe citie of Persia. He asked hym many thynges more, as of the

*Londro.*  
*London.*

realme



## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

realme of Englande, marueplyng that it shoulde be an I-  
land, of so great rycheesse and power, as Edwardes declared vnto  
hym, of the ryches and abundaunce of our merchaundies, as he  
further vnderstode by our trafique in *Moscouia* and other coun-  
treys. He demaunded also many thynges of the Queenes  
maiestie, and of the customes and lawes of the realme: sayng  
oftentymes in his owne language, *Baya colla* (that is to saye)  
wel said. He asked also many thinges of kynge Philip, and of his  
warres agaynst the Turke at *Malta*. Then demaunded of  
hym what was the chiefe cause of his resorte into his realme.  
And beyng certified that it was for the trade of merchaundies,  
he asked what kynde of merchaundies he coulde byng thither.  
Such (sayde he) as the *Venetian* merchautes, which dwellyng  
in our countrey in the citie of *Londro*, sende to *Venes*, and from  
thence into *Turkie* by *Halepo* and *Tripoli* in *Sorya*, from whence,  
as by the seconde and thyrde handes, with great charges of many  
customes and other thynges thereunto parteyning, they are at  
the length brought into your countrey and cities of *Persia*. What  
merchaundies are those, sayd the *Sophie*: Edwardes answered,  
that they were great abundaunce of fine carleis, of bryde clothes,  
of all sortes and coloures, as scarletttes, violetttes, and other of  
the fynest cloth of all the worlde. Also that the *Venetians* brought  
out of Englande, not onely such clothes redie made, but further-  
more great plentie of fyne wool to myngle with their wools, of  
the which they coulde not otherwise make fyne cloth: Affirming  
that there went out of Englande yecrely that wayes, aboue two  
hundred thousande carleis, and as manye bryde clothes, besyde  
fine wool and other merchaundies, besyde also the great abun-  
daunce of like clothes, y<sup>e</sup> which were caried into *Spaine*, *Barba-*  
*rie*, and diuers other countreys. The *Sophie* then asked hym by  
what meanes such merchaundies myght be brought into *Persia*.  
Ryght well Sir (sayde he) by the way of *Moscouia*, with more  
safetie and in much shorter tyme then the *Venetians* can byng  
them, fyrst from Englande to *Venes*, and from thence into  
*Persia*, by the way of *Turkye*. And therefore if it shall please  
your maiestie to graunt vs free passage into al your dominions,  
with such priuileges as may apperteyne to the safegard of our  
liues,

The Venetians  
trafique in  
England.

English cloths,  
sarkes & fyne  
wool.

lyues, goodes, and merchandies, we wyl furnyssh your countreys with al such merchandies, & other commodities, in shorter tyme, and better cheape then you may haue the same at the Turkes handes. This talke and muche more was between the *Sophie* and *Edwardes* for the space of two houres, all whiche thynges lyked hym so well, that shortly after he graunted to the sayde *Arthur Edwardes* two other priuileges, for the trade of merchandies into *Persia*, all wyrtten in Azure and golde letters, and deliuered vnto the lord keeper of the *Sophie* his great seale. The lord keeper was named *Cocbe Calfaye*, who sayde that when the *Schaughe* (that is the kyng or prince) dyd sytte to seale any letters, that priuilege shoulde be sealed and deliuered to *Laurence Chapman*. In this priuilege is one principal article for seruantes or merchantes: That yf the Agent do perceyue that vpon theyr naughtie doynges, they woulde become *Bufoz* men, that then the Agent wherfoeuer he shall fynde anye such seruant or seruantes, to take them, and put them in pryson: and no person to keepe them, or maynteyne them. This article was graunted in respect of a custome among the *Persians*, being *Mahumetanes*: whose maner is frendly to receyue and wel entertayne, both with giftes & lpyng, all suche Christians as forsakyng theyr religion, wyl become of the religion of the *Persians*. Insonmuch that before this priuilege was graunted, there was great occasion of naughtie seruantes to deceyue and robbe theyr masters: that vnder the coloure of professyng that religion, they might liue among them in such safetie, that you might haue no law agaynst them, eyther to punyssh them, or to recouer your goodes at theyr handes, or els where. For before the *Sophie* (whom they say to be a marueplous wyse and gracious prince) seemed to fauour our nation, and to graunt them such priuileges, the people abused them very much, and so hated them that they would not touche them, but reulder them, calling them *Casars* & *Gawars*, which is, infydels, or misbeleeuers. But after they saw how greatly the prince fauoured them, they had them afterward in great reuerence, and would kysse theyr handes, and vse them very frendly. For before, they tooke it for no wrong to rob them, defraud them, beare false witnesse agaynst them, & such merchandies as they had bought or sold, make them take it againe, and

*Bufoz* men, be they that forsake theyr faith, and receyue the religion of *Mahumet*.

chaunge

## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

chaunge it as often as them listeth . And yf any straunger by chaunce had kyled one of them, they woulde haue the lyfe of two for one slayne, and for the debtes of any straunger, woulde take the goodes of any other of the same nation, with many other such lyke abuses, in maner vnknownen to the Prince, before the complayntes of our men made vnto hym for reformation of such abuses: which were the cause that no merchant strangers of contrary religion, durst come into his dominions with theyr commodities: which myght be greatly to the profite of hym and his subiectes.

### The Articles.

- I 0 Item that the merchantes haue free lybertye, as in theyr fyrst priuilege, to go vnto *Cylian*, and all other places of his dominions, now or hereafter when occasion shalbe geuen.
- I 1 Item yf by misfortune any of theyr ships should breake, or fal vpon any part of his dominions on the sea coast, his subiectes to help with al speede to saue the goodes, & to be deliuered to any of the sayd merchants that liueth: or otherwyle to be kept in safetie vntyl any of them come to demanda them.
- I 2 Item yf any of the sayd merchants depart this lyfe in any citie or towne, or on the hygh way, his gouernours there to see theyr goodes safely kept, and to be deliuered to any other of them that shal demanda them.
- I 3 Item the sayde merchants to take such camell men as they them selues wyl, beyng countrey people: and that no *Kysell Baythe* do let or hynder them. And the sayde owners of the camels, to be bounde to answer them such goodes as they shall receyue at theyr handes: and the camell men to stande to the losses of theyr camels or hoxses.
- I 4 Item more, that the sayde carryars do demande no more of them, then theyr agreement was to pay them.

*Kysell Baythe*  
are the gentles  
men that weare  
red cappes.

15 Item more, if they be at a ppyce with any carryours, and geuen earnest, the Camell men to see they keepe theyr promesse.

16 Item if any of the sayd merchauntes be in feare to trauaile, to geue them one or more to go with them, and see them in fastie with theyr goods to the place they wyl go vnto.

17 Item in all places, to say, in all cities, townes, or villages on the hygh way, his subiectes to geue them honest rooume, and vittayles for theyr mony.

18 Item the sayde merchauntes may in any place where they shall thynke best, buyde or bye any house or houses to theyr owne vles: And no person to molest or trouble them, and to stande in any *Cavanam* where they wyl, or shal thinke good.

**T**he commodities whiche the merchauntes may haue by this trade into *Persia*, are thought to be great, and may in tyme perhappes be greater then the *Portugalles* trade into the East Indies, forasmuch as by the way of *Persia* into Englande, the retorne may be made euery yere once, whereas the *Portugalles* make the retorne from *Calecut* but once in two yeres, by a long and dangerous vyage all by sea: for whereas the citie and Islande of *Ormus*, lying in the goulfe of *Persia*, is the most famous marte towne of all East India, whither all the merchaundies of India are brought, the same may in shorter tyme, and more safely, be brought by land & ryuers throughe *Persia*, euen vnto the *Caspian* sea, and from thence by the countreys of *Russia* or *Moscouia* by ryuers, euen vnto the citie of *Teraslaue*, and from thence by lande a hundred and fourescore myles to *Vologda*: and from thence agayne al by water, euen vnto England.

The merchaundies whiche be had out of *Persia* for the retorne of wares, are sylke of all sortes and colours, both ratwe and wrought: Also all maner of spices and drugges, Pearles and pprecious stones: likewise carpettes of dyuers sortes, with diuers other ryche merchaundies, whereof you may reade more here before in the Chapter entituled, Of the trafique of *Persia* with other countreys. It was tolde me of them that came  
last

The commodities which English merchants may haue by the trade into Persia.



## The viage of the Moscouian merchantes

last from *Persia*, that there is moze sylke brought into some one citie of *Persia*, then is of cloth brought into the citie of London. Also that one village of *Armenia*, named *Gilgat*, doth carie peeres by spue hundred, and sometyme a thousande mules laden with sylke to *Halepo* in *Soria* of *Turkpe*, beyng foure dayes iorney of *Tripoli*, where the *Venetians* haue their continuall abidyng, and send from thence sylkes, which they retorne for English carles, and other clothes, into al partes of *Christendome*.

The maner howe the Christians become Busor men, and forsake their religion,



Haue noted here before, that if any Christian wyl become a Busor man, that is, one that hath forsaken his fapth, and be a *Mahumetan* of their religion, they geue him many giftes, and iointyme also a liuyng. The maner is, that when the deuill is entred into his hart to forsake his fapth, he resorteth to the *Soltan* or gouernoure of the towne, to whom he maketh protestation of his diuylshe purpose. The gouernoure appoynteth hym a horse, and one to ryde before hym on an other horse, bearyng a swoorde in his hande, and the Busor man bearyng an arowe in his hand, and rydeth in the citie, cursyng his father and mother: and if euer after he retorne to his owne religion, he is giltye of death, as is signified by the swoorde bozne before hym. A young man, a seruauit of one of our merchauntes, because he woulde not abyde the correccion of his maister for his faulces, was mynded to forsake his fapth. But (as God woulde) he fell sodapnely sicke and dyed, before he gaue hym selfe to the deuill. If he had become a Busor man, he had greatly troubled the merchauntes, for if he woulde then haue sayd that halfe their goods had ben his, they woulde haue geuen credite vnto hym. For the auoydyng, of whiche inconuenience, it was graunted in the priuileges that no Busor man. &c. as there appeareth.

Open and kyne  
beare burdens.

In *Persia* in diuers places, open and kyne beare the tentes and household stuffe of the poore men of the countrey, which haue neither Camelles nor horses.

OF

Of the tree whiche beareth Bombasine  
cotton .or Gossampine

**I**n Persia is great abundance of Bombasine cotton, and very fyne, this groweth on a certayne litle tree or byer, not past the height of a mans waste, or litle more: the tree hath a slender stalk, like vnto a byer, or to a carnation gyleflour, with very many bzaunches, bearyng on euery bzaunch a fruite, or rather a codde, growyng in round fourme, conteynyng in it the cotton: and when this budde or codde commeth to the bygnesse of a wallnut, it openeth and sheweth forth the cotton, which groweth styll in bygnesse vntyll it be lyke a fleece of wooll as byg as a mans syst, and beginneth to be loose: and then they geather it as it were the ripe fruite. The seedes of these trees, are as byg as peason, and are blacke, and somewhat flatte, and not rounde: they sowe them in plowed ground, where they growe in the fieldes in great abundance in many countreys in Persia, and diuers other regions.

The writing of the Persians.

**A** Richur Edwardes shewed me a letter of the Sophie, writen in theyr letters backward, subsigned with the handes both of the Sophie & his secretarpe. The Sophies subscription, was only one word (his name I suppose of *Shangh*) wyrtten in golden letters vpon red paper. The whole letter was also wyrtten on the same peece of red paper, beyng long and narrowe, about the length of a foote, and not past three inches brode. The priuate signet of the Sophie, was a rounde pynted marke, about the bygnesse of a Rpall, only pynted vpon the same paper, without any waie or other seale: the letters seeme so myshapen and disordered, that a man woulde thynke it were somewhat scribled in maner at aduentures. Yet they say that almost euery letter with his prycke or circumfere, signifieth a whole worde. Insomuch that in a peece of paper as bygge as a mans hand, theyr wyrtting doth conceyne as much as doth ours, almost in a sheete of paper.

The

**T**he two viages made out of Englande into *Guinea* in *Affricke*, at the charges of certayne merchantes aduenturers of the citie of London, in the yeere of our Lord  
1553.

**B**eing desired by certayne of my freendes, to make some mention of these viages, that some memoiry thereof myght remaine to our posteritie, yf eyther inquisitie of tyme, consuming all thynges, or ignoranuce creeping in by barbarousnesse and contempt of knowledge, shoulde hereafter bury in obliuion so worthy attempts, so much the greater to be esteemed, as before neuer enterprysed by Englyshe men, or at the least so frequented, as at this present they are, and may be, to the great commoditie of our merchantes, yf the same be not hyndred by the ambition of such, as for the conquesting of fourtie or fiftie myles here & there, and erectyng of certayne fortresses, or rather blockehouses among naked people, thynke them selues worthy to be lordes of halfe the world, enuyng that other shoulde enioy the commodities, which they them selues can not wholly possesse. And although suche as haue been at charges in the discoveryng and conquestyng of suche landes, ought by good reason to haue certayne priuileges, preheminences, and tributes for the same, yet (to speake vnder correction) it may seeme somewhat rigorous, and agaynst good reason and conscience, or rather agaynst the charitie that ought to be among Christian men, that such as violently inuade the dominions of other, shoulde not permit or ther friendly to vse the trade of merchandies, in places neerer, or seldome frequented of them, whereby theyr trade is not hyndred in such places, where they them selues haue at theyr owne election appointed the martes of theyr trafficke. But forasmuch as at this present, it is not my entent to accuse or defend, approue or improue, I wil cease to speake any further hereof, & proccade to the discription of the first viage, as bycesely and faithfully as I was aduertised of the same, by the information of such credible persons, as made diligent inquisition to know the trueth hereof, as much as shalbe requisite, omittyng to speake of many particular

Ambition.

ficuler thinges, not greatly necessarie to bee knowen: whiche neuerthelesse, with also the exacte course of the nauigation, shall be more fully declared in the seconde vyage. And if herein fauour or friendship shall perhappes cause some to thynke that some haue been sharply touched, let them laye a parte fauour and friendship, and gyue place to tructh, that honest men may receyue payple for well doyng, and leude persons reproche, as the iust stipende of theyr euill desartes, whereby other may bee deterred to doe the lyke, and vertuous men encouraged to proceede in honest attemptes.

But that these vyages may be more playnely vnderstoode of all men, I haue thought good for this purpose, before I intreate hereof, to make a bryefe description of Affrike, beynge that great parte of the worlde, on whose Weste syde begynneth the coaste of Guinea at *Cabo Verde*, about the twelue degrees in latitude, on this syde the Equinoctiall line, and two degrees in longitude from the measurynge lyne, so runnyng from the North to the South, and by East in some places within .v.iii. and .iii. degrees and a halfe within the Equinoctiall, and so forth in maner directy East and by North, for the space of xxxvi. degrees, or there about, in longitude from the West to the East, as shall more playnely appeare in the description of the seconde vyage.

Africa.

The coast of  
Guinea.

### A bryefe description of Affrike.



In Affrica the lesse are these kyngdomes: the kingdome of *Tunes* & *Constantina*, which *Tunes*. is at this day vnder *Tunes*, and also the region of *Bugia*, *Tripoli*, and *Ezzab*. This part *Bugia*. of Affrike is very baren by reason of the great *Tripoli*. desartes, as the desartes of *Numidia* & *Barcha*. *Numidia*. The principall portes of the kingdome of *Tunes* are these: *Goletta*, *Bizerta*, *Potosarnia*, *Boua*, and *Stora*. The chiefe cities of *Tunes*, are *Constantina*, and *Boua*, with diuers other. Under this kyngdome are many Islands, as *Zerbi*, *Lampadola*, *Pantalarea*, *Linoso*, *Beit*, *Gamelaro*, and *Malta*, where at this present is the great maister of the Rhodes. Under the South of this kyngdome, are the great desartes of *Libia*. All the nations

Islandes of  
Tunes.  
Malta.The desartes  
of Libia.



## The first vyage to Guineæ.

in this *Africa* the lesse, are of the secte of *Dahumet*, & a rusticali people, lpyng scattered in billages. The best of this parte of *Afrike* is *Barbaria*, lpyng on the coast of the sea *Mediterraneum*.

**Barbarie.**

**Mauritania.**

*Mauritania* (now called *Barbaria*) is diuided into two partes, as *Mauritania Tingitania*, and *Cesariensis*. *Mauritania Tingitania*, is now called the kyngdome of *Fes*, and the kyngdome of *Marrocko*. The principall citie of *Fes*, is called *Fessa*: and the chiefe citie of *Marrocko*, is named *Marrocko*.

The kyngdoms  
of *Fes* and  
*marrocko*.

**Tremisen.**

*Mauritania Cesariensis*, is at this daye called the kyngdome of *Tremisen*, with also the citie called *Tremisen* or *Telensin*. This region is full of desartes, and reacheth to the sea *Mediterraneum*, to the citie of *Oran*, with the porte of *Passaquiber*. The kyngdome of *Fes* reacheth vnto the Ocean sea, from the West to the citie of *Argilla*: and the porte of the sayde kyngdome is called *Salla*.

**Oran.**

**Passaquiber.**

**Salla.**

**Azamoi.**

The kyngdome of *Marrocko* is also extended aboute the Ocean sea, vnto the citie of *Azamoi* and *Azafi*, which are aboute the Ocean sea towarde the West of the sayde kyngdome. In *Mauritania Tingitania* (that is to say, in the two kyngdomes of *Fes* and *Marrocko*) are, in the sea, the Ilandes of *Canarie*, called in olde tyme the fortunat Ilandes. Towarde the South of this region, is the kyngdome of *Guinea*, with *Senega*, *Iaioso*, *Gambra*, and many other regions of the blacke *Poores*, called *Ethiojians* or *Negros*, all whiche are watered with the ryuer *Negro*, called in olde tyme *Niger*. In the sayde regions are no cities, but only certayne lowe cotages made of boughes of trees, plastered with chaunke, and couered with strawe: In these regions are also very great desartes.

The Ilandes  
of *Canarie*.

**Guinea.**

**Ethiopiens.**

**Marrocko.**

**Fes.**

**Tremisen.**

**Guinea.**

The kyngdome of *Marrocko* hath vnder it these seuen kyngdoms: *Hea*, *Sus*, *Guzula*, the territory of *Marrocko*, *Duchala*, *Hazchora*, and *Telde*. The kyngdome of *Fes* hath as many: as *Fes*, *Temesne*, *Azgar*, *Elabath*, *Errifi*, *Garet*, and *Elcauz*. The kyngdome of *Tremisen* hath these regions: *Tremisen*, *Tenez*, and *Elgazet*, all which are *Machometistes*. But all the regions of *Guinea* are pure Gentyles and Idolatours, without profession of any religion, or other knowledge of God, then by the lawe of nature.

**Africa the  
great.**

*Africa* the great, is one of the three partes of the worlde,  
known

knownen in olde tyme, and seuered from *Asia*, on the East by the ryuer *Nilus*, on the West, from Europe by the pillars of *Hercules*. The hygher parte is now called *Barbarie*, and the people *Boozes*. The inner parte is called *Libia* and *Ethiopia*. *Afrike* the lesse, is in this wyse bounded: On the West it hath *Numidia*: On the East *Cyrenaica*: On the North, the sea called *Mediterraneum*. In this countrey was the noble citie of *Carthage*.

*Affricke the lesse.*

*Carthage.*

In the East side of *Afrike*, beneath the redde sea, dwelleth the great and myghtie Emperour and Chyistian kyng *Prestor Iohn*, well knownen to the *Portugales* in theyr vyages to *Calicut*. His dominions reache very farre on euery syde: and hath vnder hym many other kynges both Chyistian and heathen that pay hym tribute. This myghtie prince is called *Dauid Thempereur* of *Ethiopia*. Some wyte, that the kyng of *Portugale* sendeth hym yerelely .viii. shippes laden with marchaundies. His kingdome confineth with the redde sea, and reacheth farre into *Afrike* toward *Egypte* and *Barbarie*. Southwarde it confineth with the sea toward the *cape de Buona Speranza*: and on the other syde with the sea of sande, called *Mare de Sabione*, a very dangerous sea, lying betweene the great citie of *Alcayer*, or *Cairo* in *Egypt*, and the countrey of *Ethiopia*: In the whiche way are many inhabitable desarts, cōtinuing for the space of fife dayes iorney. And they affirme, that if the sayd Chyistian Emperour were not hyndered by those desartes (in the whiche is great lacke of victualles, and especially of water) he woulde or nowe haue inuaded the kingdome of *Egypt*, and the citie of *Alcayer*. The cheefe citie of *Ethiopia*, where this great Emperour is resident, is called *Amacaiz*, being a faire citie, whose inhabitantes are of the colour of an *Oryue*. There are also many other cities, as the citie of *Saua* vpon the ryuer of *Nilus*, where Thempereur is accustomed to remayne in the sommer season. There is lykewyse a great citie named *Barbaregaf*, and *Ascon*, from whence it is sayde that the Queene of *Saba* came to *Hierusalem* to heare the wysdome of *Salomon*. This citie is but litle, yet very sayre, and one of the chiefe cities in *Ethiope*. In the sayde kyngdome is a prouince called *Manicongni*, whose kyng is a *Booze*, and tributarie to Thempereur of *Ethiope*. In this prouince are manie exceedyng hygh mountaynes, vpon

*Prestor Iohn.*

*Cape de Buona Speranza.*  
The sea of sande.  
*Alcayr.*

From whence the queene of *Saba* came.

*Manicongni.*

Vpon

pon

## The first vyage to Guinea.

The earthly  
Paradise.  
The trees of  
the Sunne and  
Moone.

pon the which is sayde to be the earthly Paradyse: and some say that there are the trees of the Sunne and Moone, whereof the antiquitie maketh mention: yet that none can passe thither, by reason of great desartes of a hundred dayes iourney. Also beyond these mountaynes, is the cape of *Bona Speranza*. And to haue sayde thus much of *Afrike* it may suffice.

## The first vyage to Guiena.



The Primrose.  
The Lion.  
The Moone.

In the yeere of our Lord. 1553. the. xii. day of August, sayled from *Portsmouth* two goodly shippes, the *Primrose* and the *Lion*, with a pynnelle called the *Moone*, being all well furnished as wel with men of the lustiest sorte, to the number of seuen score, as also with ordinaunce and byttayles, requisite to such a voyage:

Pinteado.

hauyng also two Captaynes, the one a stranger, called *Antoniades Pinteado*, a *Portugale*, borne in a towne named the porte of *Portugale*, a wyse, discrete, and sober man, who for his cunningg in saylyng, beyng as well an experte pylot as politike Captayne, was sometyme in great fauour with the kyng of *Portugale*, and to whom the coastes of *Braile* and *Guinea*, were committed to be kepte from the Frenchmen, to whom he was a terror on the sea in those partes, and was furthermore a Gentleman of the kyng his maisters house. But as fortune in maner neuer fauoureth but flattereth, neuer promisetli but deceiueth, neuer rapseth but casteth downe agayne, and as great wealth and fauour hath alwayes companions emulation and enuie, he was after many aduersties and quarels made agaynst him, inforced to come into *Englande*: where in this golden vyage he was euil matched with an vnequal companion, and vnlke matche of most sundrie qualities and conditions, with vertues fewe or none adourned. Thus departed these noble shippes vnder sayle on their vyage. But first Captayne *Wyndam*, puttyng forth of his shipp at *Portsmouth*, a kynseman of one of the head merchants, and shewyng herein a muste of the tragicall partes he had conceyued in his brayne, and with suche small begynnynge nourished so monstrous a byrth, that more happie, yea and blessed was

Blasle.  
Samea.

The flatterynge  
of fortune.

The Ilandes  
of Madera.

was that young man being leste behynde, then if he had been taken with them, as some doe wishe he had done the lyke by theyrs. Thus sayled they on their vyage, vntyl they came to the Ilandes of Madera, where they tooke in certayne wyne for the stoe of their shippes, and payde for them as they agreed of the price. At these Ilandes they met with a great Galion of the kyng of Portugal, full of men and ordynance: yet such as could not haue persuaded if it had attempted to withstande or resist our shippes, for the which cause it was set forth, not only to let and interrupte these our shippes of their purposed viage, but all other that should attempte the lyke: yet chiefly to frustrate our vyage. For the Kyng of Portugal was sinisterly informed that our shippes were armed to his castell of Mina in these parties, whereas nothing lesse was ment.

A galeon of the  
kyng of Portugal.

The Castell of  
Mina.

After that our shippes departed from the Ilandes of Madera forwarde on theyr vyage, began this woorthie Captayne Pinteados sorowe, as a man tormented with the company of a terrible Hydra, who hitherto flattered with him, and made him a fayre countenance and shewe of loue. Then dyd he take vppon him to commaund all alone, setting nought both by Captayne Pinteado, with the reste of the merchaunte factours: sometymes with opprobrious wordes, and sometymes with threateninges, most shamefully abusing them, taking from Pinteado the seruice of the boyes & certayne mariners that were assigned him by the order and direction of the woorthiefull merchauntes, and leauyng him as a common mariner, whiche is the greatest despite and greefe that can be to a Portugal or Spanyarde, to be diminisht the honour, which they esteeme aboue all riches. Thus saylpyng forwarde on theyr vyage, they came to the Ilands of Canarie, continuing theyr course from thence vntill they arrived at the Ilande of Sainte Nicolas, where they byttayled them selues with freshe meate, of the fleshe of wyld Goates, whereof is great plentie in that Ilande, and in maner of nothing els. From hence folowyng on theyr course, and taryng heere and there at the desarte Ilandes in the way, bycause they would not come to tyme to the countrey of Guinea for the heate, and taryng somewhat to long (for what can be well mynistred in a common wealch, where inequality with tyrannie

The Ilandes  
of Canarie.  
The Ilande of  
S. Nicolas.

Guinea.



## The first vyage to Guinea.

nie will rule alone) they came at the length to the fyrst lande of the countrey of *Guinea*, where they sell with the great ryuer of *Sesto*, where they myght for theyr merchandies haue laden their shippes with the graynes of that countrey, whiche is a verye hot fruite, and muche lyke vnto a fygge as it groweth on the tree. For as the fygges are full of small seedes, so is the sayde fruite full of graynes, which are lose within the codde, hauyng in the myddest thereof a hole on euery syde. This kynde of fygge is muche bled in colde countreys, and may there be solde for great advantage, for exchaunge of other wares. But our men by the perswasion or rather inforcement of this tragicall Captaine, not regarding, and setting lyght by that commoditie, in comparison to the fine golde they thirsted, sayled an hundred leagues further, vntill they came to the golden lande: where not attempting to come neare the Castell parteynyng to the kyng of *Portugale*, which was within the ryuer of *Mina*, made sale of theyr wares onely on this syde and beyond it, for the golde of that countrey, to the quantitie of an hundred and fyftie poundes weyght, there beyng in case that they myght haue dispatched all theyr wares for golde, if the vntaine hyaine of *Wyndam* had or could haue gpyuen ear to the counsayle and experience of *Pintado*. For when that *Wyndam*, not satisfied with the golde whiche he had (and more might haue had if he had taried about the *Mina*) commaundynge the sayde *Pintado* (for so he tooke vppon him) to leade the shippes to *Benin*, beyng vnder the Equinoctiall lyne, and a hundred and fyftie leagues beyonde the *Mina*, where he looked to haue theyr shippes laden with pepper: and beyng counsayled of the sayde *Pintado*, considerynge the late tyme of the yeere, for that tyme to goe no further, but to make sale of their wares suche as they had for golde, whereby they myght haue ben great gayners. But *Wyndam* not assentyng herevnto, fell into a sodayne rage, reuilyng the sayde *Pintado*, callynge him *Jewe*, with other opprobrious woordes, sayng, This horson *Jewe* hath promysed to byng vs to suche places as are not, or as he can not byng vs vnto: but if he dde not, I will cut of his eares, and naye them to the mast. *Pintado* gaue the foresayde counsayle to goe no further, for the safegarde of the men & theyr liues, whiche they shoulde put in daunger if they came to late, for  
the

The ryuer of  
*Sesto*.

Graynes.

The thirst of  
golde.

The Castell of  
*Mina*.

The quantitie  
of golde.

*Benin*.

Pepper.

*Jewe* admits  
eth no coun-  
sayle.

the roſſia whiche is theyꝝ wynter, not for colde but for ſmothe-  
ryng heate, with cloſe and cloudey ayre, and ſtoꝛming weither, of  
ſuche putrifying qualitie, that it rotted the coates of theyꝝ backes:  
or els for commyng to ſoone for the ſcorching heate of the ſunne,  
whiche cauſed them to lye in the way. But of force, and  
not of wyll, brought he the ſhyppes before the ryuer of Benin:  
where rydyng at an Anker, ſent theyꝝ pinneſſe by into the riuer  
fiftie or threſcore leagues, from whence certayne of the mer-  
chauntes with Captayne Pinteado, Francisco a Portugale, Nico-  
las Lambert Gentelman, and other merchauntes, were conduc-  
ted to the courte where the kyng remayned, ten leagues from the  
ryuer ſyde: whither when they came, they were brought with  
a great company to the preſence of the Kyng, who being a blacke  
Pooze (although not ſo blacke as the reſte) ſat in a great houghe  
hal, long and wyde, the walles made of earth, without windowes,  
the rooſe of thynne boordes, open in ſundry places, lyke vnto lo-  
uers, to let in the ayre.

The Roſſia.  
Roſtyng heate.

Scorchyng  
heate.

Benin.

Franciſco.  
Nicolas Lam-  
berte.

The kyng of  
Benin his  
courte.

And here to ſpeake of the great reuerence they gyue to theyꝝ  
kyng, being ſuche that if we would gyue as muche to our ſauour  
Chriſt, we ſhould remoue from our heades many plagues which  
we dayly deſerue for our contempte and impietie.

Reuerence  
towarde the  
kyng.

So it is therfore, that when his noble men are in his preſence,  
they neuer looke him in the face, but ſit crouching, as wee vppon  
our knees, ſo they vppon theyꝝ buttockes, with theyꝝ elbowes vppon  
theyꝝ knees, and theyꝝ handes before theyꝝ faces, not looking  
by vntyll the Kyng commaunde them. And when they are  
commyng towarde the Kyng, as farre as they doe ſee him, doe  
they ſhewe ſuche reuerence, ſyttynge on the grounde with theyꝝ  
faces couered as before. Likewiſe when they departe from him,  
they turne not theyꝝ backes towarde him, but goe creeping back-  
warde with lyke reuerence.

And nowe to ſpeake ſomewhat of the communication that  
was betwene the Kyng and our men, you ſhall fyrſt vnder-  
ſtande that hee him ſelfe coulde ſpeake the Portugale tongue,  
whiche he had learned of a chyld. Therefore after that he had  
commaunded our men to ſtande by, and demaunded of them  
the cauſe of theyꝝ commyng into that countrey, they anſwe-  
red by Pinteado, that they were merchauntes, traueplyng in-

The commu-  
nication be-  
twene the  
kyng of Benin  
and our men.

## The first vyage to Guinea.

to those parties for the commodities of his countrey, for exchange of wares whiche they had brought from theyr countreys, beyng such as should bee no lesse commodious for him and his people. The Kyng then hauyng of olde tyme in a certayne store house thirtie or fourtie kyntalles of pepper (euery kyntall beyng an hundred weyght) wyllyng them to looke bypon the same, and agayne to byng him a sight of suche merchaundies as they had brought with them. And therevppon sent with the Captaine and the merchautes, certayne of his men to conducte them to the waters syde, with other to byng the ware from the pinnesse to the courte. Who when they were returned and the wares seene, the kyng grewe to this ende with the merchautes, to proude in thirtie dayes the ladyng of all theyr shippes with pepper. And in case theyr merchaundies would not extende to the value of so much pepper, he promised to credite them to theyr next returne: and therevppon sent the countrey rounde about to geather pepper, causing the same to be brought to the courte: So that within the space of thirtie dayes they had geathered fourescore tunne of pepper.

In the meane season, our men partly hauyng no rule of themselves, but eatyng without measure of the frutes of the countrey, and drynkyng the wyne of the *Palme* trees that droppeth in the nyght from the cutte branches of the same, and in suche extreme heate runnyng continually into the water, not bled before to suche sodayne and belement alterations (then the which nothyng is more dangerous) were thereby brought into swellinges and agues: insomuche that the later tyme of the yere coming on, caused them to dye sometimes.iii. & sometimes.iiii. or.v. in a day. Then *Windam* perceiuing the time of the. xxx. dayes to be expired, & his men dying so fast, sent to the courte in poste to captaine *Pintado*, and the rest, to come away, and to tary no longer. But *Pintado*, with the rest, wrote backe to him againe, certifying him of the great quantitie of pepper they had already gathered, and looked dayly for much more: Desiring him furthermore to remember the great praise and name they should wyne, if they came home prosperously, and what shame of the contrarie. With which answer *Windam* not satisfied, and many of their men dying dayly, willed and commaunded them againe either to

Pepper.

The kynges  
gentelnesse to  
warde our  
men.

The disorder  
and death of  
our men.

come away furthwith, or els threatened to leaue them behynde. When Pinteado hearde this aunswere, thynkynge to perswade hym with reason, tooke his way from the courte towarde the shyppes, beynge conducted thither with men by the kynges commaundement.

In the meane season Windam all rageynge, brake by Pinteados Cabin, brake open his cheistes, spoyled such prouision of colde stilled waters and suckettes as he had prouided for his health, and lefte hym nothing, neither of his instrumentes to saile by, nor yet of his apparell: and in the meane tyme fallynge sycke hym selfe, dyed also. Whose deatly Pinteado, commynge abrode, lamented as muche as if he had ben the dearest frende he had in the worlde. But certayne of the maryners and other officers dyd spette in his face, some callynge hym Jewe, saying that he had brought them thither to kyll them: and some drawing theyr swoordes at hym, makynge a shewe to slay hym. Then he, perceyving that they would needes away, desyred them to tary, that he myght fetch the rest of the merchauntes that were lefte at the courte. But they woulde not graunt his request. Then desyred he them to geue hym the shyppe boate, with as muche of an olde sayle as myght serue for the same, promisyng them therewith to brynge Nicolas Lambert and the rest into England: But al was in vayne. Then wrote he a letter to the courte to the merchants, informynge them of all the matter, and promisyng them if God woulde lende hym lyfe to returne with al hast to fetch them. And thus was Pinteado kept a boordshyppe agaynst his wyll, thrust among the boyes of the shyppe, not bled lyke a man, nor yet like an honest boy, but glad to fynde fauour at the cookes hande. Then departed they, leauing one of theyr shippes behynd them, which they sonke for lacke of men to cary her. After this, within fyre or seuen dayes saylynge, dyed also Pinteado, for very penituenesse and thought that stroke hym to the hart: A man worthy to serue any pryncce, and most blyssfully bled. And of seuen score men came homie to Polymowth scarcely fourtie, and of them many dyed. And that no man shoulde suspect these wordes whiche I haue sayd in commendation of Pinteado, to be spoken bypon fauour otherwyse then truth, I haue thought good to adde hereunto the coppie of the letters whiche the kyng of Portugale and the

The death of  
Windam.  
Pinteado cupl  
bled of the mar  
ryners,

This Lambert  
was a lddier  
boyne, whose fa  
ther had been  
loyde mayre of  
London, and  
this Lambert  
sometime a  
knyght of the  
rode, one as he  
was unmarried;  
so he liued in the  
feare of God,  
and was the  
first of that or  
der that forsoke  
the Pope, and  
came to Gods  
holp worde.  
The death of  
Pinteado.

infant



## The first viage to Guinea.

infant his brother wrote vnto hym, to reconcytle hym, at suche tyme as vppon the kyng his maisters displeasure (and not for any other cryme or offence, as may appeare by the sayde letters) he was only for pouertie inforced to come into Englande, where he fyrst perswaded our merchauntes to attempt the layde vyages to Guinea. But as the kyng of Portugale to late repented hym that he had so punysshed *Pinteado*, vppon malicious informations of suche as enuied the mans good fortune, euen so may it hereby appeare, that in some cases, euen Lions them selues, may either be hyndred by the contempt, or ayded by the helpe of the poore myse, accordyng vnto the fable of *Esop*.

The copie of Antoni Anes *Pinteado* his letters patentes, wherby the king of Portugale made him knyght of his house, after al his troubles and imprisonment, which, by wrong information made to the king, he had susteined of long time, being at the last deliuered, his cause knowen and manifested to the kyng by a grey fryer the kynges confessor.



The kyng do geue you to vnderstande lorde Frances *Desseosa*, one of my counsaile, and ouerseer of my house, that in consideration of the good seruice which *Antonie Anes Pinteado*, the sonne of *Iohn Anes*, dwellyng in the towne called the porte, hath done vnto me, my wyl and pleasure is, to make him knyght of mi house, alowing to him in pension seue hundred reis monethly, and euery day one alcapye of barley, as long as he keepeth a horse, and to be payde accordyng to the ordinaunce of my house. I prouydyng alwayes that he shal receyue but one mariage gifte: And this also in such condition, that the tyme which is excepted in our ordinaunce, forbidding such men to marry for gettyng suche chyldren as myght succede them in this alowance, which is syxe peeres after the makynge of this patent, shalbe fyrst expired befoze he do mary. I therfore commaund you to cause this to be entred in the booke called the *Matricula* of our houtholde, vnder the title of knyghtes. And when it is so entred, let the clarke of *h Matricula*, for the certaintie thereof, wyte on the backe

Seuen hundred  
reis are .x. s.  
Alcapye is halfe  
a bushell.

backsyde of this *Aluala*, or patent, the number of the lease wher-  
in this our graunt is entered. Which doone, let him returne this  
wryting vnto the said *Anthonie Anes Pinteado* for his warrant.

I *Diego Henriques* haue wrytten this in *Almarin* the twenty  
and two day of September, in the yeere of our Lorde .1551.  
And this beneuolence the kyng gaue vnto *Anthonie Anes Pinteado*  
do the twentieth and fyue day of July this present yeere.

Rey.

The secretaries declaration vnder the  
kynges graunt.



Our Maiestie hath vouchsafed, in respect &  
consideration of the good seruice of *Antho-  
nie Anes Pinteado*, dwelling in the port, and  
sonne of *Iohn Anes*, to make hym knyght of  
your house, with ordinarie allowance, of se-  
uen hundred Reys pension by the moneth,  
and one *Alcayr* of Barley by the day, as  
long as he kepeth a Horse: and to be payde accordyng to the or-  
dinance of your house, with conditon that he shall haue but one  
marriage gyft: and that not within the space of .vi. yeeres after  
the makyng of these letters patences. The secretaries note. En-  
tered in the booke of the *Matricula*. Fol. 683.

*Francisco de Siquera.*

The coppie of the letter of *Don Lewes* the infant, and bro-  
ther to the kyng of Portugale: sent into Eng-  
land to *Anthonie Anes Pinteado*.



*Anthonie Anes Pinteado*, I the infant bro-  
ther to the kyng, haue me hartely commen-  
ded vnto you. *Peter Gonsalues* is gone to  
seeke you, desiring to bryng you home a-  
gaine into your countrey. And for that pur-  
pose, hath with hym a safe conduct for you,  
graunted by the kyng, that thereby you  
maye freelye and without all feare come home. And all-  
though the weather be foule and stormy, yet sayle not to come:  
For in the tyme that his Maiestie hath geuen you, you maye  
doo

## The first viage to Guinea.

do many thynges to your contentation and gratifying the king, whereof I woulde be ryght glad: and to bypnyng the same to passe, wyll do all that lyeth in me for your profite. But forasmuche as *Peter Gonsalves* wyl make further declaration hereof vnto you, I say no more at this present. Wrytten in *Luxburne* the vygth day of December. Anno .M. D. LII.

## The infant *Don Lewes*.



These forsayde wrytynges I sawe vnder seale, in the house of my frende *Nicholas Liese*, with whom *Pintado* left them, at his vnforsunate departyng to *Guinea*. But notwithstanding all these freendly letters and sayre promises, *Pintado* durst not attempt to goe home, neyther to keepe company with the *Portugales* his countrey men, without the presence of other: forasmuch as he had secrete admonitions that they intended to sleigh him, yf tyme and place myght haue serued theyr wicked entent.

## The second viage to Guinea.



In the fyrst viage I haue declared rather the order of the histozie, then the course of the nauigation, wherof at that tyme I could haue no perfect information: so in the description of this seconde viage, my cheefe intent hath been to shewe the course of the same, accor dyng to the obseruation and ordinary custome of the maryners, and as I receyued it at the handes of an expert Pilot, beyng one of the cheefe in this viage, who also with his owne handes wrote a bryefe declaration of the same, as he founde and tryed al thynges, not by coniecture, but by the art of saylyng, and instrumentes partepnyng to the maryners facultie. Not therefore assumyng to my selfe the commendations due vnto other, neyther so bolde as in any part to change or otherwysse dispose the order of this viage, so well obserued by  
art

arte and experyence, I haue thought good to set forth the same, in suche sort and phrased of speache as is commonly bled among them, and as I receyued it of the sayd pilot, as I haue said. Take it therefore as foloweth.

In the yere of our lorde .1554. the .ii. daye of October, we departed the ryuer of Temmes with thre goodly shippes, the one called the Trinitie, a ship of the burden of seuen score tun, the other called y<sup>e</sup> Barthelmew, a shyppe of the burden of .lxxx. the thyrde was the John Euangelist, a shyp of seuen score tunne. With the sayde shippes and two pyunesses (whereof the one was drowned in the coast of Englande) we went forwarde on our vyage, and stayed at Douer .xiiii. dayes. We stayed also at Rye thre or foure dayes. Moreouer last of all we touched at Dartmouth.

The fyrst day of Nouember at .ix. of the clocke at nyght, departing from the coaste of Englande, we sette of the stert, bearing south west al that nyght in the sea, and the next day all day, and the next nyght after, vntill the thyrde day of the sayde moneth about noone, makyng our way good, dyd runne .60. leagues.

Item from .xii. of the clocke the thyrde daye, tyll .xii. of the clocke the .iiii. day of the sayde moneth, makyng our way good south west, dyd runne euery thre houres two leagues, which amounteth to .xvi. leagues the whole.

Item from .xii. of the clocke the .iiii. day to .xii. of the clocke the .v. day, runnyng south west in the sea, dyd runne .xii. leagues.

Item runnyng from .xii. of the clocke the .v. day, vntill .xii. of the clocke the .vi. day, runnyng southeast, dyd runne .xvi. leagues.

And so from .xii. of the clocke the .vi. day, vntill .xii. of the clocke the .vii. day, runnyng south south west, dyd runne euery houre .ii. leagues, which amount to .xvi. leagues the whole.

Item from .xii. of the clocke the .vii. day, tyll .iii. of the clocke the .viii. day, south south west runnyng in the sea, dyd runne .xx. leagues.

Item from thre of the clocke the .viii. day, vntill .iii. of the clocke the .ix. day, runnyng south south west, dyd runne .xx. leagues.

Item from .iii. of the clocke the .ix. day, tyll .iii. of the clocke the



## The seconde viage to Guinea.

the .x. daye, dyd southsoutheast in runnyng in the sea the summe of xxxiii. leagues.

Also from .iii. of the clocke the .x. day, by .y<sup>ll</sup>. .xii. of the clocke the .xi. daye, dyd runne southsouthwest the summe of .xii. leagues, and from .xii. of the clocke, tyll .vi. of the sayde daye, dyd runne vi. leagues.

Running south and by west in the sea, from .vi. of the clocke the .xi. day, til .vi. of the clocke the .xii. day, dyd runne .xxxvi. leagues.

From .vi. of the clocke at after noone the .xii. daye, tyll .vi. of the clocke the .xiii. daye at after noone, dyd runne .xiii. leagues. Item from .vi. of the clocke the .xiii. daye, tyll .vi. of the clocke the .xiiii. day at after noone, we were becalmed, that we coulde lye southwest with a sayle. And the .xv. daye in the mornynge, the wynd came to the East and Eastnortheast. The .xvi. daye in the mornynge, we had syght of the yle of *Madera*, whiche doth ryse to hym that commeth in the northnortheast part vpryght lande in the west part of it, and very hygh: and to the southsoutheast a lowe long lande, and a long poynnt, with a saddle thorough the myddest of it, standeth in the .xxii. degrees: and in the west part, many springes of water runnyng downe from the mountayne, and many whyte fieldes lyke unto corne fieldes, and some whyte houses to the southeast parte of it: and the toppe of the mountayne sheweth very ragged if you may see it, and in the northeast part there is a byght or bay as though it were a harborowe: Also in the sayd part, there is a rocke a litle distance from the shoze, and ouer the sayde byght, you shall see a great gap in the mountayne.

The .xix. day at .xii. of the clocke, we had syght of the yle of *Palme* and *Teneriffa* and the *Canaries*. The yle of *Palme* lieth round, and lyeth southeast and northwest, and the northwest part is lowest. In the south, is a round hyll ouer the head land, and an other round hyll aboue that in the land. There is betwene the Southeast part of the yle of *Madera* and the northwest part of the yle of *Palme* .lvii. leagues. This yle of *Palme* lyeth in the .xxix. degrees. And our course from *Madera* to the yle of *Palme* was south, & south and by west, so that we had sight of *Teneriffa* & of the *Canaries*. The southeast part of the yle of *Palme*, and the northnortheast of *Teneriffa*, lieth southeast and northwest,  
and

The yle of  
*Madera*.

The yle of  
*Palme*.  
*Teneriffa*.  
The *Canaries*.

From *Madera*  
to the yle of  
*Palme*.

and betweene them is twentie leagues. *Teneriffa* and the great Canarie, called *Grancanaria*, and the West part of *Fortisuentura*, standeth in .xxvii. degrees and a halfe. *Gomera*, is a sayde Island and very ragged, and lyeth West Southwest of *Teneriffa*. And who so euer wyl come betweene them two Ilandes, must come South and by East, and in the South part of *Gomera* is a towne and a good rode in the sayde parte of the Ilande: and it standeth in twentie and seven degrees and three terces. *Teneriffa* is an hygh land, & a great hygh pycke, lyke a suger loafe: and by on the said picke is snow throughout al the whole peere. And by reason of that pycke it may be knowen aboue al other Ilandes, and there we were becalmed the .xx. day of Nouember, from fyve of the clocke in the mornynge, vntyl foure of the clocke at after noone.

*Grancanaria*.  
*Fortisuentura*.  
The Island of  
*Gomera*.

*Teneriffa*.  
Snowe.

Betweene *Gomera*, and *Cape de las Barbas*.

**T**he .xxii. day of Nouember, vnder the Tropicke of Cancer, the Sunne goeth downe West and by South. Upon the coast of *Barbarie* .xxv. leagues by North *Cape blanke* at thye leagues of the mayne, there is .xv. fadome, and good shelly ground, & land among, and no streames, and two small Ilandes standynge in the .xxii. degrees & a terce.

The coast of  
*Barbarie*.  
*Cape blanke*.

From *Gomera* to *Cape de las Barbas* is an hundred leagues, and our course was South and by East. The sayde *Cape* standeth in .xxii. and a halfe: and all that coast is flatte .xvi. or .xvii. fadome deepe. Thi. or. viii. leagues of from the ryuer de *Oio* to *Cape de las Barbas*, there vse many *Spanyarden* and *Portugales* to trade for fshynge, durynge the moneth of Nouember: and al that coast is very lowe landes. Also we went from *Cape de las Barbas* south southwest, and southwest and by south, tyl we brought our selues in .xx. degrees and a halfe, reckoung our selues. vii. leagues of: and that was the least shoales of *Cape Elanke*.

The ryuer of de  
*Oio*.

Then we went South, vntil we brought our selues in thyrtyene degrees, reckoung our selues twentie and fyue leagues of. And in fyftiene degrees, we did reare the crossiers, and we myght haue reared them sooner if we had looked for them. They are not ryght a Crosse in the moneth of Nouember, by reason of the nyghtes

The Crossers  
of crosse starrs.

## The seconde viage to Guinea.

nyghtes are thort there. Neuerthelesse we had the syght of them the .xxix. day of the sayde moneth at nyght.

The fyrst of December out thyrteene degrees, we set our course South and by East, vntyl the fourth day of December at twelue of the clocke the same day. Then we were in niene degrees and a terce, reckonyng our selues thyrtye leagues of the sholes of the ryuer called *Rio Grande*, beyng West Southwest of them: the whiche sholes be thyrtye leagues long.

The fourth of December, we began to set our course Southeast, we beyng in syxe degrees and a halfe.

The nienth day of December we set our course East Southeast: the fourteenth day of the sayde moneth, we set our course East, we beyng in fyue degrees and a halfe, reckonyng our selues thyrtye and syxe leagues from the coast of *Guinea*.

The .xix. of the sayde moneth, we set our course East and by North, reckoning our selues .xxii. leagues distant from *Cape Mensurado*, the sayde *Cape* beyng East Northeast of vs, and the ryuer of *Sesto* beyng East.

The .xxi. day of the sayde moneth, we fel with *Cape Mensurado* to the Southeast, about two leagues of. This *Cape* may be easely knowen, by reason the rplyng of it is like a Porpoise head. Also toward the Southeast there are three trees, whereof the Eastermost tree is the hyghest, and the myddlemost is lyke a hie stacke, and the Southermost lyke vnto a Gibet: and vppon the mayne, are foure or fyue hygh bylles rplyng one after an other lyke rounde hoommockes or byllockes. And the Southeast of the three trees, is three trees lyke a brandierwyle: and all the coast along is whyte sand. The sayde *Cape* standeth within a litle in syxe degrees.

The .xxii. of December, we came to the ryuer of *Sesto*, and remainned there vntyll the .xxix. day of the sayde moneth. Here we thought it best to send befoze vs the pyrmesse to the ryuer of *Dulce*, called *Rio Dulce*, that they myght haue the begynnyng of the market befoze the commyng of the Iohn.

At the ryuer of *Sesto*, we had a Tunne of graynes. This riuer standeth in .vi. degrees, lackyng a terce. From the ryuer of *Sesto* to *Rio Dulce*, is .xxv. leagues. *Rio Dulce* standeth in fyue degrees and a halfe. The ryuer of *Sesto* is easye to be knowen, by reason

*Rio Grande.*

*Cape Mensurado.*  
The ryuer of  
*Sesto.*

The ryuer of  
*Sesto.*  
*Rio Dulce.*

reason there is a ledge of rockes on the Southeast parte of the Rode. And at the entryng into the hauen, are fyue or sixe trees that beare no leaues. This is a good harborowe, but very narrow at the entrance into the ryuer. There is also a rocke in the hauens mouth ryght as you enter. And all that coast betweene Cape de Monte, and cape de las Palmas, lyeth Southeast and by East, Northwest and by West, being three leagues of the shore. And you shall haue in some places rockes two leagues of : and that betweene the riuer of Sesto and cape de las Palmas.

Cape de monte.

Cape de las Palmas.

The land of Cakcado.

Shauo.

Croke.

Sainct Vincents harborowe.

The riuer Dulce.

Betweene the ryuer of Sesto & the ryuer Dulce, is. xxb. leagues : and the high lande that is betweene them both, is called Cakcado, being eight leagues from the ryuer of Sesto. And to the South, eastwarde of him, is a place called Shawgro, and an other called Shyawe or Shano, where you may get freshe water. Of this Shyawe, lyeth a redge of rockes : and to the Southeastwarde, lyeth a hedlande called Croke. Betweene Cakcado and Croke, is. ix. or ten leagues. To the Southeastwarde of, is a harborowe called saint Vinecent : Ryght ouer agaynst saint Vincent, is a rocke vnder the water, two leagues and a halfe of the shore. To the Southeastwarde of that rocke you shall see an Ilande about thre or foure leagues of : this Ilande is not paste a league of the shore. To the East Southeast of the Ilande, is a rocke that lyeth about the water, and by that rocke goeth in the ryuer of Dulce, which you shall know by the sayde ryuer and rocke. The Northwest syde of the hauen, is flatte sande, and the Southeast syde thereof, is lyke an Ilande, and a bare platte without any trees, and so is it not in any other place.

In the Rode, you shall ryde in xiii. or. xiiii. fadomes, good owes and lande, beynge the markes of the Rode to byng the Ilande and the Northeast lande togeather, and here we Ankered the last of December.

The thirde day of January, we came from the riuer of Dulce.

Note that cape de las Palmas, is a fayre high lande, but some lowe places thereof by the water syde looke lyke redde cliffes with whyte strakes lyke wayes, a cable length a peece, & this is to the East parte of the cape. This cape is the Southermost lande in all the coast of Guinea, and standeth in foure degrees and a terce.

Cape de las Palmas.

The coast of Guinea.



## The second vyage to Guinea.

The coast from *Cape de las palmas* to *Cape Trepoyntes*, or the *tres Puntas*, is sayre and cleare without rocke or other daunger.

Twentie and fyue leagues from *Cape de las Palmas*, the lande is hygher then in any place, vntyl we come to *Cape Trepoyntes*. And about ten leagues before you come to *Cape Trepoyntes*, the land ryseth styll hygher and hygher, vntyl you come to *Cape Trepoyntes*. Also before you come to the sayde *Cape*, after other fyue leagues to the Northwest part of it, there is certayne broken grounde, with two great rockes, and within them in the byght of a bay, is a castel called *Arra*, parteining to the kynge of Portugal. You shal know it by the sayd rockes that lye of it: for there is none such from *Cape de las Palmas* to *cape Trepoyntes*. This coast lyeth East & by North, West & by South. From *Cape de las Palmas* to the sayd castel, is fourscore and fyftee leagues. And the coast lyeth from the sayd castel to the westermost point of the *Trepoyntes*, Southeast and by South, Northwest and by North. Also the westermost poynt of the *Trepoyntes*, is a low land, lying halfe a myle out in the sea: and vppon the innermoste necke to the land ward, is a tuft of trees, & there we arriued the eleuenth day of January.

The castell of  
Arra,

The towne of  
Samma.

The twelfth day of January, we came to a towne called *Samma* or *Samua*, beyng .iiii. leagues from *Cape Trepoyntes* toward East Northeast. Betweene *Cape Trepoyntes* and the towne of *Samua*, is a great ledge of rockes a great way out in the sea. We continued foure dayes at that towne: & the captayne therof would needs haue a pledge a shore. But when they receiued the pledge, they kept him still, & would trafficke no more, but shot of theyr ordnance at vs. They haue two or thye peece of ordnance and no more. The .xvi. day of the sayde mooneth, we made reckonyng to come to a place called *Cape Corea*, where captayne *Don Ihon* dwelleth, whose men entertayned vs frendly. This *Cape Corea* is foure leagues Eastward of the castell of *Mina*, or ther wyse called *La mina* or *Castello de mina*, where we arriued the .xviii. day of the moneth. Here we made sayle of all our cloth, sauing two or thye packes.

The pledge  
was for John  
poys his newew.

Cape Corea.

The castell of  
mina partei-  
ning to the  
king of Portu-  
gale.

The .xxvi. day of the same moneth we weighed anker, and departed from thence to the *Trinitie*, whiche was .vii. leagues East.

Eastwarde of vs, where she solde her wares. Then they of the  
 Cistitie wylled vs to go Eastwarde of that viii. or .ix. leagues,  
 to sell part of theyr wares, in a place called *Perecow*, and an other  
 place named *Perecow Grande*, beyng the eastermost place of  
 both thair, whiche you shall knowe by a great rounde hyll neere  
 vnto it, named *Monte Rodondo*, lying westward from it, and by  
 the water syde are many hygh palme trees. From hence dyd  
 we set forth homewarde the .xiii. day of February, and plyed by  
 alongest tyll we came within .vii. or .viii. leagues to *Cape Tre-  
 pointes*. About .viii. of the clocke the .xv. day at afternoone, we  
 dyd cast about to seawarde: and beware of the currantes, for  
 they wyl deceiue you sore. Whosoeuer shall come from the  
 coaste of *Mina* homewarde, let hym be sure to make his way  
 good west, vntyl he reckon hym selfe as farre as *Cape de las Pal-  
 mas*, where the currant setteth alwayes to the eastwarde.  
 And within .xx. leagues eastwarde of *Cape de las Palmas*,  
 is a ryuer called *De los Potos*, where you may haue freshe  
 water and balasse enough, and plentie of Iuery or Elephantes  
 teeth. This ryuer standeth in foure degrees, and almost two  
 terces. And when you reckon your selfe as farre shotte as *Cape  
 de las Palmas*, beyng in a degree, or a degree and a halfe, you may  
 go west, & west by north, vntyl you come in thre degrees: and  
 then you may go west north west, and north west and by west,  
 vntyll you come in fyue degrees, and then north west. And in  
 the .vi. degrees, we met northerly wyndes, and great rooslyng  
 of tydes. And as we coulde iudge, the currantes went to the  
 north north west. Furthermoze betweene *Cape de Monte* and  
*Cape verde*, go great currantes which deceiue many men.

*Perecowe,  
Perecowe  
Grande.*

*Monte rodondo.*

*The currantes*

*From Mina  
homewarde.*

*Rio de los Po-  
tos.  
Iuerpe.*

*Cape de las  
Palmas.*

*Currantes.*

The .xxii. daye of Apryll, we were in .viii. degrees and  
 two terces: and so we ranne to the north west, hauyng the  
 wynde at northeast and east northeast, and sometymes at east,  
 vntyll we were at .xviii. degrees and a terce, whiche was on  
 Maye daye. And so from .xviii. and two terces, we had the  
 wynde at east and east northeast, and sometymes at east south-  
 east: and then we reckened the *Ilandes* of *Cape Verde* east  
 southeast of vs, we iudgyng our selues to bee .xlviii. lea-  
 gues of. And in .xx. and .xxi. degrees, we had the wynde  
 moze easterly to the southwarde then before. And so we ran

## The second vyage to Guinæa.

The Ile de  
Flore.

to the Southwest & north northwest, and sometymes north & by west and north, vntyll we came into. xxxi. degrees, where we reckoned our selues a hundred and fourescore leagues south west, and by south of the Island de Flore or de los Flores, and there wee met with the wynde at south southeast, and set our course northeast.

In. xxiii. degrees, we had the wynde at the South and south west, and then we set our course north northeast, and so we ranne to. xl. degrees, and then we set our course northeast, the wynde being at the south west, and hauyng the Ile de Flore East of vs, and xvi. leagues of.

In. xli. degrees, we met with the wynde at Northeast, and so we ranne north westwarde, then we met with the wynde at the west north west, and at the west within. vi. leagues, runnyng toward the north west, and then we cast about, and laye northeast, vntyll we came in. xlii. degrees, where wee set our course East northeast, iudgyng the Ile of Coruo south and by west of vs, and xxxvi. leagues distant from vs.

The Ile of  
Coruo.

A remembrance that the. xxi. day of May, we communed with John Wase, and he thought it best to goe northeast, and iudged him selfe. xxv. leagues Eastwarde to the Ile de Flore, and in. xxxix. degrees and a halfe.

Where they  
lost the sight of  
the North  
starre.  
Howe the com-  
passe doeth  
varie.

Note that in the fourth day of September, vnder niene degrees, we lost the sight of the north starre.

Note also, that in the. xlv. degrees, the compasse is varied. viii. degrees to the West.

Item, in. xl. degrees, the compasse dyd vary. xv. degrees in the whole,

Item, in. xxx. degrees and a halfe, the compasse is varied. v. degrees to the West.

Be it also in memorie, that two or three dayes before we came to cape Trepointes, the pynnesse went alongest the shore, thinking to sell some of our wares, and so we came to Anker three or foure leagues west and by south of the cape Trepointes, where we lefte the Trinitie.

Then our pynnesse came aboorde with all our men: the Pynnesse also tooke in more wares. They tolde me moreouer that they would goe to a place where the Pymrose was, and had receyued muche golde at the first vyage to these parties;

The Pymrose.

and tolde me furthermore that it was a good place: but I fea-  
ryng a bygantine that was then vppon the coast, dyd wey and fo-  
low them, & left the Trinitie about foure leagues of from vs, and  
there we rode agaynst that towne foure dayes: so that Martine  
by his owne desire, and assent of some of the Commissioners that  
were in the pinnesse, went a shoze to the towne, and there John  
Berin went to trafique from vs, being thre myles of trafeking at  
an other towne. The towne is called *Samma* or *Sainua*, for *Sam-*  
*ma* and *Sammatera*, are the names of the two first townes, where  
we did traficke for golde, to the Northeast of cape *Trepoints*.

The towne  
of Samma.  
Golde.

Hetherto continueth the course of the vyage, as it was descri-  
bed by the sayd Pilot. Now therfore I wil speake somewhat of  
the countrey and people, and of such thinges as are brought from  
thence.

They brought from thence at the last vyage, foure hundred  
pound weight and odde of gold, of .xxii. Carrattes and one graine  
in finenesse: also .xxxvi. buttes of graynes, and about two hun-  
dred and fytie Elephantes teeth of all quantities. Of these,  
I sawe and measured some of .ix. spannes in length, as they were  
crooked. Some of them were as bygge as a mans thygh aboue  
the knee, and weyed about foure score and tenne pounce weight  
a peece. They say that some one hath been seene of a hundred  
and .xxv. pounce weyght. Other there were which they call the  
teeth of calves, of one or two or thre yeeres, whereof some were  
a foote and a halfe, some two foote, and some thre, or more, ac-  
cording to the age of the beast. These great teeth or tuskes,  
growe in the upper iawe downewarde, and not in the nether  
iawe upward, wherein the paynters and arras woorkers are de-  
ceyued. At this last vyage was brought from *Guinea* the head  
of an Elephant, of suche huge bygnesse, that only the bones  
or crauele thereof, besyde the nether iawe and great tuskes,  
weyghed about two hundred weyght, and was as muche as  
I coulde well lyfte from the ground: insomuche that con-  
sidering also heere with the weyght of two suche great teethe,  
the nether iawes with the lesse teeth, the tongue, the great han-  
gynge eares, the bygge and long snoute or troonke, with all the  
fleshe, braynes, and skynne, with all other partes belongynge  
to the whole head, in my iudgement it coulde wey little lesse then

Golde foure  
hundred  
weight.  
Graynes.  
Elefant  
teeth.

The head of an  
Elephant.



## The second vyage to Guinea.

fyue hundred weight. This head dyuers haue seene in the house of the woorthie merchant s<sup>r</sup> Andewwe Iudde, where also I saw it, and beheld it, not onely with my bodily eyes, but much more with the eyes of my mynde and spirite, considered by the woorkes, the cunnyng and wysedome of the woorkemaister : without which consideration, the sight of suche straunge and wonderfull thinges may rather seeme curiosities, then profitable contemplations.

The contents  
of  
Gods workes.

The description  
and properties  
of the Elephant

The Elephant (whiche some call an Oliphante) is the biggest of all foure footed beastes, his forelegges are longer then his hynder, he hath ankles in the lower parte of his hynder legges, and fyue toes on his feete vndiuided, his snoute or troonke is so long, and in suche forme, that it is to him in the steede of a hande : for hee neyther eateth nor drynketh but by bryngyng his troonke to his mouth, therewith hee helpeth by his maister or keeper, therwith he ouerthoweth trees, Besyde his two great tuskes, he hath on euery syde of his mouth foure teethe, wherewith he eateth and gryndeth his meate : eyther of these teethe, are almost a spanne in length, as they growe along in the iawe, and are about two inches in heyght, and almost as much in thicke- nesse . The tuskes of the Male are greater then of the Female : his tongue is very litle, and so farre in his mouth, that it can not be seene : of all beastes they are most gentle and tractable, for by many sundry wayes they are taught, and doe vnderstande : insomuche that they learne to doe due honour to a Kyng, and are of quicke sense and sharpenesse of wyt . When the Male hath once seasoned the Female, he neuer after toucheth her . The Male Elephant lyueth two hundred yeeres, or at the least one hundred and twentie: the Female almost as long, but the floure of theyr age, is but .lx. yeeres, as some wypte . They can not suffer wynter or colde : they loue ryuers, and will often goe into them vp to the snoute, wherewith they blow and snuffe, and playe in the water : but swimme they can not for the weyght of theyr bodies . Plinie and Solinie wypte, that they vse none adulterie. If they happen to meete with a man in wyldernesse beyng out of the way, gently they will goe before him, and bryng him into the playne waye . Joyned in battayle, they haue no small respecte vnto them that be wounded : for they bryng them that are hurte or weary into the mid-  
dle

dle of the army to be defended: they are made tame by drinke  
the iuile of barley. They haue continual war agaynst Dragons,  
which desire theyr blood, bycause it is very colde: and therfore the  
Dragon lyeing awayte as the Elephant passeth by, wyndeth his  
tayle (being of exceeding length) about the hynder legges of the  
Elephant, and so steping him, thrusteth his head into his troonke  
and exhausteth his breath, or els byteth him in the eare, where-  
vnto he can not reache with his troonke, and when the Elephant  
waxeth faynte, he falleth downe on the Serpent, beyng now  
full of blood, and with the poyle of his body breaketh him: so  
that his owne blood with the blood of the Elephant, runneth  
out of him myngeled togeather, which beyng colde, is congealed  
into that substance which the Apothecaries call *Sanguis Dra-*  
*conis*, (that is) Dragons blood, otherwyle called *Cinnabaris*, al-  
though there be an other kynde of *Cinnabaris*, commonly called  
*cinoper* or vermilion, which the painters vse in certaine colours.

Debate be-  
twene the Ele-  
phant and the  
Dragon.

*Sanguis Dra-*  
*conis.*  
*Cinnabaris.*

They are also of thre kyndes, as of the maryshes, the plaines,  
and the mountaynes, no lesse differyng in conditions. *Philostratus*  
wyteth, that as much as the Elephant of *Libia* in bygnesse  
passeth the horse of *Nyseus*, so much doeth the Elephant of  
*India* exceede them of *Libia*: for of the Elephant of *India*,  
some haue been seene of the heygth of .ix. cubites: the other doe  
so greatly feare these, that they dare not abyde the sight of them.  
Of the Indian Elephant, only the Males haue tuskes, but  
of them of *Ethiopia* and *Libia*, both kyndes are tusked: they are  
of dyuers heyghtes, as of .xii. .xiii. and .xiiii. dozdantes, euery do-  
zant benig a measure of niene ynches. Some wyte that an Ele-  
phant is bygger then thre wylde Oxen or Buffes. They of *In-*  
*dia* are blacke, or of the colour of a Housle, but they of *Ethiope* or  
*Guinea*, are browne: the hyde or skynne of them all, is very harde,  
and without heare or bystels: theyr eares are two dozdantes  
broad, and theyr eyes very litle. Our men sawe one dlynkyng at  
a ryuer in *Guinea*, as they sayled into the lande.

Three kyndes  
of Elephant.

Of other properties and conditions of the Elephant, as of  
theyr marueylous docilitie, of theyr fyght and vse in the war-  
res, of theyr generation and chastitie, when they were fyrste  
seene in the theaters and triumphes of the Romans, howe  
they are taken and tamed, and when they caste theyr tuskes,

## The second vyage to Guinea.

with the vse of the same in medicine, who so desireth to know, let him reade Plinie, in the .viii. booke of his natural hystorie. He also writeth in his .xii. booke, that in olde tyme they made many goodly woorkes of Iuery or Elephants teeth: as tables, tressels, postes of houses, raples, lattesses for wyndowes, Images of their goddes, and dyuers other thinges of Iuery, both coloured and uncoloured, & intermyxt with sundry kyndes of precious woods, as at this day are made certayne Chayres, Lutes, and Virginalles. They had suche plentie thereof in olde tyme, that (as far as I remember) Iosephus wytteth, that one of the gates of Hierusalem was called *Porta Eburnea*, (that is) the Iuery gate. The whytenesse thereof was so muche esteemed, that it was thought to represent the naturall fayrenesse of mans skynne: in so muche that such as went about to set forth (or rather corrupt) naturall beautie with colours and payntyng, were reprooued by this prouerbe, *Ebur atramento candefacere*, that is, to make Iuery whyte with ynke. The Poettes also, describving the fayre neckes of beautifull virgins, call them *Eburnea colla*, that is, Iuery neckes. And to haue sayde thus muche of Elephantes and Iuery, it may suffice.

Now therfore I wil speake somewhat of the people and theyr maners, and maner of lyving, with also an other bryefe description of Africa. It is to vnderstande, that the people which now inhabite the regions of the coast of Guinea, and the myd partes of Africa, as *Libia* the inner, and *Nubia*, with diuers other great and large regions about the same, were in olde tyme called *Ethiopes* and *Nigrite*, which we now call *Doones*, *Doorens*, or *Negros*, a people of beastly lyving, without a God, lawe, religion, or common wealch, and so scorched and beryed with the heate of the sun, that in many places they curse it when it ryseth. Of the regions and people about the inner *Libia* (called *Libia Interior*) *Gemma Phrysius* wytteth thus.

*Libia Interior*, is very large and desolate, in the whiche are many horrible wyldernes and mountaynes, replenished with dyuers kyndes of wylde and monstrous beastes and Serpentes. Fyrst from *Mauritania* or *Barbarie* towarde the South is *Getulia*, a rough and saluage region, whose inhabitauntes are wylde and wanderyng people. After these folowe the people

Woorkes of  
Iuery.

The people of  
Africa.

*Libia Interior.*

*Getulia.*

people called *Melanogetuli* and *Pharusi*, whiche wander in the  
 wylbernesse, carping with them great gourdes of water. The  
*Ethiophians*, called *Nigrite*, occupie a great part of *Aphrica*, and  
 are extended to the West Ocean. Southwarde also they reach  
 to the ryuer *Nigritis*, whose nature agreeth with the ryuer of  
*Nilus*, forasmuch as it is increased and diminished at the same  
 tyme, and byngeth forth the lyke beastes as the *Crocodile*.  
 By reason whereof, I thinke this to be the same ryuer whiche  
 the *Portugales* call *Senega*: For this ryuer is also of the same  
 nature. It is furthermoze marueylous and very strange that  
 is sayde of this ryuer: And this is, that on the one syde thereof,  
 the inhabitants are of hyghe stature and blacke, and on the o-  
 ther syde, of browne or tawnie coloure, and lowe stature, whiche  
 thyng also our men confyrme to be true. There are also other  
 people of *Libia* called *Garamantes*, whose women are common:  
 for they contracte no matrimonie, neyther haue respecte to  
 chastitie. After these are the nattons of the people called *Pyrei*,  
*Sathiodaphnite*, *Odrangi*, *Mimaces*, *Lynxamate*, *Dolopes*, *Agangine*,  
*Leuce Ethiopes*, *Xilicei Ethiopes*, *Calcei Ethiopes*, and *Nubi*.  
 These haue the same situation in *Ptolomie* that they nowe geue  
 to the kyngdome of *Nubia*. Here are certayne *Christians*  
 vnder the dominion of the great Emperour of *Ethiopia*, cal-  
 led *Piester John*. From these towarde the west, is a great  
 nation of people called *Aphricerones*, whose region (as farre  
 as may bee geathered by coniecture) is the same that is nowe  
 called *Regnum Orguene*, consynng vppon the east parties of  
*Guinea*. From hence Westwarde, and somewhat towarde the  
 North, are the kyngdomes of *Gambra* and *Budomel*; not farre  
 from the ryuer of *Senega*. And from hence towarde the inlande  
 regions, and along by the sea coast, are the regions of *Ginea*  
 or *Guinea*, which we commonly call *Gynnee*. On the West  
 syde of these regions towarde the Ocean, is the cape or poynt  
 called *Gabouerde*, or *Caput viride* (that is) the greene cape, to  
 the whiche the *Portugales* fyrst directe theyr course when they  
 sayle to *America* or the lande of *Brasile*. Then departyng  
 from hence, they turne to the ryght hande towarde the quarter  
 of the wynde called *Garbino*, whiche is betwene the west and the  
 south. But to speake somewhat moze of *Ethiopia*. Although  
 there

*Ethiopes.*  
*Nigrite.*

The ryuer *Ni-*  
*gritis* of *Se-*  
*nega.*

A strange thyng

*Garamantes.*

People of  
*Libia.*

*Piester John.*

*Regnum Or-*  
*guene.*

*Gambia.*

*Guinea* or  
*Cap. Verde.*  
 The *Portu-*  
*gales* naviga-  
 tions to *Bra-*  
*sile.*

*Ethiopia.*



## The second viage to Guinéa.

there are many nations of people so named, yet is Ethiopia chiefly divided into two partes, whereof the one is called Ethiopia vnder Egypte, a great and ryche region. To this part pertaineth the Ilande of *Meroe*, imbraced rounde about with the streames of the ryuer *Nilus*. In this Ilande women reigned in olde tyme. Iosephus writeth, that it was somtyme called *Sabea*; and that the queene of *Saba* came from thence to Hierusalem, to heare the wysedome of Salomon. From hence towarde the East, reigneth the sayde Christian Emperour *Prestre John*, whom some call *Papa Iohannes*, and other saye that he is called *Pean Iuan* (that is) great John, whose Empire reacheth farre beyonde *Nilus*, and is extended to the coastes of the redde sea and Indian sea. The myddle of the region is almost in the .66. degrees of longitude, and .xii. degrees of latitude. About this region inhabite the people called *Clodu*, *Risophagi*, *Babilonij*, *Axiunite*, *Molili*, and *Molibe*. After these is the region called *Trogloditica*, whose inhabitauntes dwell in caues and denues: for these are theyr houses, and the flesh of serpents theyr meate, as writeth *Plinie*, and *Diodorus Siculus*. They haue no speache, but rather a grynnyng and chattering. There are also people without heades, called *Blemines*, hauyng theyr eyes and mouth in theyr breste. Lykewys *Strucophagi*, and naked *Ganphasantes*: *Satyrs* also, which haue nothyng of men but onely shape. *Doreouer Oripei*, great hunters. *Mennones* also, and the region of *Smyrnophora*, which bringeth forth myrr. After these is the region of *Azania*, in the which many *Elephantes* are founde. A great part of the other regions of Afrique that are beyond the Equinoctiall line, are nowe ascribed to the kyngdome of *Melinde*, whose inhabitauntes are accustomed to traffike with the nations of *Arabie*, and theyr kyng is ioyned in frendshipp with the kyng of *Portugale*, and payeth tribute to *Prestre John*.

The other Ethiopia, called *Ethiopia Interior* (that is) the inner Ethiopia, is not yet knowne for the greatnesse thereof, but onely by the sea coastes: yet is it described in this maner. First from the Equinoctiall towarde the South, is a great region of Ethiopians, which bringeth forth whyte *Elephantes*, *Tigers*, and the beastes called *Rhinocerontes*. Also a region that bringeth forth plentie of *Cinamome*, lying betwene the  
byaunches

The Ilande of  
*Meroe*.

The queene of  
*Saba*.

*Prestre John*  
Emperour of  
Ethiopia.

People of the  
east syde of  
Africa.

*Ethiophagi*.

People with  
out heades.

*Myrr.*  
*Azania*.

Regnum  
*Melinde*.

*Ethiopia In-*  
*terior*.

White Ele-  
phants.

braunches of Nilus. Also the kyngdome of *Habech* or *Habasia*, a region of Christian men, lying both on this syde and beyonde *Nilus*. Here are also the *Ethiophians*, called *Ichthiophagi* (that is) such as lyue only by fysh, & were sometymes suboued by the warres of great Alexander. Furthermoze the *Ethiophians* called *Rhassii*, and *Anthropophagi*, that are accustomed to mans flesh, inhabite the regions neare vnto the mountaynes called *Montes Luna*, (that is) the mountaynes of the *Doone*. *Gazatia*, is vnder the Tropicke of Capricorne. After this, foloweth the front of Affrike, the Cape of Buena Speranza, or Caput Bone Spei, (that is) the Cape of good hope, by the which they passe that sayle from Spaine to Calicut. But by what names the Capes and gulfes are called, forasmuche as the same are in euery globe and carde, it were here superfluous to rehearse them.

Some wypte that *Affrica* was so named by the Grecians, because it is without colde. For the Greeke letter *Alpha*, or *A*, signifyeth priuation, boyde, or without: and *Phrice*, signifyeth colde. For in deede although in the steade of wynter, they haue a cloudy and tempestious season, yet is it not colde, but rather smotheryng hotte, with also hotte shewes of rayne, and somewhere such scorchyng wyndes, that what by one meanes and other, they seeme at certayne tymes to lyue as it were in fornares, and in maner alredy halfe way in Purgatorie or hell. *Gemma Phrisus* wypteth, that in certayne partes of *Affrica*, (as in *Atlas* the greater) the ayre in the nyght season is seene shynnyng with many strange speers and flames ryllyng in maner as hygge as the *Doone*: and that in the element are sometyme hearde as it were the sounde of pyppes, trumpettes, and drummes: Which noises may perhaps be caused by the vehement and sundry motions of suche fyre exhalations in the ayre, as we see the lyke in many experiences wrought by fyre, ayre, & winde. The holownesse also, & diuers reflexions and breaking of the cloudes, may be great causes hereof, beside the vehement cold of the middle region of the ayre, wherby the said fyre exhalations, ascendyng thither, are sodenly strycken backe with great force: For euen common and dayly experience teacheth vs, by the whysslyng of a burning Torche, what noyse fyre maketh in the ayre, & much moze where it stryueth when it is inclosed with ayre, as appeareth in gunnes,

and

Habasia.

Ichthiophagi.

Anthropophagi.

Montes Luna.

Gazatia,

Cape bone

Africa without cold.

The wynter of Africa.

Flames of fyre &amp; noyse in the ayre.

The myddle region of the ayre is cold.

The stryfe of elementes.

## The seconde viage to Guinea.

and as the like is seene in only aire enclosed, as in Organ pipes, and such other instrumentes that go by winde. For wynd (as say the Philosophers) is none other then aire vehemently moued, as we see in a payze of bellows, and such other.

Wynde.

The heate of the Moone.

The nature of the starres.

Some of our men of good credit that were in this last biage to Guinea, affirme earnestly that in the night season they felt a sensible heate to come from the beames of the Moone. The which thynge, although it be strange and insensible to vs that inhabite colde regions, yet doth it stand with good reason that it may so be, forasmuche as the nature of starres and planettes (as wyrteth Plinie) consisteth of fyre, and conteyneth in it a spirite of life, which cannot be without heate.

And that the Moone geueth heate vppon the earth, the Prophet Dauid seemeth to confirme in his .Cxxi. Psalm. where speakyng of such men as are defended from euils by goddes protection, he sayeth thus: *Per diem Sol non exuret te, nec Luna per noctem.* That is to say, In the day the Sunne shall not burne thee, nor the Moone by nyght.

Syoutes of water falling out of the aire.

Caractes of heauen.

They say furthermore that in certayne places of the sea, they saw certayne streames of water, which they call spoutes, falling out of the ayre into the sea, and that some of these are as hye as the great pylers of Churches: Insomuch that sometymes they fall into shypes, and put them in great daunger of drownyng. Some phantasie that these should be the Caractes of Heauen, whiche were all opened at Noes fludde. But I thynke them rather to be such fluxions and eruptions as Aristotle in his booke *de Mundo* saith, to chaunce in the sea. For speakyng of suche strange thynge as are seene often tymes in the sea, he wyrteth thus. Sometymes also euen in the sea are seene euaporations of fyre, and suche eruptions and breakyng forth of springes, that the mouthes of ryuers are opened, Whylepooles, and fluxions are caused of such other vehement motions, not only in the myddest of the sea, but also in creekes and streyghtes. At certayne tymes also, a great quantitie of water is sodenly lyfted vp and carryed about with the Moone. &c. By whiche woordes of Aristotle it doth appeare that suche waters may bee lyfted vp in one place at one tyme, and sodenly fall downe in an other place at an other tyme. And hereunto perhappes parteyneth

Veherent motions in the sea.

it that Rycharde Chaunceller tolde me that he harde *Sebastian Cabot* reporte, that (as farre as I remember) eyther about the coastes of *Brasile* or *Rio de Plata*, his shyppe or pinnesse was suddaynly lyfted from the sea, and cast vpon lande, I wotte not howe farre. The whiche thyng, and suche other lyke wonderfull and straunge wooorkes of nature whyle I consyder, and call to remembraunce the narrownesse of mans vnderstandyng and knowledge, in comparyson of her myghtie power, I can but ceasse to marueyle and confesse with *Plinie*, that nothyng is to her impossible, the leaste parte of whose power is not yet knownen to men. Many thynges moze our men sawe and consydered in this vyage, worthy to be noted, whereof I haue thought good to put some in memorie, that the reader may aswell take pleasure in the varietie of thynges, as knowledge of the historie. Among other thynges therefore touchyng the maners and nature of the people, this may seeme straunge, that they? princes and noble men vse to pounce and rase they? skynnes with pretie knottes in dyuers formes, as it were branched damaske, thynkyng that to be a decent ornamēt. And albeit they go in maner all naked, yet are many of them, and especially their women, in maner laden with collars, bzaletttes, hoopes, and chaines, eyther of golde, copper, or Iuery. I my selfe haue one of they? bzaletttes of Iuery, waying two pound and .vi. ounces of Troy weyght, whiche make .xxxviii. ounces: this one of they? women dyd weare vpon her arme. It is made of one whole peece of the byggest part of the tooth, turned and somewhat carued, with a hole in the myddest, wherein they put they? handes to weare it on they? arme. Some haue of euery arme one, and as many on they? legges, wherewith some of them are so galded, that although they are in maner made lanie therby, yet wyl they by no meanes leaue them of. Some weare also on they? legges great shackels of bygght copper, whiche they thynke to be no lesse comely. They weare also collars, bzaletttes, garlandes, and gyrdels, of certayne blew stones lyke beades. Lykewyle some of they? women weare on they? bare armes certayne foresleeues, made of the plates of beaten golde. On they? fingers also they weare ringes, made of golden wyres, with a knotte or wreathe, lyke vnto that which chyldren make in a ryng of a rythe. Among other thinges

a straunge  
thyng.

The power of  
nature.

They rase  
they? skynnes.

fyne iewelless.

A bzalett.

Shackels.

Rynges.

of



## The seconde viage to Guinea.

**Dogs chaires  
of golde.**

of gold that our men bought of them for exchange of their wares, were certayne dogges chaynes and collers.

**A musk cat.**

They are very ware people in theyr bargaynyng, and wyl not lose one sparke of golde of any value. They vse weyghtes and measures, and are very circumspect in occupying the same. They that shall haue to do with them, must vse them gently: for they wyl not traffike or byng in any wares if they be euill vsed. At the fyrst byage that our men had into these parties, it so chaunced, that at theyr departure from the fyrst place where they dyd trafike, one of them eyther stole a muske catte, or tooke her away by force, not mistrustynge that that shoulde haue hyndred theyr bargaynyng in another place whither they intended to go. But for all the haile they coulde make with full sayles, the same of theyr mysusage so pꝛeuented them, that the people of that place also, offended thereby, would byng in no wares: Inso muche that they were enforced eyther to restore the cat, or pay for her at theyr pꝛice, before they coulde trafike there.

**Their houses.**

Theyr houses are made of foure postes or trees, and couered with bowes.

**Their feeding**

Theyr common feedynge is of rootes, and suche fyshes as they take, whereof they haue great plentie. There are also such sleeing fyshes as are seene in the sea of the West Indies. Our men salted of theyr fyshes, hoppyng to pꝛouide store thereof: but they wolde take no salte, and must therefore be eaten soothwith as some saye. Howe be it, other affirme that if they be salted immediately after they be taken, they wyl last vncorrupted .x. or .xii. dayes. But this is more straunge, that part of such flesh as they carped with them out of England, and putrified there, became sweete againe at their returne to the climate of temperate regions.

**A strange  
thyng.**

**Their bread.**

They vse also a strange makynge of bread, in this maner. They grynde betweene two stones with theyr handes as muche corne as they thynke may suffice theyr famylie, and when they haue thus brought it to floure, they put thereto a certayne quantite of water, and make therof very thin dough, which they stick vpon some post of theyr houses, where it is baked by the heate of the Sunne: So that when the maister of the house or any of his famely wyl eate thereof, they take it downe, and eate it.

They

They haue very fayre wheate, the eare whereof is two handes full in length, and as hygge as a great Bulrush, and almost foure inches about where it is hyggest. The stemme or straw, seemeth to be almost as hygge as the litle fynger of a mans hande, or litle lesse. The graynes of this wheate are as hygge as our peason, rounde also, and very whyte, and somewhat shynnyng, lyke pearles that haue lost theyr colour. Almost all the substance of them turneth into floure, and maketh litle branne or none. I told in one eare two hundred and threescore graynes. The eare is inclosed in thre blades longer then it selfe, and of two ynches broade a peece. And by this fruitfulnessse the Sunne seemeth partly to recompence such greefes and molestations as they otherwise receiue by the feruent heate thereof. It is doubtlesse a worthy contemplation to consider the contrary effectes of the Sunne: or rather the contrary passions of suche thynges as receiue the influence of his beames, eyther to theyr hurt or benefyte. Theyr drynke is eyther water, or the iuice that droppeth from the cut branches of the barren Date trees, called *Palmites*. For eyther they hang great gourdes at the sayde branches euery euening, and let them so hang al night, or els they set them on the ground vnder the trees, that the droppes may fall therein. They say that this kynde of drynke is in taste muche like vnto whey, but somewhat sweeter, and moze pleasant. They cut the branches euery euening, because they are seared vp in the day by the heate of the Sunne. They haue also great Beanes as hygge as chestnuts, and very hard with a shel in the steade of a hulke.

The Sunne.

Theyr drynke.

Many thynges moze myght be sayde of the maners of the people, and of the woonders and monstrous thynges that are engendred in *Africke*. But it shall suffice to haue sayde thus much of suche thynges as our men partly sawe, and partlye brought with them.

And whereas before speakyng of the fruite of graynes, I described the same to haue holes by the syde (as in deede it is, as it is brought hither) yet was I afterward enfourmed, that those holes were made to put srynges or twygges throughe the fruite, thereby to hang them vp to drye at the Sunne. They growe not past a foote and a halfe, or two foote from the grounde, and are as red as blood when they are geathered.

Graynes.

The:

## The seconde viage to Guinea.

The graynes them selues, are called of the physitions, *Grana Paradisi*.

Shelles that  
cleane to hyppes.

At theyr commynge home, the keeles of theyr hyppes were marueylously ouergrown with certayne shelles of two inches length and more, as thicke as they coulde stande, and of suche byggenesse that a man may put his thumme in the mouches of them. They certaynely affirme that in these there groweth a certayne stymy substance, whiche at the length slyppynge out of the shell and fallynge in the sea, becommeth those foules which we cal Barnacles. The lyke shelles haue been seene in hyppes returnynge from *Iselande*, but these shels were not past halfe an inch in length. Of the other that came from *Guinea*, I saw the *Hyymrose* lying in the Docke, and in maner couered with the sayd shelles, which in my iudgement shoulde greatly hynder her saylynge. Theyr hyppes were also in many places eaten with the wormes called *Bromas* or *Bissas*, whereof mention is made in the *Decades*. These creepe betweene the planks, whiche they eate through in many places.

Barnacles.

Bromas.

A secrete.

Among other thynges that chaunced to them in this viage, this is worthy to be noted, that whereas they sayled thither in seuen weekes, they coulde returne in no lesse space then twentie weekes. The cause whereof they say to be this: That about the coast of *Cabo Verde*, the wind is euer at the East, by reason whereof they were enforced to sayle farre out of theyr course into the mayne Ocean, to fynde the wynde at the West to bying them home. There died of our men at this last viage about twentie and foure, whereof many died at theyr returne into the clyme of the colde regions, as betweene the Ilandes of *Soria* and *Englande*. They brought with them certayne blacke slaues, wherof some were tall and strong men, & coulde well agree with our meates and drynkes. The colde and moyst ayre doth somewhat offend them. Yet doubtlesse men that are borne in hotte regions, may better abyde cold, then men that are borne in colde regions may abyde heate, for as inuche as vehement heate resolueth the radicall moysture of mens bodies, as colde constrayneth and preserueth the same.

The death of  
our men.

Colde may be  
better abiden  
then heate.

This is also to be considered as a secrete woork of nature, that throughtout all *Affricke* vnder the *Equinoctiall* line, and neare

neare about the same, on both sydes, the regions are extreme hotte, and the people very blacke. Whereas contrarily such regions of the West Indies as are vnder the same lyne, are very temperate, and the people neyther blacke, nor with curide and thoyte wooll on theyr heades, as haue they of Affrike, but of the colour of an Olyue, with long and blacke heare on their heades: the cause of whiche varietie is declared in dyuers places in the Decades.

It is also woorthie to be noted that some of them that were at this vyage tolde me: That is, that they ouertooke the course of the Sunne, so that they had it North from them at noone, the xiiii. day of Marche. And to haue sayde thus muche of these vyages, it may suffice.

Of the Dooues of the Ilande  
of Madera.



*Adamastus* wypteth, that before the Portugals came to this Ilande, it was ouergrown with trees, and uninhabited, yet were there many beastes, and great plentie of Dooues, which were utterly without feare of men, bycause they had neuer seene any men before, nor yet were accustomed to be put in feare: insomuche that they stood still whyle snares were put about theyr neckes with long roddes and poles: the whiche thying he sayeth, he hath also seene in other Ilandes. There are many ryche men in this Ilande, and great aboundance of fleshe, bycause the whole Ilande is in maner one gardeyne,



## The second vyage to Guinea.

Of the Ilande of Sainct Thomas, vnder  
the Equinoctiall line.



The chiefeſt occupation and liuing of the inhabitants of this Ilande, is the making of ſuger, which they ſell peereſly to the ſhippes that come for it out of Spaine and Portugale, laden with buttes of meale and flour, alſo wyne, oyle, cheeſe, leather, ſwoordes, coppes of glaſſe, beades, certeyne ſcaruels of the fine white earth called *Porcellana*, of the whiche are made the earthen diſhes of the woozke of *Maïolica*. And if it were not that ſuche victualles and prouiſions were brought them out of Spaine and Portugale, the whyte merchantes which dwell in that Ilande (parteynyng to the dominion of the kyng of Portugale) ſhould not be able to lyue there, for ſo much as they are not accuſtomed to eate ſuch meates as doe the *Ethiopians* or *Negros*. And therefore the Portugales which inhabite this Ilande, haue certayne blacke ſlaues of *Guinea*, *Benin*, and *Manicongo*, whiche they ſet to tyll and labour the grounde, and make ſuger. Among theſe whyte inhabitants, there are many riche men, which haue 150. or 200. and ſome 300. blacke ſlaues of men and women, to tyll the grounde, and doe other laborious woozkes. This Ilande was diſcouered a hundred peeres ſince, by the nauigations of the Portugales, and was vnknewen to the olde writers. It lyeth in the great gulfe of *Aſſrike*, in the 30. degree of longitude from the Weſt to the Eaſt, & is in maner rounde. It is of largeneſſe from ſyde to ſyde, 12. Italian myles, (that is to ſay) one degree. The horizontall line of the Ilande paſſeth by the two poles, *Artike*, and *Antartike*, and hath euer the day equall with the nyght, without any ſenſible difference, whether the Sunne be in *Cancer* or in *Cappricorne*. The ſtarre of the pole *Artike*, is there inuiſible: but the wardens are ſeene ſomewhat to moue about: & the ſtarres called the *Croſſe* are ſeene very hygh. Of this Ilande, with the other landes and Ilandes lying betweene Portugale and the ſame, a certeyne pplotte of Portugale hath written a goodly vyage to *Conſe Rimondo*.

**F I N I S.**

*The Navigation and vyages of*  
*Lewes Vertomannus, Gentelman of the citie of*  
*Rome, to the regions of Arabia, Egypte, Persia,*  
*Syria, Ethiopia, and East India, both within*  
*and without the ryuer of Ganges. &c. In the*  
*yeere of our Lorde. 1503. Conteynyng*  
*many notable and straunge thinges,*  
*both hystoricall and*  
*naturall.*

*Translated out of Latine into*  
*Englyshe, by Riccharde*  
*Eden.*

*In the yeere of our Lord. 1576.*

*33.ii.*

The Preface of the  
Authour.



Here haue ben many before me, who  
to know the miracles of the worlde,  
haue with diligent studie read dyuers  
Authours which haue wrytten of such  
thinges. But other giuing moze cre-  
dite to the lyuely voyce, haue been  
moze desirous to know the same by  
relation of such as haue traueyled in  
those countreys, & seene such thinges  
whereof they make relation, for that in many bookes, geathered  
of vncertaine aucthoritie, are myxt false thinges with true. Other  
there are so greatly desirous to know the trueth of these thinges,  
that they can in no wyse be satisfied, vntyll by theyr owne expe-  
rience they haue founde the trueth, by voyages and peregrinati-  
ons into straunge countreys and people, to know theyr maners,  
fashions, and customes, with dyuers thinges there to be seene:  
wherein, the only readyng of bookes, could not satisfie their thirst  
of suche knowledge, but rather increased the same, in so much  
that they feared not with losse of goods and daunger of lyfe  
to attempte great vyages to dyuers countreys, with witnesse  
of theyr eyes to see that they so greatly desired to knowe. The  
whiche thyng among other chaunced vnto me also. For as  
often as in the bookes of hystories and Cosmographie, I  
read of such marueylous thinges whereof they make menti-  
on (especially of thinges in the East partes of the worlde) there  
was nothyng that coulde pacifie my vngquiet mynde, vntyll  
I had with myne eyes seene the trueth thereof. I knowe that  
some there are indued with hygh knowledge, mountyng vnto  
the heauens, whiche will contempne these our wrytinges, as  
base and humble, bycause we doe not here, after their maner, with  
hygh and subtile inquisition intreate of the motions and dispositi-  
ons of the starres, and gyue reason of theyr woorkyng on the  
earth, with their motions, retrogradations, directions, mutati-  
ons, epicicles, reuolutions, inclinacions, diuinacions, reflexions,  
and

and suche other partepnyng to the science of Astrologie : which certepnely we doe not condampne, but greatly prayse. But measuring vs with our owne foote, we will leaue that heauie burden of heauen to the strong shoulders of Atlas and Hercules : and only creepng bypon the earth, in our owne person beholde the situations of landes and regions, with the maners and customes of men, and variable fourmes, shapcs, natures, and proprieties of beastes, frutes, and trees, especially suche as are among the *Arabians, Persians, Indians, and Ethiopians*. And whereas in the searchyng of these thinges, we haue (thanked be God) satisfied our desire, we thinke neuerthelesse that we haue done little, excepte we should communicate to other, such thinges as we haue seene and had experience of, that they lykewyse by the readyng thereof, may take pleasure, for whose sakes we haue wrytten this long and dangerous discourse, of thinges which we haue seene in dyuers regions and sectes of men, desirng nothyng more then that the trueth may be knowen to them that desyre the same.

But what incommodities and troubles chaunced vnto me in these viages, as hunger, thirst, colde, heate, warres, captiuitie, terrours, and dyuers other suche daungers, I will declare by the way in theyr due places.



The first Chapter, of the nauigation from  
Venice to Alexandria  
in Egypte.



If any man shall demaunde of me the cause of this my byage, certepnely I can shewe no better reason then is the ardent desire of knowledge, which hath moued many other to see the woꝝde and miracles of God therein. And forasmuch as other knowen partes of the woꝝde, haue heretofore ben sufficiently trauncypled of other, I was determynd to visite and describe suche partes as here before haue not been sufficiently knowen: and therefore with the grace of God, and calling vppon his holy name to prosper our enterpryse, departyng from Venice with prosperous wyndes, in fewe dayes we arryued at the citie of Alexandria in Egypte: where the desyre we had to knowe thinges moze straunge and further of, would not permit vs to tarrie long. And therefore departyng from thence, and saylyng by the ryuer of Nilus, we came to the citie of new Babylon, commonly called *Cayrus* or *Alcayr*.

The same was  
also called  
Memphis in  
egipte past.

Of the citie named Babylon, or Alcayr,  
a citie of Nilus in Egypt. Cap. 2.



When we arryued there, I marueyled moze then I am able to say: yet when I approached so neare the citie that I myght wel see into it, it seemed to me much inferiour to the reporte and fame that was thereof: for the greatnesse thereof, seemed nothyng agreeable to the byuite, and appeared no moze in circuite then the citie of Rome, although muche moze peopled, and better inhabited. But the large fieldes of the sub-urbes haue deceyued many, beyng disperfed with in maner innumerable villages, whiche some haue thought to haue been  
parte

part of the citie, whiche is nothyng so. For those villages and dispersed houses, are two or thre myles from the citie, and round about it on euery syde. Neyther is it here needefull to spende muche tyme in declaryng of theyr maners, or religion, forasmuch as it is well knowen, that all the inhabitantes of those regions are Bahumetans, and Mamalukes, whiche are suche Christians as haue forsaken theyr sayth, to serue the Bahumetans and Turkes: Although commonly they that serued the Soltan of Babylon in tyme past, before the Soltan was overcome by the Turke, were called *Mamaluchi*, as they that serue the Turke, are called *Ienezari*. But these Mamaluke Bahumetans, are subiecte to the Soltan of Syria.

Mamalukes.  
Bahume-  
tans.

Jenezari.

Of the cities of Berynto, Tripoli,  
and Antioch. Cap. 3.



he riches, fayrenesse, and magnificence of Babylon aforesayde, and the straunge sculdiers Mamalukes, as things known, we will now pretermite. Therfore departing from Babylon, and returnyng to Alexandria, where we agayne entered into our sea, we came to Berynto, a citie on the sea coast of Syria Phœnicia, Syria Phœnicia.

where we spent many dayes. This is inhabited of Bahumetans, and plentifull of all thinges. The sea beatech on the walles of the towne: it is not compassed with walles, but on the West syde towarde the sea. Here founde we nothyng memorabable, but only an olde place ruinate, where they say that Sainct George deliuered the kynges daughter from a cruell Dragon, whiche he slue, and restored her to her father. Departyng from hence, we sayled to Tripoli. This is a citie of Syria, Eastwarde from Berynto two dayes saylyng. The inhabitauntes are subiecte to the Lieutenant or gouernour of Syria, and are Bahumetans. The soile is very fertile, and for the great trafique of merchandises, incredibly aboundeth with all thinges. Departyng from thence, we came to the citie Comagen of Syria, commonly called Alepo or Alepo, and named of our men Antioch.

Sainct George  
and the Dia-  
gon.

Tripoli.

Alepo or  
Antioch.

## Lewes Vertomannus.

The mount  
Taurus.  
The mount  
Olympus.  
Azamia.  
Mesopota-  
mia.  
Persia.

It is a goodly citie, situate vnder the mount *Taurus*, and is subiecte to the Licutenant or Soltan of Babilon. There be the scales or ladders (for so they call them) of the Turkes and Syrians, for it is neare the mount of *Olympus*. It is a famous martetowne of the *Azamians* and *Persians*. The *Azamians*, are people of *Mesopotamia*, neare vnto the *Persians*, & of the religion of *Mahumet*. From thence, is the iourney to the Turkes and Syrians, and especially of them that come from the part of *Mesopotamia*, named *Azamia*.

### Of the cities of Aman and Menin. Cap. 4.

*Damasco.*



Departing from thence, we came to *Damasco*, in ten dayes iourney. But before you come there, in the myd way, is a citie named *Aman*, where is great aboundaunce of gossampine or cotton wooll, and all maner of pleasant fruites. Going a little from *Damasco*, the space of fixe myles, is a citie

named *Menin*, situate on the declining of a mountayne. It is inhabited of Christians of the Greeke profession, who also obaye to the gouernour of *Damasco*. There are seene two fayre Temples, which (as the inhabitantes reporte) were builded by *Helena*, the mother of the Emperour *Constantine*. There are all kyndes of fruites, and goodly Grapes, and Gardens watered with continuall sprynges. Departing from thence, we came to the citie of *Damasco*.

Saint Helene  
the mother of  
Constantine  
the Emperour.

Of the citie of Damasco,  
Chap. 5.



It is in maner incredible, and passeth all beleefe, to thinke howe sayre the citie of Damasco is, and how fertile is the soyle. And therefore allured by the marueilous beautie of the citie, I remayned there many dayes, that learnyng theyr language, I myght knowe the maners of the people. The inhabitants are *Mahumetans* and *Mamalukes*, with also many *Christians*, *Christians* lyuyng after the maner of the *Greekes*. By the way, it shall not be from my purpose to speake of theyr *Hexarchatus*: the whiche (as we haue sayde) is subiect to the *Lienutenant*, *bice-roye*, or *gouernoure* of *Syria*, whiche some call *Sorya*. There is a very stronge fortresse or *Castell*, whiche a certayne *Elthruscan*, borne in the citie of *Florence*, buylded at his owne charges, while he was there y<sup>e</sup> chiefe *Hexarchatus* or *gouernour*, as appeareth by the flower of a *Lilie* there grauen in marble, being the armes of the citie of *Florence*. The citie is compassed with a deepe fosse or *diche*, with foure goodly high towres. They passe the dyche with a hangyng bydge, whiche is lyfted by or lette downe at theyr pleasure. There is all kynde of great arillerie and munition, with also a garde of fyftie *Mamalukes*, whiche dayly assyste the *gouernoure* or *captayne* of the *castell*, and receyue theyr *stipende* of the *gouernoure* or *biceroye* of *Syria*. Fortune seemed to geue the *Hexarchatus* or *pryncipate* to the sayde *Florentine*, whiche we wyll declare as we haue hearde of *chinhabitauntes*. They saye that popson was once geuen to the *Soltan* of *Syria*: and when he sought for remedie, he chaunced to be healed by the sayde *Florentine*, whiche was one of the companie of the *Mamalukes*. After whiche good fortune, he grewe dayely in fauoure with the sayde *Prince*, who for rewarde gaue hym that citie: where also



also the sayde Florentine buylded a Castell, and dyed : whom to this daye the Citisens honour for a sainte, for sauyng the lyfe of theyr pynce : after whose death, the gouernment returned to the Syrians . They saye furthermoze that the Soltan is well beloued of his lordes and pynces, for that he easely graunteth them principates and gouernementes : yet with condition to paye peerely many thousandes of those peeces of gold which they call *Saraphos* . They that denye to paye the summe agreed of, are in daunger of imminent death . Of the chiefe noble men or gouernoures .x. or .xii. euer assiste the Pynce . And when it pleaseth hym to extorte a certayne summe of golde of his noble men or merchauntes (for they vse great tyrannye and oppression by the iniuries and thefte of the *Mamalukes* agaynst the *Mahumetans*) the Pynce geueth two letters to the captayne of the Castell . In the one is contayned, that with an oration he inuite to the Castell suche as pleaseth hym . In the other is declared the mynde of the Pynce, what he demaundeth of his subiectes . When the letters be read, withal expedition they accomplishe his commaundement, be it ryght or wrong, without respecte . This meanes the Pynce inuented to extorte mony . Yet sometymes it commeth to passe, that the noble men are of suche strength, that they wyl not come when they are commaunded, knowyng that the tyrant wyl offer them violence. And therefore oftentymes when they knowe that the captayne of the Castell wyl call them, they flee into the dominions of the Turke . This haue we geathered as touchyng theyr manners, we haue also obserued, that the watchemen in the towres, do not geue warnyng to the garde with lyuely voyce, but with drummes, the one answearyng the other by course . But if any of the watchmen be so sleepe, that in the moment of an houre he aunswear not to the sounde of the watche, he is immediately committed to prison for one whole yeere.

A strange manner to demaund a subside.

Of suche thynges as are seene in the  
citie of *Damasco*. Cap. 6.



After that I haue declared the maners of  
the Princes of *Damasco*, it seemeth agree-  
able to speake of some suche thynges as I  
haue seene there. And therefore to speake  
first of the excellencie and beautie of the ci-  
tie, it is certaynely marueylously wel peo-  
pled, and greatly frequented, and also mar-  
ueylous ryche. It is of goodly buildyng, and exceedeth in abun-  
dance and fruitfulness of all thynges, and especiallpe of all  
kynde of victuales, flesh, corne, and frutes, as freshe damascene  
grapes all the whole yeere: also Pomegranets, Oranges, Ly-  
mons, and excellent Olive trees. Lykewyse Roses, both white  
and red, the fayrest that euer I sawe: and all kyndes of sweete  
apples, yet peares and peaches very vnusauery. The cause  
wherof, they say to be to much moysture. A goodly and cleare  
riuer runneth about the citie: & therfore in maner in euery house  
are seene fountaynes of curious worke embossed and grauen.  
Theyr houses outwardly are not very beautifull, but inward-  
ly marueylously adourned with variable wooikes of the stone  
called *Ophis*, or serpentine Marble. Within the towne are ma-  
ny temples or churches, which they call *Moscheas*. But that  
which is most beautifull of all other, is buylded after the maner  
of Sainct Peters church in Rome, if you respect the greatnesse,  
exceptyng this, that in the myddle is no rooffe or conerture, but  
is all open: but about the rest of the temple, it is altogether  
bauled. There they obserue religiously the bodpe of the holy  
Prophet *Zacharie*. The temple hath also foure great double  
gates of metal, very fayre, and many goodly fountaynes within  
it. There are yet seene the ruins of many decayed houses, which  
were once inhabited by the Christians. Those houses they cal  
*Canonicas*, and are of wooke both carued and imbossed.

Their church-  
es.

The bodie of  
the Prophet  
*Zacharias*.

There

The place of  
the conuersion  
of Sainct  
Paule.

There is also to be seene the place where (as they say) our saul-  
our Chrift spake to Sainct Paule these wordes, Paule, Paule,  
why doest thou persecute me .&c. This place is without the ci-  
tie about a myle.

The prison of  
Sainct Paule.

There are buried the Christians that die in the citie. There  
is seene also the Tower in whiche Sainct Paule was commit-  
ted to pysson, and ioyneth to the wall of the citie. But that place  
of the Tower where Paule was brought forth by the Angell,  
the *Mahumetans* do not attempt to close vp: Saying, that yf it  
be closed ouer nyght, they fynde it open agayne in the morning.  
I saw also there, those houses in the whiche (as they say) *Cain*  
slue his brother *Abell*. These are on the other part of the citie  
a myle of, in a certayne valley, yet on the syde of a hyll. But let  
vs nowe returne to the stranger *Solgiers*, which they call *Ma-*  
*maluchos*, and to speake somewhat howe licenciously they lyue  
in that citie.

The place wher  
*Cain* slue *Abel*.

Of the Mamalukes of *Damasco*, Cap. 7.



The *Mama-*  
*lukes* wages.

The *Mamalukes* therefore, are that kynde of  
men, which haue forsaken our fayth, and as  
slaves are bought by the gouerner of *Syria*.  
They are very actiue, & brought by both in  
learnynge and warlike discipline, vntil they  
come to great perfection. As wel the litle  
as þe great, without respect, receiue stipend  
of the gouernour: which for euery moneth amounteth to syxe of  
those peeces of gold which they call *Saraphos*, besyde the meate  
and drynke of them selues and theyr seruantes, and also prouisi-  
on for theyr horses. And the more valiaunt they be, & of greater  
actiuitie, they are hyred for the greater wages. They walke not  
in the citie but by two or thre togeather, for it is counted dis-  
honour for any of them to walke without a companion. And if by  
the waye they chaunce to meete with two or thre women (for  
they lay wayte to carry for them about suche houses whither  
they know the women resort) lycence is graunted them, as they  
by chaunce fynd meete with them, to byng them into certayne  
taverns, where they abuse them. When the *Mamalukes* attempt

Howe the *Mama-*  
*lukes* abuse  
women.

to descouer theyr faces (for they go with theyr faces couered) they strue with them because they wyl not be knowen . But when the *Mamalukes* perspste wantonly to discouer them, they saye thus vnto them , Is it not enough for you that you haue abused our bodies as pleaseth you, but that you wyl also discouer our faces? Then the *Mamalukes* suffer them to departe . But sometyme it chaunceth, that when they thynke to prostitute the daughter of some gentelmen or noble men, they committe the facte with theyr owne wyues : whiche thynge chaunced whilest I was there . The women beautifie and garnishe them selues as muche as any . They vse sylken apparell, and couer them with cloth of golampine, in maner as fyne as sylke. They weare white buskyns, and shooes of red or purple coloure . They garnyshe theyr heades with many iewelless and earepynges, and weare rynges and braslettess . They mary as often as them lysteth : for when they are weary of theyr fyrst maryage, they go to the chiefe prest of their religion (whom they call *Cady*) and make request to hym to be diuorced from theyr fyrst maryage . This diuorsment in theyr language is called *Talacare* : whiche graunted by the hygh Priest or Bysshop, they begyn newe maryages . The lyke libertie is also graunted to the husbandes . Some thynke that the *Mahumetans* haue fyue or syxe wyues togeather, which I haue not obserued : but as farre as I coulde perceyue they haue but two or thre . They eate openly, specially in the markettes or sayres, and there dresse they all theyr meates . They eate hoxles, Cammellles, Bussles, Gotes, and suche other beastes . They haue great abundaunce of freshe cheese . They that sell mylke, dzyue about with them xl. or .l. Gotes, whiche they byng into the houses of them that wyl bye mylke, euen by into theyr chambers, although they be three rooffes hygh, and there mylke them, to haue it freshe and newe . These Gotes haue theyr eares a spanne long, many bidders or pappes, and are very fruitefull : There is great abundaunce of muskeromes, for sometymes there are seene .xx. or .xxx. Cammellles laden with muskeromes, and yet in the space of thre dayes they are all solde . They are brought from the mountaynes of *Armenia*, and from *Asia* the lesse, whiche is now called *Turchia* or *Natolia*, or *Anatolia*.

The women of  
Damasco.

Change of  
husbandes and  
wyues.

The *Mahumetans*  
wyues.

Gotes mylke.

Muskeromes.  
Asia the lesse  
nowe named  
Natolia or  
Turchia.

The



The *Mabumetans* vse long vestures and loose, both of sylke and cloth. The most part vse hole of gossampine cloth, and whyte shooes. When any of the *Mabumetans* by chaunce meeteth with any of the *Mamalukes*, although the *Mabumetan* be the woorthyer person, yet geueth he place and reuerence to the *Mamaluke*, who otherwyle woulde geue hym the Bastonado, and beate hym with a staffe. The *Christians* also keepe there many wate houses of merchaundies, where they haue dyuers sortes of sylkes and beluet: but the *Christians* are there euyll entreated of the *Mabumetans*.

Christians of  
Damasco.

The iorney from Damasco to Mecha, and of the  
maners of the Arabians. Chap. 8.



After that I haue largely spoken of Damas-  
co, I wyl proceede to the rest of my byage.  
Therfore in the yeere of our lorde. 1503. the  
eight daye of the moneth of Appyll, when I  
had byred certayne Cammelles (which they  
call *Carauanas*) to go to Mecha, and beyng  
then ignorant of the customes and maners  
of them in whose compayne I shoulde go, I entred familiaritie  
and frendshyppe with a certayne captayne *Mamaluke*, of them  
that had forsaken our sayth, with whom beyng agreed of  
the price, he prepared me apparell lyke unto that whiche the  
*Mamalukes* vse to weare, and geuyng me also a good horse, ac-  
compayed me with the other *Mamalukes*. This (as I haue  
sayde) I obtayned with great cost, and many gyftes whiche I  
gaue hym. Thus enter yng to the iorney, after the space of thre  
dayes, we came to a certayne place named *Mezaris*, where we  
remayned thre dayes, that the merchautes which were in our  
company myght prouide thynges necessarie, as specially Ca-  
mels, and dyuers other thynges. There is a certayne Prince  
whom they cal *Zambe*, of great power in the countrey of Arabia:  
he had thre brethren and foure chyldren. He norretheth fourtie  
thousand horses, ten thousand mares, & foure thousand Camels.

Carauana, a  
compaine of  
Cameles.

*Mamaluchi*  
renegadi.

*Mezaris*.

The prince  
*Zambe* in  
Arabia.

The

The countrey where he keepeth the heardes of these beastes is large, of two dayes iorney. This Prince Zambei is of so great power, that he keepeth warre with the Soltan of Babylon, the gouernour of Damasco, and the prince of Ierusalem al at once. In the tyme of haruest and geatheryng of frutes, he is geuen wholly to praye and robbing, and with great subtiltie deceyuethe the Arabians: for when they thynke hym to be a myle or two of, he is with them sodenly betymes in the moornyng: and inuadyng theyr landes, carryeth away theyr frutes, Wheate, and Barlye, euen as he fyndeth it in the sakes: and so lyueth contynually day and nyght with suche incurSIONS. When his Hares be weered with continuall runnyng, he resteth a whyle: and to refreshe them, geueth them Camelles mylke to drynke, to coole them after theyr great labour. Those Hares are of such marueylous swyftnesse, that when I presently sawe them, they seemed rather to flee then to runne. Note also that these Arabians ryde on hoxles onely couered with certayne clothes or matres, and weare none other besture then only an inwarde coate, or peticoate: for weapon, they vse a certayne long Dart of Reedes, of the length of ten or twelue cubites, poynted with Iron (after the maner of Iauelyns) and frynged with sylke. When they attempt any incurSIONs, they marche in suche order, that they seeme to go in troupes: they are of despicable and litle stature, and of coloure betweene yealow and blacke, which some call Oliuastro. They haue the voyces of women, and the heare of theyr head long and blacke, and layde out at large. They are of greater multitude then a man woulde beleue, and are among them selues at contynual stryfe and warre. They inhabit the mountaynes, and haue certayne tymes appoynted to robberye: for this purpose they obserue especially the tyme, when they are certayne of the passage of the Pilgrims and other that iorney that way to Mecha. Then lyke theues they lye in the way and robbe them. When they make these theeuish inuasions, they byyng with them theyr wyues, chyldren, families, and all the goodes they haue. Theyr houses they put vpon the Camelles, for other houses haue they none, but lyue onely in tentes and paylyngs as do our Souldiers.

The Prince of Ierusalem.

20 Prince a theefe.

Hares.

The Arabians lyue by robberyp.

Houses borne on Camels backs. Tentres and paylyngs.

Suche

Suche tabernacles are made of blacke wooll, and that rough and fylehy. But to returne to our viage. The clauenth day of April, departed from *MeZaris* a company of Camels (which companie they call the *Carauana*) to the number of .xxxi. thousand, with fourtie thousand men. But we were no more then three-score persons, of whom the *Mamalukes* had taken the charge to guyde and garde vs, and the *Carauana* of our companie, whiche the *Mamalukes* diuided into three partes, as some in the fronte, other in the myddest of the army, and other in a wyng after the maner of a halfe Hoone, inclosyng the whole armie: to in this order march the peregrines which iozney in these regions, as hereafter we wyll further declare. But you shall first vnderstand that *Damasco* is from *Mecha* fourtie dayes and fourtie nyghtes iozney. Departyng therefore from *MeZaris*, we continued our iozney that day, vntyll the .xxii. houre of the day. Then our Captayne and guide *Agmirus*, after he had geuen the watch woorde and signe, commaunded that euerye man shoulde rest and remayne in the place where the signe shoulde be geuen them. Therefore as soone as they hearde the signe by the sound of a Trumpet, they stayed, and after they had vnburdened theyr Camels, spent there two houres to victual them selues and theyr beastes: then the Captayne geuyng a newe signe, chargyng theyr Camelles agayne, they departed speedily from thence. Euery Camell hath at one feedyng fyue Barly loaves, rawe and not baked, as hygge as a Pomegranate. Takynge Horse, they continued that iozney the daye and nyght folowynge, vntyll .xxii. houres of the day, and at that houre they obetue the order whiche we haue spoken of herebefoze. Euery eyght daye they drawe water by dyggyng the grounde or sande: by the way neuerthelesse somewhere are founde Welles and Desternes. Also euery eyght daye, they rest theyr Camelles two dayes to recouer theyr strength. The Camelles are laden with incredible Burdens, and double charge: that is to meane, the burden of two great Oxes. They drynke but once in thre dayes.

This for feare  
of the Arabis  
ans.

From Damas  
co to Mecha.

Perhaps with  
the sounde of a  
Hoone or  
Trumpet.

Water.

The Burden of  
the Camelles.

Of the strength and valiantnesse of the  
Mamalukes. Cap.9.



When they tary and rest them at the waters  
aforsayde, they are euer enforced to conflice  
with a great multitude of the Arabians: but  
the battayle is for the most parte without  
bloodshed. For although we haue often  
tymes fought with them, yet was there on-  
ly one man slayne on our parte: for these A-  
rabians are so weake and feeble, that threescore Mamalukes,  
haue often put to the worst fiftie thousande Arabians. For these  
feeble Arabians, whiche are called *Pagani*, are not in strength  
or force of armes to be compared to the Mamalukes, of whose  
actiuitie I haue seene great experience: among the whiche this  
is one. A certayne Mamaluke layde an Apple vppon the head  
of his seruant, & at the distance of about .xii. or .xiii. pases, stroke  
it of from his head. I sawe lyke wyse an other, who ryding on  
a saddled horse with full course (for they vse saddles as we doe)  
ooke of the saddle from the horse styll runnyng: and for a space  
bearyng it on his head, put it agayne on the horse, styll continu-  
ing his full course.

The feeblenesse  
of the Arabians.  
*Pagani*.

The actiuitie  
of the Mamalukes.

Of the cities of Sodoma and Gomo-  
rtha. Cap.10.



Assyng the iourney of twelue dayes, we  
came to the playne or valley of Sodoma and  
Gomorha, where we founde it to be true  
that is written in holy scripture: for there  
yet remaine the ruynes of the destroyed  
citie, as witnesse of Gods wrath. We may  
assure me that there are threecities, and eche  
of them situate on the declining of thre hylles: and the ru-  
ines doe appeare about the heyght of thre or foure cubites.  
There is yet seene, I wotte neare what, lyke blood, or rather

Aaa.i.

lyke



lyke redde waxe myrte with earth . It is easie to beleue that those men were infected with most horrible vices, as testifieth the baren, drye, filthie, and unhollsome region, bitterly without water . Those people were once fedde with *Manna* : but when they abused the gyft of God, they were soze plagued . Departing twentie myles from these cities, about thirtie of our company perished for lacke of water, and dyuers other were ouerwhelmed with sande . Goyng somewhat further forwarde, we founde a little mountayne, at the foote whereof we founde water, and therfore made our abode there . The day folowynge early in the mornynge, came vnto vs. xiiii. thousandes Arabians, askyng money for the water which we had taken. We answered that we would paye nothyng, bycause it was gyuen vs by the goodnesse of God. Immediately we came to hand strokes, We geatherynge our selues togeather on the sayde mountayne, as in the safest place, vled our Camelles in the steede of a bulwarke, and placed the merchauntes in the myddest of the army (that is) in the myddest of the Camelles, whyle we fought manfully on euery syde . The battayle continued so long, that water fayled both vs and our enemies in the space of two dayes. The Arabians compassed about the mountayne, crying and threathynge that they would breake in among the Camelles : at the length to make an ende of the conflicte, our Captayne assembling the merchauntes, commaunded a thousande and two hundred peeces of golde to be giuen to the Arabians : who when they had receyued the money, sayde that the summe of ten thousande peeces of golde should not satisfie them for the water which we had drawen . Whereby we percepued that they began further to quarrell with vs, and to demaunde some other thing then money . Wherebypon incontinent our Captayne gaue commaundement, that whosoever in all our companie were able to beare armes, should not mount vppon the Camelles, but should with all expedition prepare them selues to fyght . The day folowynge in the mornynge, sendynge the Camelles before, and inclosynge our army, beyng about three hundred in number, we met with the enemies, and gaue the onset . In this conflicte, we lost only a man and a woman, and had none other damage : we slue of the Arabians a thousande and fyue hundred.

*Manna, thrust  
ned in bitter  
plagues.*

*Lacke of water.*

*Water secretly  
bought .  
So did Abias  
ham with the  
Philistians.*

*So doeth the  
Turke his army.*

med. Whereof you neede not marueyle, if you consider that they are unarmed; and weare only a thynne loose vesture, and are besyde almost naked: theyr horses also beyng as euyl furnished, and without saddles, or other furniture.

Of a mountayne inhabited with Iewes,  
and of the citie of Medinathalhabi,  
where Mahumet was buried.

Cap. II.



In the space of eyght dayes, we came to a mountayne whiche conteyneth in circuite ten or twelue myles. This is inhabited with Iewes, to the number of fyue thousand, or thereabout. They are of very litle stature, as of the heyght of fyue or sixe spannes, and some muche lesse. They haue

Iewes Dyg  
met.

small boyces lyke women, and of blacke colour, yet some blacker then other: They feede of none other meate then Goates fleshe. They are circumcised, and deny not them selues to bee Iewes. If by chaunce any Mahumetan come into their handes, they slay him alyue. At the foote of the mountayne, we founde a certayne hole, out of the whiche flowed aboundaunce of water. By spyndyng this oportunitie, we laded sixtiene thousand Camels: which thyng greatly offended the Iewes. They wandred in that mountayne, scattered lyke wyloe Goates or Whickettes, yet durst they not come downe, partly for feare, and partly for hatred agaynst the Mahumetans. Beneath the mountayne, are scene seuen or eyght thorne trees, very fayre, and in them we founde a payre of Turle Doves, which seemed to vs in maner a miracle, hauing before made so long iourneyes, and sawe neyther beast nor foule. Then procedyng two dayes iourney, we came to a certayne citie named Medinathalhabi: foure myles from the sayd citie, we founde a well. Here the Carauana (that is, the whole hearde of the Camelles) rested.

The citie of  
Medina al-  
babi,

Agg ii.

And

And remayning here one day, we washed our selves, and chaunged our shertes, the more freshely to enter into the citie: it is well peopled, and conteyneth about thre hundred houses, the walles are lyke bulwarkes of earth, and the houses both of stone and brycke. The soyle about the citie, is bitterly barren, except that about two myles from the citie, are seene about fyftie palme trees that beare Dates. There, by a certayne garden, runneth a course of water falling into a lower playne, where also passengers are accustomed to water theyr Camelles. And heere oportunitie nowe serueth to confute the opinion of them whiche thynke that the Arke of Toombe of wicked Mahumet in *Mechas*, to hang in the ayre, not bozne by with any thyng. As touching which thyng, I am bitterly of an other opinion, and as firme this neyther to be true, nor to haue any lykenesse of trueth, as I presently behelde these thynges, and sawe the place where Mahumet is buried, in the sayde citie of *Medinath alhaby*: for we tarried there thre dayes, to come to the true knowledge of all these thynges. When wee were desirous to enter into theyr Temple (which they call *Meschita*, and all other churches by the same name) we coulde not be suffered to enter, without a companion, little or great. They takyng vs by the hande, brought vs to the place where they saye Mahumet is buried.

Of the Temple or Chapell, and

Sepulchre of Mahumet, and

of his felowes.

Cap. 12.



This Temple is vaulted, and is a hundred paces in length, and fourscore in breadth: the entry into it, is by two gates: from the sydes, it is couered with thre vaultes, it is bozne by with iiii. hundred columnes or pillars of white brack, there are seene hanging lammes about the number of, 3. thousande.

From

The Toombe  
of Sepulchre  
of Mahumet.

Mahumet  
was not buried  
in *Mechas*.

From the other part of the Temple in the first place of the *Mes-  
chita*, is seene a Tower of the circuite of syue pales, vaulted on  
euery syde, and couered with a cloth of silke, and is bozne by with  
a grate of copper curiously wrought, and distant from it two  
pales: and of them that goe thither, is seene as it were through  
a lattesse. Towarde the lefte hande, is the way to the Tower,  
and when you come thither, you must enter by a narrower gate.  
On euery side of those gates or doozes, are seene many bookes in  
maner of a Librarie, on the one syde. xx. and on the other syde  
xxv. These contayne the filthie traditions and lyfe of Mahumet  
and his fellowes: within the sayde gate, is seene a Sepulchre  
(that is) a digged place, where they say Mahumet is buried and  
his fellowes, which are these, *Nabi, Bubacar, Othomar, Aumar, Nonothete*  
and *Fatoma*: But Mahumet was theyr chiefe Captayne, and *Turcarum*.  
an Arabian bozne. *Hali*, was sonne in lawe to Mahumet, for he  
tooke to wyfe his daughter *Fatoma*. *Bubacar*, is he who they say  
was exalted to the dignitie of a chiefe counsellor and great go-  
uernour, although he came not to the hygh degree of an Apostle  
or prophet, as dyd Mahumet. *Othomar*, and *Aumar*, were chiefe  
Captaynes of the army of Mahumet. Euery of these haue their  
proper bookes of theyr factes and traditions. And hereof pro-  
ceedeth the great dissention and discorde of religion and manners  
among this kynde of filthie men, whyle some confirme one doc-  
trine, and some an other, by reason of theyr diuers sectes of pa-  
trons, Doctours, and saintes, as they call them. By this meanes,  
are they marueylously diuided among them selues, and lyke  
beastes kyl them selues, for such quarelles of dyuers opinions,  
and all false. This also is the chiefe cause of warre betweene  
the *Sophie of Persia* and the great *Turke*, beyng neuerthelesse  
both Mahumetans, and lyue in mortall hatred one agaynst the  
other, for the mayntenaunce of theyr sectes, Saintes, and  
Apostles, whyle euery of them thynketh theyr owne to bee  
best.

Mahumet's  
Librarie.

This *Hali*, our  
men that haue  
been in Persia,  
call *Mortus*  
*Hali*, That is,  
Saint *Hali*.  
Disorde and  
sectes of religi-  
on among the  
Mahumet-  
tans, Turkes,  
and Persians.

Note.

Such come,  
such chaffe.  
Not only a-  
mong Turkes  
and Persians,  
Sed.



Of the Secte of Mahumet.  
Cap. 13.



Now will we speake of the maners and secte of Mahumet. Understande therefore, that in the highest part of the Tower aforesayd, is an open rounde place. Now shall you vnderstande what crafte they vse to deceyue our Carauana. The first euenyng that we came thither to see the Sepulchre of Mahumet, our Captaine sent for the chiefe priest of the Temple to come to him: and when he came, declared vnto him that the only cause of his comyng thither, was to visite the Sepulchre and bodie of *Nabi*, by which woord, is signified the Prophet Mahumet: and that he vnderstoode that the price to be admitted to the sight of these mysteries, should be foure thousande Saraphes of golde. Also that he had no parentes, neyther brothers, sisters, kinsfolkes, chyldren, or wyues, neyther that he came thither to buye merchaundies, as spices, or *Baccar*, or *Nardus*, or any manner of precious Jewelles: but only for very zeale of religion and saluation of his soule, and was therefore greatly desirous to see the bodie of the Prophet. To whom the priest of the Temple (they call them *Side*) with countenance lyke one that were distraught, made aunswere in this maner, Darest thou with those eyes with the which thou hast committed so many horrible sinnes, desyre to see him by whose sight God hath created heauen and earth? To whom agayne our Captayne aunswered thus, My Lorde, you haue sayde truely: neuerthelesse I pray you that I may fynde so much fauour with you, that I may see the Prophet: whom when I haue seene, I will immediately thrust out myne eyes. The *Side* aunswered, O Prince, I will open all thynges vnto thee. So it is, that no man can denye but that our Prophet dyed heere, who if he would myght haue dyed at *Mecha*: But to shewe in him selfe a token of humilitie, and thereby to gyue vs example to followe

*Nabi*, is the name of Mahumet. A great price for vile merchandies.

Suche people suche priest.

My lorde bishop of Mecha

It seemeth that they know not where he was buried.

towe him, was willyng rather heere then elsewhere to de-  
 parte out of this worlde, and was incontinent of Angelles The deupth he  
 bozne into heauen, and there receyued as equall with them. was.  
 Then our Captayne sayde to him, Where is Iesus Christus  
 the sonne of Marie? To whom the Side answered, At the  
 feete of Mahumet. Then sayde our Captayne agayne: It Christ at the  
 suffyceth, it suffyceth, I will knowe no more. After this, feete of Ma-  
 our Captayne commyng out of the Temple, and turnyng humet.  
 him to vs, sayd, See (I pray you) for what goodly stuffe I would  
 haue payde three thousande Saraphes of golde: The same  
 daye at euenyng, at almost thre a clocke of the nyght, ten or  
 twelue of the Elders of the secte of Mahumet entred into  
 our Carauana, whiche remainned not passe a stone cast from the  
 gate of the citie. These ranne hyther and thither, crying lyke  
 madde men, with these wordes, Mahumet the messenger and  
 Apostle of God, shall ryse agayne. O Prophet, O God, Ma- Mahumet shall  
 humet shall ryse agayne, haue mercy on vs God. Our Cap- ryse. &c. with  
 tayne and we all rayled with this crye, tooke weapon with all Juda.  
 expedition, suspectyng that the Arabians were come to robbe  
 our Carauana: We asked what was the cause of that exclama-  
 tion, and what they cryed: for they cryed as doe the Christi-  
 ans, when sodely any marueylous thyng chaunceth. The  
 Elders answered, Salwe you not the lyghtnyng whiche shone False miracles  
 out of the Sepulchre of the Prophet Mahumet. Our Cap- to conspyre  
 tayne answered, that he salwe nothyng, and we also beyng de- false religion.  
 maunded, answered in lyke maner. Then sayde one of the olde  
 men, Are you slaues? That is to say, bought men: mea-  
 nyng thereby Hamalukes. Then sayde our Captayne, We are  
 in deede Hamalukes. Then agayne the olde man sayde, You Neophiti.  
 my Lordes, can not see heauenly thinges, as beyng Neophi-  
 ti, (that is) newly come to the fapth, and not yet confirmed  
 in our religion. To this our Captayne answered agayne, Sic ne respon-  
 O you madde and insentate beastes, I had thought to haue gi- des pontifici.  
 uen you three thousande peeces of golde, but now, O you  
 dogges, and progenie of dogges, I will gyue you nothyng.  
 It is therefore to bee vnderstoode, that none other thynnyng  
 came out of the Sepulchre, then a certayne flame which the  
 priests caused to come out of the open place of the Towre spoken  
 Aaa.iiii. of

of here before, whereby they would haue deceyued vs. And ther-  
fore our Captaine commaunded that thereafter none of vs should  
enter into the Temple. Of this also we haue most true experi-  
ence, and most certaynely assure you, that there is neyther I-  
ron or Steele, or the *Magnes* stone that should so make the toombe  
of *Bahumet* to hange in the ayre, as some haue falsely imagi-  
ned: neyther is there any mountayne nearer then foure myles:  
we remained here three dayes to restreife our company. To  
this citie, victualles and all kynde of coine is brought from *A-*  
*rabia Faelix*, and *Babylon* or *Alcayr*, and also from *Ethiope*, by  
the redde sea, whiche is from this citie but foure dayes iour-  
ney.

The table that  
*Bahumet's*  
Toombe han-  
geth in the  
ayre.

The iourney to Mecha.  
Cap. 14.



After that we were satisfied, or rather wea-  
ryed, with the filthinesse and lothesomenesse  
of the trunperyes, deceites, trifles, and hy-  
pocrises of the religion of *Bahumet*, we  
determined to goe forward on our iourney:  
and that by guiding of a pylot, who myghe  
directe our course with the mariners boze  
or compasse, with also the carde of the sea, euen as is used in  
sayying on the sea. And thus bendyng our iourney to the West,  
we founde a very fayre well or fountayne, from the which flowed  
great aboundance of water. The inhabitantes assure that  
*Saint Marke* the *Euangelist* was the aucthour of this foun-  
taine by a miracle of God, when that region was in maner bur-  
ned with incredible drynesse. Here we and our beastes were  
satisfied with drynke. I may not here omit to speake of the sea  
of lande, and of the daungers thereof. This was founde of vs  
before we came to the mountayne of the *Iewes*. In this sea of  
land we trauelled the iourney of three dayes and nightes: this is  
a great brode plaine, all couered with white lande, in maner as  
small as floure: If by euill fortune it so chaunce that anye  
trauayle

Journey on  
the lande by  
carde and com-  
passe as on the  
sea.

The fountaine  
of *Saint*  
*Marke* the  
*Euangelist*.

The sea of  
lande.  
*Mare fabu-*  
*losum*.

trauaile that way southward, if in the meane time the wind come to the north, they are ouerwhelmed with sande. And although they shoulde haue prosperous wynde, yet are they so inuolued with sande, that they scatter out of the way, and can scarcely see the one the other .x. pases of. And therefore thinhabitans trauiaylyng this way, are inclosed in cages of woodde, bozne with Camels, and lyue in them, so passyng the iorney guided by pilots with maryners compasse and card, euen as on the sea, as we haue sayde. In this iorney also many peryshe for thirst, and many for drynkyng to muche, when they fynde suche good waters. In these sandes is founde *Momia*, whiche is the fleshe of such men as are drowned in these sandes, and there dyed by the heate of the Sunne: So that those bodies are preserved from putrifaction by the drynesse of the sand: and therefore that drye fleshe is esteemed medicinable. Albeit there is an other kynde of more pretious *Momia*, which is þe dyed and embalmed bodies of kynges and princes, whiche of long tyme haue been preserved drye without corruption. When the wynde bloweth from the northeast, the sand riseth, & is driuen against a certayne mountayne which is an arme of the mount *Sinai*. There we found certayne pylers artificially wrought, whiche they call *Sanuan*. On the lefte hande of the sayde mountayne, in the toppe or rydge thereof, is a denne, and the entrie into it, is by an Iron gate. Some sayne that in that place *Mahumet* lyued in contemplation. Here we heard a certayne horrible noyse and crye: for passyng the sayde mountayne, we were in so great daunger, that we thought neuer to haue escaped. Departyng therefore from the fountayne, we continued our iorney for the space of .x. dayes: And twyse in the way fought with fyftie thousande *Arabians*, and so at the length came to the citie of *Mecha*, where al thinges were troubled by reason of the warres betweene two brethren, contendyng whiche of them shoulde possesse the kyngedome of *Mecha*.

*Momia.*

*Momia of kynges bodies embalmed.*

*Mount Sinai.*

The den where *Mahumet* liued in contemplation.

*Mecha,*  
The kingdome of *Mecha*.

Of



Of the fourme and situation of the citie of  
Mecha : and why the Mahumetans  
resort thyther .Cap .15.



Mecha, whi-  
che Abraham  
Dittellus cal-  
leth Mecca.

The Soltan of  
Mecha.

Sacrifice to  
Abraham and  
Isaac.

Nowe the tyme requireth to speake some  
what of the famous citie of *Mecha*, or *Mec-  
ca*. what it is, howe it is situate, and by  
whom it is gouerned . The citie is very  
fayre and well inhabited , and contayneth  
in rounde fourme syre thousande houses, as  
well buylded as ours , and some that cost  
three or foure thousande peeces of golde : it hath no walles.  
About two furlongs from the citie is a mount, where the way is  
cutte out, whiche leadeth to a playne beneath . It is on euery  
syde fortified with mountayns, in the stead of walles or bulwarks,  
and hath foure entries . The gouernour is a *Soltan*, and one of  
the foure brythren of the progenie of *Mabumet* , and is subiect  
to the *Soltan* of Babylon, of whom we haue spoken before : His  
other three brythren be at continuall warre with hym . The  
xviii. daye of Maye, we entred into the citie by the north syde:  
then by a declynpng way, we came into a playne . On the  
south syde are two mountaynes, the one very neere the other, di-  
stant onely by a litle valley, which is the way that leadeth to the  
gate of *Mecha* . On the east syde, is an open place betweene two  
mountaynes, lyke vnto a valley, and is the waye to the moun-  
tayne where they sacrifice to the Patriarkes Abraham & Isaac.  
This mountayne is from the citie about .x. or .xii. myles, and of  
the heyght of three stones cast : it is of stone as harde as mar-  
ble, yet no marble . In the toppe of the mountaine, is a Temple  
or *Meschita*, made after their fashion, and hath three wayes to  
enter into it . At the foote of the mountayne are two cisterns,  
which conserue waters without corruption : of these, the one is  
referred to minister water to the Camels of the *Carauans* of  
Babylon or *Alcayr* , and the other, for them of *Damasco* . It  
is rayne water, and is deriued far of,

But

But to returne to speake of the citie: for as touchyng the maner of sacrifice which they vse at the foote of the mountayne, wee will speake hereafter. Entreyng therefore into the citie, wee founde there the *Carauana* of *Memphis*, or *Babylon*, which preuented vs eyght dayes, and came not the waye that wee came. This *Carauana* conteyned thyeelcore and foure thousande *Camelles*, and a hundred *Mamalukes* to guyde them. And here ought you to consyder, that by the opinion of all men, this citie is greatly cursed of God, as appeareth by the great barrennesse thereof, for it is destitute of all maner of frutes and coyne. It is scorched with drynesse for lacke of water, and therefore the water is there growen to suche pryce, that you can not for twelue pence buye as muche water as will satisfye your thurst for one day. Nowe therefore I will declare what prouision they haue for victuales. The most part is brought them from the citie of *Babylon*, otherwysse named *Memphis*, *Cayrus*, or *Alcayr*, a citie of the ryuer of *Nilus* in *Egypt*, as we haue sayde before, and is brought by the red sea (called *Mare Erythreum*) from a certayne port named *Gida*, distaunt from *Mecha* fourtie myles. The rest of theyr prouisions, is brought from *Arabia Felix* (that is) the happye or blessed *Arabia*: so named for the fruitfulnessse thereof, in respect of the other two *Arabiaes*, called *Petrea* & *Diserta*, that is, stonye and desart. They haue also muche coyne from *Ethiopia*. Here we found a marueylous number of straungers and peregrynes, or *Hpylgrims*: Of the whiche, some came from *Syria*, some from *Persia*, and other from both the *East Indiaes*, (that is to say) both *India* within the ryuer of *Ganges*, and also the other *India* without the same ryuer. I neuer sawe in anye place greater abundaunce and frequentation of people, forasmuche as I could percepue by tarryng there the space of .xx. dayes. These people resort thither for diuers causes, as some for merchandies, some to obserue theyr boyme of *Hpylgrimage*, and other to haue pardon for theyr synnes: as touchyng the whiche we will speake moze hereafter.

*Mecha* cursed of god.

Water very deare.

The ryuer *Nilus*.

The red sea.

*Arabia Felix*.

Many *pphs* grymes and straungers as *Mecha*.

Why so many nations resorts to *Mecha*.

Of the merchandies of Mecha,

Cap. 16.



From India the greater, which is both within & without the ryuer of *Ganges*, they haue pearles, precious stones, and plentie of spyes: and especially from that citie of the greater India, which is named *Bangela*, they haue muche gossampyne cloth and sylke. They haue also spyes from *Ethio-*  
*pia*: and therefore we must needes confesse that this citie is a famous mart of many ryche thynges, whereof there is great plentie.

Of the Pardons or Indulgences of  
Mecha. Cap. 17.



The temple of  
Mecha.

Et vs now returne to speake of the pardons of pilgrims, for the which so many strange nations resort thither. In the myddest of the citie, is a Temple, in fashyon lyke vnto the *Collossus* of Rome, the *Amphitheatrum*. I meane, lyke vnto a stage, yet not of marble or helued stones, but of burne byckes: For this temple, lyke vnto an *Amphitheater*, hath fourescore and ten, or an hundred gates, and is vaulted. The entrance, is by a discent of twelue staires or degrees on euery part: in the church porche, are solde only iewels and precious stones. In the entry the gylded walles shyne on euery syde with incomparable splendour. In the lower part of the temple (that is vnder the vaulted places) is seene a marueylous multitude of men: For there are fyue or syxe thousand men that sell none other thyng then sweete oynmentes, and especially a certayne odoriferous and most sweete powder, wherewith dead bodyes are embalmed. And from hence, all maner of sweete sauours are carried in maner vnto the countreys of all the *Mabumetans*. It passeth all beleefe to thynke of the exceedingng sweetenesse of these sauours, farre surmounting

the shoppes of the Apothecaries . The .xxiij. daye of Maye,  
the pardones began to be graunted in the Temple, and in  
what maner we wyll nowe declare . The Temple in the myd-  
dest is open, without any inclosyng, and in the myddest also ther-  
of, is a Turret, of the largnesse of fyre pales in cercuite, and in-  
doluved or hanged with cloth or tapestry of sylke, and passeth  
not the heyght of a man. They enter into the turret by a gate of  
syluer, and is on euery syde besette with vesselles full of balme.  
On the day of Pentecost, licence is graunted to al men to se these  
thynges . The inhabitantes asseygne, that balme or ballame,  
to be parte of the treasure of the Soltan that is Lorde of Mecha.  
At euery haulte of the turret, is fastened a rounde circle of Iron,  
lyke to the ryng of a dooze . The .xxiii. day of Maye, a great  
multitude of people beganne earely in the moornyng before day;  
seuen tymes to walke about the Turret, kyslyng euery corner  
thereof, oftentymes feelyng and handdelyng them . From  
this Turret, about tenne or twelue pales, is an other Turret,  
like a Chappell buylded after our maner . This hath thre or  
foure entres: in the myddest thereof is a well of theescope and  
tenne cubites deepe: the water of this Well is infected with  
salt Peter or salniter . Epyght men are therebnto appoynted to  
draue water for all the people: and when a multitude of peo-  
ple haue seuen tymes gone rounde about the fyrst Turret, they  
come to this well: and touchyng the mouth or byyn there-  
of, they saye thus, Be it in the honour of God, God pardon me,  
and forgeue me my synnes . When these woordes are sayde,  
they that draue the water, powze thre buckettes of water on  
the headdes of euery one of them that stand nere about the well,  
and washe them all wette from the heade to the foote, al-  
though they be apparelled with sylke . Then the dotyng fooles  
dreaime that they are cleane from all theyr synnes, and that their  
synnes are forgeuen them . They saye furthermore, that the  
fyrst Turret, wherof we haue spoken, was the fyrst house that  
euer Abraham buylded: and therefore, whyle they are yet all  
wette of the sayd washyng, they go to the mountayne, where (as  
we haue sayde before) they are accustomed to sacrifice to Abrah-  
ham,

A Turret in  
the Temple of  
Mecha.

A gate of syluer.

Ballame or  
balme.

A chappel with  
a well in it, in  
the Temple.

A strange  
baptisme for  
remission of  
synnes.

Good meaning  
sufficieth not.

The house of  
Abraham.  
Sacrifice to  
Abraham.



ham. And remaining there two daies, they make the said sacrifice to Abraham at the foote of the mountayne.

The maner of Sacrificyng at  
Mecha. Cap. 18.



Orasimuche as for the most parte, noble spirites are delceted with nouelties of great and straunge thynges, therefore to satisfie their expectation, I wyll describe theyr maner of sacrificyng. Therefore, when they intend to sacrifice, some of them kyl three sheepe, some foure, and some tenne: So that the but-

cherie sometyme so floweth with blood, that in one sacrifice are slayne aboue three thousande sheepe. They are slayne at the rpyng of the Sunne, and shortly after are distributed to the pooze for Gods sake: for I sawe there a great and confounded multitude of pooze people, as to the number of .xxx. thousande. These make many and long dyches in the feeldes, where they keepe fyre with Camels dooug, and rost or seeth the fleshe that is geuen them, and eate it euen there. I beleue that these pooze people come thither rather for hunger then for deuotion: which I thinke by this coniectur, that great abundance of cucumbers are brought thpyther from *Arabia Felix*, whiche they eate, castyng away the parynges without their houses or tabernacles, where a multitude of the sayde pooze people geather them euen out of the myre and sande, and eate them, and are so greedie of these parynges, that they fyght who may geather most. The daye folowing, their *Cadi* (which are in place with them as with vs the preachers of gods worde) ascended into a hygh mountayne, to preache to the people that remayned beneath: and preached to them in theyr language the space of an houre. The summe of his sermon was, that with teares they shouide bewayle theyr sinnes, and beate their brestes, with sighes and lamentation. And the preacher hym selfe with loude voyce, spake these woordes, O Abraham beloued of god, O Isaac chosen of god, and his frend, praye to god for the people of *Nabi*. When these woordes were sayde, sodenly were heard lamenting voyces. When the sermon was done, a rumor was spyedde that a great armpe of *Arabians*, to the number of twentie thousande, were comyng.

With

Sacrifice of  
sheepe.

Religion for  
pouertie.

Cadi, a preas-  
tyer.

A goodly ser-  
mon.

Soldiers trou-  
ble the word of  
God.

With whiche newes, they that kept the *Carauanas* beyng greatly feared, with all speede, lyke madde men, fledde into the citie of *Mecha*, and we agayne hearyng newes of the *Arabians* appoche, fledde also into the citie. But whyle wee were in the mydwaye betwene the mountayne and *Mecha*, we came by a despicable wal, of the breadth of foure cubites: The people passyng by this wall, had couered the waye with stones, the cause whereof, they saie to be this: When *Abraham* was commaunded to sacrifice his sonne, he wylled his sonne *Isaac* to folowe hym to the place where he should execute the commaundement of God. As *Isaac* went to folow his father, there appeared to hym in the way a Deuyl, in lykenesse of a fayre and freendly person, not farre from the sayde wall, and asked hym freendlye whyther he went. *Isaac* answered that he went to his father who tarried for hym. To this the enemie of mankynde answered, that it was best for hym to tarre; and yf that he went anye further, his father woulde sacrifice hym. But *Isaac* nothyng feareyng this aduertisement of the Deuyl, went foreward, that his father on hym myght execute the commaundement of God: and with this answer (as they saie) the Deuyl departed. Yet as *Isaac* went forwarde, the Diuell appeared to hym agayne in the lykenesse of an other frendlye person, and forbade hym as befoze. Then *Isaac* takyng by a stone in that place, huride it at the Deuyl, and wounded hym in the forehead: In witnesse and remembraunce whereof, the people passyng that waye, when they come neare the wall, are accustomed to cast stones agaynst it, and from thence go into the citie. As we went this way, the ayre was in maner darkened with a multitude of stocke Doues. They saie that these Doues, are of the progenie of the Doue that spake in the eare of *Mahumet*, in lykenesse of the Holpe Ghost. These are seene euery where, as in the billages, houses, tauernes, and graniers of corne and ryle, and are so tame, that one can scharshely dyue them a way. Too take them or kyll them, is esteemed a thyng worthy death: and therfore a certayne pensyon is geuen to nouryshe them in the Temple.

Where *Abraham* sacrificed his sonne *Isaac*.

The Diuell appeareth to *Isaac*.

*Isaac* wounded the Deuyl in the forehead.

Stocke Doues of the progenie of the Doue whiche spake in *Mahumet's* eare.

Of the Vnicorns of the temple of Mecha,  
whiche are not seene in any other  
place. Cap. 19.

*Monoceros.*

*The Vnicor-  
nes.*

*The Vnicorns  
hoine.*



In the other part of the temple are parkes  
or places inclosed, where are scene two  
Unicozns, named of the Greekes *Monoceros*,  
and are there shewed to the people  
for a myracle, and not without good rea-  
son, for the seldomenesse and strange natu-  
re. The one of them, which is much hygh-  
er then the other, yet not muche vnlpyke to a colte of thyrtye  
monethes of age, in the forehead groweth only one horne, in ma-  
ner ryght foozth, of the length of thre cubites. The other is  
much yonger, of the age of one yeere, and lyke a young colte:  
the horne of this, is of the length of foure handfuls. This beast  
is of the coloure of a hoise of weesell coloure, and hath the head  
lyke an Hart, but no long necke, a thynne mane hangyng onely  
on the one syde: theyr legges are thyn and slender, lyke a fawne  
or hynde: the hooses of the fore feete are diuided in two, much like  
the feete of a Goat, the outwarde part of the hynder feete is very  
full of heare. This beast doublelesse seemeth wylde and fierce,  
yet tempereth that fiercenesse with a certaine comelinesse. These  
Unicoznes one gaue to the Soltan of Mecha, as a most pre-  
cious and rare gyfte. They were sent hym out of *Ethiophe* by a  
kyng of that countrey, who desired by that present to gratifie the  
Soltan of Mecha.

Of diuers thynges which chaunced to me  
in Mecha: And of Zida, a port  
of Mecha. Cap. 20.



It may seeme good here to make mention  
of certayne thynges, in the which is scene  
sharpenesse of witte in case of vrgent ne-  
cessitie, which hath no lawe, as sayeth the  
prouerbe: for I was dyuen to the poynt  
howe I myght priuely escape from Me-  
cha. Therefore wheras my Captayue  
gaue me charge to buy certayne thyngs, as I was in the market  
place,

place, a certayne Hamaluke knewe me to be a Christian. And therefore in his owne language, spake vnto me these woordes, *Inte mename* : That is, whence arte thou? To whom I answered that I was a Dahumetan. But he sayde, Thou sayest not truely. I sayde agayne, By the head of Dahumet, I am a Dahumetan. Then he sayde agayne, Come hoine to my house. I folowed him willingly. When we were there, he began to speake to me in the Italian tongue, and asked me agayne from whence I was, assymyng that he knewe me, and that I was no Dahumetan : Also that he had been sometyne in *Genua* and *Venice*. And that his woordes myght be the better beleued, rehearsed many thinges whiche testified that he sayde truely. When I vnderstoode this, I confessed freely that I was a Romane, but professed to the fayth of Dahumet in the citie of Babylon, and there made one of the Hamalukes. Whereof he seemed greatly to reioyce, and therefore vsed me honourably. But because my desyre was yet to goe further, I asked the Dahumetan whether that citie of *Mecha* was so famous as all the world spake of it : and inquired of him where was the great abundance of pearles, precious stones, spices, and other rich merchandies that the brute went of to be in that citie. And all my talke was to the ende to grope the mynde of the Dahumetan, that I might know the cause why such thinges were not brought thither as in tyme paste. But to auoyde all suspicion, I durst here make no mention of the dominion which the Kyng of Portugale had in the most parte of that Ocean, and of the gulfes of the redde sea and *Persa*. Then he began with moze attentvye mynde, in order to declare vnto me the cause why that marte was not so greatly frequented as it had been before, and layde the only faulte therof in the kyng of Portugale. But when he had made mention of the Kyng, I began of purpose to detracte his fame, least the Dahumetan might thinke that I reioyced that the Christians came thither for merchandies. When he percepued that I was of profession an enemy to the Christians, he had me yet in greater estimation, and proceeded to tell me many thynges moze. When I was well instructed in all thinges, I spake vnto him friendly these woordes in the Dahumetis language, *Mena-ba Menalbabi* : That is to say, I pray you assist mee. He asked

Why *Mecha* is not so much frequented as in tyme paste.

The dominion of the Kyng of Portugale in the East partes

Hypocritie,



me wherein. To helpe me (sayde I) howe I may secretly departe hence. Confirmyng by great othes, that I would goe to those Kinges that were most enemies to the Christians: Affirmyng furthermore, that I knewe certayne secretes greatly to be esteemed, whiche if they were knowen to the sayde kynges, I doubted not but that in shorte tyme I shoulde bee sent for from *Mecha*. Astonyshe at these woordes, he sayde unto mee, I pray you what arte or secrete doe you knowe? I answered, that I would gyue place to no man in makyng of all maner of Gunnes and artillerie. Then sayde hee, Prayled be Mahumet who sent thee hyther, to do him and his Saintes good seruice: and willed me to remayne secretly in his house with his wyfe, and requyred me earnestly to obtayne leaue of our Captayne, that vnder his name he myght leade from *Mecha* fiftiene Camelles laden with spices, without paying any custome: for they ordinarily paye to the Soltan thirtie Saraphes of golde, for transporthyng of such merchandies for the charge of so many Camelles. I put him in good hope of his request, although he would aske for a hundred, affirmyng that that myght easily be obteyned by the priuileges of the Hamalukes, and therefore desired him that I myght safely remayne in his house. Then nothyng doubtyng to obtayne his request, he greatly reioyced, and talkyng with me yet more freely, gaue me further instructions, and counsayled me to repayre to a certayne Kyng of the greater *India*, in the kyngdome and realme of *Decham*, whereof we will speake hereafter. Therfore the day before the *Carauana* departed from *Mecha*, he willed me to lye hydde in the most secreete parte of his house. The day folowynge, early in the mornyng, the trumpetter of the *Carauana* gaue warning to all the Hamalukes to make readie their horses, to directe their iourney toward *Syria*, with proclamation of death to all that shoulde refuse so to doe. When I hearde the sounde of the Trumpet, and was aduertised of the streight commaundement, I was marueylously troubled in mynde, and with heauy countenance desired the Mahumetans wyfe not to betraye me, and with earnest prayer committed my selfe to the mercie of God. On the Tuesday folowynge, our *Carauana* departed from *Mecha*, and I remayned in the Mahumetans house with his wyfe, but he folowed the *Carauana*.

Paying of cu-  
stome to the  
Soltan.

The realme of  
*Decham* in  
*India*.

Yet before he departed, he gaue commaundement to his wyfe to bying me to the *Carauana*, which should departe from *Zida* the pozte of *Mecha*, to goe into *India*. This pozte is distant from *Mecha*, xl. miles. Whylest I laye thus hyd in the *Dahumetans* house, I can not expresse how friendly his wife bled me. This also furthered my good interteynement, that there was in the house a fayre young mayde, the Niese of the *Dahumetan*, who was greatly in loue with me. But at that tyme, in the myddest of those troubles and feare, the fyre of *Venus* was almost extincte in mee: and therefore with daliaunce of fayre woordes and promises, I styl kepte my selfe in her fauour. Therefore the Fryday folowynge, about noone tyme I departed, folowynge the *Carauana* of *India*. And about mydnyght, we came to a certayne village of the *Arabians*, and there remayned the rest of that nyght, and the nexte day tyll noone.

Affliction con-  
sisteth in lecherie.

From hence we went forwarde on our iourney toward *Zida*, and came thither in the silence of the nyght. This citie hath no walles, yet fayre houses, somewhat after the buyldynge of *Italie*. Heere is great aboundaunce of all kynde of merchandises, by reason of resorte in maner of all nations thither, excepte *Jewes* and *Christians*, to whom it is not lawfull to come thither. As soone as I entered into the citie, I went to their Temple of *Meschita*, where I sawe a great multitude of poore people, as about the number of. xxb. thousande, attending a certayne *Pilot* who should bying them into their countrey. Heere I suffered muche trouble and affliction, beyng enforced to hyde my selfe among these poore folkes, saynyng my selfe very sicke, to the ende that none should be inquisitue what I was, whence I came, or whyther I would. The Lord of this citie is the *Soltan* of *Babylon*, brother to the *Soltan* of *Mecha*, who is his subiecte. The inhabitants are *Dahumetans*. The soyle is vnfruitfull, and lacketh freshe water. The sea beateth agaynst the towne. There is neuerthelesse aboundance of all thynges: but brought thither from other places, as from *Babylon* of *Nilus*, *Arabia Felix*, and dyuers other places. The heate is here so great, that men are in maner dreyed by therewith. And therefore there is euer a great number of sicke folkes. The citie conteyneth about fyue hundred houses.

The citie of  
*Zida*.

Poore Pil-  
grims that  
came from  
*Mecha*.

From Arabia  
to Persia,

After fyftiene dayes were past, I couenaunted with a pilot, who was ready to departe from thence into *Persia*, and agreed of the pryce, to goe with him. There laye at Anker in the hauē almost a hundred *Brigantines* and *Foisties*, with diuers boates and barres of sundry sortes, both with *Ores* and without *Ores*. Therefore after thre dayes, grynng wynde to our sayles, we entred into the redde sea, otherwyle named *Mare Erythraeum*.

The red sea.

Of the red sea, and why it can not be sayled  
in the nyght. Cap. 21.



It is well knowen to wyle men that this sea is not red, as some haue imagined, but is of the colour of other seas. We continued therefore our vyage vntyll the goyng downe of the Sunne. For this sea, is nauigable only in the day tyme: and therefore in the nightes, the maryners rest them, vntyll they come to the Islande named *Chameran*, from whence they proceede forwarde moze safely. Why this sea can not be sayled in the nyght, they say the cause to be, that there are many dangerous landes, rockes, and shelues: and therefore that it is needefull of diligent and long prospecte, from the toppe Castell of the shyppe, to foresee the dangerous places.

The

The seconde booke, entreating of *Arabia Felix*,  
That is, the happie or blessed  
*Arabia*.

Of the citie of Gezan, and the fruitfulnessse  
thereof. Cap. 1.



As muche as hitherto wee haue spoken somewhat of the maners of the people and cities of *Arabia Felix*, it may now we seeme conuenient to finishe the reste of our vyage with such thinges as we haue seene in the sayde countrey of *Arabia*. Therefore after fyve dayes saylyng, we came to a citie named *Gezan*. It hath a commodious porte, and very fayre, where we found about fourtie and fyue Brigantines and Froisses of diuers regions. The citie is harde by the sea syde, and the Prince thereof, is a Bahumetan. The soile is fruitfull, lyke vnto *Italye*: It beareth Pomegranates, Quinces, Peaches, Apples of *Affrya*, Pepons, Melons, Oranges, Gourdes, and diuers other fruites: Also Roses, and sundry sortes of floures, the sayrest that euer I sawe: It seemeth an earthly Paradyse. The moste parte of the inhabitauntes go naked. In other thinges, they lyue after the maner of the Bahumetans. There is also great abundance of fleshe, wheate, barley, the grayne of whyte Millet or Hirle (whiche they call *Dora*) whereof they make very sweete bread.

The citie of  
*Gezan*.

Of certayne people named Banduin. Cap. 2.

Departing from the citie of *Gezan*, the space of .v. dayes, saylyng toward the leste hande, hauyng euer the coast of the lande in sight, we came to the sight of certayne houses, where about .xiiii. of vs went alande, hoppyng to haue had some victuals of the inhabitants. But we lost our labour, for in the steede of victuals, they cast stones at vs with slinges. They were about a hundred that fought with our men for the space of



an houre. Of them were slayne .xliiii. The rest were dyuen to  
flyght, they were naked, and had none other weapons then syn-  
ges. After they flyght, we brought away with vs certayne hens  
and Calues very good. Shortly after a great multitude of the  
inhabitauntes shewed them selues to the number of fyue or syxe  
hundred: but we departed with our praye, and returned to the  
Shyppes.

Of an Ilande of the red sea, named  
Camaran. Cap.3.

**T**He same day saylyng forwarde, we came to an Iland na-  
med *Camaran*, which conteyneth ten myles in circuite. In  
it is a towne of two hundred houses, the inhabitantes are  
*Dahumetans*: it hath aboundaunce of freshe water and  
fleshe, and the fayrest salte that euer I sawe. The porte is eight  
myles from the continent, it is subiecte to the Soltan of *Ama-  
nian* of *Arabia Fælix*. After we had remayned here two dayes,  
we tooke our way towarde the mouth of the red sea in the space  
of two dayes saylyng: This sea may here be sayled both day and  
nyght. If or (as we haue sayde befoze) from this Ilande vnto  
the porte of *Zida*, the red sea is not safely nauigable by nyght.  
When we came to the mouth of the sea, we seemed to be in ma-  
ner inclosed, for that the mouth of the sea is there very strepght,  
and no more then thre myles ouer. Towarde the right hande,  
the continent lande is seene of the heyght of ten pases: the soile  
seemeth rude and not cultured. At the leste hande of the sayde  
mouth, ryseth a very hygh hyll of stone. In the myddest of the  
mouth, is a litle Ilande vnhabited, named *Bebmendo*, and is to-  
warde the leste hande to them that sayle to *Zeila*: But they that  
goe to *Aden*, must keepe the way to the leste hande. All this way,  
we had euer the lande in our sight, from *Bebmendo* to *Aden*, in  
the space of two dayes and a halfe,

Of the citie of Aden, and of their maners  
and customes towarde straun-  
gers. Cap. 4.

**I** Doe not remember that I haue seene any citie better forti-  
fied then this: It standeth on a soyle not much vnequall, it is  
walled on two sydes: The reste is inclosed with mountaynes,  
haupng on them fyue foytresses. The citie conteyneth fyve  
thousande houses. They exercise of bying and sellng, begyn-  
neth the seconde houre of the nyght, by reason of extreme heate  
in the day tyme. A stone cast from the citie, is a mountayne,  
haupng on it a foytresse. The shippes lye neare the foote of the  
mountayne: it is certaynely a very goodly citie, and the fay-  
rest of all the cities of *Arabia Felix*. To this, as to the chiefe  
marte, the merchauntes of *India*, *Ethiopia*, and *Persia*, haue re-  
course by sea, and they also that resorte to *Mecha*. As soone as  
our Brigantines came into the hauen, immediately the custo-  
mers and searchers came aborde, demaundng what we were,  
from whence we came, what merchaundies we brought, and  
howe many men were in euery Brigantine.  
Beyng aduertised of these thinges, immediately they tooke  
away our masse, sayles, and other tackelynges of our shyp-  
pes, that we should not departe without paying of custome.  
The day after our arrypng there, the Bahumetans tooke  
mee, and put shackles on my legges, whiche came by occasi-  
on of a certayne Idolatour who cryed after mee, sayng, O  
Christian Dogge, borne of Dogges. When the Bahu-  
metans hearde the name of a Christian, incontinent they  
layde handes on mee, and brought mee to the Licutenant  
of the Soltan of that place, who assemblyng his counsaile,  
asked their opinion if I should bee put to death as a spye of  
the Christians.  
The Soltan him selfe was out of the citie, and therefore his  
Licutenant, who had yet neuer adjudged any man to death,  
thought it not good to gyue sentence agaynst mee, before the  
Soltan

Of the citie of  
Aden looke.  
Cap. 13.

Bying and sel-  
ling by nyght.

The Kuchhou  
taken and put  
in prison.

Picade the  
Hoonke whi-  
terly that Chi-  
istians are  
founde in all  
regions sauing  
in Arabia and  
Egypt, where  
they are most  
hated.

Soltan should be aduertised hereof . And therefore I escaped this present daunger, and remayned in custodie fiftie and fyue dayes, with an Iron of eightene pounde weyght hangyng at my secte . The seconde day after I was taken, many Mahumetans in great rage resorted to him, whose office was to make inquisition of treason . These a fewe dayes before, by swymyng hardy escaped the handes of the Portugales, with the losse of theyr shippes and Barkes, and therefore desired greatly to bee reuenged of the Christians: asseyning with outrageous crye, that I was a spye of the Portugales. But God sayled not to assyst me . For the maister of the prison, perceyuing the outrage of the Mahumetans, and fearyng that they would offer me violence, made fast the gates of the prison . After that fyue and fiftie dayes were passe, the Soltan commaunded that I should be brought before him: and so, set vppon a Camel with my shackles, I came in eight dayes iourney to the place where the Soltan laye, and was brought to his presence in a citie named Rhada: for there the Soltan had assembled an army of thirtie thousande men, to make warre agaynst the Soltan of the citie of Sana, whiche is thre dayes iourney from Rhada, and situate partly on the declining of a hyll, and partly in a playne, very fayre to be seene, well peopled, and hauyng plentie of all thinges . When I came before the Soltan, he began to aske me what I was . I answered that I was a Roman, professed a Hamaluke in Babylon of *Alcayr*, and that of religious mynd to discharge my conscience of a vowe whiche I had made to see the bodie of *Nabi* the holy Prophet, I came to the citie of *Medmathalhabi*, where they say he is buried: and that in all cities and countreys by the way, I hearde honourable reposte of his greatnesse, wisdom, and singuler vertue, and therefore ceased not vntyll I entered his dominions, mooste desirous to see his face, yeldyng thankes to God, and *Nabi*, that it was now my chaunce to be presented before him: trustyng that the equitie of his wisdom, would thereby consyder that I was no spye of the Christians, but a true Mahumetan, and his seruant and slaue. Then sayde the Soltan, *Saye, Leila illala Mahumet resullala*: whiche woordes I coulde neuer well pronounce, eyther that it pleased not God, or that for feare and scruple

The woordes  
of them that  
professe the res-  
ligion of Ma-  
homet.

of

of conscience, I durst not . Therefore when hee salwe mee holde my peace, he committed me agayne to pryson, commaunding that I shoulde be straightly looked vnto, where .xvi. men of the citie were appoynted, euery daye foure, to watche me by course. So that for the space of thye monethes, I had not y frustion of heauē, during which miserable time, me diet was euery day a lufe of myllet, so litle that seuen of them woulde not haue satisfied my hunger for one daye: But if I myght haue had my fyll of water, I woulde haue thought my selfe happie . Within three dayes after the *Soltan* marched with his army of thyrtye thousande footemen (as we haue sayde) and three thousande horsemen, to beseege the citie of *Sana*. These horsemen were borne of Christian parentes, and blacke like the Ethiopians, and whyle they were yet very young, were bought in the kyngdome of *Presbyter John*, named in Latine *Presbyter Iohannes*, or rather *Preciosus Iohannes* . These Christian Ethiopians, are also named *Abbyssini* . They are brought by in discipline of warre, as are the *Mamalukes* and *Ienetzares* of the Turkes. This *Soltan* hath them in great estimation, for they are the gard of his owne person, and therefore haue greater wages, and are in number fourescore thousande . They couer theyr bodie with a linden, like vnto a cloke or cape, putting out onely one arme, and are helpe naked without any other apparell . In the warres they vse rounde targettes, made of buffes hydes, with certayne litle barres of Iron to strengthen them. These targettes are paynted very fayre with sundrye colours, and very commodious to respyte darteres, and are in largenesse as muche as the mouth of a barell: the handle is made of woodde, as bygge as they may well holde in theyr handes, and made fast with nayles . They vse darteres, and shorpe bodie swoordes . At other tymes, they vse also vestures of linnen cloth of sundrye coloures. Also of gossampine or *Xylon*, otherwyle also named bombasine . In the warres, euery man beareth with hym a slyng, which he casteth, fyrst shakynge it often about his head . When they come to .xl. or .l. yeeres of age, they make them hornes, by wreathynge y heare of their heds . so bearyng two hornes lyke young Gotes . When they procede to the warres, fyue thousande Camels folowe the army, all laden with ropes of bombasine .

Soldiers horses  
men of Christi-  
an Ethiopians  
of the dominis  
of Presbyter  
Iohannes.  
Abbyssini, vnder  
der Presbyter  
John.

A gard of foure  
score thousand  
blacke men.

Targettes.

Slynges.



How the women of Arabia, are greatly in loue with whyte men,  
Cap. 5.

**A**fter the army was departed, I was incontinent committed to prison, as I haue sayde . Harde by the prison was a long entrie in maner of a cloyster, where somtyme we were permitted to walke . We shall further vnderstande, that in the *Soltans* place remainned one of his three wyues, with twelue young maydes to wayte vpon her, very fayre and comely, after theyr maner, and of coloure inclinyng to blacke . The fauoure that they bore me, helped me very much, for I with two other, being in the same prison, agreed that one of vs should counterfette him selfe to be mad, that by this deuice, one of vs myght helpe an other . In fine, it was my lotte to take vpon me the mad mans part , and therefore stode me in hande to do suche follies as pertayne to madnesse . Also the opinion whiche they haue of mad folkes, made greatly for my purpose : for they take mad men to be holy , and therefore suffered me to run more at large, vntyll the *Eremites* had geuen iudgement whether I weare holy, or ragyng mad, as appeareth heereafter . But the fyrst thre dayes in which I began to shew my madnesse, werped me so muche, that I was neuer so tyred with labour or greued with payne, for the boyes and rascall people somtyme to the number of .xl. or .l. hurled stones at me almost without ceassing, while in the meane time againe I paid some of them home with lyke wages . The boyes cryed euer after me, calling me mad man . And to shewe it the more, I carped alwayes stones with me in my shyrt, for other apparel had I none . The queene hearyng of my follies, looked oftentimes out of the wyndowes to see me, more for a secrete loue she bore me, then for the pleasure she tooke in my follies, as afterwarde appeared.

Counterfette  
madnesse.

There

Therefore on a tyme, when some of them, muche madder then I, played the knaues with me in the syght of the queene (whose secreete fauour towarde me I somewhat perceyued) that my maddenesse myght seeme moze manifest, I cast of my shytt, and went to the place before the wyndowes, where the queene myght see me all naked: where in I perceyued she tooke great pleasure. For she euer founde some occasion that I myght not goe out of her syght: and would sometymes, with all her damoselles waytyng on her, spende almost the whole dape in beholding me: and in the meane season diuers tymes sent me secretelye muche good meate by her maydens, and when she saw the boyes or other do me any hurt, she badde me kyl them, and spare not, reuylng them also, and calling them dogges and beastes. In the pallace was nouryshe a great fatt sheepe: for there are some of such exceddyng bygnesse, that only the tayle wayeth .xi. or .xii. pounce weyght. Under the coloure of maddenesse, I layd hand on this sheepe, saying, *Leila illala Mahumet resullala*: which wordes the *Soltan* before, when I was brought to his presence, wyllyd me to say, to proue whether I were a *Mahumetan* or a professed *Mamaluke*. But the beast answering nothyng, I asked hym yf he were a *Mahumetan*, *Iewe*, or *Christian*. And wyllyng to make hym a *Mahumetan*, I rehearsed agayne the sayde woordes *Leila illala Mahumet resullala*, (that is to saye) there is one God, and *Mahumet* his cheefe *Prophet*: whiche are the wordes which they speake in professyng they sayth. But when the beast yet answered nothyng, I broke his legges with a staffe. The queene tooke great pleasure in these my madde follyes, and commaunded the fleshe of the sheepe to be geuen me to eate: I neuer ate meate with moze pleasure, or better appetite. Also thre dayes after, I lykewylse kylled an Asse that was wont to byring water into the pallace, because he refused to be a *Mahumetan*, and to say those woordes. The same tyme also I handeled a *Iewe* so euill, that I had almost kylled hym, one in the meane tyme calling me *Christian* dogge, dogge bozne. With which words beyng very angry, I cast many stones at him: but he againe hurlyng at me, gaue me a stroke on the hyst, and an other on the syde, which greued me very sore.

Sheepe with exceddyng great tayles.

20 Sheepe made a *mahumetan*.

Hunger made keth appetite.

And

And because I coulde not folowe hym by reason of my shackles, I returned to the pysson, and stopped the doore with a heape of stones, and there lyued in great payne for the space of two daies without meate or drynke: And therefore the queene and other thought me to be dead, but the doore was opened by the queenes commaundement. Then these dogges derydng me, gaue me stones in the steepe of bread, and peeces of whyte marble, saying that it was suger: other gaue me clusters of Grapes full of sand. But partly that they should not suspect that I counterfeited madnesse, I ate the Grapes as they gaue me them. When the byuite was spyed that I lyued two dayes & nyghtes without meate and drynke: some began to suspect that I was a holy man, and some that I was starke madde. And thus being diuided into diuers opinions, they consulted to send for certayne men, of whom they haue such opinion of holynesse, as we haue of Heremytes: these dwell in the mountaynes, and leade a contemplatyue lyfe. When they came vnto me, to geue thyr iudgement what maner of man I was, certayne merchantes asked them yf I were a holy man, or a madde man. These were also of diuers opinions, some affyrmyng one thyng, and some another. Whyle they were yet debatng this matter, for the space of an houre, I pyssed in my handes, and hurloe it in theyr faces: whereby they agreed that I was no Sainct, but a mad man. The queene seying all this at the wyndowe, laughed well thereat among her maydens, and sayd thus to them, By the goodnesse of God, and by the head of *Mahumet*, this is a good man. The day folowyng, when in the moynyng I founde hym a sleepe that had so soze hurt me with stones, I tooke hym by the heare of the head with both handes, and with my knee so pounched hym on the stomacke, and battered his face, that I left hym all bloody, and half dead. Which thyng the queene seeing, cryed vnto me saying, kyll the beast, kyll the dogge: wherupon, he ran his way, and came no moze in syght. When the President of the cite heard that the queene fauoured me, & toke pleasure in my mad sport, thynkng also that I was not mad, commaunded that I shoulde goe at lybertie within the pallace, only wearyng my shackles: Yet enery nyght was I put in an other pysson in the lower part of the pallace, and so remayned styl in the

Madnesse taken for holynesse.

Heremytes, & Mahumetans.

the courte for the space of .xx. dayes . In the meane tyme, the queene wyllas me to go a huntynge with her, whiche I refused not, and at my retorne, I fained me to be sicke for weerinelle. So continuyng for the space of eyght dayes, vnder the coloure of sickenes, the queene often sent to me to know how I did. After this, spyndyng oportunitie, I declared to the queene that I had made a vow to God and Mahumet to visite a certayne holy man in the citie of *Aden*, and desyred her to geue me leaue to go thither. Whereunto she consented: and commaunded immediatly a Camiell and .xxv. Sarraaphes of golde to be deliuered me. Therfore y day folowynge, I tooke my iorney, and in the space of eyght dayes, came to the citie of *Aden*: and shortly after my comynge, vsited the man of whom was so great reporte of holynesse, and whom the people honoured for a saint. And this onely, because he had euer lyued in great pouertie, and without the company of women. And heare are scene many other such: But doubtlesse all suche lose theyr laboure, beyng out of the fayth of Christ. When I had perfourmed my vowe, I sayned that I had recouered health by myracle of that holy man, and certified the queene thereof, desyryng that I myght tarye there a whyle, to visite lykewise certayne other men in that countrey, of whom was the lyke fame of holynesse: whiche excuse I deuised, because the flecte of *India* woulde not yet depart from thence for the space of a moneth. In the meane tyme I secretly agreed with a certayne captayne of that nauie to goe with hym into *India*, and made hym many fayre promisses to rewarde hym largely. He answered, that he woulde not go into *India* before he had fyrst ben in *Persia*: wherunto I agreed.

A holy vowe.

A holy saint.

The flecte of India.

Of the cities of Lagi and Aiaz in Arabia Felix:  
And of the martes of Aiaz and the  
towne of Dante. Cap. 7.

**T**He daye folowynge, mountynge vppon a Camell, and makynge a iorney of .xxv. myles, I came to a certayne citie named *Lagi*, situate in a great playne, well peopled, hauynge abundaunce of Oliues, and fleshe, with also great  
plentie



plentie of coyne, after our maner : but no vines, and great scarcenesse of woodde . The inhabitauntes are vnciuill and rusticall people, of the nation of vagabunde and feelde Arabians , and therfore but poore. Departing frō hence one daies iorney, I came to an other citie named *Aiaz*, situate bypon two hylles, with a great plaine betweene them , and hath in it a notable fountayne, & therfore diuers nations resoꝛt thither as to a famous mart. The inhabitauntes are *Dahumetans*, and yet greatly differynge in opinion of theyꝝ religion : insomuche that therfore they be at great enimitie one agaynst the other, and keepe soꝛe warre. The cause whereof they saye to be this : That the people of the north mountayne, maynteyne the sayth and secte of *Dahumet* and his felowes, of whom we haue spoken before : but the other of the South mountayne asseyne, that sayth shoulde be geuen onely to *Dahumet* and *Haly*, sayng the other to be falsse prophetes . But let vs nowe returne to the marte . Almost all maner of spices are brought hyther. The region byngeth forth sylke and bombassine : also diuers goodly frutes, and bynes. On the toppe of both the hylles, are very strong foytresses, two dayes iorney from thence is the citie of *Dante*, well fortified both by arte and nature, situate in the toppe of a very great mountaine.

Strife and ha-  
red for religio  
and all worth  
nought.

Mortus Mali,  
as the Persi-  
ans call hym.

Of *Almacharan*, a citie of Arabia Felix, and  
of the fruitfulness thereof .Cap. 8.

**D**Epartyng from *Dante*, we came to the citie of *Almacharan*, in two dayes iorney . This is situate on a very hygh mountayne, and declynyng, and difficulte to ascende, as of the heygth of seuen myles, and the way so narrow, that onely two men can passe togeather . In the toppe, is a playne of incredible largeness, very fruitfull, with plentie of all thynges to the vse of man . And therfore I thynke it to be inexpugnable & inaccessible: hauyng also so great abundaunce of water, that one fountaine may suffice for a hundred thousand men . And therfore they saye that the *Soltan* here hydeth his treasure, because he was boꝛne in this citie.

Heare

Here also euer remayneth one of his wyues. The ayre is marueylous temperate and holosome, and the citie seconde to none in all respectes: the colour of the inhabitantes is rather enclinyng to whyte, then any other colour. And to speake that I haue seene, the *Soltan* reserueth here as much golde, as wyll lade a hundred Camels.

As muche gold  
as wyll lade a  
hundred Ca-  
mels.

Of Rame a citie of Arabia Fælix, and  
the temperatenesse thereof.

Cap. 9.

**T**his citie is distaunt two dayes iorney from *Almacaran*. The colour of the inhabitantes is enclinyng to blacke: they are great merchantes. The soyle is fruitfull of all thynges sauyng wood: it conteyneth in circuite two thousande houses: on the one syde is a mountayne hauyng on it a very strong fortreffe. Here I saw a certayne kinde of sheepe hauyng theyr tayles of fortie and foure pounce weyght, and are without hornes, and also so marueylous fat, that they can scarcely goe for fatnesse. There be lykewyse certayne grapes without graynes, the sweetest that euer I eate, and al maner of suche fruites, as I haue spoken of before. It is of marueylous temperatenesse, as witnesseth the long lyfe of men, for I haue spoken with many of them that haue passed the age of a hundred and fyue and twentie yeeres, & yet verie lusty and wel complexioned. They goe for the most part naked, wearyng only shyrtis, or other loose and thynne apparell, lyke Mantelles, puttynge out one Arme all bare. Almoste all the Arabians make them Hornes with wreathyng of theyr owne heare, and that they thynke very comely.

A sheepes taylor  
of .44. pounce  
weyght.

Grapes without  
graynes.

Men of long  
lyfe in temperate  
ayre.

Of Sana a citie of Arabia Fælix.

Cap. 10.

**D**epartyng from thence three dayes iorney, I came to a citie named *Sana*, situate vppon a verie hyghe mountayne, verie strong by Arte and Nature. The *Soltan* besyged this, with a great armie of fourescore

An armpe of  
fourfcore  
thousand men.

Strong walles.

Anthropophag-  
es.

score thousande men for the space of three monethes, but coulde neuer wyne it. Yet it was at the last rendered by composition. The walles are of eyghteene cubites heyght, and twentie in breadyth, inso much that eyght Camels in order may wel marche vpon them. The region is very fruitefull and muche lyke vnto ours, and hath plentye of water. A *Soltan* is Lorde of the cite: hee hath twelue sonnes, of the whiche one is named *Mahumet*, who by a certayne naturall tyrannye and madnesse, delpteth to eate mans fleshe, and therfore secretly kylleth many to eate them. He is of large and strong body, of foure cubites hygh, and of the coloure inclinyng to ashes. The soyle beareth certayne spyes not farre from the cite. It conteyneth about foure thousand houses. The houses are of sayre buyldyng, and geue no place to ours. The cite is so large, that it conteyneth within the walles, fieldes, gardens, and meadowes.

Of Taessa, Zibith, and Damar, great cities of  
Arabia Eelix. Cap. II.

Roses.

**A**fter three dayes iorney, I came to a cite named *Taessa*, lytuate vpon a mountayne, and verpe sayre to syght: it hath plentye of all delices, and especially of marueylous sayre *Roses*, whereof they make *Rose water*. It is an auncient cite, and hath in it a Temple buylded after the fashyon of the churche of *Santa Maria Rotunda* in Rome. The houses are very sayre, and shewe yet the monumentes of antiquities: innumerable merchantes resort hither for the trafficke of sundry merchandies. In apparrell they are lyke vnto other, and of darkyshe ashe coloure of skynne, enclynynge to blacke. Three dayes iorney from thence, I came to an other cite named *Zibith*, very sayre and good, distaunt from the redde sea onely halfe a dayes iorney: there is great abundance of merchandies by reason of the nearenesse of the sea. It aboundeth with many goodly thynges, and especially with most white *Suger*, and sundry kyndes of pleasant frutes. It is lytuate in a very large playne within two mountaynes: it lacketh walles, and is one of the cheefest martes for all sortes of spyes. The inhabitants are of the colour of them aforesayde. From hence in one dayes iorney

Suger.

tozney, I came to the citie of *Damar*: it is in a fruitefull soyle, and hath great exercise of merchandise. The inhabitants are *Mahometans*, in apparrell and colour lyke vnto the other.

Of the Soltan of the aforesayde cities,  
and why he is named *Sechamir*,

Cap. 12.

**T**hese cities whereof we haue spoken here a litle before, are subiect to a Soltan of *Arabia Felix*, named *Sechamir*. *The Soltan of Arabia felix.*  
*Secha* (by interpretation) signifieth holy, and *Amir*, a Prince, named the holy Prince, because he abhorreth shedding of mans blood. At the tyme of my beyng there in prysen, he nourysed syrteene thousand poore men, and captiues in prysen condemned to death, allowyng to euery of them dayly for theyr diet, syre of theyr pence of the smallest valure, *A pitiful pagan.*  
and at home in his pallace entertayneth as many blacke slaues, *A great familie.*

Of Monkeys and *Marmasettes*, and  
other beastes, noysome to  
men, Cap. 13.

**D**epartyng from hence, I returned to the citie of *Aden* in three dayes tozney: in the midde waye, I founde an exceeding hygh and large mountayne, where is great penitie of wylde beastes, and especially of Monkeys, whiche runne about the mountayne euery where. There are also many Lions, very noysome to men: and therefore it is not safe to tozney that way, but when a multitude of men goe togeather, at the least to the number of a hundred. I passed this way with a great companie, and yet were we in daunger of the Lions, and other wylde beastes which folowed vs: for we were sometimes constrainned to fyght with them with dartes, slyngs, and bowes, vsyng also the helpe of dogges, and yet escaped hardly. When I came to the citie, I sayned my selfe sicke: and in the day tyme lurked in the temple, and went forth only in the night to speake with the pilot of the shyp (of whom I haue made mention before) and obteyned of hym a foist or barke to depart thence secretly.

*Of Aden reade the fourth cap.*

*Monkeys and Lions.*

*Danger of wilde beastes.*



Of certayne places of Ethiopia,  
Cap. 14.

**I**N the fyrst chapter here befoze, I haue made mention howe departing from the queene I went to the citie of *Aden*, where I couenaunted with a certayne pilot to goe with hym into *India*, and that he woulde not go thither befoze he had fyrst made a biage into *Persia*, and that at my fyrst beyng in the citie of *Aden*, he coulde not yet for the space of a moneth depart from thence: Dur yng whiche tyme, I traueyled the regions and cities, whereof I haue spoken, unto this my returne to *Aden*. Nowe therfoze accordyng to our agrement to traueyle diuers countreys and regions, committing our selues to the sea, we were by inconstant fortune and sundry tempestes, deterred from that biage: for whereas we were nowe fyve dayes sailyng on our waye to *Persia*, a sodayne contrary tempeste droue vs out of our waye, and cast vs on the coast of *Ethiope*. Our barkes were laden with rubricke (that is, a certayne redde earth) which is bled to dye cloth: for peerely from the citie of *Aden*, departe fyfteeene or twentie shypys laden with rubricke, which is brought out of *Arabia Felix*. Beyng therfoze thus tossed with stormes, we were dnyuen into a port, named *Zeila*: where we remayned fyue dayes to see the citie, and tarrye vntyll the sea were moze quiet.

Tempest.

The biage to  
*Persia*.  
*Ethiope*.

Rubricke.

Of the citie *Zeila* in *Ethiopia*, and  
the great fruitfulnessse therof:  
and of certayne straunge  
beastes seene there.

Cap. 15.

**I**N this citie, is great frequentation of merchandies, as in a most famous mart. There is marueylous abundance of gold and *Iuerye*, and an innumerable number of blacke slaues, solde for a small pryce: these are taken in warre by the *Bahumetan* Mozes, out of *Ethiopia*, of the kyngdome of *Presbiter*.

Golde.  
*Iuerye*.  
Blacke slaues.

ter Iohannes, or Preciosus Iohannes, whiche some also call the kyng of Iacobins or Abyssins, beyng a Chyrtian: and are caried away from thence into Persia, Arabia Felix, Babylonia of Nilus or Aleair, and Mecha. In this citie iustice and good lawes are obserued: the soyle beareth Wheate, and hath abundance of flesh, and diuers other commodious thynges. It hath also Oyle, not of Olyues, but of some other thyng, I knowe not what. There is also plentie of Hony and Waxe: there are lykewylse certayne sheepe, haupng theyr tayles of the weyght of fyreteene pounce, and exceedyng fatte, the head and necke are blacke, and all the rest whyte. There are also sheepe altogether whyte, haupng tayles of a cubite long, hangyng downe lyke a great cluster of grapes: and haue also great lappes of skynne hangyng from theyr thoytes, as haue Bulles and Oxen, hangyng downe almost to the grounde. There are also certayne Kyne with hornes lyke vnto Hartes hornes, these are wylde: and when they bee taken, are geuen to the Soltan of that citie as a kyngly present. I sawe there also certayne Kyne, haupng only one horne in the midst of the forehead, as hath the Unicorne, and about a spanne of length, but the horne bendeth backward: they are of bryght shynyng red colour. But they that haue Hartes hornes, are enclinyng to blacke colour. Conye is there good cheepe. The citie hath an innumerable multitude of merchants: the walles are greatly decayed, and the hauens rude and despicable. The kyng or Soltan of the citie is a Mahumetan, and enterpayneth in wages a great multitude of foote men and horsemen. They are greatly geuen to warres, and weare onely one loose syngle vesture, as we haue sayde before of other. They are of darke ashy colour, enclinyng to blacke. In the warres, they are vnarmed: and are of the sect of Mahumet.

Prefbiter Iohannes, kyng of Iacobins & Abyssins. Iustice & good lawes.

Sheepe with great rapies,

Palcaria.

Kyne with Hartes hornes.

Kyne with only one horne.

Of Barbara, an Ilande of Ethiope.  
Cap. 16.

After that the tempestes were appeased, wee gaue wynde to our sayles, and in shorte tyme arriued at an Ilande named Barbara, the Prince whereof is a Mahumetan. The Ilande is not great,  
Ecc. ii. but

but fruitfull and well peopled : it hath abundance of fleshy. The inhabitants are of colour enclinyng to blacke. Al theye ryches, is in heardes of cattayle. We remainned here but one day, and departyng from hence, sayled into *Persia*.

The thyrde booke entreateth of *Persia*:  
and of certayne townes and partes  
of *Persia*. Cap. 1.

*Diubander-  
rumi.*

**W**hen we had sayled the space of twelue dayes, we aryued at a citie called *Diubanderrumi*, (that is to say) the holy porte of *Turkes*. It is but a litle way from the continent : when the sea ryseth with hye tydes, it is an Iland enuironed with water, but at a lowe fludde, or decrease of the sea, one may go thither by land : it is subiect to the Soltan of *Cambaia*. The Gouvernour is named *Menacheas*: It is a marte of great merchandies. There dwell about it foure hundred merchants of *Turky*: it is well walled round about, and defended with all sorts of engins. They haue barkes and byggantines somewhat lesse then ours : we remained here two daies. Departyng from hence, we came to an other citie named *Goa*, in the space of thre dayes iorney : this also aboundeth with merchandies, and is a mart greatly frequented. The soyle is fruitfull, with plentie of all thynges necessary : the inhabitantes are *Mahumetans*. Neare vnto this, are two other sayre cities and portes, named *Gulfar* and *Meschet*.

*The Soltan of  
Cambaia.*

*Goa.*

*Gulfar.  
Meschet.*

Of the Iland and citie of *Ormus*, or *Ar-  
musium*: and of an Iland of *Per-  
sia* where pearles are found.

Cap. 2.

*Ormus.  
Pearles.*

**P**Roceedyng on our biage, we came to a citie named *Ormus*, verrey sayre. This is seconde to none in goodlye situation, and plentie of pearles : it is in an Ilande dystaunt from the continent twelue myles : It hath greate scarcenesse of freshe water and corne,  
from

From other regions, is brought thither all victualles that nouryshe the inhabitauntes . Thre dayes saylyng from thence, are geathered those muscles which byyng sooth the fayrest and hyggest pearles: they are taken as I will nowe declare. There are certayne men that get theyr lyuing by fylling . These hauing small Boates, cast into the sea a great stone, fastened to a corde, and this on both sydes of the Boate, to make it as stedfast and immoueable as a shyppe lying at an Anker . The Boate thus stayed as it were with weyght and balance, an other appoynted to that purpose, casteth into the sea a corde with a stone hangyng at it . In the myddest of the Boate an other hauing a sacke hangyng on his shoulder befoze and behynde, and a stone hangyng at his fete, hurleth him selfe into the sea, and swimmeth vnder the water euen vnto the bottome of the sea, for the deapth of fiftiene pases or more, and there remaineth vntyll he haue geathered the pearle Muscles, which he putteth in his sacke, then he casteth away the stone that weyghed him downe, and commeth by by the corde . There are seene sometyne almost thre hundred shippes, and other kynde of vessels, which come thither from many places and countreys . The Solan of the citie, is a Bahumetan . There are aboute foure hundred merchauntes and factours remainyng here continually, for the trafike of merchandies whiche come from diuers other regions, as silke, pearles, precious stones, spices, and suche lyke. They lyue with Ryse for the moste parte, for they haue none other coyne.

Fylling for Pearles.

Diuer vnder the water.

Of the citie named Eri in Chorazani, a region of Persia, and of the riches thereof: Also of Reubarbarum. Cap. 3.

**D**Epartying from Ormus, I went into Persia: And after ten dayes tourney, I came to a certayne citie named Eri. The name of the region, is *Chorazani*, by which signification we may also name it *Flaminia*. The Kyng of the region, dwelleth in the citie: It is fruitefull and plentiful almost of all thinges . There is seene so great aboundaunce

Chorazani or Chorathan.



Great abun-  
dauce of like.

Plentie of  
corne.  
Rubarbe of  
small pyce.

of sylke, that you may in one daye bye as muche as may suffice to lade thzee thousande Camels. Corne is there neuer deare, by reason of the great abundaunce. There is great plentie of Rubarbe, as I geather by this coniecture, that syxe pounde of Rubarbe, after our pounde of .xii. vnces to the pounde, are solde for one croune of golde. The citie conteyneth in circuite about seuen thousande houses. They are of the secte of Bahumet. Departyng from hence twentie dayes toney, I obserued that the continent region of firme lande, farre from the sea syde, is very well inhabited with many good towncs and byllages.

Of the ryuer thought to be Euphrates.  
And of Castoreum .Cap. 4.

The riuen Eu-  
phrates.

Schira.

Precious stons  
The stone Es-  
ranon. A Tur-  
ques.

Balascam.

Castoreum.

The pyce of  
true Castoreum.

**I**n this iozney I came to a certayne great ryuer, whiche in the inhabitantes language euen at this daye is named *Eufra*, which I verily thynke to be *Euphrates*, considering also the large capacitie thereof. Proceedyng therefore on my iozney by the ryuer towarde the left hande, I came in the space of thzee dayes to an other citie, named *Schira*. This hath onely one prynce, and he a Persian Bahumetan, and subiecte to none other. Here are founde all sortes of precious stons, and especially the stone *Eranon*, whiche deliuereth men from wichecraftes, madnesse, and fearefulnesse, proceedyng of melancolie. It is the stone commonly called the Turquesse. They are brought in great abundaunce from a citie named *Balascam*, where is also great plentie of *Castoreum*, and sundrye kyndes of coloures. And heere I notifie vnto you, why there is founde litle true *Castoreum* among vs, because it is adulterate by the Persians before it come to our handes, for these people are greatly geuen to the counterfettyng of suche thynges, as I saw by experience before myne eyes: for willyng on a tyme to proue the odoriferous strength of pure *Castoreum*, I sawe certayne, that had experience hereof, do in this maner. They tooke the bladder of *Castoreum*, and foure of them one after an other, put it to their noses to smell.

The

The sauour of it was so strong, that it made theyr noses bleede: and by this profe, they knew it to be pure *Castoreum*, & not counterfect. I asked the Persian whether *Castoreum* (as other the lyke vngments or drugges) would sone loose his stenge. He answered, that the strength of that sauour myght be preserued the space of ten yeres, yf it were not counterfect. The Persians are very courteous and gentle people, lyberall and gracious one to an other, and sauozable to strangers: and this I speake as I haue founde and seene by experyence. Duryng the tyme that I was there, I founde a certayne Persian merchant, who the yere before knewe me in the citie of *Mecha*: he was bozne in the citie of *Eri* in *Corozaim*. As soone as he saw me, he spake to me in this maner, *Lodouicke*, what God or fortune hath sent thee unto these countreyes? Art not thou he whom not long sence I knewe in *Mecha*? To whom I answered, I am certaynely the same, and am now come hyther for the great desire that I haue to see the worlde. Prayed he God, sayd he, that I haue nowe found a companion of my iorney, that is taken with the same desire that I haue: and therfore for the space of fyfteeen dayes we remayned togeather in a citie named *Squilar*. He exhorted me not to depart from hym, but that we should togeather, by his guydyng, trauayle the cheefe partes of the worlde. Enteryng therfore on our iorney, we came fyrst to a place named *Sainct Bragant*.

Commendation  
of the Persi-  
ans.

*Squilar*,

*Sainct Bragant*,

Of the citie of *Sainct Bragant*, bygger then  
Babylon. And of the kyng of Persia,  
named the *Sophie*. Cap. 5.

40

**T**hey saye that the citie of *Sainct Bragant*, is bygger then *Babylon*: the kyng of the citie, is a *Mahumetan*. The merchantes saye that when it pleaseth hym, he assembleth an armie of threescore thousande Horsemen. The people are of colour enclinyng to whytenesse, and verye warrellyke men. This we say only by enformation of other: for we couide not safely passe anye further, by reason of the great warres which the *Sophie* then made agaynst those *Mahumetans*, which are of the sect and religion of *Bubachar*, *Othomar*, & *Omar*.

An armie of  
threescore  
thousand horse-  
men.

War betwene  
the *Sophie* of  
Persia and the  
Turke, for their  
religion.

Eccl. iiii.

These

The Turkes  
holde of Mahu-  
met and his  
felowes.

The Persians  
hold of Mahu-  
met and Hali,  
or Morus  
Hali.

A sure friend in  
necessitie.

These were the felowes of Mahumet, as we haue written be-  
fore of Mahumet and his felowes. The Persians abhorre these  
as heretikes and false doctours, although they them selues also  
be Mahumetans of an other secte, whiche is of Mahumet and  
Hali, whose doctrine they embrace and esteeme for most perfect  
and true religion. Here therefore the sayde Persian, my good  
friende, and ioyfull companion of my iourney, sayde thus vnto  
mee, That thou mayest vnderstande (Lodouike) the vnfayned  
good will that I beare thee, and the desyre I haue that our friend-  
shipp may be knyt with indissoluble bandes, and thereby to assure  
thee that I will not fayle thee in thy necessitie, I haue a wyfe  
named Samis, whom I wil gyue thee to wyfe. Samis in theyr  
tongue, signifieth the Sunne (for shee deserved so to be called for  
her singuler beaurtie) and sayde furthermore, that he dyd not tra-  
uayle the worlde for lacke of any thyng, but only for his pleasure  
and desyre of knowledge. And therefore passyng no further, by  
reason of the warres (as we haue sayde) we returned to the citie  
of Eri, where he entercepted mee in his house honourably: and

Shewyng mee his wyfe, instantly desyred mee to take her  
to wyfe. But I, hauyng in mynde otherwyse desti-  
nate, would not seeme to contemne his so friend-  
ly a profer, but deferred it to a moze conue-  
nient tyme. Therefore departyng from  
thence, within eight dayes after, we  
returned to Ormus, and sayled from  
thence into India, arryuing there  
at a certayne porte na-  
med Cheo.

Cheo.

Here

Here foloweth the fourth booke, which entreateth  
of India, and of the cities and other notable  
thynges seene there.

Of the citie of Cambaia in India, most fruite-  
full in maner of all things. Cap. I.



Ensinuche as in the begynnynge of this  
woorke we promised that we would declare  
all thynges bryefely, we intende nowe heere  
to speake onely of thynges whiche may  
seeme most woorthye to be knowen. En-  
tryng therfore into India, we came to a  
certaine porte, which the great and famous  
ryuer Indus passeth by, and is not far from the citie of Cambaia.  
It is situate thre myles within the lande, towarde the South.  
The Bigantines or Foysses can haue no accesse to it, excepte  
the fludde ryle hygher then commonly it is woont to do, which  
sometymes ouerfloweth the lande the space of foure myles. But  
heere the fluddes haue contrarpe courses of increasyng, for heere  
they increase in the wane of the Moone, but with vs in the full  
Moone. The citie is walled after our maner, and aboundeth  
with al necessarie thynges, especially with wheate, and al sort of  
holesome and pleasaunt frutes. There are also certayne kyndes  
of spyes, the names whereof I knowe not. It hath also abun-  
dauce of gossampine or bombastine cotton. Merchants bying  
from thence peerele so much bombastine and silke, that sometime  
they lade fourtie or fyftie thysps to cary into other countreys. In  
this region is also a mountayne where the Onyx stone, common-  
ly called Corneola, is founde: and not farre from thence also an  
other mountaine, where the Calcedony and Diamant are found.

The ryuer In-  
dus.  
The citie of  
Cambaia.

Note the in-  
crease of ryuers  
contrarpe to  
ours.

xl. thysps lade  
with silke and  
bombastine.

The maners of the people of the citie of Cambaia:  
and of the Soltan thereof. Cap. 2.

The Soltan of Cambaia, at my beyng there, was named Maca-  
mut, and had raygned fourtie yeeres, after he had expelled the  
the



Pithagorici.

Good people.

They may  
seeme the lures  
cellours of  
Darius and  
Darius.

The great  
pompe of the  
knyng of  
Cambaia.

Elephantes.

Monstruous  
great lyppes.

A straunge his-  
torie of a knyng  
accustomed to  
eate popson.

A venomous  
knyng.

the knyng of *Gugurat*. They thynke it not lawefull to kyll any  
lyuyng beaste to eate, or to eate fleshe. They are no *Bahume-*  
*tans*, neyther *Idolaters*, and therefore I beleue that if they  
were baptised, they were not far from the way of saluation, for  
they obserue the exquisite rule of iustice, doyng no worse to other,  
then they woulde to be done to them. As touchyng theyr ap-  
parell, some of them go naked, and other couer onely theyr pri-  
uities. On theyr heades, they weare syllettes of purple colour.  
Theyr hem selues are of darke yelow colour, commonly called  
*Leonell* colour. This *Soltan* maynteyneth an army of .xx. thou-  
sande horsemen. Euery moynyng resort to his pallace, fyftie  
men, syttyng on *Elephantes*. Their office is, with all reuerence  
to salute the king or *Soltan*, the *Elephantes* also kneelyng downe.  
In the moynyng alsoone as the knyng waketh, is hearde a great  
noble of *Dummes*, *Tambartes*, *Tymbrelles*, *Waptes*,  
and also *Trumpettes*, with dyuers other muscally instruments,  
in reioycyng that the knyng lyueth. The lyke do they whyle he is  
at dinner: and then also the men syttyng on the *Elephantes*, make  
hym the lyke reuerence as before. We wyll in due place speake  
of the wytte, customes, and docillite of these beastes. The  
*Soltan* of this citie, hath his vypper lyppe so grosse, that it is a  
monstruous thyng to beholde: Insomuche that sometyme he  
beareth it by with a fillet, as women do the heare of theyr heades:  
his bearde is whyte and long, euen vnto the naucell. He is so  
accustomed to popson from his infancie, that he dayly eateth  
some to keepe it in vse. And although he hym selfe feele no hurte  
thereof by reason of custome, yet doth he thereby so impopson  
hym selfe, that he is popson to other: for when he is disposed to  
put any of his noble men to death, he causeth hym to be broughe  
to his presence, and to stande naked before hym. Incontinent  
he eateth certayne frutes (whiche they call *Chofolos*) lyke vnto  
*Muttemegges*: and eateth also the leaues of certayne hearbes,  
whiche they call *Tambolos*, addyng also thereto the poudre of  
beaten oyster shelles. And a whyle chawyng al these together  
in his mouth, he spitteth it vpon hym whom he desyreth to kyll,  
who being sparkled therewith, dyeth, by force of the popson with-  
in the space of halfe an houre. He entertaineth about foure thou-  
sand concubines: for when soeuer he hath lyne with any of them,

He

thee with whom he hath lpen, dyeth the daye folowing, be-  
 yng by hym imposoned. And therefore when he changeth his  
 thynt or other apparrel, no man dare weare it: and for this cause  
 he hath great change of apparrell. My companion enquired di-  
 ligently of the merchants by what meanes he was of so vengo-  
 mous nature? They answered, that the *Soltan* his father broughte  
 hym so by of a childe with poison by litle and litle, with preserua-  
 tiues so accustomyng hym thereto. But let vs nowe retorne to  
 speake of the maners of the people: for the most part they weare  
 but only one syngele vesture, and are very warrelpyke men: also  
 greatly geuen to merchandies. The fruitfulnessse and plentiful-  
 nesse of the region can not be spoken. It is frequented almost of  
 al nations. Therfore from this citie, and from an other (where-  
 of we wyll speake hereafter) diuers and innumerable sortes of  
 merchandies, are transported to almost all the regions of the  
 woylde, and especially to the *Turkes*, *Syrians*, *Arabians*, *Indians*:  
 also to diuers regions of *Affricke* and *Ethiopia*: principally ex-  
 cceedyng abundance of sylke and *Bombasyn*, and therefore is  
 this *Soltan* marueylous ryche. He keepeth in maner contynuall  
 warre with the kyng of *Ioga*, whose realme is fyfteene dayes  
 iorney from *Cambaia*, and reacheth very farre euery waye. This  
 kyng mayntayneth an armie of .xxx. thousand fyghtyng  
 men: he and all his people are *Idolatur*s. He lyueth in  
 contynual progresse, with a mightie trayne at the charges of the  
 people: and contynually carrieth about with hym foure thou-  
 sand tentes and paulions: also his wyfe, chyldren, concubines, &  
 slaues, furthermoze, foure or fyue of most couragious horses: like  
 wyfe mul kattes, moonkeys, Parrottes, Leopardes, & haukes.  
 And in this order he walketh almost ouer all *India*. The kynges  
 apparell, is a double gotes skinne, one coueryng his brest, and  
 the other his backe, with the hearysyde outward: he is of we-  
 sel colour, enclining to blackenesse, as are the most part of these  
*Indians*, beyng in maner scorched with heate of the *Sunne*.  
 They weare al earterings, precious stones, and iewels of sundry  
 sortes: some couer theyr body with a single, light, & thinne vesture,  
 puttyng out one arme naked. The kyng and certaine of his no-  
 ble men, paynt their faces with certaine sweete gommes & spi-  
 res: and some also other partes of their bodies. They are ledde  
 with many bayne superstitions: for some professe neuer to lpe on  
 the

Welpke he gets  
 teryh no chyls  
 dien.

Great fruitfull-  
 nesse & abun-  
 dance of mer-  
 chandies.

Plentie of  
 sylke.

The kyng of  
 Ioga-an Idol-  
 latour.

Contynual  
 progresse.

Wyues and  
 concubines.

The colour of  
 the *Indians*.

the grounde, some to lyue in continual silence, as though they were speechelesse, hauing two or thre appointed by signes to serue them meate and drynke.

Hornes.

They haue all hornes hangyng about theyr neckes: and therfore when they come to any citie, they blowe theyr hornes all at once. to make the inhabitantes afrayde, as do they that with us keepe Crows or Rookes out of the corne. Then commyng to talke with the citizens, they demaund victuales, and what so euer other thynges they stande in neede of. Whyle the kyng any tyme reflecteth a whyle in one place, almost all the whole armye gardyng his person about his pauplion, fyue or syxe hundred in the meane tyme raunge abroade together to geat what they can. They tarry not past thre dayes in one place, but are euer wanderyng after the maner of the vagabunde Egyptians, Arabians, & Tartars. The region is not fruiteful, but rough, with craggie mountaines. The houses of the citie are despicable: the citie is also without walles. This kyng is enemye to the Sultan of Machamir, & vexeth hym greatly with diuers incursions.

Wanderyng  
nations.  
Felds men.

Of the citie of Ceull, and the maner of  
the people. Cap. 3.

**D**Epartying from *Cambia*, in twelue dayes forney I came to a citie named *Ceull*: the land that lieth betweene them both, is called *Guzerat*. The kyng of this citie, is an Idolatour: they are of darke yealow colour, or Lion taburpe: some were suche slender apparrell as they whom we haue spoken of before: other are naked, coueryng onely theyr pryncipities. They are prompt to the warres, and vse swordes, bowes, dartes, syniges, and rounde targettes. They haue engines to beat downe walles, & to make great slaughter in an armie: the citie hath walles, and is distant from the sea but thre myles. A fayre ryuer runneth by the citie, by the whiche much merchandies is brought thither. The soyle beareth almost all maner of frutes, except Vynes, Malnutes, and Chestnutes. It hath also Wheate, Barlie, and other kyndes of corne. Here is made great plentie of Bombasyn cloth. They are such Idolatours as are they of *Calecut*, of whom we wyl speake hereafter: yet are there in the citie many merchants *Mahumetans*. They exercise iustice. The kyng entertayneth but a small armie.

Guzerat.

Idolatours.

There

There are many hoxles and kyne. Two dayes iorney from hence, is a citie named *Dabuly*, haupng a great ryuer runnyng by it. It hath walles after the maner of ours. The soyle is fruiteful, and the citie beautifull. There are innumerable merchauntes *Dahumetans*. The kyng is an *Idolater*, and hath an armye of .xxx. thousande men. They are in maners lyke vnto the other, and of the same colour.

*Dabuly.*

*Idolaters.*

Of Goga, an Ilande of India. Cap. 4.

Departing from hence, I came to the Iland of *Goga*, not past a myle distant from the continent. This payeth peerely trybute to the kyng of *Dechan* a thousand peeces of golde, of the value of the *Saraphes* of *Babylon*, haupng on the one syde the Image of the dyuell, and on the other syde, certayne vnknowen caractes. Upon the sea coaste of one syde of this Ilande, is a towne buylded after the maners of ours. The gouernour is a certayne Captayne of soldiers named *Sauain*: he hath in his regiment foure hundred *Damaluks*, and is also a *Damaluke* hym selfe: and therefore when he fyndeth any whyte men, he entertayneth them frendly, and geueth them stypende of twentie *Saraphes* of golde euery moneth. But he fyrst maketh pfofe of their strength and valiantnesse by wrestlyng: and if they be not founde meete for the warres, he puttieth them to handy craftes. This Captayne with onely his foure hundred *Damaluks*, greatly vexeth the kyng of *Narsinga*. Departing from hence, in eyght dayes iorney by lande, I came to the citie of *Dechan*.

*Tribute.*

*Copie.*

*Damaluks.*

*whyte men.*

Of Dechan, a very fayre citie of India. Cap. 5.

The kyng or *Soltan* of *Dechan*, is a *Dahumetan*, of whom the foze daye captayne *Damaluke* is entred in wages. This citie is beautifull in syght, and the soyle very fruitefull and plentifull in maner of all thynges necessarie.

The



The kyng is accompted a Hamaluke, and with hym .xxv. thousande men of his dominion of horsemen and footemen. The citie is beautified with a marueylous fayre pallace, and the pallace adourned with many fayre roomes, for before you come to the kynges chamber, you must passe by .xliiii. other chambers, for the sollers of the chambers are so orderly disposed, that one chamber styll geueih entyre into an other, vntyll you come to the last. The citie is compassed with a wal, after the maner of the Chyistians. The houses are not vncomely. The kyng bleseth incredible pompe, and regal magnificence. They that wayte vppon his person weare vppon theyr shooes or sharpins Rubies and Diamondes, and such other precious stones. What ouches and iewelless they weare in theyr earynges and Condalyjs, Cartkenettes colours, let wittie men iudge, comparng the feete to the more noble partes of the bodie. Sixe miles from the citie is a mountayne where Diamondes are digged. It is compassed with a wall, and kept with a Garrison. The region hath plentie of all thynges. The people are Bahumetans. Theyr apparel for the most part is of sylke: or at the least the therie or inmost vesture. They weare also thyne buskynnes: and hose lyke gregascos or maryners slops. Theyr women, after the maner of the women of *Damasco*, haue theyr faces couered. The kyng keepeth in maner continual war with y<sup>e</sup> king of *Narsinga*. The most part of his souldiers are strangers, enterpneyed for wages. They are white men: but the inhabitantes, of the coloure of the other Indians. The kyng is marueylous ryche, and liberall. He hath also a great nauie of shypps. He hateth the Chyistians as much as any other. Thus hauyng traueled this part of the region, I toke my iozney towarde a citie named *Bathacala*, fyue dayes iozney from *Dechan*. The inhabitantes are Idolaters, except certayne Bahumetan merchaumes, which resorte thither for marchandise. It hath abundaunce of Ryle, Sugar, fygges, Walnattes, Wheate, Cozne, and many other fruites and rootes vnknowen to vs. They haues Beeces, Kyne, Bulles, Sheepe, Goates, and dyuers other beastes, but no Horses, Mules, or Asses.

A fayre palace.

Great pompe  
and magnifi-  
cence.

Where Dias-  
mundes are  
founde.

Womens fa-  
ces couered.

White men.

The kyng of  
*Dechan*, hateth  
the Chyistians.

The citie *Ba-  
thacala*.

Of certayne other goodly cities  
of India. Cap. 6.

**D**Epartying from hence, I tooke my iorney towarde a citie named *Centacola*, one dayes iorney from *Bathacala*. The prince of this citie is no lord of great richesse. There is neuerthelesse abundaunce of flethe, Rysse, and other suche fruites as growe in *India*: many *Bahumetans* resort hither for merchaundies. The kyng is an Idolater, and of Lion tawny colour. They go starke naked, and weare nothyng on theyr heades. This prince is subiecte to the kyng of *Barthacal*. Departying from hence two dayes iorney, I came to an Ilande named *Onor*, whose kyng is an Idolater, and serueth the deuyll, and is subiect to the kyng of *Narsinga*: He is very gentle and familer, he maynteyneth eyght foyltes, which make excursions and lyue by rounyng and pyracie. He is in great frendshyppe with the kyng of *Portugale*. The inhabitantes couer their priuities with a sindone, and are besyde all naked. The soyle beareth plentie of Rysse, as in other partes of *India*. There are in maner al kyndes of beastes, as wyld Bores, Harts, *Molues*, Lions, sundry kinds of birdes and foules vnto ours, *Hecockes* also and *Parrottes*. It hath innumerable Kyne of shynnyng pelowe colour: also sheepe exceedyng fatte. There is so great abundaunce of flowers and Roses, that they fayle not in wynter. There can not be a more temperate ayre: and therfore they lyue muche longer then we do. Not far from this citie, is an other citie named *Mangolor*: from whence, about the number of .ix. shippes departe yerecly laded with Rysse. The inhabitantes are partly Idolaters, and partly *Bahumetans*. Their maner of lyuing and apparell, is as we haue sayd before,

*Centacola.*

*Idolaters.*  
*Barthacal.*

*The Ilande of*  
*Onor.*

*A kyng a*  
*pirate.*  
*Naked men.*

*Rysse.*  
*Beastes.*

*Ryndes and*  
*foules.*

*Flowers all*  
*the yere longe.*

*Longe Rysse.*  
*Mangolor.*

*Rysse.*

Of Canonor and Narsinga, great cities  
of India. Cap. 7.

**D**Epartying from hence, we directed our iorney toward the citie of *Canonor*, beyng a very goodly citie. Heere the kyng of *Portugale* hath a very strong towne. The kyng of the citie is an Idolater, and no great frend to the kyng of *Portugale*.

*Afterwarde he*  
*became frende*  
*to the Portugales.*

*The*

The cite hath a porte, whither are brought the hoxles of Persia but the custome for hoxles is exceeding great. Departyng from hence, and entryng further into the lande, we came to the cite of *Narsinga*, where many *Bahumetan* merchauntes do dwel. The soyle beareth neyther wheate, nor bynes, or fewe other frutes, except *Oranges* and *Gourdes*. They eat no breade: but lyue with ryle, fysh, and suche walmutes as the countrey beareth. In maners and Idolatrye, they are lyke vnto them of *Calecut*, of whiche we wyl speake hereafter. There is founde plentie of spyes, as *Ginger*, *Pepper*, *Myrobalans*, *Cardanum*, *Cassia*, and dyuers suche other. Also many and dyuers kindes of frutes unlyke vnto ours, and muche sweeter. The region is in maner inaccessible for many dennes and diches made by force. The kyng hath an army of fyftie thousande gentelmen, whiche they call *Heros*. In the warres they vse swoordes, rounde Targettes, or Buklers, Lances, Dartes, Bowes, Slyniges: and begyn nowe also to vse Gunnes. They go naked, coueryng onely their priuities, except when they go to the warres. They vse no hoxles, Mules, Asses, or those Camels whiche we commonly call *Dromedaries*. They vse onely Elephantes, yet not to fyght in the battayle. Great merchaundise is bled in the cite: for thither resozte from dyuers countres two hundred shippes peerele. Departyng from the kyngdome of *Narsinga*, in .xv. dayes iozney towarde the East, we came at the length to a cite named *Bisnagar*.

Of the fruiteful cite of *Bisnagar* in the  
kyngdome of *Narsinga*, Cap. 8.

The cite of *Bisnagar* is vnder the dominion of the kyng of *Narsinga*, and subiect to hym. The cite is very large and well walled, situate on the syde of a hyll, and eyght myles in circuite. It is compassed with a triple wall, and is a famous mart of all sortes of ryche merchaundise. The soyle is marueplous fruitefull, and hath whatsoeuer pertaineth to delicates and pleasures. There is no lande more commodious for haukyng and huntynge, for it hath large playnes, and goodly woods: a man would saye it were an earthly *Paradise*.  
The

The cite of  
*Narsinga*.

Oranges.

Fyfe.

Spyes.

Strange  
frutes.

An army of  
fyfte thousand  
gentelmen.  
Gunnes.

*Dromedares*.  
*Elephantes*.

A triple wall.

Haukyng and  
huntynge.

The kyng and people are Idolaters. He is a Prince of great power, he hath an army of foure thousande horsemen. And yet is it to be noted, the pryce of a good horse there, to be no lesse then foure or fyue hundred of those peeces of golde whiche they call *Pardais*: And someryme it so chaunceeth that a horse is solde for eight hundred of those peeces of golde. The cause of which great pryce is, that they are brought out of other countreys: and that they haue no Hares, being forbydden by the commaundement of the kynges, streightly chargyng the portes to be kepte, least any Hares should be brought into the countrey. Hee hath also foure hundred Elephantes to serue in the warres: and likewise as many Camelles, of the kynde of those swifte runnyng Camelles whiche be commonly called *Dromedarii*. And here me seemeth good oportunitie to say somewhat of the docilitie, agilitie, and wyte of Elephantes, as we haue promised.

An army of foure thousande horsemen.

Horses of great Pryce.

Foure hundred Elephantes.

Dromedary Camelles.

Of the docilitie, agilitie, and wit of Elephantes. Cap. 9.

**T**he Elephant, of all foure footed beastes, and nexte vnto man, is most wittie and docible, and not farre from humane sence, and surmounteth all other beasts in strength. When the Indians bring them to the warres, they put great packesaddelles on their backs, suche as in Italie they vse for the great Oxen. These packesaddelles, they gyde vnder theyr bellies with two chaynes of Iron. Vppon the saddelles, they place on euery syde a litle house, or if you will, rather call them Turrettes, or Cagies, made of wood: euery Turret containeth thre men. Betweene the two Turrettes, sitteth an Indian on the backe of the beast, and speaketh to him in his owne language, whiche the beast vnderstandeth and obeyeth: for it is certaine that no other beast approacheth so neare to the vnderstanding of man. Seuen men therefore are thus placed vppon one Elephant when they goe to the wars, and all armed with coates of sence, Targets, Bowes, Launces, Dartes, and Slinges. Also the trunke or snout of the Elephant (whiche of the Latines is called *Promyseis*, or *Proboscis*, and of some, the hande of the Elephant) is armed, and hath a sword fastened to it of the length of two cubites, very strong, and of a handfull in breadth. And thus

Howe the Elephantes are prepared to the warres.

Seuen men fight vpon one Elephant.

Howe the Elephant is armed



furnished, they proceede to the battayle, When it is requisite to goe forewarde, or backward, the gouernour sitting aboue, gyueth them an instruction with such voyces as they are accustomed vnto: for sometyme he sayth thus to the beast, *Stryke here, stryke there, forbear here, goe forewarde there, turne this way, and that way.* All which woordes he vnderstandeth and obeyeth without spurre or byddell. But where it so chaunceth that by casting of fyre, they are with feare dzyuen to flyght, they can by no meanes be stayd. And therfore these people haue many subtille deuises howe they may feare them with fyre, which this beast, by the sence of nature, feareth aboue all thinges, and therefore styeth in maner at the sight of fyre. And to speake somewhat of theyr strength, as I haue seene by experience, I remember that when I was in the citie of *Canonor*, certayne *Dahumetans* dzyue a hypp aland, turningg the hypp, after the maner of the Christians, with the fore ende toward the lande, and laying vnder it three rowling beanes. Then three Elephantes commodiously applied, drawyng with great force, and bendyng downe theyr heades to the ground, brought the hypp to lande. But many haue thought that the Elephantes haue no ioyntes in theyr legges, and that therefore they could not bende theyr legges: which thyng doubtlesse is false, for they haue ioyntes as haue other beastes, but in the lowest parte of theyr legges. The Females are more fierce then the Males, and much stronger to beare burdens. Sometime they are taken with furie or madnesse, and testifie the same by disordinate runnyng here and there. One Elephant exceedeth the bygnesse of three. Bristles, & not vnylike of heare. They haue eyes lyke swyne, & the snout or trunk very long, wherewith they put meate and dzyinke into their mouth: and therefore may it well be called the hande of the Elephant. The mouth is vnder the throte, much lyke the mouth of a Sow, and the trunk is holowe, and can therewith holde fast stickes or staues, and them rule as it were with a hande. I sawe also the trunk of a tree ouerthrowen by an Elephant, which xxiii. men attemptyng, could not doe. The two great teeth or tuskes, are placed in the highest iawe. Ech of their eares, are two handfuls byg, whether the beast be of the bygger or lesse kinde. The feete are like vnto such round thicke trenchers of wood as be commonly used. The soote containeth fyue hooves,

The Elephant vnderstandeth the voyce of his keeper.

The Elephant can not abyde fyre.

The strength of the Elephant

The Elephant haue ioyntes in their legges.

The hande of the Elephant.

The teeth of the Elephant is Iuery.

in roundnesse like unto great Oysters. The taylor is lyke to the taylor of a Busse, foure handfull long, and of thyn heare. The Females are also bigger then the Males, they are of sundry bignes, for some are of. xiii. handfulls high, and other of. xiiii. handfulls, and some also haue been seene of sixtene handfulls. They goe slowly, and walowing, and therfore some that haue not ben vled to them, are moued to vomite euen as it were on the sea. Yet is it a pleasure to ryde on the young Elephanes, bicause they goe softly like ambeling Dules. When you mount on them, they stoope & bend their knees, that you may easily ascende. They are neuer byrdeled, neyther vlye they keepers any halters to gouerne them.

The bignes  
of the Elephant

Of the ingendering of Elephanes, and of  
the magnificence & riches of the king  
of Narsinga. Cap. IO.

When they ingender, they resorte to the medowes or woods, for by a certaine naturall shamesfastnesse they doe it not but in secrete places: Although some Authors haue written that Elephants engender backward. Some take it for a great present to giue the king the member or pissell of an Elephant, whiche perhappes they doe for the exceedyng great pryce of Elephanes: For some are solde there for fyue hundred peeces of golde, and some (as they say) for two thousande: which peraduenture, is not for theyr greatnesse of bodie, but rather for certayne properties, wyl, & docilitie, wherein some farre exceede other, euen as among men. And I dare well say that I haue seene some men much inferior to Elephants in wyl and sense. Therefore the kyng of Narsinga, in riches and dominion, farre exceedeth all kynges that euer I haue seene or hearde of. The cite in situation and fayrenesse, representeth the cite of Milane, except only that it is in a declining place, and lesse equal. Other kingdome which are subiect to this, lye round about it, as the kyngdome of Ausonia & Venice lye about Milane. Their Bramini (so are the priestes named) tolde me y the king receiueth

The naturall  
shamesfastnesse  
of Elephanes

The pissell of  
an Elephant.

Men of lesse  
vnderstandping  
then Ele  
phanes.  
The riches of  
the kyng of  
Narsinga.

A great tribute  
by the day.

Do. ii.

Dayly

dayly of that citie for tribute or reuennue, the summe of twelue thousandes of those peeces of golde whiche they call *Pardios*. He maynteyneth an army of many thousandes of men, for he liueth in continuall warre with his borderers. He is an Idolatour, and honoureth the deuyl, euen as doth the kyng of *Calecut*. They that are of the rycheest sorte, vse a slender inwarde apparell or peticote, not very long, and bynde theyr heades with a phillet or broade bande, of sundry colours, after the maner of the *Bahumetans*. The common sorte, couer only theyr priuities, and are belyde all naked. The kyng weareth a Cappe of cloth of golde, of two handfulls long: when he goeth to warre, he weareth a vesture of bombasine, and thereon a cloke adourned with plates of gold, haupng the borderer garde besette with all sortes of precious stones and Jewelles. His horse with the furniture, is esteemed to bee woorth as muche as one of our cities, by reason of innumerable Jewelles of great price. When he goeth a hunting, three other kynges beare him company, whose office is to be euer neare him, and gypde him. When he maketh any iourney, or rydeth abrode, he is accompanied with six thousand horsemen: And therefore it is manifeste that not only for these thynges whereof we haue spoken, but also for dyuers other of lyke magnificence, hee is one of the greatest Kynges in the worlde. He coyneeth money and peeces of golde named *Pardios*. Also other siluer money of lesse value, whiche they call *Fano*, contynnyng the value of sixtiene of the smallest money of copper. Traueylers may here goe safely through all his dominions, if they can auoyde the daunger of the Lions. Of theyr dyet and order of lyuynge, I will speake more largely where occasion shall serue to wyte of *Calecut*. This kyng of *Narsinga*, is a great friende to the Christians, and is in great amitie with the kyng of *Portugale*: and belyde him, hee knoweth none other Christian Prince: and therefore the *Portugales* are here friendly and honourably vsed. When I had remainned in this citie many dayes, I returned to the citie of *Canonor*. And after I had remainned there three dayes, I entered further into the lande, and came to a citie named *Trompata*, about twelue myles from *Canonor*.

Idolaters.

A riche cloke.

The magnificence of the kyng of *Narsinga*.

Coyne of golde and siluer.

Daunger of Lyons.

The kyng of *Narsinga*, friend to the kyng of *Portugale*.

The citie of *Trompata*.

The

The inhabitants are Idolatours. It is neare unto the sea, and therefore there are seene many merchantes Mahumetans. They live moderately, & haue in maner none other ryches then nuttes of India, but there are very fayre trees to make shyppes. There are in the citie aboute fiftiene thousande Mahumetans, although the Kyng be an Idolatour. Departyng from hence, I came to the citie of Pandara: and from thence passyng by the citie of Capagot, I came at the length to the famous citie of Calcut. And to be breefe, I haue here ouerpassed to speake largely of many other people and kyngdomes, as are these, Chianul, Dabul, Bathecalo, Onoue, Bangolor, Caunor, Cuchin, Cacion, and Calonne, which I haue done, to the ende that I may entreat more largely of Calcut, as the chiefest, and as it were the head and metropolitane of all the cities of India. For it is certayne that the Kyng of Calcut in royall maiestie exceedeth all the kynges of the East, and is therefore in theyr language called Samory, that is to say, God on the earth.

Mahumetane.

Pandara.

Capagot.

Calcut.

The kyng of Calcut, a God on the earth.

The fyfth booke of East India, and fyrst of the famous citie of Calcut. Cap. I.

The citie of Calcut, is situate by the continent or firme lande, and the sea beatech bypon the houses of the citie. There is no porte: but on the South syde about a myle from the citie, is a ryner which runneth into the Ocean sea by a narrow mouth. This runneth by many braunches into the playne feedes, and is of the inhabitantes by diuers trenches dispearsed to water the ground. It is not past the depth of three or foure foote of water. The course of it bendeth towarde the citie, and runneth into it. The citie is not compassed with walles, but conteyneth in circuite sixe thousande houses, not adherent or ioynnyng togeather after the maner of ours, but by a certayne space distant one from the other, eyther for feare of fyre, or by ignorance of the builders. It is a myle of length. The houses are despicable, as no hygher from the grounde then a man on horsebacke, and are for the most parte couered with boughes of trees, in the steepe of tiles or other coueryng. The cause whereof they say to bee, that in digging the grounde fyre or fyre hand-

The citie of Calcut.

Houses diuers.

Many lowe houses.



full depth, water immediately issueth forth. And therefore they can laye no deeper foundations to beare the weyght of any greater buyldynges. The houses of merchandys, or warehouses, are solde for fyftiene or twentie peeces of golde. But the common houses, are of no greater price then two peeces of golde at the most, and some for lesse.

Houses of small  
price,

Of the kyng of Calcut, and of their  
Idolatrie. Cap. 2.

Idolatrie and  
seruyng of the  
deuyll.  
One God.

Pseudoplato-  
nici.

The deuyll  
Prince of this  
worlde.

Deumo, quasi  
Daemon.  
The Chapell of  
the deuyll.

The deuyls  
chape of ma-  
iestie.  
Difference be-  
tweene the Ro-  
yes crowne and  
the deuylles.  
A well fauour-  
ed Prince.

**T**He kyng of Calcut and his people, are giuen to Idola-  
trie and seruyng of the deuyll: yet deny they not but that  
there is one great God, maker of heauen and earth, and  
first and chiefe cause of all thinges: But they adde there-  
vnto a fable, sayng that God coulde take no pleasure of his  
pryncipate or dominion, if hee him selfe shoulde take vppon him  
the gouernement of the worlde, and therefore that he gaue the  
vicarage of that gouernance to the deuyll, who (they say) was  
sent from heauen for that purpose, and to iudge the worlde, ren-  
dering vnto men well or euill, accordyng to theyr deseruyng.  
This deuyll they name *Deumo*: But the great God him selfe,  
they call *Tamerani*. The kyng hath a Chapell in his Pallace,  
where he honoureth this *Deumo*: the Chapell is open on euery  
syde the breadth of a vaulte of two pases, and is no hygher from  
the grounde then thre pases. The entraunce is by a doore of  
wood, garnished with carued woork, conteynyng the vners  
monstruous fourmes and shapes of deuylles. In the myddest of  
the Chapell, is a seate of maiestie made of copper, with also a  
deuyll of copper sitting in it. This deuyll hath on his head a  
crowne, after the maner of the byshop of Rome, but this hath o-  
uerplus foure hornes, his mouth gapping, with foure nota-  
ble teeth, a deformed nose, louryng and grymme eyes, a threa-  
tenyng looke, crooked handes lyke a fleshe hooke, and feete not  
much vnylike the feete of a Cocke: A monster doubtesse horrible  
and fearefull to beholde. In euery corner of the Chapell sit such  
deuylles of shining copper, as though they were of flaming fyre,  
deuouryng soules miserably. These soules are about the byg-  
ness

nesse of halfe a finger, and some litle bigger. He putteth one soule in his m outh with the ryght hande, and with the lesste hande taketh an other from beneath. Euery moynynge the priestes (whom they call *Bramini*) washe the Idoll with rose water, and perfume him with sweete sauours, and lying prostrate on the grounde, pray vnto him. They sacrifice vnto him once a weeke . Theyr maner of sacrifice is this, They haue a litle cubbarde lyke vnto an Altar, three handfulls hygh, foure handfuls brode, and syue handfuls long: this cubbard they strawe with all maner of floures and sweete pouders . Then haupng a great Chasingdyshe, or the lyke vessel of siluer, full of burnyng coles, they put the blood of the Cocke thereon, and also cast thereon innumerable sweete sauours : In the meane tyme also with sensours in theyr handes, they goe rounde about the Altar, makyng perfume with frankensence, ringyng a litle siluer bell all the whyle of the sacrifice. They kyll the Cocke with a siluer knyfe, and the knyfe also being raped with blood, they put often in the fyre, that no parte of the blood be lost . Sometyne haupng the knyfe in theyr hande, they make certayne straunze gestures, much lyke to those which the masters of fensle vse in giuyng or auoyding of strokes . They neuer ceasse puttyng to more coles and spices or perfumes, vntyll all the blood of the Cocke be burnt . The priest that offereth the blood of the Cocke, hath his armes and feete garnyshe with siluer plates and pendants, in such sorte, that whyle hee moueth, they make a certayne noyse, much lyke vnto sonettes or Haukes belles. He hath on his brest a certayne bosse, contepnyng I know not what secrete figure, which may seeme to be the secrete charact or signe of some mysterie. The sacrifice being finished, he taketh both his handes full of wheate, and goeth from the Alter backward lyke a Creuice, neuer mouyng his eyes from the Alter, vntyll he come to a certayne tree: where openyng his handes, hee casteth the wheate on the tree . Then holdyng his handes aboue his head, he returneth to the Alter, and taketh away all that is thereon.

The deuylles ordinary dyet and deintie meate.

*Bramini, Brachmani.*

The maner of sacrifice to the deuill.

*Gallus Esch- lapio.*

A goodly priest the deuylles Chaplen. A counterfecte Haron.

Offeryng of wheate.

Of the maner which the kyng vseth at his  
meate, Cap. 3.

**T**he Kyng doeth not sit downe to his meate, before foure of the priestes offer it to the deuyl, in this maner. Lifting theyr handes aboue theyr heades, with also many other fantastickall gesticulations, and murmurynge voyces, they offer the meate to the deuyl, & spende long tyme in those ceremonies, to the end that the kyng should eate no meat that is not first offered to the deuyl. They offer the meate in a tray of wood, and therein laye it vppon the brode leaues of a certayne tree. His meate is Kysse, and dyuers other thinges, as fruite, fleshe, and fysh. He sitteth on the grounde without cloth or Carpet. The priestes in the meane tyme stande rounde about him, but appocheeth no nearer then foure or fyue pases, obseruyng diligently the kinges wordes. When the kyng hath leste eatyng, the priestes carry away all that is leste, and in a certayne place thereto appointed, offer it to certayne Crows, which they keepe for the same purpose: And therefore being bled to be thus fedde, geather together at a signe gyuen them, and cate by the meate. These crows are therefore of them esteemed holy: and therefore it is not lawfull for any man to take them, or hurte them.

The deuyl is  
serued before  
the kyng.

Chaplens of  
honour.

I thinke the  
Priestes take  
parte with the  
Crows.

Crows esteem  
and holp.

Of the Priestes of Calecut, called  
Bramini, Cap. 4.

**T**hese Bramini, are in place with them, as are the chiefe priestes or byshoppes with vs. Therefore when the king shall marrie, he lyeth not with his wyfe before shee be deflowered by the Archbyshop, yet taketh he not this vppon him without rewarde: for the kyng gyueth him for his labour fiftie peeces of golde. Only the kyng of Calecut keepeth this custome.

The priestes  
enue  
prouide for  
them selues.

so goodly office  
for a byshop.

Of the dyuers sortes of Idolaters in  
the citie of Calecut .Cap.5.

**T**he chiefeft Idolaters, and of the greateft dignitie, are the *Bramini*. They of the seconde order, are named *Naeri*; Priestes and gentelmen. And in the same place with them, as are with gentelmen, whose office is when they go abrode to beare twoordes, targettes, bowes, launces, and other weapons. The thyrde order consisteth of mecanike or handie craftes men. In the fourth place, are vitaylers, and suche as make prouision of fische and flethe. Next vnto these, are they that geather Pepper, Wyne, Walnuttes, and suche other fruites and spices. The last and basest sort, (named *Nerani*) are they that sowe and geather Ryse. These, as the inferiour tribe of men, are in such subiection to the *Bramini* and *Naeri*, that in payne of death they may approche no nearer vnto them then .i. pases. And therefore they lye lurkpng in certayne shadowes and darke places, and maryshes, lest they shoulde suddenly chaunce to meete with them. Wherefore when they come abrode, that they may be hearde a farre off, they crye with loude voice I wotte neare what, that they may be hearde of the sayde *Bramini* and *Naeri*, least being suddenly betrapped, they shoulde be put to death. Poore men haue no soules

Of the apparell of the kyng, queene, and Inhabitantes of the citie of Calecut. And of their maner of feedyng, Cap. 6.

**T**he apparell of the kyng and queene, is litle or nothpng differpng from the other Idolaters: among the whiche the *Bahumietans* (as strangers) are not to be accompted. They couer onely theyr priuie partes with bombasine cloth or sylke, and are besyde all naked, barefooted also, and bearcheheaded. But the *Bahumietans* weare single apparell, reachpng only vnto the nauel. The women are apparelled euén as are the men, saypng onely that they lette theyr heare growe very longe. The kyng and nobilitie of the citie, eate no flethe, except they fyist aske counsaile of the Priestes.

But



But the common people may eate what fleshe they wyll, excepte the fleshe of Kyne. But they of the basest sorte, named Niri and Poliar, may eate onely fyshes dyed at the Sunne.

Of theyr custome after the death of  
the kyng .Cap. 7.

**A**fter the death of the kyng, if he haue any male chyldren lyving, or brethren, or brothers chyldren, they succede not in the kyngdome: For of auncient lawe and custome, the septer pertayneth to the kynges sisters sonnes, of whiche if there be none, it commeth to the next of the blood: And this, for none other cause (as they saye) but that the priestes haue deflowred the queene. When the kyng goeth abrode or on huntynge, the priestes, be they neuer so young, keepe the queene at home, and remayne neere about her: For there is nothyng moze acceptable to the kyng, then that the priestes shoulde so keepe companie with the queene. And therefore the kyng may well thynke that the chyldren bozne of her, are not to be numbred amongst his chyldren, and therefore taketh the chyldren of his sisters, to be neerest of his blood, and ryght inheritous to the crowne. When the kyng is dead, all his subiectes, by cutting thei bearded and chaupynge thei headdes, testifie how greivously they take his death. Yet heerein they vse not all one fashon, for some cutte onely part of the heare of thei chynne, and some parte of the heare of thei head, and other all: and so euery man as he doth phantasie. Duryng the tyme that they celebrate the funerals of the kyng, they that lyue by fyshynge, forbear fyshynge for the space of eyght dayes. And when any of the kynges wyues dye, they obserue the lyke ceremonyes as for the death of the kyng. The kyng sometyme, by a certayne supersticion, absteyneth from venery, or the company of women, for the space of a yeere: and lykewyse forbeareth to eate certayne leaues, whiche they call *Betolas*, beyng the leaues of Assyrian apples: whiche they vse not onely for delicates, but also because thei proprietie is to moue men greatly to wanton lustes.

The kynges  
chyldren succede  
not to inherite  
the kyngdome.

What paymes  
the priestes  
take for thei  
liuyng, and  
what seruice  
they do the  
kyng.

Ballordes.

Mourning for  
the death of the  
kyng.

Chastitie and  
abstinence.

Meates that  
moue to  
cherie.

For

For the same purpose also they eate a certayne fruite, named *Coffolo*, somewhat lyke unto Dates.

Of theyr chaungyng of wyues. Cap. 8.

**T**He gentelmien & merchauntes, to shew great curtesie and frendshyp one to the other, vse sometime to chaunge wyues, and therein vse this maner of speache : *Great frende, mynne.* By freende, we haue nolwe of long tyme lyued togeather as saythfull frendes, and therefore for the laste accomplyshement of our frendeshyppe, if it so please thee, lette vs chaunge wyues. Content sayth the other, for I beare thee euen as good wyll. The wyues refuse not to agree to the condition herein also, to please theyr husbandes. Then the one byngeth his wyfe to the other, saying: Woman, this man shall hereafter be thy husbande. The other sayth the lyke to his wyfe also. Thus all partes be- yng agreed, they depart with frendly embrasyng: But the chyldren remayne with the fyrst husbande. These Idolatars haue also diuers other customes: For among some of them, one woman is maryed to seuen husbandes, of the whiche euery of them hath his nyght by course appoynted to lye with her. And when she hath brought forth a chyld, she may geue it oz father it to whiche of them she lysteth: Who may in no case refuse it.

The maner of feedyng of the common people, of the Idolatars, and of theyr Iustice. Cap. 8.

**L**ying along on the grounde they eate theyr meate out of a traye of copper: For spoones, they vse certayne leaues of trees. Theyr meate commonly, is Ryle, fysh, spices, and frutes, of the commoner sort. The labouryng men oz ruder sorte, eate so fylthyly, that puttyng theyr foule handes in the pottle, they take out ryle by handfuls, and so thrust it in theyr mowthes. They vse this kynde of Iustice for homicide. Where any hath slayne a man, he is thus punished.

*Diogenista.*

*The punishment of murderers.*

*They*

Beatyng.

A strange man-  
ner to demand  
debte.

Death for  
debte.

Outward clea-  
rnesse.

Womens  
woolke.

They haue a kynde of galows made in maner of a double crosse  
where whyle the murtherer is tyed fast, one thrusteth a stake  
throughe his bodye, where the poore wretche so hangeth vntyl he  
be dead: But they that wounde or hurt any man, redeeme the  
faulte for mony payde to the kyng. They that are in debte, are  
thus enforced to paye the same. The creditour fyrst deman-  
deth his monye: and if it be founde that the debittour breake pro-  
myse, then he to whom the mony is owyng, goeth to one of  
the kynges scriueners (whiche are sayde to be a hundred) and  
before hym makyng dewe prooue of the debte, receiueth of hym  
a greene wand of a tree, with aucthoritie to prosecute his debi-  
ttour vntill he haue found hym, where when he hath arrested him,  
with these wordes (go no further before thou paye me) thysse  
rehearsed, he sayth furthmore thus: I charge thee by the head  
of Bramini, and by the head of the kyng, not to sturre from  
this place before thou paye me. There is no hyfte but eyther  
to paye incontinent, or there to loose his lyfe. But if he be  
found alone, and escape after the sayd wordes, he is euer after ad-  
iudged a rebell, and therefore shall it be lawefull for any man to  
kyl hym whersoener he is founde, within the kynges domi-  
nions.

Of the honoring of Idolles. Cap. 9.

**V**hen they praye to theyr Idolles, in the mornyng  
before the Sunne ryse, they resorte to the pooles  
or ryuers to washe their: And so at their con-  
mynyng home to theyr houses (where they keepe  
theyr Idolles) they touch nothyng before they praye to the I-  
dolles prostrate in the grounde secretly: while they praye, they  
make certayne deuylyshe gesttulations lyke mad men, so mar-  
uelously defourmyng theyr faces, eyes, and mowthes, that no  
man can beholde it without horron: and thus contynue their  
prayer a quarter of an houre. When the tyme of eatyng appro-  
cheth, they may not tal to theyr vittables, before some one of the  
gentlemen haue dresed it, and set it in order. But this custome  
is obserued onely among the gentelmen, or noble men. The  
women haue none other charge or care, then to dresse and beau-  
tifie

rite them selues, for their husbandes vse not to haue to do with them before they be curpously washed, and perfumed with sundrye sweete sauours. When the women go abrode, it is marueilous to beholde howe they are behanged with iewels and pretious stones, on theyr eares, armes, and legges.

Cleely women.

Of theyr maner of warre .Cap. 10.

**T**hey haue in the citie certayne maisters of fence, that teach them how to vse the swoord, the target, the launce, and suche other weapons. When the kyng proceedeth to the warres, he is furnyshed with an armie of a hundred thousande footemen, for of horsemen there is no vse, but onely Elephantes: For the kyng hym selfe rydeth on an Elephant. They that are next to the kyng, weare about theyr headdes, syllettes or bandes of sylke, of crymysyn or scarlet colour. Theyr weapons are certayne crooked swoordes, targets, launces, and bowes. The kynges ensigne, is a certaine chyng made of bowes of trees, implicate round like the couering of a tub, bozne by on a reede. This is bozne so that y shadow therof may couer the king from the heate of the Sunne: and is in their tongue, called *Somler*. When both the armiees approche within thre arrowe shoote, the kyng sendeth his *Braminos* into the tentes of his enimies, in maner of haroldes to chalenge a hundred of them to come forth (if they dare) to combat agaynst a hundred of his Naeres, which before we said to be his gentlemen and chiefe strength of his army: which message done, both sydes prepare them selues to the battayle, and in the midway, fyrst a hundred fyght with a hundred. The whiche if they shouide seyght continually for the space of thre dayes, woulde neuer stryke with the poynt, but with the edge of the swoorde, and for the most parte at the head, and seldom at the legges. But when syue or syxe are slayne, incontinent the *Bramini* on both partes make an ende of the fyght: and by theyr commaundement the retreat is sounded on both partes. Then agayne the *Bramini* (whiche are the chiefe priestes as we haue sayde) on both sydes, speake vnto the kynges, and aske them if they wyll any more. And thus for the most parte make they an ende of the quarell and battayle, without great slaughter of men.

Maisters of fence.

The kynges army.

Their weapons.  
The kynges ensigne.

The priestes are haroldes.  
A chalenge to cumbatte.

A great battayle and litle bloodshed.

The



The kyng sometymes rydeth on an Elephant, and sometymes also is bozne by his noble men, named *Naeri*. When he proceedeth, there folowe hym a great multitude of mynstrels, making a great noyse, with *Cymberels*, *Tamberets*, and suche other instrumentes. The styppende of the *Naeri* is foure *Carlines* euery moneth in peace, and fyve in tyme of warre: these haue theyr teeth very blacke, by eatyng of a certayne hearbe, whiche they much vse. When any of these are slayne, their bodies are burned, with great pompe, and many superstitions, and also theyr ashes reserued: but the common sort are buried, in diuers maners, for some are buried in their houses, some in their gardens, and other in feeldes, meadowes, or wooddes. They coyne money here, as in þe citie of *Narsinga*. When I was there, there was in þe citie merchants of almost all partes of the East, and especially a great number of *Bahumetans*, and many also of the region of *Melacha*, and *Bangella*: other also of *Tarnassari*, *Pego*, and *Ciriomandel*: some lykewyse of the *Islandes* of *Leylan*, and *Sumatra*, whiche is *Taprobana*: other of *Cholon*, *Caicolon*, and *Batbecala*: and almost innumerable other, of nations whose names are better knowen to vs, as *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Syrians*, *Turkes*, and *Ethiopians*, and also many of the kyngdome of *Narsinga*, strangers of so many nations, were in the citie of *Calecut* whyle I remayned there. Understand furthermoze, that the *Idolators* vse not to sayl on the sea, but that is appoynted to the *Bahumetans*, as meetter men for that purpose. And there is in the citie of *Calecut* moze then fyfteeue thousande *Bahumetans*, whiche were bozne in the same citie.

Of their Shippes, and maner of saylyng  
on the sea. Cap. II.

Theyr Shippes.

Theyr Shippes are made no lesse then may suffice for the burden of foure or fyue hundred Tonne, & all open without any couerture. In the ioyntes of their Shippes they put no Towe, but ioyne the planks so artificially, that they holde out water very well: yet do they pytche the ioyntes, and make them fast with nayles of Iron. They do not forbear Towe for lacke therof, for they haue great plentie of Hemye and Flaxe. They haue planks or boordes and postes of diuers sortes, for they haue as good wood and better then we. Theyr sayles

Mynstrels.

Blacke teeth.

The dead gentelmen are burnt, but the poore men are buried.

Coyned money.

Merchauntes resorte to Calecut.

Bahumetans of Calecut.

sayles are of Bombasine cloth, and doubled in the neather part, whereby they geather moze wynde, and swell therewith, lyke a bagge: and in this they passe vs, vsyng but only syngle sayles. They vse ankers of marble, of the length of eyght spannes, and on euery syde twoo: these they hang in the sea by double ropes, and belyde these, haue none other ankers. They haue certayne appoynted tymes and seasons of saylyng: for some tymes serue best for one coast, and some other, for other coastes and viages. The changes and also contrarietie of tymes, is there greatly to be consydered: for when with vs al thynges for heate are almost scorched, then haue they large shewes, as in the monethes of May, Iune, and Iuly. Their shippes are of diuers quantities, as with vs, and therfore also of diuers names. They haue one sort of vessels made of one whole pece of wood, like a trough, very long, sharpe, and narrow: in these they vse both sayles and oyes, and are therfore swyfter then our Gallies or Foystes. The Portugals vse these very much. The best of their shippes are made in an Ilande named Porcai, not farre from Calecut.

Ankers of mar-  
ble, on euery  
syde two.

Seasons of the  
yeere, contraris  
to ours.

Dyvers fash-  
ions of shippes  
and other  
vessells.

Of the Court or Palace of the kyng of  
Calecut. Cap. 12.

**T**he Palace of the kyng of Calecut conteyneth no lesse then a myle in circuite, the wall is not hygh, the buyldyng is fayne, with beames or postes wel ioynyng the frame, and curiously wrought and carued with the figures & shapen of deuyls on euery syde. Why the walles be no hygher, we haue declared before, where we haue spoken of the lowe buyldyng of the houses of the citie: the cause wherof (as we haue saide) is the vnstable grounde, so ful of water, that they can dygge no deapth to lay fundation to beare hygher buyldynges. But what pearles and precious stones the kyng weareth vpon hym, can not be expressed for the greatnesse of the thyng: for doubtlesse it exceedeth all estimation. Although at the tyme of my beyng there, he was not geuen to ioyfullnesse, but lpyed in greefe of mynde, as wel for the warres which the kyng of Portugale made agaynst hym, as also that he was diseased with the Frenche poxe, which had now entred into his throte: neuerthelesse, his cares, armes, handes, legges, and feete, were so beautifullly and ryche garnyshe with all sortes of iewels and precious stones, that it can not be spo-

A goodly  
palace.

Images of the  
deuyl to gar-  
nish the kynges  
palace.

The ryche iew-  
els which the  
king weareth.

The kyng of  
Portugales  
warres agaynst  
the kyng of  
Calecut.  
The frenche  
poxe among  
precious  
iewells.

Unestimable  
treasure.

ken. His treasure is esteemed so vnmeasurable, that it can  
not be conteyned in two wonderful great cellars or warchouses.  
This treasure consisteth of precious stones, plates of golde,  
and also so muche copened golde as may suffice to lade a hundred  
Oules, as they Bramini repoite, to whom it is best knowen.  
They saye also that this treasure was geathered and reserved by  
twelue kynges whiche were before hym, and that in his trea-  
surie is a cofer of thre spannes in length, and two in breadth, full  
of only precious stones, of price inestimable.

Of the spices of Calecut, Cap. 13.

Pepper.

The pepper  
tree.

**P**epper is geathered in the feedes about the subarbes, and  
also in certayne places within the citie. The stalke of  
pepper is very weake, and lyke vnto vines, which can not  
beare it selfe, without the helpe of a stake or propp, and  
is muche lyke vnto an Iuie, and in lyke maner crepeth and  
embraceth suche trees as are neere vnto it. This tree (or rather  
bushe) is dispearled into sundry branches, of the length of two or  
thre spannes, and hath the leaues lyke vnto the leaues of an  
Assyrian apple, but that these are somewhat thicker and fatter.  
On every twigge hange lyke clusters, no bygger then Dates,  
and lyke vnto clusters of litle grapes, and of the coloure of vnripe  
grapes, but growe thicker. They are geathered in the moneth  
of October, and Nouember, inclynnyng yet to greene colour, and  
are so layde on mattes, and set in the Sunne to drye, where in  
the space of thre dayes, they become blacke, as they are brought  
hyther. The fruitefulnesse of these, proceedeth onely of the sym-  
ple goodnesse of the soyle, without helpe of lopping or pruning.  
This region beareth also Cynger, whiche is doubtlesse a roote,  
and is sometyme dygged of the weight of .xii. vnces, it entrench  
no deeper into the grounde then thre or foure handefuls. When  
they dygge it out, they leaue the knotte or ioynt of the roote in  
the pitte, and couer it agayne with earth, as a seede for more a-  
gaynst the nexte yeere. It is founde in an equall soyle, as are  
the Myrabolanis: yet is the earth where it groweth, of very  
redde coloure. The stalke, is muche lyke the stalke of a young  
peare tree.

Clusters of  
pepper.

Cynger.

Of the fruites of Calecut. Cap. 14.

**I**F I should describe all the sortes of straunge fruites that are seene there, it would rather require a volume, then a breefe rehearsal of them particularly: For they haue not only many greatly differing from ours in foume, sauour, and tast, but also those of the kynde of such as we haue, differ in maner no lesse. Whereby may the naturall Philosopher consider howe those thinges which are all of one kynde, differ accordyng vnto the nature of the soile and diuers situation vnder the heauens. By which natural cause, & alteration, some fruites and seedes, by transplanting into a better soile, become more perfect in their kind, as bigger, fatter, sweeter, and more fruitfull: As also contrariwise, the contrary, by transplantyng into a worse soile, or colder region: which diuersitie is seene, not only in plantes and hearbes, but also in beastes, and euen in man kynde. It is very strange to consider howe diuersly trees beare theyr fruites and seedes, as some in one parte of the tree, and some in an other. There is in Calecut a fruit which they name *Iaceros*: the body of the tree, is of the bignesse of a Pearre tree: the fruit is of the length of two handfulls and a halfe, & as byg as the thygh of a man. The fruit groweth out of the body of the tree vnder the branches, and some euen in the very myddest of the tree, and other yet lower also. The colour is greene, and in foume, in maner lyke vnto a Pyne apple, but with lesse graines or knobbes: when it is ripe, it becommeth blacke. It is geathered in the moneth of December. It hath the taste of a Pepon, and the sauour somewhat like *Castoreum*. It seemeth in eatyng to gyve dyuers and sundry pleasant tastes: as sometyme the taste of a Peache, sometyme of a Pomegranate, and leaueth at the ende a taste so sweete, that you would thynke it to be newe hony combes. Under the skynne, it is lyke vnto a Peache. And within the body containeth an other fruit, not much vnlyke soft Chestnuttes, and beyng roasted, hath the same taste, and is therefore certaynely one of the goodlyest fruites that I knowe. I wil here, to be breefe, omit to speake muche of their Nuttes, and Malnuttes, Almons, Prunes, Peaches, Quinces, Gourdes, Melons, and suche other fruites knowen to vs, and

Fruitcs vnlyke ours.

A philosophical consideration of the difference of thinges of one kynde.

A great fruitc growng out of the body of the tree.

Apple fruitcs in December.  
A fruitc of sundry tastes.

One fruitc within an other



yet much more pleasaunt and sayer then are ours. There is one fruite woorthie to be knowen, which they call *Apolanda*. The tree groweth to the height of a man, it beareth not past foure or five leaues hangyng by certayne sylppes, euery leafe is able well to couer a man from rayne, and the heate of the sunne: In the myddest of the leafe, riseth a twyg or stalke, lyke the stalke of a beane, which byngeth out floures and also frutes of a handfull long, and of the bignesse of a mans arme: these frutes are geathered vnrype, bycause they become rype in keepyng. Euery sylp beareth about two hundred frutes, a thyng certaynely wherein is greatly seene the fruitfulnessse of nature. They touche one another, and cluster togeather. They are of yelow colour, and haue a berry thyn codde, and are in eatyng delicate and holesome. There are three sortes of this kynde of fruite, of the which one is of euill taste, and therefore not so much esteemed. It is yet more straunge, that this tree beareth fruite but once, yet when it dyeth, there ryse about the roote thereof fyftie or threescore young sylppes, whiche renue the lyfe of theyr parent, that he dye not without succession. The gardeners or graffers transplante these in other places, for within the space of one yere they bring forth fruite. They are geathered in great aboundance almost all the whole yere, and are therefore very good cheape, and of small pryce, as twentie for a penny. The same sople beareth lykewyse innumerable and most sayre and swete floures all the yere long, and especially roses, both white, redde, and yelow.

A tree with very  
hye leaues.

A very goodly  
fruite.

Two hundred  
frutes on euery  
sylppe.

A tree that neuer  
beareth  
fruite but once.

Frutes and  
floures geathered  
at all tymes  
of the yere.

Of a most fruitfull tree of all the world. Cap. 15.

**T**here is also another tree, most woorthie to be knowen, the which in fruitfulnessse, and sweetnessse of the fruite, passeth all the trees of the worlde. It beareth certayne frutes lykewyse into great Dates or Nuttes; & generally byngeth forth tenne commodities: For it beareth wood most apte to nourishe fyre, and Nuttes very pleasant to be eaten; also cordes or ropes which may well serue for saylers: Lykewyse very fyne cloth,

This tree in  
the west India,  
is called *Toccus*.

Ten commodi-  
ties of one  
tree.

cloth, which when it is coloured, sheweth lyke silke: The wood is the best that may be founde to make coles, it yeldeth also wine and odoriferous water: Furthermore also, oyle, and suger. The boughes of the tree, are commodious to couer houses in place of tyles or thetche: for by reason of the closenesse and fatnesse of the leanes, they keepe out the rayne very well. The fruite of this tree (as we hane sayde) is in soyme lyke vnto great Dates or Nuttes. One tree beareth about two hundred of those fruites. Takyng away the first ryme, they put it in the fyre, where it burneth quickly and with great flame. The seconde fruite vnder the sayde first ryme, is muche lyke vnto bombasine or silke, and is lyke vnto flaxe when it is wrought. Of the floures, they make a certayne kynde of cloth, not vnylyke silke. The towne or reuise of the first flaxe, they spinne and make thereof a grosser cloth, and small ropes or cordes: & of the smallest, wreathed togeather, they make greater ropes, which may serue for shippes. That parte of the Nut which is vnder the thirde ryme, conteyneth also a substance apte to make coles. The last ryme, includeth the substance or corne of the Nutte, very delicate to be eaten. This ryme or barke, is of the thicknesse of a mans litle finger. As the Nutte groweth in bignes, so doeth also the water conteyned therein. So that the Nutte commyng to his full rypenesse and bygnesse, the water occupieth the inner parte: and sometyme is founde so much water in the Nutte, that you may take out of euery Nutte two or thre cuppes of water, very sweete to be dronke, and as cleere as Rose water, of the which also being thickened by seethyng, is made very fatte oyle. The Nutte likewise it selfe, is of very pleasant taste. They suffer but one parte of the tree to bring forth fruite: For on the other parte or syde, they cutte and wounde the tree in diuers places euery morning and euening, and poure into the wounded places a certayne liquor, which draweth out of the tree a ioise, which falleth into vesselles placed to receyue it, and so receyue they euery day and nyght in euery vessell, a cuppe of most precious liquor, which sometymes also they seeth at the fyre, putting euer more vnto it, vntill it come to the strength of *Aqua vite*, and troubleth the brayne both in sauiour and dymmyng, as doeth most strong wyne. On an other braunche of the same tree, they gather lykewyse suger, but not very sweete.

*Nux Indica.*

They are as big as a mans fist, and some bigger.

Very sweete and cleare water within a Nutte.

Oyle made of water.

Wayne of cutte branches of a tree.

Cre.ii.

The

A tree that beareth fruite continually all the whole peere.

The tree beareth fruite continually: for there are seene on it both the olde and nye frutes of the season passe, & also greene frutes of the newe spring. It beareth not before the fifth peere. These trees are founde in the space or distaunce of about two hundred myles. They are so greatly esteemed, that in the myddest of most cruelllest warres, it is not lawfull for any man to hurt them, even in the landes of theyr enemies. They lye but to the age of. xxv. peeres. They prosper best in sandy groundes, and are set or planted as are *Walnuttes*. This region hath also other frutes wherof they make good oyle.

Oyle.

Howe they sowe Ryse. Cap. 16.

Ploughing of the grounde.

They tyll the ground and plough it with Oren as we doe. When the tyme approacheth to sowe Ryse, they testifie the ioyfulnesse of that day with all sortes of instrumentes, singing & dauncing. And in the way of their good speed, that all thinges may prosper the better (as they beleue) they disguise ten men in apparell, to the similitude of the three deuylls, and daunce about them with all the noyse of theyr instrumentes. And thus celebratyng the festiuall day, they pray the deuylls good grace to sende them plentie of Ryse.

A daunce of deuylls.

*Solem suum oriri facit super bonos et malos.*

&c.

Howe theyr Phisitians visite sicke folkes. Cap. 17.

When any merchaunt of the Idolaters is sore greued with any diseafe, and in maner neare vnto death, then certaine of them, which they take for phisitians, called to visite the patient in this extremitie, comethyther in the silence of the nyght, apparellled lyke the deuyll (as is aforesayde) carying fyre sticke in theyr mouthes and handes. And there, with a madde crye and howlyng, and with the tangelng of certayne instrumentes, maketh so horrible a noyse in the eares of the sicke man, that it were enough to make a whole man sicke. And this is all the remedy and comfort which their Phisitians bring to their sicke men, whiche is none other, then in the article of death to present vnto them the similitude of him whom they (worse then deuylls) honour for gods vicaret.

The deuyll a Phisitian.

Such a Phisitian such phisicke

Epyter

Either meanyng perhappes by this meanes, to call agayne the sicke man almost dead. When the inhabitantes haue so ingored them selues with to muche meate, that they be sicke in theyr stomake, they take the poudcr of the rootes of ginger, and making it in fourme of a sirupe, with puttyng some liquoz vnto it, drinke it all by, and within thre dayes recouer theyr health.

A remedie for surfering.

Of theyr Exchaungers, bankers, and  
Brokers. Cap.18.

**T**Heir exchaungers and bankers, haue weyghes and balances so little, that the boxe, with the weightes and all that pertaineth therto, passeth not the weight of an ounce, and are made so iuste, that the weight of a heare will cast them. When they will trye true golde from false, or base from fyne, they vse the touche stone, as we doe, but haue this more then we: They haue a ball composed (I know not whereof) and lyke vnto ware, and when they haue first rubbed the golde on the touche, they rubbe likewise the touche on the sayd ball, where then the spottes of the golde remayne, and thereby they knowe a more exacte prooue of the finenesse or basenesse of the gold. When the sayde ball is full of gold, they melt it in the fyre, & geather the gold which it had imbibed. These exchangers are but grosse witted men, and ignorant of the arte which they professe. In buying and selling of merchandises, they vse this maner. They haue a broker, whose helpe they vse in these affayres. Therefore when the merchautes come thither, then the broker, hauyng with him a bayle or scarfe, taketh the seller by the ryght hande, and couereth it with the baie. Then doth the merchant number on his fingers, from one vnto a hundred thousand, priuily & secretly, & then the seller also with lyke numbyng of his fingers and ioyntes, vntyll he come to the number of the price of his merchandies. Then the broker goeth agayne to the buyer, and coueryng his handes with the bayle in lyke maner, and numbyng of his fingers, certifieth him howe muche the seller demaundeth for his ware, then the buyer agayne, by feelyng and numbyng the brokers fingers, signifyeth what he will gyue the seller for his merchandies. And

Fyne weightes and balances.

A straunge experiment to know the fyne golde from base.

Proxenetes. A superstitious maner of buying and selling.



thus the broker goeth to and fro, shewyng both theyr meanyng with silence butyll they be agreed. They sell theyr cloth by measure : but theyr spices and Jewelles by weyght.

Of the inhabitantes of Poliar and Hiraua, and how they nourysh their children. Cap.19.

**T**he women weane theyr childzen when they come to the age of thye monerthes, and afterward nourysh them with Goates milke: and when in the morning they haue giuen them milke, they tomble them in the sandes all foule & filthly, where they let them lye all the day, and are so scorched of the Sunne, that farre of they seeme like Busses Calues, I neuer sawe more deformed or filthie creatures : at euenyng, theyr mothers gyue them milke agayne. By this kinde of wyld bringing by, they become men of marueylous dexteritie in swiftnesse of runnyng, and other thinges of great agilitie, as to walke vppon ropes, swymmyng, leapyng, baultyng, and such lyke.

Little payne or  
cost for nour-  
ishyng of childzen.

Funambuli,

Of foure footed beastes, foules, and birdes.  
of Calcut. Cap.20.

**T**here are many beastes and kyndes of birdes, as Lions, wilde Bores, Hartes, Wyndes, Busses, Kyne, Goates, and Elephantes : yet not all engendred there, but brought thither partly from other places. There are also parottes of sundry colours, as greene, purple, & other mixte colours. There is such multitude of them, that there are men appointed to keepe them from the Rysle in the fieldes, as we vse to keepe Crows from the coyne. They are marueylous cryyng and chattering, and of small pprice, as one solde for two pence, or halfe a soule. There are many other birdes much vnylike to ours, which euery morning and euenyng make so great a noyse & swete singyng, that nothing can be more pleasant or delectable to heare, and therfore the inhabitantes lyue in great pleasure, and in maner as it were in an earthly Paradyse, in continuall spryng and florishyng of floures, hearbes, & trees, all the yeere long : besyde also the goodly and holsome temperatenesse of the ayre, being neither extreme

Wopingayes or  
Parottes.

A great noyse  
of birdes.

An earthly Pa-  
radyse.  
Continuall  
spryng, and tem-  
perate ayre.

hott

hotte nor colde, but in maner in temperature of continuall spring tyme. That region hath also Donkeys, which are there of small price. These are very hurtfull to husbandmen, and such as live by tillage of the ground: for they clyme the trees of those goodly Indian Nuts & precious fruite, wherof we haue spoken here before, of the which they make wyne, which these beastes do spill, and cast downe the vesselles that are made faste there to receyue the sayde liquor of wyne.

Donkeys doe much hurte.

Of certayne Serpentes which are seene  
in Calecut. Cap. 21.

**T**here are certayne Serpentes, of such bignesse, that they are equal to swine, they heads are much greater then the heads of Bores: they are foure footed, and of the length of foure cubites, and are engendred in marishes. The inhabitants say that they are without poison, and doe not otherwys hurt, then by byring. There are furthermore three kindes of Serpentes: of the which, some are of so strong poison, that if they drawe neuer so litle blood, present death foloweth, whiche thing chaunced oftentimes whilst I was there. Of these kindes of serpentes, some are of the bignesse of an Aspe, & many much bigger. Of these there are a very great number. The cause wherof (they say) is this: That the kyng of Calecut, of a certayne foolish superstition, maketh so great accompt of these Serpentes, that he causeth litle houses or cottages to be made for them, beleeynyng that they haue vertue against ouer much raine & ouerflowing of riuers, and therfore if a man kill any of them, he is punished with death, as though he had killed a man: and the like punishment is also for him that killeth a cowe. They greatly esteeme these Serpents, because (as they say) they came from heauen, and therfore they take them for heauenly spirites, which they affirme, for that only with touching, they bring present death. And this is the cause that there are many serpentes, being thus permitted by the commaundement of the king. These serpents know the Idolaters inhabitants from Dahumetans or other strangers, and wil sooner venture vppon them. When I was there, I came into a house where eight men laye dead and greatly swolne, whiche the day before were killed by these serpents, yet doe they esteeme it for good lucke, when going abrode, they meete with any of them.

Crocodiles without poison.

Three kindes of Serpentes.

Serpentes superstitiously kepte and nourished.

Death for kylling a Serpent or a Cowe.

Because they goe naked.

Superstition.

Ece. iiii.

Of

Of the lightes and Lampes which are  
seene in the Pallace of the kyng  
of Calcut. Cap.22.

**I**n the kynges Courte or Pallace, are diuers mansions, and  
very many chambers, and therefore in the euenyng when it  
waxeth darke, there are seene innumerable burning Lampes.

Goodly candels  
stickes of laton.

In the hall of the pallace, are seene ten or twelue candellstickes  
of laton, very fayre, and of cunnyng workemanshyy, muche lyke  
vnto goodly fountaynes, and of the heyght of a man. In eche of  
them are dyuers bestelles, and in euery vessel thre candels light,  
of two spannes length, and great plentie of oyle. In the first ves-  
sell, are many Lampes made of cordes of bombasine cotton. In  
the myddle part, is seene a narrower vessel, also full of lampes and  
lightes. In the lowest vessel also the like number of lightes. But  
in an other vessel in the toppe of all the candellsticke, are in maner  
innumerable lightes, mainteyned with oyle, and haue matches of  
bombasine cotton. At the angles or corners of these candellsticks,  
are the Images of deuils, whiche also holde the lightes that are  
in the kinges presence. When any of the kinges blood dyeth, hee  
sendeth for all the Bramini or priestes of his realme, & commaund  
them to mourne for the space of a yeere. At theyr commyng, hee  
banquetereth them thre dayes togeather, and at theyr departyng,  
giueth eche of them syue peeces of golde.

Polyxines et  
Polychni,

Innumerable  
lightes and  
Lampes.

The deuill ser-  
ueth in the  
kynges cham-  
ber.

Mourning the  
space of a yeere.

Of the great multitude of Idolaters which resort to  
Calcut, for pardon of their sinnes. Cap.23.

The Temple of  
sacrifice to  
Idolles.

**N**ot farre from the citie of Calcut, is a certayne churche  
or Temple, compassed about with water, lyke an Island,  
builded after an auncient fashon, hauing a double order  
of pillars, much lyke the Temple of saint Iohn De Fon-  
te in the citie of Rome. In the middest of the Temple, is an Altar  
of stone, where the people sacrifice to Idolles. Betweene the pil-  
lars on hygh, is a Boate of the length of two pases, and full of  
oyle. Also rounde about the Temple, are many trees with an  
innumerable multitude of Lampes & lightes hanging on them.

Trees behan-  
ged with Lam-  
pes.

The

The temple also it selfe, is as full of lychtes. The .xxv. day of December, resorteth thither an infinite multitude of people, from all parties, euen for the distance of .xv. dayes iorney, and especially of the priestes, to whom pertaineth the order of sacrificyng: But they do not sacrifice vnto theyr Idolles before they washe them selues in the water whiche is about the Temple. When the priestes attende to the place whereas is the boate fylled with oyle (as we haue said) they spryncke the people with the sayd oyle, but annoynte onely their heads: Who beyng so annoynted, may then proceede to the sacrifice. On the one syde of the altar, where they sacrifice, is seene a most horrible fourme of a deuyl, to whom the people, prostrate on the grounde, praye vnto, and then depart to theyr houses and countreys. By this meanes they beleeue that all theyr synnes are quite forgiven them, and therefore for the space of thre dayes, they lyue there in safegarde, as if it were in Sanctuarie: and for that tyme, is it not lawfull for any man to arrest or trouble an other for what so euer quarell. Certainly I neuer saw in any place a greater multitude of people assembled, except in the citie of *Mecha*.

Washing be-  
fore sacrifice.

Usoy oyle in  
the steade of ho-  
ly water.

Sacrifice to the  
deuill for for-  
giuenesse of  
synnes.

Sanctuary.  
Large is the  
way that leas-  
eth to perdis-  
tion. &c.

The syxt booke containyng  
the voyage of India,

Of the Cities of Caicolon, and Colon, Cap. I.



My faithfull companyon *Cociazenor* the Per-  
sian (of whom I haue made mention here  
before) consydering that by the meanes of  
warres and imminent daungers, there  
was now no place for merchaundies, espe-  
cially for that the Portugales had made  
soe warres and great slaughter in the citie  
of *Calecut*, by occasion that the inhabitantes of the citie had con-  
spired with the *Mahumetans* for the murder of eight and fourtie  
Portugales (whiche was done at my beyng there) I thought it  
best in tyme to depart from thence. This facie so greatly moued  
the kyng of Portugale to reuenge, that he hath since that tyme  
kept hostile warres agaynst them, and greatly consumed them,

The kyng of  
Portugals  
warres in the  
citie of *Calecut*.

and



Caicolon.

and defaced their citie. We therfore departyng from thence by a very fayre ryuer, came to a citie named *Caicolon*, distaunte from the citie of *Calecut* fiftie leagues: the inhabitantes are idolaters. There is great aboundaunce of merchaundies, and great frequentation of merchauntes: the soyle beareth plentie of the best kynde of pepper. The kyng of the citie is not very ryche. In apparel and maners, they differ litle from them of *Calecut*. Weere we founde certayne merchantes, Christians, named of the profession of saint Thomas the Apostle. They obserue the fastyng of fourtie dayes, as we do, and beleue in the death and resurrection of Christ, as we do, and therfore celebrate Easter after our maner, and obserue other solemnities of our religion, after the maner of the Greekes. They are commonly named by the names of John, James, Matthias, and Thomas. Departyng from thence, in the space of thre dayes iorney we came to another citie, named *Colon*, about twentie myles distant from the aforesayde. The kyng is an idolater, and a prince of great power, haupng euer an armie of twentie thousande horsemen: there is a very fayre port. Neare to the sea syde the soyle beareth no corne, yet great aboundance of fruite and pepper, as in the citie of *Calecut*: but by reason of the warres we remainned no longer heere. Not farre from hence, we sawe men fysh for pearles, in maner as we haue sayde before of the citie and Islande of *Ormus*.

Pepper.

Christians of  
the profession of  
saint Thomas.

Colon.

An armie of xx.  
thousande horse  
men.

Pearles.

## Of Cyromandel, a citie of India. Cap. 2.

**T**He citie of *Cyromandel* is by the sea syde, and distant from the citie of *Colon* seuen dayes saylyng. The citie is very large, but without walles: it is subiecte to the kyng of *Narsinga*, and is within the syght of the Island of *Zaylon*. After that you are past the poynt of *Comerin*, the soyle beareth plentie of Ryse. This citie is in the way to diuers great regions and cities: It is inhabited with innumerable *Dahumetan* merchantes, resortyng thither from many countreys. There are no spyes, but aboundaunce of fruite, as in *Calecut*.

Zeilon.

Comerin.

I founde

I founde there certayne Chyistians, who asseyne that the bodye of saint Thomas the Apostle is there in a certayne place, about twelue myles from this citie, and also that there are certayne Chyistians whiche religiously obserue the holy body: and that the Chyistians are euill bled, because of the warres whiche the kyng of Portugall hath made agaynst the people of these countreys. Also that the Chyistians are sometyne murdered secretly, lest it shoulde be knowen to the kyng of *Narsinga*, who is in amitie and frendshyppe with the kyng of Portugall, and greatly fauoureth the Chyistians. The cause whereof (as they saye) is also partly by reason of a certayne myracle, whiche was this. The Chyistians on a tyme had a great conflict with the *Mahumetans*, where one of the Chyistians beyng sore wounded on his arme, resorted incontinent to the sepulchre of saint Thomas, where makyng his prayers, & touchyng the holy place, his arme was immediatly healed. Whereupon (as they saye) the kyng of *Narsinga* euer after greatly fauoured the Chyistians. Here my companion solde muche of his wares. But by reason of the warres betweene the kynges of *Narsinga* and *Ternaferi*, we determined to depart from hence. And therefore saylyng ouer a gulse of .xx. leagues with great daunger, we arriued at an Island named *Zailon*, very large, as containing in circuite a thousande myles.

The bodie of Thomas the Apostle.

The kyng of *Narsinga* frende to the Portugalls.

A myracle at the sepulchre of St. Thomas.

Of the Ilande of *Zailon*, and the precious stones founde there. .Cap.3

**I**N this Ilande are foure kynges of great dominion, by reason of the largenesse of the Ilande. But because of the warres among them at my beyng there, I coulde not tarpe long to haue particular knowledge of the region and maners of the people. There are in the Ilande many Elephantes. There is also a very long mountayne, at the foote whereof, are founde many precious stones, named *Piropi*, commonly called Rubines, or Rubies. The merchauntes iewelers, come by them by this meanes.

Foure kynges in one Iland.

Elephantes. Rubie stones.

Fyrst, goyng to the kyng, they bye of hym a certayne measure of that grounde where suche stones are founde, of the largenesse of a cubite euery way. The pryce of this, is fyue peeces of gold: yet with suche condition, that in dyggynge the grounde, there is euer one present for the kyng, to the ende that if in dyggynge be founde any of those precious stones exceedyng the weyght of x. Caractes, the same to be reserued for the kyng. And the rest that are founde vnder that wayght, to apparteine to the merchaunt. Not farre from the sayde mountayne, are founde diuers other sortes of precious stones, as Iasynthes, Saphires, Topases, and suche lyke. Harde by the mountayne, runneth a great ryuer. The soyle byngeth forth the sweetest frutes that euer I sawe, especially cloues, and apples of *Assiria*, of exceeding sweetnesse, and all other, as in *Calecut*.

Precious  
stones.

Of the tree of Cinamome in the  
Iland of Zaylon .Cap.4.

**T**he tree of Cinamome is not much vnlike a Baye tree, especially the leaues, it beareth berryes as doth the Baye tree, but lesse, and whyte: It is doubtlesse therefore none other then the barke of a tree, and is geathered in this maner. Euery thyrde yeere they cutte the branches of the tree. Of this, is great plentie in the sayde Ilande. When it is fyrste geathered it is not yet so sweete, but a moneth after when it wyeth drye. A certayne Bahumetan merchaunt of the Ilande, tolde my companyon, that there in the top of a hygh mountayne is a certayne denne, whyther the inhabitantes of the countrey resort to praye, in memoire of our fyrst father Adam, who (they saye) after he had synned by breakyng the commaundement of God, lyued in that place in continuall penitence. Whiche thing they assure by this coniecture, that there is yet seene the print of the steppes of his feete, of the length of almost two spannes. The inhabitants are subiect to the kyng of *Narsinga*, and paye hym tribute. The region is of temperate ayre, although it be situate in maner vnder the Equinoctiall lyne. The people are of darke tawny colour. Theyr apparell, are certayne single  
clokes

Howe Cin-  
amome is gea-  
thered.

In denne where  
Adam lyued in  
penance.

Temperate re-  
gions vnder  
the Equinoct-  
iall lyne.

clokes of bombasine cloth, whiche they weare, bearyng euer the ryght arme out all naked, as is the maner of all the Indians. They are no warrelpyke men, neyther haue they the vse of Iron. Here my companyon solde to the kyng muche Saffran and Coralles. Saffran and Corall.

Of Paleachet, a citie of India. Cap.5.

**D**Epartying from the Ilande of Zailon, in thre dayes saylyng we came to a citie named Paleachet, subiecte to the kyng of Narsinga. It is a famous marte of ryche merchaundies, and especially of iewels and precious stones, brought thpyther from Zailon and Pego. There is also great plentie of spices. There dwell in the citie many Dahumetan merchauntes, where we beyng receiued in one of theyr houles, tolde hym from whence we came, and what merchaundies we brought, as Saffran, and Coralles, whereof he was very glad. The citie hath great scarcynesse of corne, but plentie of Ryse: and in other fruitefulnesse of the soyle and maner of the people, much lyke vnto Calecut. But because they were at dissention with the kyng of Tarnassari, and prepared warres agaynst hym, we departed from thence, and in .xiii. dayes saylyng, arryued at the citie of Tarnassari, a hundred myles distant.

Of Tarnassari, a citie of India. Cap.6.

**T**his citie is not farre from the sea, and situate on a meetly equall ground, well walled, haupng also a famous porte, and a very farre ryuer runnyng on the North syde of the citie. The kyng is an Idolatour, and a prince of great power. He keepeth continuall warre with the kyngs of Narsinga and Bangella. He bypnygeth to the seele a hundred Elephants, of the sayrest and byggest that euer I sawe. Elephants. He hath an armie of an hundred thousand pencionarie footmen, & as many horsemen. An armie of a hundred thousand footmen. Theyr weapons are swoordes, rounde targettes, pelies, bowes, daries, and lauelins of great and long reedes. They



They are also armed with lackes made of bombasine cotton, wrought very harde, and closely couched. Their houses are walled, and continent in order as ours are. The region byng-  
eth forth wheate, bombasine, sylke, of sundry kindes of colours, Brasile, and sundry kyndes of frutes, muche lyke vnto ours. Also apples of *Assiria*, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Gourdes, Cucumbers .&c.

Frutes.

Of the wylde and tame beastes of the  
citic of Tarnassary. Cap.7.

**T**his region byngeth forth many beastes both wylde and tame. The tame beastes, are Oxen, Kyne, Sheepe, Gotes, Hogges, Hares, and Wyndes. The wylde beastes, are Lions, Wolves, Catres of the mountayne, and also Huskeaites. In the feedes are many Peacocks, and thole kynde of Eagles whiche we call Falcons. Poppingays also or Parrottes, marueylous fayre, of the which some are white, and other of seuen colours. There is lykewyle great plentie of Hares, and Partridges, and diuers other sortes of great byrdes liuyng by praye, muche bygger then Eagles: for of the upper parte of their beches, they make hafies for swoordes. The becke is of yelowe colour, distincte with crimline, very fayre and beautifull to be seene. But the byrde is blacke and purple, with certayne whyte feathers intermyxt. There are also the byggest Hennes and Cockes that euer I sawe: and therefore thynhabitants and Mahumetans which dwell there, take muche pleasure in Cockespyght, and laye great wagers in that kynde of spoyte. I haue seene them pyght for the space of syxe houres, and yet sometymes they kyll one an other at the fyrst stroke. There are certayne Gotes farre exceedyng ours in byggenesse, and muche fayrer: these are so fruitefull, that at one byrth they byng forth foure young kyddes. There is so great abundaunce of beastes, that twelue weathers are sold for one peece of golde to the value of a crowne or pistolet. There are also certayne weathers or rammes with hornes lyke vnto buckes hornes, and are muche bygger and fyrcer then ours.

Wylde beastes.

Peacocks.  
Falcons.  
Poppingays.

A great and  
fayre foule.

Cocke pyght-  
ing.

Fruitefull  
Gotes.

Rammes with  
buckes hornes.

Their

They Buffles are not so saye as ours. The region hath also a bundaunce of fythe, very bygge and good, and of small price. These people eate all maner of beastes, excepte Kyne. They eate on the grounde without carpet or other cloth: yet haue they bestells of woodde artificially made. Theyr drynke is water and suger: theyr beddes are rased from the grounde, after the maner of ours. Theyr couche is of bombasine cotton, and the couerpynges of sylke. Theyr apparell, is a cloke or mantell of bombasine or sylke, with one arme out, all bare. But some of the merchauntes, weare inner vestures or shirtes of sylke or bombasine cloth. They go all barefooted, except the priestes, whiche weare on theyr heads certayne raples or crestes of two spannes long, with a knotte on the crowne lyke vnto an Acozne, and sparkled with golde. They delyght also in earinges: but weare neyther rynges nor brasseletes. The colour of the inhabitantes inclyneth to whyte, for the temperature of the climate or ayre, is colder then at *Calecut*. Theyr maner of syllage, and geatherpyng of fruite, is lyke vnto ours.

Of the maner which the kyng of Tarnassarie vseth, when he permitteth his wyfe to be defloured of white men. Cap. 8.

**T**his kyng vseth not to geue his wyfe to the priestes to be defloured, as doth the kyng of *Calecut*, but committeth this facie to whyte men, as to the Christians or Mahumetans, for he wyll not suffer the Idolaters to do this. The inhabitantes lykewyle haue not to do carnally with theyr wyues, befoze some whyte man, of what so euer nation, haue they the breakpyng of them.

The maner of burnyng dead bodyes in the citie of Tarnassary. Cap. 9.

**V**hen the kyng or any of the priestes or gentlemen dye, their bodies are burnt in a great fyre made of a pile of wood: then all the whyle they sacrifice vnto the deuyl. Their ashes are reserued in certayne pottes of the earth of *Samos*, and buryed in theyr houses.

They

They sacrifice in þ shadows of trees as do they of *Calecut*. Whilst the bodies are burnyng, they cast in the fyre all maner of sweete sauoures, as Aloes, Myrr, Frankensence, Storax, Sandals, Corall, and innumerable suche other sweete gummes, spices, and trees. These make the fyre muche greater, encreasing the flame by reason of theyr gummositie: in the meane tyme also they neuer cease to make a great noyle with Trumpettes, Pipes, Drummes, Tambarells, and suche other instruments, not muche vnylike the ceremonies which in olde tyme were vsed among the gentiles in canonisying theyr saines. Furthermore, duryng these funeralls, there are .xx. disguised lyke deuyls, whiche continually walke rounde about the fyre, with many strange gesticulations, after the maner of reioycyng. The wyfe also of the burned kyng or priest, standeth by the fyre alone, without the compayne of any other woman, lamentyng and beatyng her breste. These ceremonies are done the seconde watche of the nyght. Within fyfteeene dayes after, the wyfe biddeth to a banquette all her husbandes kynfolkes, and when they come at a daye appoynted, they go al to the place where her husbande was burnt, and at the same houre of the nyght: then commeth forth the wyfe, garnyshe with all her iewells and best apparell, vsyng therein the helpe of all her kynfolkes. In the same place is made a pytte, no deeper then may serue to receiue the woman: This pytte, is sette about with reedes, and the reedes are couered with a cloth of sylke, that the pytte may not be seene. In the meane tyme also a fyre is made in the pytte, with sundry sortes of sweet woods: & the wyfe, after that her gesses haue well banqueted, eateth very muche of a certayne meate whiche they call *Betola*, whiche troubleth her mynde as though she were halfe madde or drunken. In the meane whyle, a great company of suche theyr musitions as we haue spoken of before, apparelled like deuyls, with burnyng stikes in theyr mouthes, daunce first about the pytte, and then make sacrifice to the great deuyl *Deumo*. The wyfe also in þ meane season runneth vp and downe lyke a madde body, with countenaunces of dauncyng and reioycyng. Then turnyng her to them that are disguised lyke deuyls, she commendeth her selfe to theyr deuoute prayers, desyryng

Canonisying of  
saines.

The wyfe burneth  
her selfe  
after the death  
of her husband.

Dauncyng  
deuylles.

Sacrifice to the  
deuyl.

Desiring them for her to make intercession to the great Deumo,  
 that after this transitorie lyfe, it may please him to receyue her  
 into the company of his Angelles. After the ceremonies are fy-  
 nished, shee taketh her leaue of all her kynsfolkes, whiche stande  
 rounde about her, and neare vnto the pitte, then with sodaine ou-  
 rage and a loude crye lifyng by her handes, she hurleth her selfe  
 into the burnyng pit, which done, her kynsfolkes, standing neare  
 vnto the fyre, couer her with litle fagottes of sweete wood, hur-  
 lyng also thereon much pitche, that the bodie may the sooner be  
 consumed: and except the wyfe shoulde doe this after the death  
 of her husbande, she shoulde euer after be esteemed an euill wo-  
 man, be hated of all men, and in fine, in danger to be slayne both  
 of her owne kynsfolkes and her husbandes, and therefore shee  
 goeth to it the more willingly. The kyng him selfe is present at  
 these pompes: which are not commonly vled for all men, but  
 only for the kynges, priestes, and noble men.

The hygh way  
 to hell.

Great respecte  
 of fame and ho-  
 nestie.

Of the iustice which the inhabitantes of  
 Tarnassari obserue. Cap. 10.

**I**f any kyll a man, he is adiudged to death, as in the citie of  
 Calecut. Of giuyng and receyuyng, iustice is ministred, as  
 prooofe may be made by wyting or witnesse. They wyte in  
 parchment lyke vnto ours, and not in barkes of trees as doe  
 they of Calecut. When they contende for any thyng, they resorte  
 to the gouernour of the citie, to whom the kyng hath giuen full  
 aucthoritie of iurisdiction: and if any merchaunt straunger dye  
 there without chyldren, he may make no inheritour, but all his  
 goods is due to the kyng: when the kyng is dead, his chyldren  
 succede in the kyngdome. When the inhabitantes dye, they  
 goods are equally diuided among theyr chyldren.

Wyting.



Howe the Mahumetans are buried in the  
citie of Tarnassari. Cap. II.

**W**hen any of the Mahumetan merchantes dye, they  
are embaulmed with many spices and sweete gum-  
mes, and theyr bodie put in Coffins of wood: with  
chiefe regarde that theyr heades lye towarde the ci-  
tie of Mecha, which is from thence Southwarde.

*Mecha.*

Of the dyuers sortes of theyr shippes or other  
vesselles. Cap. 12.

**T**hey haue Brigantines very shalowe, and with flatte bot-  
toms, which drawe but small depth of water. Some al-  
so vse ffoistes, hauyng two or double forepartes, and two  
Astes, and are open without any couerture. There is  
an other kynde of shippes of burden: Of the which, some beare  
the burden of a thousande tunnes. In these they carry Botes and  
other smaller vesselles, to the citie of Melacha, when they goe for  
spices.

Of Bangella, a great and riche citie of India, and  
of the great power of the kyng. Cap. 13.

**I**t is now tyme to speake further of our viage, and of our pro-  
ceedyng therein. Therefore packyng up our wares, and  
commityng vs to the sea, we came in twelue dayes saylyng  
to a citie named Bangella, distant from Tarnassari seven hun-  
dred myles. This citie in fruitfulness and plentifulnesse of all  
thinges, may in maner contende with any citie in the worlde.  
The kyngdome and dominion of this citie is exceedyng large.  
The kyng hath an army of two hundred thousande footemen  
and horsemen Mahumetans, and is of so great power, that he  
keepeth fore warres with the kyng of Narsinga. The region  
is so plentifull in all thynges, that there lacketh nothyng that  
may serue to the necessarie bles or pleasures of men: for there  
are

*The citie of  
Bangella.*

*An army of  
two hundred  
thousand men.*

are in maner all sortes of beastes, good and holsome frutes, and  
 plentie of corne : Spices also of all sortes . Lykewylse of bomba- Spices and  
like.  
 sine and silke, so exceeding great aboundance, that in these thin-  
 ges, I thinke there is none other region comparable with this,  
 and therefore here are very many riche merchantes . For euery Riche merchan-  
tes.  
 peere departe from hence, fytie shippes laden with clothe of  
 bombasine and silke, into the cities and countreys of *Turchia*,  
*Syria*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, *Ethiopia*, and *India* . There are also many Precious  
stones.  
 merchaunt straungers, whiche buye precious stones of the in-  
 habitauntes.

Of certayne Christian merchantes, which  
 exercise merchandies there,

Cap. 14.

**H**ere we founde many Christian merchantes which were Christians.  
 bozne in the citie of *Sarnau*, as they tolde vs . They re-  
 sorte thither, as to a great marte, with cloth of silke, and Lignum Aloes.  
 wood of Aloes, & *Laser*, which yeldeth the swete gumme Laserpitium.  
 named *Laserpitium*, commonly called *Belzoi*, beyng a kynde of Belzoi.  
 myrrre. They buyng also *Castoreum*, and diuers other swete sa- Castoreum.  
 uours . The sayde Christians tolde vs also, that there be in that Christian Prin-  
ces vnder the  
great Cham of  
Cathay.  
 kyngdome, many Christian Princes, subiect to the great *Cham*,  
 of the citie of *Cathai* . The apparell of these Christians, was  
*Chamlet*, loose and very full of pleytes, and lynced with bomba-  
 sine cloth. On theyr heads they weare certayne copen or sharpe  
 poynted cappes, of two handfull hygh, of scarlet colour . They  
 are white men. They acknowledge one God in Trinitie, & are  
 baptised after our maner . They beleeue the doctrine of the Apo-  
 stles and Euangelistes . They wypte backward, after the ma-  
 ner of the *Armenians* . They celebrate the birth and buriall of  
 Christ, and obserue fastyng the fourtie dayes of Lent as we doe.  
 They celebrate also certayne saintes dayes. They vse no shooes,  
 but weare loose hose of silke, garnished with dyuers Jewels. On  
 theyr fingers they weare Ringes, with stones of incomparable  
 splendour . At meate, they vse no table, but eate lying on the  
 ground, and feede of all sortes of fleshe.

Christian Princes neare the Turkes dominions.

Corall of great price.

Rubies.

Pego.

They affirmed also, that there are certayne Christian kynges (whiche they call *Rumi*) of great power, consynng or bordering on the dominions of the great Turke. When these Christians had seene the precious merchaundies of my companion, and specially a great braunche of Corall, they earnestly desired him, to goe with them to a certayne citie, where they promised him that by theyr procurement he shoulde sell his ware at great auantage, if he would buye Rubie stones, and that he might thereby easily geat aboute tenn thousande peeces of golde: Affirming that those kynde of stones were of muche greater value in Turkey. Whereunto my companion answered, that he woulde goe with them if they would departe in shorthe space. We will (sayde they) departe euen to morow: for here is a Foist whiche departeth hence to morowe, and taketh her biage to the citie of *Pego*, whither we desyre to hyng you. My companion consented the rather to his request, bicause he was aduertised that he shoulde fynde there certayne Persians, his countrey men. Therefore with this good companie departyng from the citie of *Bangella*, and saylyng ouer a great gulse lying on the South syde, we came at the length to the citie of *Pego*, a thousande myles distant from *Bangella*.

Of *Pego*, a famous citie of India. Cap. 15.

Idolaters.

White men.

Christians.

**T**he citie of *Pego*, is not farre from the sea, and is situate bypon the continent or tyne lande. A very fayre ryuer runneth by the citie, by the which merchandies are caried to and fro. The kyng of the citie, is an Idolater. The inhabitants, in apparell, liuyng, and maners, are lyke unto them of *Tarnassari*: but of whiter colour, as in a colder region, somewhat lyke unto ours. The citie is walled, and the houses well buylded, and very fayre, of stone and tyne. The kyng hath a myghtie armie both of footemen and horsemen, and hath in his armie Pensionarie Christians, bozne euen in the same region.

They.

They wages, is every moneth fixe of those peeces of golde which they cal *Pardaios*, & is payde them out of the Kynges treasury. They haue abundance of corne and flesh, as in *Calecut*. Here are but fewe Elephantes, yet other beastes and foules, as in *Calecut*. Here are also trees for buyldyng, and to make shyppes, the fayrest that euer I sawe: Also exceedyng great Reedes, as byg as the bodie of a grosse man, or a tubbe. Here are likewise suite Cattes, or Buske Cattes, and of small pyce, as thye for one peece of golde. There are fewe merchandyses in this citie, except precious stones, and specially Rubies: which neuerthelesse are brought thither from an other citie named *Capela*, beyng towarde the East thirtie dayes iourney, where are also founde precious stones named *Smaragdes* or *Emeraldes*. When we arryued at *Pego*, the kyng was absent fyue & twentie dayes iourney, in a place where he kepte warre agaynst the kyng of *Ana*. But shortly after, he returned with great triumphe for the victorie which he had agaynst his enemye.

Great Reedes.

Buske cattles.

precious stones and spices.

Capela.

Smaragdes or Emeraldes.

Of the munificence, humilitie, and great richesse of the Kyng of *Pego*. Cap. 16.

**T**his kyng vseth not suche poympes and magnificence as doeth the kyng of *Calecut*: But is of suche humanitie and affabilitie, that a chylde may come to his presence and speake with him, being neuerthelesse very ryche. It is in maner incredible to speake of the ryche Jewelles, precious stones, pearles, and especially Rubies, which he weareth, surmounting in value any great citie. His fingers be full of Ringes, and his armes all full of braselettes of golde, all beset and moste gloriously shynyng with suche precious stones: His legges also and feete beyng garnished in lyke maner. His eares lykewyse are so laded with suche Jewelles, that they hang downe halfe a handfull. The splendour or shynyng of these Jewelles is so great, that if one see the king in the darke night, he shineth in maner as it were the beames of the sunne. At good oportunitie the Christian merchant spake to the kyng, and certified him that my companion had brought sundry merchaundies of great estimation.

Great riches of Jewelles and precious stones

so kyng shynyng with earthy starres.



The kyng sacrificeth to the deuyll.

Corall.

The kyng and the merchant contende of liberallitie.

Commendation of the Persians.

A casket full of Rubies.

The kyng answered, that they shoulde come to him the day following, because that, that present day, he shoulde sacrifice to the deuyll. Therefore the nexte day he sent for vs, willing that my companion shoulde bring with him suche merchandises as he had. The which the kyng toke great pleasure to behold, and not without good cause: for among other thinges, there were two great branches of corall, of such bignesse and fayrenesse, as no man there had euer seene the lyke. The kyng astonished at these thinges, asked the Christians what men we were. They answered that we were Persians. Then sayde the kyng to his interpreter, Aske them if they will here make sale of theyr merchandises. To whom then my companion sayde thus, Most honorable Prince, all these are yours, take them, and vse them at your pleasure. Then sayde the kyng agayne, These two yecres past I haue kepte continuall warre with the kyng of *Aua*, and therefore my treasure of mooney is consumed: But if you will bargain by the way of exchaunge, for precious stones, and especially Rubies, I will so deale with you, that it shall not repent you. Then sayde my companion to the Christians: I pray you gyue the kyng to vnderstande, that I desire none other thyng then the benciuolence of his highnesse, and therefore that I desire him to take of my merchandises what lyketh him best, and that without money, or permutacion of any other thing. When the kyng hearde this, he answered, that he had hearde by reporte that the Persians were very curtiuous and liberall men, and that he neuer knewe so liberall a man as this was, and swore by the head of the deuyll, that by this occasion he would proue which of them two shoulde be most liberall, and therefore calling vnto him a Page of his chamber, commaunded him to fetch a casket of precious stones. This casket was of the breadth of a spanne and a halfe, euery way square, and full of Rubies: hauyng also within it sundry receptacles or boxes, where the stones were sorted in order. When he had opened the casket, he commaunded it to be set before the Persian, willing him to take of those precious stones as many as he would. But my companion the Persian, yet more moued to liberalitie by this the Kinges munificence, spake to the kyng these woordes, O most honourable Prince, I perceyue your benciuolence to be suche towards me,

me, that I sweare by the holy head of *Bahumet*, and all the mysteries of his religion, whereunto I am professed, that I freely and gladly gyue vnto you all my merchaundies: For I doe not trauaile about the worlde for gaynes of riches, but rather of desyre to see the worlde. In the which thereto, I neuer founde any thyng wherein I so greatly reioyced, as in the beneuolence and fauour which your maiestie hath shewed me. The kyng answered, Wylt thou yet contende with mee in liberalitie? And with those woordes, tooke out of the casket, (of euery boxe some) as many Rubies as he coulde holde in his hande, & with this rewarde (whiche was two hundred Rubies) shewed his kyngly munificence and beneuolence toward the *Persian*, saying vnto him, Take these, I pray thee, for thou shalt not refuse them. He gaue also to eche of the Christians two Rubies, whiche were woorth a thousand crownes to be solde: but those which he gaue the *Persian*, were esteemed woorth a hundred thousand crownes. A Princely gyfte. This kyng therefore doubtlesse in munificence passeth all the kynges of the worlde, and in maner no lesse in riches: for he recepueth yeerely of his subiectes two hundred thousand peeces of golde. This region byngeth forth all sortes of colours, and Colours. great plentie of bombasine and silke: but these great riches, the kyng consumeth on his souldiers. Not long after, newes were brought that the kyng of *Aua* was commyng with a myghtie force, whom the kyng in maner with an innumerable army wene to resist. Here also in certayne places we sawe women burned, after the maner of *Tarnassari*.

Of the citie of Melacha, and the great ryuer of Gaza. Cap. 17.

**VV**ithin two dayes after, taking ship, we sailed westwarde toward the citie of *Melacha*, and arryued there in eight dayes saylpyng. Not farre from this citie, is a famous ryuer named *Gaza*, the largest that euer I sawe, conteynyng  
Jff.iiii.
xxv.

xxv. myles of. xxv.  
myles brode.  
The Ilande of  
*Sumetra* or  
*Taprobana*,

*Chini* or *China*.

*Popingays*,  
*Sandalum*,  
*Cpin*.

Spices and  
like.

Wurly people.

*Anarchia*.

xxv. myles in breadth. On the other syde, is seene a very great Ilande, whiche they call *Sumetra*, and is of olde wyters named *Taprobana*. The inhabitants say that it conteyneth in circuite fyue hundred myles. When wee came to the citie of *Melacha* (whiche some call *Melcha*, we were incontinent commaunded to come to the Soltan, being a *Dahumetan*, and subiecte to the great Soltan of *Chini*, and payeth him tribute. Of whiche tribute, they say the cause is, that more then fourescore yeeres past, that citie was buylded by the kyng of *Chini*, for none other cause, then only for the commoditie of the hauch, being doubtlesse one of the sayrest in that Ocean, and therefore it is lykely that many shippes should resorte thither for merchandies. The region is not euery where fruitefull, yet hath it sufficient of wheate and fleshe, and but little wood. They haue plentie of foules, as in *Calecut*: but the *Popingays* are much sayrer. There is also founde *Sandalum*, and *Cynne*. Lykewyse *Elephantes*, *hoxses*, *sheepe*, *kyne*, *Wardalles*, *Buffes*, *Peacokes*, and many other beastes, and foules. They haue but fewe frutes, and therefore there is no merchandies to be solde but spices and like. The people are of blackythe ashe colour. Theyr apparell is like to the *Dahumetans* of the citie *Memphis*, otherwise named *Cayr*, *Alchayr*, or *Babylon* of *Nilus*. They haue very large foreheades, rounde eyes, and flatte noses. It is dangerous there to goe abrode in the night, the inhabitants are so giuen to murder and robbery, for they kill one another lyke dogges, and therefore the merchantes remayne in their shippes all the nyght. The people are fierce, of euyl condition, and wurly, for they will obey to no gouernour, being altogether giuen to sedition and rebellion, and therefore say vnto theyr gouernours, that they will forsake the countrey, if they stryue to bynde them to order, whiche they say the more boldly, bycause they are neare vnto the sea, and may easily departe into other places. For these causes, we spent no long tyme here: but hyring a *Bigantine*, we sayled to the Ilande of *Sumatra*, where in fewe dayes saylyng, we arriued at a citie of the Ilande named *Pyder*, distaunt about fourescore myles from the continent or firme lande.

Of the Ilande of Sumatra, or  
Taprobana . Cap. 18.

**VV**E haue sayd here before that the Ilande of *Sumatra*, conteyneth in circuite fyue hundred myles. The cite where we fyrst arryued in the Iland, is named *Pider*, haupng a very sayze port. I beleue verely this Ilande to be *Taprobana*, as also most autours do agree. It is gouerned by foure kynges, and all Idolaters, in fashions, apparell, and maner of luyng, not muche differng from the kyng of *Tarnassari*. The women burne them selues after the death of theyr hus bandes, as do they of whom we haue spoken before. They are of whityshe coloure, with large for- heades, rounde eyes, and of brassyll colour. They weare theyr heare long, and haue very bzyde and statte noses, and are of des- picable stature. Justice is there well obserued. Their mony is of golde, syluer, and tynne. The golde coyne, hath on the one syde, the grauen head of a deuyl: and on the other syde, a wagon or charrette drawen with Elephantes. The syluer mony hath the lyke coyne: tenne of these, are valued for one of golde. But of the tynne coyne .xxv. make the value of one of golde. Here are seene moze Elephantes, bygger, and fayer then in any other place that I haue been. This people hath no experience of warres, but are geuen altogeather to gaynes and merchandies. They are hospitable, and enterteyne strangers frenoly.

The Ilande of  
Samatra or  
Samotra,

Foure kynges  
in one Iland.

Women burns  
them selues.

Justice.  
Coynd mony  
of golde, syluer,  
and tynne.  
Elephantes.

Of an other kynde of Pepper. Also of sylke,  
and the precious gumme called *Laser-*  
*pitium*, or *Belzoe*. Cap. 19.

**I**N the sayde Iland is a kynde of long Pepper in great abun-  
dance. Pepper in theyr language, is called *Molaga*, & is much  
longer & whiter then that which is brought hither: yet lighter  
& hotter: it is sold there not by weight, but by measure as wheat  
with vs. It is there in so great abundaunce, that there is carped  
from hence yeerely twentie thysynds laden with Pepper. This  
is carped to *Cathay*, and is there well solde, by reason of the cold-  
nesse

Long Pepper.

Cathay or Ca-  
tai a colder re-  
gion.



nelle of the region. The tree that beareth this kynde of pepper, hath a greater body, and larger and fatter leaues, then the pepper tree of *Calecut*. This Ilande beareth also plentie of *Spike*, whiche for the most parte, is made after our maner. There is an other sozte, which the trees byng forth of them selues in the wooddes and feedes, without menage or dreslyng: but this is woorse then the other. Here also groweth the *Laser* tree, whiche byngeth forth the precious gumme named *Laserpitium* or *Belze*, as the inhabitantes and merchauntes tolde vs: but because I haue not seene it, I wyll speake no more of it.

*Spike of the trees.*

*Laserpitium or Belze.*

Of three sortes of the tree of Aloes, Cap. 20.

As much as varietie delighteth, and the wel disposed mind can neuer be satiate with contemplation of the marueylous and sundry woorkes of God in nature, therfore that the reader may take the more pleasure, or at the least feele lesse tediousnesse in the reading of these thyngs, I haue thought good to wyte somewhat more of suche thynges as I haue seene. You shall therefore vnderstande, that there is no great plentie of true Aloes or *Laserpitium* brought to vs, because it is brought hyther from the furthest partes of the worlde. Vnderstande further more, that there are three kyndes or soztes of Aloes, greatly differing in goodnesse. The perfectest, they call *Calampat*, whiche the aforesaide Ilande byngeth not forth: But it is brought from the citie of *Sarnau*, not farre from the place where the sayde Aloes *Calampat* is engendred, as the Christian merchauntes or companions tolde vs. There is an other kynde of Aloes, named *Iuba* (or *Luba*) brought hyther by this ryuer, I knowe not from whence. The thyrde kynd, is named *Bochor*. The sayde Christian merchants tolde vs also, that none of the fyrst and best kynde of Aloes is brought vnto vs, because it cometh from the kyngdomes of *Cathay*, *Chini*, *Macym*, *Sarnau*, and *Graua*, countreys muche rycher then ours, haupng muche greater abundance of golde, and kynges of greater power and rychesse then are ours: And also that the sayde kynges take great pleasure in such kynde of sweete sauoures, and vse them muche more then our princes

*Little true Aloes or Laserpitium.*

*Sarnau.*

*Cathay, and other ryche countreys.*

do : So that by this meanes, the true kynde of *Aloes* is woorth  
euen in the citie of *Sarnau*, tenne crownes the pounce weyght.

Howe the gummes of *Aloes* and *Laserpitium*, are proued. Cap. 21.

**W**E came by certaine experience to the knowledge of  
the two sweete gummes of *Aloes* and *Laserpitium*,  
as we were taught by the sayd Christian merchants  
our companions : For one of them had a certayne  
portion of them both, and had of that best sorte of *Aloes*, named  
*Calampat*, about the quantitie of two ounces : Of the which, my  
companion takyng a peece in his hande, and holdyng it fast and  
close for the space that one may thysle saye the *Psalme* of *Mise-*  
*rere mei Deus*, the *Aloes* thereby beyng heat, at the openyng of  
his hande gaue a sauoure of incredible sweetenesse, and suche as  
I neuer felte of any other thyng. He tooke also of the common  
*Laserpitium* or *Belze*, the quantitie of a *Walnutte*, and agayne  
halfe a pounce of that whiche cometh from the citie of *Sarnau*,  
to compare the one to the other : And so puttyng them both in  
sundry chafyng dyskes, with burnyng coles in a close chamber,  
that whiche was of the byggnesse of a *Walnutte*, in sweete sa-  
uour far exceeded the other which was halfe a pounce in weight,  
and woulde doubtlesse so haue done though it had ben of two  
pounce weight. In this region is also founde *Lacca*, or *Lacca*,  
wherewith is made a shynyng redde colour. It is the gumme  
of a tree, not muche vnylike our *Walnutte* tree. There are also  
sundrye kindes of beastes, suche as we haue.

*Aloes* of very  
sweete sauour.

The prooue of  
*Laserpitium*.

*Lacca*, mer-  
chantes wape.

Of diuers merchantes in the Ilande of  
*Sumatra*, or *Taprobana*. Cap. 22.

**I**N the sayde citie of *Pyder*, in the Ilande of *Sumatra*, I sawe  
many curious workes, very artificially wrought, as fyne Co-  
phines or baskets, garnished with golde, solde for two crow-  
nes the peece : I sawe also there in one greate fyue hundred  
exchangers.

exchangers: there are so many bankers. Wither, as to a famous  
mart, resort innumerable merchantes. The inhabitantes weare  
Gantels of sylke, and Syndone, made of Bombasine. The re-  
gion hath plentie of wood, and trees, very commodious to make  
such shippes as they cal *Gunchos*, haupng thre mastes, two fore  
partes, and also two sternes or gouernals on both sydes. When  
they sayle in the Ocean, and haue nowe geuen wynde to the  
sayles, yf afterwarde it shalbe needefull to haue moze sayles, not  
changynge the fyrst, they go backward without turnyng the ship,  
and vsyng only one mast. They are most expert swymmers, and  
haue skyll to make fyre in an instant. Theyr houses are of stone,  
and very lowe. In the place of couerynges or tyles, they vse the  
skynnes of hydes of a fysh, called *Tartaruca*, founde in that sea  
of India. I saw so hugious a hyde of this monster, that it wayed  
a hundred & thre poundes. I sawe there also great teeth of Ele-  
phantes, as one waying thre hundred & thirtie pounde weight.  
Lykewise Serpentes of incredible bygnesse, and muche bygger  
then in *Calecut*. Were our companions, the Chistian merchants,  
for assayes they had to do other wayes, woulde haue taken their  
leauce of vs. Then my companion the Persian spake vnto them  
in this maner: Although (my frendes) I am not your countrey-  
man (yet beyng all brethren, and the chyldren of Adam) I take  
God to witness that I loue you as yf you were myne owne bre-  
thren, begotten of the same parentes: and therfore, conlyderyng  
how frendly we haue kept company togeather so long tyme, I  
assure you I can not, without great greefe of mynde, beare your  
departyng from vs. And although you woulde depart from me,  
wyl you nowe forsake this my companion, a man of your sayth  
and religion? Then sayde the Chistians, Howe hath this man,  
beyng no Persian, receyued our sayth? Then sayde my compa-  
nion, Cruely he is now a Persian, and was once bought at Je-  
rusalem. When the Chistians hearde the holy name of Jerusa-  
lem, they lysted by theyr handes to heauen, and prostratyng them  
selues on the grounde, kyssed it thysle: then rysyng, they asked  
him of what age I was, when I was brought from Jerusalem.  
Of the age of fyfteeene peeres sayde my companion. Then sayde  
they agayne, We may then remember his countrey. Then aun-  
swered my companion, We dooth remember it in deede, and I  
haue

Shippes of a  
straunge fashi-  
on.

Swymmers.

Great hydes of  
fyses.

Great teeth of  
Elephantes.  
Great Ser-  
pentes.

The name of  
Iherusalem in  
reuerence.

haue taken great pleasure of suche thynges as he hath tolde me of his countrey. Then sayde the merchauntes, Although of long time we haue desyred to retorne to our countrey, beyng more then thre hundred myles hence, neuerthelesse at your request we wil beare you company to the place whyther you desyre to go. Preparing therefore all thynges parciepnyng to the voyage, we tooke shyping, and in .xv. dayes sayling, came to an Ilande named *Bandan*.

Of the Ilande of *Bandan*, where Nutmegs and Mace are founde. Cap. 23.

**I**n this voyage to the Ilande of *Bandan* we founde about .xx. Ilandes, some inhabited, and some desarte. This Ilande is very saluage, barren, and very lowe, and conceyeth a hundred myles in circuite. It hath neyther kyng nor gouernour, but is inhabited with a rascall and beastly kynde of men, lyving without lawe, order, or gouernment. They haue lowe houses, or rather cotages of wood, rysing but litle from the ground. Their apparell is onely a therte. They go bareheaded and barefooted, with theyr heare hangyng downe, and haue brode and rounde foreheades. They are of coloure inclynnyng to whyte, and of despicable stature. They are Idolaters, and woorse then are the inhabitantes of *Calecut*, called *Poliar*, and *Hyrana*. They are also of dull wyte and litle strength, and in kynde of lyving altogether beastly. The soyle beareth no fruite, excepte onely Nutmegges: the bodye of the Nutmegge tree, is lyke to the bodye of a Peachetree, and hath lyke branches and leaues, but the leaues are somewhat narrower. Before these Nuttes come to ryppenesse, the Pace storryeth lyke vnto a redde rose; but when the Nutte waxeth rype, the Pace closeth it selfe and embraileth the Nutte and shel, and are so geathered togeather without order or distribution, by scamblyng, catche that catche may, for y<sup>e</sup> al thyngs are there common. The tree yeldeth fruite of his owne fruitefulnessse, without grafting or cuttyng, or any other art. These Nuttes are solde by weyght, and .xxvi. pounce weyght, is solde for the value of thre soules (that is) halfe a

*Anarchia.*

*Lawlesse people.*

*Idolaters.  
The Nuttes  
megge tree,  
Mace.*

*All thynges  
common.*

*Nutmegges  
of small price.*

*Carling*



The lawe of  
nature.

Carkne, of such money as is vled in *Calecut*. This people hath  
none other order of iustice, then by the lawe of nature, and ther-  
fore they lyue without such contentions as proceede of thynne and  
myne. When we had been heere thre dayes, my companion  
asked the Chyistian merchantes, where was the region whiche  
brought forth Cloues: They answered, That Cloues were  
founde in an Ilande named *Mowoch*, five dayes saylyng from  
thence. Therfore proceeding on our voyage, we came thither  
in the space of seuen dayes.

These Ilandes  
of Ippres, are  
called

*Molucca*,  
and in them is  
seene the rare  
tyde named  
*Manucodiata*,  
or *paradisea*.

The Cloue tree.

Cloues dearer  
then Nutmegs.

Of the Ilande of *Mowoch*, where Cloues  
growe. Cap. 24.

**T**his Ilande is very narowe, yet in length exceedeth the  
Ilande of *Bandan*. The inhabitauntes are much worse  
then they of *Bandan*: for were it not only for mans shape,  
they should in maner differ nothyng from beastes. Their  
colour is whyter, and the region colder. This Ilande byngeth  
forth Cloues, as do also many other litle and desolate Ilandes  
lying about it. The body of this tree, is not muche vnylike the  
*Bore* tree, and hath leaues lyke vnto the *Cinamome* tree, but  
rounder, and almost lyke the *Bay* leafe. When they were ripe,  
the inhabitauntes beate them downe with reedes, sayng fyrst  
mattes vnder the trees. The ground is sandie, and the region  
so low vnder the *Horizon*, that the *Noth* starre can not be seene  
there. They sell Cloues for the double price that *Nutmegs* are  
solde, & sel them by measure: for they are bitterly without know-  
ledge of weyghies.

Of the Iland of *Bornei*. Cap. 25.

**A**s we were togeather talkyng of our voyages, the Chri-  
stian merchantes spake vnto me in this maner. Our deare-  
ly beloued freende, forasmuch as by the grace of God, we  
are come thus farre in safetie, yf it please you, we wyl go  
see one of the sayrest Ilandes in the worlde, and very ryche, and  
suche as I beleue you neuer sawe: but we must fyrst go to an  
other Iland named *Bornei*, for there shal we haue bygger vessels:  
for we must needes passe a deepe and rough sea. Then sayde my  
companion, Do as shall please you, for we are contented to go  
with

The Ilande of  
*Spaua*.  
*Bornei*.

with you. Therefore hyrnyng a greater Foyll, we directed our iorney to that Ilande both by daye and nyght, sayling alway southwarde: By the way we passed soorth the tyme with pleasant talke. The merchaunt men asked me many thynges of the ceremonyes and soleninities of the Christian religion vfed among vs: And when I made mention of the *Veronica* (commonly called the *Vernacle* of the face of Chryst) and of the heades of *Peter* and *Paule* the chiefest of the Apostles, and also of many other saintes, they aduertysed me secretly, that if I woulde go with them, I shoulde become a great man for the knowledge of suche great thynges. But beyng deterred by the greatnesse of the iorney, & fearyng that then I should neuer haue come home, I refused to go with them. At the length we came to the Ilande of *Bornei*, distant from *Monoch* about two hundred myles, and is somewhat hygger, but muche lower beneath the Horizon of *Equinoctiall*. The inhabitantes are *Idolaters*, of sharpe wyte, and maner of lyuynge not greatly to be discommended. Their colour inclyneth more to whytenesse. They weare not all one maner of apparell, for some weare Shirtes of bombasine cloth, other mantells of chamlet, and other also sharpe cappes of red coloure. They obserue iustice and good order. This Ilande yeeldeth pecerely great abundaunce of *Camphora*, which they sayd to be the gumme of a tree: but I dare not affyrme it, because I haue not seene it. Here my companyon hyred a lyght shyppe or barke for a hundred peeces of golde.

*Veronica of Vernacle.*

*The headdes of Peter and Paule.*

*The Ilande of Bornei. Idolaters.*

*Camphora.*

Of the obseruations vfed in the nauigation  
to the Iland of *Giaua*. Cap. 26.

**A**fter that we had made prouision of vittayles sufficient for the voyage, we directed our iorney to the Ilands of *Giaua*, and came thither in the space of fyue dayes, saylyng euer towarde the south. Our Pilot vled the maryners bore or compasse, with also the lode stone and sea carde, after the maner of ours. Therefore when my companyon sawe that the *Sepentrions* or north starres coulde not be seene there, he asked the Christians howe they coulde sayle on that sea without the guide of the north star: & asked also, by what other star they were guided:

*The north star.*

*The.*

The starres about the pole Antartike.

The lode stone ferueth in the south regions beyond the Equinoctiall line.

Antipodes.

The Pilote answered, that the inhabitantes of these regions obserue principally syue starres, and also one other starre, opposite or directlye contrary to the Septentrions or North starres, whereby they gouerned their viages in these regions: and sayd, that he also vsed the lode stone, because it euer mooueth to the North: and sayde furthermore, that on the other syde of that Islande, is a certayne people, whiche in saylyng obserue certayne starres, contrary to the Septentrions, for that the sayde people are Antipodes to thein of *Europa Sarmatia*, and that they inhabite as colde a region and climat, and as neare vnto the pole Antartike, as is manifest by the shortnesse of the day, beyng but foure houres long in their wynter: of whiche talke we tooke great pleasure.

Of the Islande of Gyaia, and the maners of the people. Cap. 27.

Therefore proceeding on our iourney syue dayes saylyng, we came to the sayde Islande, beyng very great & large, and hauyng in it many kyngdomes, and kynges, beyng all Idolaters, and of diuers maners of lpyung: for some of them honoz Idolles, after the maner of *Calecut*: some also honoz the Sonne, and some the Moone: other take Wyne for their Idolles: and some, the fyrst thyng that they meete in the morning, take for the Idol of that day: other also honoz the picture or similitude of the deuyll. This Islande byngeth forth sylke, whiche groweth of it selfe in the wooddes, and also the fayrest Smaragdes or Emeraldes that are in the world: there is likewise plentie of Golde, and Copper. The soyle is fruitefull of Corne, and all sortes of fruites, as in the citie of *Calecut*. There is great abundance of fleshe of all sortes, as with vs. The inhabitantes are saythfull, and true dealing people: they are of the same colour and stature that we bee, but haue larger foxheades, very great eyes, and of brassyll or redde colour, and flatte noses, wearyng theyr heare long. There is a great multitude of foules and birdes, but vnlyke vnto ours, except Peacokes, Turtle dooue, and Crowses. They greatly obserue iustice, and good order. For theyr apparel they vse mantels, or clokes, of Bombasine cloth, or sylke, or Chamlet, euer wearyng out one arme. They vse no coates of fence, or armure, because they haue no warres:

but

Idolaters.

The Image of the deuyll.

Sylke of trees, Smaragdes, Golde, Copper.

Whyte men good people.

Wydes and foules.

but when they traueyle on the sea, they vse bowes, and im-  
 poysoned arrowes made of Reedes. They vse also certayne long and  
 holowe staues (which we call Trunkes) through the which as  
 Ter our maner, they blowe little arrowes, so infected with poi-  
 son, that if they raple neuer so little blood, death foloweth in-  
 continent. They haue no Sunnes or other ingines. They eate all  
 sortes of fleshe, fylshe, and frutes: yet some seede of one kynde  
 of meate, and other of other, as them listeth.

Impoysoned  
 arrowes.

Trunkes.

Of theyr cruell maners in selling their parentes  
 to the Anthropophagi to be eaten. Cap. 28.

Anthropo-  
 phagi eate  
 mans fleshe.  
 In the West  
 India, they are  
 called Cani-  
 balles.

**T**he inhabitantes of the sayd Ilande (they I meane which  
 feede of fleshe) when they see theyr parentes so feeble by  
 age, that they serue for no vse, but are tedious both to them-  
 selues and other, they byng them to the market or fayre,  
 and sell them to the *Anthropophagi*, which vse to eate mans fleshe.  
 They that buye them, kyll them out of hande & eate them. Like-  
 wyle when any young person among them, falleth into any suche  
 sickenesse, that by the iudgement of theyr wyle men he can not  
 escape, to the ende that he should not vnprofitably lenger in  
 paynes, his brethren and kynfolkes sell hym to the *Anthropo-  
 phagi*. When my companion, beyng detested with these cruell  
 maners, shewed in countenance that he detested this horrible in-  
 humanitie, a certayne merchaunt of the inhabitantes sayde thus  
 vnto hym: O Persians, no sacrifice can redeeme your sinnes,  
 in that you giue so fayre fleshe to the woormes to be eaten. Ther-  
 fore abhorryng these beastly maners, we returned to our shyppe,  
 not intendyng any longer to tarry there.

A strange  
 pittie.

Rather to but-  
 chers then  
 woormes.

Of the strange course of the sunne in the Iland  
 of Gyaua. Cap. 29.

**W**hyle we remayned here, the Christian merchantes,  
 euer desirous to shewe vs new and strange thinges,  
 whiche we myght declare at our returne into our  
 countreys, sayde thus vnto vs, My friends, make  
 repoyte in your countrey of a strange thyng whiche I will  
 Ggg.i. now



nowe shewe you . Beholde (sayde they) the place of the Sunne in the South at hygh noone, and thereby consider howe farre this region is from your country . We then behelde the Sunne to runne toward the ryght hand: and agayne, to shewe or marke a sphere, about two handfuls brode, toward the lesse hand, which doubtlesse seemed to vs very straunge . And this (as they sape) is euer seene in the moneth of Iuly . But I nowe scarcely beare this in mynd, for I there forgot euen the names of our monthes . But this is certayne, that in this region, the tymes and seasons of the yeeres are lyke vnto ours, and of lyke temperature of heat and colde . Here my companion bought two fayre Emeraldes for a thousande peeces of golde, and also two gelded chyldren for two hundred peeces of golde : for heere are certayne merchantes that buy none other ware, then such gelded chyldren.

Of our returne from the Ilande of  
Gyaua. Cap. 30.

**A**fter that we had remayned heere fyftiene dayes, wery of the maners of the inhabitantes, and of the coldnesse of the country that tyme of the yeere, we determyned to proceede no further : for this cause also, that there remayned in maner none other region woorthie to be seene, and therefore hyring a lyght shyp, we departed from thence, sayling Eastwarde for the space of fyftiene dayes, and came at the length to the citie of *Melacha*, where remayning three dayes, we tooke our leaue of our companions the Christian merchantes, with friendly embrazinges, and sorowfull myndes . Which departure (I take God to witnesse) greued me so sore, that if I had been a single man without wyfe and chyldren, I would neuer haue forsaken suche friendly men . We therefore departed, and they remayned there, saying that they would shortly returne to the citie of *Sana*: and we takyng a ffoist, returned to the citie of *Cyromandel* . By the way, the gouernour of the shyp tolde vs, that about the Ilandes of *Gyaua* and *Taprobana*, there are aboue seuen thousande little Ilandes . When we arryued at *Melacha*,

Emeraldes of  
great price.  
Gelded chyld  
ren.

*Sana*.

Seuen thous  
saunde Ilandes.  
Melacha or  
Melacha.

my

my companion bought as muche spices, sweete saouours, and like, as cost him fyne thousande peeces of golde: But we came not to the citie of *Gyromandel* in lesse space then fyftiene dayes saylyng. There we unladed our Foist, and after we had remayned there twentie dayes, hyring an other Foist, we came at the length to the citie of *Colon*, where we founde xxi. Christians, of the realme of *Portugale*. And fearyng that they would take me for some espion, I began to imagine howe I myght depart from thence: But seeing that they were so fewe in number, I chaunged my purpose, especially for that there were many merchaunt *Dahumetans* whiche knewe that I had been at *Mecha*, to see the bodie of *Dahumet*. But within the space of twelue dayes, we came to *Calecut* by the ryuer.

Agayne of the citie of *Calecut* after our returne thither. Cap. 31.

**A**fter so many long and daungerous peregrinations and viages, in the whiche we haue been partly satisfied of our desyre, and partly wecryed by many suche occasions of inconueniencies as chaunce in the way (as they can well consider that haue been vlsed to suche long iournepes) we determined to proceede no further, but to thynke only of our safe returne into our native countrey, and therefore I will bzeefely declare what chaunced to me in the way: the rather that other men, taking example by my traueyles, may knowe the better howe to gouerne them selues in the lyke, if lyke ardent affection shal moue them to take suche viages in hande, as I am sure noble spirites of many valiant men will moue them thereto. Therefore enter yng into the citie of *Calecut*, we founde there two Christians, bozne in the citie of *Milan*, the one named *Iohn Maria*, and the other *Peter Antonie*. These were Jewellers, and came from *Portugale* with the kinges licence to buye precious stones. When I had founde these men, I reioyced more then I am able to expresse: for we went naked after the maner of the inhabitants. At our first meet yng, seeing them to bee whyte men,

Two Christians of Milan in Calecut.

Orgg.ii.

I asked

I asked them if they were Christians. They sayde, yea. Then sayde I, that I was also a Christian, by the grace of God. Then takyng me by the hande, they brought me to theyr house, where for ioye of our meetyng, we could scarcely satisfie our selues with teares, embraſsnges, and kyllyng: for it seemed nowe to mee a straunge thyng to heare men speake myne owne language, or to speake it my selfe. Shortly after, I asked them if they were in fauour with the kyng of *Calecut*. We are (sayde they) in great fauour with him, and very familier. Then againe I asked them what they were mynded to doe. We desyre (sayde they) to returne to our countrey, but we knowe not the meanes howe. Then sayde I, Returne the same way that you came. Maye (sayde they) that may not bee: for we are fledde from the *Portugales*, bycause we haue made many peeces of great ordinaunce, and other Gunnes for the Kyng of *Calecut*, and therefore we haue good cause to feare, and nowe especially, for that the nauie of *Portugale* will shortly be heere. I answered, that if I myght escape to the citie of *Canonor*, I doubted not but that I would geat theyr pardon of the gouernour of the Nauie. There is small hope thereof (sayde they) we are so famous and well knowen to many other kynges in the way whiche fauour the *Portugales*, and laye wayte to take vs, for wee haue made moze then foure hundred Gunnes, little and great, and therefore wee are out of all hope to escape that way. In whiche theyr talke, I perceyued howe fearefull a thyng is a giltie conscience, and called to remembraunce the saying of the Poet.

*Multa malè timeo, quia feci multa proteruè.* That is, I feare muche euill, bycause I haue done muche euill. For they had not only made many suche peeces of artillerie for the infidelles, to the great damage of Christians, and contempte of the holy name of Christ and his religion, but had also taught the Idolatours both the makyng and vse of them. And at my bepyng there, I sawe them gyue a modell or mould to certayne Idolatours, whereby they myght make brasen peeces, of suche bygnesse, that one may receyue the charge of a hundred and fyue Tankardes (*Cantaros*) of powder.

The Christians haue made a rodde for their owne arsse.

The Nauie of Portugale.

A great peece of ordinaunce.

At the same tyme also, there was a Jewe, which had made a be-  
ry sayde Brigantine, and foure great peeces of artillerie of Iron.  
But god shortly after gaue him his due reward: for when he went  
to washe him in the ryuer, he was drowned . But to returne to  
our sayde Christians. God is my witnesse howe earnestly I per-  
suaded them, neuer thereafter to make any more artillerie or  
Gunnies, to the great contempt and indignation of God, and de-  
triment of our holy sayth . When I had sayde these woordes, the  
teares fell from the eyes of *Peter Antonie*. But *Iohn Maria* (who  
perhappes had not so great desire to returne to his countrey) said  
that it was all one to him, to dye there, or in the citie of Rome:  
and that God knewe what he had decreed of him . Within two  
dayes after, I returned to my companion, who marueyled where  
I had been, fearing lest I had ben eyther sicke, or departed . I  
tolde him that I was all nyght in the Temple, lest he should sus-  
pecte my great familiaritie with the Christians.

A Jewe that  
made Gunnies  
and shippes,  
was drowned.

Repentaunce.

Predestina-  
tion,

Of the commyng of the Portugale shippes, to  
the citie of Canonor. Cap. 32.

**V**W Hyle I remayned here in the lodging of my com-  
panion, there came to him two *Persian* merchants  
from the citie of *Canonor*, saying that they had som  
euyl newes to tell him: wherwith seemyng to be  
somewhat troubled, he asked what was the matter : There are  
come (sayde they) twelue shippes of Portugale, which we haue  
seene with our eyes . Then sayde he, What maner of men are  
those : They are (sayd the *Persians*) Christians, armed with har-  
nesse of shining Iron, and haue builded an inepugnabile fortreffe  
in the citie of *Canonor* . My companion hearyng those woordes,  
turned to me, and sayde, Lodowicke, what maner of men are the  
Portugales : To whom I answered, that they were a nation  
of mischeuous people, gyuen to none other thyng then piracie  
and robbing on the sea. He was not so sozie to heare this, as I  
was glad of theyr commyng.

A fortreffe of  
the Portugales  
in the citie of  
*Canonor*.



How I playde the Phisitian, and counterfect holinesse, lest by my colour I should be taken for a spye for the Portugales, before I could come to their ships. Cap. 33.

Hypocrisie.

**A**fter the rumor was spred of the *Portugales* arryuyng, I began to thinke what was best to be done, and thought nothing more safe and easie among this people, then to geat some opinion of holinesse by hipocrisie, and therefore all the day tyme, I lurked in the Temple, liuyng without meate, as all the people thought: but in the nyght, I ate fleshe in the house of *Peter Antonie*, and *Iohn Maria*. And by this meanes, none had other opinion of me, but that I was a Sainet, and therfore might after a fewe dayes goe abrode in the citie without suspicion: and to helpe the matter withall, it chaunced in the meane tyme, that a certaine rich *Dahumetan* of the citie of *Calecut* was very sicke, hauing his belly so bounde, that he could not doe the necessitiez of nature. And bycause he was a friende to my companion, and his disease increased, he asked me if I had any skyll in physicke: I sayde, that my father was a Phisitian, and that I had learned many things of him by experience. Then I pray you (sayd he) do what you can to helpe this my friend. We went therfore together to the sicke man, whom my companion asked where he felt him selfe most greued. In my head (sayd he) and my stomake, hauing also my belly so sore bounde, that I can not goe to the stoole. Then my companion agayne in his presence, desired me to consider his infirmitie, and take vpon me to minister vnto him some medicine. My companion had tolde me before, that he was a great eater and drinker. Therefore, takyng him by the hande, and feelyng his pulse, I sayde that his stomacke and bowelles were full of choler, by reason of surfetyng, and therefore that it shoulde be good for him to take a glister. Then sayde the sicke man, Doe what you wil, I wil abyde your order. Then made I a glister of egges, salt, and suger, adding also butter and certayne hearbes, such as came first to my memorie vpon the sodayne, and in the space of a day and nyght, I gaue him fyue glisters, but all in vayne: for besyde the paynes which he endured, he was rather woofse then better, insomuche that it repented me of myne enterpryse:

A Sainet by  
hipocrisie.

A glister.

pisse : But it was nowe best to set a good face on the matter, and  
 attempte an other way, but the lastt errour was woorse then the  
 first. Yet still putting him in good hope, I vsed him thus. I made  
 him lye grouelyng on his belly, & then tying cordes on his feete,  
 I rayled vp the hynder partes of his body, so that he rested only  
 vpon his brest and handes, and as he laye, ministred a glyster  
 vnto him, and let him so hang for the space of halfe an houre. My  
 companion beholding this straunge kynde of practice, sayde vnto  
 me, Lodouike, is this the maner of mynistring to sicke folkes  
 in your countrey? It is, sayde I, yet neuer but in case of extre-  
 mitie. Then simplyng, he sayde, I beleue it will heale him one  
 way or an other. In the meane tyme the miserable man cryed,  
 saying in his language, It is enough, it is enough, for my soule  
 now departeth. We comforted him, desirynge him to haue pati-  
 ence yet a while. In maner immediately after, his belly was  
 loosed, and auoyded matter as if it had been out of a gutter. Then  
 when wee had let downe his bodie, hee auoyded as muche as  
 myght almost fylle a payle, and shortly after, the payne of his  
 head and stomake, and also the feuer, ceased : whereof we were  
 all very glad. And by this aduenturous cure, I began to bee in  
 great credite among them, by the meanes also of my counterfect  
 holinesse, and therefore whereas he would haue giuen me tenne  
 peeces of golde, I would take but only two, and gaue them al-  
 so incontinent to the poore. These self soules beleueed so much  
 in my hypocrisie (which I shewed no lesse in countenance and  
 grauitie, for bearyng also openly to eate fleshe) that well was he  
 that myght haue me in his house, or kysse my handes and feete.  
 The repozite also of my companion, affirmynge that he mette  
 with me first at *Mecha*, where I was to see the bodie of the  
 holy Prophet *Dahumet*, encreased greatly (and specially a-  
 mong the *Dahumetans*) the opinion they had conceiued of my  
 holinesse. But in the meane tyme, secretly in the darke nyght,  
 I resorted priuily to the aforesayde Christians, by whom  
 beyng aduertised that twelue of the Portugale shippes were  
 nowe arryued at *Canonor*, I considered that nowe would  
 bee good oportunitie to escape : And therefore remaynyng  
 there yet seuen dayes, I learned all that I couide of

A straunge mi-  
 nistring of a  
 glyster.

More good  
 happethen  
 cunningg.

Self soules.

the preparations which the kyng of *Calecut* and his people made against the *Portugales*, both touching his army, artillerie, and other thinges parteynyng to the warres. But before I come to speake of my maner of departing, it wil here not be from the purpose, to declare howe the *Mahumetans* call the people to theyr churches, and of theyr maner of praying.

Howe the Mahumetan priestes call the people to theyr Churches, Cap. 34.

**T**hey priestes and other ministers of the Temple (of the which there is a great number) obserue this maner to call the people to the church. Certayne of these ascende to the highest Tower of the Temple, where first blowing three or foure brasen Trumpets, in the steede of belles, they crye to the people with a loude voyce, to resorte to the Temple to prayers. Then stopping one eare with their finger, they say in theyr owne language these woordes: *Alla u ecubar*. That is to say, God is great. And againe, God is great: Come to the Temple of the great God, Come to pray to the great God: God is great, God is great, God was, God is, Mahumet the messenger of God shal ryse. They inuited me also to the Temple, and desired me to pray to God for the Mahumetans; whiche I dyd outwardly, but of much other meanyng then they dyd.

Trumpettes in the steede of belles.

Not all that say, Lord, Lord. &c. Some of them say that he is ryse.

Of the maner of praying among the Mahumetans, Cap. 35.

**T**hey haue certayne dayly and vsuall prayers, as we haue, in the which they call God their father, and bouchsafe to name the virgin *Marie*, full of grace. They pray not before they haue ben washed. Then standing in order, after the priest hath prayed, they pray also in their own language. Here to my companion, I sayned my selfe like, & founde diuers other occasions to depart from thence, and to go to *Canonor*. Well sayd he, It shall not be long ere I come thither to you, & in the meane tyme, with my letters I will commend you there to a friend and counrey man of myne, a riche merchant, who for my sake shall giue you good intertaynement.

God the father. The virgin Marie.

What subtiltie I vsed to depart from Calecut,  
to go to the Portugales. Cap.36.

**T**He daye before I departed from tgarce, I made the sayd  
Christians priuie of my intende. In the meane tyme my  
companion ioynd me in company with two other Per-  
sian merchauntes, whiche were mynded also to go to Ca-  
nonor: for there was in the citie of Calecut many merchauntes of  
Persia, Syria, and Turchia. Therefore the fyrst day of Decem-  
ber, I, with the other two Persians, hyrnyng a lyght shyppe,  
gaue wynde to our sayles to proceede on our voyage. But see  
what chaunced suddenly, we had scarcely sayled as farre as a  
man may shoote an arrowe, but foure of the inhabitantes of the  
order of them whiche they call Naeros (of whom we haue  
spoken before) cryed to the gouernour of the shyp to drawe neare  
the lande in the kynges name. When they vnderstode who we  
were, they asked why they carped me away without makynge  
the kyng priuie thereto: Then sayde the Persians, This Pa-  
humetan that is heere with vs, is a holy man, and goeth in our  
company to the citie of Canonor. They aunswared, that they  
knewe me to be a man that had wrought myracles. Neuerthe-  
lesse, that because I could speake the language of y<sup>e</sup> Portugalles,  
it was to be suspected least I should bewraye theyr secretes to  
them, and tell them of the nauie and armye whiche the kyng pre-  
pared agaynst the Portugales, and therefore commaunded the  
gouernour of the shyppe to cary vs no further. We obeyed  
theyr commaundement, and left vs on the shore. Then sayde  
one of the Persians, Let vs returne to Calecut. To whom  
I aunswared, Take heede what you do, for so shall you be in  
danger to loose all your sylkes if it be knownen that you haue  
payde no custome to the kyng. Then sayde the other Persian,  
What then (by your aduise) is it best for vs to do? I aunswared,  
that it was best for vs to go some what further by the shore, vntill  
we myght fynde some barke: whereunto they agreed. Therefore  
we, and our slaues laden with our fardells, went so .xii. myles  
along by the shore. But what feare I was in, in the meane  
season, I comynette to wyse men to iudge. But as God would,

Merchauntes of  
Calecut.

Naeros are  
gentlemen of  
the kynges  
garde,

we



we founde there a poore fysher man with a boate, with whom we agreed to hyng vs to Canonor, where we arryued late in the euenyng. Incontinent we went to the merchaunt Persian, to whom I had letters of commendation from my companyon. The tenour of the letters was, that he shoulde receyue me into his house, and enterteyne me frendly, vntil his commyng: Also that whatsoeuer frendeshyp he shewed vnto me, he woulde ascribe it to be done vnto hym selfe: Furthermoze, that I was a holy man, and ioyned with hym in neere amitie and frendeshyp. When the merchaunt had redde the letters, he layde his hand on his head, and sayde vnto me, By this head you are welcome to me, and shall be here in safetie, and caused a good supper to be prepared for vs. After supper, the Persians sayde vnto me, Lette vs go walke to the sea syde. I agreed: and in short tyme we came to the place where the Portugales shyppe laye at anker. I am not able to expresse the secreete ioye whiche I felte in my selfe at the syght of these shyppes. In the way, I marked well the place where the Portugales had buylde their foytresse, determining to come thither the nexte daye.

Howe I fledde to the Portugales from  
the citie of Canonor. Cap. 7.

**T**he daye folowing, when I sawe best oportunitie, I went towarde the foytresse of the Portugales: and by the way, meetyng with two Portugales, in the Spanyshe tongue I asked them where was the foytresse of the Portugales. Then sayde they to me, Art thou a Christian? I am (sayde I) by the grace of God. Then sayde they agayne, From whence comest thou? From the citie of Calecut sayde I. Then come with vs (sayde they) for we wyll hyng thee to the gouernour. This gouernour was one maister Laurentius, sonne to the Vice-roye. So I went with them to the foytresse, whiche is not past foure furlonges from the citie. At the tyme of our commyng, the gouernour had not yet dined. When I came to his presence, I fel downe on my knees, and prayed hym with al humilitie for Christes sake, to whom I was consecrated by baptysme, to haue compassion vpon me, and to delyuer me from the hands of those insidell dogges. When it was nowe noysed in the citie that I was escaped

The Gouers  
noure of Por-  
tugales foy-  
tresse.

escaped to the Chyistians, there beganne a sturre and mutinie, in  
maner of a tumulte. Whiche when the gouernour vnderstoode,  
commaunded al his Captaines, souldiers, & other officers, to place  
their artillerie, & order all thynges in redynesse, least the people in  
sudden rage should attempte any thing agaynst the fortreffe. But  
al thynges were pacified in shorthe tyme. Then the gouernour,  
takyng me by the hande, brought me into a certayne hall, and  
there demaunded of me, what the kyng and inhabitantes of *Cale-  
cut* imagined or deuised to do agaynst the Chyistians: I infor-  
med hym of all thynges, as farre as I knewe, hauyng diligently  
searched to vnderstand all theyr doynge. When the gouernour  
was thus by me aduertysed of theyr secretes, he appoynted a  
galley to byng me to the Viceroye, who was then in the citie of  
*Cucin*. The Captayne of the gallie, was named *Iohannes Seranus*.  
When the Viceroye saw me, he receiued me very fauourably. I  
certified hym also of al thynges: Saying further more vnto hym,  
that if I myght by his fauoure obteyne pardon and assurance for  
the sayde two Italians, *Peter Antonie* and *Iohn Maria*, which be-  
fore had made artillarie for the infidel princes, I woulde procure  
that they shoulde returne to the Chyistians, and do them ryght  
good seruice, and that I was well assured, that they byd that by  
constraint: Also y they despyed none other thing then safe conduct  
and mony for theyr charges. He was glad of this, and graunted  
my request. Whereuppon within thre dayes after, he sent me  
with letters to his soune, the gouernour in the citie of *Canonor*,  
with commaundement to deliuer me as muche mony as shoulde  
suffice for the charges of the Chyistian exploatours or espions  
of the citie of *Calecut*. I went therefore incontinent to *Canonor*,  
where I agreed with one of the idolatours (who for pouertie had  
gaged his wife & children) to cary letters to *Calecut* to *Iohn Ma-  
ria* and *Peter Antonie*. The content of which letters was, that the  
Viceroye had graunted them pardon and safe conducte, and al-  
so mony for theyr charges: Aduertysing them to make none pri-  
uie of this thyng, and especially to beware least it shoulde be  
knowne to theyr slaues or concubines (For eche of them had a  
concubine, a child, & a slave) Furthermore to leaue al theyr goods  
behynd them, except thynges of great price, as many & iewelless.

The Viceroye  
of the kyng of  
Portugall in  
India.

Concubines  
and slaues.

A Diamond of  
the piece of  
xxx. thousand  
rubies.

Beare of co-  
uetousnesse.

The Bishop of  
the Mahumetans.

The Mahu-  
metans conspi-  
re the death of  
the Christians.

An Oration.

For they had a very fayre Diamond of the weyght of .xxii. car-  
races, esteemed to be woorth .xxxv. thousande crownes. They  
had also a pearle of the weyght of .xxiii. caraces. Furthermore,  
two thousande rubies: of the whiche, some were of the weyght  
of one carace, and some of one and a halfe. They had also .xxiii.  
brassettes, garnished with many iewelless: lyke wyse in redye  
coyne, a thousand and fyue hundred peeces of golde. But see  
what cometh of to much couetousnesse. Whyle they thought  
to haue saued all, they lost all, and theyr lyues therewith: For  
not contentyng them selues with the aforesayde ryches, they  
woulde needes also carye with them (notwithstandyng the ad-  
uertisement we had geuen them) foure Gunnes, thre Hunkels,  
two Muskecettes, and two of those wheeles wherewith precious  
stones are polished. All which thynges, were the onely cause  
of theyr death: For whereas so many thynges coulde not be se-  
cretly conueyed, one of theyr slaues certified the kyng of  
Calecut heereof, who at the fyrst woulde scarcely beleue it, for  
the good opinion he had conceyued of them: Yet sent foure of  
his garde (of them whiche are called Nacry) to knowe if it were  
true. But the slaue, perceyving that the kyng woulde deale fa-  
uourably with them, went to the hygh priest or Bishop of the  
fayth of the Mahumetans (whom they call Cady) and tolde hym  
all that before he had tolde the kyng of Calecut: Addyng more-  
ouer, that the sayde Christians had disclosed theyr secretes to the  
Portugales. When the Bishop understode these thynges, he  
called a counsaile of all the Mahumetan merchauntes, wyllyng  
them, of the common treasure, to geue a hundred peeces of  
golde to the kyng of Gioghi (who was then at Calecut) and to  
speake to hym in this maner. It is not vnknownen to you (most  
noble prince) howe a fewe yeeres past, when your maiestie came  
hither, we receiued you with more honorable enterteynement then  
we are nowe able to do: The cause whereof, is no lacke of good  
wyl or knowledge of our deuettie towarde your hyghnesse, but  
rather the great and manyfolde iniuries and opprellions whiche  
we haue susteyned, and do dayely susteyne by our mortal enemies  
the Christians, whereof we haue, at this present, example of two  
Christian traytors of this citie, whiche haue disclosed to the  
Portugales al our secretes, and therefore we make most humble  
petition

petition vnto you to take of vs a hundred peeces of golde, to commaund them to be slayne. When the kyng of *Gioghi* hearde these wordes, he consented to theyr petition, and forthwith appoynted two hundred men to committe the murder: And that they might be the lesse suspected of the Christians, meanyng soddenly to kyll them in theyr house, came by tenne and tenne as though they came to demaunde theyr accustomed rewarde. But when the Christians sawe so great a company assembled about theyr house, they suspected that they sought somewhat elles then theyr rewarde or offerpng, and therefore incontinent takyng theyr weapons, they fought so manfully at the wyndowes and doores of theyr house, that they slue syxe men and woounded fourtie. But at the length, some of *h Gioghi*, shot at them certaine iron arrowes out of crosse bowes, with the which they were both slayne, the one beyng soe wounded in the head, & the other in the bodie. As soone as they sawe them fall downe, they cutte theyr throttes: and takyng the hotte blood in the palmes of theyr handes, drunke it vp, with continuellous wordes agaynst the Christians. After this murder, the concubine of *Iohn Maria* came to *Canonor*, with her young sonne, whom I bought of her for eyght peeces of golde: and causyng hym to be baptyfied, named hym *Laurence*, because it was saint *Laurence* daye: But within a peere after, he dyed of the frenche poxe, whiche disease had then disperfed almost throught all the worlde. For I haue seene many infected with it foure hundred myles beyonde *Calecut*. They call it *Pua*. And they affyrme that this disease was neuer seene there past xlii. peeres before. It is there more greuous and outrageous then with vs.

The death of  
*Iohn Maria*.  
and *Peter Ans*  
tonpe.

The frenche  
poxe.

Of the Nauie of the citie of *Calecut*, and of the memorable conflict betweene the Christians and Mahumetans, In the whiche the Portugales with incredible valiantnesse gaue theyr enemies the ouerthrowe. And howe the

kyng of *Canonor* reioyced at their victorie.

Cap. 38.

In the peere of our Lorde .1506. the fourth daye of March, worde was brought vs of the death of the sayde Christians. The same daye, from the cities of *Calecut*, *Pauan*, *Capagot*, *Pandaram*, & *Trompatam*, departed a great nauie of two hundred and

The nauie of  
the kyng of *Calecut*  
agaynst  
the Portugales.

eyght



The Mahu-  
metan soldiers.

eyght shippes, of the whiche fourescore and foure were great  
shippes, or shippes of burden, and the rest were dyuen with  
Dres, after the maner of Foystes, whiche they call *Parao*. The  
Maue was manned with in maner innumerable Mahumetans,  
shewyng them selues very braue in apparel of purple sylke  
and Bombasine, with also theyr hygh and sharpe cappes, after  
theyr maner, of the same colour, lnyed with sylke: wearyng also  
on theyr armes many bracelettes, and on theyr handes hadde  
gloues, embzodered & garnyshe with diuers kyndes of woikes:  
for weapons, they had Turky bowes, swoordes, launces, pelses,  
and all sortes of gunnes, after our maner. When we sawe theyr  
Maue procedyng in order, and well instructed, it seemed farre  
of lyke a wood, the mastes presentyng the similitude of trees:  
Whiche thyng seemed so litle to deterre vs, that we were in sure  
beleefe, that our God and Chyriste woulde geue vs the victorie a-  
gaynst the blasphemers of his holy name, the Idolatours and  
Saracens, old enemies of our religion. And therfore the valiant  
knight and gouernour, the sonne of the honorable lord *Don Fran-  
cisco Dalmeda*, viceroy of *India*, who had there the supream gou-  
uernement of twelue shippes, with the assistaunce of the Admi-  
rall of the Maue, when he sawe the great force of the enemye,  
myndfull of his accustomed vertue, with sounde of trumpet as-  
sembled all the souldiers, and spake to them in this maner. My  
deare frendes, and brethzen in one God, and one fayth of Iesus  
Chyriste, nowe is the tyme come when you ought to remember,  
that as Iesus Chyriste spared not, neyther feared to gyue his pre-  
cious body to death for our sakes: euen so, except we wyl shewe  
our selues most unkynde, and unworthy so great grace of God,  
it shalbe our ducties to spende our liues in the defence of his glo-  
rie, and our holy fayth, assuring our selues of the victorie against  
these dogges, hateful to God, & progenie of the deuyl. Now ther-  
fore syghtyng in his name, & vnder the banner of his holy crosse,  
shew your selues manfull & valiant: for nowe is in you the pow-  
wer to geat eternal fame, in mainreynyng the quarel of our sau-  
our. Therefore with me, lyfityng by your hartes to God, & your  
armes with force & courage, let vs gyue the onset on these dogs.  
When the gouernour had sayd these wordes, the priest went vp  
to the hyghest part of the ship, & holdyng in his hand y picture of  
Chyriste

The oration of  
the gouernour  
to the Christian  
soldiers.

Christ naped on the crosse, shewed it vnto the souldiers, exhortyng them to remember the commaundementes of God, and the holy sayth and baptisme whereby they were consecrated to God, puttyng no doubt in the forgeuenesse of theyr sinnes, dying in so godly a quarell : and then blessing them, with inuocation of the name of God, he pronounced the sentence of absolution and forgeuenesse of theyr sinnes. The exhortation of the prest, so moued the hartes of all men, that the teares ranne from our eyes for ioy & great desire we had to die in y<sup>e</sup> quarell. In the meane time the nauye of the Mahumetans made sayle towarde vs. The same daye our Admirall with two foyles made towarde them, & passyng betweene two of theyr greatest shypes, discharged his ordinance on both sydes : whiche the Admirall dyd, to proue the strength of those shypes, which they chiefly esteeme, and trust most vnto : But this daye was nothyng done woorth y<sup>e</sup> memozye. The day folowynge, the Mahumetans with full sayles dreyne neare the citie of *Canonor*, and sent vs woorde by a messenger, that if we woulde permytte them to go whither they woulde, they woulde not haue to do with vs. Our Admirall answered, that the Christians coulde not so forgette the periurie of the Mahumetans, in violatyng theyr faith and promyse made by common consent, when they woulde not suffer the Christians to passe that way, but contrary to theyr sayth and promyse slue .xviii. Christians, and robbed them of foure thousande pecces of goide : and therefore badde them passe further if they durst, and they shoulde well knowe of what reputation and spirite the Christians are. Then sayde the Mahumetans, Mahumet wyll defende vs, and confounde the Christians : and with those woordes, assaulted vs all at once with incredible furie, thynkyng to haue passed throughe, haupyng no further to sayle then .x. myles from the shore. But our Admiral of purpose suffered the enemies to come nearer vntyl they were ryght oueragainst y<sup>e</sup> citie of *Canonor*, meynyng there to set on them with all his force, that the kyng of *Canonor* beholdyng the conflict, myght be witnesse of the valiantnesse of the Christians. Then when the trumpetter of the Admirals ship sounded the battayle, and gaue the signe, incontinent he assaulted two of theyr greatest shypes.

The nauie of the Mahumetans.

The Admirall of the Christians.

The quarell and occasion of the warre.

The Mahumetans gaue the onlet.

Here.

Heere I am not able to expresse the exceeding noyse of theyr  
 Drummes, Trumpets, Tambatels, and other such innumera-  
 ble, which they vse in this case. The Admirall hym selfe, in ma-  
 ner contemnyng all theyr meane shippes, passed through theyr  
 nauie, and inuaded one of theyr greatest shippes, castyng thereon  
 chaynes and grasples, to fyght with them at hande strokes: but  
 they cast of the chaynes thysle, yet the fourth tyme the chaynes  
 tooke such holde, that the Christians entred into the ship, where  
 they made such hauocke and slaughter, that all the Dahumetans  
 of that shippe (which were sire hundred in number) were slayne,  
 insomuche that there was not one left alpyue to tell newes. The  
 Admirall encouraged by this victorie, inuaded another of theyr  
 great shippes, whiche had chayned it selfe with a Foyst of the  
 Christians, where was also a great conflict, in the whiche were  
 slayne aboue fyue hundred Dahumetans, and theyr ship sunke.  
 The Dahumetans discouraged by this defeate, assaulted our  
 twelue Foystes with al theyr force, and carped them away. But  
 heere the manhood and valiantnesse of *Iohn Seranus*, the captaine  
 of the Galley, shewed it selfe, who only with one Gally made  
 suche a slaughter among the Dahumetans, that it may seeme  
 incredible: for he so fiercely inuaded them that had carped away  
 the Foystes, that he recovered them all, & sunke two other of the  
 Dahumetan shippes. In these warres, God of his grace so  
 prospered the Christians, that few of them were slayne, but ma-  
 ny wounded. The conflict continued from moorning, vntyl the  
 darkenesse of the nyght made an ende of the battayle. I may not  
 heere forgeat to speake of the marueylous aduenture and God-  
 ly zeale of *Simon Martin*, captayne of one of our shippes: For  
 it so chaunced, that the Brigantine in the which I was, depat-  
 tyng somewhat from our nauie, gaue occasion to our enemies to  
 pursue vs, for incontinent foure of the Dahumetan shippes as-  
 sayled vs, and put vs to much trouble, insomuch that .xv. Da-  
 humetans had nowe entred into our Brigantine, and we were  
 constrained to flee to the Houpe, as to the safest place: But the  
 valiant captayne *Simon Martin*, sepyng the daunger that we were  
 in, and that the Dahumetans were entred into our Brigantine,  
 leapt into it fiercely, and callyng vpon the name of Iesus Christ,  
 fought so valiauntly, that he slue sire of the Dahumetans: wher-  
 by

The valiant-  
nesse of the Ad-  
mirall.

A great slaugh-  
ter of the ma-  
hometans.

The valiant-  
nesse of *Iohn*  
*Seranus*.

Howe Chris-  
tians slayne.

The valiant-  
nesse of *Simon*  
*Martin*.

by we, beyng encouraged, assisted hym in such sort, that the Mahumetans cast them selues into the sea, where some were drowned, & some escaped by swimmyng. Therfore when the Mahumetans knewe þe the Christians had the victorie, they sent .iiii. other Foisttes to helpe the first. But when the captayne of our Brigantine sawe this, he tooke certayne emptie Tubbes, in the whiche gunne powder had ben kepte before, and stoppyng them with flaxe, placed them in such sort, that they seemed far of, like peeces of great artillerie: then laying a little gun powder by the flaxe, and holding a fyre sticke in his hand, as though he would put fire to the Gunne, the Mahumetans thinking that it had ben a gunne in deede, were thereby put in such feare, that they departed. The Admirall yet further pursuing the enemyes, gaue them an other great ouerthrow, and tooke seuen of theyr Foisttes, laden with all sortes of merchandies, and soonke tenne other with the shotte of great artillerie, of the whiche one was laden with Elephantes. Therfore when the Mahumetans sawe the sea now almost couered with the bodie of their slaine men, and their chiefe shippes some taken, some soonke, & some spoiled, were out of all hope to recouer, & therfore saued them selues by fleeing. But the Christians, seeing yet hope of further victorie, and the Mahumetans so discouraged, thought it not best to leaue them so, but rather vpon such prosperous successe, to take the oportunitie, and utterly to destroy them: & therfore the Admiral, seeing his men ioyfull of the victorie, and desirous to pursue the enemye, folowed the Mahumetans, and gaue them a newe battayle, whiche lasted all day and all nyght, whilest the Christians in the nyght tyme flue them euen in theyr fleeing, & soonke almost all their shippes. In the meane tyme certayne of our Foisttes sawe a shyppe of burden of the enemye, wanderyng out of the way, and made sayle thither with all hast. But the enemies in short space seeing them selues ouermatched, hurled all their cariages into the sea, and trusting to swimmyng (wherein they are most experte) caste them selues after. But our men folowed them euen to the shore, with launces, cros bowes, & stones, so killing them as they swamme, that the sea was coloured and polluted with their blood. Yet by swimmyng many escaped, by estimation about the number of two hundred, for they are in youth so brought vp in swimmyng, that

A Stratageme.

Tenne Mahumetan shippes soonke with the shot of great artillerie.

The Christians had the victorie

An other great conflict.

The Mahumetans slayne in swimmyng.

The Mahumetans experte in swimmyng.



they swamme in the sea almost twentie myles, oftentimes so stayng vnder the water, and remainyng there so long, that they deceyued our sight: for sometymes we thought that they were soonke, and sometyme agayne seeyng them flete on the water, it so troubled our sense, that we thought we had seene some phantasie or vision: but they were in maner all destroyed by one mischaunce or an other, and especially a great number in the great shippes which were soonke by shot of the great artillerie. The day folowynge, the Admirall sent certayne Brigantines and Gallies to the shore, to number the dead bodie, whiche the sea had caste by: they were founde to be about thre thousande, besyde them also which the sea had deuoured. The kyng of Canonor, beholdyng all these thynges, was greatly in loue with the Christians, and commended their valiauntnesse and vertue, and not vnwoorthily. For to speake that I haue seene, I haue ben in many soze warres, yet neuer sawe I moze valiant men, then the Portugales here shewed them selues to be.

But when we thought that we had nowe made an ende of these Tragicdies, we had in maner a woofse to begyn. For it so chaunced, that in fewe dayes after, the kyng of Canonor, who fauoured vs, dyed: In whose place succeeded an other mortall enemye to the Christians, and friende to the kyng of Calcut, by whose helpe and rycheffe, hee was aduanced to the kyngdome of Canonor. He therefore assembled his power to make newe warre agaynst the Christians, with great expedition and haste, because he supposed that a great parte of theyr munitions was nowe wasted, and they also soze weerped, and for the most parte wounded. And to further his attempte, the kyng of Calcut sent him xxiii. peeces of great artillerie. This warre beganne the seventh day of Aprill, and continued vntill the xx. of August, before all thynges were pacified. It were heere to long to declare howe in these warres also the Christians behaued them selues manfully agaynst the Mahumetans, which neuer encountred with them fewer then fyue or sixe and twentie thousande in number, haupyng also with them a hundred and fourtie peeces of artillerie, and were armed after the maner of the inhabitauntes of Calcut: but the Christians with har-

nesse

The kyng of Canonor.

The valiantnesse of the Portugales.

The death of the kyng of Canonor.

A newe expedition agaynst the Christians.

Long warres.

Great oddes. The Mahumetans artillerie.

nesse after our maner.

These Infidels vse this order in theyr warres . They di-  
 uide theyr army into many wynges, euery wyng conteynyng The order of  
the Mahumetans Campe.  
 the number of two or thre thousande men, and only one wyng  
 proceedeth to the battayle, the reste attendyng what ende or  
 successe they haue, before they attempt any further . But whi-  
 lest these wynges are nowe marchyng to ioyne in battayle, it  
 passeth all imagination to thynke, with howe great a noyse of  
 innumerrall muscail instrumentes, after theyr maner, they fill Instrumentes.  
 the eares of all the army, to encourage them to fyght, while  
 in the meane season also, a great number runneth before the  
 army with marueplous flames of artificiaall fyres : and in fine,  
 gyue the onfette with suche outragious furie and outcry, that Outragious  
out crye.  
 two thousande of them were able to feare tenne thousande that  
 had no experience of these thynges . But see the goodnesse of  
 God, who neuer forsaketh them that beleue faythfully in his  
 holy religion . Euen nowe in the extremitie of these troubles,  
 our men beyng in maner ouercharged with the multitude of  
 theyr enemies, and long warres, sodayne newes was brought The arryuyng  
of a newe flae  
me of Portugales.  
 that a newe nauie of Portugales was arryued at Canmor by the  
 conducte of the valiant knyght Don Tristandè Cugna: Whom  
 we immediately aduertysed with howe greuous warres wee  
 were oppressed . Who incontinent sent vs, in certayne Barkes,  
 thre hundred valiaunt Souldiours, well armed with harnesse,  
 after the maner of the Christians . When wee sawe these,  
 we recouered our spirites, in suche sorte, that if our Admirall  
 woulde haue permitted, we woulde haue burnt the citie of  
 Canmor . But when the Mahumetans vnderstoode the newe  
 succours that we had, all discouraged in mynde, they sought all  
 meanes to make peace with the Christians, and assigned  
 one named Mamalmaricar, a man of great ryches and wyle-  
 dome among them, to bee intermediatour, and to make the  
 conditions of peace . Hee therefore vnder safe conducte, came  
 to vs to conuision of the matter. We told him, that we coulde  
 make no peace without the consent of the Viceroie, who  
 was then in the citie of Cucin . The Admirall thoughte  
 it beste not to contempne the conditions of peace, for  
 Iph.ii. that

for that durynge the tyme of the warres, they coulde not sende theyr shippes laden with merchaundies into *Portugale*, and therefore by the consent of the *Viceroye*, the peace was concluded.

The peace concluded.

A pleasant fable.

Salut Christopher, the Christian Giant.

The enemies confesse that God gaue the victorie.

Simple and ignorant people.

Messis multa, sed operarii pauci. &c.

The Masse.

But nowe, to myngle some delight with these sorowes, you shal heare a pleasant fable woorthie to be put in memorie. Therefore all thinges beyng pacified, as I walked in the citie of *Canon*, I met with certayne merchantes *Idolators*, with whom I was acquainted before the warres, who in theyr language sayde thus vnto me, Are you our friende? Yea sayde I. Then we pray you in the way of friendship, shewe vs that *Christian* which is muche hygher and stronger then any other of the *Christians*, and kylled in maner every day about twentie of the *Dahumetans*, and resisted the dartes of fiftie *Naeros* (these are of the garde) and escaped without hurte? I answered, that that *Christian* was not nowe in the citie, but was gone to *Cucin* to the *Viceroye*. But when I better considered the matter, I sayde thus vnto them, Are you my friendes? Yea, we are, sayde they. Then sayde I, That souldier that fought so valiantly in the battayle, was no *Portugale*. Then sayde they: Of what countrey was he then? I answered agayne, that he was the God of the *Portugales*, and the great God of all the world. Then sayde they, Verily you speake the trueth. For we heard the *Dahumetans* say, that it was not the *Portugales*, but the *Portugales* God, that gaue them the ouerthrowe, and therefore we thynke your God to bee better then theyrs, although we know him not: And by this meanes it was byited ouer all the countrey, that the *Dahumetans* were overcome rather by the assistance of God, then by the strength of men. For these people are very simple and ignorant, and astonysed in maner at euery thyng. For some when they sawe one of our company haupng a little bell in his hande, and hearde the noyse of the bell when he moued his hand, and no noyse when he set it downe, they tooke it for a myracle, saying one to an other: doubtlesse theyr God is the greatest God, for when they touche the bell, it speaketh, and when they touche it not, it sayeth nothyng. They tooke pleasure and admiration to beholde the solemnities of the Masse.

And

And when the priest lysted by the holy bread or host, I sayde vnto them, beholde here the God of the Portugales, and of all the worlde . Then sayde they, You say truly: but we can not perceyue it . This haue I sayde, that you may hereby knowe what simple and ignozant people these are: yet are they very great inchaunters, and can inchaunte Serpentes, whose poyson is so strong, that they kyll only with touchyng . They are also of incredible agilitie, and therefore excell in vauyng, leapyng, runnyng, swymmyng, tumblyng, walkyng on ropes, and such other exercises of lyghtnesse and agilitie.

No more can wyser men then they.

Inchaunters, and of great agilitie.

The seuenth booke, entreating of the viage or Nauigation of Ethiopia. Cap. I.

They that will take vppon them to wyte any hystorie, haue neede to beare well in memozie what they haue promysed and taken in hande, lest for theyr paynes and well meanning, they be rewarde with shame and rebuke, and therefore whereas in the beginnyng of this booke, I promysed to wyte of the Nauigation of *Ethiope*, I will with the description of this biage, make an ende of my long traueyle, and speake of such thinges as I sawe there by the way, in my returne from *India* into my long desired countrey, in the company of the *Portugales*.

Of diuers and many Ilandes of *Ethiope*. Cap. 2.

Therefore the seuenth day of December, we directed our iourney towarde *Ethiope*, trauesing syst the great gulfes, and saylyng foure hundred myles, came to an Ilande named *Monzambrich*, vnder the dominion of the kyng of *Portugale* . But before we arryued there, we sawe by the way many townes parteining to the *Portugales*, and also many strong fortresses in the kyngdomes of *Melinda* and *Mombaza* . The kyng of *Portugale*, hath also certayne fortresses in *Monzambrich* and *Zaphala*.

The Ilande of *Monzambrich*.

*Melinda*.

The kyng of *Portugales* doth minion in *Ethiopia*.

Whh.iii.

But



The conquestes  
of *Tristan de*  
*Cugna.*

*Sacutara.*

*Cumeris.*

*Pende.*

But if I should here speake of the memorable factes of the valiant knyght *Tristan de Cugna*, at his returne from India, I should take in hande a thyng farre aboue my reache: beyng suche, as deserue rather the commendations of *Homer* & *Virgil*, for he inuaded and subdued the great cities of *Gogia*, *Pati*, and *Crana*, with also the goodly Ilande of *Sacutara*, where the kyng of *Portugale* hath erected certayne fortresses, and omit also to speake of many other Ilandes whiche we sawe in the way: as the Ilande of *Cumeris*, and sixe other which beare plentie of ginger, suger, a dyuers other goodly frutes, and abundance of fleshe: also the most fruitfull Iland of *Pende*, likewise subiect to the kyng of *Portugale*.

Of the Ilande of *Monzambrich*, and the inhabitantes thereof. Cap.3.

*Zaphala.*

*Golde.*

Blacke *Nahumetans.*

*Troglodites.*  
*Ethiopes.*

**T**his Ilande (as we haue sayde) is subiecte to the kyng of *Portugale*, as is also *Zaphala*. From the Ilande of *Monzambrich*, is brought much golde and cyle, but is brought thither from the firme lande. The Ilande is not bygge, and is inhabited with blacke *Nahumetans*, luyng in maner in necessitie of all thinges, yet hath it a commodious porte. They haue no corne but that is brought from the continent, where also we went alande to see the countrey, where we sawe nothyng but a vagabunde and rascall kynde of blacke men, coueryng only theyr priuities with leaues of trees, and are besyde naked, and the women in lyke maner. Theyr lyppes are two fingers thicke, theyr fozeheades very large, theyr teeth great, and as white as snow. They are fearefull at the sight of euery thyng, and especially when they see armed men. Therefore seeing theyr fearefulnesse, & knowing them to be without weapons that can doe any great hurte, only sixe of vs well armed, bearyng also with vs *Hargabuses*, and hauyng in our companie a blacke slaue that somewhat knewe the countrey, we began to enter further into the lande: and when we had gone forwarde one dayes iourney, we founde many heardes of *Elephantes*. Here the slaue that was our gypde, gaue vs counsaile to take fyrebrandes in our handes, bycause these beastes feare fyre aboue all thinges.

Heardes of  
*Elephantes.*  
*Elephantes* are  
afraide of fyre.

But

But we once chaunced to fynde thre Female Elephants, which had very lately brought forth theyr Calues, and therefore feared not the fyre : but without all feare, folowed vs so farre, that we were fayne to flee to a mountayne to saue vs from the beastes. When we had entred about tenne myles into the land, we found a certayne denne on the syde of a mountayne, where some of the blacke inhabitauntes lurked . These spake so confoundedly and chatteringly lyke Apes, that I am not able to expresse theyr manner of speche : Yet to goe the nearest thereto that I can, theyr speech is lykeliest to the euill fauored voyce which the Puleters of Sicilia vse when they dyue theyr Pules: and suche manner of blabbering vse these people in theyr speache . Where the Pilot of the shyppe asked vs if wee woulde buye any kyne, saying, that here we should haue them good cheape . But we, thinking that eyther he had mocked vs, or that agreeing with the inhabitauntes (whom he knewe before) he woulde haue deceyued vs of our money and wares, sayde that we had no money . Then sayde he vnto vs, These people desire nothyng lesse then money, haupng muche more plentie of golde then we haue, which is founde not farre hence . Then sayde we to him, What desyre they then ? They loue (sayde he) despicable thynges, and of small value: as pynnes, knyues, spylers, looking Glasses, Hawkes belles, bagges, or boxes, to keepe theyr golde in, copper Rynghes, tangelinges to hang at theyr Tymberelles, bosses, laces, boches, copper chaynes, carkenettes, braselettes, and suche other tryffles to trymme theyr wyues and children . We answered, that we were content to gyue them suche wares for theyr kyne, if they woulde byng them to the nexte mountayne . Then sayde our Pilot agayne, They will byng them with vs to the mountayne: but no further in any conditi- on : Therefore speake what you will gyue . Then one of our companions sayde, that he had a bosse of grauen copper, and also a little bell . But I, because I had no suche merchaundies, yet beyng desirous to eate fleshe, sayde that I woulde sell one of my Herties for kyne . Then sayde the Pilot, Let mee alone with the matter . Then calling vnto him fyue or sixe of the Inhabitauntes, he shewed them our goodly Jewelles, and demaunded for them thre hundred kyne.

An Appothe  
language.

Such merchaun-  
dies for golde.

Kyne very  
good cheape.

Troglodites.

Cabo de Buena  
Speranza.  
The Ilande of  
Saint Laurence  
of  
Madagascar.

The king of  
Portugale.

The Christian  
religion spread  
both in India.

But the inhabitantes, not muche differing from beastes, made signes that they would gyue only syctiene. In syne, we agreed, yet suspectyng some deceite, neuerthelesse they kept theyr promise, and sent vs syctiene kyne by two of theyr companions. We were scarcely departed, but we hearde a noyse and tumulte in theyr denues, and were partly afrayde lest these Troglodites woulde folowe vs, and therefore leauyng our kyne, we tooke vs to our weapons. But they made signes vnto vs to feare nothing. Then our pilot tolde vs, that their tumulte was only which of them should haue the bosse of copper. Then recouering our kyne, we droue them forward to the toppe of the mountaine, and there dismissed the two blacke slaues that came with them. Whyle wee were thus dzyuyng our kyne by the syde of a little wood, we met agayne with the Elephantes, whereof beyng in great feare, we forsooke our kyne, and trusted to our feete. Therefore departyng from hence, we returned to the Ilande, where makyng prouision for our vyage, we sayled toward the Cape, called *Caput Bone Spei*, passyng the Ilande of Sainte Laurence (otherwyle named *Madagascar*) beyng fourescore leagues distant from the nearest continent or firme land. I suppose that in shorte tyme the kyng of Portugale will be Lorde of this Ilande: For hauyng nowe burned and destroyed many villages and townes of the Ilande, his name is fearefull among them. And as farre as I can coniecture by my peregrinations of the worlde (especially of *India* and *Ethiopia*) I thynke that the kyng of Portugale, if hee continue as he hath begunne, is lyke to bee the rycheest kyng in the worlde, and doubtlesse not vnwoorthily for the dignitie and godly zeale of so noble a prince, as by whose meanes the Christian fayth is daily greatly increased. For it is certayne that in *India*, and especially in the citie of *Cucin*, where the *Niceroye* remayneth, euery holy day, tenne or twelue Idolaters or *Mahumetans* are professed to our religion, whereby we may conceiue good hope, that in tyme our fayth shall there bee greatly enlarged by the grace of God, who hath there gyuen suche supernaturall victories to the Christians, and therefore all professors of Christes holy name, ought to pray to almyghtie God to assyst hym in so godly an enterpryse.

Of the Cape called Caput Boneæ Spei.  
That is, the Cape of good  
hope. Cap. 4.

**D**Epartying from the Cape named *Caput Boneæ Spei*, when we had now sayled aboute two hundred myles, there rose suddenly a tempest with contrarye wynde. The cause whereof was, that we had on the lesse hande the Ilande of Saint Laurence, and many other litle Ilandes, from whence bloweth for the most part a great gale of wynde. And therefore for the space of seven dayes, beyng here daungerously tossed to and fro by the rages of the sea and wynde, at the length we escaped, by the grace of God. But proceeding about two hundred leagues, a newe tempest rysing so scattred our shippes in the space of fyve dayes, that we mette not togeather agayne vntyll we arryued at Lixburne in Portugale. I was in the shyppe of Barthelmewe, a Florentine, citizen of Lixburne. The shyppe was named Saint Vincent, a vessell of exceeding capacite, & laden with seven thousande tonnes of all sortes of spyes. In the way, we passed also by an other Iland, named the Iland of saint Helen, where we sawe certayne fyshes of suche enoyme and monstrous byggenesse, that one of them was as bygge as a great house. When they ryse aboue the water, they yane or gape so wyde, that y bypper sawe couereth al the forehead, as it were a souldier in shynnyng harness. Agayne when they swimme on the bynne of the water, the forehead is seene the breadth of three great paces. And when they swimme in the sea, they so trouble the water, and come so neare the shyps, that we were fayne to discharge al our artillarye to dypne them away. Shortly after we founde an Ilande, named the Ilande of Ascension, where we sawe many fowles, about the byggenesse of our Duckes, so symple, without suspition or feare, that we tooke them with our handes: but shortly after they were taken, they shewed an incredible fiercenesse. I thynke verpty that they neuer sawe any man before, they so behelde vs before they were

An exceeding great shyppe and great ryches of spyes.

Great Whales fyshes.

The Ilande of Ascension.



were taken, and were as still as if they had ben assynghed : For in that Ilande we sawe no luyng creature, saue onely innumerable fshes, and the sayd byrdes . After we had passed this Ilande many dayes sayling, as though we were nowe come to our owne worlde, the North starre, and guardions of our maryners, appeared vnto vs . And here oportunitie serueth well, to confute the opinton of them that thynke that men maye not sayle in regions subiect to the pole Antartike or south pole, by the guide of the north starre . For it is certayne, that the Portugales sayle by the guyde of the north starres, although they be viterly out of syght by the eleuation of the pole Antartike . Yet do they sometymes refreche the vertue of the needle, with the stone whiche euer naturally respecteth the north pole . A fewe dayes after, we arryued at the sayre region, where are scene many Ilandes, named the Ilandes of *Astures*, so named for the multitude of thole Egles whiche we commonly call *Astures* . These Ilandes are diuersely named : for some are named *Pici*, *Martij*, some, *De Coruo* : also *De Floribus*, *Sancti Georgij*, *Gratiosa*, and *Feial*. Departyng from hence, we came to the Ilande of *Tertiera*, where we remainned two dayes . All these Ilandes are marueylous fruitefull, and haue plentie of all thynges necessary for mans lyfe . Departyng from hence, in seuen dayes sayling, we came to y goodly cite of *Luxburne*, or *Vlsbona* in Portugale . At my comyng thither, I was brought to the kynges presence, whose handes kissing with most humble reuerence, I thanked his maiestie for the great fauour I had found at the hands of his subiectes and officers in *India* . He entertayned me most graciously in his court, vntyll I had informed hym of all thynges whiche I had obserued in my voyage to *India* . A fewe dayes after, I shewed his hyghnesse the letters patentes whereby his Licutenant the *Viceroye* of *India*, gaue me the order of knyghthod, despyng his maiestie to confyrme the same by his great seale : which my peticion, he immediatly graunted . And thus departing from thence with the kynges pasporte and safe conduct, at the length after these my long and great trauayles and dangers, I came to my long desyred and natie countrey, the cite of *Rome*, by the grace of God, to whom be all honour and glory .

Sayling by the north starre in regions beneath the Equinoctiall lyne.

Of the hygher East India, called India  
Tercera, or Treciera,



In this India, whiche the portugales call Tercera, are very great kyngdomes: as the kyngdomes of Bengala, Pegu, Berma, Erancangui, Dausian, Capelam, and the great kyngdome of Malacha, called of the olde wyters *Aurea Chersonesus*, whose chiefe citie is also called *Malacha*, and was in olde tyme named *Tachola*. Under this kyngdome are infinite Ilandes called *Maluche*, whereof the principall are these. *Iana* the greater, *Iana* the lesse, *Polagua*, *Mendana*, *Cuba*, *Cailon*, *Huban*, *Bur*, *Tenado*, *Anbon*, and *Gilolo*, with infinite other. On the Southwest part from *Malacha*, is the great Ilande of *Samotra*, called in olde tyme *Taprobana*, in the whiche are the kyngdomes of *Pedir*, *Biraen*, *Pazer*, *Ardagni*, and *Ham*. This Iland, & al the other called *Maluche*, bring forth great quantitie of Cloues, Cinamome, Nuttemegges, Baces, and all other kyndes of spycer, except Pepper, whiche groweth in the prouince of *Calecut*, and the Ilande of *Ceilam*. All these sortes of spicers are carped to *Malacha* to be solde. But the greatest part of them is carped to *Cathay* and *China*: and from thence to the North partes of *Tartarie*. This kyngdome of *China*, is very great, and was in olde tyme called *Sina*. Here is founde great plentie of precious stones. The people are very subtil and ryche. They are al apparellled eyther in sylke or cloth, or vestures of other woorkemanhyppe, and are of good ciuilitie. They do not gladly permit the Portugales or other straungers to trafficke in theyr kyngdome: whose most famous place vpon the sea syde, is named *Cantan*, and the sea *Machiam*, called of the olde wyters, the sea of *Sina*.

*Malacha.*

*Tachola.*

The Ilandes of *Malucha.*

The Ilande of *Samotra.*

*Spices.*

*Calecut.*

*Ceilam.*

*Cathay.*

*China.*

Precious stones.  
*Sylke.*

*Cantan.*  
Of



Of the prices of precious stones and Spices, with theyr weightes and measures, as they are accustomed to be solde both of the Moores and the gentyles:

And of the places where they growe.

**F**oasmuche as in dyuers places of this historie, mention is made of precious stones, I haue thought good to declare somewhat aswell of theyr prices, as of the places of theyr generation, that we may not utterly be ignorant of the thynges whiche we so greatly esteeme, and buie so deare.

### Of the Rubie.

**T**he Rubies growe in *India*, and are founde for the most parte in a ryuer named *Pegu*. These are of the best kynde and finest, which they of the lande of *Malabor* call *Nunpu-clo*. and are well solde, if they be sayre and cleane without spotted. The Indians, to knowe theyr finenesse, put them vpon theyr tongues, comptyng that to be best that is couldest and most harde. And to see theyr finenesse: they take them vp with a peece of ware by the sharpest poynt, and lookyng agaynst the lycht, espie in them euery small spot or flake. They are also founde in certayne deepe fosses or pittes, whiche are made in mountaynes that are beyonde the sayde ryuer. They are scoured and made cleane in the countrey of *Pegu*: yet can they not square and polyshe them, but for this purpose sende them to diuers other countreys, & especially to *Palcacate*, *Narsinga*, *Calecut*, and the region of *Malabor*, where are many cunnyng *Lapidaries*.

And to geue you intelligence of the value of these stones, ye shall vnderstande that this woorde *Fanan*, signifieth a weyght, somewhat moxe then two of our Carattes: and .xi. *Fanans* and a quarter, is one *Mitigal*: and .vi. *Mitigals* and a halfe, make one vnce. This *Fanan*, is also a kynde of mony whiche is in value one ryall of syluer, and therefore after this accompte I say that.

Eygth fine Rubies of the weyght of one *Fanan* (which are in all, about two carattes) are in value.

Foure Rubies that wey one *Fanan*, are worth.

Two that wey one *Fanan*.

*Fanan*.x. which is one crowne of golde.

*Fanan*.xl.

One



## The prices of precious stones

|                                                        |                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| One that weyeth thre quarters of one <i>Fanan</i> .    | <i>Fanan</i> . 30.   |
| One that weyeth one <i>Fanan</i> .                     | <i>Fanan</i> . 50.   |
| One that weyeth one <i>Fanan</i> and a quarter.        | <i>Fanan</i> . 65.   |
| One that weyeth one <i>Fanan</i> and a halfe.          | <i>Fanan</i> . 100.  |
| One that weyeth one <i>Fanan</i> and thre quarters.    | <i>Fanan</i> . 150.  |
| One that weyeth two <i>Fanans</i> .                    | <i>Fanan</i> . 200.  |
| One that weyeth two <i>Fanans</i> and a quarter.       | <i>Fanan</i> . 250.  |
| One that weyeth two <i>Fanans</i> and a halfe.         | <i>Fanan</i> . 300.  |
| One that weyeth two <i>Fanans</i> and thre quarters.   | <i>Fanan</i> . 350.  |
| Of thre <i>Fanans</i> .                                | <i>Fanan</i> . 400.  |
| Of thre and a quarter.                                 | <i>Fanan</i> . 500.  |
| Of thre and a halfe.                                   | <i>Fanan</i> . 550.  |
| Of thre and thre quarters.                             | <i>Fanan</i> . 600.  |
| Of thre and thre quarters and a halfe.                 | <i>Fanan</i> . 630.  |
| Of foure <i>Fanans</i> .                               | <i>Fanan</i> . 660.  |
| Of foure and a quarter.                                | <i>Fanan</i> . 700.  |
| Of foure and a halfe.                                  | <i>Fanan</i> . 800.  |
| Of fyue <i>Fanans</i> .                                | <i>Fanan</i> . 1000. |
| Of fyue and a halfe.                                   | <i>Fanan</i> . 1200. |
| Of sixe <i>Fanans</i> , which are about twelue Carats. | <i>Fanan</i> . 1500. |

which make a hundred and fiftie crownes of golde. And these are commonly the prices of perfect Rubies. But suche as are not perfect, and haue any spotted in them, or are not of good colour, are of lesse price, accordyng to the arbitrement and estimation of the buyer.

Of the Rubies which growe in the Iland of Zeilam.

**I**n the Ilande of Zeilam, beyng in the seconde India, are founde many Rubies, whiche the Indians name *Manecas*, the greatest part wherof do not arryue to the perfection of the other aforesayde in colour, because they are redde, as though they were washed, and of fleshy colour, yet are they very colde and harde. The perfectest of them are greatly esteemed among the people of the Ilande, and are reserved onely for the kyng hym selfe, yf they be of any great quantitie. When his Jewellers fynde any bygge peece of this Rocke of the best kynde, they put it in fyre for the space of certayne houres: whiche yf it come out of the fyre uncorrupte, it becommeth

of

of the colour of a burnyng cole, and was therefore called of the Greekes, *Anthrax*, whiche signifyeth a burnyng cole. The same that the greekes call *Anthrax*, the Latines call *Carbunculus*. These they greatly esteeme. When the kyng of *Narsinga* can get any of them, he causeth a fyne hole to be boored in the vndermost part of them, to the myddest, and suffereth none of them to passe out of his realme, especially if they haue ben tryed by the sayde prooffe. These are of greater value then the other of *Pegu*, if they be in theyr naturall perfection and cleanness.

Of these, one that wayeth a Carratte (whiche is halfe a Fanan) is woorth in *Calcut*.

One of two Carattes.

Of three Carattes.

Of three Carattes and a halfe

Of foure Carattes.

Of foure Carattes and a halfe.

Of fyue Carattes.

Of fyue Carattes and a halfe.

Of syxe Carattes.

Of syxe Carattes and a halfe.

Of seuen Carattes.

Of seuen Carattes and a halfe.

One of .viii. Carattes, that hath ben well

prooued in the fyre, is woorth

Of .viii. Carattes and a halfe.

One sicke of tenne Carattes.

One of .x. Carattes and a halfe.

Of .xii. Carattes.

Of .xiii. Carattes.

Of .xvi. Carattes.

Fanan. 30

Fanan. 65

Fanan. 150

Fanan. 200

Fanan. 300

Fanan. 350

Fanan. 400

Fanan. 450

Fanan. 530

Fanan. 560

Fanan. 630

Fanan. 660

Fanan. 800

Fanan. 900

Fanan. 1300

Fanan. 1600

Fanan. 2000

Fanan. 3000

Fanan. 6000

Which are the crownes of golde.

### Of the kynde of Rubies. called Spinelle.

**T**Here is also founde an other kynde of Rubies, which we call *Spinelle*, and the *Indians*, *Caropus*. They growe in the selfe same countrey of *Pegu* where as are the fyne Rubies, & are found in the mountaines in the bypper crust

or floure of the earth. These are not so fine, nor of so good colour as are the true Rubies, but haue somewhat the colour of a Garnet, which we commonly call a Garnet: yet of these, such as are perfect in theyr colour, are of value halfe lesse then true Rubies.

Of the Rubies called Balassi.

**B**alassi are of the kyndes of Rubies, but are not so hard: their colour is somewhat lyke a Rose, and some are in maner whyte: they growe in *Balassia*, whiche is a region within the firme lande, about *Pegu* and *Bengala*, and are brought from thence by merchants of the *Hoores* to *Calecut*, where they are wrought and pullyshed, and are solde of the same price that are *Spinel*.

Of the Diamondes of the old myne.

**T**hese Diamondes are founde in the first India, in a kyngdome of the *Hoores* named *Decan*, from whence they are brought to other regions. There are also founde other Diamondes, whiche are not so good, but somewhat whyte, and are called Diamondes of the newe myne, whiche is in the kyngdome of *Narsinga*. They of the olde myne are not pullyshed in India, but in other places. There are made lyke wyse in India other false Diamondes, of Rubies, *Topales*, and whyte *Saphires*, whiche appeare to be fyne, and are also founde in the Islande of *Zeilam*: these stones differ in none other, sauyng that they haue lost theyr natural colour. Of these, some are found that haue halfe the colour of Rubies, & other of *Saphires*, other also of the colour of a *Topale*, other haue al these colours myngled togeather. They bore a fine hole in these through the middes, whereby they appeare lyke the eyes of a Catte. Of the whyttest, they make many small Diamondes, whiche can not be knowen from the true, sauyng by touchyng, of such as are skylful in that practise. They are solde by a poyle or wayght, whiche they call *Mangiar*, whiche weyeth two *Tarre*, and two thirdes, whiche amount to two thirdes, or third partes of one *Carat*: for foure *Tarres* wey one *Fanan*, which is about two *Carattes*. Eyght Diamondes that wey one *Mangiar*, whiche is two third partes of a *Carat*, are in value *Fanan xxx*, whiche are three crownes of golde.

|                                                                           |        |       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------|
| Sixe Diamundes that weigh one <i>Mangiar</i> ,                            | Fanan. | 40.   |
| Foure that weigh one <i>Mangiar</i> ,                                     | Fanan. | 60.   |
| Two that weigh one <i>Mangiar</i> .                                       | Fanan. | 80.   |
| One that weygheth one <i>Mangiar</i> .                                    | Fanan. | 100.  |
| One of one <i>Mangiar</i> and a quarter.                                  | Fanan. | 165.  |
| One of one <i>Mangiar</i> and a halfe.                                    | Fanan. | 180.  |
| Of one <i>Mangiar</i> and thre quarters.                                  | Fanan. | 220.  |
| Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s.                                                  | Fanan. | 320.  |
| Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s and a quarter.                                    | Fanan. | 360.  |
| Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s and a halfe.                                      | Fanan. | 380.  |
| Of two <i>Mangiar</i> s & thre quarters full perfect.                     | Fanan. | 420.  |
| Of thre <i>Mangiar</i> s of lyke perfection.                              | Fanan. | 450.  |
| Of thre <i>Mangiar</i> s and a halfe.                                     | Fanan. | 480.  |
| Of foure <i>Mangiar</i> s.                                                | Fanan. | 550.  |
| Of fyue <i>Mangiar</i> s.                                                 | Fanan. | 750.  |
| Of sixe <i>Mangiar</i> s.                                                 | Fanan. | 800.  |
| Of seven <i>Mangiar</i> s.                                                | Fanan. | 1200. |
| Of eight <i>Mangiar</i> s.                                                | Fanan. | 1400. |
| And thus they proceede, increasyng the pryce, as they increase in weyght. |        |       |

Of Saphires.

**I**n the Islande of *Zeilam*, are founde the beste and moste true *Saphires*, being very hard and fine, and of the colour of *Azure*. They are of pryce as foloweth.

|                                                        |        |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|------|
| One that weigheth one <i>Caratte</i> , is of value,    | Fanan. | 2.   |
| which are about two <i>Marcells</i> of silver,         |        |      |
| One of the weyght of two <i>Carattes</i> .             | Fanan. | 5.   |
| Of thre <i>Carattes</i> .                              | Fanan. | 10.  |
| Of foure <i>Carattes</i> .                             | Fanan. | 15.  |
| Of fyue <i>Carattes</i> .                              | Fanan. | 18.  |
| Of sixe <i>Carattes</i> .                              | Fanan. | 28.  |
| Of seven <i>Carattes</i> .                             | Fanan. | 35.  |
| Of eight <i>Carattes</i> .                             | Fanan. | 50.  |
| Of nine <i>Carattes</i> .                              | Fanan. | 60.  |
| Of tenne <i>Carattes</i> .                             | Fanan. | 65.  |
| Of eleuen <i>Carattes</i> .                            | Fanan. | 70.  |
| Of twelue <i>Carattes</i> .                            | Fanan. | 75.  |
| Of .xiii. <i>Carattes</i> in all perfection of colour. | Fanan. | 115. |

*20* *Marcell*, is a silver copie of *Venice*, of .xi. unces, .iii. d. with fyne, wherof .x. make an ounce.



## The prices of precious stones

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Of. xliiii. Carattes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Fanan. 160. |
| Of. xii. Carattes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fanan. 180. |
| Of. xvi. Carattes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fanan. 200. |
| Of. xviii. Carattes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Fanan. 250. |
| One that weigheth a <i>Mirigall</i> , which is. xi. Fanans and a quarter, that is about. xliiii. Carattes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Fanan. 350. |
| <p><i>Lpkewyle</i> in the Ilande of <i>Zeilam</i>, is founde an other sorte of <i>Saphires</i>, which they call <i>Quinigelinam</i>. These are not so strong, of darker colour, and of much lesse value then are the other of the best kynde, wherof one is woorth thirtiene of these of equal poyle. Also in the kyngdome of <i>Narsinga</i>, in a mountayne aboute <i>Bacanor</i> and <i>Mangalor</i>, is found an other sorte of <i>Saphires</i>, more tender and of woofle colour, which they call <i>Cinganloam</i>. These are somewhat whyte, and of small value : So that the most perfecte of this kynde, weighing. xx. Carattes, is not woorth one Ducate. They colour is inclynnyng somewhat to yelow. There is <i>lykewyle</i> founde an other kynde of <i>Saphires</i>, bypon the sea coastes of the kyngdome of <i>Calecut</i>, in a place named <i>Capucar</i>. These the <i>Indians</i> call <i>Carabatonilam</i>. They are of a darke Azure colour, not shynnyng but in the cleare ayre. They are also tender &amp; byckle, and of small estimation among the <i>Indians</i>. They seeme on the one syde lyke glasse.</p> |             |

### Of Topasies.

**T**he naturall *Topasies* growe in the Iland of *Zeilam*, and are named of the *Indians Purceragua*. It is a harde and fine stone, and of equall estimation with the *Rubie* & the *Saphire*, bycause all these thre are of one kynde. The perfecte colour of this, is yelow, lyke unto fine beaten gold, and if it be perfecte and cleane, whether it be great or litle, it is woorth in *Calecut* as much fine gold as it weigheth. But if it be not perfect, it is woorth the weight of golde the *Fanan*, which is lesse by the halfe. And if it be in maner whyte, it is woorth much lesse. And of these, are small *Diamundes* counterfecte.

### Of Turquesles.

**T**urquesles are founde in *Exer*, a place of *Siech Ismaell*. They Wine is a dyre earth, that is founde bypon a blacke  
stone.

stone, which the Moores take of in small peeces, and carry them to the Ilande of *Ormus*, from whence they are brought to diuers partes of the worlde by sea and by lande. The Indians call them *Perose*. They are soft stones, of small weight, and not much colder: & to know that they are good & true, in the day they shal appeare of the very colour of the Turquesse, and in the nyght, by the light, they shal appeare greene. They that are not so perfecte, doe not so chaunge theyr colour to the light. If these stones be cleane and of fine colour, they haue vnderneath, in the bottome, a blacke stone, bypon the which they growe. And if any little bayne ryle bypon the sayde stone, it shall be the better. And to know moze certainly that they are true Turquestes, they put on the toppes of them, a little quicke lyme, tempered with water, after the maner of an oymntment. So that if the quicke lime appeare coloured, they are iudged perfect, and are of value as foloweth.

One that weigheth one Caratte, is worth in *Malabar*, Fanan. 15

One of two Carattes. Fanan. 40.

Of foure Carattes. Fanan. 90.

Of sixe Carattes. Fanan. 150.

Of eight Carattes. Fanan. 200.

Of ten Carattes. Fanan. 300.

Of twelue Carattes. Fanan. 450.

Of fourtiene Carattes. Fanan. 550.

Of greater then these they make none accompte, bycause they are lyghter peeces and of greater circuite. These of the byggest sorte the Moores carrie into the kyngdome of *Guzerat*.

### Of Iacintes.

**I**acintes, growe in the Ilande of *Zeilam*. They are tender stones, and yelow. They are best that are of deepest colour. The greatest parte of these, haue in them certayne pimples or burbuls, which diminysh the theyr fayrenesse. And they that are in theyr perfection cleane from this deformitie, are neuertheless of small value: For in *Calecut* where they are polished, they that weygh one Fanan, are woorth no more then halfe a Fanan. And they of .xviii. Fanans, are not woorth .xvi. Fanans.

III.ii.

There

## The prices of precious stones

There are also found other stones lyke unto catted eyes, as *Chrysolites*, & *Amethestes*, which they do not much esteeme, because they are of small value, as also the stones called *Giagonze*.

### Of Smaragdes or Emeraldes.

**S**maragdes growe in the countrey of Babylon, where the Indians cal the sea *Dieguan*. They grow also in other parts of India. They are stones of fayre greene colour, and are light and tender. Of these stones, many are counterfect. But lookyng on them curiously towarde the lyght, the counterfectes shewe certayne burbuls, as doeth glasse: but in the true, there is no suche scene, but rather there appeareth to the eye, a certayne verdour, shynnyng lyke the beames of the Sunne: and being rubbed vppon the touche stone, they leaue the colour of copper. And the *Smaragde* of this sorte, is the best and most true, and is in value in *Calecut*, as muche as a *Diamunde*, and somewhat moze: And this not by weyght, but by greatnesse, because the *Diamunde* quantitie for quantitie, is of greater weyght then the *Smaragde*. There is lykewyse founde an other kynde of *Smaragdes*, which are greene stones, but not so muche esteemed. Neuerthelesse, the Indians reserue these to set them forth with other precious stones. They leaue not any greene colour vppon the touche.

Of dyuers kindes of Spices, where they growe,  
what they are woorth in *Calecut*, and why-  
ther they are carried from thence.

### Of Pepper.



First in all the kyngdome of *Malabor* and *Calecut*, *Pepper* groweth, and is sold in *Calecut* by euery CC. *Babars*, fine, for CCxxx. *Fanans*, euery *Fanan* (as I haue sayde) being in value one ryall of plate of *Spayne*, which is as muche as one *Marcell* of silver in

in Venice. *Babar*, weigheth foure *Cantares* of the olde weyght of *Portugale*, by the which they sell all spices in *Lisbona*. *Cantare* is in Venice. Cxii. pounce weyght, of the grosse pounce (beyng xviij. ounces) and of the subtile pounce. Cxxviii. So that the sayde. 712. poundes of Venice subtile, will cost about. xx. frenche crownes of gold: which amount to about two *Marchetti* (which make one penny) the pounce. They paye also to the kyng of *Calecut* for custome. xii. *Fanans*. euery *Babar* by the lode. They that buye them, are accustomed to byng them to *Cambaia*, *Persia*, *Aden*, and *Mecha*, and from thence to *Alcayr* and *Alexandria*. Now they paye custome to the kyng of *Portugale* after the rate of 6562. *Maruedies* the *Babar*, which are. 193. *Fanans*. *Maruedies* are Spanyshe coyne, wherof sixe goe to a penny. This do they, partly bycause there arryueh no moze so great diuersitie of merchautes to buye them, and partly by the agreement whiche the sayd kyng of *Portugale* made with those kynges, & the *Doores*, and merchautes of the countrey of *Malabar*.

Much pepper groweth lykewyse in the *Ilande* of *Sumatra*, neare vnto *Malaca*, which is fayer and bigger then that of *Malabar*, but not so good and strong. This is brought from *Bengala* to *China*, and some part to *Mecha*, priuylie and by stealth, vnwares to the *Portugales*, whiche would not otherwyle suffer them to passe. It is woorth in *Sumatra*, from. iiii. C. vnto. vii. C. *Maruedies* the *Canter* of *Portugale*, of the newe weight. And from the new to the olde weight in *Portugale*, the difference is two ounces in the pounce weight: For the olde pounce consisteth of. xiiii. ounces, and the newe pounce of xvi. ounces.

### Of Cloues.

Cloues growe in the *Ilandes* of *Molucca*, from whence they are brought to *Malaca*, and then to *Calecut*, and the countrey of *Malabar*. They are woorth in *Calecut* euery *Babar* (which is. 712. poundes, of the subtile pounce of Venice) from. 500. to. 600. *Fanans*. (which are about fyfte frenche crownes) whiche are in value about twelue *Marchetti* the pounce weyght, and beyng cleane from stalkes & huskes are in value. 700. *Fanans*. To carry them from thence into

Iii.iii. other



## The prices of precious Spices,

other regions, they paye for pasporte. xliii. *Fanans* the *Babar*, which is woorth in *Malacca* from .x. to .xliii. *Ducades*, according to the rate and custome of the merchauntes.

### Of Cinamome.

**C**inamome of the beste sorte, groweth in the Ilande of *Zeilam*, and in the countrey of *Malabar* groweth the woost. That of the best kynde, is of small price in *Zeilam*. But in *Calecut* (if it be choyle and freshe) it is woorth 300. *Fanans* the *Babar*, which are about fyue *Marchetti* the pounce.

### Of Ginger, called Beledi.

**G**inger *Beledi*, groweth on every side about *Calecut*, from sixe to nene myles, and is woorth the *Babar* .xl. *Fanans*, and sometymes fytie, which is lesse then one *Marchetto* the pounce. They byng it from the mountaynes, and out of the countrey, to the citie, where they sell it by retayle to the *Indian* merchauntes, who geather it togeather in great quantitie, and keepe it to such tyme as the *Doores* shippes arryue there, to whom they sell it, by the price of .xc. *Fanans*, to .C. which is lesse then two *Marchetti* the pounce, bycause the weight is greater.

### Of Ginger Mechino.

**G**inger *Mechino* groweth, begynnynge from the mountaine of *Deli*, unto *Canonor*. It is small, and not so whyte nor so good as the other. It is woorth the *Babar* in *Canonor*, about 60. *Fanans*, whiche is about one *Marchetto* the pounce. They paye for the *Babar* sixe *Fanans* in money for the custome. It is solde vncleaned or vnpurged.

### Of greene Ginger in conserues.

**I**n *Bengala* is founde great plentie of Ginger *Beledi*, of the which they make muche Ginger in conserues with *Suger*, and carrie it in stone pottes from *Martabani*, to bee solde in the countrey of *Malabar*, and is woorth the *Fara Zuola* (which is

Is. xlii. poundes and sixe unces) after the rate of. xliii. xv. oz. xvi.

Fanans.

That that is freshe and made in conserues, is woorth in *Calecut*,  
xxv. Fanans the *farazuola*, bycause Sugar is deare there.

Greene Ginger to put in conserues, is woorth in *Calecut* thre  
quarters of one Fanan the *farazuola*, which is about two pounds  
for one *Marchetto*.

Of the Apothecaries drugges, and of what price  
they are in *Calecut* and *Malabar*.

**L**acca of *Martabani*, if it be of the beste, is woorth the *fa-  
razuola*, which is. xlii. pounce weyght and sixe ounces of  
*Portugale*, after sixtiene ounces the pound (which is about  
fourtie pound weight of the subtiler pounce of *Tenice*) and  
is in value eightiene Fanans : which are eightiene *Marcells* of sil-  
uer. For one Fanan, is in value about one *Marcell* of silver.

*Lacca* of the countrey, is woorth the *farazuola*. Fanan. 12

*Boxace* that is good and in great peeces, is woorth the  
*farazuola*. Fanan. 30 to. 40. & 50.

*Campfire* that is grosse in cakes, is woorth the *fa-  
zuola*. Fanan. 70. to. 80

*Campfire* to annoynt *Idoles*, \* \* \*

*Campfire* for theyr children to eate, is woorth the *My-  
tigall*. Fanan. 3.

*Aquila* is woorth the *farazuola*. Fanan. 300. to. 400.

*Lignum aloe*, blacke, heavy, and fine, is woorth. Fanan. 1000.

*Muske* of the best, is woorth the ounce Fanan. 36.

*Beniamin* of the best, is woorth the *farazuola*. Fanan. 65.

*Tamarindi* being new, are woorth the *faraz*. Fanan. 4.

*Calamus Aromaticus*, the *farazuola*. Fanan. 12.

*Endego* to dye lilke, true and good, the *farazuola*. Fanan. 30.

*Dirre*, the *farazuola*. Fanan. 18. to. 20.

*Frankensense* good and in graynes, is woorth the *fa-  
zuola*. Fanan. 15.

*Frankensense* in paste of the basett sorte, the *faraz*. Fanan. 3.

*Ambra* or *Amber grease* that is good, is woorth the  
*Metigall*. Fanan. 2 to. 3.

*Mirabolanes* in conserue of sugar, the *faraz*. Fanan. 16. to. 25

*Iii.iiii.*

*Cassia*,

## The prices of precious stones

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Cassia</i> , freshe and good, the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                               | Fanan one and a halfe. |
| <i>Redde Sanders</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Fanan. 5. to. 6.       |
| <i>Whyte Sanders</i> and <i>Citrine</i> , whiche growe in the <i>Ilande</i> of <i>Tinor</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                  | Fanan. 40. to. 60.     |
| <i>Spikenarde</i> , freshe and good, the <i>faraz</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                               | Fanan. 30. to 40.      |
| <i>Muttemegges</i> , whiche come from the <i>Ilande</i> of <i>Bandan</i> , where the <i>Babar</i> is woorth from. viii. to ten Fanans, (whiche importe vi. poundes weyght to the <i>Marchetto</i> ) are woorth in <i>Calecut</i> , the <i>faraz</i> . | Fanan. 10. to. 12.     |
| <i>Mace</i> which is brought from the <i>Ilande</i> of <i>Bandan</i> , where the <i>Babar</i> is woorth sytterne Fanans (which importe about one <i>Marchetto</i> , the pounde are woorth in <i>Calecut</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                  | Fanan. 25. to. 30      |
| <i>Turbithe</i> s, are woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Fanan, 13              |
| <i>Moormeede</i> of the best kynde, called <i>Semenzana</i> , is woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                        | Fanan. 18.             |
| <i>Zerumba</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Fanan. 2.              |
| <i>Zedoaria</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Fanan. 1.              |
| <i>Gumme Serapine</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fanan. 20.             |
| <i>Aloe Cicotrine</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fanan. 18.             |
| <i>Cardamome</i> in graynes, the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Fanan. 20.             |
| <i>Reubarbe</i> groweth abundantly in the countrey of <i>Malabar</i> , and that whiche cometh from <i>China</i> by <i>Malacca</i> , is woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                  | Fanan 40. to. 50.      |
| <i>Mirabolani Emblici</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Fanan. 2.              |
| <i>Mirabolani Belrici</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Fanan one & a halfe.   |
| <i>Mirabolani citrini</i> & <i>Cebuli</i> , which are all of one sozte.                                                                                                                                                                               | Fanan. 2.              |
| <i>Mirabolani Indi</i> , which are of the same <i>Citrine</i> trees.                                                                                                                                                                                  | Fanan. 3.              |
| <i>Tutia</i> , the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Fanan. 30.             |
| <i>Cububes</i> , which growe in the <i>Ilande</i> of <i>Iana</i> or <i>Giaua</i> , are there of small price, and sold by measure without weyght.                                                                                                      |                        |
| <i>Opium</i> , which is brought from the cite of <i>Aden</i> where it is made, is woorth in <i>Calecut</i> the <i>faraz</i> .                                                                                                                         | Fanan. 280 to 320.     |
| <i>Opium</i> of an other sozte, whiche is made in <i>Cambaia</i> , is woorth the <i>farazuola</i> .                                                                                                                                                   | Fanan. 200. to. 250.   |

Of the weyghtes of Portugale and India:  
And howe they agreee.

**T**he pounce of the olde weyght, conteyneth .xiiii. vneces.  
The pounce of the newe weyght conteyneth .xvi. vneces.  
Eight Cantares of the olde weyght, make .vii. of the newe.  
And every newe Cantare, is of .C. xxviii. poundes, after  
xvi. vneces to the pounce.

Every olde Cantare, conteyneth thre quarters and an halfe of  
the newe Cantare : And is of .C. xxviii. poundes, after .xiii.  
vneces the pounce.

One Farazuoles, is. xxi. poundes of .xiiii. vneces, and .vi. vneces  
more, with two fyfte partes.

Twentie Farazuoles, are one Bahar.

One Bahar is .iiii. Cantares of the olde weight of Portugale.  
All the Spices and drugges, and al suche other thynges as come  
from India, are solde in Portugale by the olde weyght and all  
the rest by the newe weyght.

Herby maie we wel consider, that as we ought to reioyce and  
geue God thanks for the abundaunce of all these thinges, which  
he causeth the earth so plentifully to byrnyng forth to our vse, so  
maye we lament the abuse of men, whose couetousnesse causeth  
great dearth and scarcenesse in the myddest of abundaunce : here-  
in no lesse offendyng the lawe of nature, then do such as by witch-  
crafte do entermyngle poyson with thynges created for the health  
of man, or by inhauntment corrupt the seedes in the grounder:  
yea rather, as the unnaturall mother, who destroyeth the chyld  
whom she hath long nuryshed.

Of



# The vyages of the Spanyards

Of the voyage made by the Spany-  
ardes round about the world.



The voyage made by the Spanyardes  
rounde about the worlde, is one of the  
greatest and most marueplous thynges  
that haue ben knowen to our tyme. And  
although in many thynges we excel our  
ancient predecessours; in this especially  
we so far exceed al their inuentions, that  
y<sup>e</sup> like hath not heretofore ben knowen to

this day. This viage was written particulerly by Don Peter Mar-  
tyr of Angkria, being one of y<sup>e</sup> counsaile of the imperours Indies, to  
whom also was committed y<sup>e</sup> writing of the hystorie & examinati-  
on of al such as returned from thence into Spaine to y<sup>e</sup> citie of Se-  
uille, in the peere 1522. But sendyng it to Rome to be printed,  
in that miserable tyme when the citie was sacked, it was lost, and  
not founde vnto this daye, or any memorie remainyng thereof,  
saupng such as some that read the same haue bozne in mynde.  
And among other notable thynges by hym wyrtten as touchyng  
that voyage, that is one, that the Spanyardes haupng sayled  
about thre peeres and one moneth, and the most of them notyng  
the dayes, daye by daye (as is the maner of al them that sayle by  
the Ocean, they found when they were returned to Spaine, y<sup>e</sup> they  
had lost one daye: So that at theyr arryual at the porte of Se-  
uille, beyng the seventh daye of September, was by theyr ac-  
compt but the syrte daye. And whereas Don Peter Martyr de-  
clared y<sup>e</sup> strange effect of this thyng to a certayne excellent man,  
who for his singuler learnyng was greatly aduanced to honour  
in his common wealth, and made Theimperours ambassadour:  
this woorthy gentileman, who was also a great Philosopher & A-  
stronomer, answered, that it coude not otherwyle chaunce vnto  
them, haupng sayled thre peeres continually, euer folowynge  
the Sunne towarde the West: and sayde furthermoze, that they  
of olde tyme obserued, that all suche as sayled behynd the Sunne  
towarde the West, tyd greatly lengthen the daye. And albeit  
that the sayde booke of Peter Martyr is perished, yet hath not  
fortune

Don Peter  
Martyr.

Rome sacked.

A daye lost in  
thre peeres &  
one moneth.

fortune permytted that the memorie of so woorthy and marue-  
lous an enterpryse shoulde viterly be extincte: forasmuche as a  
certayne noble gentelman of the citie of *Vincenza* in *Italie*, cal-  
led master *Antonie Pigafetta* (who beyng one of the companie  
of that voyage, and after his returne into *Spayne* in the shyppe  
*Victoria*, was made knyght of the *Rhodes*) wrote a particular  
and large booke thereof, whiche he gaue to *Chemperours Ma-*  
*iestie*, and sent a copie of the same into *Fraunce*, to the lady *Re-*  
*gent*, another vnto the *French king*, who committed it to an excel-  
lent philosopher, called master *Iacobus Faber*, hauing long studied  
in *Italy*, wyllyng hym to translate it into the *French* tongue.  
This booke therefore was printed fyrst in the *French* tongue,  
and then in the *Italian*, with also an epistle to the *Cardinall* of  
*Salsperge* as touchyng the same voyage, written by *Maximilian*  
*Transluane* secretarie to *Chemperours Maiestie*, in the yere  
1522. And doubtlesse among all the cities of *Italie*, the citie  
of *Vincenza* may herem muche glorie, that besyde the auncient  
nobilitie, and many excellent and rare wyttes whiche it hath  
brought forth, aswell in learnyng as discipline of warre, it hath  
also had so woorthy and valiaunt a gentleman as was the sayde  
master *Antonie Pigafetta*, who hauyng compassed about the ball  
of globe of the worlde, hath lyke wyse described that voyage par-  
ticularly. For the whiche his so noble and wonderfull an enter-  
pryse so happily atchiued, if the same had ben done in the olde  
tyme, when *Thempyre* of the *Greekes* and *Romans* flooyshed,  
he shoulde doubtlesse haue ben rewarded with an Image of mar-  
ble or gold, erected in a place of honour, in perpetuall memo-  
rie, and for a singular example of his vertue to the posteritie. In  
fine, this may we boldly affyrme, that the antiquitie had neuer  
such knowledge of the worlde, whiche the *Sunne* compasseth a-  
bout in .xxiii. houres, as we haue at this present, by the industrie  
of men of this our age. But before I speake any thyng of the  
vyage, I haue thought it good fyrst to adde hereunto the Epistle  
of *Maximilian Transluane*, which he wrote to the *Cardinall* of  
*Salsperge*, as a preface to his sayde booke.

It is now  
found with one  
master Harold,  
a prebend in  
wyndso-  
Antonie Pigas-  
fetta.

*Iacobus Faber.*

*Maximilian*  
*Transluane.*

The reward of  
noble enterprys

The antiquitie  
had no such  
knowledge of  
the world as  
we haue.

The

## The vyage rounde about the worlde.

**T**he Epistle of Maximilian Transiluane, secretarie to the Emperours Maiestie: written to the ryght honorable and reuerende lorde, the lord Cardinal of Salepurg, of the marueylous and woonderfull nauigation made by the Spanyardes rounde about the worlde in the yeere of Christ .M.D.xix.



The Ilandes of  
Molucca.

*Aurea Chersone-  
sus.  
Malacca.  
Spices.*

**I**n these dayes ( my most honozable and reuerend lord) returned one of those siue ships, whiche, the yeere before Theemperours be- yng at *Saragosa* in Spaine, were at his ma- iesties commaundement sent to the newe worlde, heretofore vnknowne vnto vs, to seeke the Ilandes of spices. For albeit the Portugales byng vs great quantitie of Spyes from that part of East India, whiche in olde tyme was called *Aurea Chersonefus* (where is now thought to be the great ryche citie of *Malacca*) yet in East India growe none of those Spyes, except Pepper. For other Spyes, as *Sinamome*, *Cloues*, *Nutte- megs*, and *Hale* (whiche is the huske that couereth the shell of the Nut) are brought from other farre countreys, and from Ilandes scarcely knowne by theyr names: from the whiche I- landes they are brought in shippes or barkes made without any Iron tooles, and tyed together with cordes of Date trees, with rounde sayles lykewyse made of the small twiggges of the bran- ches of Date trees weaved together. These barkes they call *Giunche*: with the whiche barkes and sayles, they make theyr viage with only one wynde in the stearne, or contrarywyse. Ney- ther yet is it a thyng greatly to be maruelled at, that these Ilands where the Spices growe, haue ben vnknowne so many wordes past vnto our tyme, forasmuch as all suche thynges as vnto this daye haue ben wyrtten of old autours of the places where spices growe, are all fabulous and false: Insomuch that the countreys where they affyrme them to growe, are nowe certaynely founde to be further from the place where they growe in deede, then we are from them. For lettynge passe many other thynges that are wyrtten, I wyll speake moze of this which *Herodotus* (otherwise a famous auctoure) affirmeth, that *Sinamome* is founde in the toppes

The Ilandes of  
Spices vn-  
knowne in olde  
tyme.

toppes of the nestes of certayne byrdes and foules that byyng it from farre countreys, and especially the Phenix, the whiche I knowe no man that euer hath seene. But *Plinie*, who might moze certaynely asseyne thinges by reason that befoze his tyme many thynges were knowen and discouered by the nauigations of great Alexander and other, sayth, that Sinamome groweth in that part of *Ethiope* which the people inhabit called *Trogloditi*. Neuerthelesse it is now found that Sinamome groweth very far from all *Ethiope*, & now much further from the *Trogloditi*, which dwel in caues vnder the ground. But to our men which are now returned from those partes and the Ilandes of spices, hauyng also good knowledge of *Ethiope*, it was necessarie to passe far beyond *Ethiope* befoze they come to these Ilands, and to compasse about the whole worlde, and many tymes vnder the greatest circumference of heauen. The which nauigations made by them, beyng the most marueylous thyng that euer was done by man vppon the earth sence the fyrst creation of the worlde, and neuer founde befoze, or knowen, or attempted by any other, I haue deliberated saythfully to wyte to your honozable lordeshyppe, and to declare the whole successe thereof. As touchyng which matter, I haue with all diligence made inquisition to knowe the trueth, aswell by relation of the Captayne of that shyppe, as also by conference with euery of the maryners that returned with hym. All whiche, gaue the selfe same information both to *Chemperours* *Maieestie*, and diuers other: And this with such saythfulnesse and sinceritie, that not onely they are iudged of all men to haue declared the trueth in all thynges, but haue thereby also geuen vs certayne knowledge, that al that hath hitherto ben sayd or wytyten of olde autours as touchyng these thynges, are false and fabuleus. For who wyl beleue that men are founde with onely one legge. Or with suche feete whose shadowe couereth theyr bodies: Or men of a cubite heygth, and other suche lyke, beyng rather monsters then men: Of the whiche, neyther the *Spaniards*, who in our tyme saylyng by the Ocean sea, haue discouered all the costes of the lande towarde the West both vnder and about the Equinoctiall, nor the *Portugales*, who compassyng about all *Afryke*, hath passed by all the East, and lykewyle discouered all those costes vnto the great gulle called *Sinus Magnus*, nor yet the

The Phenix.  
*Plinie*.

The nauigations of great Alexander.  
*Ethiope*.  
*Trogloditi*.

The nauigation about the worlde.

The olde autours.

Monsters.  
The viages of the Spaniards and Portugales.

*Spaniards*



## The viages of the Spanyardes

Spanyardes in this theyr last nauigation, in the which they compassed about the whole earth, dyd neuer in any of theyr viages wypte of such monsters: which doubtlesse they would not haue omitted, if they myght haue had certayne knowledge thereof. But nowe intendyng to speake of the whole worlde, I wyll not be long in my peface, but begyn my narration as foloweth.

**A** briefe declaration of the viage or nauigation made about the worlde. Geathered out of a large booke written hereof by master Antoni Pigafetta Vincentine, knyght of the Rhodes, and one of the companie of that vyage in the which Ferdinando Magalhanes a Portugale (whom some call Magellanus) was generall captayne of the nauie.



Sebastian  
Munster.

The Landes  
of Molucca.

Although Sebastian Munster in his vniuersall Cosmographie in the fyfth booke of the landes of the greater Asia (which I translated into Englyshe about .24. yeeres sence) hath wyrtten of the vyage of Magellanus, declaryng therein how the Spanyardes by the West, and the Portugales by the East, sayling to the Landes of Molucca, compassed the whole globe of the worlde betweene them, yet haue I heere thought it good to make a bryefe repeticion of this vyage, addyng hereunto dyuers notable thynges which were not touched of Munster, as I haue geathered them out of the bookes of Antoni Pigafetta, and Transiluanus, wyrttyng of the same vyage. For albeit in deede it was a strange and woonderfull thyng that the Spanyardes and Portugales compassed the whole circumference of the worlde betweene them, yet is it moze marueplous, that the same was done with one ship, & one companie of men, as did the Spanyardes in this viage, who keeping their continual course by the west, returned into Spaine by the east: a thing doubtlesse so much moze woonderful and strange, then if they had returned from the halfe circumference by the same way they went, in how muche they were ignorant in the vyage neuer attempted before, besyde  
the

the thousande daungers and perylls whiche they were daylye lyke to fall into, aswell by wandryng in vnknownen coastes, as also by fallynge into the handes of the Portugales, by whose dominions in the East they shoulde needes passe of necessitie, not trusting to their gentlenesse for the controuersie whiche had beene long betweene them for the Ilandes of *Molucca*: I wyl therfore (as I haue sayde) make a brieue rehearsal of this viage, from the begynnyng to the endyng, omitting neuerthelesse many notable thynges, whiche are moze largely described in the bookes of *Maximilianus Transiluanus*, and *Antonius Pigafetta*.

Controuersie  
betweene the  
Spaniards  
and Portug  
gales.

The tenth day of August, in the yeere of our Lord. 1519. *Ferdinando Magalians* departed from the port of *Siule* in *Spayne*, with a nauie of fyue shippes, and 237. men, wel furnished with all thynges necessary. And sayling first downe by the ryuer of *Guadalchiber*, which runneth from the sayd port into the sea, they came first to a place named *Giouan Dulpharaz*, where are many villages of the *Moors*: and from thence, arryued at a castle of the duke of *Medina Sidonia*, where is the port from whiche they enter into the sea; & to the cape saint *Vincent*, beyng distant from the *Equinoctial*. 37. degrees, and from the sayd port. 10. leagues, and is from thence to *Siule* betweene 17. and 20. leagues. Heere they remayned certayne dayes, to make newe prouision of such thinges as they lacked. Departyng from hence the 20. day of September, they arryued the 26. day of the same moneth at one of the Ilandes of *Canarie*, called *Tenerife*, beyng 25. degrees aboue the *Equinoctial*. In one of these Ilandes is none other water but that is continually engendred of a cloude, which appeareth dayly at noone tyme, as though it descended from heauen, and compasseth about a certayne great tree, from whose branches distylleth great aboundaunce of water, and falleth in streames from the roote of the same, into certayne trenches and cisternes, made and placed to receyue it. This water serueth sufficiently all the inhabitauntes and cattayle of the Iland. The lyke thyng is also seene in the Ilande of saint *Thomas*, lying directly vnder the *Equinoctial* line.

Ferdinando  
Magalians.

The Cape of  
saint Vincent.

The Ilandes  
of Canarie.

Water engendred  
of a cloude.

The Iland of  
S. Thomas.

The thirde day of October, about mydnyght, the captayne commaunded them to lyght fyrebrandes, and to hoyle vp theyr sayles, directyng theyr course towarde the South, sayling betweene

# The viages of the Spanyardes

Capo Verde,

Guinea in  
Ethiopo.

Fishes and  
monsters of the  
sea.

The fyre of S.  
Helen and S.  
Nicolas.  
A tempest.

The natural  
cause of suche  
fyres as fall in  
the shippes.

Cardanus.

Two kyndes of  
fyres engendred  
of exhalations.

True fyre and  
false fyre.

sayleng betwene Capo Verde of Affrike, and the Ilandes lyng  
about the same, beyng from the Equinoctial fourteene degrees &  
a halfe. They sayled thus many dayes in the syght of the coast of  
Guinea of Ethiopo, where is the mountayne called Serra Liona, be-  
ing epght degrees aboute the Equinoctial. In this coast they had  
no maner of contrary wynde, but a great calme, and sayre wea-  
ther, for the space of threescore and ten dayes, in the whiche they  
came vnder the Equinoctial line. In this viage they sawe many  
strange Fyshes, & monsters of the Sea, betyde another strange  
thyng whiche appeared vnto them: For there appeared in their  
shippes certayne flames of fyre, burnyng very cleare, whiche  
they cal saint Helen, & saint Nicholas: these appeared as though  
they had been vpon the mast of the shippes, in suche clearenesse,  
that they tooke away theyr syght for the space of a quarter of an  
houre, by reason wherof they so wandred out of theyr course, and  
were disperased in sunder, that they in maner dyspayred to meete  
agayne: but (as God would) the sea and tempest beyng quieted,  
they came safely to their determined course. And before I speake  
any further of the viage, I haue heere thought good to say some-  
what of these strange fyres, whiche some ignozant folke thynke  
to be spirites, or suche other phantasies, wheras they are but na-  
turall thynges, proceeding of naturall causes, and engendred of  
certayne exhalations. Of these therfore, the great Philosopher  
of our tyme Hieronimus Cardanus, in his second booke De Subtili-  
tate, wytieth in this maner. There are two maner of fyres en-  
gendred of exhalations, wherof the one is hurtful, the other with-  
out hurt. That which is hurtfull, is fyre in deede, engendred of  
malicious and venemous vapours, whiche in successe of tyme  
take fyre, as apt matters to be kyndled. The other kynde is no  
true fyre, but lyke the matter that is in such olde putri-  
fied wood, as geueth the shynnyng of fyre, without the substance  
or qualitie therof. Of the kynde of true fyre, is the Fyreball or  
Starre, commonly called saint Helen, which is sometyme seene  
about the mastes of shippes, beyng of such sperie nature, that it  
sometyme melteth brasen vessels, and is a token of drownyng,  
forasmuch as this chaunceth only in great tempestes: for the va-  
pour or exhalation wherof this fyre is engendred, can not be dys-  
uen togeather or compact in forme of fyre, but of a grosse va-  
pour,

pour, and by a great power of wynde, and is therefore a token of imminent perill: As on the contrary parte, the lyke fyres called in olde tyme *Cassio* and *Pollux*, and nowe named the two lightes of *Sainct Peter* and *Sainct Nicolas*, which for the most parte fall on the cables of the shippes, leapyng from one to an other, with a certayne flutteryng noyse lyke byrdes, are a token of securitie, and of the tempest ouerpasse: For they are but vapours cleauyng to the cables, which in successe of tyme, the fyre passing from one to an other, appeare in the similitude of a lyght candel. They are a token of securitie, bycause they are litle, not slowe or grosse, whereby they myght haue ioyned altogether in one, and been thereby more malicious, and lasted longer, whereas beyng many and but litle, they are the sooner consumed. Whereto *Cardanus*. But let vs nowe returne to the vpage.

*Cassio* and  
*Pollux*.  
The lightes of  
*Sainct Peter*  
and *Sainct*  
*Nicolas*.

When they had sayled paste the Equinoctiall lyne, they losse the sight of the North starre, and sayled by the south west, vntyll they came to a lande named the lande of *Bressil*, whiche some call *Brasil*, beyng .xxii. degrees and a halfe towarde the south pole or pole *Antartike*. This lande is continuat and one firme lande with the cape of *Sainct Augustine*, whiche is .viii. degrees from the Equinoctiall. In this lande they were refreshed with many good frutes of innumerable kyndes, and founde here also very good suger canes, and diuers kindes of beasts and other thinges, which I omit for breuitie. They entered into this hauen on *Sainct Lucies* day: where the Sunne being the Zenith (that is, the poynte of heauen directly ouer thei heads) they felte greater heate that day, then when they were vnder the Equinoctiall lyne. This lande of *Brasil* is very large and great, and bygger then all *Spayne*, *Portugale*, *Fraunce*, and *Italie*, and is most abundant in all thinges. The people of this countrey pray to no manner of thyng: but lyue by the instincte of nature, and to the age of C.xx.and.C.xl. peeres. Both the men and women goe naked, and dwell in certayne long houses. They are very docible, and soone assured to the Christian fayth.

They lost the  
sight of the  
North starre.  
The lande of  
*Brasil*.  
The South  
pole.

Suger.

The greatnesse  
of the lande of  
*Brasil*.

Thirtiene dayes after that they arryued at the sayde porte, they departed from this lande, and sayled to the .xxxiii. degree and a halfe towarde the pole *Antartike*, where they founde a great ruer of freshe water, and certayne *Caniballes*. Of these

*Caniballes*.



## The viages of the Spanyardes

**Giantes.**

**Insule gem-  
marum.  
Cap. S. Marie.**

**The pole An-  
tarkike.  
Geese.  
Dea woolnes.**

**The xlii. des-  
gree of the  
South pole.**

**Giantes.**

**The bygnesse  
of the Giantes.**

they sawe one out of thei? shyppes, of stature as byg as a Giant,  
hauing a voice like a Bull. Our men pursued them, but they were  
so swifte of foate that they coulde not ouertake them. About the  
mouth of this river, are seuen Ilandes, in the byggest whereof  
they founde certayne vncleuous stones, and called it the cape of  
saint Marie. The Spanyardes thought that by this ryuer they  
myght haue passed into the South sea, but they were deceyued  
in thei? opinion: For there was none other passage then by the  
river, which is .xvii. leagues large in the mouth. Thus folowing  
this coaste by the tracte of the lande towards the pole *Antarkike*,  
they came to a place where were two Ilandes replenished with  
Geese and Woolues of the sea, which some thinke to be those sy-  
thes that we call *Dikes*. These were in such number, that in an  
houre all the fyue shyppes might haue ben laden with Geese, be-  
ing all of blacke colour, and such as can not flee. They liue of fish,  
and are so fatte, that they could scarcely slay them. They haue no  
feathers, but a certayne downe, and thei? bylles lyke *Rauens*  
bylles. These Woolues of the sea are of dyuers colours, and of  
the bygnesse of *Calues*, with thei? heades of golden colour. Here  
were they in great danger by tempest: But as soone as the three  
fyres, called saint Helen, saint *Nycolas*, and saint *Clare*, ap-  
peared vppon the cables of the shyppes, sodaynely the tempeste  
and furie of the wyndes ceased. Departyng from hence, they  
sayled to the .49. degree and a halfe vnder the pole *Antarkike*:  
where beyng wyntered, they were inforced to remayne there for  
the space of two monethes, all which tyme they sawe no man,  
excepte that one day by chaunce they espyed a man of the stature  
of a Giant, who came to the hauen daunsing and singyng, and  
shortly after seemed to cast dust ouer his head. The Captayne  
sent one of his men to the shore with the shyppe Boate, who  
made the lyke signe of peace. The which thyng the Giant see-  
yng, was out of feare, and came with the Captaynes seruante  
to his presence into a little Ilande. When he sawe the Cap-  
taine with certayne of his company about him, he was great-  
ly amased, and made signes, holdyng vphis hande to heauen,  
signifying thereby that our men came from thence. This Gi-  
ant was so byg, that the head of one of our men of a meane sta-  
ture, came but to his wasse. He was of good corpozature, & well  
made

made in all partes of his bodie, with a large visage painted with diuers colours, but for the most parte pelow vpon his cheekes were paynted two Hartes, and red circles about his eyes. The heare of his head was coloured whyte, and his apparill was the skynne of a beast sowde togeather. This beast as (seemed vnto vs) had a large head, and great eares lyke vnto a Hule, with the body of a Camell, and tayle of a horse. The feete of the Giant were foulded in the sayde skynne, after the maner of shooes. He had in his hande a bygge and shorthe bowe, the stryng whereof was made of a sinewe of that beaste. He had also a bundell of long arrows made of Reedes, feathered after the maner of ours, tippie with sharpe stones in the steade of Ironheades. The Captayne caused him to eate and drynke, & gaue him many thinges, and among other a great looking glasse: In the which as soone as he sawe his owne lykenesse, was sodaynly afrayde, and started backe with suche violence, that hee ouerthrewe two that stood nearest about him. When the Captayne had thus gyuen him certayne Haukes belles, and other great belles, with also a looking glasse, a combe, and a payre of beades of glasse, he sent him to lande with foure of his owne men well armed. Shortly after, they sawe an other Giant of somewhat greater stature, with his bowe and arrowes in his hande. As hee drewe neare vnto our men, he layde his hande on his head, and poynted vp towarde heauen, and our men dyd the lyke. The Captayne sent his shyppes Boate to bryng him to a litle Ilande beyng in the Hauen. This Giant was very tractable and pleasaunte. He loong and daunced, and in his dauncing lefte the print of his feete on the grounde. He remayned long with our men, who named him *Iohan*. He coulde well speake and playnely pronounce these woordes, *Iesus, Aue Maria, Iohannes*, euen as we doe, but with a bygger voyce. The Captayne gaue him a shert of linnen cloth, & a coate of white woollen cloth; also a cappe, a combe, a looking glasse, with diuers such other thinges, and so sent him to his company. The day folowing, he resorted agayne to the shyppes, and brought with him one of those great beastes, which he gaue the Captayne. But after that day, they neuer saw him more, supposing him to be slayne of his owne company, for the conuersation he had with our men.

An other Giant.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

**Foure other  
Giantes.**

**Two Giantes  
are taken by  
a policie.**

**The deuill  
Setebos.**

**Deuils ap-  
peare to the Gi-  
antes when  
they dye.**

**Patagoni.**

After other .xv. dayes were past, there came foure other Giantes without any weapons, but had hyd they bowes and arrowes in certaine bushes. The Captaine retayned two of these, which were youngest and beste made. He tooke them by a deceite, in this manner, that giuing them knyues, sheares, looking glasses, belles, beades of Crytall, & suche other trifles, he so filled theyr handes that they coulde holde no more : then caused two payre of shackels of Iron to be put on theyr legges, makyng signes that he would also giue them those chaynes : which they lyked very wel, bycause they were made of bright and shining metall And whereas they could not carry them bycause theyr handes were full, the other Giantes would haue carped them : but the captaine would not suffer them. When they felte the shackels faste about theyr legges, they began to doubt : but the Captayne dyd put them in comfort, and bad them stande still. In fine, when they sawe howe they were deceiued, they roared lyke bulles, & cryed vppon theyr great deuill *Setebos*, to helpe them. Being thus taken, they were immediately seperate and put in sundry shippes. They could neuer bynde the handes of the other two, yet was one of them with much difficultie ouerthrowen by .ix. of our men, & his hands boind : but he sodenly loosed him selfe and fled, as did also the other that came with them. In their fleeing, they shot of their arrowes and slue one of our men. They say that when any of them dye, there appeare .x. or .xii. deuils, leaping and daunsing about the bodie of the dead, and seeme to haue their bodies paynted with diuers colours, and that among other, there is one scene bigger then the residue, who maketh great mirth & reioysing. This great deuill they call *Setebos*, and call the lesse *Chelcule*. One of these Giantes which they tooke, declared by signes that he had scene deuylles with two hornes aboue their heades, with long beare downe to theyr feete : and that they caste forth fyre at theyr throates both before and behynde. The Captayne named these people *Patagoni*. The most parte of them weare the skynnes of such beastes whereof I haue spoken before : and haue no houses of continuance, but make certayne cotages, which they couer with the sayd skynnes, and carry them from place to place. They lyue of raw fleshe, and a certayne sweete roote, which they call *Capar*. One of these whiche they had in theyr shippes, dyd eate at one meale

meale a baskette of Bylket, and dꝛoonke a bowle of water at a draught. The Giantes feeding.

They remayned fyue monethes in this porte of Sainct Italian, where certayne of the vnder captaynes conspiryng the death of theyr Generail, were hanged and quartered: among whom the Treasurer *Luigo of Mendoza* was one. Certayne of the other conspiratours, he lefte in the sayde lande of *Patozoni*. They conspire against theyr Captayne.

Departyng from hence, to the .52. degree towarde the pole Antartike, lackyng a thirde parte, they founde a ryuer of freshe water and good fysh. Theyr shippes were here in great daunger. They remayned two monethes in this porte, where they made newe pꝛouision of freshe water, fuell, and fysh. Here the Captayne caused all his men to bee confessed. Approchyng to the .52. degrees, they found the straight now called the straight of *Magellanus*, beyng in some place a hundred and ten leagues in length, and in breadth somewhere very large, and in other places little moze then halfe a league in breadth. On both the sides of this straight, are great and hygh mountaynes couered with snowe, beyonde the which, is the enteraunce into the sea of *Sur*. Confession.

This enteraunce the Captayne named *Mare Pacificum*. Decree one of the shippes stole away pꝛiuille, and returned into Spayne: In this was one of the Giantes, who dyed as soone as he felte the beate that is about the Equinoctiall lyne. When the Captaine *Magalianes* was past the straight, and sawe the way open to the other mayne sea, he was so glad thereof, that for ioye the teares fell from his eyes, and named the poynt of the lande from whence he first sawe that sea, *Capo Desiderato*. The South sea.

Supposing that the shyppe which stole away had been lost, they erected a crosse vpon the top of a hygh hil, to directe their course in the straight, if it were theyr chaunce to come that way. They founde that in this straight in the moneth of October, the nyght was not past foure houres long. They founde in this straight at euery thre myles, a safe haue, and excellent water to dꝛynke: wood also, and fysh, and great plentie of good hearbes. They thinke that there is not a fayer straight in the worlde. Here also they sawe certaine fleeing fyshes. The other Giant which remayned with them in the shyppe, named breade *Capar*: water, *Oli*, redde cloth, *Cherecai*, red colour, *Cheiche*, blacke colour, *Amel*: And spoke all his wordes Mare pacificum.

They founde that in this straight in the moneth of October, the nyght was not past foure houres long. They founde in this straight at euery thre myles, a safe haue, and excellent water to dꝛynke: wood also, and fysh, and great plentie of good hearbes. They thinke that there is not a fayer straight in the worlde. Here also they sawe certaine fleeing fyshes. The other Giant which remayned with them in the shyppe, named breade *Capar*: water, *Oli*, redde cloth, *Cherecai*, red colour, *Cheiche*, blacke colour, *Amel*: And spoke all his wordes The Giantes dyed for beate.

They founde that in this straight in the moneth of October, the nyght was not past foure houres long. They founde in this straight at euery thre myles, a safe haue, and excellent water to dꝛynke: wood also, and fysh, and great plentie of good hearbes. They thinke that there is not a fayer straight in the worlde. Here also they sawe certaine fleeing fyshes. The other Giant which remayned with them in the shyppe, named breade *Capar*: water, *Oli*, redde cloth, *Cherecai*, red colour, *Cheiche*, blacke colour, *Amel*: And spoke all his wordes Capo Desiderato.

They founde that in this straight in the moneth of October, the nyght was not past foure houres long. They founde in this straight at euery thre myles, a safe haue, and excellent water to dꝛynke: wood also, and fysh, and great plentie of good hearbes. They thinke that there is not a fayer straight in the worlde. Here also they sawe certaine fleeing fyshes. The other Giant which remayned with them in the shyppe, named breade *Capar*: water, *Oli*, redde cloth, *Cherecai*, red colour, *Cheiche*, blacke colour, *Amel*: And spoke all his wordes Short nightes in the moneth of October.

They founde that in this straight in the moneth of October, the nyght was not past foure houres long. They founde in this straight at euery thre myles, a safe haue, and excellent water to dꝛynke: wood also, and fysh, and great plentie of good hearbes. They thinke that there is not a fayer straight in the worlde. Here also they sawe certaine fleeing fyshes. The other Giant which remayned with them in the shyppe, named breade *Capar*: water, *Oli*, redde cloth, *Cherecai*, red colour, *Cheiche*, blacke colour, *Amel*: And spoke all his wordes Fleeing fyshes. The Giantes language.



## The viages of the Spaniardes

in the throate. On a tyme, as one made a crosse before him, and kysled it, shewyng it vnto him, he sodaynely cryed *Setebos*, and declared by signes, that if they made any more crosses, *Setebos* would enter into his bodie, and make him brust. But when in fine he sawe no hurte come thereof, he tooke the crosse, and imbrased and kysled it oftentymes, desirynge that he myght be a Christian before his death: He was therefore baptyled, and named *Paule*. Departyng out of this straight into the sea called *Mare Pacificum*, the xxviii. day of November, in the yere. 1520. they sayled thre monethes and twentie dayes before they sawe any land, and hauyng in this tyme consumed all theyr *Wylket* and other victualles, they fell into suche necessitie, that they were inforced to eate the poulder that remayned thereof, beyng now full of wormes, and synkyng lyke ppyssle by reason of the salte water. Theyr frethe water was also putrifed and become yelow. They dyd eate skynnes and peeces of leather, whiche were fouled about certayne great ropes of the shippes: but these skynnes beyng made very harde by reason of the Sunne, rayne, and wynde, they hung them by a corde in the sea, for the space of foure or fve dayes, to mollifie them, and sodde them, and ate them. By reason of this samyne and uncleane feedyng, some of their gunnemes grewe so ouer theyr teethe, that they dyed miserably for hunger. And by this occasion dyed *menetiene* men, and also the Giaunt, with an Indian of the lande of *Brasile*, otherwyle called *Terra de papagalli*, that is, the lande of *Wopingayes*. Beside these that dyed. xxv. or. xxx. were so sicke, that they were not able to doe any seruice with theyr handes or armes for feeblenesse: So that there was in maner none without some disease. In these thre monethes and. xx. dayes, they sayled foure thousande leagues in one gulle, by the sayde sea called *Pacificum*, (that is) peaceable, which may well be so called, forasmuch as in all this tyme, hauyng no sight of any lande, they had no misfortune of wynde or any other tempest. During this tyme also, they discovered only two little Ilandes uninhabited, where they sawe nothing but birdes & trees, and therefore named them infortunate Ilandes, being one from the other about two hundred leagues distant. The first of these Ilandes is from the Equinoctiall toward the pole *Antartike*. xv. degrees, and the other fve. Their sayling was in such sorte, that they

The Giant is  
baptised.

Three moneths  
sayling with-  
out the sight of  
lande.  
Extreme fa-  
mine.

Diseases of  
samyne.

Unfortunate  
Ilandes.

What they say  
led dayly.

they sayled dayly betweene l.lx.to.lxx.leagues . So that in fine,  
if God of his mercy had not gyuen them good weather, it was  
necessary that in this so great a sea, they should all haue dyed for  
hunger . Which neuerthelesse they escaped so hardy, that it may  
be doubted whether euer the lyke viage may be attempted with  
so good successe . They considered in this Nauigation that the  
pole *Antartike*, hath no notable starre, after the sorte of the pole  
*Artike* . But they sawe many starres geathered togeather, which  
are lyke two cloudes, one separate a little from an other, & some-  
what darke in the myddest. Betweene these, are two starres, not  
very byg, nor much shynnyng, which moue a little : and these two  
are the pole *Antartike*. The needell of their compasse varied some-  
what, and turned euer towarde the pole *Artike*, neuerthelesse,  
had no suche force, as when it is in these partes of the pole *Artike*:  
Inasomuch that it was necessarie to helpe the needell with the lode  
stone (commonly called the Adamant) before they coulde sayle  
therewith, bycause it moued not, as it doeth when it is in these  
our partes . When they were in the myddest of the gulfe, they  
sawe a crosse of fyue cleare starres, directly towarde the Weste,  
and of equall distance the one from the other.

The starres as  
bout the South  
pole.

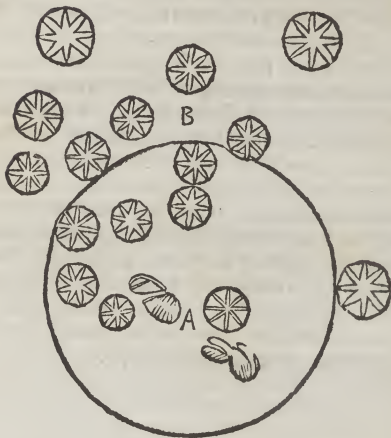
The needell of  
the compasse.

The lode  
stone.

Rkk.iiii.

The

The viages of the Spanyardes  
The order of the starres about the pole An-  
tartike, some haue figured  
in this maner.



A. The pole Antartike. B. The Crosse.

The Equinoctiall line.

The Ilands of Cipanghu and Sumbdit.

In these dayes they sayled betweene the West and South, so farre that they approached to the Equinoctiall lyne, and were in longitude from the place from whence they first departed, a hundred and twentie degrees. In this course they sayled by two Ilandes of exceeding hight, whereof the one named Cipanghu, is twentie degrees from the pole Antartike: and the other named Sumbdit, fiftiene degrees. When they were past the Equinoctiall line, they sayled betweene the West & Southwest, at the quarter of the West, towarde the Southwest more then a C leagues, changing their sayles to the quarter of the South west, vntyll they came to the thirtiene degrees about the Equinoctiall towarde the pole Artyke, intending as much as were possible, to  
approche

approch to the Cape called of the olde wryters *Cattigara* : the whiche is not founde as the olde Cosmographers haue discribed it, but is towarde the north about .xii. degrees, as they afterward vnderstoode.

When they had thus sayled .lxx. leagues of this voyage in the xii. degree aboue the Equinocitall, and .C. xlii. degrees of longitude (as I haue sayde) the fyrst daye of March they discovered a litle Ilande towarde the north west, and two other towarde the south west : but the one was hygher and bygger then the other. In the byggeest of these, the generall captayne woulde haue rested hym selfe a whyle, but he coulde not, by reason the people of these Ilandes resorted continually to the shippes with theyr Canoas, and stole nowe one thyng & nowe an other, in suche sorte that our men coulde take no rest: and therefore demaunded of the captaine that they myght stryke theyr sayles to byrnyng the shippes to lande . But the captayne beyng prouoked to anger, went aland with fourtie armed men, and burnt about fyftie of theyr houses, with many of theyr Canoas, and slue also about seuen men, and recovered a shyppe boate whiche the Barbarians had stolne, and so departed, folowynge his voyage. The Captayne named these Ilandes *Insula Latronum*, that is, the Ilandes of theeuers. *Insula Latronum.*  
 When our men had so wounded some of them with arrowes, that they were stryken through both sydes, they pulled forth the arrowes, not ceassynge to murther at them, tyll they fell downe dead : And yet coulde not the other so depart, but styll folowed y<sup>e</sup> shippes with more then two hundred of their boates, approaching as nere to the shippes as they coulde, and proferryng our men certayne fishes. As the shippes passed with ful sayle in the myddest of theyr boates, they sawe in some of them certayne women, lamentynge and tearyng theyr heare, whiche our men thought they dyd for the death of theyr husbendes . As farre as they coulde percepue, these people lyue at theyr owne lybertie, without any ruler or gouernour . They go naked, and haue blacke beards and blacke heare on theyr heades, whiche they weare long downe to their wastes . They are of the same stature that we are, and well made, of colour like vnto an Olive. Their women are wel fauored, with blacke & thicke heare on theyr heades, reachyng to the grounde . The men colour theyr teeth redde and blacke, which they

People with long heare.



## The vyages of the Spanyards

they esteeme a comely thyng. They annoynt theyr bodyes and heate with theyr oyle of *Cocus*. Theyr boates are some all blacke, some white, and some redde, and haue sayles made of the brode leaues of Date trees, sowed togeather. In the steade of a rudder, they vse a certayne brode boorde, with a staffe in the top, and may when they wyl, make the sterne the fore castell, or the fore castell the sterne. They sayle so swyftely, that they seeme a farre of, lyke Delphyns swymmyng aboute the water.

The Ilande of  
Jamaica.

The tenth daye of Marche, in the yeece .1521. they wente alande bypon a litle Ilande named *Zamal*. xxx. leagues distant from the Ilande of theenes. Because this Ilande was not inhabited, they rested here a while, where the captayne caused a pavilion to be pitched for the sycke & crased men, and a hogge to be kylled.

Wyne of Date  
trees.

The maruillous  
fruite *Cocus*.

The .xviii. daye of Marche, they sawe a boate with nyne men comyng towarde them, shewyng them selues topyll and reioysyng of theyr comyng. They brought many presentes with them, and seemed to be people of muche humanitie. They gaue the Captayne a great fysh, and a great vessell of the wyne of those Date trees whiche beare the fruite *Cocus*. They made also signes, that within the space of foure dayes, they woulde byng Ryse, and dyuers foules and beastes, as they dyd in deede. This *Cocus* is a fruite of certayne Date trees, whereof they make bread, wyne, oyle, and vineger. They make wyne in this manner. They cutte a bygge branche of the tree, and hange thereat a reede as bygge as a mans legge, into the whiche droppeth a sweete licoure from the tree, like vnto whyte wyne, somewhat tart, and let the reede continue there from moynyng tyl euenyng, and from euenyng to moynyng. The fruite of this tree called *Cocus*, is as bygge as the head of a man, or more. The fyrst rynde of this, is greene, and of the thpykenesse of two fyngers, haunyng in it certayne threedes whercof they make cordes, with the whiche they tye theyr boates. Under this rynde, there is a thpycke shell, which they burne and make pouder therof, and vse it as a remedy for certayne diseales. Under this shell, is a white substance lyke the carnel of a Nut, being a synger in thpycknesse, which they eate with fleshe and fysh, as we do bread. It hath the taste of an Almonde, and is vled in the steade of bread, when it is dyed.

In

In the myddest of this carnell, is a cleare and sweete water, beyng very hollesome and cordiale. This water sometyne con- tealeth and lyeth within the shell lyke an egge. When they in- tende to make oyle hereof, the laye it to putrisie in water, and boyle it vntyll it be lyke oyle or liquide butter. When they in- tende to make vineger, they suffer onely the water to putrisie, and then set it to the Sunne, where it becommeth vineger, lyke vnto that which is made of whyte wyne. And when they mingle the carnell with the water whiche is in the myddest of the fruite, and strayne it through a cloth, they make a mylke thereof, lyke vnto Goates mylke. These Date trees are lyke vnto them that beare Dates, but are not so full of knottes. With the iuice of two of these Date trees, a whole familie of tenne persons may be mentayned with wyne, vsyng one .viii. dayes, and the other, other .viii. dayes: for they shoulde els be dyed and wythered. These trees continue for the space of a hundred yeeres. This Islande where they founde this humane and gentle people, is called *Zuluan*, and is not very bygge. About this Islande they founde many other Islandes, and therefore named this sea *Archipelago di San Lazaro*, that is, the great sea of saint Lazarus, be- yng tenne degrees aboue the Equinoctiall toward our pole; and C. lxi. from the place from whence they departed. The people of this Islande are *Capbranita* (that is Gentiles. They go naked, sayng that they couer theyr priuie partes with a cloth made of the rynd of a certaine tree. The chieffest men, haue about theyr heades a sylken cloth of needle wooke. They are grosse and bode set, and of the coloure of an Olyue. They annoynt theyr bodies with the oyle of *Cocus*, to defende them agaynst the heate of the Sunne, and drynesse of the wynde. The .xxv. daye of Marche, they departed from hence, and directed theyr course betweene the West and south west, and sayled betweene foure Islandes, named *Cenalo*, *Huinanghan*, *Hibussan*, and *Abarien* &c.

The Island of  
Zuluan.

The sea called  
Archipelago di  
San Lazaro.

Gentiles,

Foure Islandes,

The .xxviii. daye of Marche, they came to the Islande of *Buthuan*, where they were honorably entertayned of the Kyng and the Prynce his sonne, who gaue them muche golde and spices. The Captayne gaue the Kyng a vesture of red cloth, and an other of pelotwe, made after the Turkysh fashion, and also a redde cappe: and gaue lyke wyse to other that came with

The Island of  
Buthuan.

## The vyages of the Spanyards

with hym certayne knyues, glasses, and beades of Cry stall. After that the Captayne had shewed the Kyng the secretes of his shyp, and suche merchaundies as he had therein, he caused a peece of ordinaunce sodenly to be shotte of, whereat the kyng was greatly amased, vntyl the Captayne comforted hym. Then the Captayne commaunded one of his men to be armed from the head to the foote, and caused thre other to stryke hym with theyr swoordes, whereat the kyng marueyled greatly, and sayde to thinterpretour (who was a slaue boyrne in *Malacha*) that one of those armed men was able to encounter with a hundred of his men. But he marueyled much more, when the Captayne tolde hym by thinterpretoure, howe he founde the strayght by the compasse and lode stone, and howe many dayes they were without syght of any lande. Then askyng lycence to depart, the Captaine sent two of his men with hym, of y which *Antonie Pigafetta* was one. When the kyng sawe *Antonie Pigafetta* wyte the names of many thynges, and afterwarde rehearsed them againe, he marueyled yet more, makyng sygnes that such men descended from heauen. The kyng brought them fyrst to his pallace, where he interteyned them honorably, and gaue them many gyftes, as dyd also the Prince in his pallace, beyng in an other Ilande named *Caleghan*.

The Ilande of  
*Caleghan*.

Plenty of gold.

The kyng of  
*Buthuan*.

As they syfied a certeyne myne of earth in the kynges Iland, they founde peeces of golde, some as bygge as Nuttes, and other as bygge as Egges. All the kynges vesselles were of gold, and his house well furnyshed. In al the whole nation there was no man of comelyer personage then the kyng: he had his beare long downe to his Gulders, and very blacke, with a baile of sylke rouled about his head, and two great rynges of golde hangyng at his eares. He had about his myddle, a cloth wrought of cotten and sylke, impaled with golde, and reachyng downe to his knees. On his one syde, he had a long daggar with a haffe of gold, and the sheathe of a fayre kynde of carued woodde. He had on e- uery finger thre rynges of golde, and had his bodie annoynted with oyle of *storax* and *Beniamin*. The natural coloure of his face was lyke vnto the coloure of an Oliue: and all his body besyde paynted with diuers colours. The kynges name was *Raia Colambu*, and the prince was called *Raia Siagu*.

The

The last day of Marche, neare vnto Easter, the Captayne caused his priest to say Masse, and sent to the kyng by the interpreter, that his comming a land at that tyme was not to dyne with hym, but only to heare Masse. The Captayne came aland, with fiftie of his men, in theyr best apparel, without weapons or harnesse, and all the residue well armed. Before the boates came to lande, he caused sixe peeces of ordinaunce to be shot of, in token of peace, and so came alande, where the two kynges imbraced hym, and accompanied hym to the place appoynted for Masse to be sayde, not farre from the sea syde. Somewhat before the begynnynge of Masse, the Captayne sprynkled the kynges with Damaske water. When the priest was at myd Masse, at the offertorie, the kinges profered them selues to go to kysse the crosse with the Captayne, but offered nothynge. At the tyme of sacryng, when the priest lyfted vp the body of Christe, and the Christians kneeled downe and helde vp theyr handes ioyned togeather, the kynges dyd the lyke also, with great reuerence. In the meane tyme, whyle certayne of the Christians were at the Communion, a handgynne was shot of, to signifie vnto them that were in the shippes to discharge al theyr ordinaunce. When Masse was finished, the Captayne caused certayne of his men to put on their harnesse, and to make a combat with theyr naked swoordes, whereat the kynges tooke great pleasure. This doone, the Captayne caused a crosse to be brought forth, with nayles, and a crowne of thornes, geuyng commaundement to all his men to gyue reuerence therevnto, and signifying to the kynges, by the interpreter, that that banner was gyuen hym by the Emperour his lord and maister, with commaundement to leaue the same in all places where he came, to the great commoditie and profyte of al such as woulde reuerendly receyue it, as an assured token of friendship, and that he woulde therfore leaue it there, aswel to accomplishe his lordes commaundement, as also that yf at any tyme any ships of Christians shoulde chaunce to come that way, myght by seying that crosse, perceyue that our men had been wel enterteyned there, and woulde therfore not only absteyne from doing them any hurt or displeasure, but also helpe to ayde them against their enemies: and that therefore it shoulde be requisite to erect that crosse hypon the toppe of the hyghest mountayne that myght

A combatte.



myght be seene from the sea on euery syde, also to pray buto it reuerently: and that in so doyng, they shoulde not be hurt with thunder, lyghtnyng, and tempestes. When the kynges hearde these wordes, they gaue the captaine great thanks, promysyng gladly to obserue and fulfyl al such thynges as he required. Then the Captaine demaunded, whether they were Moores or Gentiles: They answered, that they had none other kinde of religion, but that lyfeyng by theyr handes toynded togeather, and theyr faces towarde heauen, they called vpon theyr God *Abba*. Which answer was lyked the Captayne very well, because the Gentiles are sooned perswaded to our sayth then the Moores.

Moores and  
Gentiles.

Mani Ilands.

The Iland of  
Messana.

Departyng from hence, they came to the Ilandes of *Zeilon*, *Zubut*, *Messana*, and *Calaghan*, by the conduct of certayne Pilots of the sayde kynges. Of these, *Zubut* is the best, and hath the trade of best trafique. In the Ilande of *Messana* they founde Dogges, Cattes, Hogges, Hennes, Goates, Ryse, Synger, Cocus, Myll, Panicke, Barly, Fygges, Oranges, Wape, and Golde, in great quantitie. This Ilande is aboute the Equinoctial towarde our pole niene degrees, & two thirde partes, and 162. degrees from the place from whence they departed. They remayned in this Ilande for the space of epyght dayes, and then directed their viage toward the Northwest, and passed betwene these syue Ilandes, *Zeilon*, *Bobol*, *Cangbu*, *Barbai*, and *Catighan*. In this Iland of *Catighan* are certayne great Battes, as bygge as Eagles, of the whiche they tooke one: they are good to be eaten, and of taste much lyke a Henne. There are also Stocke Doves, Turtle Doves, Poppingays, & certayne fowles as big as Hennes: these fowles haue litle hornes, & lay great egges, whiche they couer a cubit deapth in the sand, by the heate wherof, & vertue of the Sonne, they are hatched, & the young birdes crepe out of the sand by themselves. From the Iland of *Messana* to *Catighan*, are 20. leagues saylyng toward the West. And because the kyng of *Messana* coulde not folowe the shippes, they tarped for him about the Ilandes of *Polo*, *Ticobon*, and *Fozon*, where the Captayne toke hym into his shippe, with certayne of his principal men, and so folowed theyr viage toward the Ilande of *Zubut*, which is about fyfte leagues distant from *Catighan*.

Battes as byg  
as Eagles.

Fowles with  
hornes.

Egges hatched  
in Ilande.

The Ilande of  
Zubut.

The seuen th day of Apryll, about noone, they entred into the

port of *Zubut*: And passing by many villages and habitations in trees, they came to the citie, where the Captayne gaue commaundement to the maryners to stryke theyr sayles, and to set them selues in order in maner of battayle raye, causyng all the ordinaunce to be shotte of, wherewith all the people were put in great feare. After this, the Captayne sent an ambassadour with thinterpretoure to the kyng of *Zubut*.

When they approached neere to the citie, they found the kyng with a great company of men sore astonied at the noyse of the gunnes. But thinterpretour aduertised them, that it was the custome of our men, in all suche places where they come, to discharge theyr ordinaunce in token of frendshyppe, and to honour the lord of the citie. With which wordes the kyng and his company were well quicted. After this, the interpretour declared that his master was the Captayne of the shippes of the greatest Prince in the worlde, and that they went to discouer the *Ilandes of Molucca*: And further, that hearyng of his good name and fame by the report of the kyng of *Messana*, they determyned to visite him, & to haue vittailles for exchange of their merchandies. The kyng answered, that he was wel content therewith, and that they were hartly welcome: Neuerthelesse, that it was a custom in that place, that al such shypys as entered into that haven, should pay tribute: And that there were not many dayes past, sence a shyp laden with golde and slaues dyd so paye. In token whereof, he caused to come befoze hym certayne merchauntes of that company which yet remayned with hym. To this thinterpretour answered, that forasmuche as his lord was the Captayne of so myghtie a Prince, he neuer payde tribute to any kyng in the worlde, and would not now begyn: Tyllyng hym to take this for a resolute answere, that if he would accepte the peace that was profered him, he should enioy it, and if he rather despyed warre, he should haue his handes ful. When thinterpretour had sayde these woordes, one of the sayde merchauntes (who was a *Dooze*) spake to the kyng in this maner *Catacaia Chita*: that is, Take heede sy: For these men are they that haue conquered *Calecut*, *Malacha*, and all the greater *India*, and are of suche power, that if you intreate them otherwys then wel, you may to late knowe what they are able to do, moze then they haue done

A shyppe laden with gold and slaues.

*Calecut*.  
*Malacha*.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

at *Calecut* and *Malaca*. When thinterpretoure hearde these woordes, he sayde, that the kyng his Lorde was of much greater puissaunce and moze dominions, and lord of moze shippes then was the kyng of *Portugale*: declaryng further that he was kyng of *Spayne*, and Emperour of all *Chyristendome*. Addyng hereunto, that if he woulde not be his frende, he woulde hereafter sende thither suche a power of armed men as shoulde destroy his countrey. The *Dooze* conferred al these woordes with the king, who sayde that he woulde further deliberate with his counsaile, and geue them a full aunswere the daye folowynge. In the meane tyme he sent them certayne byttaples and wyne. When all these thynges were declared to the kyng of *Messana*, who was the chiefeest thereabout next vnto him, and lord of many Ilandes, he went a lande and repayed to the kyng of *Zubut*, and declared vnto hym the great humanitie and curtesie of the generall Captayne. Shortly after, the Captayne sente certayne of his men with thinterpretour to the kyng of *Zubut*, to knowe his pleasure, and what aunswere he woulde make them. As they went towarde the court, they met the kyng commynge in the streete, accompanied with many of his chiefe men. He caused our men to lye downe by hym, and demaunded of them if there were any moze then one Captayne in theyr companie: and whether it were theyr request that he should paye tribute to the Emperour. They aunswerea, that they despyed none other thyng, but that they myght exercise merchaundies with them, and to barter ware for ware. The kyng made aunswere, that he was well content therewith: wyllynge the Captayne, in token of frendshyp, to sende hym a litle blood of his ryght arme, affirmynge that he woulde do the lyke &c.

She addyng of  
blood is a token  
of frendshyp.

After this, the kyng of *Messana*, with the kyng of *zubut* his newie (who was the prince) and certayne other of his gentle-  
men, came to the shippes, and brought the Captayne many goodly presentes. They entred into great amitie, and had large communication of many thynges. The Captayne perswaded them to the *Christian* fayth: whiche they gladly embrased, and tooke such pleasure in hearyng the articles of our beliefe, that the teares fell from theyr eyes for ioye. They were baptised, and shortly after all the people of the Ilande. They esteeme nothing moze precious then drynkynge glasses of *Venice* woozke.

The kyng of *zubut*  
but is baptised.

When

When they came to the citie, they founde the kyng in his Palace sitting vppon a floore or storie made of the leaues of Date trees, wrought after a curious deuise, lyke a certayne kynde of mattes. He had vppon his body none other apparell but only a cloth of Bombasine cotton, hangyng before his priuie partes. On his head, he had a bayle of needle worke, and about his necke a chayne of great price. At his eares, hung two Ryngees of gold, wherein were inclosed many pprecious stones. He was but of small stature, but somewhat grosse, and had the residue of his body paynted with dyuers colours, whereof some were lyke vnto flaming fyre. Before him, he had two vesselles made of the fine earth called *Porcellana*, with sodden egges. Also foure vesselles of *Porcellana* full of wyne made of Date trees, and couered with many odoriferous hearbes. The Prince brought them to his house, where he had foure daughters, very well fauoured and whyte, lyke ours. Hee caused them to daunce all naked, and therewith to sing, and playe on certayne Tymbyelles made of metall. At this tyme it so chaunced, that one of the Spanyardes dyed in one of the shyppes, and when certayne of theyr company desired the kyng to gyue them leaue to burie him on the land: he answered, that forasmuche as he and all his, were at the commaundement of theyr kyng and maister, howe muche more ought the grounde so to bee. They greatly marueyled at the ceremonies parteynyng to the maner of our funeralles, and honoured the crosse which were set at both the endes the graue. They lyue with iustice, and vse weightes and measures. Their houses are made of Tymber and sawne boordes, and are so builded aboue the grounde vppon proppes and pylles, that they ascende to the same by certayne staires. Under theyr houses, they keepe theyr Dogges and Hennes.

The kyng of  
Zabut his appa-  
rell.

Well fauoured  
women.

When they came to barterynge, they gaue golde, Ryle, Dogges, Hennes, and dyuers other thynges for some of our tryples of small value. They gaue tenne *Pesos* of golde for sixtiene poundes weyght of Iron. One *Peso* is in value a ducate and a halfe. The Sunday folowyng, the kyng was baptysed with great solemnitie: at which tyme, the Captayne admonished him before, not to be afrayde at the shootyng of of the ordinance, because it was theyr custome so to doe at such sollemne feastes.

Barterynge.

Pesos what  
it is.



## The viages of the Spanyardes

They breake  
them Idolles  
and erecte the  
Crosse.

Four hundred  
men baptised.

The Queene  
of Zabut.

The Queenes  
apparill.

After this, the Captayne caused them to breake all theyr Idoles, and to set vp the crosse in dyuers places, praying to the same both morning and euening kneeling on theyr knees, and holding by theyr handes ioyned together. The kyng in his baptism was named Charles, after the Emperours name, and the Prince, *Ferdinando*, after the name of his maiesties brother. The kyng of *Messana* was named John, & the Dooze Christopher. To all other they gaue suche noines as are comunonly vled in Christendome. And thus before masse was begunne, were fyue hundred men baptised. When masse was finished, the Captayne inuited the Kyng to dyne with him in his hypppe, and at his commynge, caused the ordinaunce to be discharged. The Queene was also baptised, with fourtie of her gentlewomen, and her daughter the princes wyfe. The Queene was very young and fayre, hauyng her bodie couered with a whyte cloth. Her hyppes were redde, and she had on her head a Hatte, on the toppe wherof was a triple crowne, much lyke the Popes: this crowne and the Hat, were made of the leaues of Date trees. Within the space of eyght dayes, the inhabitantes of the Islande were baptised, excepte one village of Idolatours, who would not herein obey the kynges commaundement. Wherevpon the Captayne sent certayne of his men thither, who burnt the towne, and erected a crosse in that place, bycause the people of the byllage were Gentyles (that is) Idolaters. But if they had been Doozes (that is, *Mackumetistes*) they woulde haue erected a pyller of stone, bycause the Doozes are more stubberne and harder to be conuerted then are the gentiles. When the Queene came to the place where she should heare masse, she came forth with great pompe and solemnitie, hauyng going before her three young damosels, and three men with their Cappes in their hands, whom she folowed appparelled in whyte and blacke, with a great bayle of lilke vpon her head, fringed about with golde, which couered her hatte, and hung downe to her shoulders: She had also a great trayne of women folowynge her, beyng all barefooted and naked, excepte that vpon theyr heades and priuie partes they wore certayne bayles of lilke, and had theyr heare spreadde.

Before the kyng of *Zabut* was baptised, he was named *Rais Humabuon*. When the Captayne demaunded of him why all  
the.

the Idolles in the Ilande were not burne accordyng to his promyse, he answered, that they esteemed them no more as goddes, but only made sacrifice to them for the Princes brother, who was very sicke, and as noble and wittie a man as was in the Ilande. The Captayne answered, that if he would burne all his Idolles, and beleue saythfully in Christ, and be baptised, he should bee immediately restored to health, and that he would els giue them leaue to stryke of his head. By these woordes and persuations of the Captayne, he conceyued such hope of health, that after he was baptised hee felte no more greefe of his disease. And this was a manifeste miracle wrought in our tyme, whereby diuers Infidelles were conuerted to our sayth, and theyr Idolles destroyed, and also theyr Altars ouerthrowen on the which they were accustomed to eate the sacrificed fleshe. The people of the Ilande paye the kyng a portion of victualles for theyr tribute by all theyr cities and byllages.

A miracle.

Not farre from this Ilande of *Zubut*, is the Ilande of *Matan*, whose inhabitantes vse marueplous ceremonies in theyr sacrifices to the sonne, and burying the dead. They weare ringes of golde about their priuie members. The Iland is gouerned by two Princes, whereof the one is named *Zula*, and the other *Cilapulapu*. And whereas this *Cilapulapu* refused to paye tribute to the kyng of Spayne, the Captayne went agaynst him in his owne person with 60. of his men, armed with coates of maple and Helmes. *Cilapulapu* diuided his army into three battayles, hauyng in euery battayle two thousand & fyeie men, with armed bowes, arrowes, dartes, and Iauelins hardened at the poyntes with fyre. This continued long and sharpe. But the Captayne being a balaunt man, and preasing him selfe in the brunte of the battaile, was sore wounded and slaine, forasmuche as the most of the Barbarians directed all their force agaynst him. Besyde the Captayne, were slayne of our men about .viii. or .ix. Of the Barbarians, were .xv. slayne, & many sore wounded. After the death of the Captayne, they chose two other in his place, of the which one was *Odoardo Barbossa* a Portugale, and the other *Iohn Serrano*, who was shortly after betrayde by the interpretour, and taken prisoner with dyuers other.

The Ilande of Matan.

The Captayne Magellanus is slaine.

Certaine dayes befoze the captaines death, they had knowledge

## The viages of the Spanyardes

of the Ilandes of *Molucca*, whiche they chiefly sought. Departing therefore from the Ilande of *Maiban*, they sayled farre, and came to the Cape of an other Ilande named *Bohol*. In the myddest of this mayne sea (which they named *Archipelagus*) they consulted to burne the shyppe named *Conception*, because they were nowe fewe in number, and to furnish the other two shippes with the artillerie thereof. Thus directyng thei course toward South-west, they came to an other Ilande named *Pauiloghon*, where they founde blacke men, lyke vnto the *Sarasing*. Shortly after, they arryued at an other great Ilande, whose kyng, named *Raia Calanar*, intreated them very friendly in all thynges, as dyd the kyng of *Massana*. This Ilande is ryche in golde, and hath plentie of Ryffe, Synger, Hogges, Geates, Hennes, and dyuers other thynges: It is named *Chippit*, and is viii. degrees aboue the Equinociall lyne toward our pole, and in longitude from the place from whence they first departed. 170. degrees, and about. 50. leagues from *Zubut*.

The Ilande of  
*Bohol*.  
They burnt  
one of thei  
shippes.

Blacke men.

The Ilande of  
*Chippit*.

The Ilande of  
*Caghaian*.

Departing from hence, they came to an other Ilande, named *Caghaian*, beyng 40. leagues from *Chippit*, as they sayled betweene the Weste and South-west. This Ilande is very great, and in maner vnhabited. The people are *Hoozes*, and were banished out of the Ilande of *Burnei*, which some call *Porne*.

The Ilande of  
*Pulaoan*.

From this Ilande about. xxv. leagues betweene the Weste and North-west, they founde a marueylous fruitfull Ilande named *Pulaoan*, beyng toward our pole about the Equinociall niene degrees and a thirde parte, and. C. lxxix. degrees and a thirde parte in longitude from the place of their departyng.

The Ilande of  
*Burnei* or  
*Porne*.

From this Ilande. x. leagues toward the South-west, they sawe an other Ilande, whiche seemed to them sometymes to mount as they sayled by the coastes thereof. As they were entering into the port, there arose a boystuous & dark tempest, which ceased as soone as the fyres of the thre saintes (whereof we haue spoken before) appeared vpon the cables. From the beginning of this Iland to the porte, are fyue leagues. This Ilande is great and ryche, and the chiefe citie thereof conteyneth. xxv. thousande houses. The Kyng enterpyned our men very friendly, and sent them, besyde many other presentes, two *Elephantes*, trapped with liike, to bryng them to his Pallace that brought the

A great citie.

Elephantes.

the presentes which the Captaynes sent him . He hath a magnificentall Courte, and a great garde , also a multitude of concubynes . He is a Hoore, and is named *Raia Siripada*. He is a kyng of great power, and hath vnder him many other kynges, Ilands, and cities . This Ilande of *Burnei*, is aboute the Equinoctiall toward our pole, fyue degrees and a quarter , and in longitude from the place of theyr departyng. C. lxxvi. degrees, and two third partes.

Departyng from *Burnei*, they came to an Ilande called *Cimbulon*, beyng. viii. degrees aboute the Equinoctiall lyne . Here they remayned .xl. dayes, to calke theyr shippes, and furnysh them with freshe water and fuell, which was to them great payne and trauaple, bycause they were in maner all bare footed, their shooes (and in maner their other apparel) being wozyne, by reason of the long vyage . In the woods of this Iland, they found a tree, whose leaves as soone as they fall on the ground, doe sturre and remoue from place to place, as though they were alyue : they are muche lyke the leaves of a Mulbery tree, and haue on euery syde as it were two shoyt & blunt feete. When they are cut or broken, there is no blood seene come forth of them: Yet when any of them are touched, they sodainly moue and starte away. *Antoni Pigafetta* kept one of them in a platter for the space of. viii. dayes, and euer when he touched it, it ranne rounde about the platter. We suppose that they lyue only by ayre.

Leaves of trees which seme to lyue.

Departyng from hence, they directed theyr course by the West quarter toward the Southeast, to fynde the Ilandes of *Molucca*, and sayled not farre from certayne mountaynes, where they founde the sea full of great weedes and hearbes.

A sea full of weedes.

From hence, they came to the Ilandes of *Zolo* and *Taghima*, in the which are founde pearles of exceedyng bygnesse.

Pearles.

Folowyng theyr course toward the Northeast, they came to a great citie named *Mangdando*, lying aboute the Ilandes of *Buthuan* and *Calaghan*, where they tooke a Canoe of certayne of the inhabitantes: by whom beyng informed of the Ilandes of *Molucca*, they lefte theyr course toward the Northeast, and folowed the Southeast, neare vnto a Cape of the Ilande of *Buthuan*: they were aduertised for certentie, that on the banks of a certayne ryuer, there dwelt men ouergrowen with heare, and

Men ouergrown with of heare.



## The viages of the Spanyardes

of hygh stature.

Folowyng styl theyr course by the Southeast, and passyng by many small Ilandes, they came to the Ilandes of *Molucca*, the sixte day of Nouember, and the .xxvii. moneth after their departure out of Spayne. Beyng therefore ioyfull, and gpyuyng thankes vnto God, they discharged all theyr ordinaunce. In the coaste of all these Ilandes, euen vnto the Ilandes of *Molucca*, soundyng with theyr plummet, they founde the deapth of the sea to be no lesse then a hundred and two yardes, which is contrary to the saying of the Portugales, who affyrme that no shyppe can passe that way without great daunger, by reason of the shallownesse and rockes or shelues, and for the darkenesse which the cloudes cause in the heauen. All which things they sayned, to the intent that none other should haue knowledge of theyr viages.

The eyght day of Nouember, in the yeere 1521. before the rysing of the Sunne, they entered into the porte of the Ilande of *Tidore*, beyng one of the chiefe Ilandes of *Molucca*, where they were honozably interteyned of the kyng, who declared that he had long before seene a signe in heauen, that certayne shyppes shoulde come from a farre countrey to the Ilandes of *Molucca*: And that whereas for the better certificate thereof, he considered the stations of the Moone, he sawe therein the comynge of our shyppes, and that we were the men whom he seemed to see in the same. Wherevpon he profered him selfe to enter into league of friendship with the kyng of Spayne, and to accepte our men as his bretheren and chyldren, wyllyng them to come alande as into theyr owne houses: Also, that for theyr comynge, that Ilande shoulde no more bee called *Tidore*, but *Castile*, for the great loue whiche he bore to theyr Kyng, whom he reputed as his Lorde and maister. This Kyng is a Doore, and is named *Raia Sultan, Maunzor*.

The Ilandes of *Molucca*, are fyue in number, and are thus named, *Tarenate*, *Tidore*, *Mutiv*, *Macchian*, and *Bacchian*. Of these, *Tarenate* is the cheefest.

Directly agaynst the Ilande of *Tidore*, there is an other great Ilande, named *Gilolo*, inhabited of Doores and Gentiles. The Doores haue two Kynges, of the whiche one hath sixe hundred chyldren, and the other sixe hundred and sytie. The

Gentyles

The Ilandes  
of *Molucca*.

The Portu-  
gales are rejoy-  
ced.

Tidore one of  
the Ilandes of  
*Molucca*.

A vision in the  
Planettes.

The fyue Is-  
landes of *Molucca*.

*Tarenate*.

The Ilande  
of *Gilolo*.

Doores and  
Gentyles.

Gentyles keepe not so many women as doe the Moores, nor yet lyue in suche superstitions. They pray to the first thyng that they meete in the moornyng when they goe forth of theyr houses, and honour that as theyr God for that day. The Kyng of the Gentyles is very ryche in golde. In the sayde Ilande of Gilolo, Golde.  
Water fit  
Reedes. are Reedes as byg as a mans legge, and full of cleare water hol-  
some to be drunke.

The. xii. day of Nouember, the kyng of Tidore appoynted our men a warehouse in the cite, where they myght sell theyr merchaundies. Theyr maner  
of barter pug. Theyr maner of exchaunge was in this sorte. For tenne pades of good redde cloth, they had one Babar of Cloues, which amounteth to foure Cantari and six pound weight: And one Cantar is a hundred pounde weyght. For. xv. pades of cloth somewhat wooyle then the other, they receyued in Cambie, one Babar. For. xxxv. dyynkyng cuppes of glasse, they had one Babar. For. xvii. Cathyls of quicke siluer, one Babar. They came dayly to the shippes with many of theyr Barkes full of Goates, Hennes, pygges of a spanne long, also the fruite called Cocus, with dyuers other kyndes of victualles, in suche quantitie that it was a marueylous thyng to beholde. Water of a  
straunge  
qualitie. They furnyshed also theyr shippes with freshe water, which is hotte as it issueth out of the spring, but is very colde when it hath stooode a whyle in an other place. It springeth from the mountaynes on the which the cloues trees growe. They sawe a cloude ryse in maner dayly, whiche compasseth about the sayde mountaynes.

The kyng of the Ilande of Bacchian, sent the kyng of Spaine Byrdes of  
a straunge  
fourme. two dead byrdes of straunge fourme. They were of the bygnesse of Turtle Dooes, with little heades and long bylles: also long and smail legges, and no wynges, but in the steele thereof certayne long feathers of diuers colours, and taples lyke Turtle Dooes: all the other feathers are of one colour, much lyke vnto tawny, excepte those of the wynges: they flee not but when the wynde bloweth. These Moores are of opinion that these byrdes come from the heauenly Paradyse, and therefore call them *Manuccodiata*, that is, the byrdes of God.

When they were determyued to departe from the Ilandes of Molucca, certayne kynges of the Ilandes accompanied them  
Ll. liii.
with

## The viages of the Spanyardes

with theyr Canoas, and conducted them to an Ilande called *Mare*, where they refreshed theyr shippes with freshe water and fuell. The kynges sent the Emperours maiestie many presentes: and embrasing our men, departed with the teares in theyr eyes, and our men for theyr laste farewell, shot of all their ordinance. When in the Ilande of *Mare*, they percepued that one of theyr shippes leaked and tooke water very soze, whereby they were inforced to tarrie there three dayes: But seeing that they coulde fynde no remedie for the same, but in long tyme, they determined to leaue it, gyuing order that if afterwarde it coulde bee repayed, they should returne into Spayne as well as they could.

They leaue  
one of theyr  
shippes behinde  
them.

The Ilandes  
of Molucca.

Group of syles.

Wopingayes.

In all the Ilandes of *Molucca* is founde Cloues, Ginger, bzead of the roote of *Sagu*, Ryle, Gtates, sheepe, Pennes, Figges, Almondcs, sweete Pomegranates and lowze, Oranges, Lemondcs, and hony, which is made of certayne syles lesse then Antes: Also canes of suger, oyle of *Cocus*, Bellons, Gourdes, and a marueylous colde fruite whiche they name *Camulicai*, and dyuers other fruites. Furthermore, whyte and red Wopingayes, and other of variable colours. It is not passe fiftie yeeres since the *Moors* first inhabited any of these Ilandes, whiche were before inhabited only with Gentiles.

The Ilande of  
Tidore.

Terenate.

Mutir.

Macchian.

Bacchian.

The Ilande of *Tidore*, is aboue the Equinoctiall line toward our pole about .27. minutes, and in longitude from the place from whence they departed. 171. degrees, and from the *Archipelagus*, in the which is the Ilande of *Zamal*, whiche our men named the Ilande of theeues. ix. degrees and a halfe, and runneth to the quarter of South South west, and North North east. *Terenate*, is vnder the Equinoctiall lyne foure minutes, vnder the pole *Antartike*. *Mutir*, is directly vnder the Equinoctiall lyne. *Macchian* is. xii. minutes toward the pole *Antartike*, and *Bacchian* one degree. These Ilands are lyke *iiii*. sharpe mountaines, except *Macchian*, which is not sharpe. The biggest of all these, is *Bacchian*. Departyng from the Ilande of *Mare*, and directyng theyr course toward the South west, with only. xlii. men in theyr shyppe, and. xlii. Indians, they passed by the Ilandes of *Chaco-*

Many Ilands uan, Lagoma, Sico, Glogbi, Capbi, Sulacho, Lumatola, Tenctum, Buu, Ambon, Budia, Celaruri, Benaia, Ambalao, Bandon, Zorobaa,

Zolo,

Zolot, Noceunamor, Galian, and Mallua, with dyuers other Ilands. The Iland of  
Mallua,  
both great and small, of Moores, Gentiles, and Canibales.  
Our men remayned .xv. dayes in the Ilande of Mallua, to re-  
payre theyr thyrpe in certayne places where it tooke water.  
All the feeldes of this Ilande is full of long and rounde Pepper,  
and is situate towarde the pole Antartike vnder the Equinoctial Pepper.  
line .viii. degrees and a halfe, and is in the longitude of .169.  
degrees and .40. minutes.

The Pilot, whiche our men brought out of the Ilandes of  
Molucca, tolde them that not farre from thence was an Ilande Little men with  
long eares.  
named Arucetto, in the whiche are men and women not past a cu-  
bite in heyght, hauyng eares of suche byggennesse, that they lye  
bypon one, and couer them with the other. But our men would  
not sayle thither, both because the wynde and course of the sea  
was agaynst them, and also for that they gaue no credite to his  
reporre. The .xxv. daye of Januarie in the yeere .1522. they  
departed from Mallua, and the day folowynge, arryued at a great The Ilandes of  
Timor.  
Ilande named Timor, beyng fyue leagues distant from Mallua  
betweene the south and south west. In this Ilande is found  
the wood of whyte Saunders and Synger, and dyuers kyndes White Saun-  
ders and Syn-  
ger.  
of frutes. Also sundry kyndes of beastes, and plentie of vitaille  
and golde. They of the Ilandes of Giaua, Molucca, and Lozon,  
resorte to this Iland for Saunders. The inhabitantes are gen-  
tyles. They saye that when they go to cutte the wood of Saun-  
ders, the deuyl appeareth to them in dyuers fourmes, and asketh  
them what they haue neede of: And that after this vision, many of  
them are long sicke. In al þ Ilands of this Archipelagus, rayneth The deuyl ap-  
peareth.  
the diseale of Iaine Job (whiche we call the frenche poxe) more  
then in any other place in the worlde. Saint Job his  
diseale.

Farre from this Ilande betweene the west and north west,  
they came to an Ilande named Ende, in the whiche groweth Cinamome.  
great plentie of Sinanome. In this tracte are founde many I- The Ilandes  
of Giaua.  
landes, lying in order as it were one directly behynde an other, e- Malacca.  
uen vnto the Iland of the greater Giaua, named Giaua maior, and  
vnto the cape of Malacca, beyng in East India. Giaua the lesse,  
is as bygge as the Ilande of Madera, and is but halfe a league  
distant from Giaua maior. Here they were informed that aboute  
Giaua maior towarde the north, is a great gulf called the gulf  
of China,



## The vyages of the Spanyards

The great gulfe  
of China.

The cape of  
Malacha.

The names of  
many regions.

Subarke.

The great  
kyng of China.

The greater  
India.

The beast called  
Linx.

The punish-  
ment of rebels.

of China, in the whiche are trees of exceedyng byggnesse, inhabi-  
ted with foules of such greatnesse, that they cary great beastes in  
the ayre. The frutes of these trees are as byg as Cucummers.  
The cape of Malacha. is one degree and a halfe aboue the E-  
quinocctiall line toward the pole Artike. On the east syde of this  
cape, runneth a very long coast, in the which are many regions  
& cities, wherof some are called by these names, Cingaporla, whi-  
che is the cape. Also Pahan, Calantan, Patani, Braalin, Benu, Lon-  
gon, and Odia, wherin is the citie in the whiche dwelleth the kyng  
of Sian named Zacabedera. Theyr cities are buylded as ours are,  
and subiect to the kyng of Sian. After the realme of Sian, are the  
regions of Lamgoma, and Campaa, where Reubarbe groweth, of  
the whiche are diuers opinions, some supposyng it to be a roote,  
and other a putrified tree, affyrming that if it were not putrified,  
it should not haue so great a sauour. They call it Calama. Next  
vnto this, is founde the great China, whose kyng is thought to be  
the greatest pynce in the worlde, and is named Santoa Raia. Fur-  
thermoze, all that is written hereafter of this kyng and these re-  
gions, they learned by thinfozmation of a Dooze that was in the  
Island of Timor. He affirmed that the sayd kyng hath threescore  
and tenne crowned kynges vnder his empyre, and hath a port in  
the sea named Canthan, and two principall cities named Naw-  
chin and Commulaba, where he remaineth hym selfe, and hath euer  
foure of his chiefe pynces lying about his palace on euery syde,  
toward the east, west, north, and south, geuyng diligent atten-  
daunce what is done in euery of theyr quarters. All the pynces  
of the greater India (calles India Maior) and of that whereof I  
haue spoken befoze, are obedient to this kyng. And in token that  
they are true subiectes, they keepe in theyr palaces, which are in  
the myddest of theyr cities, the beast called Linx, beyng sayzer  
then a Lion, and is the great kynges signet, whiche all such as  
intende to go to China, beare with them sealed in waxe, or on a  
peece of Iuerpe, for theyr safe conducte, without the whiche they  
may not enter into the hauein.

When any of his kynges rebell or are disobedient, he cau-  
seth them to be slayen, and salted, and dyed at the Sunne, then  
to be stuffed with chaffe, and set vp on some hygh thyng in the  
myddest of the chiefe streete of the citie, where al the people may  
see

see it. He neuer suffereth his owne person to be openly serue to any man: But when his noble men of the court are desirous to see hym, he cometh downe from his palace into a ryche pavilion, accompanied with fyve of his principall concubines, apparelled with lyke vestures as he hym selfe is. All this way he is not seene, by reason of the pavilion. When he hath passed through the pauplyon, he entereth into a Serpent, named *Nagha*, being the most marueylous and ryche woork of the worlde, and placed in the greatest court of the palace. When the kyng entereth into this with the women, to the intent that he may not be knowen among them, he causeth the sayde noble men only to looke in at a glasse whiche is in the breste of the Serpent, where they see the kyng among the women, but can not discerne whiche is he. He ioyneth in maryage with his syster, that the blood royall be not myxt with any other. His palace is environed with seven large walles, the one being farre distant from the other, and hath in every suche circuite tenne thousand men for the garrison of his palace, who haue theyr waytyng dayes appoynted them course by course, with freshe men in theyr places, and thus keepe theyr watche continually both day and nyght. In this palace are .lxxix. haules, in the whiche is an infinite number of women that serue the kyng, haryng ever lyght torches in theyr handes for the greater magnificence. He that woulde see all the palace, shoulde spende a whole daye therein. Among other, there are foure principall haules, where sometimes the kyng geueith audience to his noble men. Of these, one is couered both aboue and beneath with metall, another all ouer with syluer, the thyrde with golde, and the fourth with pearles & precious stones. These people of *China*, are whyte men, apparelled as we are, and eate theyr meate on tables as we do. They haue the crosse in some estimation, but knowe not the cause whye. Beyond the coaste of *China*, are dyuers other nations and people, as *Chencky*, where Pearles and Sinamome are founde: also the people named *Lickij*, where reigneth the great kyng of *Mien*, haryng vnder hym .xxii. kynges, and is subiecte to the kyng of *China*. Here is also founde the great citie of *Cathay* in the East, and dyuers other nations in the sayde sygne lande, of the which some are brutysh and beastyall, whiche vse to kill

The kyng is not seene but at a glasse.

The kyng of strange woorkes manufyr.

The kyng marieth his syster. His palace.

A marueylous garde.

Women serue the kyng.

Foure marueylous haules.

The people of China.

The great kyng of Mien, Cathay.

and

## The vyages of the Spanyards

and eate theyr parentes when they be olde, thynkyng thereby that they shall reuyue in them: All these people are Gentyles.

The .xi. daye of February in the yeere .1522. they departed from the Ilande of Timor, and were ingulfed by chaunce in the great sea called *Lantchidol*, and tooke theyr course betweene the west and south west, leapyng the north coastes on theyr ryght hande, fearyng least if they shoulde sayle towarde the firme land, they myght be seene of the Portugales, who are of great power in *Malacha*: and therefore dyrected theyr course without the Ilande of *Sumatra*, called in olde tyme *Taprobana*, leapyng also on theyr ryght hand, vppon the fyrm lande, the prouinces and regions of *Pegu*, *Bengala*, *Calecut*, *Canonor*, *Coa*, *Cambaina*, the gulfe of the Ilande of *Ormus*, and all the coastes of the greater *India*. And more safely to passe the cape of *Buona Speranza*, beyng aboue *Affrike*, they sayled about .xlii. degrees towarde the pole *Antartike*, & remayned seuen weekes about that cape, with many fetches compassyng the wynde with theyr sayles continually alofte, because they had a west and north west wynde in the proos of theyr shyppe, whiche woulde not suffer them to passe. The cape of *Buona Speranza*, is toward the pole *Antartike*, beneath the *Equinoctiall* line .34. degrees and a halfe, and .1600. leagues from the cape of *Malacha*, and is the greatest and most dangerous cape that is founde at this daye in all the worlde.

When they had by these perpls ouerpassed this cape, certayne of them, as well for lacke of vyttayles, as also by reason of syckenesse, were mynded to sayle to a haven of the Portugales named *Monzambique*, aboue *Affryke*: But the other answered, that they woulde rather dye, then go to any other place then directly to *Spayne*. They folowed theyr course therefore, saylyng toward the South west, two monethes continually without touchyng at any port, in whiche tyme there dyed about .xvi. of theyr company, whom they cast into the sea. And suerly if God of his infinite mercie had not preserved the residue in tyme, they had all dyed of famyn.

In fine, beyng inforced of necessitie, and halfe of theyr companye dead, they sayled to one of the Ilandes of *Capo verde*, called *Insula Sancti Iacobi*, that is, *sainte James Ilande*, partecpnyng to the kyng of Portugale. Where, as soone as they arryued,

the y

The sea of  
*Lantchidol*.

*Malacha*.  
The Iland of  
*Sumetra*.  
*Pegu*.  
*Bangala*.  
*Calecut*.  
*Canonor*.  
*Coa*.  
*Cambala*.  
*Omus*.  
*East India*.  
*Cape de Buena*  
*Speranza*.

The port of  
*Monzambique*.  
*Que*.

they sent certayne a lande in the shyppe boate for vittayles, declaring to the Portugales with all loue and fauour what necessitie they were dyuen to, and what miseries and trauayles they had susteyned, insom myng them furthemoze of theyz maruylous voyage, and such thynges as they had seene in both the East and West India, with suche other gentle wooordes, whereby they obteyned certayne measures of Ryle. But when afterward xiii. of them returned for moze Ryle, they were deteyned: Whereupon the rest whiche remainned in the shyppe, fearyng the lyke chaunce, departed with full sayles, and the .vii. day of September with the helpe of God entred into the haueu of *San Lucar*. The port of *San Lucar* neere unto *Seuile*. where dischargyng all theyz ordinaunce for toy, they wente immediately to the great churche in theyz shiertes, and barefooted, with a tozche before them, to geue thanks to almyghty God, who had brought them safe to theyz owne country, and restored them to theyz wyues and chyldren. As touchyng the ende of this voyage, *Transiluanus* wyrteth somewhat moze largely, as foloweth.

The ingratitude of the Portugales.

The port of *San Lucar* neere unto *Seuile*.

What became of the other shyppe. *Dariena*.

The Cape of *Cattigara*.

The voyage hardly perforce ended.

The other shyppe whiche they left behynde them to be repaired, returned afterwarde by the *Archipelagus* afoze sayde, and by the great sea to the coastes of the fyne of the West India, and arryued at a region of the same beyng agaynst *Dariena*, where the South sea of *Sur* is separate but by a litle space of lande from the west Ocean, in the which are the Ilandes of *Hispaniola* & *Cuba*, and other Ilandes of the Spanyardes. The other shyppe, whiche returned into Spayne by compassyng about the whole bowle of the world by the coastes of East India and Affrike, departing from the Islande of *Tidore*, and saylyng euer on this syde the Equinoctial, coud not fynde the cape of *Cattigara*, being about Asia, and (by the description of *Ptolome*) reachyng many degrees beyond the Equinoctiall: But haupyng sayled many dayes by the mayne sea, they came to the cape of *Buona Speranza* and from thence to the Ilandes of *Capo verde*, where theyz shyppe, beyng soore brooked by reason of the long voyage, leaked and tooke water, in suche sorte that the maryners, beyng nowe but fewe in number, and those also weake and feeble by reason of long sickness & hunger, were not able both to dye the pompe continually, and otherwyse gouerne the shyppe, and were therefore of necessity

rescued.



## The viages of the Spanyardes

They bye  
slaves for lacke  
of helpe.

cellite enforced to go alande at the Ilande of saint James, to bye them certayne slaves to helpe them. But beyng destitute of mony, accordyng to the custome of the maryners, they profered them cloues for theyr slaves. The whiche thyng when it came to the eares of the Portugale that was Captayne of that Ilande, he cast .xiii. of them in prison: Whereby the resydue that remayned in the shyppe (beyng nowe but .xviii. in number) were put in such feare, that they departed immediatly without rescuing theyr felowes, & sailed continually both by day & by night by the coastes of Africke, & came in fine to Spaine .j. vi. day of September in the yeere of our lorde. 1522. and arryued at the port nere vnto Hiule the .xvi. moneth after they departed from the Ilande of *Tidore*. Maryners doubtlesse more woorthy to be celebrate with eternall memory then they whiche in olde tyme were called *Argonauti*, that sayled with *Iason* to wyn the golden fleece in the region of *Cholchis* & the ryuer of *Phasis* in the great sea of *Pontus*. And the shyppe it selfe, more woorthy to be placed among the starres, then that olde *Argo*, whiche departyng out of *Grecia*, sayled to the ende of that great sea. For this our marueylous shyppe, takyng her boyage from the straighes of *Gibelterra*, and saylyng by the great Ocean towarde the South and pole *Antarctike*, and turnyng from thence to the West, folowed that course so farre, that passyng vnder the great circumference of the worlde, she came into the East, and from thence agayne into the West, not by returnyng backward, but styll sayling forwarde, so compassing about the ball of the worlde vnder the whole circumference of heauen, vntyll she were myraculously restored to her native region of Spayne, and house of Hiule.

Maryners  
woorthy in  
mortal faime.

Of

**T**he debate and stryfe betweene the Spanyardes and Portugales, for the Diuision of the Indies, and the trade of Spyces, and also for the llandes of Molucca, which some call Malucas. VVritten in the Spanishe tongue by Francisco Lopes de Gomara.

**T**he Emperours maiestie was very glad that the *Malucas* and *Ilandes* of the *Spycery* were discouered, and that he myght passe vnto them through his owne countreys, without any preiudice or hurt to the *Portugales*: and because also that *Almanzor*, *Lusfu*, and *Corala*, whiche were the lordes of the *Spycerie*, shewed them selues to be his freendes, and became tributaries to hym. He also gaue certayne gyftes and rewardes to *Iohn Sebastian* for his great paynes and good seruice, forasmuche as he craued a rewarde for the good newes that the *Ilandes* of the *Malucas*, and other *Ilandes* rycher and greater then they, were found to be in his part of those countreys which parteyned vnto hym, accordyng to the *Popes Bull*. And hereby it came to passe, that there was great contention and stryfe betweene the *Spanyardes* and the *Portugales*, about the *Spycery*, and the diuision of the *Indies*, by reason of the retorne of *Iohn Sebastian*, and the information whiche he gaue thereof: who also affirmed, that the *Portugales* had neuer any entraunce befoze that tyme into those *Ilandes*. Hereupon the counsaile for the *Indies* aduertised the Emperour to maynteyne his fleete for those partes, and to take the trade of *Spyces* into his owne hande, forasmuche as it was his owne of dueitie, aswell for that those *Ilandes* fell on his part, as also that he had nowe found passage and way through his *West Indies* into those regions: and finally, to consyder that he shoulde thereby obteyne and geat to hym selfe great reuenues, besyde the inrychying of his subiectes and realmes, and that with small cost and charge.

The Emperour, beyng thus aduertised of the trueth, tooke it for good counsaile, & commaunded all thynges herebynto appertaynyng to be furnyshed accordyngly. In this meane tyme, when *Iohn* kyng of *Portugale* had knowledge what the Emperour determined

*Iohn Sebastian*

The trade of spices parteth to the Emperour.

*Iohn* kyng of *Portugale*.

## The viages of the Spanyardes

determined to do, and the speedy haste his counsaile made for the perfourmaunce hereof, and of the commyng home of *John Sebastian of Cane*, with thinformacion he made, what of stoutnes of mynde, and what for griefe, was puffed vp with anger, as were also the reste of the *Portugales*, stormyng as though they would haue plucked downe the lke with theyr handes, not a litle fearyng lest they should lose the trade of *Spices*, yf the *Spanyardes* should once put in theyr foote. Whereupon the kyng immediatly made supplication to the Emperour, not to set forward any shippes, vntyll it were determined to whether of them those *Islandes* shoulde belong: and that he would not so much endamage hym, as to cause hym to lose the trade of *Spyces*, which was so commodious and profitable to hym: and finally, to auoide the occasion of murder and bloodshed, whiche were lyke to ensue therof, yf the *Spanyardes* and *Portugales* shippes shoulde meete togeather. The Emperour, although he knewe that al this was but to make delayes, and prolongyng of tyme, yet was he glad to haue it tryed by iustice, for the better iustification of his cause and ryght. In fine, both parties were agreed to appoynt learned men, *Cosmographers* and *Pilottes*, whiche shoulde determine the controuerisie betweene them: promisyng on both parties to abyde and stande to the sentence & determination made by those persons, appoynted and swoyne to iudge indifferently.

The trade of  
Spices.

The controuer-  
sie determined  
by *Cosmogra-  
phers* and  
*Pilots*.

## The Repartition and diuision of the Indies and newe world, betweene the *Spanyardes* and the *Portugales*.



The arbiters  
on the Empe-  
rours syde.

This matter concernyng the trade of *Spices*, and the new worlde of the *Indies*, by reason of the great rychez therof, was of great importance, and very difficult to be limited, and drawen forth by lines. By reason wherof, it was necessary and conuenient to seeke wyse and worshipfull men, experte in *Nauigattions*, in *Cosmographie*, and the *Mathematical sciences*. The Emperour for his syde chose and named, for *Judges* of the possession, the *Licentiate Acuna*, one of the kynges counsaile, also the *Licentiate Barrientos*, of the counsaile of the orders, the

the licentiate *Petro Mannel*, Auditor of the courte of the Chauncerie in *Valladolid*. For Judges of the propertie, he chose *Don Fernando Colono*, the sonne of *Christopher Colonus*: Also Doctor *Sancho Salaya*, *Peter Ruiz* of *Villegas*, Fryer *Thomas Duran*, *Simon* of *Alcazana*, and *Iohn Sebastian* of *Caro*. His aduocate and Atturney, he made the licentiate *Iohn Rodriguez* of *Pisa*: and for his fyscall Doctour *Ribera*, and his Secretarie, *Bartholome Ruiz* of *Castaneda*. He also appoynted that *Sebastian Cabote*, *Steuens Gomes*, *Nummio Gracia*, *Diego Ruero*, beyng all experte Pilottes, and cunnyng in makynge cardes for the sea, should be present, and byng forth theyr Globes and Happes, with other instrumentes necessarie to declare the situation of the *Flandes* of the *Malucas*, about the which was at the contention & strife. But order was taken, that they should shew theyr myndes on neyther syde, nor enter into the company of the other, but when they were called. All these, and dyuers other, went togeather to a towne called *Badaioz*: and as many *Portugales* came to *Elbes*, or rather more. For they brought with them two *Fiscalles* and two *Aduocates*. The principall of them, was the licentiate *Antonie de Assenedo*, *Diego Lopes* of *Sequeyra*, the Clarke of the weyghtes and receptes, who had before been gouernour in *India*. Also *Peralonso* of *Melo*, Clarke, *Simon* of *Tauira*, with dyuers other, whose names I knowe not. Before they mette togeather, the one parte remaynyng at *Badaioz*, and the other in *Elbes*, there was muche adoe among them, before they coulde agree vppon the place where they should meete, and who should speake first: For the *Portugales* doe greatly weygh such circumstances. At the laste, they concluded to meete togeather at *Caya*, a litle ryuer which diuideth *Castile* from *Portugale*, standyng in the mydd way betweene *Badaioz* and *Elbes*. And when they were assembled togeather one day at *Badaioz*, and an other day at *Elbes*, and saluted the one the other, both parties were sworn that they should proceede and speake accordyng to truth, iustice, and equitie. The *Portugales* refused *Simon de Alcazana*, bycause he was a *Portugale*, and Fryer *Thomas Duran*, bycause he had sometyme ben preacher to theyr Kyng: So that *Simon* was by consent put out of the company, in whose roome was placed maister *Antonie* of *Alcaraz*. Yet sell they not

*Sebastian Cabote.*

*Instruments of Cosmographie.*  
The *Flandes* of *Maluca*.

The Arbitrers on the *Portugales* syde.

The place where they mette.

The order of theyr procees.



## The contention

to reasonyng the matter, buttill the Fryer was put out. They were many dayes in beholdyng Globes, Mappes, and Cardes of the sea, and hearyng what myght be sayde, both sydes allea-  
 ggyng for the ryght whiche they pretended. But the *Portugales* standyng in vayne contention, sayde very angerly, The *Ilandes* of *Maluca*, wherevpon they meetyng and reasonyng was at that present, fell on theyr parte, and was of theyr conquest: and that they both had been there, and had them in theyr possession before *John Sebastian* had euer scene them: Lykewyle that the lyne should be drawen from the *Iland* of *Bonauista*, or the *Ilande* called *de la Sal*, whiche are the most Easterly *Ilandes* from *Cabouerde*, and not from the *Ilande* of *Santanton*, or *saint Antonie*, which lyeth towarde the Weste, and are .lxxx. leagues the one from the other. All this was no more but to contend, and the other of the *Malucas*, is untrue: But they that haue a naughtie matter, must set it forth with wooordes and brabbelyng. Here they founde howe greatly they were deceyued, in that they demaunded that the lyne should be drawen three hundred threescore and tenne leagues more to the West, from the *Ilandes* of *Cabouerde* (as appeareth hereafter) and not one hundred, accordyng to the assignement of the *Popes Bull*. The *Spanyarden* on the contrary parte affirmed, and made demonstration, that not only the *Ilandes* of *Burney*, *Gilolo*, *Zubut*, and *Tidore*, with the other *Ilandes* of the *Malucas*: but as well *Samatra*, *Malacha*, and a great parte of *China*, should belong to the *Castilians*, and that those countreys fell on theyr syde, and on the parte of theyr conquest: Also, that *Magallanes* and *John Sebastian* were the first *Christian* men that founde them, and obteyned them for the *Emperour*, as the letters and presentes of *Almanzor* doe testifie. And although the *Portugales* had been there fyrst, yet went they thither after the donation of the *Pope*: neyther got they any ryght or iuste tittle thereby. For although they shoulde drawe the lyne by *Buena Vista*, what inconuenience should folow thereof, sith as well by the one way as the other, the *Ilandes* of the *Malucas* muste parteyne to the *Castilians*? yea and moresoer, the *Ilandes* of *Cabouerde* shoulde also parteyne to the *Castilians*, forsomuche as drawyng the lyne by *Buena Vista*, the *Ilandes* of the *Malucas* doe remayne within the lyne on the

Empe

The *Portugales*.

Contention for drawyng the lyne of the division.

Howe the *Portugales* were deceyued.

The *Spanyarden* allegacions.

*Samatra*.  
*Malacha*.  
*China*.  
*Magallanes*.

*Buena Vista*.

The *Ilandes* of *Cabo Verde*.

Emperours syde . They continued in these controuersies for the space of two monethes, without any resolution or end made. For the *Portugales* prolonged and put off the matter, sleepeing from the sentence with cauillations and colde reasons, to the ende that they myght dissolue that assembly without any conclusion or determination: for so it stode them vpon. The *Castilians* which were the Iudges of the proprietie, drew a lyne in the great globe three hundred and .70. leagues from saint Antonies Islande, lying by *Weste Cabo Verde*, accordyng to the intreatie and determination which was agreed vpon, betweene the Catholike Princes and the kyng of *Portugale*. These Iudges gaue sentence vpon this matter, calling the contrary parte before them vpon the brydge of *Caya*, in the yeere .1524. The *Portugales* could neyther disturbe or deferre the sentence, nor yet would they allowe it to be iust, and accordyng to ryght: Saying that there was not sufficient processe made, that they should passe to the giuyng of sentence: and so departed, threatenyng to slepe the *Castilians*, as many as they should fynde in the Landes of the *Malucas*: For they knewe ryght well that theyr countreyemen the *Portugales*, had already taken the shyppe called the *Trinitie*, and had also taken the *Castilians* in *Tidore*. Then also departed our men, takyng theyr tourney to the Courte, gyuyng vp to the Emperour all their wrytinges and declaration what they had done. And accordyng to this declaration must be signed and marked all Globes and Mappes whiche good Cosinographers & maisters doe make. The line also of the repartition and last diuision of the newe world of the Indies, ought to passe (litle more or lesse) by the poyntes of *Humos* and *Buen Abrigo*, as I haue sayde in another place. And thus shall it appeare evidently, that the Landes of spices, and also the great Islande of *Samotra*, doe parteyne to *Castile*. But the lande of *Brasile* parteyneth to the kyng of *Portugale*, where the Cape of saint Augustine is, being .viii. degrees beneath the Equinoctiall. This lande reacheth from the poynte of *Humos* to the poynte of *Buen Abrigo*, and is in length North and South .viii. hundred leagues: being also some way two hundred leagues East and West.

The *Portugales* cauillations.

The lyne of diuision.

The sentence.

The *Portugales* threaten death to the *Castilians*.

The line of the last diuision.

The great Islande of *Samotra*.  
The lande of *Brasile* parteyneth to the *Portugales*.

And heere after these serious matters, wee will rehearse a mery tale, one mery thyng, whiche was this . It so chaunced that as

Primum.ii.

Frances

## The contention

*Frances de Melo, Diego Lopes of Sequeyra, and other of those Portugales of this assembly, walked by the ryuers syde of Guadiana, a litle boye, who stood keeppng his mothers clothes which hee had walhed, demaunded of them whether they were those men that parted the worlde with the Emperour. And as they answered, yea: he tooke vp his sherte and shewed them his bare arse, saying, Come and drawe your lyne heere through the myddest. Which saying was after ward in euery mans mouth, and laughed at in the towne of Badajos: yea euen among the Commisioners them selues, of whom some were angry, and some marueyled at the saying of the chylde.*

The cause and auctoritie whereby they  
diuided the Indies.



*The Castilians and Portugales had long debated and reasoned about the golde myne of Guinea, which was found in the yeere of our Lorde. 1471. in the tyme of the raigne of Don Alonso kynge of Portugale, y<sup>e</sup> fyrst of that name. This was a matter of great importauce: For the Negros or blacke Moores, for thinges of no value, gaue golde by whole handfulls, whiche was at that tyme when the sayde kynge of Portugale pretended title and clayme to the kingdome of Castile, in the ryght of his wife Queene Ieane (called the excellent) agaynst the Catholyke Princes Isabel, and Don Fernando, whose it was in dede. But that stryfe was ended as soone as Don Fernando had vanquished Don Alonso, at a place called Temulos, not farre from Toro, whiche place Don Fernando chose rather to make warre agaynst the Moores of Granada, then to buye and sell with the blacke Moores of Guinea. And thus the Portugales remayned with the conqueste of Affryke, from the streightes forwarde: which beganne where the infante of Portugale Don Henrique (sorne to Kynge Iohn the bastarde, and maister of Auts) byd begyn to enlarge it. When Pope Alexander the. vi. (beyng a Valentinian bozne) had knowledge hereof, hee mynded to gyue the Indies to the kynges of Castile, without any preiudice to the Portugales, who had conquered the sea coastes of Affryke.*

*These*

*The gold mine  
of Guinea.*

*Alonso kynge of  
Portugale.  
Golde for  
thinges of  
small value.*

*Contention for  
the kingdome  
of Castile.*

*Warre against  
the Moores of  
Granada.  
The conquests  
of the Portugals  
in Affrike*

*Pope Alex-  
ander.*

These Indies, the Pope gaue of his owne mynde without the motion of any other, with this burden & charge, that they should conuerter the Idolatours to the sayth of Christ: and commaunded a lyne or meridian to bee drawen North and South, from one hundred leagues Westward, beyonde one of the Ilandes of *Capo Verde* towarde the Weste, bycause the Spanyardes should not meddle in Affrike, partepnyng to the conquest of the Portugales, to the auoydyng of all stryfe betweene them. King John of Portugale, the seconde of that name, was greatly offended when he red the Bull and donation of the pope, although his owne Ambassadours had made the selfe same request vnto his holinesse: He also founde him selfe agreued with the Catholyke princes *Isabel* and *Fernando*, that they had shortened the course of the landes he had discovered, depriuyng him of the rycheffe which belonged to him, and therefore refused to stande to the Popes Bull in this case: desirynge the Catholyke princes *Isabel* and *Fernando*, to graunt him thre hundred leagues more to the West, besyde the one hundred which they had graunted before: and therewith sent his shippes to keepe the coastes of Affryke. The princes Catholyke were content to satisfie his mynd, and to lease him according to theyr gentle nature, and for the aliance that was betweene them: And in fine, with the consent & agreement of the Pope, graunted two hundred & sixtie leagues more then the Bull made mention of, at *Tordesillas* the seuenth day of Iune, in the yeere of our Lorde 1494. And whereas our kynges thought that they shoulde haue losse grounde in graunting so many leagues that way, they woon by that meanes the Ilandes of the *Malucas*, with many other ryche Ilandes. The kyng of Portugale also herein deceyued him selfe, or was deceyued of his, whom he put in trust, hauyng no certayne knowledge of the situation of the Ilandes of the ryche Spicery, in demaundayng that which the kyng dyd demaunde: For it had ben better for him to haue requested the thre hundred and sixtie leagues, rather Eastwarde from the Ilandes of *Capo Verde*, then towarde the Weste. And yet for all that, I doubt whether the *Malucas* shoulde haue fallen within his conquest, according to the ordinarie account and dimension which the Py-lottes and Cosmographers doe make. And after this maner they

The Pope maketh the diuision.

The kyng of Portugale refused to stande to the Popes Bull.

The agreement of the last diuision.

wherein the Portugales were deceyued.



## Contention for

diuided the Indies betweene them by auctoritie of the Pope,  
for the auoyding of further stryfe and contention.

Howe and by what occasion the Emperour layde  
the Ilandes of Maluccas to pledge to the  
kyng of Portugale.



When the Kyng of Portugale Don Iuan the  
thyrd of that name, had knowledge that the  
Cosinographers and pylottes of Castile, had  
drawen the lyne from the place before na-  
med, and that he could not deny the trueth,  
fearyng also thereby to lrese the trade of spi-  
ces, made suite & request to the Emperour,  
that he should not sende forth *Loaisa*, nor *Sebastian Cabote* to the  
*Malucas*, and that the *Castilians* should not attempte the trade of  
spices, nor see suche cruelties and miseries as his Captaynes had  
shewed in those Ilandes to them that aduentured that viage with  
*Magallanes*: which thynge he greatly couered, although he payde  
all the charges of those two flectes, and made other great bar-  
gaynes. In the meane tyme, the Emperour maryed the Lady  
*Isabel*, sister to kyng *John*, and kyng *John* maryed the Lady  
*Catharine*, sister to the Emperour: whereby this matter wared  
colde, although the kyng ceased not to speake hereof, cuer mo-  
uyng the partition. The Emperour by the meanes of a certaine  
*Biscaine* that was with *Magallanes* in the gouernours shipp, had  
knowledge what the *Portugales* had done to the *Castilians* in the  
Ilande of *Tidore*, whereof he tooke great displeasure, & broughe  
the sayde maryner face to face before the Ambassadors of *Por-  
tugale*, who denyed all that he sayd, one of them beyng the chiefe  
Captayne and gouernour of *India*, when the *Portugales* tooke  
the *Castilians* in *Tidore*, and robbed them of theyr *Cloues* & *Ci-  
namome*, and suche other thinges as they had in the shipp named  
the *Trinitie*. But as the kyng of *Portugales* trade was great,  
and our necessitie greater, in the meane tyme The Emperour (who  
was now goyng into *Italie* to be crowned in the yeere. 1529.)  
gaged the *Malucas* and the spicerie to the kyng of *Portugale*, for  
three hundred and fytie thousande *Ducates*, without any tyme  
determined,

*Sebastian  
Cabote.*

The Empe-  
rour and the  
kyng of *Portu-  
gale* inued in  
alliance by ma-  
ryage.

The *Portu-  
gales* robbe  
the *Castilians*.

The coronati-  
on of the Em-  
perour.

The gaging of  
the Ilandes of  
*Malucas*.

determined, otherwys then the controuersie defined bypon the  
bydge of the ryuer of *Caya*: for the which thyng, kyng *John* pu-  
nyshed the licentiate *Azedo*, because he payde the money with-  
out declaration of the tyme. The couenaunt of the pledge was  
blyndly made, and greatly agaynst the myndes of the *Castilians*,  
as men that well vnderstoode the profite, commoditie, and ry-  
ches of that trade: Affyrmyng that the trade of spices myght  
haue been rented, for one yeere or for two, for fixe tymes as much  
as the kyng gaue for it. *Peter Ruiz* of *Villegas*, who was twise  
called to the bargayne, as once at *Granada*, and an other tyme  
at *Madrid*, sayde that it had ben muche better to haue pledged  
*Estremadura* or *Serena*, or other great landes and cities, rather  
then the *Malucas*, *Zamatra*, or *Malaca*, or other ryche landes and  
ryuers in the East, not yet well knowen: forasmuch as it may so  
chaunce, that either by continuance of tyme, or aliance, the pledge  
myght be forgotten, as though it perteyned to the ryght of *Por-  
tugale*. In fine, the Emperour considered not the Jewell that  
he pledged, nor the kyng what he receyued. The Emperour  
was oftentimes counsayled to release the pledge of those Islands,  
in consideration of all the aduantage he myght haue thereby in  
fewe yeeres. Furthermore, in the yeere. 1548. the procuratours  
of Cortes beyng in *Valladolid*, made petition to the Emperour,  
to surrender the spicerie to the kynzdom of *Castile* for vi. yeeres,  
and that they woulde repaye to the kyng of *Portugale* his. 350.  
thousande crownes, and after those yeeres, restore the trade to the  
crowne, that his maiestie myght inioye the same, as was agreed  
at the beginnyng. But the Emperour, being then in *Flaunders*,  
sent word to the counsaile, that they should not assent to Cortes  
his request, nor speake any more hereof. Whereat, some maruey-  
led, other were soyy, and all helde theyr peace.

Exemplar Bullæ Seu Donationis, Autoritate cuius, Episcopus Romanus Alexander eius nominis sextus, concessit et donauit Castellæ regibus & suis succelloribus, regiones & Insulas noui orbis in Oceano occidentali Hispanorum nauigationibus repertas.



Alexander Episcopus, seruus seruorū Dei, Charissimō in Christo filio Ferdinando Regi, et Charissimæ in Christo filiæ Elizabeth Reginæ Castellæ, Legionis, Aragonum, Siciliæ, et Granatæ, illustribus, salutem et Apostolicam benedictionem.

Inter cætera Diuinæ maiestati beneplacita opera et cordis nostri desiderabilia, illud profecto potissimum existis. vt fides catholica & Christiana religio nostris præsertim temporibus exaltetur ac vtilibet amplietur ac dilatetur, animarumq; salus procuretur, ac barbaræ nationes deprimantur et ad fidem ipsam reducantur. Vnde cum ad hanc sacram Petri sedem Diuina fauente clementia (meritis licet imparibus) euocati fueremus, cognoscentes vos tanquam veros catholicos reges et principes: quales semper fuisse nouimus, & a vobis præclare gesta, toti pens orbi notissima demonstrât. nedum id exoptare, sed omni conatu, studio, et diligentia, nullis laboribus, nullis impensis, nullisque parcendo periculis, etiam proprium sanguinem effundendo efficere, ac omnem animum vestrum, omnesque conatus ad hoc iam dudum dedicasse, quemadmodum recuperato regni Granatæ a tyrannis de Sarracenorum hodiernis temporibus per vos, cum tanta Diuini nominis gloria facta, testatur. Digne ducimur non immerito, et debemus illa vobis etiam sponte, ac fauorabiliter concedere per quæ huiusmodi sanctū ac laudabile ab immortalī deo acceptū propositum, indies feruentiori animo ad ipsius dei honorem et Imperij Christiani propagationem, prosequi valeatis. Sane accepimus quæ vos qui dudum animum proposueratis aliquas insulas et terras firmas remotas et incognitas, ac per alios hætenus non repertas, quærere et inuenire, vt illarum incolas et habitatores ad colendum redemptorem nostrum et fidem catholicam profitendum reduceretis, hætenus in expugnatione et recuperatione ipsius regni Granatæ plurimum occupati, huiusmodi sanctum et laudabile propositum vestrum ad optatum finem perducere

producere nequiuistis : Sed tamen sicut Domino placuit, regno 433  
predicto recuperato, volentes desiderium vestrum adimplere,  
dilectum filium Christophorum Cololum, virum utique dignum,  
et plurimum commendatum, ac tanto negotio aptum, cum na-  
uigijs et hominibus ad similia instructis, non sine maximis labori-  
bus, ac periculis, et expensis destinaistis ut terras firmas et insulas re-  
motas et incognitas, huiusmodi per mare ubi hactenus nauigatum non  
fuerat, diligenter inquireret. Qui tandem (Diuino auxilio fasta ex-  
trema diligentia in mari Oceano nauigantes) certas insulas remotis-  
simas, et etiam terras firmas, quæ per alios hactenus reperte non fue-  
rant, inuenerunt. In quibus plurimæ gentes pacifice viuentes, et (ut  
assiritur) nudi incedentes, nec carnibus vescentes, inhabitant : Et  
ut præfati nuncij vestri possunt opinari, gentes ipsæ in Insulis, et  
terris prædictis habitantes, credunt vnum deum creatorem in Cælis  
esse, ac ad fidem catholicam amplexandum et bonis moribus imbuen-  
dum, satis apti videntur : Spesque habetur, quod si erudirentur, no-  
men saluatoris Domini nostri Iesu Christi in terris et insulis prædictis  
facile induceretur. Ac præfatus Christophorus in vna ex principa-  
libus Insulis prædictis, iam vnâ turrâ satis munitâ, in qua cer-  
tos Christianos qui secum inierant in custodiam, et ut alias insulas ac  
terras firmas remotas et incognitas inquirerent posuit, construi et  
ædificari fecit. In quibus quidem Insulis et terris iam repertis, au-  
rum, aromata, et aliæ quam plurimæ res præciôsæ diuersi generis et  
diuersæ qualitatis reperiuntur. Vnde omnibus diligenter, et præser-  
tim fidei catholicæ exaltatione et dilatione (prout decet Catholicos  
Reges et Principes) consideratis, more progenitorum vestrorum claræ  
memoriæ Regum, terras firmas et insulas prædictas, illarumque inco-  
las et habitatores, vobis diuina fauente clementia subicere, et ad fi-  
dem Catholicam reducere proposuistis. Nos itaque huiusmodi  
vestrum sanctum et laudabile propositum plurimum in domino com-  
mendantes, ac cupientes ut illud ad debitum finem perducatur, et ip-  
sum nomen saluatoris nostri in partibus illis inducatur, hortamur vos  
quamplurimum in domino, et per sacri lauacri susceptionem, qua  
mandatis Apostolicis obligati estis, et per viscera misericordiæ Do-  
mini nostri Iesu Christi attente requiribus, ut cum expeditionem  
huiusmodi omnino prosequi et assumere prona mente orthodoxæ fidei  
zelo intendatis, populos in huiusmodi Insulis et terris  
degentes, ad Christianam religionem suscipiendam inducere  
velitis



velitis et debeatis, nec pericula nec labores ullo unquam tempore vos deterreant, firma spe fiduciaque conceptis, quod Deus omnipotens senatus vestros feliciter prosequetur. Et ut tanti negotij prouentiam Apostolicæ gratiæ largitate donati, liberius et audacius assumatis, motu proprio non ad vestram vel alterius, pro vobis super hoc nobis oblata petitionis instantiam, sed de nostra mera liberalitate, et ex certa scientia, ac de Apostolicæ potestatis plenitudine, omnes Insulas et terras firmas inuentas et inueniendas, detestatas et detegendas versus Occidentem et Meridiem, fabricando et construendo vnā lineam a polo Arctico, scilicet Septentrione, ad polum Antarcticum, scilicet Meridiem, siue terræ firmæ et insulæ inuentæ, et inueniendæ sint, versus Indiā, aut versus aliam quamcumque partem, quæ linea distet a qualibet insularum, quæ vulgariter nuncupantur de los Azores, et Cabo verde centum leucis, versus Occidentem et Meridiem. Itaque omnes insulæ et terræ firmæ repertæ et reperiendæ, detectæ et detegendæ a præfata linea versus Occidentem et Meridiem, quæ per alium Regem aut Principem Christianum non fuerint actualiter possesse vsque ad diem natiuitatis Domini Nostri Iesu Christi proxime præteritum, a quo incipit annus præsens Millesimus Quadringentesimus Nonagesimus tertius, quando fuerunt per nuncios et capitaneos vestros inuentæ aliquæ prædictarum insularum, Autoritatē omnipotentis Dei nobis in beato Petro concessa, ac vicariatus Iesu Christi, qua fungimur in terris, cum omnibus illarum dominijs, ciuitatibus, castris, locis, et villis, iuribusque et iurisdictionibus ac pertinentijs vniuersis vobis, heredibusque, et successoribus vestris (Castellæ et Legionis regibus) in perpetuum tenore præsentium donamus, concedimus, et assignamus: Vosque, et hæcres, ac successores prefatos illarum Dominos, cum plena, libera, et omnimoda potestate, autoritate, et iurisdictione, facimus, constituimus, et deputamus. Decernentes nibilo minus, per huiusmodi donationē, concessionē et assignationē nostrā, nullo Christiano Principi, qui actualiter prefatas insulas et terras firmas possederit vsque ad prædictum diem natiuitatis Domini nostri Iesu Christi ius quæsitum, sublatum intelligi posse, aut auferri debere.

Et insuper mandamus vobis in vertute sanctæ obedientiæ (ut sicut pollicemini et non dubitamus pro vestra maxima deuotione et regia magnanimitate vos esse facturos) ad terras firmas et insulas prædictas, viros probos et Deum timentes, doctos, peritos, et expertos ad instruendū incolas et habitatores prefatos in fide catholica, et bonis moribus

moribus inbuendum, destinare debeatis, omnē debitam diligentiam in præmissis adhibentes. A quibuscumque personis, cuiuscunque dignitatis, etiā imperialis et regalis status, gradus, ordinis vel conditionis, sub excommunicationis latæ sententiæ pœna quā eo ipso, si contra fecerint incurrant, districtius inhibemus ne ad insulas et terras firmas inuentas et inueniendas, detectas et detegendas versus Occidentem et Meridicm, fabricando et construendo lineam a polo Arctico ad polum Antarteticum, suæ terræ firmæ et Insulæ inuentæ et inueniendæ sint versus Indiam aut versus aliam quamcumque partem, quæ linea distet a qualibet insularum, quæ vulgariter nuncupantur de los Azores, et Cabo verde centum lucis versus Occidentem et Meridicm vt præfertur, pro mercibus habendis, vell quavis alia causa accedere præsumat, absque vestra ac heredum et successorum vestrorum prædictorum licentia speciali: Non obstantibus constitutionibus et ordinationibus Apostolicis, cæterisque quibuscumque, in illo in quo imperia et dominationes et bona cuncta procedunt: Confidentes quod dirigente Domino actus vestros, si huiusmodi sanctum ac laudabile propositum prosequamini, breui tempore cum felicitate et gloria totius populi Christiani, vestri labores et conatus exitum felicissimum consequentur. Verum quia difficile foret præsentantes literas ad singula quæque loca in quibus expediens fuerit deferri, volumus ac motu et scientia similibus decernimus, quod illarum transsumptis manu publici notarij indrogati subscriptis, et sigillo alicuius personæ in ecclesiastica dignitate constitutæ, seu curiæ ecclesiasticæ munitis, ea prius filis in iudicio et extra ac alias vbilibet adhibeatur, quæ præsentibus adhiberetur si essent adhibita vel ostensa.

Nulli ergo omnino hominum liceat hanc paginam nostræ commendationis, hortationis, requisitionis, donationis, concessionis, assignationis, constitutionis, deputationis, decreti, mandati, inhibitionis, et voluntatis, infringere, vel ei ausu temerario contraire. Si quis autem hoc attentare præsumpserit, indignationem omnipotentis Dei, ac beatorum Petri et Pauli Apostolorum eius, senouerit incursum.

Datum Romæ apud sanctum Petrum, Anno  
incarnationis Dominicæ. 1593 quarto  
nonas May, Pontificatus  
nostri, anno primo.

The copie of the Bull or donation, by thauthoritie where  
of. Pope Alexander the syxt of that name, gaue and  
graunted to the kinges of Castile & their succes  
sours, the Regions and Ilandes founde in the  
west Ocean sea, by the nauigations  
of the Spanyardes.



Alexander Byshop, the seruau<sup>t</sup> of the ser  
uauntes of God, to our most deare beloued  
sonne in Christ kyng *Ferdinando*, and to our  
deare beloued daughter in Christ *Elizabeth*  
*Queene of Castyle, Legion, Aragon, Sicilie,*  
and *Granata*, most noble p<sup>r</sup>inces, gretyn<sup>g</sup>,  
and Apostolical benediction. Among other  
woorkes acceptable to the diuine maiestie, and accordyng to our  
hartes desyre, this certaynely is the chiefe, that the Catholyke  
sapyth and Christian religion, specially in this our tyme, may in  
all places be exalted, amplified, and enlarged, whereby the health  
of soules may be p<sup>r</sup>ocured, and the Barbarous nations subdued  
and brought to the sapyth. And therefore whereas by the fauour  
of Gods clemencie (although not without equall desertes) we  
are called to this holy seate of Peter, and vnderstanding you to  
be true Catholyke p<sup>r</sup>inces, as we haue euer knowen you, and as  
your noble and woorthy factes haue declared in maner to the  
whole world, in that with all your studie, diligence, and industry,  
you haue spared no trauayles, charges, or peryls, aduenturyng  
euen the shedyng of your owne blood, with applyng your whole  
myndes and endeuours hereto, as your noble expeditions  
achyued in recouering the kyngdom of *Granata* from the tyrany  
of the *Sarracens* in these our dayes, do plainly declare your factes,  
with so great gloz of the diuine name. For the whiche, as we  
thynk you woorthy, so ought we of our owne free wyl fauorably to  
graunt you al thynges, whereby you may dayly with moze fer  
uent myndes, to the honour of God, and enlargyng the Christian  
Empire, prosecute your deuout and laudable purpose, most ac  
ceptable to the immortall God. We are credibly informed,  
that whereas of late you were determyned to seeke and fynde  
certayne Ilandes and sygne landes, farre remote and vknownen  
and

(and not heretofore founde by any other) to the intent to byng the inhabitantes of the same to honoꝝ our redeemer, & to professe the catholike sayth, you haue hitherto been much occupied in the expugnation and recouerie of the kyngdome of *Granata*, by reason wherof you coulde not byng your sayde laudable purpose to the ende desired. Neuerthelesse, as it hath pleased almyghtie God, the foresayde kyngdome beyng recouered, wyllyng to accomplishe your sayde desyre, you haue, not without great labour, peryls, & charges, appoynted our welbeloued sonne *Christopher Columbus* (a man certesse wel commended, as most worthy and apt for so great a matter) well furnyshe with men and shippes, and other necessaries, to seeke (by the sea, where hitherto no man hath sayled) suche firme landes and Ilandes farre remote, and hitherto vnknownen, who (by Gods helpe) makynge diligent searche in the *Ocean* sea, haue founde certayne remote Ilandes & firme landes, whiche were not heretofore found by any other: in the whiche (as is sayde) many nations inhabite, lyuynge peaceably, and goynge naked, not accustomed to eate fleshe: and as farre as your messengers can coniecture, the nations inhabytyng the foresayd landes and Ilandes, beleue that there is one God, creatoꝝ in heauen, and seeme apt to be brought to the imbrasyng of the catholike sayth, and to be imbued with good maners: by reason wherof, we may hope that yf they be well instructed, they may easly be induced to receyue the name of our sauiour *Iesus Christe*. We are further aduertised, that the forenamed *Christopher* hath now buylded and crected a fortrese, with good munition, in one of the foresayde principall Ilandes, in the whiche he hath placed a garryson of certayne of the *Christian* men that went thither with hym, aswell to thintent to defende the same, as also to searche other Ilandes and firme landes farre remote, and yet vnknowen. We also vnderstande, that in these landes and Ilandes lately founde, is great plentie of Golde and *Spyces*, with diuers and manye other precious thynges, of sundry kyndes and qualities. Therfore all thynges diligently consydered (especially the amplyfyng and enlargynge of the catholike sayth, as it behoueth catholike princes, folowynge the examples of your noble progenitours of famous memorie) whereas you are determined, by the fauour of almyghtie God, to subdue and  
byng



## The bull or donation

byng to the catholyke sayth chynhabitanes of the aforesayde landes and Ilandes.

We greatly commendynge this your godly and laudable purpose in our Lorde, and desyrours to haue the same brought to a due ende, and the name of our sautour to be knowen in those partes, do exhort you in our Lorde, and by the receiuyng of your holy baptyisme, wherby you are bound to Apostolical obedience, & earnestly require you by the bowels of mercie of our Lord Iesu Christ, that when you intende for the zeale of the Catholyke sayth to prosecute the sayde expedition, to reduce the people of the foresayde landes and Ilandes to the Christian religion, you shall spare no labours at any tyme, or be deterred with any peryls, conceiuyng fyme hope and confidence, that the omnipotent God wyll geue good successe to your godly attemptes. And that beynge auctorysed by the priuilege of the Apostolycall grace, you may the more freely and boldly take vppon you the enterpryse of so great a matter, we of our owne motion, and not eyther at your request, or at the instant petition of any other person, but of our owne mere liberalitie and certayne science, and by the fullnesse of Apostolycall power, do geue, graunt, and assigne to you, your heires and successours, all the fyme landes and Ilandes founde, or to be founde, discovered, or to be discovered, toward y<sup>e</sup> west & south, drawing a lyne from the pole Arctike to y<sup>e</sup> pole Antartike (that is) from the North to the South: Contaynyng in this donation, whatsoeuer fyme landes or Ilandes are founde, or to be founde towarde *India*, or towarde any other part what so euer it be, beynge distant from, or without the foresayde line, drawen a hundred leagues towarde the West and South from any of the Ilandes whiche are commonly called *De los Azores* and *Capo verde*. All the Ilandes therefore, and fyme landes, founde and to be founde, discovered and to be discovered, from the sayde line towarde the West and South, such as haue not actually ben heretofore possessed by any other Christian kyng or pryncce, buttill the daye of the natiuitie of our Lorde Iesu Christ laste paste, from the whiche begynneth this present yeere beynge the yeere of our Lorde .M. CCCC. lxxxiij. when so euer any such shalbe founde by your messengers and captaynes, we by the auctoritie of almyghthy G D D, graunted vnto vs

in Iainc Peter, and by the office whiche we beare on the earth in the steede of Iesu Christ, do for euer, by the tenor of these presentes, geue, graunt, assigne, vnto you, your heyyes, and successours (the kynges of Castyle and Legion) all those landes and Ilandes, with theyr dominions, Territozies, cities, castels, towncs, places, and villages, with all the ryght, and iurisdiccions thereunto parteynyng: constitutyng, assignyng, and deputyng, you, your heyyes, and successours, the lordes thereof, with full and free power, aucthoritie, and iurisdiction: Decreeyng neuerthelesse by this our donacion, graunt, and assignation, that from no Christian Prince, which actually hath possessed the foresayde Ilandes and fyne landes, vnto the daye of the natiuite of our Lord before sayd, theyr ryght obteyned, to be vnderstoode hereby to be taken away, or that it ought to be taken away. Furthermoze we commaunde you in the vertue of holy obedience (as you haue promysed, and as we doubt not you wyl do vppon mere deuotion and princely magnanimitie) to sende to the sayde fyne landes and Ilandes, honest, vertuous, and learned men, suche as feare G D D, and are able to instruct thynhabitanes in the Catholyke fayth and good maners, applyng all theyr possible deligence in the premisses. We furthermoze streightly inhibite all maner of persons, of what state, degree, order, or condition soeuer they be, although of Imperiall and regall dignitie, vnder the payne of the sentence of excommunicatiō, which they shal incurre if they do to the contrary, that they in no case presume, without speciall lycence of you, your heyyes, and successours, to trauayle for merchaundies, or for any other cause, to the sayde landes or Ilandes, founde, or to be founde, discovered, or to be discovered, toward the West and South, drawyng a lyne from the pole Arctike to the pole Antartike, whether the firme landes and Ilandes, founde and to be founde, be situate toward *India*, or toward any other part, beyng distant from the line drawen a hundred leagues toward the west, from any of the Ilands commonly called *De los Azores* and *Capo Verde*: Notwithstandyng constitutions, decrees, and Apostolyrall ordinaunces whatsoeuer they are to the contrary. In hym from whom Emppres, dominions, and all good thynges do proceede: Trustyng that almyghthe G D D, directyng your enterpryses.

## The bull or donation

prices, if you folowe your Godly and laudable attemptes, your labours and trauayles herein, shall in shorte tyme obtayne a happy ende, with felicitie and glozy of all Christian people. But forasmuche as it shoulde be a thyng of gre at difficultie these letters to be caried to all suche places as shoulde be expedient, we wyll, and of lyke motion and knowledge do decree, that whither so euer the same shal be sent, or wheresoeuer they shalbe receiued, with the subscription of a common notarie thereunto requyred, with the seale of any person constitute in ecclesiasticall dignitie, or suche as are authorysed by the Ecclesiasticall court, the same sayth and credite to be geuen thereunto in iudgement, or els where, as shoulde be exhibyted to these presentes.

It shal therefore be lawefull for no man to infrynge or rashly to contrary this letter of our commendation, exhortation, request, donation, graunt, assignation, constitution, deputation, decree, commaundement, inhibition, and determination. And if any shall presume to attempte the same, he ought to know that he shal therby incurre the indignation of almyghty God, and his holy Apostles Peter and Paule.

Geuen at Rome at saint Peters: In the  
yeere of thincarnation of our lord  
M. CCCC. lxxxiii. The  
fourth day of the nones of  
Maye, the fyrst yeere  
of our seate.

(.v.)

(.v.)

An Abridgement of P. Martyr his .5. 6. 7. and .8. Decades,  
and particulerly of Ferd. Cortesius conquest  
of Mexico, by R. VV.



The fyrst four Decades of P. Martyr, you haue already seene done into Englyshe by R. Eden, as also certayne parcelles of the foure last. P. Martyr made eight decades of the west Indisch newes: in lesse labour these may be run ouer, speciall regarde being had vnto that Decade wherein the moze principall matter is expressed: I meane the fyrst, and that chieflly for the famous conquest of the citie Themistitan, in Mexico prouince, yea of all that great region we doe nowe vsually call newe Spaine. As for the sixte Decade, it conteyneth very little matter woorth the rehearsal, except it be certeine repoztes of the Spaniards, how they found, where they traueyled in the West Indies, plough stufte of gold: that the prince of *Nicoragua* with his family became chrystian: that certaine bearded Indians greatly feare suche men as haue beards: that they vse to sacrifice lyue men vnto their Idolles, eyther taken in the warres, or fatted by at home bountefully for that purpose: that *Nicoragua* Dere, for the greatnesse and vnknown length thereof, for the ebbes and fluddes and many Ilandes therein, myght woorthely be called a freshe water sea. This freshet hath ben thought to run into the Northwesterne streite, rather of ignorance (the course therof being not througely knowen) than that it so falleth out in deede, as P. Martyr wytteth. Finally in the .9. & .10. bookes of the sixt Decade, newes is sent to Rome of the controuersie betwixt the Spaniards & Portugales, concerning the *Moluccaes*, handled moze effectually & in moze ample maner, by R. Eden. Fol. 448. than P. Martyr in this place penned it. Wherefore it were a needlesse woork and *actum agere* in deede to trouble the reader therewith any further, especially whereas in this volume, mention hath ben made therof, euen by P. Martyr him selfe, as you haue already seene.

The lyke opinion am I also of, touching the .vii. & .viii. decades, some parcels wherof the Authour doth repeate out of his former



## The conquest

writings as Dec. 7. c. 2. the ruine of the *Ilandes Lucaies*, out of his fourth Dec. c. 3. Item out of the second Decade. c. 10. the nature of that spring in the *Ilande Boinca*, otherwyle called *Agnaeo*, the water whereof who so drinke, by reporte, of an old man becommeth young agayne, is in many wordes repeated by *P. Martyr*, Dec. 7. c. 7. the whole summe of whose seconde discourse thereof is expressed in the former place, by *R. Edens* addition of this clause (Wherhappes with some diet) the which wordes are not in *P. Martyr* his text: to be shorthe, the two kindes of breade the *Indians* doe make of the rootes *Lucca*, and a kynd of graine called *Maiz*, sufficiently declared. Dec. 1. lib. 1. f. Dec. 3. lib. 5. lib. 9. Dec. 3. be repeated againe, Dec. 8. c. 3. Other parcelles of these aforesayd Decades, wherein the subtilties of theyr *Magicians* and *Coniurers Peaces* or *Pages* are described, their *Tigres* crueltie, their sundry kindes of wylde beastes, foule, & *Serpents*, their diuers sortes of trees and fruites, partly may you reade of in the *hrentarie* of *Gonzal. Ferd. Ouiedus* historie: as of the fountayne of pyth, the stone pellets naturally made for *Gunnesh*. Fol. 224. out of the. 7. Decade. c. 7. and the *Glowwormes* out of the same c. 9. partly in *R. Eden* his notes of newe *Spayne*, *Peru*, *Rio de la Plata*, *Baccaleos*, and *Florida*, set downe in this volume Fol. 225. as particularly of the *Rutshelles* vsed in steede of money, taken out of *P. Mart.* Dec. 8. c. 4. Partly in *Theuetus* woorkes of the newe founde worlde, Englished long since, and finally in those bookes which sundry learned *Simplicijes* haue lately written principally to ayde the *Philisians* of our tyme.

Some other curiosities there be conteyned in *P. Martyr* his two last Decades, namely the *Lucaien* women, to be so sayre, that for theyr loue other countrey *Barbares* seeke to inhabite those *Ilandes*. Dec. 7. c. 1. The *Spanyarden* well vsed of the *Lucaiens*, contrary to all curtesie, to haue carried away many of those *Ilanders* into *slauery* and *misery*: Agayne certayne traueylers to haue ben scene there that had tayles lyke fythe. Dec. 7. c. 2. fonde fantasies of mens soules departed, Dec. 7. c. 3. wandring first North and than South about the worlde, afterwarde to growe young agayne in solitie: Agayne, other to imagine that the departed soules rest in *Cauces*, and to be that reflexion of the ayre the which we doe call *Eccbo*. Dec. 8. c. 9. The contention betwixte *Garains*  
and

and *Cortésus*, for ambition, Dec. 7. c. 5. & Dec. 8. cap. 1. & 2. The great *Comozantes* that deuoure fishe of fyue pounde weight at one morsel. Dec. 7. c. 9. The shamelesse daunses of naked women at theyr funeralles and obsequies. Dec. 7. c. 10. Theyr wooshyping of the crosse in *Saltier*. x. Or made thus, [x] vppon theyr newe borne babes to dryue away deuylls, as also in the nyght tyme if they feare any thynge, imagining with that signe the place to be purified. Dec. 8. c. 9. The *Chiribikes* follies in daunsing whole weekes togeather, theyr language full of difficulties for leauynge out some sillables in speech, theyr maner of marriage by clippynge the byrdes heare, Dec. 8. c. 8. The dead bodies of gentlemen to be rosted, & so hanged by to roose for buttry goddes, the bones of other that laye buried a whole yere to be taken vp againe at the. xiiij. monethes ende, and solemynely buried. Decade 8 c. 9. To conclude, How Captayne *Olinus*, whom *Cortésus* feared not a litle, & therefore sent vnder the pretexte of honour as it were to discouer other landes, tooke head him selfe agaynst *Cortésus*, and miserably was murdered in the end Dec. 8. c. 6 & 10. These with some other the lyke thinges, may the curious reader finde in many wordes, set downe in the aforesayde. 7. and. 8. Decades, spoken of all for the most parte before in. *P. Martyr* his other doinges, or mentioned in *Oxiedus* Summary, or by *R. Eden* bytesty noted, or not greatly needfull to be set forth at large in English, except they were matters of greater weight. One speciall thing I obserued among other in reading ouer these 6 7. and. 8. Decades, to wyt, the West Indians not onely to be conquered by the Spanyardes, but also to be theyr slaves and bondmen: the cause why after the conquest made of them, the Spanyardes doe in continuall bondage and slauey keepe them vnder, is expressely brought forth by *Pe. Martyr*. Dec. 7. c. 4. in the Spanysh tounge, as it was read at the Indishe counsaile boorde in Spayne, and may thus be Englished.

These be the Indians qualities, in respecte  
whercof they deserue no libertie.

**I**n the continent or firme lande they eate mans flesh: they be more gyuen to *Sodomie* than any other nation of the world: there is no order of iustice among them, they goe naked: they haue neyther loue nor honestie, they bee fooles and furious,  
Pun. it. there

## The conquest

there is no truth in them, except it be for theyr olwe profit: inconstant, without all discretion, very unkynde, & louers of nouelties: they delyght to make them selues dronke with wyne made of diuers hearbes, fruitez, and graine, as ale and sider, & to ouercome their hpaynes, as wel other wise with hearbs, as in making drinke thereof, or eating them. They are very bzyttishe, and doe make it a payple to wallowe in byces. No obedience, no reuerence at all sheweth the young man to the olde, the childe to his father. Neither teaching nor chastning amendeth them: they be traitors, cruel, so full of reuenge that they neuer forgyue any offence, great enemyes vnto our religion. They be slothfull, theeuers, of iudgement very grosse and base, without all honestie and good order. Neither doe the men behaue them selues loyally with theyr wyues, nor the wyues with their hus bandes: they be superstitiously giuen to soothsaying, as fearful as Vares, filthes, eating lyfe, spiders, & woormes, wherfocuer they finde them: they haue no arte, nor good condition of men. Hauiug learned any pointes of Christian religion, they are woont to say that to be good in Spayne, but in India nothing woorth, for that they desire not to alter their maners. They haue no beardes, for they peeke and plucke by the heare as faste as it groweth. They take no pietie on sicke folke, suche as bee very sicke, they gyue ouer to some one kynsman or neighbour of theyrs, or els carry them to the mountaynes to dye there, leauing with them some small portion of bzead and water, and so goe theyr way. The elder they ware, the woorse they bee: vntyll they be .xi. or .xii. yeeres olde, some hope there is that they would proue ciuil and vertuous, when they grow elder, they become bzytt beasts. In conclusion, I say that god neuer created so corrupte a people for vice and beaistlinesse, without any mixture of goodnesse and ciuilitie: they are as blocklike as Asses, making no accompt at all to kylt them selues.

In the fyfth Decade is written by *P. Martyr*, or geathered rather by him out of *Ferd. Cortesius* relations, the conquest of that portion of the West Indische continent, that lyeth in the hot zone, neare the Tropike of Cancer, betwyxte our Weste sea and *Mar del Zur*, the chiefe prouince wherein is Mexico; and the principall citie *Themistitan*. This region, after that it was conquered by Cortesius, beganne to be called *Noua Hispania*, newe Spayne, for the lykenesse thereof vnto the Spanysh kyng-  
domme

done in nature of soyle, greatnesse, disposition of the ayre, & other such lyke thynges, as Cortesius him selfe writeth vnto Charles the fifth, humbly desirynge his maiestie to allowe of that name. Some later wyrters haue gyuen the particuler name of one thyre vnto the whole, calling it *Mexico*, and the generall name of that whole thyre to the head citie therein, calling *Themistitan* by the name *Mexico*, howbeit in truely *Themistitan* is the principal citie in *Mexico* prouince, *Mexico* the chiefe prouince in all newe Spaigne. Of this countrey, the commodities it doeth yelde, the nature of the inhabiteurs, partly you haue already seene in *Gon. Ferd. Onidus* historie. fol. 221. and chiefly fol. 225. The kyng of this countrey bare name *Monte Zuma*, or *Muteezuma*, as Cortesius that conquered him writeth. in *P. Martyr* his *Decades* printed in Spaigne. An. d. 1530. *Muteezuma*. in his. 4. Decade, entituled *de insul. nuper inuentis* to. no. orb. p. 56. *Multoxumam*, as also in the last edition thereof at Cullen, to mytly with the thre first decades, the which our Printer in the translation hereof, hath followed in the discourse of the West Indies Ilandes. Strange names are many tymes diuersly written, though in effectie they meane all one, *Henricus* say we, with the Frenchmen *Henry*, the Almans *Henreich*, the Italians *Arrigo*, the Portugales *Henrico*, as *Barros* speaking of king *John* the first his sonne, whom *Cadamy* called in his *Nauigation Huric*.

This kyng was so welthie, so mightie, his dominions so large, that the inhabiteurs knew no other prince in all the worlde, of him Cortesius had intelligence by *Montegius* and *Portucarrerius*, and from him certaine rich presentes for his maister Charles *Temperour*, as in the aforesayd discourse of the west Indish Ilands it hath ben sayde. Wherefore the. 16. day of August, in the yeere of our Lorde. 1520. *Ferdinandus Cortesius*, with. 15. light horsemen, and fyue hundred footemen well appoynted, besides thre noble men of the citie *Cempoal*, named *Teuchius*, *Mamexus*, & *Tamaius*, and. 13. hundred men of that countrey, to serue in steede of packe horses, for cariage, after the maner there, began to set forwarde from his Castle *Vera crux*, towardes *Themistitan* in *Mexico*, distant from thence Westwarde ia hundred leagues, or thereabout. *Cempoal* standeth from *Vera Crux*. 4. leagues, eche league in this countrey is. 4. Italian miles. Foure dayes iourney from *Cempoal* Cortesius was entertained curtuously by the inhabiteurs of a good



## The Conquest

by thye named *Sienchimalen*, as also by the citizens of *Texuacan*,  
 after that he had passed with his army an exceeding hygh hill,  
 thicke clad with yse & snow euen in the moneth of August. The  
 like enterteynment was offered him & his compaignie as hee mar-  
 ched forward, vntill he came to the *Tascaltecan* lande, who are so  
 great enemies vnto the *Mexicans*, that liuynge amyd their domi-  
 nions, they had rather want their greatest necessaries, to wit sale,  
 and cotton to cloath them, than become subiects in any wise to the  
 Prince of *Mexico*. With these *Tascaltecan*s, *Cortesi*us had three  
 conflictes passing throughe their countrey, & in the ende valiantly  
 gaue them the ouerthrow. *Tascaleca* is a greater citie, more po-  
 pulous, and better serued than *Granata* in *Spainne* was, at what  
 time the *Moors* yelded: their bread is made of *Maize*, that is, In-  
 dish corne, a very good seat for hauking, hunting, & freshe water  
 fishing, sea fish is scarce, for it standeth from the sea aboue .50. lea-  
 gues: of pulse good store. This towne wals, & houses in number  
 20000. built of stone, high, & strong, in respect of the enemy euer  
 at hand: they keepe markets and fayres. The people doth weare  
 hose, and maketh good accompt of Jewels, precious stones, of  
 crestes, & buthes of frathers, to set them forth in the warres, they  
 garnishe euery thing with gold: wood is brought to be sold to the  
 market on mens shoulders: timber, boordes, bricke, lime, & stone,  
 are vsuall merchandise. Theye *Carpenters*, *Masons*, & *Potters*,  
 are very skillfull. There is no vessell wrought amongst vs more  
 artificially than theys is Medicinable hearbes are solde openly.  
 They vse baths, the nation politike, gouerned in maner of a com-  
 mon wealth. The whole circuit of this prouince is .90. leagues,  
 full of townes, boroughes, and villages, hills and dales most fruit-  
 full, & well storied of good souldyers, in respecte of their enemies  
 rounde about them. About one league of this citie encamped *Cor-  
 tesius*, & by his spials vnderstanding the citizens not to mistrust or  
 feare any inualion, tooke the strongest part therof by night: in the  
 morning came the best citizens to offer him all obedience. *Cortesi-  
 us* than returning with the victorie & victuals to his campe, found  
 it in a troublesome mutinie for the great distresses & present cala-  
 mies they thought them selues to be in, so far off from their owne  
 country, in the midst of their enemies. This mutinie appeased he  
 with good woordes, & comfortable reasons, persuading them their  
 enemies to be weaker, the spreadyng abroade of the gospell to be  
now

*Tascaleca.*

new in their hands, them selues to be Spaniards, who effect me  
 not death to wyn glory: a most happy death that to be, where life  
 is spent in the conquest of infidelles and barbares, & to lye by the  
 sea side idely, that were to no purpose. Thus appeased he the re- *Churultecal.*  
 bellious myndes of his companions, and after. 20. dayes abode  
 made in this prouince, he led them into an other shire for pastures  
 and riuers the most commodious, for habitation best in all that  
 countrey. The principall citie hath name *Churultecal*, as great, as  
 faire, as *Tasalteca*, and so gouerned, vntil the king of *Mexico* op-  
 pressed it. Here was *Cortesijs* receyued with songes, muscalle in-  
 struments, and trumpets, by the priestes and chyldren of the citie  
 after their maner, & wel feasted. The end of all this mirth was an  
 vppore of the inhabiteurs agaynst him, procured by the kyng of  
*Mexico*, as it was supposed, whereof *Cortesijs* hauing secrete in-  
 telligence by a woman of *Cempoal* that folowed his Campe, sum-  
 moned a parte with the beste citizens of *Churultecal*, at his owne  
 lodging. Those citizens first laide he fast by the heles, & than spee-  
 dely with his army, warned to be in a readinesse for that purpose,  
 set vpon the deceptful Barbares of a soden, befoze that they were  
 througely prouided, and gaue them the ouerthrow. The prince of  
*Mexico* acquitted him selfe of this vppore, protesting by his Am-  
 bassadozs to *Cortesijs*, that his disloyall subiectes the *Churultecals*  
 had byted that conspiracie vnder his name to doe him iniury,  
 whom they would not willingly obeye. He sent withall rich pre-  
 sentes, praying *Cortesijs* to come to *Themistitan*, promising him  
 that he should want nothyng there, notwithstanding the harde  
 prouision thereof in so barren a place, altogether in the water.  
 To conducte *Cortesijs* thither, he sent also certayne Gentlemen  
 for guydes, and other of his nobilitie to receyue him as he came  
 neare. To speake of euery curtesie shewed him in this iourney,  
 and to wypte of euery place he passed, and particularly to rehearse  
 euery dayes iourney, euery hyl, towne, ryuer, house, and gar-  
 denne, by the way, would breed ouerniche tediousnesse. In  
 fewe, the Lordes of the countrey, as he went, vsed him well, e-  
 specially in *Gnazucingo* prouince, and *Chialcho* shyre, the one  
 whereof was violently oppressed by the prince of *Mexico*, the o-  
 ther willingly subiect vnto him. In the cold mountaynes he wan-  
 ted no wood, in the townes hee was prouided for, and his

## The Conquest

companions, who were of Cempoallens, Tascalticans, Churultecans, & Gazucinges, in number. 4000. of Spaniards not aboue. 300. In this maner, Cortesius accompanied & folowed, came at the length into a vale, bearing name Colua. wherein be two meres, the one salt water of. 60. leagues in circuit, the other a freshet. Partly on the land, partly in the salt meere standeth Iztapalapa a fayre towne, from whence to Themistitan, the royal seat of Mexico, there lyeth a way on a stone wall, two speares length broad, built up in the water by hand with infinite charges, the wall serueth also for a brydge, by this brydge sides stand thre fayre townes, Mesicalcingo, Coluacan, & VVichilabusco. The first is supposed to haue. 3000. houses, the second. 6000. the thirde. 4000. wel built, especially their Towers, & their Temples wherein they doe sacrifice. In these townes great aboundaunce of salt is made, that serueth all such as doe acknowledge the Prince of Mexico for their Lord. Other be denied it, as of the Tascalticans it was sayde. This salte meere rysing doeth flowe into the Freshet, & as it ebbereth the Freshet falleth into the salt meere agayne. The freshe water may serue neuer thelesse for drinke, the salte water becommeth not freshe therewithall. The wall hath many draught brydges for warfare, and fluses for passage, where toll is payde vnto the kyng. Halfe one league before you come to Themistitan, where the lyke brydge or causey from the lande ioyneth with the aforesayde wal, standeth a strong Castle, double walled about, with two strong Towers, not possible to be conquered. To this place came a thousande Gentlemen Courtiers forth of the citie to receyue Cortesius, all apparelled a lyke, saluting him one by one after theyr countrey maner, to wytte, touching the ground with theyr finger, and than kysying it, in signe of reuerence. After all them came the kyng of Mexico Montezuma him selfe in the middle of the brydge, accompanied with two hundred of his nobles, orderly two and two, in better attyre then the other aforesayd, but all on their bare feete, though euery body in this countrey otherwise weareth shooes. The kyng as he went, leaned vpon the shoulders of two noble men, the one whereof was his brother: not that he needed any such helpe, but for that the kynges of Mexico are woont so to be honoured, as though they were holden by by the strength of theyr nobilitie.

These

These two noble men, Cortesius meeting with king Mettezuma, and lyghtyng of his horse to embrace hym, dyd forbyd hym to touche theyr kyng, as an vnlawful action in that countrey: the rest of the kynges company came orderly to salute Cortesius, after theyr maner. Cortesius presented the kyng with a chayne of Bugle, set with some Diamondes and Rubies, of no great value, but such as pleased the kyng, who rewarded hym agayne with two other chaynes of gold, wrought in maner of sea Crabbes, & Snails, & so returned into y<sup>e</sup> citie with Cortesius againe, where he, lodgyng hym in the royal pallace, erected therein for hym a throne, and presented hym the seconde tyme with other riche gyftes, and prouision of all thynges necessary for hym and his trayne. All the bridge length, as he went with the kyng, stood on eche syde certayne great Temples, wherein were sacrificed slaues, and chyldren payed for tribute by kyng Mettezumas bassalles. Neere vnto Cortesius throne kyng Mettezuma had his clothe of estate, where vnto the Spaniardes, before his nobles there assembled, he spake in this sort.

Noble and valiaunt men of armes in the feelde, and mercyfull Capitanes vnto such as do yeelde them selues, you are welcome into this countrey. Of auncient tyme we haue hearde, and in our old Chronicles we do reade, that neyther I, nor any of this land, be auncient inhabitors hereof, but aliens and forreyners, brought hyther by a great prince, vnto whom we were al subiect. While this prince, leauyng vs heere, went home agayne to see his countrey, our forefathers married, had issue, buylded by houses, and erected certayne cities, so that at his returne we neyther woulde go backe agayne with hym, nor acknowledge him for our prince any more: Wherefore we haue ben euer of opinion, that his posteritie woulde come to recouer this countrey, and make vs his subiectes againe. Consyderyng then the place from whence you say that you do come, and that which you gyue vs to vnderstand of your great and myghtie lorde and kyng that sent you hyther, we be thoroughly perswaded that he is our true Lorde, so muche the more, for that, as you say, he hath long since knowen that we dwelt heere. Assure your selues therfore, that we wyl all yeelde vnto you, and acknowledge you our lordes, in his name that sent you: in this wyl we not faile, we wyl not deceyue you, all my

King Mettezuma his oration  
on to the Spaniards.

dominus



## The Conquest

dominions shall you rule, for all my subiectes shall obey, commaunde all that we haue, for you be nowe in your owne prouince and house. Be ye mery, and refreshe your selues after your long trauayle and many laboures in the warres. I am not ignorant what hath happened vnto you all the way, I doubt not but that the *Campoales* and *Churultecanes* haue said euyl of me vnto you, but I pray you geue no credit vnto any mans wordes concernyng me, especially vnto my enimies, some wherof hauing ben my subiectes, at your commyng are gone from me, and do report vntuethes of me, to purchase therewith your fauour. I knowe that they beare you in hande, that my seate, the furniture of my house, the very walles therof, are beaten golde. Furthermoze, that I am a God, that I sayne my selfe a God, and suche lyke toyes; but you see all thynges here are made of lyme, stone, and earth. Do you not see that I am made of fleshe and bone, mortall, and corruptent: you see they haue not sayde the trueth. I haue in deede certayne plate leste me by my forefathers, what soeuer I haue it shall be yours, dispose thereof as you thinke good, I wyll nowe departe to other of my houses where I am woont to lye, I wyll see that neyther you, nor your trayne want any thyng: be ye of good cheare, be gladde, for you are in your owne countrey, you be in your owne houses.

*Cortesi*us aunliweared in fewe, and to the purpose, especially concernyng that poynte, the kyng of Spayne to be that prince whom they looked for. After syxe dayes spent there ioyfully, noyse was brought to *Cortesi*us of certaine murthers and iniuries offered vnto the Spanyardes in a towne of *Muteezumaes* dominions, and that by *Muteezuma* his consent. This occasion tooke he, throughe to byrnyng *Muteezuma* in subiection. And fyrst he caused hym to keepe that house wherein *Cortesi*us laye, then to sende for the malefactor, whom *Cortesi*us openly executed, by whose confession *Muteezuma* founde gyltie, was for a tyme set by the heeles, but deliuered agayne by and by, confessyng his faulte, and promysyng all loyaltye and dewtie, chose rather to remaine a tiew subiect in *Cortesi*us palace, then to lye abroad at libertie like a kyng, as in effect he shewed, both in sendyng abroad commission to discover the golde mynes throughout all his dominions at *Cortesi*us motion, in geatheryng together great

So he spake  
this he discouered  
his body to  
the skyne.

A conspiracye  
agaynst the  
Spanyardes  
whereof *Muteezuma*  
was conuicted.

summes

summes of golde and treasure to be presented vnto the Spanyshe  
 kyng, in geuyng both counsaile, and the meanes howe to con-  
 quer cristelie prince *Cacamozin*, *Muteezumaes* bassall, refusyng  
 all obedience vnto the Spanyardes, finally in a publike assen-  
 bly, exhortyng all his nobles to acknowledge the kyng of  
 Spaine for theyr soueraigne Lorde, and to yeelde vnto hym that  
 obedience and in his name, to *Cortesi* that duetie, whiche he  
 hym selfe was woont to looke for at theyr handes. The processe  
 was witten by publike notartes, confirmed by the nobles, and  
 a copie thereof deliuered vnto *Cortesi*. *Mexico* prouince, *Mexico.*  
 enuyronned about with hygh and Alpythe mountaynes, stan-  
 deth in a playne countrey in circuit .70. leagues, about the  
 greatest part whereof are two *Peres*, the one of salt water, the  
 other of frethe. The two lakes go one into the other at a streict,  
 caused by litle hylles that runne amyd all the foresayde playne.  
 This streict is passed by boate out of the one lake into the other,  
 to all the towne standing on either syde of the aforesayd lakes.  
 Our Indythe wyrters name the boates *Canoa*, the Indians call  
 them *Accaler*, troughes as it were, all of one peece. I haue  
 traueyled in the lyke vpon the ryuer *Sone*, in the edge of France,  
 neere hygh *Burgundie*. In the myddst of the salte *Per*, two  
 leagues euery way from the lande, standeth that ryche and wel- *Themestitan.*  
 thy cite *Temixtitan* or *Themistitan*, no lesse in quantitie then  
*Sinilia*, or *Corduba* in Spayne. From the land, vnto it lye foure  
 wayes, or walles built by out of the water two *Speares* length  
 brode, commodiously for suche as trayuayle thither by lande,  
 with sundrye draught byddges by the way, to cut of iniuctions if  
 neede were. Of these foure wayes, one was that, where *Cortesi*  
 met with kyng *Muteezuma*. In one of these walles or byd-  
 ges, freshe water is brought from the lande into the cite by two  
 gutters, no lesse in quantitie then hoggesheades: the one thereof  
 serueth when y other is either stopped, or musty. The streets are  
 streight, many in number, built much after the maner of *Venice*,  
 both to go by lande and by water. The byddges ouer the water  
 in this cite be made of woodde, of suche breadth that tenne may  
 passe ouer them togeather, so many in number, that it were a  
 thyng almost infinite to reckon them.

The

## The Conquest

The number of houses therein amounteth to .60. thousande. Amongest other one streete is very large, sumptuously buylte, and famous for all sortes of merchaundies, that prouince peeldeth, wont to be solde there .60. thousande merchauntes, as it is thought dayly haunt that street. There are solde sundry sortes of mettales iewelless, fruitez, foule, hearbes, and all other necessaries seruyng for meates, clothes, warfar, buyldings, and pleasure. For euery speciall kynde of merchaundies, is appoynted a speciall standyng by it selfe. They sell by tale and measure, the vse of weyghtes as yet they haue not. Theyr mony is a kynde of Mutte shels, of the kynell it selfe is made theyr dynke. The tree is planted vnder the bowes of some other for defence, but yf it be growen strong, hable to abyde the heate of the Sunne, then is the fensle tree cut downe, and that let to continue, many Lordes haue thereof great reuenewes in that countrey. Steele and Iron they want, in steede whereof they vse to make theyr instrumentes of a kynde of harde stone, wherewith they woozke golde, syluer, copper, brasse, excellently wel in what fourme or shape so euer they lyst. You can not shewe them any kynde of chynge, but they wyll drawe it, and set it out most lyuely in metall, so cunnyng artificers they be. To the markets all thynges are brought, eyther by water in *Canoas*, or on slaues backs. There standeth a goodly palace in the market place for iudgement. There be resydent alwayes .x. or .xii. graue senators, to see good order kept in that streete, to decide controuersies happenyng there, to punyssh offenders. Other see what is to be solde in the market, and what measure is made. Many gorgeous tenples be in this cite, many goodly towers buylte where noble men haue ben buryed, with gallant chappelles to theyr Idolles, many princely palaces, for that all the nobilitie of that countrey lyeth some parte of the yeere in the cite, and the best citizens great ryche men. The good order and policie in so barbarous a nation, is wonderfull to beholde. Concernyng their abhominable Idolatry, *Cortezus* is worthy of great commendation, for the throwyng downe the Idoles where he came, beyng a stranger, though the princes of that prouince and *Metezum* also tooke it not well, principally in the palace, persuadyng them that it was not seemely for a kyng to woysyppe that whiche a

knaue

knaue or slaue of his had made. Euery noble man hath, besydes the palaces in the citie, his castle, souldiers, recepuers, & other officers in the countrey: and neere the court gallant houses for recreation, with pleasaunt gardens, orchardes, pondez, & other The Courtiers. the lyke delights. The noble men and Gentlemen of this countrey, can not be fewe in number, whereas dayly the court is furnished with fyue hundred young gentlemen, besydes the multitude of seruyng men that attende on them. And the fashion in this countrey is of all the nobilitie, to sende theyr sonnes for education sake vnto the Court, although many of them dwel an hundred and fyftie, or two hundred leagues of. So large & so myghtie is the kyngdome of *Mexico*, & yet so well gouerned, the kyng so duetyfully obeyed of all his subiectes, as wel absent as present, eche shyre pceloyng and duely payyng vnto hym the commodities therof, according to theyr custome, that *Cortesi*us thinketh no prince in the world to be moze feared & reuerenced of his people. The kynges houses. The kyng hath sundry goodly pallaces, and in them many ryche and costly ornamentes, of goide, of syluer, of feathers, so artificially wrought, that neyther any sort of needle worke, nor kynde of picture, may seeme to make the lyke thewe. Among the rest, thre special houses of recreation the kyng hath in his palace. In one of them are a number of monstrous and deformed persons, dwarfes, crookebackes, syngyng men by nature, two headed monsters, and others, with theyr keepers. The second house is so large, that in it commodiously two kynges may be resident. The place is set forth with many Alabaster & Marble pyllers, ten goodly pondez therein, well stoxed with fysh, and foule, of all sortes that epyther do lyue in the water, or on the lande, with their keepers, and diuersities of meates for theyr diuers natures. In this place kept he also young chyldren, that had whyte heades, & were of fayre complexion, as wel boyes as gyrls. The thyrde house serued for Lions, Tygers, Molues, Foxes, and other the lyke wyld beastes, eche sort in theyr seueral demnes. The least of these three houses is so well buylt, that the kyng at his pleasure may lodge therein, with all his court. The prince is thus serued. Fyue hundred gentlemen at the least, with theyr folowers, gyue attendaunce at the court al the day long, though they come The seruice of the kyng. not allwayes in the kynges syght. These gentlemen syt downe  
to



## The Conquest

to dyner when the kyng sytteth, and do fare as well as he, these folowers haue theyr reuerſion . The buttrey, cellar, pantry, and other offices neuer ſhut, come in who wyl, meate & drynke he can not want. The hall wherein the kyng dyneth, is matted vnder foote, his meate is brought up by .300. young men penſioners, fleſhe, fyſhe, frutes, ſalates of all ſortes vppon chaſſyng dyſhes in the wynter to keepe the meates warme . Theſe wayters neuer come neere the boord, for the kyng ſytteth on a leather cuſhyng artificially wrought, at a table raylled about, within the precincte whereof ſtandeth his Sewer, to ſet hym downe thoſe meates he lyketh of beſt . At his ryght hande ſyre olde men ſyt downe, vnto whom the kyng hym ſelfe carueth. The kyng waſheth before meate and after, he is ſerued in earthen dyſhes, his cuppes be of the ſame mettall: he ſhyfteth hym ſelfe foure tymes a daye . Whatſoeuer he hath once bled, be it apparell, napery, or any other kynde of houſholde ſtuffe, it is neuer brought hym any more to uſe, but beſtowed by hym vpon his ſeruauntes or frendes at conuenient tymes . For honour ſake eche one cometh into the palace barefoote, in moſt humble wyſe they come before the king, when they are called, bowing downe theyr heads, theyr eyes to the ground . It were great preſumption to looke the king in the face when he talketh with any of them . A man would thynke they were all dombe in the preſence of the kyng, ſuche is theyr ſilence . No man dare turne his backe to the kyng, but departyng from hym eche one goeth backwarde . No man dare go out of his place when the kyng paſſeth by . At his goyng abrode he is followed with a great troupe of his nobles and gentlemen, and hath thre rods borne before hym, one whereof he taketh in his owne hand when he cometh forth out of his lytter, wherein commonly he is caried abrode . In conſclusion no heathen prince hath ſo many ceremonies as this kyng of *Mexico* . Quietly in this citie from the .8. of September the yeere of our lord .1520. vntyll ſhorte folowing, remayned *Cortefus* with al honour, enioying his pictoyre, and rulyng ſo myghty a kyngdome conquered by hym, with al proſperitie . When *Velaſque* a Spanyarde, then Licutenant of *Cuba*, that euer enuid at his good hap, ſent *Narnaex* a luſty young captayne with eyghtene ſayle wel appointed to commaund *Cortefus* out of *Mexico*, and to geue ouer the rule of that countrey,

countrie, which he him selfe had paynesfully conquered vnto their pleasure, by forged patents from the Spanyshe kyng. Duche amazed at the fyrst was Cortesius with this tydinges, consioeryng that if he went agaynst Naruaez, the Mexicanes not yet throughtly brought in subiection might in the meane time reuolte : againe if he staid, Naruaez might put his conquest in ioperdy, violently forcing y<sup>e</sup> countrie euerywhere as he came. The matter was thorowly knowne to the barbares of *Themistitan*. The king him selfe had brought hym by his bassalles, paynted in a table, the shyps, theyr number, artillarge, horsemen and footemen landed. In the ende Cortesius resolved hym selfe to go agaynst Naruaez. Therfore leauyng at *Themistitan* a Garryson of Spaniards, the which he hyghly commended vnto *Muteezuma*, marched forward with .170 footemen, sendyng other .80. that way before hym. Naruaez lyke wyse came on agaynst Cortesius, and had nowe taken *Cempoal*, and styred by agaynst hym those citizens. Cortesius hauyng intelligence of Naruaez certayne beyng there in an hygh towre garded with .800. souldiers, and .19. Canons set at the steyre foote, thynkyng neuer thelesse nothyng at all of his comyng, set vppon Naruaez with .250. men, and there tooke hym on *Witlunday* night, the rest of his company yelded them selues. In the meane while the citizens of *Themistitan* reuolted against theyr prince and the Spanyshe gouernement, as by a messenger dispatched thither from *Cempoal*, to declare Cortesius good hay and Naruaes imprisoment, it was vnderstoode. The castile of *Themistitan* besieged, in many places set a fyre and undermined, the Spanyshe Garryson to be in great ieopardye, the flye boates they made, burnt, the messenger him selfe greuously wounded, *Muteezuma* the kyng onely to fauoure them, and hym nowe scarcely obeyed, the nobles to choose death rather then to obey suche geastes, that keepe theyr kyng lyke a warde, that dispossesse them of their owne citie, that meynstayne therein theyr eninies the *Tasaltecanes* & *Guazuingoes*, euen before theyr face at theyr owne charges, to despight them, that deuoure theyr vittaylles harde to come by in that citie so situated in the water, that iniurie them, that lay on tributes, that by hooke and by crooke make away from them whatsoeuer good there is to be had, that breake downe theyr Idolles, and suppress the ancient rytes and cerimonies.

## The Conquest

Castellus re-  
turneth to)  
Themistitan.

*Cortefius* therefore speedily with .70. horses and fyue hundred footemen, and as muche artillery as he could, returneth againe to *Themistitan*, whyther he came about mydsommer daye. At *Cortefius* entrie into the citie agayne, the *Spanyarden*, throughly beaten by the *Barbares* with dartes and stones from hygh pine-apple trees, & an hygh tower that was neere, began to take hart, and to hope for good happe after they great troubles. The *Barbares* lykewyse vnderstandyng of *Cortefius* coming, grew to be moze cruel and fyce, with horrible cryes, shootyng of they arrowes, and throwyng an infinite number of dartes and stones, for the company of them was innumerable, that the ayre seemed darke and cloudie therewith. *Cortefius* sent out a captayne with two hundred to rescue the *Spanyarden* in the palace. This captayne slue many of the *Barbares*, but the multitude was so great that he dyd litle good. Foure of his souldyers were slayne, he hym selfe, greuousely wounded, had much a do to retyre agayne. *Cortefius* set vpon them at an other syde, litle harme dyd he them likewyse, for that as sone as the *Barbares* had spent they dartes and stones, eche one gat vp into the turrette of his house to saue hym selfe. The fyght helde on fyrcely a good while. *Cortefius* was forced in the ende to retyre with some daunger, and losse of many of his soldiers. The whiche thyng when the *Barbares* had espied, they begane to geue a newe assalte on e-very syde of the palace, to fyre the gates, and stoutely to continue batterye, fyghtyng euen vpon they felowes dead carcasses, and wysshyng with them rather to be slayne, then to lyue in bondage vnder the *Spanyarden*. Thus spent they in armes the whole daye, yeeldyng a newe supply of men (the multitude was so great) foure tymes an houre, and rayсыng clamors all the nyght long to the *Spanyarden* great annoy, that then coulde take no rest after they paynesfull and vaungerous conflycte the daye tyme, fewe in number, fyghtyng from moynyng to nyght without intermission, and .80. of theyr company wounded. The next day the *Barbares* set vpon the *Spanyarden* agayne. *Cortefius* planteth .xiii. feelde peeces, and furnysheth his vanguard with harquebuzters and archers, but theyr enemies so litle esteemed death, that leyng at one shoot a dozen of theyr felowes toge in peeces, all feare set a syde, they supplied styll the

bodye

boyde places. The day folowpng, the Spanyardes wanting victuals, issued out in open feelde: they slue many Barbares, they ouerthrew the houses neare y<sup>e</sup> pallace, they tooke certaine draught bridges, but at night they returned with their Generall and 50. of their company wounded, as hungry as they went forth. Wherefore they caused warlike engines to be made of boords, in forme of a fouresquare house, going on wheelles, placing in ech one thereof 20. shot, whom many rascall souldiers folowed with pikeaxes and hatchets, to do harme that way in destroying their buildings: but stones & dartes came so mightily & so thicke about the Spaniardes eares, that such as went thus forth, were faine to creepe home againe out of their engines toorne in peeces: they that taried at home could not once looke out but they were damaged. King Muteezuma, desirous to dissuade his citizens from the assaile, the

Muteezuma  
slayne.

wyng him selfe vnto them out of the Pallace, had a blowe with a stone, whereof in thre dayes he dyed. This Prince was of a very good nature, wyle, and very patient, his body the Spaniardes leste vnto the *Mexicans* to bury, for that they them selues had little other leasure then to thinke how to saue their liues, rather than to bury the dead.

The next day the nobles of the countrey came to a parle with Cortesius, at the same place where Muteezuma tooke his death's wound. Cortesius exhorted them to peace, otherwile threatning the better decay & ruine of that their so famous and noble a citie, with protestation of pietie on them whom once he had taken to be his friends, promising pardon for that which was done, and setting downe what befel vnto other nations that refused his friendship. The *Mexicans* making small accompte of his wordes, answered, that they tooke him for no friend, but for their enemy, that he should depart with all his trayne out of their countrey if he would haue peace, otherwile they would so long continue theyr siege, vntill by force they had dypuen him out, though for every Spaniarde slayne, there dyed a thousande *Mexicans*, for his friendship they cared not, pardon they asked not, most willingly they would all dye, so that they might deliuer their posteritie from the Spanishe tyranny.

Wherefore Cortesius, waying with him selfe the great daunger that presently might ensue for want of victualles if he stayed, the



## The conquest

*Mexicans* continuing their assalte, for perill to be stopped at the draught: bridges if he departed, so much the more for that these *Barbares* were not ignorant of. 70. thousand ducates heaped by togeather by him in that prouince: set vppon them the seconde tyme with the asofelapbe engines, but all in bayne. So stoutly their enemyes defended them selues, and so fiercely they resisted the assalte giuen. Chieflly the *Spaniardes* courage appeared in winnyng of a certayne Tower that alwayes cominaunded them, nexte in the ruine of such houses as for the nearenes thereof bred them great incombrance and perill. After many woundes receyued, and great slaughter done on both sides, the principlal citizens, counterfectyng a conclusion of peace, promplyed obedience vnto *Cortesus*, so that all deedes past myght be forgotten. *Cortesus* lykynge well thereof, at their request set free a priest he had of theirs in prision, to deale betwyxe them, and thoroughly perswaded that no guyle was ment, withdrew his company from skirmishing. But he was no sooner set downe to dynner, after his restless afflictions and continuall labours, but the *Mexicans* tooke the towne bridges, and boydd the trenches, which *Cortesus* for passage had caused to be filled by. Presently therefore he rushed out amongst them agayne with his horsemen, but the iourney went so hardly with the *Spaniardes*, that *Cortesus* wounded in the head was scarcely able to retyre agayne, many of his company were slayne, such as escaped were not able to continue in the fielde any longer, wearied with blowes, woone out with hunger. It remayned only, that now they eyther presently must perishe, or els depart out of the countrey. By nyght therefore *Cortesus* and his souldyers priuely thought to slyp away with *Muteezumaies* chyldren, and certayne of the *Mexican* nobles captiues, charging the *Spanyshe* kyng his officers with the fith part of his treasure, and takynge the residue thereof with him. But the *Barbares* hauyng intelligence thereof, oppressed them in the way, tooke theyr goods, slue many of the *Spaniardes*, and with them their captiues: if happely any escaped, they were such as marched in the midst, for both the bangarde and rereward were altogether discomfited and lost, to the number of. 150 *Spaniardes*. 42. horses. 2000. *Tascalecans*, and *Guazuzings*, that ayded them. Thus paynesfully, with great daunger and no lesse grieve, *Cortesus* leste *Tbenistitan*, pur-

*Cortesus* fleeth out of *Tbenistitan*.

sued by his enemyes that folowed him, nothyng holpen by the way as he repayed home, refreshyng his Campe with a dead horse, after syue dayes spent with the foode of parched cozne, and that in small quantitie before he came to *Tascalteca*.

The *Tascaltecan*s curtiuously entercepted him and his, with whom he made his abode. 20. dayes, to refresh his wearyed army: that done, he conquered other cities in that prouince, epyther enemyes vnto the *Tascaltecan*s, as *Tepecaca*, where he buylte for safetie of passage *Segura la Frontera*: or suche as for feare of the *Mexicans* had not yeelded them selues before, to wyl, *Guaccachilla*, *Izcuca*, and other principall townes therabout. Finally, he sendeth for horsemen and shot out of the *Ilande Hispaniola*, wynneth many *Barbares* fauour & assistance agaynst the *Mexicans*, maketh provision of. 13. flye Boates, to annoye by water the citizens of *Themistitan*. *Meteezumaes*, Nephew, *Catamaxinus*, the new kyng of *Mexico*, fearyng on the other tyde the *Spanyarde*s returne, and seeing many of his subiectes to fall from him, waiteth not in any wyse to set all thinges in a readinesse for warres, especially pykes, to annoye the horsemen, whom they most dreaded. Eightene leagues from *Tascalteca* towardes *Themistitan*, Cortesius returneth to the siege of *Themistitan*, standeth *Tazuco*, a goodly citie of the *Mexicans*. Cortesius first of all tooke this citie, & caused his provision for flye Boates wrought in *Tascalteca* to be brought thither. Such was the hatred of the *Tascaltecan*s and *Guazuzings* agaynst the *Mexicans*, that they carried the timber vppon theyr shoulders from *Tascalteca* to *Tazuco*, without any grudgng, for the provision aforesayde. From *Tazuco* Cortesius cut a passage into the salte Mere of *Mexico*, to byng his flye Boates to the siege of *Themistitan*: this trench, thre Englyshe myles long, and foure fathome deepe, was synghed by 8000. pyoners of that countrey in fyfte dayes. This nauy annoyed very muche the citizens, in destroying theyr sculles and troughes, and stopping their passage from place to place, besides the assaile giuen therewith to the towne it selfe. Cortesius army, euer as it came, destroyed all suche places by the way, that either persecuted him fleeing away before, or presently might damage his returne.

The citie he belleged in thre places at once, after that hee had cutte of all the freshe water conduites, and taken the wayes

## The conquest

and bridges, and stopped all passage for any enemy of his into the towne: the number of his souldiers amounted vnto. 120000. for out of all the countrey about, the Barbares came with *Cortesi-  
sus*. some for libertie, some for friendship, some for hope of gaine. The siege lasted neuerthelesse ten weekes, in the ende whereof with continuall battry the citie defaced, and more than 100000. citizens woyn out partly in fight, and partly wasted with misery and hunger, *Cortesi-  
sus* tooke theyr new kyng priuely walkyng in a secret corner of the lake, and subdued throughtly with him the citie *T hemistitan*. 14. townes by the lake syde, & all the *Mexican* realme and prouince, vnto the Spanyshe crowne, in the iurisdiction whereof it doeth presently remaine. The spople of the citie, in value great, *Cortesi-  
sus* diuided amongst the Spanyshe souldyers, reseruyng the fyfth parte therof, and certayne fine feather woozkes, the whiche he sent into *Europe*, to be presented vnto *Charles* the fyfth kyng of *Spayne*, and Emperour, than in *Germanie*.

Who lysteth to see this hystorie more at large, may reade *Cortesi-  
sus* *Rauigations*, and *Frauncis Lopez* woozke thereof written in the Spanyshe tongue, made not long since Italian by *Lucius Maurus*, and if I be not deceyued, nowe a doyng into *Eng-  
lyshe*. An abridgement thereof I promysed, or a commentarp, as *Cesar* termeth suche kynde of wrytynges, to gyue other men occasion to set forth at large those thinges by leasure, which brieftly are noted and signified in fewe vnto some, that willingly woulde not be altogether ignorant thereof, nor yet stande to long in any such discourses. To set downe particularly eche Spanyarde and Portugale his doynges in these new discovered landes, to drawe Geographically the places, to wryte all their battelles, victories, and conquestes, to describe the cities rased, the townes erected, to poynte out the Capitaynes personages, to shewe theyr traueyles and good hap, it would requyre an other *Homere*, an other *Ibu-  
cydides*, an other *Linus* labour: it would requyre an other Empe-  
rouer to set students a woozke, as *Iustinian* dyd his lawe gearhe-  
rers: the relations of the Indyshe traueylers are so many in num-  
ber, theyr reportes so diuers, the volumes written therof so huge,  
and in so sundry languages.

*T hemistitan*  
conquered a-  
gayne.

FINIS.

R. VVilles Speciall aduises to be obserued in reaydyng  
ouer this woorke.

Fol. 6. *De Medea.* put out *De.*

Fol. 7. Of my Decades, reade of my fyrst Decade. For as the two fyrst bookes of the first Decade were by *P.M.* dedicated vnto *Ascanio Visconte*, than Cardinall and Vicechaunceller of Rome, so are the eight bookes folowing in the same Decade wyttten to the Cardinall of *Aragonia*. Fol. 54. Euery Decade hath ten bookes or Chapters, whereof it hath, according to the Greeke woord, that name.

Fol. 20 *A. and O. &c.* His meanyng is, that this selfe same poynte is extreme West, in respect of one halfe of the worlde, and extreme East in respecte of the other halfe, or hemisphere beneath vs.

Fol. 31. *Iuga de Canias.* Reade. *Iuego de Canias.*

Fol. 35. *Barramedabas.* Reade. *Barrameda.*

Fol. 39. To be part of the continent, This was then spoken for want of further knowledge, as in other wytynges folowynge it will appeare.

Fol. 45. The gold whereof they are made is natieue. &c. This place should be thus Englished. Their golde is lyke vnto that golde in Germany, wherof the *Florenes* are made. The next sentence likewise is not without some falte of the translator, for the latin goeth thus. *Alibi in eo tractu intra vaginam mentularem neruum reducant, funiculoque præputium alligant.*

Fol. 47. *Gorgodes Meducias.* Reade. *Meduseas,*

Fol. 49. Being demaunded of me. This place should you reade thus. Being demaunded of me afterwarde, were it not a sea separating two landes: they answered, the water there of to be fresh & sweete, & the further they went by against the streame, it to be so much the more fresh & sweete, to be full of Ilandes and holesome fishe. They dare aduouche the breadth thereof to be more than 30. leagues, and the ryuer very swiftly to fall into the sea, peelyng vnto the fury of the fresh water.

Fol. 49. Beyond the citie of *Cathayo*. They supposed it according to theyr skyll in vnknownen places.

Fol. 50. *Animæ album.* Reade. *Animen.*

Item. You shall now therfore. This sentence is not in *P.M.* But  
Doo.iii.



an other of the same length, wherin he abaseth his own knowledge, in respect of *T. Linus*, and auoucheth the fantasies following to be better than *Lucianus* tales, for that *Lucianus* fained his fables, but these follyes to be truly suche in deede.

Fol. 51. But nowe most noble Prince. Three other vaine tales are here left out, of the beginning of the sea, and the original of woman kynde : all Greece could neuer haue imagined more bayne, more scornfull, more shamefull fables : and so are they leste to such as lyst to reade them in that language wherin *P. Martyr* dyd wyte them, with the prayse of suche Barbarous ministers as doe preache them.

Fol. 57. The yeere of Christ. 1520. Reade. 1502.

Fol. 83. *Pezulana*. Reade. *Petrus Arias*.

Fol. 89. Of that in *Niogita*. Reade, or that in the blacke burnt Moores countrey, or kyngdome of *Melinde*.

Fol. 90. Water is turned into ayre. Reade, ayre is turned into water.

Fol. 98. The niene Boates of *Culchas*. Reade, or *Culchas*.

Fol. 153. *Collocutea*. Reade. *Calecut*, *Cochin*, *Comorin*

Fol. 164. *Etesi*. Reade, *Etesie*

Fol. 169. *Cemobal*. Reade, *Cemopal*

Fol. 186. The generations of nations. Reade, of metalles.

Fol. 231. Eight. Reade, eighteth.

Item. 36. Reade, 63.

Fol. 232 The West Ocean. Reade, South Ocean, namely *Mar del Zur*

Fol. 234.  $\pi\epsilon\pi\iota$  in the margine, should haue place in the texte before  $\delta\iota\kappa\upsilon\mu\acute{\epsilon}\nu\eta\varsigma$ . Reade, the Greeke verse  $\phi\upsilon\tau\omega\varsigma$  and  $\omega\kappa\epsilon\alpha\upsilon\omicron\varsigma$ .

Fol. 252. P. 231. In the margine. put it out.

Fol. 253. *Peruse*, these foure volumes, Reade, the foure volumes.

Fol. 260. *Santianum*, Reade, *Santianum*

Fol. 265. *Obo*, alias, *Oba* and *Obi*

Fol. 268. *Fladimer*, al, *Volodimer*.

Item, *Smolne*, al, *Smolensko*

Fol. 269. *Impreignable*, Reade, *inexpugnable*.

Fol. 270. *Nicene*, Reade, *Nice*. And of theyr sayth more lykely hereafter. fol. 273. although fol. 302. the former opinion be

Fol. 274. *Prohibit*, Reade, *prohibited*. (recited againe.

Fol. 283. *Volban*, Reade, *Volga*

Item

Item, *Diuidna. al. Duina*

Item, *Vistiuga*. Reade eche where, *Vstinga*

Fol. 279. *Schondia*. for these countreys folowing see *Ortelius. 45.*  
table in his first edition, *de reg. Septentional*

Fol. 280. *Sigismundus liberus*. Reade, *liber*. for he was Baron of  
*Harbestein* & the *Deutche* Barons are called frey heren, wher-  
of in latin also his title was wrytten, *Liber Baro ab Herbestein*.  
out of his woorkes is that discourse taken. Fol. 301.

Fol. 281. *Wardbus* Castle. 54. the one rowe of figures here sig-  
nifieth the longitude, the other sheweth the *Latitude*. The rea-  
der for his assurance herein, shall doe well to conferre all the  
figures so set, with the *Dappes*, lest he be deceyued.

Fol. 294. By unknowen nations. Reade, motions.

Fol. 297. The ryuer *Clesma. al. Desma.*

Item. *Marouians*. Reade. *Morauians*

Fol. 298. This tongue is spred further. Read agayne of the *Scla-*  
*won* tongue at large. Fol. 301.

Fol. 304. *Bengas*. Of theyr money, and also of all other nations  
copnes shall you haue a speciall discourse heereafter, if God  
sende vs lyfe.

Fol. 308. *Tumen*. It should seeme to be that *Tamen* spoken of be-

Fol. 310. To *Artach*. Reade, in *Artachs*. (foze. Fol. 246.

Fol. 311. *Besfermanni*. What they be. Reade, Fol. 335.

Fol. 312. As do the Christians, imagining so of vs, for that many  
Christians, to wyt, the meaner sorte, dwel commonly euer in  
one place.

Fol. 316. Seuen werstes, to wyt, seuen *Moscouian* myles, that  
is, fyue Englyshe myles and somewhat moze.

Fol. 321. It shall suffice to the reader, put our, to.

Item. *Sachana. al. Sughaua.*

*Hispnouogrod*. Reade, *Nispnouogrod*.

*Tartars*, *Nogaies*, pointe it thus. *Tartars* *Nogais*.

*Bilbil. al. Bilbek.*

*Casbin*. Reade, *Casmin*.

*Baccho. al. Bachu.*

Fol. 323. *Scharum. al. Chirua*, and *Seruan*.

*Tollepan*. Reade, *Torbante*.

Fol. 324. *Arash. al. Exesch*.

Fol. 326. Unto *Mecha* in *Arabia*. to honour *Dahumets* tombe,

- whereof you shall reade in *Lewes Vartomannus Navigations*.  
 Item. *Ardaxuil*. Reade. *Ardouil*. Item. Fol. 320. for *Ardeuelim*.  
 Fol. 327. Dught to be beloued. Reade, belceued.  
 Fol. 329. *Tulibante*. Reade *Torbante*.  
 Fol. 329. The *Persians*, to wye, the Gentlemen of *Persia*. Esteem-  
 ming artes and sciences, for silkes and furnitures of houses.  
 Fol. 326. & 330.  
 Fol. 330. *Turquestan*, it lyeth Northcast from the *Caspian* sea.  
 Item. *Phison*, is thought to be *Ganges*. it should rather seeme  
 to be some bzaunche of *Tigris*.  
 Fol. 331. *Deli*. al. *Dalanger*.  
*Caraconi*. al. *Corassan*.  
 His chief mansion place, it was so: but now it is not. Fol. 322.  
 Fol. 337. *Potosarina*, reade *Portofainra*.  
*Boua*, reade *Lona*.  
 Fol. 345. We made sayle. Reade, sale.  
 Fol. 354. inclinations, diuinations. Read, diuinations or wandyrng.  
 Fol. 358. Stranger solgiers, reade *Soldyers*.  
 Fol. 375. In the meane tyme. This is the later ende of the sixte  
 Chapter, the residue whereof the Printer hath for modestie  
 lefte out: And Eden him selfe hath in this translation also lefte  
 out many thinges to be seene in the latin coppe, eyther as su-  
 perfluous, or vnseemely. I am not willyng to defraude *Varto-*  
*mannus*, *Eden*, or the Printer of theyr due.  
 Fol. 382. *Condaliis*. I would reade *Sandaliis*, as it may seeme  
 in the letter folowing, meanyng thereby a kynde of high shooe  
 or buskyn.  
 Fol. 394. Rime. Reade, rine.  
 Fol. 429. It was lost and not founde untill this day. It may be  
 that *P. Martyr* dyd wyte the hystorie thereof at large, in *Pope*  
*Clement* the .7. his tyme, that happely was losse at the sacke of  
*Rome*: but his abridgement of the aforesayd viage shall you  
 finde wyitten to *Pope Adrian* afterwarde in his fyft Decade,  
 Cap. 7. Out of the which wooke, togeather with the reportes  
 of other traueylers that went the aforesayd vyage, this present  
 Pamflet hath been taken.  
 Fol. 429. A day lost in threc yeeres and one moneth. I doe not  
 thinke but that in very deede these Spanyarden that sayled  
 thus

## To the Reader.

thus rounde about the world, folowynge continually the west, dyd lose on day in theyr iourney. In lyke maner I am of opinion, that if the Portugales folowed continually the East rounde about the worlde, they should fynde at theyr iourneyes ende one day to many. I meane it thus.

Let two passengers depart from *Lisbona*, the one Westward, the other Eastwarde, rounde about the worlde, and both returne home agayne that daye whiche we do call *Hydsonner* daye. I saye that daye woulde be to the Easterne passengers the next day after *Hydsonner* daye, to the western traueylers but *Hydsonner* euen. My reason is, for that euery .xv. degrees of the great circle East or West, maketh difference one houre: wherefore Eastward after fyfteeene degrees, you shal begyn your daye one houre sooner: after fyfteeene degrees Westward, you shall ende your daye one houre later, then you dyd in that place whence you dyd set forth. The whole circle than of the worlde conteynynge precisely .360. degrees, that is, foure and twentie tymes .xv. proportionably to the .24. hours of the day, how can it be otherwile, but that these passengers traueplyng styll eyther Westwarde rounde about the worlde, or Eastwarde, shoulde either mysse a daye at theyr iourneyes ende or elles fynde one to many.

Fol. 430. The epistle of *Maximilian Transluane*. This preface is to be founde in the toime of the nauigations wrytten in Latine. Fol. 524.

Fol. 436. The pole *Antartike* Of these starres, and the order therof about the *Antartike* pole, may you reade moze at large in *Albericus Vesputius* nauigations. Cap. 119. to be seene in the volume of nauigations wrytten in Latine. Fol. 91.



# The Table.

|                                                                                                                      |          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>R</b> Pcharde Willes Epistle dedicatoyye to the Countes of Bedforde.                                              | Fol. 1   |
| The Preface for the whole wooke.                                                                                     | Fol. 1   |
| The fyrst discoueryng of the west Indies.                                                                            | Fol. 2   |
| What maner of man Christopher Colombus was.                                                                          | Fol. 3   |
| What labour Columbus tooke.                                                                                          | Fol. 4   |
| <b>The fyrst part.</b> Why they were called Indians.                                                                 | Fol. 5   |
| Of the colour of the Indians.                                                                                        | Fol. 6   |
| Plato his testimony of the west Indies.                                                                              | Fol. 30  |
| Seneca his testimony thereof.                                                                                        | Fol. 8   |
| J. Martyrs Epistle to Charles the Emperour.                                                                          | Fol. 57  |
| The fyrst Decade.                                                                                                    | Fol. 94  |
| The seconde Decade.                                                                                                  | Fol. 155 |
| The thyrde Decade.                                                                                                   | Fol. 173 |
| The .4. Decade otherwysse entituled of the west Indisch Isles.                                                       | Fol. 173 |
| A brieft rehearsall of the contentes of the aforesayde Decades.                                                      | Fol. 185 |
| R. Edens preface, Gonzalus Ferdinandus Duietus Epistle to Charles the 5. concernyng his histozie of the west Indies. | Fol. 187 |
| The ordinarie navigation from Spayne to the West Indies.                                                             | Fol. 188 |
| Of two notable thynges as touchyng the west Indies : aud of the great ryches brought from thence into Spayne.        | Fol. 198 |
| Of the golde mines and maner of woozkyng in them.                                                                    | Fol. 191 |
| The maner of fyshyng for pearles.                                                                                    | Fol. 193 |
| The familiaritie that the Indians haue with the deuyll.                                                              | Fol. 195 |
| Of temperate and habitable regions vnder the Equinoctial line.                                                       | Fol. 198 |
| Of dyuers particlular thynges, as Mooynes Serpentes, beastes foules.                                                 | Fol. 204 |
| Of trees, fruites, and plantes.                                                                                      | Fol. 207 |
| Of Reedes or Canes.                                                                                                  | Fol. 209 |
| Of the venomouse apples wherewith the Canibales inuenome theyr arrowes.                                              | Fol. 211 |
| Of fshes aud the maner of fshyng.                                                                                    | Fol. 215 |
| Of the rysyng and fallyng of our Ocean sea and the south sea called Mar del zur.                                     | Fol. 216 |
| Of the stricte of lande betweene the north sea and Mar del zur.                                                      | Fol. 217 |
| Howe thynges of one kynd differ by the nature of the place, and of the beastes called Tigers.                        | Fol. 219 |
| Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the firme lande and of their women.                                    | Fol. 221 |
| Of the Ilandes Hispaniola and Cuba.                                                                                  | Fol. 224 |
| Of the Ilande Cuba and other.                                                                                        | Fol. 225 |
| Of the land of Baccallaos.                                                                                           | Fol. 226 |
| Particularly of newe Spayne called Noua hispania or Mexico.                                                          | Fol. 226 |
| Of Peru.                                                                                                             | Fol. 227 |
| Of the ryuer called Rio de la Plata that is the ryuer of syluer.                                                     | Fol. 228 |
| Of the landes of Laborador and Baccaleos lyng west and north west from England, and beyn part of the fyne lande.     | Fol. 230 |
| <b>The second part</b> The description of the lande Florida.                                                         | Fol. 237 |
| For master Cap. Furbyshes passage by the north west.                                                                 | Fol. 237 |
| Reportes of the prouince China.                                                                                      | Of       |

# The Table.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |           |                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Of the Ilande Giapan and other litle Iles in the east Ocean.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Fol. 251  |                 |
| Alopius Froes letters touchyng Giapan.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Fol. 253  |                 |
| Of two Iles betwixte China and the Moluccas.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Fol. 260  |                 |
| A discourse of dyuers voyages and wayes by the whiche Spices, precious stones, and golde were broughe in olde tyme from India into Europe and other partes of the worlde also of the voyage to Cathayo and east India by the north sea, of the voyages lykewyle of Sebastian Cabote and particularly of Polscouia. | Fol. 254  | The third part. |
| A briefe discription of Polscouia by Hunster and Cassalbus.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fol. 271  |                 |
| A discription of the north regions and howe they are habitable, contrary to the opinion of the olde wyters.                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fol. 275  |                 |
| Schondia. Fol. 279. Swecia or Sweth land. Fol. 287. Bothnia. Fol. 187                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |           |                 |
| Groenland. Fol. 280. Gorthia or Gorthlande.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fol. 288  |                 |
| Ilande. Fol. 281. Finland with Emingia.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Fol. 288  |                 |
| Laponia. Fol. 282.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |           |                 |
| Noitway. Fol. 284.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |           |                 |
| The difference of regions and causes of great cities.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Fol. 288  |                 |
| Paulus Iouius historie of the Polscouian ambassage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Fol. 289  |                 |
| Other notable thynges concernyng Polscouia gathered out of Sigismunde Baron of Herbestein.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Fol. 301  |                 |
| A discription of the regions and people lying north and east from Polscouia to the ryuer Petzora and the prouince of Ingra and Dby euen to Cathayo.                                                                                                                                                                | Fol. 305  |                 |
| Of the famous ryuer Tanais.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fol. 308  |                 |
| The way out of Polscouia to Cathayo.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Fol. 309  |                 |
| Of the Tartars.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Fol. 311  |                 |
| The nauigation by the frostye sea.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Fol. 315  |                 |
| R. Edward the .6. letters to the northeasterne princes by Sir Hugh Wyloughbye, in latine and Englyshe.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Fol. 318  |                 |
| Our Englyshe merchauntes voyage into Persia.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Fol. 321  |                 |
| Of maister Jenkensons voyage into Persia.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Fol. 322  |                 |
| Of the last vyage into Persia in the yeere of our lord. 1568.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Fol. 324  |                 |
| Of the kyng of Persia his name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Fol. 330. |                 |
| Of the Persians religione and other their fashions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Fol. 325  |                 |
| Of the Persian Empire and the originall thereof.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Fol. 329  |                 |
| Of Persia out of .P. P. Genetus.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Fol. 329  |                 |
| Of the Persian kyngdome out of Haytthon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Fol. 330  |                 |
| Of Dmius kyngdome ioynnyng vnto Persia.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Fol. 331  |                 |
| Of the Sopht or kyng of Persia accordyng to the late wyters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Fol. 331  |                 |
| The trafique of Persia with other countreys.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Fol. 332  |                 |
| Of the Persian gulle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Fol. 332  |                 |
| The prouileages graunted by the Sopht to our merchauntes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Fol. 332  |                 |
| Arthur Edwardes vyage into Persia, with the continuance of the former prouileages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Fol. 333  |                 |
| The commodities that Engglyshe merchauntes may haue by the trade into Persia.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Fol. 335  |                 |
| The maner howe Christians become Muscovy men.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Fol. 335  |                 |
| Of the Bombasine or Cotton tree.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Fol. 336  |                 |
| The wytyng of the Persians.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fol. 336  |                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |           | Ch              |

# The Table;

The fourth part.

|                                                                                                                 |           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Of two voyages made out of Englande into Guinea in Africke.                                                     | Fol. 336. |
| A briefe description of Africke.                                                                                | Fol. 337. |
| The first voyage to Guinea.                                                                                     | Fol. 338. |
| Pintado his letters patentes made hym by the kyng of Portugale his maister for his returne.                     | Fol. 341. |
| The seconde voyage to Guinea, with a moze full description of Africa, Ethiopia, and the blacke Moores countrey. | Fol. 342. |
| The Doues of the Ilande Madera.                                                                                 | Fol. 353. |
| Of S. Thomas Ilande vnder the Equinoctiall line.                                                                | Fol. 353. |
| Letwes Aertmannus nauigation into Arabia, Egypte, Persia, Syria, Ethiopia, and East India.                      | Fol. 354. |
| The contentes of the whiche voyages are these folowynge.                                                        |           |

*The contentes of the .vii. bookes of nauigations and voyages  
of Lodowicus Vartomannus to the regions of Arabia,  
Egypte, Persia, Siria, east India, and Ethiopia.*

*The contentes of the first booke.*

|                                                                                                     |                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| The first Chapter is of the nauigation from Venice to Alexandria in Egypte.                         | Fol. 355.          |
| Of the citie named Capus, Alcap, Memphris, or Babylon in Egypte, vpon the ryuer of Nilus.           | Cap. 2. Fol. 355.  |
| Of the cities of Beryntho, Tripoli, and Antioch.                                                    | Cap. 3. Fol. 356.  |
| Of the cities of Aman and Menin.                                                                    | Cap. 4. Fol. 356.  |
| Of the citie of Damasco.                                                                            | Cap. 5. Fol. 357.  |
| Of such thinges as are seene in the citie of Damasco.                                               | Cap. 6. Fol. 358.  |
| Of the Hamalukes of Damasco.                                                                        | Cap. 7. Fol. 358.  |
| The forney from Damasco to Becha : And of the maners of the Arabians.                               | Cap. 8. Fol. 359.  |
| Of the strength and valiantnesse of the Hamalukes.                                                  | Cap. 9. Fol. 361.  |
| Of the cities of Sodoma and Gomorha.                                                                | Cap. 10. Fol. 361. |
| Of a mountayne inhabited with Iewes : And of the citie named Medinahabab, where Mahumet was buryed. | Cap. 11. Fol. 362. |
| Of the Temple or Chapell and Sepulchre of Mahumet and his felowes.                                  | Cap. 12. Fol. 362. |
| Of the Secte of Mahumet.                                                                            | Cap. 13. Fol. 363. |
| The forney to Becha.                                                                                | Cap. 14. Fol. 364. |
| The fourme and situation of the citie of Becha : And why the Mahumetans resort thither.             | Cap. 15. Fol. 365. |
| Of the Merchauindes of Becha.                                                                       | Cap. 16. Fol. 366. |
| The pardons and Indulgences of Becha.                                                               | Cap. 17. Fol. 366. |
| The maner of Sacrificyng in Becha.                                                                  | Cap. 18. Fol. 367. |
| Of the Anticones of the Temple of Becha, whiche are not seene in any other place.                   | Cap. 19. Fol. 368. |
| Of dyuers thynges whiche chaunced to the autour in Becha.                                           | Cap. 20. Fol. 368. |
| Of the red sea, and why it can not be sayled in the nyght.                                          | Cap. 21. Fol. 370. |

The

# The Table

## The contentes of the seconde booke.

|                                                                                                                      |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Of the citie Orzan in Arabia Foelyr. That is, the blessed or happie Arabia.                                          | Cap. 1. Fol. 371  |
| Of certayne people named Banduin.                                                                                    | Cap. 2. Fol. 371  |
| Of an Ilande of the red sea named Camaran.                                                                           | Cap. 3. Fol. 371  |
| Of the citie of Aden, and theyr maners and custonies towarde straungers.                                             | Cap. 4. Fol. 372  |
| Howe the women of Arabia are greatly in loue with white men.                                                         | Cap. 5. Fol. 373  |
| Of the liberalitie of the queene toward the autour.                                                                  | Cap. 6. Fol. 375  |
| Of the cities of Lagi and Aiaz in Arabia Foelyr. And of the towne of Dante.                                          | Cap. 7. Fol. 375  |
| Of Almachavan, a citie of Arabia Foelyr: And of the fruitefulnesse thereof.                                          | Cap. 8. Fol. 375  |
| Of Reame, a citie of Arabia Foelyr: And the Temperatenesse thereof.                                                  | Cap. 9. Fol. 376  |
| Of Sana, a citie of Arabia Foelyr.                                                                                   | Cap. 10. Fol. 376 |
| Of Caessa, Zibith, and Damar: great cities of Arabia Foelyr.                                                         | Cap. 11. Fol. 376 |
| Of the Soltan of the foyleyde cities: And why he is named Sechamir.                                                  | Cap. 12. Fol. 377 |
| Of Donkeys and Harmalettes, and other beastes noysome to men                                                         | Cap. 13. Fol. 377 |
| Of certayne places of Ethiope.                                                                                       | Cap. 14. Fol. 377 |
| Of the citie of Zeila in Ethiope: And the great fruitefulnesse thereof: And of certayne kraunge beastes seene there. | Cap. 15. Fol. 377 |
| Of Barbara, an Ilande of Ethiope.                                                                                    | Cap. 16. Fol. 378 |
| Of Ethiope, reade more in the last nauigation in the ende of the booke.                                              |                   |

## The contentes of the thyrde booke.

|                                                                                                          |                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Of Persia, and of certayne townes and portes of Persia.                                                  | Cap. 1. Fol. 378 |
| Of the Ilande and citie of Dymus or Arimulium: And of an Iland of Persia where pearles are founde.       | Cap. 2. Fol. 378 |
| Of the citie named Eri, in Copozant, a region of Persia, and of the ryches thereof: Also of Reubarbarum. | Cap. 3. Fol. 379 |
| Of a ryuer thought to be Euphrates: and of Castozem.                                                     | Cap. 4. Fol. 379 |
| Of the citie of Saint Bragant, bygger then Babylon: And of the kyng of Persia, named the Sophi.          | Cap. 5. Fol. 380 |

## The contentes of the fourth booke.

|                                                                                                                    |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Of India, and of the cities, and notable thynges seene there: And fy. st of the citie of Cambaia, most fruitefull. | Cap. 1. Fol. 381 |
| The maners of the people of Cambaia: And of the Soltan of that citie                                               | Cap. 2. Fol. 381 |
| Of the citie of Ceul, and the maners of the inhabitants.                                                           | Cap. 3. Fol. 382 |
| Of Goga an Ilande of India.                                                                                        | Cap. 4. Fol. 383 |
| Of Decham a very fayre citie of India.                                                                             | Cap. 5. Fol. 383 |
| Of certayne other goodly cities of India.                                                                          | Cap. 6. Fol. 384 |
| Of Canonoz and Harfurga, great cities of India.                                                                    | Cap. 7. Fol. 384 |



# The Table,

Of the fruitfull cite of Bisnagar in the kyngdome of  
Marlinga.

Cap. 8. Fol. 384

Of the Doggittie, agilitie and wytte of Elephantes.

Cap. 9. Fol. 385

Of the ingendyng of Elephantes: And of the magnificence and ryches of  
the kyng of Marlinga.

Cap. 10. Fol. 386

## *The contentes of the fyfth booke.*

Of the famous and ryche cite of Calecut

Cap. 1. Fol. 387

Of the kyng of Calecut: And of theyr Idolatrye.

Cap. 2. Fol. 387

Of the maner whiche the kyng vseth at his meate.

Cap. 3. Fol. 388

Of the Priestes of Calecut named Bramini.

Cap. 4. Fol. 388

Of the diuers sectes of Idolatours in the cite of Calecut

Cap. 5. Fol. 39

The apparell of the kyng, queene, and the inhabitantes of the cite of Ca-  
lecut: And of theyr maner of feedyng.

Cap. 6. Fol. 389

Of theyr custome after the death of the kyng.

Cap. 7. Fol. 389

Of theyr changyng of wyues.

Cap. 8. Fol. 390

The maner of feedyng of the common people of the Idolaters: And of there  
Iustice.

Cap. 9. Fol. 390

Of their honouryng of Idoles.

Cap. 10. Fol. 390

Of their maner of warre.

Cap. 11. Fol. 391

Of theyr shyppes and maner of saylyng on the sea.

Cap. 12. Fol. 391

The palace and court of the kyng of Calecut.

Cap. 13. Fol. 392

The Spices of Calecut.

Cap. 14. Fol. 392

The foules and byrdes of Calecut.

Cap. 15. Fol. 393

Of a most fruitfull tree of all the worlde.

Cap. 16. Fol. 393

Howe they solue Ryle.

Cap. 17. Fol. 394

Howe theyr Physicians visit the sicke folk.

Cap. 18. Fol. 394

Of theyr exchaungers, bankers, and brokers.

Cap. 19. Fol. 395

Of the inhabitantes of Idoliar and Hiraia.

Cap. 20. Fol. 395

Of foure sort of beastes, foules, and byrdes of Calecut.

Cap. 21. Fol. 395

Of certayne Serpentes whiche are scene in Calecut.

Cap. 22. Fol. 396

Of the lychtes and lampes whiche are scene in the palace of the  
kyng of Calecut.

Cap. 23. Fol. 396

The great multitude of Idolaters whiche resorte to Calecut for pardon of  
theyr synnes.

Cap. 24. Fol. 396

## *¶ The contentes of the sixth booke, of the Navigation of India.*

Of the cite of Calcolon and Colon.

Cap. 1. Fol. 397

Of Cypromandel a cite of India.

Cap. 2. Fol. 397

Of the Islande of Zaiton, and the precious stones founde  
there.

Cap. 3. Fol. 398

Of the tree of Cynamome in the Islande of Zaiton.

Cap. 4. Fol. 398

Of Haleacher, a cite of India.

Cap. 5. Fol. 399

Of Carnasari, a Cite of India.

Cap. 6. Fol. 399

Of the wylde and tame beastes in the cite of Carnasari.

Cap. 7. Fol. 399

The maner whiche the kyng of Carnasari vseth when he permitteth his  
wyle to be deslowyd of whyle men.

Cap. 8. Fol. 400

The maner of burnyng dead bodies in the cite of  
Carnasari.

Cap. 9. Fol. 400

The Iustice whiche the inhabitantes of Carnasari obserue.

Cap. 10. Fol. 401

Howe the Pahnmetans are buryed in the cite of  
Carnasari.

Cap. 11. Fol. 401

The dyuers sort of their shyppes or other vesselles of sayling.

Cap. 12. Fol. 401

Of

# The Table.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Of Banglella, a great and ryche citie of India: And of the great power of the kyng of that citie.                                                                                                                                                                 | Cap. 13. Fol. 401 |
| Of certayne Christian merchauntes which trafique there.                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Cap. 14. Fol. 402 |
| Of Pego a famous citie of India.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Cap. 15. Fol. 402 |
| Of the magnificence, humanitie, and great ryches of the kyng of Pego.                                                                                                                                                                                             | Cap. 16. Fol. 403 |
| Of the citie of Melacha, and the great ryuer of Gaza.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Cap. 17. Fol. 404 |
| Of the Ilande of Sumatra or Tappobana.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Cap. 18. Fol. 405 |
| Of an other kynde of Pepper: Also of sylke, and the precious gumme called Laserpitium or Belzoe.                                                                                                                                                                  | Cap. 19. Fol. 405 |
| Of thre sortes of the tree of Aloes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Cap. 20. Fol. 405 |
| Howe the gunnes of Aloes & Laserpitium, are proued.                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Cap. 21. Fol. 406 |
| Of diuers merchauntes in the Ilande of Sumatra or Tappobana.                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Cap. 22. Fol. 406 |
| Of the Iland of Bandan where Nutmegges & Pale are founde.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Cap. 23. Fol. 407 |
| Of the Ilande of Monoch, where Cloues growe.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Cap. 24. Fol. 407 |
| Of the Ilande of Bonel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Cap. 25. Fol. 407 |
| Of certayne obseruations vled in the nauigation to the Ilande of Ciaua.                                                                                                                                                                                           | Cap. 26. Fol. 408 |
| Of the Iland of Ciaua, & the maners of the people.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Cap. 27. Fol. 408 |
| Of the cruell maners in sleying their parentes to the Anthropophagi to be eaten.                                                                                                                                                                                  | Cap. 28. Fol. 409 |
| Of the strange course of the Sunne in the Iland of Ciaua.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Cap. 29. Fol. 409 |
| Of theyr returre from the Iland of Ciaua.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Cap. 30. Fol. 409 |
| Agayne of the citie of Calecut after theyr returre thither.                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Cap. 31. Fol. 410 |
| Of the commying of the kyng of Portugales hypps to the citie of Canonoz.                                                                                                                                                                                          | Cap. 32. Fol. 411 |
| Howe the autour playde the phisition, and counterfet holynesse, lest he shoulde be taken for a spie of the Portugales.                                                                                                                                            | Cap. 33. Fol. 411 |
| Howe the Bahumetā puestes cal the people to their church.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Cap. 34. Fol. 412 |
| The maner of praying among the Bahumetans.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Cap. 35. Fol. 412 |
| What subtiltie the autour vled to depart from Calecut, to go to the Portugales.                                                                                                                                                                                   | Cap. 36. Fol. 413 |
| How he fled to the Portugales from the citie of Canonoz.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Cap. 37. Fol. 413 |
| Of the naue of the citie of Calecut, and of the memorabile conflictte betweene the Christians and Bahumetans: In the which the Portugales with incredible valiantnesse, gaue theyr enimies the ouerthrowe: And howe the kyng of Canonoz reioyced at the victorie. | Cap. 37. Fol. 415 |

## The contentes of the senenth and last booke.

|                                                                                                                                                                                          |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| The voyage or nauigation of Ethiofia.                                                                                                                                                    | Cap. 1. Fol. 419 |
| Of diuers and many Ilandes of Ethiope.                                                                                                                                                   | Cap. 2. Fol. 419 |
| Of the Ilande of Bonzambich, & the inhabitantes therof.                                                                                                                                  | Cap. 3. Fol. 419 |
| Of the Cape, named Caput Bone Spes: That is, the Cape of good hope.                                                                                                                      | Cap. 4. Fol. 421 |
| Of the hegher east India, called Cereera.                                                                                                                                                | Fol. 42.         |
| Of the pyeces of precious stones and spyes, with theyr weyghtes and measures, as they are accustomed to be solde both of the Moores, & the Gentyles: and of the places where they growe. | Fol. 423.        |

# The Table.

|                                                                                                                                                                         |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Of the Rubie.                                                                                                                                                           | Fol. 423             |
| Of the Rubies whiche growe in the Ilande of Zeilam.                                                                                                                     | Fol. 423             |
| Of the kynde of Rubies called Spinelle.                                                                                                                                 | Fol. 424             |
| Of the Rubies called Balasni.                                                                                                                                           | Fol. 424             |
| Of the Diamondes of the olde mine.                                                                                                                                      | Fol. 424             |
| Of Sapphires.                                                                                                                                                           | Fol. 425             |
| Of Topasses.                                                                                                                                                            | Fol. 425             |
| Of Turquestes.                                                                                                                                                          | Fol. 425             |
| Of Iacinthes.                                                                                                                                                           | Fol. 426             |
| Of Smaragdes or Emeraldes.                                                                                                                                              | Fol. 426             |
| Of dyuers kyndes of spices, where they growe, what they are woorth in<br>Calecut, and whyther they are carryed from thence. And first of Pepper.                        | Fol. 426             |
| Of Cloues.                                                                                                                                                              | Fol. 427             |
| Of Cinamome.                                                                                                                                                            |                      |
| Of Ginger called Beledt.                                                                                                                                                |                      |
| Of Ginger Pechino.                                                                                                                                                      | Fol. 427             |
| Of greene Ginger in conserues.                                                                                                                                          |                      |
| Of the Apothecaries drugges, and of what price they are in Calecut and<br>Malabar.                                                                                      | Fol. 428             |
| Of the weyghtes of Portugale and India, and how they agree.                                                                                                             | Fol. 429             |
| Of the vyage made by the Spanyardes rounde about the worlde.                                                                                                            | Fol. 429             |
| Maximilian Transiluanus letter thereof to the Cardinall of<br>Salzburge.                                                                                                | Fol. 430             |
| The debate and strife, betweene the Spaniardes and Portugales for the<br>diuision of the Indies, and the trade of Spices, and the Moluccaes, out of<br>Lopez de Gomara. | Fol. 448             |
| The repartition and diuision of the Indies and newe worlde betweene the<br>Spanyardes and the Portugales.                                                               | Fol. 448             |
| The cause and aucthoritie whereby they deuided the Indies.                                                                                                              | Fol. 450             |
| Howe and by what occasion the Emperour layed the Ilandes of Moluccaes<br>to pledge to the kyng of Portugale.                                                            | Fol. 451             |
| Pope Alexander the .6. his Bull touchyng the aforesayde partition of the<br>Indies, Latine and Englyshe.                                                                | Fol. 452. & Fol. 454 |
| An abridgement of P. Martyr his .5. 6. 7. and 8. Decades, & particularly<br>of S. C. conquest of Mexico by R. Al.                                                       | Fol. 457             |

FINIS.

Imprinted at London by Rychard  
Iugge. Anno. 1577.

Cum Priuilegio,  
(..)

*manoti. 137*





ALPH 1884142 03-46246









